

EAST CENTRAL AND EASTERN EUROPE IN THE MIDDLE AGES, 450-1450

# The Romanians and the Turkic Nomads North of the Danube Delta from the Tenth to the Mid-Thirteenth Century



Victor Spinei



EAST CENTRAL AND EASTERN EUROPE IN THE MIDDLE AGES, 450-1450

BRILL

The Romanians and the Turkic Nomads  
North of the Danube Delta  
from the Tenth to the  
Mid-Thirteenth Century

East Central and Eastern  
Europe in the Middle Ages,  
450–1450

*General Editor*  
Florin Curta

VOLUME 6

The Romanians and the Turkic  
Nomads North of the Danube Delta  
from the Tenth to the  
Mid-Thirteenth Century

*By*  
Victor Spinei



BRILL

LEIDEN • BOSTON  
2009

*Cover illustration front:* Cuman warriors attacking a Russian town, as presented in an illumination in the Radziwiłł Chronicle (after *Rauchspur der Tauben. Radziwiłł Chronik*, Leipzig–Weimar, 1986, p. 222).

*Cover illustration back:* The eastern Black Sea on a map drawn by Diego Homem of Portugal in the latter half of the sixteenth century (after I. Dumitriu-Snagov, *Monumenta Romaniae Vaticana, Manoscritti—Documenti—Carte/Manuscripts—Documents—Maps. Catalogo della mostra Salone Sistino*, Vatican, 1996, p. 224, pl. 119 B).

*Translation:* Florin Curta, Maria Mihailescu-Birliba and Adrian Poruciu.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Spinei, Victor, 1943–

The Romanians and the Turkic nomads north of the Danube Delta from the tenth to the mid-thirteenth century / by Victor Spinei.

p. cm. — (East Central and Eastern Europe in the Middle Ages, 450–1450 ; v. 6)

Includes bibliographical references and indexes.

ISBN 978-90-04-17536-5 (hbk. : alk. paper)

1. Danube River Delta (Romania and Ukraine)—Ethnic relations.
  2. Moldavia—Ethnic relations.
  3. Carpathian Mountains Region—Ethnic relations.
  4. Romanians—Danube River Delta (Romania and Ukraine)—History—To 1500.
  5. Turkic peoples—Danube River Delta (Romania and Ukraine)—History—To 1500.
  6. Nomads—Danube River Delta (Romania and Ukraine)—History—To 1500.
  7. Human geography—Danube River Delta (Romania and Ukraine)
  8. Danube River Delta (Romania and Ukraine)—Social life and customs.
  9. Moldavia—Social life and customs.
  10. Carpathian Mountains Region—Ethnic relations—Social life and customs.
- I. Title. II. Series.

DR281.D25S65 2009

949.8\*3013—dc22

2009010061

ISSN 1872-8103

ISBN 978 90 04 17536 5

Copyright 2009 by Koninklijke Brill NV, Leiden, The Netherlands.  
Koninklijke Brill NV incorporates the imprints Brill, Hotei Publishing,  
IDC Publishers, Martinus Nijhoff Publishers and VSP.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, translated, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior written permission from the publisher.

Authorization to photocopy items for internal or personal use is granted by Koninklijke Brill NV provided that the appropriate fees are paid directly to The Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Suite 910, Danvers, MA 01923, USA.

Fees are subject to change.

PRINTED IN THE NETHERLANDS

## CONTENTS

List of Illustrations .....	vii
Abbreviations .....	xi
Introduction .....	1
I. The Environment and its Relation to the Anthropic Element .....	7
II. The Political History of the Carpathian-Dniester Region and of the Neighbouring Territories .....	47
Tenth Century .....	47
Eleventh Century .....	102
Twelfth Century .....	123
First Half of the Thirteenth Century .....	141
III. Contrasting Ways of Life: Romanian Agriculturists and Turkic Pastoralists .....	177
Linguistic and Ethnic Aspects .....	177
Demographic Aspects .....	188
Settlements and Life Style .....	200
Dwellings and their Annexes .....	213
Agriculture .....	221
Animal Husbandry .....	228
Crafts .....	235
Trade .....	239
Social and Political Life .....	247
Religious Life .....	268
Burial Assemblages .....	279
Art .....	299
IV. Contacts and Interactions between Romanians and Turkic Nomads .....	307
Selected Bibliography .....	361
Primary Sources .....	361
A. Written Sources .....	361
B. Archaeological Sources .....	383

Secondary Literature .....	392
Sources of Illustrations .....	435
Illustrations .....	439
Indices ( <i>by Cătălin Hriban</i> )	
General Index .....	499
Author Index .....	521

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

- Fig. 1. A. Map of forest spreading in Europe in 1910, drawn up by I. Riedel
- Fig. 2. Map of discoveries of local population settlements in the central and southern Moldavia of the ninth–eleventh centuries (Dridu culture)
- Fig. 3. Map of discoveries of local population settlements in the central and southern Moldavia of the eleventh–twelfth centuries (Răducăneni culture)
- Fig. 4. Map of Turkic nomad-grave discoveries of the tenth–thirteenth centuries in the outer-Carpathian Romanian regions
- Fig. 5. Map of the main types of rural settlements of Romania
- Fig. 6. Iron axes and arrowheads of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered at Fedești, Jariștea, Câmpineanca, Hlincea-Iași, Siliștea Nouă and Bârlălești
- Fig. 7. Iron and horn objects from the settlements of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered at Simila, Murgeni, Hlincea-Iași, Gârbovăț and Bârlălești
- Fig. 8. Bronze, iron and horn objects of the ninth–twelfth centuries discovered at Ciortești, Dănești, Băiceni, Umbrărești, Câmpineanca, Crucișoara, Roșcani and Grumezoaia
- Fig. 9. Silver and bronze brackets, bronze reliquary cross, stone spindle-whorl, iron arrowheads, knife, snaffle-bit and sword of the ninth–eleventh centuries discovered at Hansca, Bogatoc and Pașcani
- Fig. 10. Adornment objects and other metal pieces discovered in the tenth–twelfth centuries necropoleis at Arsura and Hansca-“Căprăria”
- Fig. 11. Potsherds discovered in the ninth–tenth centuries settlement of Bârlad-“Prodana”
- Fig. 12. Pottery of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered in the settlements of Calfă and Orhei-“Petruha”
- Fig. 13. Pottery of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered in the settlement of Hansca
- Fig. 14. Stamps on the bottom of the tenth–eleventh centuries pots discovered in the settlement of Hansca



- Fig. 15. Potsherds of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered in the settlement of Bârlălești
- Fig. 16. Pottery of the tenth–eleventh centuries and eleventh–twelfth centuries discovered in the settlements of Bârlălești and Răducăneni
- Fig. 17. Potsherds of the eleventh–twelfth centuries discovered in the settlements of Dănești and Răducăneni
- Fig. 18. Potsherds of the eleventh–twelfth centuries discovered in the settlements of Pâhnești and Răducăneni
- Fig. 19. Potsherds of the twelfth–thirteenth centuries discovered in the settlement of Iași-“Nicolina”
- Fig. 20. Iron arrowhead, glass bracelet and potsherds from the twelfth–thirteenth centuries settlement of Iași-“Nicolina”
- Fig. 21. Byzantine and Russian bronze double reliquary crosses of the tenth–eleventh and twelfth–thirteenth centuries from Șuletea and from an unidentified place in the Suceava area
- Fig. 22. Ceramic decorated with zoomorphic motifs and human figures beings carved in gritstone of the ninth–tenth centuries discovered at Gara Banca and Delești
- Fig. 23. Plan of the Turkic nomads’ graves at Probota, Trapovca, Seliște and Zârnești
- Fig. 24. Iron objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads’ graves at Balabanu
- Fig. 25. Objects of horn, silver, gold, bronze, gilded and silvered iron and iron from the inventory of the Turkic nomads’ graves at Balabanu
- Fig. 26. Plan of a destroyed grave and the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads’ graves at Banca
- Fig. 27. Plan of a Turkic nomads’ grave at Bădragii Vechi and silver, gold, bone and iron objects from its funerary inventory
- Fig. 28. Metal objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads’ graves at Bârlad-“Parc”, Pogonești, Berești and Todireni
- Fig. 29. Metal and horn objects and pieces of gold thread tissue from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomad’s grave at Fridensfeld (= Mirnople)
- Fig. 30. Iron objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomad’s grave of Grozești
- Fig. 31. Metal, horn and bone objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads’ graves of Holboca and Pogonești

- Fig. 32. Iron objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Mândrești, Probota, Grivița-Vaslui, Pogonești and Bârlad-“Moara lui Chicoș”
- Fig. 33. Objects of metal, horn and glass paste from the funerary inventory of a Turkic nomad's grave at Pavlovca
- Fig. 34. Metal objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Pavlovca, Șabalat (= Sadovoe) and Gura Bâcului
- Fig. 35. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory at Petrești and Bădragii Vechi
- Fig. 36. Metal objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Probota, Bârlad-“Moara lui Chicoș”, Umbrărești and Moscu
- Fig. 37. Objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Seliște
- Fig. 38. Byzantine coins, adornment objects and clay pot from the funerary inventory of Turkic nomads' graves at Suvorovo and Tuzla
- Fig. 39. Plan of a Turkic nomads' grave at Chirileni, iron and bone objects and clay pots from its funerary inventory
- Fig. 40. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory at Ursoaia
- Fig. 41. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory at Balabanu and Chircăiești
- Fig. 42. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory at Chircăiești and Cârnațeni
- Fig. 43. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves at Taraclia
- Fig. 44. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory at Taraclia
- Fig. 45. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory from Taraclia
- Fig. 46. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory at Olănești, Chirileni, Divizia, Opaci, Ursoaia, Cazaclia
- Fig. 47. Iron and bone objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Ivanovca
- Fig. 48. Iron and horn objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Sevirova, Alexandrovca and Ivanovca
- Fig. 49. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves and their funerary inventory at Iablona, Plavni, Calanciac and Limanskoe-“Fricăței”

- Fig. 50. Clay pot, horn and metal objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Belolesie, Limanskoe-“Fricăței”, Jeltâi Iar, Plavni, Ciauș and Ogorodnoe
- Fig. 51. Metal, glass and horn objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Bolgrad, Palanca and Balabanu
- Fig. 52. Iron and bone objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Balabanu
- Fig. 53. Iron and copper objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Roma
- Fig. 54. Iron, iron and wood objects and a saddle reconstruction from the funerary inventory of a Turkic nomads' grave at Matca
- Fig. 55. Gold, silvered iron, iron and copper objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Pogonești, Moscu and Grivița-Vaslui
- Fig. 56. Metal objects and fragment of a clay pot from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Tudora and Grădiștea and a stone statue at Nădușita
- Fig. 57. Stone statue (*kamennaia baba*), attributed to the Cumans, from an unidentified place in the north-Pontic steppes, preserved in the Moldavian Historical Museum of Iași
- Fig. 58. Stone statues (*kamennye baby*), representing Cuman men, from the north-Pontic steppes
- Fig. 59. Stone statues (*kamennye baby*), representing Cuman women, from the north-Pontic steppes
- Fig. 60. Types of trellis tent of nomads from the steppe zone of Eurasia: southern Qırqız, Qunrad Özbek, Laqay Özbek and northern Qırqız

## ABBREVIATIONS

<i>AA</i>	<i>Archives de l'Athos</i> (Paris).
<i>AARMSI</i>	<i>Analele Academiei Române. Memoriile Secțiunii Istorice</i> (Bucharest).
<i>ActaArchHung</i>	<i>Acta Archaeologica Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae</i> (Budapest).
<i>AD</i>	<i>Analele Dobrogei</i> (Cernăuți–Constanța).
<i>AECO</i>	<i>Archivum Europae Centro-Orientalis</i> (Budapest).
<i>AEMA</i>	<i>Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aevi</i> (Wiesbaden).
a.H.	anno Hegirae.
<i>AII(A)</i>	<i>Anuarul Institutului de Istorie (și Arheologie)</i> (“ <i>A. D. Xenopol</i> ”) (Iași).
<i>AIM</i>	<i>Археологические исследования в Молдавии</i> (Kishinev).
<i>AKM</i>	<i>Археологическая карта Молдавской ССР</i> (Kishinev).
<i>AM</i>	<i>Arheologia Moldovei</i> (Iași–Bucharest).
Anonymus	P. Magistri qui Anonymus dicitur, <i>Gesta Hungarorum</i> , eds. A. Jakubovich—D. Pais, in <i>SRH</i> , I.
<i>AO...G</i>	<i>Археологическая открытия... года</i> (Moscow).
<i>AOH</i>	<i>Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae</i> (Budapest).
<i>ASAI</i>	<i>Археология СССР. Свод археологических источников</i> (Moscow–Leningrad).
<i>ASUI</i>	<i>Analele Științifice ale Universității “Al.I.Cuza” din Iași</i> (Iași).
<i>BBR</i>	<i>Buletinul Bibliotecii Române. Studii și documente românești</i> (Freiburg i. Br.).
<i>BMNIN</i>	<i>Buletinul Muzeului Național de Istorie Naturală din Chișinău</i> (Chișinău).
<i>BSGR</i>	<i>Buletinul Societății Geografice Române</i> (Bucharest).
<i>BSRRG</i>	<i>Buletinul Societății Regale Române de Geografie</i> (Bucharest).
<i>BZ</i>	<i>Byzantinische Zeitschrift</i> (Munich).
Cantemir, <i>DM</i>	Dimitrie Cantemir, <i>Descrierea Moldovei</i> , trans. Gh. Guțu, commentary N. Stoicescu (Bucharest, 1973).

- Călători*, I–X *Călători străini despre Țările Române* (Bucharest), I (1968)—ed. M. Holban; II (1970); III (1971); IV (1972); V (1973); VII (1980); VIII (1983); IX (1997); X, 1 (2000); X, 2 (2001)—eds. M. Holban, M. M. Alexandrescu-Dersca Bulgaru, P. Cernovodeanu; VI (1976)—eds. M. M. Alexandrescu-Dersca Bulgaru, M. A. Mehmet.
- CIs* *Cercetări istorice* (Iași).
- Coman, *Statornicie* G. Coman, *Statornicie, continuitate. Repertoriul arheologic al județului Vaslui* (Bucharest, 1980).
- CPict* *Chronicon pictum Vindobonense* (*HIR*, XI) (1937).
- Curta, *Southeastern Europe* F. Curta, *Southeastern Europe in the Middle Ages, 500–1250* (Cambridge, 2006).
- DAI*, I, II Constantinus Porphyrogenitus, *De administrando imperio* [I], eds. G. Moravcsik—R. J. H. Jenkins (Washington, 1967); II, *Commentary*, ed. R. J. H. Jenkins (London, 1962).
- Diaconu, *Coumans* P. Diaconu, *Les Coumans au Bas-Danube aux XI<sup>e</sup> et XII<sup>e</sup> siècles* (Bucharest, 1978).
- Diaconu, *Petchénègues* P. Diaconu, *Les Petchénègues au Bas-Danube* (Bucharest, 1970).
- DID*, II, III R. Vulpe, I. Barnea, *Romanii la Dunărea de jos (Din istoria Dobrogei, II)* (Bucharest, 1968); I. Barnea, Șt. Ștefănescu, *Bizantini, români și bulgari la Dunărea de Jos (Din istoria Dobrogei, III)* (Bucharest, 1971).
- DIR,A; C, v...* *Documente privind istoria României* (Bucharest), *A. Moldova, veacul XVI*, I (1953); II (1951); III (1951); IV (1952); *veacul XVII*, I (1952); II (1953); III (1954); IV (1956); V (1957); *C. Transilvania, veacul XI, XII și XIII*, I (1951).
- DPM* *Далекое проишлое Молдавии*, eds. N. A. Chetaru, V. I. Marchevici, L. L. Polevoi (gen. ed.), G. D. Smirnov (Kishinev, 1969).

- DRH,A; B; C; D* *Documenta Romaniae Historica* (Bucharest), *A. Moldova*, I (1975); XXI (1971); XXII (1974)—eds. C. Cihodaru, I. Caproșu, and L. Șimanschi; II (1976)—ed. L. Șimanschi, in collab. with G. Ignat and D. Agache; III (1980)—eds. C. Cihodaru, I. Caproșu, and N. Ciocan; VI (2008); XXVI (2003)—ed. I. Caproșu; XVIII (2006)—eds. I. Caproșu and V. Constantinov; XIX (1969)—ed. H. Chirca; XXIII (1996)—eds. L. Șimanschi, N. Ciocan, G. Ignat, and D. Agache; XXIV (1998)—eds. C. Cihodaru and I. Caproșu; XXV (2003)—eds. N. Ciocan, D. Agache, G. Ignat, and M. Chelcu; XXVII (2005)—eds. P. Zahariuc, C. Chelcu, M. Chelcu, S. Văcaru, N. Ciocan, D. Ciurea; *B. Țara Românească*, I (1966)—eds. P. P. Panaitescu and D. Mioc; II (1972); VI (1985); VII (1988)—eds. Șt. Ștefănescu and O. Diaconescu; III (1975); IV (1981)—eds. D. Mioc and collab.; V (1983)—eds. D. Mioc and M. Adam-Chiper; VIII (1996)—eds. D. Mioc and I. Constantinescu; XI (1975)—eds. D. Mioc, Șt. Ștefănescu, M. Adam, C. Bălan, M. Bălan, S. Caracaș, R. Cămărășescu, O. Diaconescu, C. Fotino; XXI (1965); XXII (1969); XXIII (1969)—ed. D. Mioc; XXIV (1974)—eds. D. Mioc, S. Caracaș, and C. Bălan (1974); XXV (1985)—eds. D. Mioc, M. Bălan, R. Cămărășescu, and C. Fotino; XXXI (2003); XXXV (2003)—eds. V. Barbu, C. Ghițulescu, A. Iancu, Gh. Lazăr, O. Rizescu; XXXII (2001)—eds. V. Barbu and Gh. Lazăr, in collab. with O. Rizescu; XXXIII (2006)—eds. Gh. Lazăr, C. Vintilă-Ghițulescu, A. Iancu; XXXIV (2002)—eds. V. Barbu, Gh. Lazăr, O. Rizescu; XXXVI (2006)—eds. O. Rizescu and M.-D. Ciucă; XXXVII (2006)—eds. V. Barbu, C. Bălan, F. M. Constantin; *C. Transilvania*, X (1977)—red. Șt. Pascu, eds. S. Belu, I. Dani, A. Răduțiu, V. Pervain, K. G. Gündisch; XI (1981)—red. Șt. Pascu, eds. I. Dani, A. Răduțiu, V. Pervain, K. G. Gündisch, S. Belu; XII (1985)—red. Șt. Pascu,

- eds. A. Răduțiu, V. Pervain, S. Belu, I. Dani, M. Wolf; XIII (1994)—eds. I. Dani, K. Gündisch, V. Pervain, A. Răduțiu, A. Rusu, S. Andea; *D. Relații între Țările Române*, I (1977)—eds. Șt. Pascu, C. Cihodaru, K. G. Gündisch, D. Mioc, V. Pervain.
- Fedorov, Chebotarenko, *Pamiatniki* G. B. Fedorov, G. F. Chebotarenko, *Памятники древних славян (VI–XIII вв.)* (АКМ, 6) (1974).
- Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki* G. A. Fedorov-Davydov, *Кочевники Восточной Европы под властью золотоордынских ханов* (Moscow, 1966).
- FHB* *Извори за българската история / Fontes historiae Bulgaricae* (Sofia).
- FHDR*, I–IV *Fontes historiae Daco-Romanae* (Bucharest), I (1964)—eds. V. Iiescu, V. C. Popescu, Gh. Ștefan; II (1970)—eds. H. Mihăescu, Gh. Ștefan, R. Hâncu, Vl. Iiescu, V. C. Popescu; III (1975)—eds. Al. Elian and N.-Ș. Tanașoca; IV (1982)—eds. H. Mihăescu, R. Lăzărescu, N.-Ș. Tanașoca, T. Teoteoi.
- Gombos, I–III A. F. Gombos, *Catalogus fontium historiae Hungaricae aevo ducum et regum ex stripe Arpad descenduntium ab anno Christi DCCC usque ad annum MCCC* (Budapest), I, II (1937); III (1938).
- HGR* *Handbuch der Geschichte Russlands*, eds. M. Hellmann, K. Zernack, G. Schramm, I, *Bis 1613. Von der Kiever Reichsbildung bis zum Moskauer Zartum*, ed. M. Hellmann, 1 (Stuttgart, 1981).
- Hurmuzaki E. Hurmuzaki, *Documente privitoare la istoria românilor* (Bucharest), I (1887); II, 4 (1894)—ed. N. Densușianu; I, 2 (1890); II, 2 (1891); II, 3 (1892)—eds. N. Densușianu, E. Kalužniacki; I, supl. 1 (1886)—eds. Gr. G. Tocilescu, A. I. Odobescu; II, 1 (1891)—ed. I. Slavici.
- Hust.let.* *Густинская летопись*, in PSRL, II (St. Petersburg, 1843).
- IIR* *Izvoarele istoriei românilor*, ed. G. Popa-Lisseanu (Bucharest).

- Iorga, *Histoire*, II, III N. Iorga, *Histoire des Roumains et de la romanité orientale*, II, III (Bucharest).
- Ip.let.* *Ипатьевская летопись*, in *PSRL*, II (St. Petersburg, 1843).
- Ip.let.-2 =* *Ипатьевская летопись*, in *PSRL*, II, ed. A. A. Shakhmatov (St. Petersburg, 1908).
- Ist.Rom.*, I, II *Istoria României* (Bucharest), I, eds. C. Daicoviciu, E. Condurachi, I. Nestor, Gh. Ștefan, M. D. Matei (1960); II, eds. A. Oțetea, M. Berza, B. T. Câmpina, Șt. Pascu, Șt. Ștefănescu (1962).
- IVESV* *Юго-Восточная Европа в средние века*, I, eds. I. G. Budak, Ia. S. Grosul (gen. ed.), V. D. Koroliuk, L. L. Polevoi, P. V. Sovetov (Kishinev, 1972).
- Izv.-Kishinev* *Известия Молдавского филиала Академии Наук СССР (= Известия Академии Наук Молдавской СССР, Серия общественных наук)* (Kishinev/Chișinău).
- Kedrenos, I, II Georgii Cedreni *Compendium historiarum*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn), I (1838); II (1839).
- KS* *Краткие сообщения (Института Истории материальной культуры) (= Института Археологии АН СССР)* (Moscow).
- Let. Voskr. =* *Летопись по Воскресенскому списку*, in *PSRL*, VII (St. Petersburg, 1856).
- MA* *Memoria Antiquitatis* (Piatra Neamț).
- MASP* *Материалы по археологии Северного Причерноморья* (Odessa–Kiev).
- MCA* *Materiale și cercetări arheologice* (Bucharest).
- MGH* *Monumenta Germaniae Historica*.
- MGH,SS* *MGH, Scriptores* (Hannover).
- MIA* *Материалы и исследования по археологии СССР* (Moscow–Leningrad).
- Nik.let.*, I, II *Летописный сборникъ, именуемый Патриаршею или Никоновскою летописью* [I,] in *PSRL*, IX (St. Petersburg, 1862); [II,] in *PSRL*, X (St. Petersburg, 1885).
- NPL* *Новгородская первая летопись старшего и младшего изводов*, ed. A. A. Nasonov (Moscow–Leningrad, 1950).



- Orient. Ber.* H. Göckenjan and I. Zimonyi, *Orientalische Berichte über die Völker Osteuropas und Zentralasiens im Mittelalter. Die Ġayhānī-Tradition (Ibn Rusta, Gardīzī, Hudūd al-'Ālam, al-Bakrī und al-Marwazī)* (Wiesbaden, 2001).
- Pascu, *Trans.*, I, II Șt. Pascu, *Voievodatul Transilvaniei* (Cluj[-Napoca]), I (1971); II (1979).
- PG* *Patrologiae cursus completus, Patrologiae graecae*, ed. J.-P. Migne (Paris).
- PGM* *Проблемы географии Молдавии* (Kishinev).
- Plano Carpini Johannes de Plano Carpini, *Ystoria Mongalorum*, in *SF*.
- Pletneva, *Pechenegi* S. A. Pletneva, *Печенеги, торки и половцы в южнорусских степях*, in *MIA*, 62 (Moscow-Leningrad, 1958), pp. 151–226.
- Psellos, I, II Michel Psellos, *Chronographie ou Histoire d'un siècle de Byzance (976–1077)*, ed. É. Renauld (Paris), I (1926); II (1928).
- PSRL* *Полное собрание русских летописей* (St. Petersburg/Petrograd/Leningrad-Moscow).
- PVL*, I, II *Повесть временных лет*, I, ed. D. S. Likhachev, red. V. P. Adrianova-Peretts; II, *Приложение*, ed. D. S. Likhachev (Moscow-Leningrad, 1950).
- Relations* *Relations between the Autochthonous Population and the Migratory Populations on the Territory of Romania*, eds. M. Constantinescu, Șt. Pascu, and P. Diaconu (Bucharest, 1975).
- RESEE* *Revue des études sud-est européennes* (Bucharest).
- RIR* *Revista istorică română* (Bucharest).
- RI* (*Studii.*) *Revista de istorie* (Bucharest).
- RRH* *Revue Roumaine d'Histoire* (Bucharest).
- Rubruck Guillelmus de Rubruc, *Itinerarium*, in *SF*.
- SA* *Советская археология* (Moscow).
- SAI* *Studii și articole de istorie* (Bucharest).
- SCIV(A)* *Studii și cercetări de istorie veche (și arheologie)* (Bucharest).
- SCN* *Studii și cercetări de numismatică* (Bucharest).
- SF* *Sinica Franciscana*, I, *Itinera et relationes fratrum minorum saeculi XIII et XIV*, ed. A. van den Wyngaert (Ad Claras Aquas/Quaracchi-Florence, 1929).

- Simon de Keza                      Simonis de Keza *Gesta Hungarorum*, ed. A. Domanovszky, in *SRH*, I.
- SK*                                      *Seminarium Kondakovianum*, 1–10 (Prague); 11 (Belgrade).
- Skylitzes                              Ioannis Scylitzae *Synopsis historiarum*, ed. I. Thurn (Berolini et Novi Eboraci, 1973).
- SMIM*                                  *Studii și materiale de istorie medie*, 1–16 (Bucharest); 17–25 (Brăila).
- Spinei, *Moldova*                      V. Spinei, *Moldova în secolele XI–XIV* (Bucharest, 1982).
- Spinei, *Great Migrations*, I, II      V. Spinei, *The Great Migrations in the East and South East of Europe from the Ninth to the Thirteenth Century*, I, *Hungarians, Pechenegs and Uzes*; II, *Cumans and Mongols*, 2nd ed., trans. D. Bădulescu (Amsterdam, 2006).
- SRH*, I, II                              *Scriptores rerum Hungaricarum*, ed. E. Szentpétery (Budapest), I (1937); II (1938).
- Teodor, *Teritoriul*                      D. Gh. Teodor, *Teritoriul est-carpatic în veacurile V–IX e.n.* (Iași, 1978).
- Tiesenhausen, I, II                      *Сборник материалов относящихся к истории Золотой Орды*, I, ed. V. Tiesenhausen (St. Petersburg, 1884); II, ed. V. G. Tiesenhausen, red. A. A. Romaskevich and S. L. Volin (Moscow–Leningrad, 1941).
- VEDS*                                  *Восточная Европа в древности и средневековье*, ed. L. V. Cherepnin (Moscow, 1978).
- Zaharia, etc., *Așezări*                      N. Zaharia, M. Petrescu-Dîmbovița, and Em. Zaharia, *Așezări din Moldova. De la paleolitic pînă în secolul al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1970).
- ZOO                                      *Записки Одесского общества истории и древностей* (Odessa).



## INTRODUCTION

The hardly reconcilable confrontation between sedentary agricultural communities and nomadic pastoralists is a quite well known aspect in the history of mankind. The antagonism between the two types of societies has been caused by the incompatibility between two systems of subsistence, and that antagonism manifested itself in many ways, in various parts of the world. The Carpathian-Danubian area particularly favoured the development of sedentary life, throughout the millennia, but, at various times, nomadic pastoralists of the steppes also found this area favourable to their own way of life.

The author of the present volume aims to investigate the relationships between Romanians and nomadic Turkic groups in the southern half of Moldavia, north of the Danube Delta, between the tenth century and the great Mongol invasion of 1241–1242. Due to the basic features of its landscape, the above-mentioned area, which includes a vast plain, became the main political stage of the Romanian ethnic space, a stage on which local communities had to cope with the pressures of successive intrusions of nomadic Turks, attracted by the rich pastures north of the Lower Danube. Other areas inhabited by Romanians (with the exception of the Bărăgan plain and Dobrudja) were significantly less affected by Turkic invasions and occupations than southern Moldavia.

The geographic area at issue includes the southern half of Moldavia, within its medieval boundaries: the Carpathians in the west, the Milcov, the Putna, the Siret, the Danube and the Black Sea in the south, and the Dniester in the east.

My approach does not follow the beaten tracks, nor does it represent a total breakthrough. The chosen topic has not been neglected by historiographers; on the contrary, it has been dealt with in outstanding works, and it has enjoyed scientific attention. With no intention of enumerating all the significant contributions in the field, or of assessing them, mention must be made of the works of Ilie Gherghel,<sup>1</sup> Ioan Ferent,<sup>2</sup> Nicolae

---

<sup>1</sup> I. Gherghel, *Zur Geschichte Siebenbürgens* (Vienna, 1891); idem, “Cercetări privitoare la istoria cumanilor,” *Revista Tinerimea română*, NS, 2 (1899), pp. 263–269; 3 (1899), pp. 387–392; 5 (1900), pp. 114–118.

<sup>2</sup> I. Ferent, *Cumanii și episcopule lor* (Blaj, [1931]).

Iorga,<sup>3</sup> Petre Diaconu<sup>4</sup> and Ion Chirtoagă.<sup>5</sup> Those works highlighted the various levels of knowledge specific to the periods in which they were written. The problem of the Romanian-Turkic relations is also reflected in synthetic works on Romanian medieval history, as well as in other studies that will be mentioned below. In trying to define the place of Turkic nomads in the complicated context of medieval events, and, implicitly, in trying to achieve a clearer vision of the specific character of the relations between those nomads and the Romanians, the works on Turkic history published by the following authors can prove to be of much help: Vasiliu Grigorovich Vasilievskii,<sup>6</sup> Piotr V. Golubovskii,<sup>7</sup> Joseph Marquart,<sup>8</sup> D. Rassovsky (D. A. Rasovskii),<sup>9</sup> Svetlana Aleksandrovna Pletneva,<sup>10</sup> German Alekseevich Fedorov-Davydov,<sup>11</sup> Omeljan

<sup>3</sup> N. Iorga, "Imperiul cumanilor și domnia lui Băsărabă. Un capitol din colaborația româno-barbară în evul mediu," *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 8 (1927–1928), pp. 97–103 (reprint in idem, *Studii asupra evului mediu românesc*, ed. Ș. Papacostea (Bucharest, 1984), pp. 67–71); idem, *Histoire*, III, pp. 34–44 and 68–74; idem, "Revelații toponimice pentru istoria neștiută a românilor, I, Teleormanul," *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 23 (1940–1941), pp. 333–350.

<sup>4</sup> Diaconu, *Petchénègues*; idem, *Coumans*.

<sup>5</sup> I. Chirtoagă, *Din istoria Moldovei de Sud-Est până în anii '30 ai secolului al XIX-lea* (Chișinău, 1999), pp. 26–70.

<sup>6</sup> V. G. Vasilievskii, "Византия и печенеги (1048–1094)," in idem, *Труды*, I (St. Petersburg, 1908), pp. 1–117.

<sup>7</sup> P. Golubovskii, *Печенеги, торки и половцы до нашествия татарь* (Kiev, 1884); idem, *Половцы въ Венгрии* (Kiev, 1889).

<sup>8</sup> J. Marquart, *Osteuropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge* (Leipzig, 1903); idem, "Über das Volkstum der Komanen," in W. Bang and J. Marquart, "Ostürkische Dialektstudien," *Abhandlungen der Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Philologisch-Historische Klasse*, NF, 13 (1914), no. 1, pp. 25–238.

<sup>9</sup> D. Rassovsky [D. A. Rasovskii], "Печенеги, торки и берендеи на Руси и въ Угрии," *СК* 6 (1933), pp. 1–66; idem, "Половцы," *СК* 7 (1935), pp. 245–262; 8 (1936), pp. 161–182; 9 (1937), pp. 71–85; 10 (1938), pp. 155–178; 11 (1940), pp. 95–128.

<sup>10</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, pp. 151–226; eadem, "Половецкая земля," in *Древнерусские княжества X–XIII вв.*, eds. L. G. Beskrovnyi (gen. ed.), V. A. Kuchkin, V. T. Pashuto (Moscow, 1975), pp. 260–300; eadem, "Кочевники восточноевропейских степей в X–XIII вв.," in *Степи Евразии в эпоху средневековья*, ed. S. A. Pletneva (Moscow, 1981), pp. 213–222; eadem, *Кочевники средневековья* (Moscow, 1982); eadem, *Половцы* (Moscow, 1990); eadem, *Печенеги и гузы на Нижнем Дону (по материалам кочевнического могильника у Саркела-Белой Вежи)* (Moscow, 1990); eadem, *Кочевники южнорусских степей в эпоху средневековья IV–XIII века. Уسوبное пособие* (Voronezh, 2003); eadem, *Древнерусский город в кочевой степи (опыт историко-стратиграфического исследования)* (Simferopol, 2006).

<sup>11</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*; idem, *Искусство кочевников и Золотой Орды* (Moscow, 1976).

Pritsak,<sup>12</sup> Peter G. Golden,<sup>13</sup> Andrei Olegovich Dobroliubskii,<sup>14</sup> Jean-Paul Roux,<sup>15</sup> András Pálóczi Horváth,<sup>16</sup> Igor O. Kniaz'kii,<sup>17</sup> Petro Petrovich Tolochko,<sup>18</sup> István Vásáry,<sup>19</sup> etc. Besides appearing in individual volumes,<sup>20</sup> the issues of the evolution of later nomad Turkic tribes in eastern and south-eastern Europe have been approached in numerous collected volumes on various topics. Outstanding among those are, by their amplitude and diversity of subjects, the first two volumes of an extensive work devoted to the history and civilization of Turkic peoples,

<sup>12</sup> O. Pritsak, "Das Kiptschakische," in *Philologiae Turcicae fundamenta*, I, eds. J. Deny, K. Grønbech, H. Scheel, Z. V. Togan (Wiesbaden, 1959), pp. 74–87; idem, "Половці," *Український історик* 10 (1973), nos. 1–2 (37–38), pp. 112–118; idem, "The Pečenegs," *AEMA* 1 (1975), pp. 4–29; idem, *Studies in medieval Eurasian history* (Variorum Reprints) (London, 1981); idem, "The Polovcians and Rus'," *AEMA* 2 (1982), pp. 321–380.

<sup>13</sup> P. B. Golden, "Cumanica I: The Qipčaq in Georgia," *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 45–87; idem, "Cumanica II: The Ölberli: The fortunes and misfortunes of an Inner Asian nomadic clan," *AEMA* 6 (1986), pp. 5–29; idem, "Cumanica III: Urusoba," in *Aspects of Altaic Civilization*, III, *Proceedings of the Thirtieth Meeting of the Permanent International Altaistic Conference, Indiana University, Bloomington, Indiana, June 19–25, 1987*, ed. D. Sinor (Bloomington, IN, 1990), pp. 33–46; idem, "Cumanica IV: The tribes of the Cuman-Qipčaq," *AEMA* 9 (1995–1997), pp. 99–122; idem, "Nomads and their sedentary neighbors in Pre-Činggisid Eurasia," *AEMA* 7 (1987–1991), pp. 41–81; idem, "The peoples of the south Russian steppes," in *The Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia*, ed. D. Sinor (Cambridge, 1990), pp. 256–284; idem, "The Qipčaq of medieval Eurasia: an example of stateless adaptation in the steppes," in *Rulers from the Steppe. State Formation on the Eurasian Periphery*, eds. G. Seaman and D. Marks (Los Angeles, 1991), pp. 132–157; idem, *An Introduction to the History of the Turkic Peoples. Ethnogenesis and State-Formation in Medieval and Early Modern Eurasia and the Middle East* (Wiesbaden, 1992); idem, *Nomads and their Neighbours in the Russian Steppe: Turks, Khazars and Qipčaq* (Variorum Collected Studies Series) (Aldershot–Burlington, 2003).

<sup>14</sup> A. O. Dobroliubskii, *Кочевники Северо-Западного Причерноморья в эпоху средневековья* (Kiev, 1986).

<sup>15</sup> J.-P. Roux, *Histoire des Turcs. Deux mille ans du Pacifique à la Méditerranée* (Paris, 1984); idem, *La religion des Turcs et des Mongols* (Paris, 1984).

<sup>16</sup> A. Pálóczi Horváth, *Besenyők, kunok, jászok* (Budapest, 1989); idem, *Pechenegs, Cumans, Iasians. Steppe Peoples in Mediaeval Hungary* (Budapest, 1989); idem, *Petschenegen, Kumannen, Jassen. Steppenvölker im mittelalterlichen Ungarn* (Budapest, 1989); idem, *Hagyományok, kapcsolatok és hatások a kunok régészeti kultúrájában* (Karcag, 1994).

<sup>17</sup> I. O. Kniaz'kii, *Русь и степь* (Moscow, 1996); idem, *Славяне, волохи и кочевники Днестровско-Карпатских земель (конец IX–сер. XIII вв.)* (Kolomna, 1997).

<sup>18</sup> P. P. Tolochko, *Кочевые народы степей и Киевская Русь* (Kiev, 1999).

<sup>19</sup> I. Vásáry, *Geschichte des frühen Innerasiens*, trans. T. Schäfer (Herne, 1999); idem, *Cumans and Tatars. Oriental Military in the Pre-Ottoman Balkans, 1185–1365* (Cambridge, 2005); idem, *Turks, Tatars and Russians in the 13th–16th Centuries* (Variorum Collected Studies Series) (Aldershot–Burlington, 2007).

<sup>20</sup> For the Russian and Soviet historiography concerning the late nomad Turkic tribes and their relations with the Kievan Rus', see R. M. Mavrodina, *Киевская Русь и кочевники (печенеги, торки, половцы)* (Leningrad, 1983).

a work that is co-ordinated by Turkish historians and benefits from the collaboration of renowned specialists from all over the world.<sup>21</sup>

The investigation of the many-sided contacts between the sedentary inhabitants and the nomads in southern Moldavia during the tenth–thirteenth centuries may encounter serious difficulties, due to the vague and fragmentary way in which those contacts were recorded in documents of those times. The scarcity and ambiguity of those sources made it necessary to resort to collateral historical information and to interdisciplinary data. Much emphasis has been placed upon the insertion of relevant documents, especially those which were unpublished or rarely discussed in connection with the history of the eastern Carpathian space. In that respect, the territory under consideration has many essential aspects that have not been adequately explored and clarified. The access to the past and to credible reconstructions is unconceivable without a clarification of specific aspects, certainly not of all, but at least of those that had substantial consequences.

No claims are made here for an exhaustive research on the chosen topic. In some directions the knowledge is limited; also, the space allotted here would not be enough even for a presentation of what is known. To imagine that one could give credible answers to all the controversial problems implied here and that nothing has escaped attention would merely be sinking into an abyss of vanities. The level of research is still underdeveloped in some fields; therefore my conclusions are just working assumptions, which are liable to suffer further modifications. The goal is to open discussions even on problems that have not yet been elucidated, and which, consequently, may lead to quite different interpretations. I take such diversity of opinions as granted, and try to stimulate a further development of ideas. In general, I will avoid ostentatious polemic gestures, but will uphold my own opinion, in opposition to theories I suspect of having wrongly interpreted the idea of *bona fide*, or of having tendentiously presented historical realities.

---

<sup>21</sup> *The Turks*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik, 1, *Early Ages* (Ankara, 2002) (S. Koca, T. Gündüz, M. U. Yücel, K. A. Brook, C. Zuckerman, B. Z. Takács, O. Pritsak, A. Alemany, O. Karatay, P. S. Tzvetov, I. Zimonyi, G. Vörös, A. Gökbel, P. B. Golden, V. Stoyanov, U. Tavkul, O. Belli, S. Başkan et al.); 2, *Middle Ages* (Ankara, 2002) (N. Yazici, S. Koca, M. Heiduk, G. Watson, U. Schamiloglu, M. A. Usmanov et al.).

Along general lines, this volume follows the structure of a book published in Iași in 1985.<sup>22</sup> There are, however, several important differences. I have left out lengthy passages on the specific features of the geographical background, as well as the descriptions of Turkic funerary complexes. Many new paragraphs have been added, in order to enrich the text published more than two decades ago.

The additions were possible due to my research in several national libraries, or in some belonging to reputed institutes and universities such as those in Berlin (*Eurasien-Abteilung des Deutschen Archäologischen Instituts, Institut für Prähistorische Archäologie/Freie Universität*), Frankfurt am Main (*Römisch-Germanische Kommission des Deutschen Archäologischen Instituts, Johann Wolfgang Goethe-Universität*), Konstanz (*Universität*), London (*School of Oriental and African Studies, School of Slavonic and East European Studies/University College London*), Mainz (*Römisch-Germanisches Zentralmuseum*), Munich (*Bayrische Staatsbibliothek, Historicum/Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität, Monumenta Germaniae Historica*), Stockholm (*Kungliga Biblioteket, Vitterhetsakademiens Bibliotek*), Vienna (*Institut für Mittelalterforschung, Institut für Österreichische Geschichtsforschung, Österreichische Nationalbibliothek*), Washington, D.C. (*Dumbarton Oaks Center for Byzantine Studies, Library of Congress*), etc. The books and copies I have received from foreign colleagues, such as Uwe Fiedler (Berlin), Irina G. Konovalova (Moscow), Anton Cușa (Evrî) and others, felicitously filled up bibliographic gaps. I have also been able to use a rich archaeological material discovered and published lately in Romania, Republic of Moldova and Ukraine.

The illustrative part of the volume consists of representations of archaeological items that are significant both for the Romanian medieval society and for the Turkic nomads. Many of the vessels and objects have not been published until now; they come from archaeological diggings led by the present author (Băiceni, Bârlad, Bârlălești, Dănești, Grivița-Vaslui, Iași, Pâhnești, etc.), or from the collections of some museums and archaeological institutes in Romania (Bârlad, Botoșani, Focșani, Iași, Tecuci, Vaslui, etc.), the Republic of Moldova (Kishinev/Chișinău), Ukraine (Kiev, Odessa), and Russia (Moscow, Leningrad/Sankt Petersburg). The drawings were done by Waltraud Delibaș, Emilia Drumea and Romeo Ionescu of the Institute of Archaeology in Iași, and by Aneta Corciova of the Department of Archaeology of the “Alexandru

---

<sup>22</sup> V. Spinci, *Realități etnice și politice în Moldova Meridională în secolele X–XIII. Români și turanici* (Iași, 1985).



Ioan Cuza” University of Iași. I owe the computer typeset to Carmen Hrișcu and Mariana Petcu and the illustration scanning to Diana-Măriuca Vornicu of the Department of Archaeology of the “Alexandru Ioan Cuza” University and Cătălin Hriban of the Moldavian Historical Museum of Iași.

My special thanks go to Professor Florin Curta, general editor of the series *East Central and Eastern Europe in the Middle Ages, 450–1450*, to Julian Deahl, senior acquisitions editor, and to Ellen Girmscheid and Marcella Mulder, editors at the prestigious Brill publishing house, for their keen interest in the material of the present book, and for their priceless support to the printing of it.

Iași, April 2008

## CHAPTER ONE

### THE ENVIRONMENT AND ITS RELATION TO THE ANTHROPIC ELEMENT

The reconstruction of the landscape of the southern half of Moldavia at the beginning of the second millennium is of great importance, and should demonstrate the character and extent of the influence of the geographic background on the evolution of human communities. Landscape is a complex body of elements with different structures that have not remained the same through the ages. Of particular interest are the constituent parts of the lithosphere, the hydrosphere, and the biosphere, with which man remains in continuous connection. My view is essentially anthropocentric, and my investigation is particularly focused on the use of the landscape.

At least until the eighteenth century, in the panorama of the eastern Carpathian territories, no structural modifications had appeared in regard to its physical conformation since the dawn of the medieval period. Therefore we consider that in order to shape a comprehensive image of the territory after the beginning of second millennium, one can also resort to the written and the cartographical sources that appeared in subsequent periods, without surpassing, as a rule, the above-mentioned century.

During the last decades, the problems implied by the investigation of the connection between the geographic background and the development of Romanian society have been neglected, to a certain extent. Some historians have gone so far as to completely refuse that a connection exists. Perhaps this nihilism is a reaction to earlier exaggerations by the supporters of vulgar determinism and some excessive trends in geopolitics. Many contemporary scholars consider geopolitics to be discredited as a structural aggregate of epistemological cognition, as a result of Nazi abuse. It would be out of place to analyse here the harmfulness of such irrevocably discredited practices, but we can afford the observation that the repudiation of the pseudo-scientific principles of geopolitics, as well as of their supporters, neither imposes, nor justifies a total rejection of it. Its valid constituent parts cannot be denied just because they were also embraced by the promoters of

fascism (just as nobody would think of excluding Dürer's, Goethe's or Wagner's works from the world's artistic heritage solely due to their names having once been invoked in the service of for exacerbated nationalist propaganda).

The influence of the geographic factor must not be reduced only to biologic, demographic and economic aspects that are reflected (more or less clearly) in social life, and in administrative, military and political organization.<sup>1</sup> A focus on the role of the geographic background in the general evolution of society does not presume joining the geodeterminist theories, but it is justified since, during the last decades, approaches to this problem in the specialized Romanian and east-European literature have not always proven adequate, partially due to their adoption of dogmatic positions that limited the contribution of the geographic background only to the economic sphere.

Generally, there is an idea that the further we move back in time, the greater the dependence of humans upon nature appears to be, and that, through the general evolution of humankind, this dependence gradually decreases. But in fact, what we owe to nature never dwindles. On the contrary, the ever increasing necessities of society, both material and spiritual, make it look for new resources in the environment, its relations with which grow more and more diverse. What can usually be dissociated from the dependence on nature means, in fact, an increase in the possibilities of humankind of using the resources of a certain area, of adapting distinct components of the environment to its own necessities, and of facing natural calamities and cataclysms, due to technical progress and to accumulations of ever deeper knowledge about nature's intimate mechanisms.

In the evaluation of the natural environment in connection with the evolution of society, a range of specific aspects and nuances must be

---

<sup>1</sup> C. Goehrke, "Geographische Grundlagen der russischen Geschichte," *Jahrbücher für Geschichte Osteuropas*, NF, 18 (1970), no. 2, p. 161–204; M. Chisholm, *Research in Human Geography* (London, 1971); K. R. Cox, *Man, Location, and Behavior: An Introduction to Human Geography* (New York–London–Sydney–Toronto, 1972); A. V. Dulov, "Литература о роль географической среды в истории общества," *Вопросы истории* (1973), no. 8, pp. 142–148; B. Butzin, "Elemente eines konfliktorientierten Basisentwurfs zur Geographie des Menschen," in *Kultur-/Sozialgeographie. Beiträge zu ihrer wissenschaftstheoretischen Grundlegung* (Paderborn–Munich–Vienna–Zürich, 1982), pp. 93–124; G. Smith, "Political theory and human geography," in *Human Geography. Society, Space and Social Science*, eds. D. Gregory, R. Martin, and G. Smith (Houndmills–London, 1994), pp. 54–77; D. Gregory, "Social theory and human geography," in *ibidem*, pp. 78–112; V. M. Kruker, J. Rauh, *Arbeitsmethoden der Humangeographie* (Darmstadt, 2005).

taken into consideration. With good reason, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel (1770–1831) said “Nature must be neither overestimated, nor underestimated” (*Die Natur darf nicht zu hoch und nicht zu niedrig angeschlagen werden*),<sup>2</sup> an idea that should be unanimously accepted nowadays.<sup>3</sup> Undoubtedly, human activity is the main factor in the progress of civilization, but, as long as the life of human communities develops within a certain geographic area, it is not inconsequent at all whether or not it disposes of resources, fertility, proper climate, natural protection, or whether it is large enough and has free access to land or waterways. Its evolution can be hastened when there are elements present capable of stimulating the achievements of society. That is why I fully subscribe to the idea that the geographic area is not only a condition for social activities, but also one of their stimuli.<sup>4</sup>

At the same time, I believe it necessary to underline that the profoundly complex relation between humans and nature implies neither temporal nor spatial immovability. The generosity of the environment that appears to be vital at a certain time may become an obstacle for the productive system in the long run. In the same way, the impoverishment of some territories, by determining tenacity and rigidity of occupations of the human communities, proves to be capable of leading them to important progress. In the mid-eighteenth century, Montesquieu, by simplifying and by upholding realities as absolute, concluded that whereas sterility of the soil stimulates diligence and resilience, fertility produces a decrease in vigor.<sup>5</sup> It has also been observed that, as compared to the temperate zones that provide proper conditions for development, the excesses of the warm climate produce a certain inertia and lack of motion; and a too cold climate concentrates, by insidious means, the

---

<sup>2</sup> G. W. Fr. Hegel, *Vorlesungen über die Philosophie der Geschichte*, 3rd ed. K. Hegel (Berlin, 1848), p. 99.

<sup>3</sup> G. Heyden, *Critica geopolitiicii germane* (Bucharest, 1960), pp. 72–74; J. H. G. Lebon, *An Introduction to Human Geography*, 5th ed. (London, 1966), pp. 145–169; T. Herseni, “Sociologie și geografie,” in *Sociologia militans*, V, *Sociologie geografică* (Bucharest, 1972), p. 30; *Nutzung und Veränderung der Natur. Tagungsband anlässlich des III. Geographen-Kongresses der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik 1981 in Leipzig*, ed. H. Richter (Leipzig, 1981), *passim*; I. G. Simmons, *Changing the Face of the Earth. Culture, Environment, History*, 2nd ed. (Oxford–Cambridge, MA, 1996), pp. 2–9; G. Ó. Tuathail and S. Dalby, “Introduction: Rethinking geopolitics: toward a critical geopolitics,” in *Rethinking Geopolitics*, eds. G. Ó. Tuathail and S. Dalby (London–New York, 1998), pp. 1–15.

<sup>4</sup> T. Herseni, *Sociologie. Teoria generală a vieții sociale* (Bucharest, 1982), pp. 544–545.

<sup>5</sup> Montesquieu, *Esprit des lois* (Paris, 1867), p. 234.

vital energy in the efforts for ensuring subsistence.<sup>6</sup> The climate influences some somatic features of the people, including their anatomical structure, but that requires a very long time. There is no direct action of the environment upon the moral nature of the people.<sup>7</sup> If in the past the most elevated achievements of mankind were specific to warm zones of the Orient and the Mediterranean, at the beginning of the modern period the centre of gravity of the civilized world moved to the temperate zones less favoured by nature, but with a population in which hardships had stimulated its inventiveness and diligence. The progress of science and technology partially diminish the importance of primary conditions of the environment, since it opens possibilities of adaptation.

Prosperous territories, rich in all kinds of resources, have always had a high demographic rate. The ill luck of the gifted regions was that, like magnets, they attracted plundering neighbours, who wished to enlarge their own wealth by stealing from others. In exchange, the arid and hardly explored territories were less coveted and enjoyed more peace.

The relation between humans and nature has never had a unique direction, but rather an ambivalent one, in the way that man, in his turn, has acted as a moulding agent upon the lithosphere, the hydrosphere, and especially on the biosphere. In that respect, it has been noted that “by giving life to history on the earth, people also give life to geography.”<sup>8</sup> As a constituent of the biosphere—by representing what is named anthroposphere—humans separate themselves from the other living beings due to their intellect and usage of complex scientific-technical means, so that they master the main modifying potentialities of the planetary cover.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>6</sup> J. Szczepański, *Noțiuni elementare de sociologie* (Bucharest, 1972), p. 37.

<sup>7</sup> L. Fèbvre, *La Terre et l'évolution humaine. Introduction géographique à l'histoire* (Paris, 1938), pp. 125–135; A. V. Perpillou, *Human Geography*, trans. E. D. Laborde (London, 1966), pp. 3–20; Lebon, *An Introduction to Human Geography*, pp. 42–59; M. Sorre, *La fondements biologiques de la géographie humaine. Essai d'une écologie de l'homme* (Paris, 1971), pp. 13–77.

<sup>8</sup> J. Brunhes and C. Vallaux, *La géographie de l'histoire* (Paris, 1921), p. 3.

<sup>9</sup> F. Ratzel, *Anthropogeographie*, I, *Grundzüge der Anwendung der Erdkunde auf die Geschichte*, 4th ed. (Stuttgart, 1921); II, *Die geographische Verbreitung des Menschen*, 3rd ed. (Stuttgart, 1922); P. Vidal de la Blanche, *Principes de géographie humaine*, ed. Emm. de Martonne (Paris, 1922), pp. 12–15 and 108–111; H. Hambloch, *Kulturgeographische Elemente im Ökosystem Mensch-Erde. Eine Einführung unter anthropologischen Aspekten* (Darmstadt, 1933), pp. 96–139; G. East, *Géographie historique de l'Europe*, trans. A. Vaillant (Paris, 1939), pp. 7–11 and 381–388; S. Mehedinți, *Opere complete*, I, 1–2 (Bucharest, 1943); idem, *Opere alese*, ed. V. Mihăilescu (Bucharest, 1967), *passim*; C. O. Sauer, “The agency of man

It is of utmost importance not to produce any disturbances in the natural equilibrium. Because of the interaction between the human communities and the natural-geographic space, the negative effects of any disturbances are to be felt sooner or later, with a reduced or amplified intensity, by the human society as well. As for the necessity of stability in the concord between human activity and nature, “in order that man should be at peace with himself—and with others—he must be first at peace with the Earth.”<sup>10</sup> Along the same lines, but considering other domains, Francis Bacon (1561–1626) stated: “Nature is defeated by obeying it” (*Natura enim non nisi parendo vincitur*).<sup>11</sup> Among the structural elements of the environment a remarkable equilibrium has been established, so that any deterioration within a region or all over the world, suffered by any of the elements, lifeless or alive—because of the permanent interdependence between them—produces chain reactions.<sup>12</sup> An impact of the anthropic factor on the natural environment became obvious beginning with the first stages of civilization.

Before the Middle Ages, or even before the modern times, the relatively low density of the population in the Carpathian-Danubian regions (taking into account the same situation in other regions of the planet) and the limited technical possibilities could not generate widespread disturbance of the environment. This does not mean that the initial landscape did not suffer at all because of the concrete action of humans and of lifeless elements. For certain historical periods, archaeological investigations have revealed a higher rate of population density in the Carpathian-Dniestrian area. Among other things, we can refer to the situation of the second half of the third millennium B.C., in the Late Neolithic of the Cucuteni-Tripolie culture area, and to that of the

---

of the earth,” in *Man's Role in Changing the Face of the Earth*, ed. W. L. Thomas, Jr., with the collab. of C. O. Sauer, M. Bates, L. Mumfort (Chicago–London, 1956), pp. 49–69; P. B. Sears, “The processes of environmental change by man,” in *ibidem*, pp. 471–486; Perpillou, *Human Geography*, pp. 21–32; Sorre, *La fondements biologiques de la géographie humaine*, pp. 121–157; J. Babitz, “Friedrich Ratzel et Paul Vidal de la Blanche. Deux tendances de la géographie humaine moderne,” in *La naissance de la géographie humaine. Friedrich Ratzel et Paul Vidal de la Blanche. Colloque de la Commission d'Histoire de la Pensée Géographique tenu au cours de la Conférence Régionale Européenne de l'UGI à Budapest le 8–9 août 1971* (Budapest, 1974), pp. 1–23.

<sup>10</sup> Ph. Saint Marc, *Progrès ou déclin de l'homme?* (Paris, 1978), p. 282.

<sup>11</sup> Francisci Baconi de Verulamio *Novum Organum. Pars Contemplativa* (Lipsiae, 1840), p. 43.

<sup>12</sup> Al. Roșu, I. Ungureanu, *Geografia mediului înconjurător* (Bucharest, 1977); V. Tufescu, M. Tufescu, *Ecologia și activitatea umană* (Bucharest, 1981); P. Stugren, *Bazele ecologiei generale* (Bucharest, 1982).

third and fourth centuries corresponding to the evolution of Sântana de Mureș-Cherniakhov culture. The discoveries reveal a high rate of density at the end of the Bronze Age (the Noua culture) too, in the Late Hallstatt and in Latène III, with the Thraco-Dacian communities, as well as in the last quarter of the first millennium of the modern era. Human communities seem also to have grouped in the south-western part of Moldavia in the Middle Bronze Age (the Monteoru culture) and in western Moldavia in the second and third centuries (the Carpo-Dacian culture).<sup>13</sup> The ensuring of subsistence for a significant population with rudimentary technical means required extensive tilled land and pasture, damming up of the rivers to create fishing ponds, intense hunting of certain animals for meat and fur, etc. At times, the anthropic impact on the terrestrial environment suffered deteriorations of its constituents, which, without being always doubled by the regen-

---

<sup>13</sup> A. C. Florescu, "Contribuții la cunoașterea culturii Noua," *AM* 2-3 (1964), pp. 143-216; I. Ioniță, "Contribuții cu privire la cultura Sântana de Mureș-Cerneahov pe teritoriul Republicii Socialiste România," *AM* 4 (1966), pp. 189-259; M. Florescu and V. Căpitanu, "Cercetări arheologice de suprafață în județul Bacău," *AM* 6 (1969), pp. 213-275; Zaharia etc., *Așezări, passim*; Gh. Bichir, *Cultura carpică* (Bucharest, 1973); V. I. Markevici, *Памятники эпох неолита и энеолита* (*AKM*, 2) (1973); V. A. Dergacev, *Памятники эпохи бронзы* (*AKM*, 3) (1973); V. I. Lăpușnian, I. T. Niculiță, M. A. Romanovskaia, *Памятники раннего железного века* (*AKM*, 4) (1974); Fedorov, Chebotarenko, *Pamiatniki*; E. A. Rikman, *Памятники сарматов и племен Черняховской культуры* (*AKM*, 5) (1975); Al. Păunescu, P. Șadurschi, V. Chirica, *Repertoriul arheologic al județului Botoșani*, I, II (Bucharest, 1976); Teodor, *Teritoriul*; idem, *Descoperiri arheologice și numismatice la est de Carpați în secolele V-XI d.H. (Contribuții la continuitatea daco-romană și veche românească)* ed. D. Popovici (Bucharest, 1996 [1997]); Coman, *Statornicie*; I. Mitrea, "Regiunea centrală a Moldovei dintre Carpați și Siret în secolele VI-IX e.n.," *Carpica* 12 (1980), pp. 55-190; S. Sanie, *Civilizația romană la est de Carpați și romanitatea pe teritoriul Moldovei (sec. II î.e.n.-III e.n.)* (Iași, 1981); D. Monah, "Cîteva observații asupra cauzelor și efectelor exploziei demografice cucuteniene," *Carpica* 14 (1982), pp. 33-38; D. Monah, Șt. Cucos, *Așezările culturii Cucuteni din România* (Iași, 1985); V. Chirica, M. Tanasachi, *Repertoriul arheologic al județului Iași* (Iași) I (1984); II (1985); V. Mihăilescu-Bîrliba, *Dacia Răsăriteană în secolele VI-I î.e.n. Economie și monedă* (Iași, 1990); A. László, *Începuturile epocii fierului la est de Carpați* (Bucharest, 1994); C.-M. Mantu, *Cultura Cucuteni. Evoluție, cronologie, legături* (Piatra-Neamț, 1998); N. Ursulescu, *Începuturile istoriei pe teritoriul României* (Iași, 1998); Gh. Postică, "Evoluția așezărilor din spațiul pruto-nistean în epoca migrațiilor (sec. V-XIII)," *Thraco-Dacia* 20 (1999), nos. 1-2, pp. 329-364; Gh. Dumitroaia, *Comunități preistorice din nord-estul României. De la cultura Cucuteni până în bronzul mijlociu* (Piatra-Neamț, 2000); M. Andronic, P. V. Batariuc, F. Hău, M. Gogu, B. P. Niculică, I. Mareș, "Noi cercetări arheologice de teren în județul Suceava," *Suceava. Anuarul Complexului Muzeal Bucovina* 29-30 (2002-2003), no. 1, pp. 117-226; I. Hâncu, *Vetru strămoșești din Republica Moldova. Materiale arheologice informativ-didactice* (Chișinău, 2003); M. Andronic, *Teritoriul nord-est-carpatic în a doua jumătate a primului mileniu creștin* (Suceava, 2005); S. Musteață, *Populația spațiului pruto-nistean în secolele VIII-IX* (Chișinău, 2005).

erative processes, suffered changes that were harmful for the natural equilibrium, as recorded even in the early Middle Ages.

\* \* \*

The territory inhabited by Romanians has a well-marked individuality that, on the whole, and in spite of its large variety and complexity, has a remarkable homogeneity and symmetry.<sup>14</sup> Indeed, one may confidently assert that that the unity of the land has much to do with the unity of the Romanian people. The great scholar Simion Mehedinți (1869–1962) justly characterized the Romanian regions as “a classic example of unity in diversity”.<sup>15</sup>

Romania’s diversity results from a combination of all the main forms of relief, whereas its unity is manifest in their proportional and harmonious ordering. The central part of the Romanian territory is a plateau surrounded by a majestic ring-shaped mountain chain—usually compared to a fortress<sup>16</sup>—flanked by hills, which in turn border on a broad strip of plain. The order of the landscape formations creates the impression of concentric circles. From the climatic point of view, the Carpathian-Danubian area is under a triple influence, as manifest especially in the eastern regions of the continent, and less manifest, due to the distance and to the Carpathian chain and other mountains, in the direction of the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea. From the mountain belt there start, like a fan, countless rivers, which segment

<sup>14</sup> Emm. de Martonne, *Europe centrale (Géographie universelle, co-ord. P. Vidal de la Blanche and L. Gallois, IV, 2)* (Paris, 1931), pp. 699–735; V. Mihăilescu, *România. Geografie fizică* (Bucharest, 1936), pp. 22–24; idem, *Geografia fizică a României* (Bucharest, 1969), p. 12; I. Simionescu, *Țara noastră. Natură. Oameni. Muncă* (Bucharest, 1937), pp. 23–26; S. Mehedinți, *Le pays et le peuple roumain* (Bucharest, 1944), pp. 24–30; T. Morariu, “Hipsografia,” in *Monografia geografică a Republicii Populare Române, I, Geografia fizică*, eds. I. P. Gherasimov et al. (Bucharest, 1960), p. 95; V. Tufescu, *România. Natură, om, economie* (Bucharest, 1974), p. 13; idem, “Teritoriul și populația României,” in *Istoria românilor, I, Moștenirea timpurilor îndepărtate*, gen. eds. M. Petrescu-Dîmbovița, Al. Vulpe (Bucharest, 2001), p. 5; Al. Roșu, *Geografia fizică a României*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1980), pp. 16–21; V. Dumitrescu, “România, țară carpatică, dunăreană și pontică,” in *Geografia României, I, Geografia fizică*, co-ord. L. Badea, P. Gâștescu, V. Velcea (Bucharest, 1983), pp. 25–26.

<sup>15</sup> I. Conea, “Simion Mehedinți despre rolul factorului geografic în istoria poporului roman,” in Mehedinți, *Opere alese*, p. 101.

<sup>16</sup> The comparison of the mountains around the Transylvanian Plateau to a fortress is commonly attributed to N. Bălcescu, *Românii supt Mihai-Voievod Viteazul*, ed. A. Rusu (Bucharest, 1967), pp. 221–222, or E. de Martonne, “La Terre roumaine,” in *La Roumanie*, ed. P. Gaultier (Paris, *sine anno*), p. 91. However, the comparison goes back to Sebastian Münster (1489–1552) and Peter Heyns (1537–1598). See M. Popescu-Spineni, *România în izvoare geografice și cartografice* (Bucharest, 1978), pp. 128 and 133.



the relief forms, so that they facilitate transversal and longitudinal circulation. The harmony of the relief is completed by the symmetry of the distribution of vegetation in close connection with the types of soil. The variety of the cover is explained not only by the stratification of the relief, but also by a triple section of geo-botanical areas of the eastern, central and northern parts of the continent, each of them imposing its predominance at certain levels of vegetation. The disagreement in some parts of vegetal formations, forests included, reflects the flexibility of the phenomena that occur in the biosphere.<sup>17</sup> So, there is conspicuous interaction among relief, climate, hydrologic network and the pedologic, vegetable and animal cover. All these elements of the geographic complex, in their turn, induce the spreading, density and mobility of the population, as well as the latter's material and spiritual creations.

The individuality and the homogeneity of the Romanian geographic landscape do not presume a separation of its components from the rest of the European territory. On the contrary, all these constituents systematically gather in more extensive units of the continental landscape, without reproducing, as a whole, the environment composed of relief, climate structure, pedologic and hydrologic ones, etc. of other parts of Europe, but only fragments of them. In this way, the south-eastern Carpathians form only a part of the Alpine-Carpathian-Balkan chain that branches out over a large area of the central and south-eastern Europe. The Moldavian Plateau is continued towards the north east by the Volhyno-Podolian Plateau and the Dnieper Plateau, and the Bugeac and the Romanian Plain represent the western end of the Eurasian steppes. The interference of environmental entities—both inanimate and living—from other parts of the Earth, has left conspicuous marks in the Carpathian-Danubian area.

As part of the Carpathian-Danubian area, Moldavia shares the main characteristics of the whole to which it belongs organically. Moldavia, the region of our focus, has the same complexity, unity and variety shown by the relief configuration itself, ordered in levels that descend, without discordant deviations, from west to east, from the Carpathian summits to the vast Lower Danubian plains and the Pontic shores. The altitude range of the vegetation, the structure of the soils and the atmospheric phenomena—primarily the climate differentiations—closely

---

<sup>17</sup> See footnote 14.

follow the outline of the relief. The main co-ordinates of the geographic medium are, to the largest extent, similar to those of the north-Danubian regions in the neighbourhood.

At the beginning of the climatic subsystem in the southern part of the east-Carpathian area there has been conjugated action of the same factors that shaped the characteristic features of the Romanian climate too: cosmic factors (solar radiation), dynamic factors (atmospheric circulation) and the geographic ones (environment). The general atmospheric evolution in the Carpathian-Danubian regions gave rise to some important differentiations in temperature between the seasons, and to non-periodical variations too, mainly mediated by the Azores and Siberian anticyclones, as well as by the Iceland and Mediterranean Cyclones. By lying in a fully temperate zone, at the junction of some contrastive influences, Moldavia must be included in the category of territories with moderate continental climate, having, at the same time, transitory forms towards an extreme continental climate. Unlike other Romanian regions, Moldavia is not protected by the Carpathians against harsher weather coming from polar regions, or against an excessive continental climate characterized by hot and arid winds in summer, and cold and dry ones in winter. At the same time, the summits of the Carpathians often act as a filter in front of the warm Mediterranean masses of air, or those of the western Atlantic. Without having an important impact upon the climate, the Black Sea acts as a thermal reducer along the strip of the seaside.<sup>18</sup> On its whole, the territory of Moldavia lies within an area with relatively low precipitations, 69 percent of the years being droughty between 1881 and 1961. Nor is the pluviometric compensation regular and immediate.<sup>19</sup>

As the investigations of the last decades have proven, the climate of Europe witnessed certain fluctuations at the end of the first millennium and the beginning of the second one. In the steppes of the southern part

---

<sup>18</sup> Ș. M. Stoenescu, "Date noi referitoare la clima R.P.R.," *Probleme de geografie* 6 (1959), pp. 39–45; idem, "Clima," in *Monografia*, I (see above, n. 14), pp. 257–375; V. Mihăilescu, *Geografia*, pp. 162–175; I. Sîrcu, *Geografia fizică a Republicii Socialiste România* (Bucharest, 1971), pp. 15–47; Roșu, *Geografia* (see above, n. 14), pp. 73–103; M. Schram, "Marea Neagră," in *Geografia României*, I, *Geografia fizică*, pp. 367–369; O. Bogdan, E. Niculescu, "The climate," in *Romania. Space, Society, Environment*, eds. D. Bălțeanu (co-ord.), L. Badea, M. Buza, Gh. Niculescu, C. Popescu, M. Dumitrașcu (Bucharest, 2006), pp. 82–102.

<sup>19</sup> N. Topor, *Ani ploioși și secetoși în Republica Populară Română* (Bucharest, 1963), p. 293.

of Eastern Europe, a long moist period was interrupted by droughty climate in the ninth-tenth centuries.<sup>20</sup> At the same time the level of the Caspian Sea and of some rivers and lakes of the Mediterranean basin rose considerably, bringing about flooding.<sup>21</sup> Also, in the Europe north of the Alps there was a period of moderate winters between 1150 and 1330, interrupted by cold periods in the middle of the twelfth century and the beginning of the following two. From 1240 to 1400, winter precipitations increased in comparison with the previous period. In contrast, the west European summers between 1200 and 1300 were generally dry, unlike the previous and the following periods; they were preceded by warm springs until the fourteenth century, when an evident cooling took place.<sup>22</sup> One can suppose that the evolution of the climate in Carpathian-Danubian space had, mainly, the same features, but there is no certainty in this respect, because of the lack of concrete data.

The entire hydrologic network of Moldavia belongs to the Black Sea basin. With the exception of some small rivers that are tributary to the maritime and Danubian lakes, most water courses run into three main rivers, the Siret, the Prut and the Dniester; the first two flow into the Danube, and the last one into the Black Sea.

The Moldavian flora and fauna structures—evidently influenced by the relief and by the pedologic-climatic conditions—are characterized by variety and regional differentiations. Among the planetary spheres, the one most obviously affected by anthropic modifications was the biosphere, which has undergone substantial changes since the Middle Ages. In the agricultural and animal-breeding activities that developed

---

<sup>20</sup> P. Veres, “Le rôle de facteurs écologiques et économiques dans la conquête du bassin des Carpathes par les Hongrois en 896,” in *Les questions fondamentales du peuplement du bassin des Carpathes du VIII<sup>e</sup> au X<sup>e</sup> siècle*, ed. L. Gerevich (Budapest, 1972), pp. 222–223; idem, “A honfoglaló magyarok életmódjának vitatott kérdései,” in *Honfoglalás és néprajz*, eds. L. Kovács, A. Paládi-Kovács (Budapest, 1997), pp. 109–134.

<sup>21</sup> H. H. Lamb, *Climate, History and the Modern World* (London–New York, 1982), pp. 173–175.

<sup>22</sup> P. Alexandre, *Le climat en Europe au Moyen Age* (Paris, 1987), pp. 806–808. See also E. Le Roy Ladurie, “Aspects historiques de la nouvelle climatologie,” *Revue historique* 85 (1961), 225, no. 1, pp. 8–10; idem, “Le climat des XI<sup>e</sup> et XVI<sup>e</sup> siècles: séries comparées,” *Annales. Économie. Sociétés. Civilisations* 20 (1965), no. 5, pp. 899–922; idem, *Histoire du climat depuis l’an mil* (Paris, 1967), pp. 250–255; B. Brentjens, “Nomadenwanderungen und Klimaschwankungen,” *Central Asiatic Journal* 30 (1986), nos. 1–2, pp. 14–15; M. Pinna, “Il clima nell’alto medioevo. Conoscenze attuali e prospettive di ricerca,” in *L’ambiente vegetale nell’alto medioevo* (Settimane di Studio del Centro Italiano di Studi sull’Alto Medioevo, XXXVII) (Spoleto, 1990), pp. 437–446; J. C. Drăgan, Șt. Airinei, *Geoclimă și istorie* (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 292–297; Ch.-D. Schönwiese, *Klimaänderungen. Daten, Analysen, Prognosen* (Heidelberg, 1995), pp. 81–90.

within the Carpathian-Dniestrian area, especially in the last two or three centuries, the initial flora and fauna have suffered great transformations. In the place of the cultivated and wild original fund, numerous cereals, technical and leguminous plants of American and Asian origins were introduced (maize, rice, sunflower, potatoes, tomatoes, eggplants, tobacco, etc), which now occupy vast areas.

Due to the special place of forests in the history of the Romanians, one must take a closer look at some aspects of this feature. In accordance with the specialists' estimations, forests must have covered about 60 to 70 percent of the territory of ancient Dacia<sup>23</sup> (Fig. 1B). There are many historical references from which the large surface area of forests in the whole of Moldavia can be deduced, up until close to the modern period,<sup>24</sup> an exception being only its southern extremity. The map representations of Moldavia in the eighteenth century, including the ones published by Dimitrie Cantemir,<sup>25</sup> Hora von Oztzellowitz<sup>26</sup> and Friedrich Wilhelm von Bawr,<sup>27</sup> also indicate large forested areas, especially in the northern, western and central regions. The everglades of the main rivers were also dominated by the arborescent vegetation, which was meant to minimize the effects of high floods. The road along the Bârlad Valley, between the cities of Bârlad and Vaslui, crossed

<sup>23</sup> M. David, *Considerațiuni geopolitice asupra statului român* (offprint from *Învățătorul român contemporan și destinul neamului nostru*) (Iași, 1939), pp. 48–49 and fig. 2; E. Pop, *Pădurile și destinul nostru național* (offprint from *Buletinul Comisiunii Monumentelor Naturii* 9 [1941], nos. 1–4) (Bucharest, 1942), pp. 18–20; Tufescu, *România*, p. 234; C. C. Giurescu, *Istoria pădurii românești din cele mai vechi timpuri și pînă astăzi*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1976), p. 11.

<sup>24</sup> *Călători*, I, p. 401 (A. Verancsics); II, p. 641 (B. de Vigenère); III, pp. 200 (*Descrierea anonimă a Moldovei din 1587*), 296, 680 (H. Cavendish); IV, p. 36 (B. Quirini); V, p. 81 (N. Barsi); V. A. Urechia (ed.), *Codex Bandinus. Memoriu asupra scrierii lui Bandinus de la 1646*, in *AARMSI*, Ser. II, 16 (1893–1894), pp. 133 and 309; Marco Bandini, *Codex. Vizitarea generală a tuturor Bisericilor Catolice de rit roman din Provincia Moldova, 1646–1648*, ed. T. Diaconescu (Iași, 2006), pp. 370–371; Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 110–111; Gh. G. Bezviconi, *Călători ruși în Moldova și Muntenia* (Bucharest, 1947), pp. 110 and 172; Giurescu, *Istoria pădurii*, pp. 74–84; V. Băican, *Geografia Moldovei reflectată în documentele cartografice din secolul al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1996), pp. 48–54.

<sup>25</sup> G. Vâlsan, "Harta Moldovei de Dimitrie Cantemir," *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 6 (1927), p. 203 and pl. I; P. P. Panaitescu, "Contribuții la opera geografică a lui Dimitrie Cantemir," *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 8 (1927–28), pp. 181–188; E. D. Tappe, "Another specimen of Dimitrie Cantemir's map of Moldavia," *Revue des études roumaines* 3–4 (1957), p. 220.

<sup>26</sup> N. Docan, "Memoriu despre lucrările cartografice privitoare la războiul din 1787–1791," *AARMSI*, Ser. II, 34 (1911–1912), p. 1281.

<sup>27</sup> A. Năstase, "O hartă a Moldovei din secolul XVIII," *Natura, Seria Geografie-Geologie* 15 (1963), no. 5, p. 38; Băican, *Geografia Moldovei*, pp. 48–52.

beech forests.<sup>28</sup> North of Vaslui the road continued, crossing vast and thick forests, through the village of Scânteia towards the city of Iași.<sup>29</sup> At the same time, there also are reports about forests along the Prut,<sup>30</sup> as well as on those along the road between Roman and Focșani, along the Siret Valley.<sup>31</sup>

Until the beginning of the modern period, deforestations were not extensive, although there were not restrictions in that respect. Forests represented communal ownership, but the members of rural communities could extend their farming land to the detriment of the forests, which was usually done by slash-and-burn. Beginning especially with the eighteenth century, Moldavia's forested areas were subject to vast and irrational deforestation, both during the time of the Turkish trade monopoly imposed on the Romanian Principalities, and after its abolition in 1829, despite some restrictive laws regarding the revaluation of the forestry fund. Still more irresponsible were the actions of the Tsarist administration in the spoliation of the forests in the province of Bessarabia (Basarabia) between 1812 and 1917, when that territory was annexed to Russia.

Romania's forestry fund in 1980 represented 26.6 percent of the total surface of the country (in comparison with the 41.4 percent farming land and 18.8 percent pastures and hayfields).<sup>32</sup> The Romanian mountain ranges are lined by hills. Whereas the Moldavian counties with mountainous and subalpine regions have a high percentage of forests (Suceava—51.7 percent; Neamț—44.3 percent; Bacău—40.1 percent; Vrancea—37.4 percent), in the hilly counties and plain areas, that percentage is much lower (Iași—16.2 percent; Vaslui—12.9 percent; Botoșani—11 percent; Galați—7.8 percent).<sup>33</sup> The regions most affected

<sup>28</sup> *Călători*, V, p. 487 (R. Bargrave); VII, p. 356 (Solia lui I. Gninski); R. G. Boscovich, *Giornale di un viaggio da Constantinopoli in Polonia* (Bassano, 1784), pp. 105–108.

<sup>29</sup> *Călători*, V, pp. 117 (Solia lui Krasinski), 155 (Solia lui W. Miaskowski), 488 (R. Bargrave); VI, pp. 30 (Paul de Alep), 732 (Evlia Çelebi); VII, p. 356 (Solia lui I. Gninski); VIII, p. 189 (Leontic); Boscovich, *Giornale*, pp. 112, 114; Bezviconi, *Călători ruși*, p. 139; D'Hauterive, *Journal inédit d'un voyage de Constantinople à Jassi, capitale de la Moldavie dans l'hiver de 1785*, ed. A. Ubcini, in idem, *Memorii asupra vechii și actuali stări a Moldovei prezentat lui Alexandru Vodă Ipsilante, domnul Moldovei, la 1787* (Bucharest, 1902), pp. 327–328; N. Iorga, *Istoria românilor prin călătorii*, ed. A. Angelescu (Bucharest, 1981), p. 360.

<sup>30</sup> *Călători*, VII, pp. 288–289 (Ph. le Masson du Pont).

<sup>31</sup> *Călători*, VI, pp. 156–157 (Paul de Alep). See also Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 64–65.

<sup>32</sup> *Enciclopedia geografică a României*, ed. G. Posea (Bucharest, 1982), p. 146.

<sup>33</sup> *Pădurile României*, ed. C. Chiriță (Bucharest, 1981), pp. 228–230.

by irrational deforestation were the hilly ones, where forests were cleared to make room for farmland, pastures, orchards and vineyards. On the Tutova Hills, for example, the surface area covered by forests rapidly decreased from 47.37 percent in 1832 to 21.9 percent in 1893. After 1900, deforestation slowed down, so that the forested area still covered 18.8 percent of the region in 1970.<sup>34</sup>

In 1978, afforested areas covered only 278,400 ha of the Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic (the present Republic of Moldova, partially corresponding with the old territory of Bessarabia). That surface represents only 8.2 percent of the republic's territory,<sup>35</sup> and it covers a strip of land on the left of the Dniester, without including the Bugeac (almost totally forestless), and the Hotin region. In 1896 Bessarabia had 276,581 ha of forest, which decreased to 249,356 ha in 1919, a surface of 92,258 ha being deforested between 1873 and 1919 alone. In the southern half of Bessarabia, corresponding to the former counties Chişinău, Tighina, Cetatea Albă, Ismail and Cahul, there was a surface of 108,124 ha in 1919, out of which more than a half was in the Chişinău (Lăpuşna) county.<sup>36</sup> From 1850 to 1901 the forested area was reduced by 59 percent, due to irrational deforestation ordered by Russian governors.<sup>37</sup> After World War I, when Bessarabia was united with Romania, the regression of the forested area was much slower: in 1926 forests covered 235,200 ha, that is 5.4 percent of the whole province—44,422 km<sup>2</sup>—and in 1933 it amounted to 233,095 ha.<sup>38</sup> Bessarabia's southern steppe regions were almost totally devoid of forests; in 1927 they hardly occupied 1 percent of all the territory of the Cetatea Albă and Ismail counties, whereas in the Cahul and Tighina counties they were of about 2 percent and 3 percent, respectively.<sup>39</sup> The above-mentioned data indicate that, in the past, the forested area was much larger and that the mentioned evaluations regarding its size are not exaggerated.

<sup>34</sup> P. Poghirc, *Satul din Colinele Tutovei* (Bucharest, 1972), p. 59.

<sup>35</sup> T. Heideman, V. Chirtoca, in *Enciclopedia sovietică moldovenească*, 8, R.S.S. Moldovenească (Chişinău, 1981), p. 38. See also Iu. P. Kravchuk, "Лесные ресурсы Молдавии, их динамика, состояние, использование," *PGM* 9 (1974), pp. 97–106.

<sup>36</sup> C. Filipescu and E. N. Giurgea, *Basarabia. Considerații generale agricole, economice și statistice* (Chişinău, 1919), pp. 117–120.

<sup>37</sup> N. K. Mogilianskii, *Материалы для географии и статистики Бессарабии* (Kishinev, 1913), p. 118.

<sup>38</sup> *Бессарабия. Военно-географический справочник* (Moscow, 1940), p. 109.

<sup>39</sup> D. A. Sburan, I. C. Demetrescu, and At. Haralamb, *Pădurea și omul* (Bucharest, 1942), p. 87.

The forest, besides its economic significance (as a cardinal constituent of the ecosystem, and as a generator of the favourable facilities) meant an extremely efficient refuge in front of the numerous invasions of the peoples in the neighbourhood. Finding shelter in the forests became a frequent way of defence,<sup>40</sup> beginning especially with the second half of the sixteenth century, at the time of the military weakening of the Moldavian Principality, marked by the Ottoman demand that the country's fortresses be demolished.

In maintaining the continuity of the Romanised population in the Carpathian-Danubian area during the troubled period of the migrations, forests was also came to play an important role. It is significant that some generic terms in Romanian regarding the forest are of Thraco-Dacian origin and that many names of trees and of the constituent parts of a tree are inherited from the Latin.<sup>41</sup> The earlier historiography had given credit to the idea of the inhabitants' refuge in the higher Carpathian regions during the migrations, which seems to be less probable as long as the subsistence possibilities offered by mountains are relatively limited, and the practice of agriculture becomes,

---

<sup>40</sup> *Călători*, III, p. 200 (*Descrierea anonimă a Moldovei din 1587*); IV, pp. 45, 46, 50 (B. Quirini), 351 (J. Wilden), 355 (G. di Nicolo Ragusanul); V, pp. 425, 429 (B. Valentini), 487 (R. Bargrave), 501 (*Activitatea misiunii iezuite din Moldova în anii 1653–1654*); VI, pp. 82, 102–103 (Paul de Alep); VII, pp. 175 (P. Parčević), 388–389 (G. B. Volponi); VIII, pp. 142–143 (Nicolo de Porta); Miron Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei de la Aron vodă încoace*, in idem, *Opere*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1958), p. 133; Nicolae Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei de la zidirea lumii până la 1601 și de la 1709 la 1711 (Opere, I)*, eds. C. A. Stoide and I. Lăzărescu (Iași, 1976), pp. 326 and 338; I. Neculce, *Opere. Letopisețul Țării Moldovei și o samă de cuvinte*, ed. G. Ștrempel (Bucharest, 1982), p. 815; *Cronica Ghiculeștilor. Istoria Moldovei între anii 1695–1754*, eds. N. Camariano and A. Camariano-Cioran (Bucharest, 1965), pp. 94–95, 114–117 and 268–269; N. Muste (attributed to), *Letopisețul Țerei Moldovei*, in *Cronicele României sau letopisețele Moldaviei și Valahiei*, 2nd ed., ed. M. Kogălniceanu, III (Bucharest, 1874), pp. 44 and 49; I. Canta, *Letopisețul Țerei Moldovei*, in *Cronicele României*, p. 193; Pseudo-Enache Kogălniceanu, Ioan Canta, *Cronici moldovenesti*, eds. A. Ilieș and I. Zmeu (Bucharest, 1987), pp. 81 (Pseudo-Enache Kogălniceanu) and 176 (I. Canta); *Documente privitoare la istoria orașului Iași*, VIII, *Acte interne (1781–1790)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2006), no. 461, p. 591; N. I. Antonovici, “Codrii și numele de Prut și Argeș în continuitatea românilor din sud-estul Carpaților,” *BSRRG* 56 (1937), pp. 283–287; Sburlan, Demetrescu and Haralamb, *Pădurea și omul*, pp. 75–78.

<sup>41</sup> C. C. Giurescu, “Termeni de origine daco-getă și latină privind pădurea românească,” in *Sub semnul lui Clio. Omagiu Acad. Prof. Ștefan Pascu* (Cluj, 1974), pp. 105–109; idem, *Istoria pădurii* (see above, n. 23), pp. 21–23 and 27. According to I. I. Russu, *Etnogeneza românilor* (Bucharest, 1981), pp. 268, 278, 280, 281, 294, 321 and 360, the following words are of Geto-Dacian origin: *brad* (fir tree), *bunget* (thicket), *butuc* (tree trunk), *buturugă* (log), *copac* (tree), *gorun* (common oak) and *mugure* (bud). See also Gr. Brâncuș, *Cercetări asupra fondului traco-dac al limbii române* (Bucharest, 1995), p. 22 ff.

partially, ineffective. In exchange, the capacity of the forests in the hill and plain regions to provide food sources, as well as protection, is much higher. The old concept of “refuge in the mountains” should be replaced by “refuge in the forest”.<sup>42</sup> Moldavia’s forests were also used in the Middle Ages as strategic positions to face enemies superior in number and endowment.<sup>43</sup>

In Moldavia’s southern regions, the more clearly outlined geographic elements are placed at the extremities of these regions: the Carpathian arch in the west, and the Danube Delta and the Black Sea coast in the south and the south-east.<sup>44</sup>

\* \* \*

In Simion Mehedinți’s opinion, the destiny of the Romanians is as inseparable from the Carpathian citadel as that of the Egyptians from the Nile Valley, or that of the Italians from their Mediterranean Peninsula. The Carpathians—“the backbone” of the Romanian territory—represented in the great geographer’s conception “the most advanced citadel of Europe in front of the Ponto-Caspian steppe,” because, indeed, from the Urals towards the west, along 2,500 km, no more prominent form of relief is to be found.<sup>45</sup>

The east-Carpathian branch consists of three parallel strips, oriented north-west—south-east. The central part is represented by a crystalline-Mesozoic strip, with the highest altitude in the eastern Carpathians,

<sup>42</sup> Giurescu, *Istoria pădurii*, p. 31; idem, “Pădurea în viața și istoria poporului român,” in *Pădurile României*, p. 15; idem, “Românii în mileniul migrațiilor. Considerații asupra unor aspecte,” in *Discursuri de recepție [Academia Română]*, VII (1974–1976), ed. D. N. Rusu (Bucharest, 2005), pp. 152–155.

<sup>43</sup> Joannis Dlugossi seu Longini *Historiae Polonicae libri XII*, ed. A. Przewdziecki, III (= *Opera omnia*, XII) (Cracow, 1876), pp. 277–278; M. Bielski, *Kronika* (Warsaw, 1764), p. 197; *Cronicle slavo-române din sec. XV–XVI, publicate de Ion Bogdan*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1959), pp. 12, 21, 59, 65, 73, and 181; Gr. Ureche, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1955), pp. 67–68, 104; *Războieni. Cinci sute de ani de la campania din 1476* (Bucharest, 1977), pp. 194, 195, 243, 253, 300, 301, 315, and 337; *Călători*, I, pp. 418–419 (A. Verancsics); II, pp. 621 (A. M. Graziani), 625 (Guagnini-Paszkowski); Miron Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei*, pp. 132 and 193; Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 110–111; Axinte Uricariul, *Cronica paralelă a Țării Românești și a Moldovei*, I, ed. G. Ștrempele (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 7–8, 47–49, and 86–89. See also I. Toderașcu, *Unitatea românească medievală* (Bucharest, 1988), pp. 35–40.

<sup>44</sup> For details on the names, relief, climate, hydrographic system, flora and fauna of southern Moldavia, see V. Spinei, *Realități etnice și politice în Moldova Meridională în secolele X–XIII. Români și turanici* (Iași, 1985), pp. 20–42.

<sup>45</sup> Mehedinți, *Le pays* (see above, n. 14), pp. 5–6.



which marks the borderline separating Moldavian territories from Transylvanian ones.

The depressions and the river valleys occupy considerable surfaces within the Carpathian landscape, and they count among its specific forms. Their importance lies in the fact that, due to more favourable conditions than those in the mountains, they provide facilities for human habitation, while being, at the same time, lines of communication. The depressions usually shelter the so-called *curățuri* (“clearings”), created by deforestations meant to create pasture or tilled land, especially when, because of the pressures of incoming migrants, the inhabitants were forced to retreat from the plain regions.<sup>46</sup>

In spite of the fact that the eastern Carpathians are of average height, to cross them means to face difficulties, because they do not have easily accessible passes; no rivers flow through them crosswise, the way the Olt crosses the southern Carpathians at Turnu Roșu, for example. The links between the slopes of the Carpathians are also difficult due to the fact that the mountains are ordered in parallel ranges and are covered to their summits with thick forests.<sup>47</sup> Some roads that cross the eastern Carpathians now were but simple paths a few centuries ago. But the above-mentioned hardships were not an obstacle in establishing connections between Moldavia and Transylvania. On the contrary, such connections were uninterrupted through the ages. As early as the Neolithic Age, on both sides of the mountains, the same archaeological cultures developed for centuries, which is an indication of ethnic-cultural unity. In this way, the bearers of the Criș culture and of the Linear Pottery culture of the Early Neolithic, those of the Cucuteni-Tripolye culture of the Late Neolithic, and those of the Noua culture of the Late Bronze Age were spread both in Moldavia and in Transylvania. Between the Chalcolithic and the Hallstatt period, numerous kinds of tools, weapons and jewels of copper, bronze, gold and iron, made in intra-Carpathian centres of production, entered Moldavia by intertribal exchanges by way of mountain passes. A remarkable flourishing, as well as a unity, is manifest in the Daco-Getic civilization of the inner- and outer-Carpathian areas.<sup>48</sup>

---

<sup>46</sup> G. Vâlsan, “O fază în popularea țărilor românești,” in idem, *Opere alese*, ed. T. Morariu (Bucharest, 1971), p. 549.

<sup>47</sup> S. Mehedinți and G. Vâlsan, *România* (Bucharest, 1933), pp. 83 and 98.

<sup>48</sup> *Ist. Rom.*, I, *passim*; H. Daicoviciu, *Dacii* (Bucharest, 1965); D. Berciu, *Žorile istoriei în Carpați și la Dunăre* (Bucharest, 1966); S. Morintz, *Contribuții arheologice la istoria tracilor*

After the Roman conquest, between the intra-mountainous territories of the province Dacia and the part of the province Moesia Inferior covering the south of Moldavia and the whole of Dobruđja, permanent links were established, especially through the Oituz Pass. The road starting from the Roman camp and the *castellum* of Galați-Barboși—extending eastward up to Tyras, and towards the south up to the west-Pontic fortresses—followed the Siret Valley up to present-day Poiana, then the Trotuș Valley and the Oituz Valley up to what is now Brețcu, the Transylvanian extremity of the Oituz Pass. Though there are signs of the use of that road before that—by the Dacians themselves, and by the Greek merchants—its military-strategic importance considerably increased during the time of the Roman rule.<sup>49</sup> The relations between the two sides of the eastern Carpathians inhabited by Daco-Roman population were maintained throughout the period of the migrations until the formation of the Romanian people was complete.<sup>50</sup> At the beginning of the nineteenth century, an Armenian scholar keenly pointed out the importance of the mountains and the paths for the Romanians: “For the inhabitants of Wallachia and Moldavia, the Carpathians were good refuge during the wars, because here and there, the mountains as a whole, are inaccessible, having passes in very few places, known only by those familiar with the area.”<sup>51</sup>

Among the trans-Carpathian passes that link southern Moldavia and Transylvania, larger and more accessible was the one along the Oituz Valley, known in the Middle Ages under the name of “the lower road”<sup>52</sup>—as opposed to “the upper road of Suceava”—or as “the Brașov

---

*timpurii*, I (Bucharest, 1978); M. Petrescu-Dîmbovița, *Scurtă istorie a Daciei preromane* (Iași, 1978); V. Dumitrescu, A. Vulpe, *Dakien vor Dromichaites. Abriss der Vor- und Frühgeschichte Rumäniens* (Bucharest, 1988); Ūrsulescu, *Începuturile istoriei* (see above, n. 13), *passim*. See also I. Șandru, “Rolul pasurilor și trecătorilor carpatice în mobilitatea populației,” *ASUI*, Sect. II, b. *Geologie-geografie* 20 (1974), pp. 83–92; I. Ioniță, “Les Carpates pendant la préhistoire et la protohistoire: une barrière entre l’Occident et l’Orient de l’Europe?,” in *Famille, violence et christianisation au Moyen Âge. Mélanges offerts à Michel Rouche*, eds. M. Aurell and Th. Deswarte (Paris, 2005), pp. 283–298.

<sup>49</sup> V. Pârvan, “Castrul de la Poiana și drumul roman prin Moldova de Jos,” *AARMSI*, Ser. II, 36 (1913), no. 4, pp. 119–120; idem, *Începuturile vieții romane la gurile Dunării*, ed. R. Vulpe (Bucharest, 1974), pp. 50–51.

<sup>50</sup> L. Bârzu, *Der Fortbestand der Rumänen im ehemaligen Dazien* (Bucharest, 1981); D. Gh. Teodor, *Romanitatea carpato-dunăreană și Bizanțul în veacurile V–XI e.n.* (Iași, 1981).

<sup>51</sup> H. Inghigian, *Valahia și Moldova*, ed. H. Dj. Sirouni, *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 9 (1928–29), p. 265.

<sup>52</sup> *Cronica lui Macarie*, in *Cronicile slavo-române* (see above, n. 43), pp. 82, 96.

road”.<sup>53</sup> The pass was an important trade road, as well as a strategic one; it was through it that armies such as those of Matthias I Corvinus, Petru Rareș, Mihai Viteazul (Michael the Brave) and of other voivodes and commanders passed.<sup>54</sup> Generally, the travellers and the medieval chronicles qualify the Oituz Pass as difficult. Georg Reicherstorffer wrote, in the second quarter of the sixteenth century, that it is “a very difficult road, stony and so narrow that only one cart can hardly advance along it”;<sup>55</sup> the information was confirmed by his contemporary, Anton Verancsics, who wrote that the pass was “full of dangers,” with “very steep slopes covered with very thick and large forests”.<sup>56</sup> In the same way the difficulties of crossing the Oituz Pass are described in other accounts of the sixteenth-eighteenth centuries.<sup>57</sup> The heavy use of the road necessitated maintenance, especially the removal of broken rocks and of fallen tree trunks.<sup>58</sup>

Besides the road axis of the Oituz, there were numerous other roads that penetrated the eastern Carpathians, but they were much less favourable. In the first half of the second millennium, it is probable that those roads of southern Moldavia were but simple paths that could not be used by carts. One could go on foot or on horseback, and shepherds could also move their sheep to the alpine pastures. South of the Bistrița (a river which runs out of the mountains, and which, together with its tributaries, constituted an important means of communication with

<sup>53</sup> *Cronica* lui Eftimie, in *Cronicile slavo-române*, pp. 109, 117; Gr. Ureche, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 43), p. 139; Axinte Uricariul, *Cronica paralelă*, I (see above, n. 43), p. 150.

<sup>54</sup> Gr. Ureche, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei*, p. 153; Miron Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 40), pp. 145, 147, 183; I. Neculce, *Opere. Letopisețul Țării Moldovei și o samă de cuvinte* (see above, n. 40), pp. 273, 327, 376, 781, 787, and 837; Acșinti Uricariul, *A doua domnie a lui Neculai Alecsandru Mavrocordat VV în Moldova*, in *Cronicele României*, II (Bucharest 1872), p. 166; Muste (attributed to), *Letopisețul Țerei Moldovei* (see above, n. 40), III, pp. 21, 67; *Cronica anonimă a Țerei Moldovei*, trans. Al. Amiras, in *Cronicele României*, III, p. 107; N. Chiparissa, *Cronicul*, in *Cronicarii greci care au scris despre români în epoca fanariotă*, ed. C. Erbiceanu (Bucharest, 1888), pp. 76 and 83; *Cronica Ghiculeștilor* (see above, n. 40), pp. 398–401. See also P. Binder, “Drumurile și plaiurile Țării Birsei,” *SAI* 14 (1969), p. 209.

<sup>55</sup> Georgii a Reichersdorff, Transilvani, *Chorographia Moldaviae, recognita et emendata*, in *Scriptores rerum Hungaricarum*, ed. J. G. Schwandtner, III (Vindobonae, 1768), pp. 105 and 110.

<sup>56</sup> *Călători*, I, pp. 420–421 (A. Verancsics).

<sup>57</sup> *Călători*, III, pp. 212 (I. C. Decsi de Barania), 580 (*Darea de seamă a venirii celor “O sută de toșcani” în Transilvania și Țara Românească*, 1595); IV, p. 218 (S. Zolkiewski); V, p. 592 (C. I. Hildebrandt); VIII, pp. 324–325 (E. H. Schneider von Weismantel); X, 2, p. 957 (F. Pizzagalli).

<sup>58</sup> Hurmuzaki, II, 1, p. 231; II, 4, pp. 286 and 308.

northern Transylvania), there were more roads and lower mountainous regions covered with pastures.<sup>59</sup> Along the Bicaz no one could cross because of the steep narrow pass, so roundabout paths were used instead. Of much more importance was the road through the Ghimeş Pass that connected the Trotuş Valley and the Olt Valley, between the depressions of Dărmăneşti and Ciuc. In the middle of the seventeenth century the Ghimeş Pass, also called “the pass of the Szeklers,” could be crossed on horseback, despite its narrowness.<sup>60</sup> From the following century we have some map representations of that pass as well as of the Oituz one.<sup>61</sup> The broad valley of the Trotuş favoured the trade between medieval Moldavia and the Szekler settlements, being also used as a point of entry into Transylvania for Tatar raiding parties from the Bugeac. In the Middle Ages, besides the main roads with Moldavian customs at Prisăcani, Bicaz, Comăneşti and Oituz, numerous paths and flat mountainous regions were also used, with no less than eight lateral paths being recorded in the Ghimeş region at the beginning of the nineteenth century.<sup>62</sup> At the beginning of the twentieth century, in order to cross to Moldavia through Vrancea, the transhumant Transylvanian shepherds used three main roads. To those, a few minor ways of communication could be added.<sup>63</sup> Undoubtedly, many of them had been used long before, for hundreds or even thousands of years. Some older roads and paths may have been given up as well, for various reasons, in favour of others that were subsequently opened.

Like other Carpathian regions, the eastern range has a large variety of terms (e.g., *trecătoare* [pass] or *şea* [saddle]) created by a population speaking Romanian.<sup>64</sup> In the course of time, the importance of those passes rested not only in their role as a mediator of interethnic relations,

---

<sup>59</sup> I. Ionescu-Bregoveanu, “Considerații generale asupra teritoriului și economiei zonei Bicaz,” in *Etnografia văii Bistriței. Zona Bicaz*, gen. ed. R. Vuia (Piatra Neamț, 1973), pp. 71–72.

<sup>60</sup> *Călători*, V, p. 602 (C. I. Hildebrandt).

<sup>61</sup> Docan, “Memorii despre lucrările cartografice” (see above, n. 26), pp. 1328 and 1340; I.-I. Bidian, “Hărțile medievale despre țările române păstrate la Biblioteca Institutului român din Freiburg-Germania,” *BBR*, SN, 8 (12) (1980–81), pp. 359–360.

<sup>62</sup> P. Binder, “Drumurile și plaiurile Carpaților Orientali,” *SAI* 20 (1972), pp. 73–74.

<sup>63</sup> N. A. Rădulescu, *Vrancea. Geografie fizică și umană* (Bucharest, 1937), pp. 112–113; C. Constantinescu-Mircești, *Vrancea arhaică. Evoluția și problemele ei* (Bucharest, 1985), pp. 117–121; A. Paragină, *Habitatul medieval la Curbura exteroară a Carpaților în secolele X–XV* (Brăila, 2002), pp. 61–68.

<sup>64</sup> E. Petrovici, “Nume românești de trecători peste culmi,” in idem, *Studii de dialectologie și toponimie* (Bucharest, 1970), pp. 264–274.

but also in the shelter they offered, as well as in facilitating the traffic of goods from one side of the Carpathian Mountains to the other. The data briefly presented above supports the assertion that the east-Carpathian branch has never separated the population on one side from that of the other side.

One level below the Carpathians towards the east is the subunit of relief known as sub-Carpathians. The term has been applied to a relatively compact area of higher, hilly country. Although its altitude is generally higher than that of common hills, the relief does not always mark it as distinct from lower hilly regions, the differences being visible mainly in the petrographic structure.

Neighbouring the sub-Carpathians to the east, the Moldavian Plateau is the largest relief unit of the entire Romanian Carpathian-Dniestrian territory. Despite that, its landscape is far from uniform, in regard to both the relief proper, and the bio-pedo-climatic register. In the Ukrainian territories, north-east of the Dniester, the Moldavian hilly forms come after the Volhyno-Podolian Plateau between the Dniester and the Bug, and after the Dnieper Plateau, between the Bug and the Dnieper.

The hydrographic systems of the Siret, the Prut and the Dniester drain almost the whole surface of the Moldavian Plateau. Their lengths are of 686 km, 967 km and 1,352 km, respectively, and the surface of the basins of 44,811 km<sup>2</sup>, 28,396 km<sup>2</sup> and 72,100 km<sup>2</sup>, respectively. As all the main tributaries of the Prut rise in the plateau and plain regions and are supplied by snow-thawing and incidental rains, the river's average yearly discharge is of only 110 m<sup>3</sup>/s, being much more reduced than that of the Siret (230 m<sup>3</sup>/s), which is shorter but collects its main tributaries from the mountains. Their liquid flow values are big in spring and summer, and considerably diminishes in the other seasons.<sup>65</sup> Although the solid flow recorded along the Prut in certain periods reaches high enough values, the drinkable qualities of that river's water, often remarked upon in the past, seem not to be affected.<sup>66</sup>

<sup>65</sup> V. Slastikhin, in *Enciclopedia sovietică* (see above, n. 35), pp. 30–32; *Enciclopedia geografică* (see above, n. 32), pp. 57 and 59; P. Gâstescu, I. Zăvoianu, B. Driga, D. Ciupitu, I.-J. Drăgoi, "Waters," in *Romania. Space, Society* (see above, n. 18), pp. 103–111.

<sup>66</sup> *Kurtze Beschreibung von denen moldauischen Ländern*, in N. Iorga, "O nouă descriere a Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea de un suedez," *Revista istorică* 16 (1930), nos. 1–2, pp. 12–13; G. Cristea, *Regi și diplomați suedezi în spațiul românesc (Secolele XVII–XX)* (Cluj-Napoca, 2007), pp. 106 and 115 (E. H. Weismantell); Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 64–65; Inghian, *Valahia* (see above, n. 51), p. 267; A. de Demidoff, *Voyage dans la Russie Méridionale*

The Dniester, which makes the border of Moldavia in the east, represents an outstanding, well individualized boundary.<sup>67</sup> In ancient times its stream separated Dacia from Sarmatia,<sup>68</sup> and in the Middle Ages and the modern period it separated the Romanians in Moldavia from the Golden Horde, Lithuania, Poland, Ukraine and Russia, respectively. Its waters have cut its bed in the hard rock, and the steep rocky banks made the chronicler Miron Costin state that the Dniester “flows among naturally sculptured rocks, as if they were carved by man”.<sup>69</sup> Upstream of Tighina (Bender) its medium width is about 200–300 m, varying in some portions between 100 m and 500 m, and its depth between 2 m and 20 m. Between Tighina and the sea the river bed narrows to 65–85 m, but the width grows along limited lengths up to almost 200 m. In several places there were more fords that would have been good for carts.<sup>70</sup> Across one of those fords the famous surprise attack of the Huns against the positions of Athanaric’s Visigoths took place in 376.<sup>71</sup>

The crossing of the Dniester becomes possible in winter when the river water freezes. The running of the Dniester’s water is not uniformly proportioned; in spring and in summer about 44.4 and 25.5 percent of the whole was recorded, and in autumn and in winter only 16.0 and 14.1 percent.<sup>72</sup> The shallower parts of the course of the Dniester are obstacles for navigation, and the information before the eighteenth century is contradictory in regard to naval transport.

---

*et la Crimée par la Hongrie, la Valachie et la Moldavie exécuté en 1837* (Paris, 1841), p. 253; *Prin Țările Române. Călători străini din secolul al XIX-lea*, ed. S. Vărzaru (Bucharest, 1984), p. 44 (D. Sestini).

<sup>67</sup> A. Babel, *La Bessarabie. Étude historique, ethnographique et économique* (Paris, 1926), pp. 15 and 21.

<sup>68</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 538–541 (Ptolemy); Moïse de Corène, *Géographie d’après Ptolémée*, ed. A. Soukry (Venice, 1881), p. 19; Ananias of Širak, *The Geography (Ašxarhac’oyc’)*. *The Long and the Short Recensions*, ed. R. H. Hewsen (Wiesbaden, 1992), p. 48.

<sup>69</sup> Miron Costin, *Istorie în versuri polone despre Moldova și Țara Românească (Poema polonă)*, in idem, *Opere* (see above, n. 40), p. 230.

<sup>70</sup> *Бессарабия* (see above, n. 38), pp. 22–25.

<sup>71</sup> Ammiani Marcellini *Rerum gestarum libri qui supersunt*, ed. W. Seyfarth, II (Leipzig, 1978), p. 167. See also O. J. Maenchen-Helfen, *The World of the Huns. Studies in Their History and Culture*, ed. M. Knight (Berkeley–Los Angeles–London, 1973), pp. 26–28; H. Wolfram, *History of the Goths*, trans. Th. J. Dunlap (Berkeley–Los Angeles–London, 1990), pp. 70–71; S. Krautschick, “Hunnensturm und Germanenflut. 375—Der Beginn der Völkerwanderung?,” *BZ* 92 (1999), no. 1, p. 10 ff.

<sup>72</sup> Slastikhin, in *Enciclopedia sovietică*, p. 32.

Some Greek authors, such as Pseudo-Scymnos<sup>73</sup> and Strabo,<sup>74</sup> as well as Georg Reicherstorffer,<sup>75</sup> Anton Verancsics (Antonio Verantio)<sup>76</sup> and Dimitrie Cantemir,<sup>77</sup> asserted that the Dniester—known as Tyras in antiquity—was a navigable river, which was contradicted by a French report in 1712<sup>78</sup> and by other sources.<sup>79</sup> In fact, the disagreement among these sources is due to the fact that in some cases the lower river that was navigable was taken into consideration, whereas the upper river was not navigable. The oldest known project of improving the Dniester navigation was ordered by the Polish crown; it dates from 1568, and was commissioned to a Florentine.<sup>80</sup>

The river freeze, which usually lasts from December until February or March, affects the whole hydrologic network of Moldavia, the duration and the forms of manifestation alternating in accordance with the climate. In mild winters there may be no ice bridge or the ice is very thin for short periods of time, and only over limited surfaces. When there was an ice bridge, the rivers could be easily crossed on horseback or by sledge. Sometimes Moldavia's enemies waited for the rivers to freeze in order to start their attacks.<sup>81</sup> Besides rivers and underground waters, the plateau and hilly territories have numerous lakes and ponds. Their large number and the abundance of fish were seldom noticed in the documents of the Moldavian administration and in the notes of the foreign travellers of the fifteenth to seventeenth centuries.<sup>82</sup> The fate of

<sup>73</sup> *Géographes grecs*, I, *Introduction générale*. Ps.-Scymnos: *Circuit de la Terre*, ed. and trans. D. Marcotte (Paris, 2000), p. 137. See also Anonymi [Scymni Chii, ut fertur], *Orbis descriptio*, in *Geographi Graeci minores*, I, ed. C. Müllerus (Paris, 1855; reprint Hildesheim, 1965), p. 229; *Périple du Pont-Euxin d'un auteur inconnu (qui l'on avait attribué à Arrien)*, in A. Baschmakoff, *La synthèse des périples pontiques. Méthode de précision en paléo-ethnologie* (Paris, 1948), pp. 150–151; F. A. Ukert, *Skythien und das Land der Geten oder Daker* (Weimar, 1846), p. 185.

<sup>74</sup> *The Geography of Strabo*, III, ed. and trans. H. L. Jones (Cambridge, Mass.–London, 1967), pp. 218–219.

<sup>75</sup> Georgii a Reichersdorff, *Transilvani, Chorographia Moldaviae* (see above, n. 55), p. 105.

<sup>76</sup> Ant[onius] Verantius, *De situ Transylvaniae, Moldaviae, & Transalpinae, Fragmentum. Farrago indigesta*, in *Scriptores rerum Hungaricarum minores*, II, ed. M. G. Kovachich (Budae, 1798), p. 93.

<sup>77</sup> Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 64–65.

<sup>78</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, suppl. I, p. 424.

<sup>79</sup> *Călători*, VIII, p. 287 (M. Eneman).

<sup>80</sup> N. Iorga, *Acte și fragmente cu privire la istoria românilor*, I (Bucharest, 1895), p. 14; *Călători*, II, p. 631 (G. Ruggiero).

<sup>81</sup> Hurmuzaki, II, 3, pp. 1–2; *Cronica Ghiculeștilor* (see above, n. 40), pp. 272–273.

<sup>82</sup> Georgii a Reichersdorff, *Transilvani, Chorographia Moldaviae*, p. 111; *Călători*, I, pp. 192, 202 (G. Reicherstorffer); III, p. 181 (François de Pavie); V, p. 276 (P. Beke);

those water-bodies was also to correct, to a certain extent, the inconstant character of the liquid flow, by holding back the floodwater.

In the hilly areas there is alternation of forest and forest-steppe (Fig. 1B), within which central-European plants and trees intermix with east-European ones. The extension of tillage and deforestation substantially limited wild flora, a fact that partially accounts for the extension, during the last centuries, of steppe to the detriment of forest, against a background of slight aridity. Conversely, in some postglacial periods, forested areas tended to extend towards the steppe, whose area thus decreased.

On the lowest altimeter level of the Carpathian-Dniestrian relief there is a strip of plains, of variable width, north of the Danube and the Black Sea; this strip is bordered by the hills, the sub-Carpathians and the Lower Dniester. The south of Moldavia's flat regions divide into two distinct parts: the Romanian Plain, between the sub-Carpathians and the Prut, and the Bugeac Plain, or the Bessarabian Plain (included in the North-West-Pontic Plain), between the Prut and the Dniester. The Moldavian strip of the Romanian Plain is a low area, easily flooded in places. Seen from the Danube everglades, which it dominates in height, the edges of the plain look like a plateau, even if they are lower than the right bank of the river.

The Bugeac Plain (as part of the North-West-Pontic Plain) reaches 200 m in altitude, going down towards the sea-coast; some geographers have considered it to be a plateau. Delimited towards the Cogâlnic Platform by the alignment marked by the localities Văleni, Căușani and Purcari, the Bugeac looks like a region of broad hillocks with even ridges and north-to-south inclinations, crossed by parallel longitudinal valleys, wide and deep, at long distances from one other. Some of the wider valleys end in prolonged depressions that open in Danubian and maritime shores. In the seventeenth century, around Akkerman (Cetatea Albă), Evlia Çelebi noted vast sand dunes,<sup>83</sup> which in the meantime have become stabilized and cultivated.

The lowest plain regions lie about the Danube Delta, a unique territory of the European landscape. The Delta begins at the bifurcation

---

Bezviconi, *Călători ruși* (see above, n. 24), p. 110; V. Neamțu, "Exploatarea peștelui în Moldova în secolul al XV-lea," *Studii și cercetări științifice, Istorie*, Iași, 6 (1955), nos. 1-2, pp. 29-49; C. C. Giurescu, *Istoria pescuitului și a pisciculturii în România*, I (Bucharest, 1964), pp. 76-82 and 251-255.

<sup>83</sup> *Călători*, VI, p. 412.



of the Danube into the arms of Chilia and Tulcea, respectively, the latter being also known as Ceatalul Ismail (the term *çatal* meaning “bifurcation” in Turkish);<sup>84</sup> it ends where the river waters flow into the sea. The Danube Delta represents a young unit of relief, which is still in the making, by the joint action of river and sea, plus the contributions of wind and flora. That is why it is difficult to determine its real image at the beginning of the Middle Ages, to say nothing about earlier times. It has been estimated that the Danube yearly removes 67.5 million tons of solid materials, which are deposited along the banks or poured into the sea, so that the land advances by a few meters every year, especially on the Chilia arm. The vast spring flows, due to which only some higher fluvial, maritime or continental banks remain out of water, make permanent habitation in the Delta difficult. In spite of this, the endless possibilities of fishing and of hunting different species of birds, as well as the good facilities for sheep to spend the winter, were factors that attracted man to the Danube Delta.

In the south, along ca. 160 km of Moldavia’s border is the most important fluvial thoroughfare of Europe, the Danube, which dominates the whole Romanian hydrologic network and, at the same time, absorbs it almost entirely. From the junction with the Siret up to the Delta, the Danube is, on an average, 500–600 m wide and 6–7.5 m deep, on short distances being 25–34 m deep. The width of the Chilia arm varies between 220 and 500 m.<sup>85</sup> Navigation was possible even for big crafts along its whole lower course, so that the river waters were steadily crossed by ships of fishermen or of merchants, as well as by military fleets. Dangerous enough obstacles for navigation were the alluvial sand banks deposited at the river mouths, where ships of less skilful sailors and of those who did not know the places often got stranded. Such difficulties were mentioned even by Polybius<sup>86</sup> and by Strabo,<sup>87</sup>

<sup>84</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 283 (Paul de Alep).

<sup>85</sup> I. T. Vidraşcu, “Lunca Dunării și regimul apelor ei,” *BSRRG* 36 (1915), pp. 131–163; G. Vâlsan, “Dunărea,” *BSRRG* 54 (1935), pp. 38–55; Simionescu, *Țara noastră* (see above, n. 14), pp. 193–197; Sîrcu, *Geografia*, pp. 54–57; I. Ujvári, *Geografia apelor României* (Bucharest, 1972), pp. 177–225.

<sup>86</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 160–163 (Polibius).

<sup>87</sup> *The Geography of Strabo*, III, pp. 216–219. When Ammianus Marcellinus, I (see above, n. 71), p. 269, referred to the rivers flowing into Pontus Euxinus making sand banks, he also took into account the Danube.

as well as by various travellers in the Middle Ages.<sup>88</sup> Herodotus<sup>89</sup> and Pseudo-Scymnos<sup>90</sup> information about the constancy of the Danube's flow in all seasons was certainly inexact.

Downstream of Siliștra—where its waters bifurcate and form the Ialomița marshes, and then, after joining again at Vadul Oii, the Brăila marshes—up to its flowing into the sea, the Danube is difficult to cross not only because of its width and of repeated high floods, but also as a result of the fact that the river divides into two or three arms lined by numerous lakes, backwaters and swamps. Along its course, the everglades are rich vegetation consisting of willows, poplars, common reed and mace reed. The crossing of the Danube is easy in the cold winter months, a fact known to nomadic peoples of the steppes north of the Black Sea, who organized raids into the Balkan Peninsula. A majority (78 percent) of the analysed samples from the lower river, stretching over 100 years, indicate the formation of a thick ice-bed lasting for about 49 days.<sup>91</sup> Even Aristotle and Claudius Aelianus knew that the Danube froze in the winter and that it could be crossed on horseback or by carts.<sup>92</sup> The Byzantine historians narrated that during the war with the Pechenegs in the middle of the eleventh century, the Danube's waters froze for 15 cubits.<sup>93</sup>

Because of hard frost, navigation was interrupted in late autumn. We know, for example, that, in order not to be caught by the ice sheet, the Burgundian fleet under Walerand of Wavrin's command, retreated towards Constantinople; they raised anchor near Nicopolis at the beginning of October 1445 and cast it in the Bosphorus' waters about a month later.<sup>94</sup> In years with normal temperatures, ships could freely navigate later in the cold season. A notary document written at Chilia on October 18, 1360, showed the imminent departure of a

---

<sup>88</sup> *Călători*, II, p. 526 (G. Mancinelli); P. P. Panaitescu, *Călători poloni în Țările Române* (Bucharest, 1930), p. 212.

<sup>89</sup> Herodotus, II, *Books III and IV*, trans. A. D. Godley (Cambridge, Mass.—London, 1982), pp. 250–251.

<sup>90</sup> *Géographes grecs*, I, *Introduction générale*. Ps.-Scymnos: *Circuit*, p. 136. See also *Périples du Pont-Euxin d'un auteur inconnu* (see above, n. 73), pp. 152–153.

<sup>91</sup> Ujvári, *Geografia*, pp. 221–222.

<sup>92</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 112–113 (Aristotel), 650–651 (Claudius Aelianus).

<sup>93</sup> Skylitzes, p. 458; Kedrenos, II, p. 585.

<sup>94</sup> Jehan de Wavrin, *Anciennes croniques d'Engleterre*, II, ed. [E.] Dupont (Paris, 1859), p. 158.

Genoese ship from that town upstream to Vicina, from where it was to sail back to Pera.<sup>95</sup>

In the other seasons the only good point for crossing between the Bugeac and the Dobruđja was near Isaccea (Tulcea county). According to Heroditus' information, Darius' attack against the Scythians appears to have taken place on a bridge where the Danube divides into its arms.<sup>96</sup> That bridge must have been built near the place where Isaccea lies today. The distinct strategic character of the Dobruđjan locality is also suggested by the fact that the Romans built an important fortress there, *Noviodunum*, where the Danubian military fleet established its base, *classis Flavia Moesica*.<sup>97</sup> In the same place, at *Noviodunum*, Valens ordered a floating bridge to be built, in order to lead his army against the Ostrogoths and Athanaric's Visigoths in 369.<sup>98</sup> The fortress regained its importance after the incorporation of the first Bulgarian Tsardom within the Byzantine Empire and again during Mongol rule. By the close of the thirteenth century, Saqđja (Isaccea) was to become a residence for the powerful emir Nogai, and then, after his fall from power, for Tükäl Buga, the son of Toqtaı Khan;<sup>99</sup> it was from there that they could efficiently control the Golden Horde's lands on the Lower Danube. The Ottomans would also pay much attention to Isaccea. The sixteenth-century chronicler Mustafā Gelalzade indicated it as the most propitious place for crossing to the north of the Lower Danube,<sup>100</sup> a fact that was also confirmed by Kiatip Çelebi (1609–1657).<sup>101</sup> The crossing of the Danube near Isaccea (also called Oblucița) by travellers, missionaries,

<sup>95</sup> M. Balard, *Gènes et l'Outre-mer*, II, *Actes de Kilia du notaire Antonio di Ponzò (1360)* (Paris-The Hague-New York, 1980), pp. 155–159. See also P. S. Năsturel, "Mais où donc localiser Vicina?," *Byzantinische Forschungen* 12 (1987), pp. 159–164.

<sup>96</sup> Herodotus, II, pp. 290–293.

<sup>97</sup> R. Vulpe, "Perioada Principatului (Sec. I–III)," in *DIĐ*, II, pp. 61, 122, and 193; A. Suceveanu, A. Barnea, *La Dobroudja romaine*, trans. M. Plătăreanu (Bucharest, 1991), pp. 28–29, 47–49, and 67; O. Bounegru, *Trafiquants et navigateurs sur le Bas Danube et dans le Pont Gauche à l'époque romaine* (Wiesbaden, 2006), pp. 29–30 and 109.

<sup>98</sup> Ammianus Marcellinus, II (see above, n. 71), p. 40.

<sup>99</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, pp. 117 (Baibars), 161 (an-Nuwairi). See also Spinci, *Moldova*, p. 172; E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, "Documente numismatice privind relațiile spațiului est-carpatic cu zona Gurilor Dunării în secolele XIII–XIV," *AIIA* 22 (1985), no. 2, pp. 585–590; idem, "Începuturile prezenței tătarilor în zona Gurilor Dunării în lumina documentelor numismatice," in *Originea tătarilor. Locul lor în România și în lumea turcă*, ed. T. Gemil (Bucharest, 1997), pp. 111–120 and 123–128.

<sup>100</sup> *Cronici turcești privind Țările Române. Extrase*, I, eds. M. Guboglu and M. Mehmet (Bucharest, 1966), p. 264.

<sup>101</sup> *Cronici turcești privind Țările Române. Extrase*, II, ed. M. Guboglu (Bucharest, 1974), p. 113.

or armies, by common boats, floating bridges or even on ice, was often mentioned in the sixteenth to eighteenth centuries.<sup>102</sup> Another place for crossing the Danube between Moldavia and Dobruđja, often used during the medieval period, especially after the building of the Ismail *raia*, was the crossing point near the port of Galați, which provided a link with the road to Măcin.<sup>103</sup>

Information on the remarkable richness in fish of the Lower Danube, including the low prices at which sturgeon and other fishes could be bought, often appears in the notes of the travellers who went along the Moldavian bank of the river in sixteenth-eighteenth centuries.<sup>104</sup>

The whole plain between the Prut and the Dniester is divided by a range of lakes with two distinct groups: the Danubian lakes and the

---

<sup>102</sup> Hurmuzaki, II, 4, pp. 150, 152; *Cronici turcești*, I, pp. 225 (Nasuh Matraki), 254 (Rustem-Pașa), 264, 271 (Mustafa Ğelalzade), 325 (Sa'adeddin Mehmed), 355 (Mustafa Ali), 523 (Ibrahim Pecevi), 556 (Kara-Celebi-Zade Abdul-Aziz efendi); II, pp. 77, 113 (Kiatip Celebi), 163 (Solakzade Mehmed Hemdemi); *Călători*, I, p. 384 (*Itinerar turc*); II, p. 515 (J. Newberie); III, p. 354 (T. Korobeinikov); IV, p. 89 (J. v. d. Does); V, p. 411 (A. Suhanov); VI, pp. 283 (Paul de Alep), 489 (Evlia Celebi); VII, pp. 249, 481 (Secretarul de la Croix), 359, 364 (Solia lui I. Gninski), 517 (G. Levasseur de Beauplan); VIII, pp. 410 (Frederic-Ernest de Fabrice), 516, 525 (Aubry de la Motraye), 543 (J. Jeffries), 639 (C. E. Rönne); Iorga, *Acte și fragmente*, I (see above, n. 80), p. 93; Bezviconi, *Călători ruși* (see above, n. 24), p. 63; Nicolae Costin, *Letopiseșul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 40), p. 337; Acsinti Uricariul, *A doua domnie* (see above, n. 54), p. 125; Muste (attributed to), *Letopiseșul Țerei Moldovei* (see above, n. 40), pp. 7–11; I. Neculce, *Opere. Letopiseșul Țării Moldovei și o samă de cuvinte* (see above, n. 40), pp. 214 and 220; *Cronica Ghiculeștilor* (see above, n. 40), pp. 80–81 and 382–385; D. Cantemir, *Viața lui Constantin Cantemir zis cel Bătrîn, domnul Moldovei* (Bucharest, 1960), p. 43; Pseudo-Enache Kogălniceanu, Ioan Canta, *Cronici* (see above, n. 40), pp. 5 and 137.

<sup>103</sup> *Călători*, IV, pp. 347 (Simeon Dbir Lehați), 359–360, 365 (T. Alberti); VI, p. 24 (Paul de Alep); VIII, pp. 183 (*Descrierea anonimă a soliei lui Rafaël Leszczynski*), 234 (J. Păpai), 240 (M. Bay and G. Păpay), 328 (E. H. Schneider von Weismantel), 586 (S. Chometowski), 596–597 (F. Gościecki); Panaitescu, *Călători poloni* (see above, n. 88), pp. 96, 97, 107, 108, 118, 119, 130, 174, 212, 221, 239; Bezviconi, *Călători ruși*, p. 62; Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 170–171; idem, *Viața lui Constantin Cantemir*, pp. 20, 21, 30; Acsinti Uricariul, *A doua domnie*, p. 130; Muste (attributed to), *Letopiseșul Țerei Moldovei*, p. 11; I. Neculce, *Opere. Letopiseșul Țării Moldovei și o samă de cuvinte*, pp. 229, 307, 439, 494, and 855; *Cronica Ghiculeștilor*, pp. 546–547, 608–609; Pseudo-Enache Kogălniceanu, Ioan Canta, *Cronici*, pp. 49, 124, and 159; Boscovich, *Giornale* (see above, n. 28), pp. 89–91.

<sup>104</sup> *Călători*, II, pp. 516 (J. Newberie), 524 (G. Mancinelli); III, pp. 179 (François de Pavie), 368, 682 (Al. Comuleo); IV, pp. 87 (J. v. d. Does), 560 (Th. Alberti); V, pp. 83 (N. Barsi), 226 (P. B. Bakšić), 486 (R. Bargrave); VI, pp. 284–285 (Paul de Alep); VII, p. 525 (J.-B. Tavernier); VIII, pp. 190–191 (Leontie), 596 (F. Gościecki); Bezviconi, *Călători ruși*, p. 73; Panaitescu, *Călători poloni*, p. 139; Giurescu, *Istoria pescuitului* (see above, n. 82), pp. 25–29 and 87–91; P. Cernovodeanu, “Țările române în viziunea călătorilor englezi (a doua jumătate a secolului al XVII-lea și primele decenii ale celui de-al XVIII-lea),” *SMIM* 6 (1973), p. 116.

maritime ones. The former have great fishing possibilities, in contrast with the latter ones, poor in fish, whose economic value is partially compensated for by the possibilities of salt production. The salt sediment obtained by closing the link with the sea can become thick enough; in only two years (1835 and 1836) 120 tons of salt were extracted at Alibei and Şagan. The profitability of such operations cannot be achieved without some appropriate arrangement.<sup>105</sup> Strabo knew only two lakes between the Istros and the Tyras, that is between the Danube and the Dniester, and he mentioned that only one of them was linked to the sea and had harbour facilities.<sup>106</sup> From his information, we may suppose that the Greek geographer took into account the Sasic bank-lagoon group and the one consisting of the Şagan, Alibei and Burnas lakes with their extensions,<sup>107</sup> and not only the Sasic and Alibei lakes.<sup>108</sup> By the formation of the offshore bars, maybe as far back as in antiquity, the lakes had separated from the sea and lost their importance for navigation, which explains why the Italian sea maps of the thirteenth to fifteenth centuries totally ignore them, or simply show them schematically and arbitrarily.<sup>109</sup> The only important bank for navigators was that of the Dniester, which, unfortunately, usually freezes from December until March and, evidently, becomes unserviceable.

Ligneous vegetation is rare in the plain, and it consists especially of shrubs. Owing to the lack of forests, and consequently of firewood, earlier inhabitants had to burn dry dung-and-straw bricks (*tizic*).<sup>110</sup> Because of reduced precipitations, high temperatures in summer,

<sup>105</sup> T. Porucic, *Lacurile sărate din sudul Basarabiei* (Bucharest, 1924); I. Lepşi, "Lacurile din sudul Basarabiei," *BMNLN* 4 (1932), pp. 110–227; S. Zaharov, "Suprafețele lacurilor din România," *BMNLN* 5 (1933), pp. 149–150 and 157–159; Gh. I. Năstase, "Industria sării marine din Bugeac," *BSRRG* 61 (1942), pp. 266–272.

<sup>106</sup> *The Geography of Strabo* (see above, n. 74), III, pp. 218–219.

<sup>107</sup> Gh. I. Năstase, "Bugeacul în Antichitate," *BSRRG* 55 (1936), p. 140.

<sup>108</sup> V. V. Slastikhin, "Гидрологические сведения древних авторов о Дунае, Пруте и Днестре (VII в. до н.э.–VI в. н.э.)," *PGM* 5 (1970), p. 157.

<sup>109</sup> Santarem, *Atlas, composé de mappemondes, de portulans, et de cartes hydrographiques et historiques, depuis le VI<sup>e</sup> jusqu'au XVII<sup>e</sup> siècle, pour la plupart inédites, devant servir de preuves à l'histoire de la cosmographie et de la cartographie pendant le Moyen Age et a celle des progrès de la géographie* (Paris, 1842–53); A. E. Nordenskiöld, *Facsimile-Atlas to the Early History of Cartography* (Stockholm, 1889); idem, *Periplus, an Essay on the Early History of Charts and Sailing-Directions* (New York, 1897); R. Almagià, *Planisferi, carte nautiche e affini dal secolo XIV al XVII esistenti nella Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana* (= *Monumenta cartographica Vaticana*, I) (Vatican, 1944), *passim*.

<sup>110</sup> *Călători*, IV, pp. 575 (G. Botero), 587 (G. A. Magini); Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 82–83; Hugas Ingigian, *Paşalîcul din Ozu (I)*, in H. Dj. Siruni, "Dobrogea și Basarabia descrise de geografi armeni," *Ani* 1 (1936), 4, p. 66.

endemic draughts, the great evaporation, and the mass of dry air, plants lack water, and that produces natural drying of a part of the vegetation and can imperil the crops during warm seasons.

Great calamities could bring about the invasion of migratory locusts (*Pachytilus migratorius*), whose main north-Danubian multiplying grounds lie along the Delta banks and in the Prut meadows, in the Măstăcani-Cârja area of the Fălciu hills and plain.<sup>111</sup> Old sources often mention the devastations caused by these locusts to crops and pastures.<sup>112</sup> One of Moldavia's voivodes, Ștefan Lăcustă (1538–1540), acquired a nickname (“Locust”) recalling the detested insects, which had devastated the country during his rule.<sup>113</sup> Although the earliest information about their devastations east of the Carpathians is from the fifteenth-sixteenth centuries, it does not mean that they had not also occurred previously. Considering the direction of the penetration of those insects (*ex partibus Orientis*) into Hungary, Poland, Bohemia, Austria, and Lombardy in 1338,<sup>114</sup> and in Poland in 1343,<sup>115</sup> it can be admitted that the devastations also affected the Romanian territory. A similar assumption can also be made regarding the great invasion of the migratory locusts in the year 700 of the Armenian era (= 1251), on which contemporary

<sup>111</sup> P. Bănărescu, Th. Bușniță, R. Călinescu, “Fauna,” in *Monografia*, I (see above, n. 14), p. 624.

<sup>112</sup> *Călători*, I, p. 135 (G. M. Angioletto); VIII, pp. 317–318 (E. H. Schneider von Weismantel), 435 (L. N. Allard), 499 (P. H. Bruce), 561 (*Jurnalul lui Petru cel Mare*); Gr. Ureche, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 43), p. 149; Miron Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 40), p. 166; Nicolae Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 40), p. 331; Enaki Kogălniceanu, *Letopisețul Țerei Moldovei*, in *Cronicele României*, III (see above, n. 40), p. 214; *Kurtze Beschreibung* (see above, n. 66), p. 2; Bezviconi, *Călători ruși* (see above, n. 24), pp. 96 and 260; *Cronica Gliculeștilor*, pp. 22–23 and 628–629; Muste (attributed to), *Letopisețul Țerei Moldovei*, p. 48; Ingigian, *Valahia* (see above, n. 51), p. 274; *Prin Țările Române* (see above, n. 66), pp. 49–50 (D. Sestini), 112–113 (A. Joanne); P. Cernovodeanu, “Un flagel ecologic al evului mediu românesc: invaziile de lăcuste,” *SMIM* 11 (1992), pp. 63–73; C. Tofan, “Calamități naturale pe teritoriul Țării Moldovei din secolul al XV-lea până în prima jumătate a secolului al XIX-lea. Invazii ale lăcustelor,” *Carpathica* 29 (2000), pp. 155–170.

<sup>113</sup> Gr. Ureche, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 43), p. 149.

<sup>114</sup> Anonymi Leobicensis *Chronicon*, in *Scriptores rerum Austriacarum*, I, ed. H. Pez (Lipsiae, 1721), col. 952. See also *Chronicon Claustro-Neoburgense ab anno aerae Christianae CCXVIII ad annum ejusdem MCCCXLVIII*, in *ibidem*, col. 488; Paltrami seu Vatzonis, consulis Viennensis, *Chronicon Austriacum*, in *ibidem*, col. 727.

<sup>115</sup> Martini Cromeri *De origine et rebus gestis Polonorum libri XXX* (Basileae, 1554), p. 303.

sources specify that they destroyed everything “east and west” of the Caucasian regions.<sup>116</sup>

From certain points of view, the great rivers everglades present differences due to the regions they cross. Some centuries ago, the dense ligneous vegetation in the meadows—especially in the Danubian one—provided a protection almost as efficient as that of the forests of the hills and mountains,<sup>117</sup> the everglades being capable of providing easily obtainable food. Among the marshes and the forests along the Danube, shelter had been found by, among others, the Goths attacked by Valens’ armies,<sup>118</sup> and later by the Pechenegs chased by the Uzes.<sup>119</sup> The forests on the right bank of the Danube, in their turn, were used as shelter by the Bulgarians threatened by Byzantine attacks.<sup>120</sup>

In the Middle Ages the general aspect of the plain area of southern Moldavia remained, to the greatest extent, the same as in antiquity. Not accidentally did Strabo call the territory between Pontus Euxinus, Istros and Tyras “the desert (wasteland) of the Getae” (ἡ τῶν Γετῶν ἐρημία); he specified that it was totally flat and poor in waters.<sup>121</sup> The first who accurately localized the territory described by the Greek geographer was Anton Verancsics (1504–1543), also known as Verantio, who showed that only shepherds and their sheep crossed that land, and that there were few wells to water those animals.<sup>122</sup> A correct identification of the ancient *Solitudo Getarum* as *Tartarie d’Akerman*, the land between Ismail

<sup>116</sup> Grigor of Akanc’, *History of the Nation of the Archers (the Mongols)*, eds. R. P. Blake and R. N. Frye, *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 12 (1948), no. 2, pp. 323 and 325. See also Kiracos de Gantzac (*Histoire d’Arménie*, in *Deux historiens arméniens*, trans. [M.-F.] Brosset, I [St. Petersburg, 1870], pp. 173–174), who describes a catastrophic invasion of locusts in Armenia in 701 (= 1252), which also spread during the following year to Asia Minor, Persia, Mesopotamia, etc.

<sup>117</sup> Mehedinți and Vălsan, *România* (see above, n. 47), p. 30; S. Mehedinți, “Delior-manul—o verigă între Carpați și țărmul Mării Negre,” *AD* 19 (1938), no. 2, p. 231.

<sup>118</sup> Zosimi *Historiae*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1837), p. 185; Zosimus, *Historia nova. The Decline of Rome*, trans. J. J. Buchanan and H. T. Davis (San Antonio, Texas, 1967), p. 145. On this events in general, see Wolfram, *History of the Goths* (see above, n. 71), pp. 67–69.

<sup>119</sup> Skylitzes, p. 455; Kedrenos, II, p. 582.

<sup>120</sup> Nikephoros, Patriarch of Constantinople, *Short History*, ed. C. Mango (Washington, D.C., 1990), pp. 152–153.

<sup>121</sup> *The Geography of Strabo*, III (see above, n. 74), pp. 216–217. V. Pârvan, *Getica. O protoistorie a Daciei*, ed. R. Florescu (Bucharest, 1982), p. 45, preferred to translate the phrase as the “steppe of the Getae”.

<sup>122</sup> Ant[onius] Verantius, *De situ Transylvaniae, Moldaviae* (see above, n. 74), p. 93. About the collecting of the water for very deep wells in *Bassarabia* (= Bugeac), see also Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 82–83.

and Očakov, dominated by “the Tatars from Akerman (Cetatea Albă),” belongs to Aubry de Montraye (1674–1743). The French diplomat, who had reached the Bugeac in 1711, reported that in that “desert” he had not found more than two or three huts of the shepherds.<sup>123</sup>

The well-known treaty of 1412 concluded at Lublau between the kings of Hungary and Poland mentions the “uninhabited” Moldavian plain near the sea.<sup>124</sup> The formula “grans désers” used by Guillebert de Lannoy, who travelled to Moldavia in 1421,<sup>125</sup> probably designated the same area, as well as the level country between the Dniester and Crimea. At the same time, a Polish source of 1523 mentioned “the deserts” between the Black Sea and Wallachia (= Moldavia in this case).<sup>126</sup> An Italian Minorite, who crossed the area in February 1691, referred to *Campi deserti* in southern Moldavia. It is strange that he considered the Bugeac and *Campi deserti* as being two different geographical entities.<sup>127</sup> Many foreign travellers and geographers of the sixteenth-eighteenth centuries describe the Bugeac as a vast and waste plain,<sup>128</sup> and more rarely as a “very rich” (*abundantissimus*)<sup>129</sup> one. The term “desert” must not be interpreted as a wholly uninhabited place, but only as a steppe-like region, with few settlements and a low density of population.

The lowlands of southern Moldavia are directly opened to the vast Eurasian steppes, stretching over 4,000 km up to Central Asia. The Ural Mountains that separate two continents do not represent in fact a clear-cut geographic border. Only the Yenisei river precisely separates two geological-tectonically, morphologically and climatically distinct areas, since its lower course separates the steppe from the taiga.<sup>130</sup> Though there is no full similarity between, on the one hand, the plain of East Europe and of Central Asia, and, on the other hand, the one north of

<sup>123</sup> *Călători*, VIII, pp. 514–515, 522.

<sup>124</sup> *Codex diplomaticus regni Poloniae et magni ducatus Lithuaniae*, I, ed. M. Dogiel (Vilnae, 1758), p. 47; Hurmuzaki, I, 2, p. 486.

<sup>125</sup> Ghillebert de Lannoy, *Oeuvres*, ed. Ch. Potvin (Louvain, 1878), p. 59. See also E. Diaconescu, “Călători străini în Țările române—Guillebert de Lannoy,” *Lucrările Societății geografice “Dimitrie Cantemir”* 3 (1941), p. 232.

<sup>126</sup> Hurmuzaki, II, 3, p. 436.

<sup>127</sup> *Călători*, VIII, p. 117.

<sup>128</sup> V. A. Urechia (ed.), *Codex Bandinus* (see above, n. 24), pp. 42 and 202; Marco Bandini (see above, n. 24), pp. 106–107; *Călători*, II, p. 381 (A. M. Graziani); IV, p. 439 (G.-B. Malbi); VII, pp. 304 (Ph. le Masson du Pont), 516 (G. Levasseur de Beauplan); IX, p. 196 (J. Bell of Antermomy).

<sup>129</sup> *Călători*, II, p. 392 (Anonim ungar).

<sup>130</sup> C. Gochrke, “Die geographischen Gegebenheiten Russlands in ihrem historischen Beziehungsgeflecht,” in *HGR*, I, 1, pp. 17–18.



the Danube mouths, they do have numerous common characteristics in relief, climate, flora, and soil.<sup>131</sup>

The region north of the Black Sea was known in antiquity as “the Scythian desert,” and described as “a plain rich in pastures, without trees, watered with moderation”.<sup>132</sup> In the first centuries of the second millennium, that area was known as “the steppe of the Qipchaq/Cumans” (*Desht-i Qipchaq*).<sup>133</sup> After that, formulae such as “the great field,” “the Tatar steppe”<sup>134</sup> or “the wild plain” (*Dikiie polia*)<sup>135</sup> were also used. While travelling through “the vast deserts” north of the Black Sea in the middle of the thirteenth century, William of Rubruck found neither forests, nor mountains, nor stone, but the finest grass (*nulla silva, nullus mons, nullus lapis, herba optima*).<sup>136</sup> In the subsequent century, the Armenian chronicler Hethum (Hayton) of Korykos noted that Comania—a name given at that time to the Golden Horde—, “one of the biggest kingdoms existing in the world,” was wholly flat and with no trees, being limited by Khwarazm and by a vast desert in the East.<sup>137</sup>

<sup>131</sup> V. V. Dokuchaev, *Наши степи прежде и теперь* (Moscow, 1953); L. S. Berg, *Die geographischen Zonen der Sowjetunion*, II (Leipzig, 1959), p. 2 ff.

<sup>132</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 78–79 (Hippocrate).

<sup>133</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, II, *passim*. See also J. Marquart, „Über das Volkstum der Komänen,“ in W. Bang and J. Marquart, „Osttürkische Dialektstudien,“ *Abhandlungen der Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Philologisch-Historische Klasse*, NF, 13 (1914), no. 1, p. 158–162.

<sup>134</sup> *Archiva istorică a României*, ed. B. Petriceicu-Hăjdeu, II (Bucharest, 1865), p. 49; *Хождение инока Зосимы*, ed. Kh. M. Loparev, *Православный Палестинский сборник* 8 (1889), no. 3, p. 2; *The Xenos of Zosima the Deacon*, in G. P. Majeska, *Russian Travelers to Constantinople in the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries* (Washington, D.C., 1984), pp. 178–179.

<sup>135</sup> *Хроника Литовская и Жмойтская*, in *PSRL*, 32, ed. N. N. Ulashchik (Moscow, 1975), p. 43; *Могилевская хроника Т. Р. Сурты и Ю. Трубницкого*, in *PSRL*, 35, ed. N. N. Ulashchik (Moscow, 1980), p. 526. *Dzike-Polie/Dzzyke Pole* is also mentioned on eighteenth-century maps. See Válsán, “Harta Moldovei” (see above, n. 25), pp. 207–210 and pl. II (J. B. d’Anville, 1771–1779); L. Szántai, *Atlas Hungaricus. Magyarországnymtatott térképei 1528–1850/Hungary in printed maps 1528–1850*, I (Budapest, 1996), p. 256 (Janvier, 1762 and 1773).

<sup>136</sup> Rubruck, p. 194. See also Guillaume de Rubrouck, *Voyage dans l’Empire mongol (1253–1255)*, trans. and eds. C. and R. Kappler (Paris, 1985), p. 112; *The Mission of Friar William of Rubruck. His Journey to the Court of the Great Khan Möngke, 1253–1255*, trans. P. Jackson, eds. P. Jackson and D. Morgan (London, 1990), p. 105.

<sup>137</sup> Hayton, *La flor des estoires de la terre d’Orient/Flos historiarum terre Orientis*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Documents arméniens*, II (Paris, 1906), pp. 124 and 264; idem (Hethum von Korykos), *Geschichte der Mongolen*, trans. R. Senoner, ed. W. Baum (Klagenfurt-Vienna, 2003), pp. 26–27; S. Dröper (ed.), *Die Geschichte der Mongolen des Hethum von Korykos (1307) in der Rückübersetzung durch Jean le Long, Traitez des estas et des conditions de quatorze royaumes de Aise (1351)* (Frankfurt am Main, 1998), pp. 194–195; L. de Backer, *L’Extrême Orient au Moyen Age* (Paris, 1877), p. 130.

One of the most suggestive descriptions of these regions belongs to the Arab traveller Ibn Battuta (1304–1377): “This wilderness is green and grassy with no trees, nor hills, high or low, nor narrow pass nor firewood. What they use for burning is animal dung (which they call *tazak*) and you can see even their men of rank gathering it up and putting it in the skirts of their robes. There is no means of travelling in this desert except in wagons”.<sup>138</sup>

One of his contemporaries, Hamd-Allah Mustawfi of Qazwin (Qazwini), who wrote in a.H. 740 (= 1340), revealed other features of Desht-i Qipchaq: “This is of the Sixth Clime, its plains bear excellent pasturage, [...] but there are here few houses or towns or villages. Most of the inhabitants are nomads of the plain. [...] Most of the lands here are swamps (Hāmūn) [...] The pasturage, however, being excellent, horses and cattle are numerous, and the population for the most part subsists on the produce thereof. The climate is cold, and their water comes from springs and wells”.<sup>139</sup>

The Bugeac is not represent the western limit of the Eurasian steppes, which actually continue further to the south-west. After they become narrower between the Prut and the Siret, there follows a plain drained by the Danube, stretching up to the junction of the Carpathian and Balkan ranges at the Danubian Iron Gates (*Porțile de Fier*). The eastern part of that plain, the Bărăgan, has obvious steppe characteristics in temperature, precipitations, air mass motion, and vegetation.<sup>140</sup> South of the Danube, the steppe climate and vegetation continue to the centre and the south of the Dobrudja. It was not by accident that the animal-breeding tribes in the north-Pontic regions were steadily attracted by the environment of the Dobrudjan Plateau, which closely resembles the native places of those pastoralists, so that the Greek and Roman authors used the name of Scythia Minor for today’s Dobrudja, in considering it an extension of the north-east territories.

The area between the heart of Asia and the Danube’s lower basin acted as a large passage for the movements of nomadic pastoralist

<sup>138</sup> Ibn Battuta, *The Travels, A.D. 1325–1354*, ed. H. A. R. Gibb, II (Cambridge, 1962), p. 470; Ibn Batoutah, *Voyages*, eds. C. Defrémery and B. R. Sanguinetti, II (Paris, 1949), pp. 356–357.

<sup>139</sup> Hamd-Allah Mustawfi of Qazwin, *The Geographical Part of the Nuzhat-al-Qulub*, trans. G. Le Strange (Leiden–London, 1919), pp. 251–252.

<sup>140</sup> Emm. de Martonne, *La Valachie. Essai de monographie géographique* (Paris, 1902), pp. 186–189; G. Vâlsan, “Câmpia Română. Contribuții la geografia fizică,” in idem, *Opere alese* (see above, n. 46), pp. 147–318.

horsemen. The direction of those movements was rather consistently from east to west, perhaps due to the fact that many Asian territories were semi-deserts, and they were more arid than those west of the Urals. The steppe's climatic perturbations sometimes caused extreme damages to the herds of animals that made up the main subsistence of the nomads. Anomalies of the climatic factors account for some of the migrations from the steppe. Movements of peoples could also be motivated by the powerful tribes' wish to plunder and conquer their neighbours, as well as by the retreat of those unable to face the attackers efficiently.

The waters of the Black Sea wash Moldavia's shores between the mouths of the Danube and the Dniester, the distance between them being about one hundred kilometres. Between the Odessa Gulf and the Danube Delta, salinity is lower than in other parts of the Black Sea because of the great quantities of fresh water coming from the large rivers. The low salinity at the Danube's mouth was remarked upon by ancient navigators,<sup>141</sup> and Aristotle even wondered whether the white colour of the Pontus Euxinus was not due to the water of the large rivers flowing into it.<sup>142</sup>

The climate of the neighbouring continental area greatly influences the maritime climate, so that the temperature of the superficial stratum of water varies from season to season, without preservation of caloric energy. As a result, in very cold years the sea water freezes near the shores, up to distances of hundreds of meters or even a few kilometres. Such phenomena are rare enough, and early sources mention them as singular too. As an exile at Tomis, Ovid noted that the sea waves were "frozen with frost".<sup>143</sup> According to Theophanes Confessor, in the winter of 763–764, because of the terrible frost, the Pontic shore became frozen as far as one hundred miles into the sea, and it reached 30 cubits in depth, from Mesembria (= Nesebăr), to the Danube's mouths, the Danastris (= Dniester) and the Dnieper, all the way to Crimea.<sup>144</sup> This

<sup>141</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 402–403 (Pliniu cel Bătrân); Ammianus Marcellinus, I (see above, n. 71), p. 269.

<sup>142</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 112–113 (Aristotel).

<sup>143</sup> Publius Ovidius Naso, *Scrisori din exil*, trans. T. Naum (Bucharest, 1957), pp. 62 (*Tristele*, II, 196), 90 (III, X, 37–40, 43–44, 47–48). See also I. Micu, "Pontus Euxinus în operele ovidiene din exil," *Pontica* 14 (1981), pp. 320–323.

<sup>144</sup> Theophanes, *The Chronicle*. An English translation of *anni mundi* 6095–6305 (A.D. 602–813), by H. Turledove (Philadelphia, 1982), p. 123.

information was also mentioned in the abridged chronicle of Nikephorus, patriarch of Constantinople.<sup>145</sup>

At sea, against the north-western shores, surface waters appear running from north to south, mainly caused by the air masses coming from the continent, and occasionally by the river waters. In its movement, part of the water flows through Bosphorus to the Propontis (Marmara) and the Mediterranean. From Bosphorus the running waters follow the line of the coast of Asia Minor, then they bifurcate eastwards and northwards. The existence of these cyclic streams was of major importance for navigation, the sailing along the flow-way being easier. In earlier times, in order to sail towards the Mediterranean Sea, the sailors at the Danube's mouths would wait for favourable winds.<sup>146</sup> The journeys by sea had the advantage of being much shorter than those by land. Thus, a tenth-century letter written in Hebrew at the Khazar court for Hasdai ibn Shaprut in Cordoba (the so-called Schechter text) specifies that a journey from Khazaria to Constantinople lasted nine days by ship and 28 days by land.<sup>147</sup> Sailing in stormy weather was dangerous; storms, which were most frequent in winter, produced waves that exceeded seven meters in height. According to observations made near the Snakes' Island (*Insula Șerpilor*), about 70 percent of the stormy winds blow from the north, that is, from the same direction as that of the hurricanes whose speed is over 28 m.p.s.<sup>148</sup> The fame of a gloomy sea, with tumultuous winds and violent waves capable of causing shipwrecks, had reached the east Mediterranean Islamic world as well, at the end of the thirteenth century and the beginning of the fourteenth century.<sup>149</sup>

The bad weather of the cold season brought about temporary breaks in the navigation. The Spanish messenger at the court of Timur Lenk

<sup>145</sup> Nikephoros *Short History* (see above, n. 120), pp. 146–147.

<sup>146</sup> *Călători*, VI, p. 284 (Paul de Alep); Panaitescu, *Călători poloni* (see above, n. 88), p. 238.

<sup>147</sup> N. Golb and O. Pritsak, *Khazarian Hebrew Documents of the Tenth Century* (Ithaca–London, 1982), p. 121.

<sup>148</sup> Mogilianskii, *Материалы* (see above, n. 37), pp. 28–37; R. Ciocârdel, “La circulation générale des eaux de la Mer Noire,” *BSRRG* 56 (1937), pp. 216–229; *Contributions roumaines à l'étude de la Mer Noire*, ed. M. Semencescu (Bucharest, 1966); Sîrcu, *Geografia*, pp. 420–430; Ujvári, *Geografia* (see above, n. 85), pp. 159–176; Tufescu, *România* (see above, n. 14), pp. 227–230; Roșu, *Geografia* (see above, n. 14), pp. 138–142 and 185–187.

<sup>149</sup> Shems ed-Dîn Abou-'Abdallah Moh'ammed de Damas, *Manuel de la cosmographie du Moyen Âge traduit de l'arabe* “*Nokhbet ed-dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr wal-bah'r*”, ed. A. F. Mehren (Copenhagen–Paris–Leipzig, 1974), p. 191.

(Tamerlane), Ruy Gonzales de Clavijo, had to remain at Pera from 24 October 1403 until 20 March of the next year, when he managed to find a galiot to take him to Trebizond. As long as he stayed in the Genoese citadel near Constantinople, no seamen ventured north of Bosphorus. But in November, Genoese and Venetian galiots coming from Caffa and Tana, respectively, dropped anchor at the Golden Horn.<sup>150</sup> Because of the storms that had burst out before St Philip's Eve (November 10), the Russian deacon and pilgrim Zosima, who went to the Holy Land in 1419, had to face great difficulties in trying to reach Constantinople from Cetatea Albă (*Белград, Белеград*).<sup>151</sup> Sometimes terrible storms started even earlier, in October, such as the one of 1323, which caught the Venetian, Genoese, Pisan and Greek merchants on the Black Sea (*Mare Maggiore*) and caused them great damage.<sup>152</sup> Even on the more quiet area of the Mediterranean Sea, navigation might be interrupted in winters, with the exception of short local travels or of peculiar ones. Official interdictions against sailing (*mare clausum*)—for variable periods—were stipulated during the Roman Empire and afterwards, with the Byzantines, the Arabs, and other navigating peoples, but not with the Italian cities of the first centuries of the second millennium. Violations of such regulations, especially after the middle of that millennium (which witnessed gradual improvement in the quality of ships), often ended in catastrophic wrecks.<sup>153</sup>

The sea coast between the mouths of the Dniester and the Danube is not sinuous, most of it having sand banks that separate the sea from the lakes of southern Bessarabia. The shallow sea and the lack of gulfs make that coast inadequate for great harbours.<sup>154</sup> From that

<sup>150</sup> Roy Gonzales de Clavijo, *Itinéraire de l'ambassade espagnole à Samarcande en 1403–1406*, ed. I. Sreznevski (St. Petersburg, 1881) (= idem, *The Spanish Embassy to Samarcand, 1403–1406*, Variorum Reprints, London, 1971), pp. 96–105; Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlan, 1403–1406*, trans. G. Le Strange (London, 1928), pp. 94 and 101–103.

<sup>151</sup> *Хождение инока Зосимы* (see above, n. 134), p. 3; *The Xenos of Zosima the Deacon*, in Majeska, *Russian Travelers* (see above, n. 134), pp. 180–181.

<sup>152</sup> Giovanni Villani, *Cronica*, in *Croniche di Giovanni, Matteo e Filippo Villani*, I, ed. A. Racheli (Trieste, 1857), p. 272; idem, *Nuova cronica*, II, ed. G. Porta (Parma, 1991), p. 410.

<sup>153</sup> F. Braudel, *La Méditerranée et le monde méditerranéen à l'époque de Philippe II* (Paris, 1949), pp. 211–217; D. Claude, *Der Handel im westlichen Mittelmeer während des Frühmittelalters (Untersuchungen zur Handel und Verkehr der vor- und frühgeschichtlichen Zeit in Mittel- und Nordeuropa)*, II (Göttingen, 1985), pp. 31–34.

<sup>154</sup> V. Mihăilescu, "Țărmlul românesc," in *Omăgiu profesorului Constantin Stoicescu* (Bucharest, 1940), pp. 239–240; O. Șelariu, "Litoralul românesc al Mării Negre," in *Geografia României*, I, *Geografia fizică* (see above, n. 14), p. 370.

point of view, the Dniester lagoon is somewhat better, even though the accumulation of alluvial deposits requires special upkeep. Even in antiquity, in the neighbourhood of the Dniester estuary, at Tyras, there developed an important Greek, and later a Roman harbour, which then enjoyed great prosperity under the Genoese, Moldavian and Ottoman rules as well.<sup>155</sup>

\* \* \*

The complex aggregate of geographic elements specific to the southern part of the east-Carpathian area could provide a favourable background for the life and activity of the human society. The generosity of the land, its fertility, the abundance of crops, the quality of the grazing grounds and the large number of cattle were mentioned by some early geographers, and by most foreign travellers who had the opportunity to cross Moldavia's territory during the medieval period and at the beginning of modern times.<sup>156</sup> Georg Reichstorffer, who knew Moldavia

<sup>155</sup> E. Diehl, "Tyras," in Pauly-Wissowa, *Real-Encyclopädie der classischen Altertumswissenschaft*, 2nd ed. K. Mittelhaus, VIII A (R-Ž) (Stuttgart, 1943), col. 1850–1863; N. Iorga, *Studii istorice asupra Chiliei și Cetății Albe* (Bucharest, 1899); Gh. I. Brătianu, *Marea Neagră. De la origini până la cucerirea turcească*, 2nd ed., trans. M. Spinei, ed. V. Spinei (Iași, 1999), pp. 72, 76, 77, 119, 164, 325, and 386; Șt. Andreescu, "Note despre Cetatea Albă," *SMIM* 18 (2000), pp. 57–77 (reprint in idem, *Din istoria Mării Negre [Genovezi, români și tătari în spațiul pontic în secolele XIV–XVII]* [Bucharest, 2001], pp. 9–33); *Tyras. Cetatea Albă/Belhorod-Dnistrov'skyj*, I, *Săptămâni 1996–1999*, eds. P. Roman and S. Kryzickij (Bucharest, 2002), *passim*; I. Căndea, "Cetatea Albă în istoriografia românească (1), (2)," *SMIM* 19 (2001), pp. 217–226; 21 (2003), pp. 327–348.

<sup>156</sup> Georgii a Reichersdorff, Transilvani, *Chorographia Moldaviae* (see above, n. 55), pp. 99, 105, and 111; *Călători*, I, pp. 133 (G. M. Angiolello), 149 (M. Muriano), 192, 194, 202 (G. Reichstorffer), 465–466 (F. Mignanelli); II, pp. 406 (B. Paprocki), 631 (G. Ruggiero), 641 (B. de Vigenère); III, pp. 200 (*Descrierea anonimă a Moldovei din 1587*), 215 (I. C. Decsi de Baranya), 296, 680 (H. Cavendish), 368, 682 (A. Comulco), 560 (G. P. Giordano), 657 (*Ziarul expediției lui Zamoyski în Moldova din anul 1595*); IV, pp. 36 (B. Quirini), 383 (Ch. de Joppecourt), 439 (G.-B. Malbi), 569 (G. L. D'Anania), 586–587 (G. A. Magini); V, pp. 81 (N. Barsi), 116 (Solia lui Krasinski), 223, 232 (P. B. Bakšić), 275–276 (P. Beke); VI, p. 485 (Evlia Çelebi); VII, pp. 221 (G.-B. del Monte Santa Maria), 254–255 (Secretarul de la Croix), 296–297 (Ph. le Masson du Pont), 438 (*Situația misiunilor catolice din "provincia" Moldova*), 511 (Anonim englez—1664), 521 (*Relație anonimă olandeză—1687*); VIII, pp. 188–189 (Leontic), 515 (Aubry de la Motraye); IX, pp. 388 (C. Dapontes), 400–402 (Ch.-C. de Peyssonnel); V. A. Urechia (ed.), *Codex Bandinus* (see above, n. 24), pp. 133–134, 309–310; Marco Bandini (see above, n. 24), pp. 368–373; Hurmuzaki, I, supl. I, pp. 418, 422; *Kurtze Beschreibung* (see above, n. 66), pp. 13–14; M. Holban, "Pretinsele aventuri în Țara Românească ale unui pretins călător german din secolul XVIII," in *Izvoare străne pentru istoria românilor*, ed. Șt. S. Gorovei (*România în istoria universală*, III, 3) (Iași, 1988), p. 110; Bosovich, *Giornale* (see above, n. 28), pp. 113, 125. See also *Cronica Ghiculeștilor* (see above, n. 40), pp. 602–603; Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 108–109; M. M. Alexandrescu-Dersca, "Economia

very well, made the following exaggerated statement: “This country lacks nothing that man could make use of.”<sup>157</sup> One century later, Peter Bogdan Bakšić, a bishop who travelled to the Romanian lands several times, considered that Moldavia is “well proportioned and arranged,”<sup>158</sup> and Philippe Avril was even more generous in epithets, in estimating that Moldavia appeared to be “one of the most beautiful and pleasant countries of Europe.”<sup>159</sup>

Besides moderate and objective points of view, there have been some in which the enthusiasm for the Moldavian landscape could not be contained. For example, in 1594 Alessandro Comuleo wrote to cardinal of San Giorgio that “there is no country more beautiful than this one anywhere in the world” (*non c’è paese in tutto il mondo piu bello d’essa*).<sup>160</sup> Because of the authors’ aims, not all the evaluations made by him on Moldavia’s riches and sceneries must be accepted at face value.

Taking such view into account, it is indisputable that medieval Moldavia was known all over the continent, due to its remarkable agricultural and animal-breeding capacities. From that standpoint, its southern half was not provided in its entirety with the same resources. A very early report indicated that the region near the mountains was “very unfruitful, so that people eat millet bread there,”<sup>161</sup> as the region was less adequate for tilling. However, due to good grazing grounds, it was very favourable for animal breeding. Generally, it can be said that, because of its roughness, the Carpathian mountainous area requires deep knowledge of its specific natural phenomena, and great efforts are needed in order to turn it to good account. Even today the demographic density within the Carpathian area is significantly lower than that of the rest of the Romanian territory. At the same time, because of the difficulties in exploiting the level country, its population had also remained low until modern times.<sup>162</sup> Under such circumstances, ever since ancient times

---

agrară a Țării Românești și Moldovei descrisă de călători (secolele XV–XVII),” *RI* 21 (1968), no. 5, pp. 843–864.

<sup>157</sup> *Călători*, I, p. 202.

<sup>158</sup> *Călători*, V, p. 223.

<sup>159</sup> Iorga, *Istoria românilor prin călătorii* (see above, n. 29), p. 272; *Călători*, VIII, p. 104.

<sup>160</sup> *Călători*, III, pp. 368, 682.

<sup>161</sup> *Călători*, VII, p. 221 (G.-B. del Monte Santa Maria).

<sup>162</sup> Emm. de Martonne, “Recherches sur la distribution géographique de la population en Valachie,” *BSSR* 23 (1902), no. 2, pp. 120–121, 128–129, and 139–141; S. Mehedinți, “Die rumänische Steppe. Eine anthropogeographische Skizze,” in *Zu Friedrich Ratzels Gedächtnis. Geplant als Festschrift zum 60. Geburtstag nun als Grabspende dargebracht* (Leipzig,

the limits of the anthropic area were those of the territories we discuss, that is, the subalpine plateaus with severe climate, which were used and temporarily inhabited by shepherds and their sheep.

In regard to the fertility of the soil, and implicitly the possibilities of growing plants and breeding animals, the Carpathian-Dniestrian area has occupied a privileged position; but the same thing cannot be said in reference to its underground resources. Oil, natural gas and coal, found in the Carpathian depressions and in the sub-Carpathians, had no economic importance in ancient times; only salt was vital. By contrast, the east-Carpathian regions are, in general, poor in iron and non-ferrous ores. Nothing was known in the Middle Ages about the iron and manganese of northwestern Moldavia, which were first found in the late 1700s.<sup>163</sup> The lack of iron and non-ferrous ores represented a real challenge, which explains why crafts in Moldavia depended upon raw materials from Transylvania and the neighbouring territories. Imports from those regions into Moldavia consisted either of ready made artifacts, or of raw materials necessary for the local manufacturing of similar artifacts.

Our observations refer to realities that developed in the time between the Neolithic and the period during which a unitary Romanian state came into being. One traditional view—according to which Moldavia's mountains contained important gold and silver ores that the inhabitants would not exploit, lest they should rouse the Turks' greediness—is totally untenable. The existence of such ores would have been welcomed, since they could ensure important exchange values.

For all the relative equilibrium of Moldavia's climate, due to its position in the temperate zone, the occurrence of some anomalies was noted even in the past, before the disturbances brought about by the massive intervention of human activity. The natural phenomena causing material damage and loss of human life include droughts and

---

1904), pp. 249–255; V. Mihăilescu, “Contribuție la studiul populației și așezărilor omenești din câmpia românească între 1853–1899,” *BSRRG* 41 (1922), pp. 96–108; idem, “Așezările omenești din Câmpia Română la mijlocul și la sfârșitul sec. XIX,” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 4 (1925), p. 50 ff.; R. Batty, *Rome and the Nomads. The Pontic-Danubian Realm in Antiquity* (Oxford, 2007), pp. 182 and 184–185.

<sup>163</sup> *Bucovina în prima descriere fizico-politică. Călătorie în Carpații Daciei (1788–1789)*, ed. R. Grigorovici (Balthasar Hacquet, *Recentele călătorii fizico-politice ale lui Hacquet în anii 1788 și 1789 prin Munții Dacici și Sarmatici sau Carpații Nordici*) (Rădăuți, 2002), pp. 80–83; G. Irimescu, “Din istoria mineritului din Bucovina,” *Suceava. Anuarul Muzeului Județean* 8 (1981), pp. 265–277; M. Iacobescu, *Din istoria Bucovinei, I (1774–1862). De la administrația militară la autonomia provincială* (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 232–237.



floods, as calamities against which people with rudimentary means could do almost nothing.

Various reports from the middle of the second millennium point out numerous climatic disturbances in the Carpathian-Danubian area. As already mentioned above, most dangerous were droughts and floods, to which severe frosts, hail storms, and earthquakes can added. Sometimes natural disturbances favoured invasions of insects (locusts, tree beetles), and of rodents (such as field mice). In their turn, all those factors could lead to loss of human lives and the destruction of crops, flocks, and dwellings, the usual results being famine, epidemics, pauperization, malnutrition, and emigration.<sup>164</sup> The catastrophic consequences of the natural calamities were considerably greater when they were accompanied by wars. Such natural anomalies were also present in the space and the period we are dealing with, and they influenced all sectors of life.

The variety of the circumstances produced certain peculiarities in the spreading of human communities, as well as in their development, and such peculiarities did not remain the same through time. The inhabitants of the area, as well as different communities of intruders, took full advantage of the natural environment.

As its position remained strategically important over time, the southern half of the Carpathian-Dniestrian area was the stage for many important events. By virtue of its location at the western extremity of the Eurasian steppes, that territory was crossed by waves of nomadic peoples, who followed “the way of the sun” towards the Balkan Peninsula and the Lower-Danubian Plain. Also important was its access to the north-west coast of the Black Sea, to the most navigable great river of ancient and medieval Europe, as well as to the Danube Delta’ Black Sea. From another standpoint, Moldavia’s attachment to the Carpathian arch was destined to ensure its stability, a lasting stronghold for resistance to outside pressures and, at the same time, hidden channels of communication with other Romanian territories.

---

<sup>164</sup> Șt. C. Hepites, “Secetele din România,” *BSGR* 27 (1906), no. 1, pp. 83–128; Topor, *Ani ploioși* (see above, n. 19); A. Armbruster, *Dacoromano-Saxonica. Cronicari români despre sași. Români în cronică săsească* (Bucharest, 1980), pp. 381–407; P. Cernovodeanu, P. Binder, *Cavalerii Apocalipsului. Calamitățile naturale din trecutul României (până la 1800)* (Bucharest, 1993), *passim*.

## CHAPTER TWO

### THE POLITICAL HISTORY OF THE CARPATHIAN-DNIESTER REGION AND OF THE NEIGHBOURING TERRITORIES

By being placed at the junction of the western extremity of the Eurasian steppes with the Lower Danube Plain, towards the northernmost limit of the Balkan Peninsula, southern Moldavia fell in the path of the great migrations. When they reached the Bugeac and the Bărăgan, the nomad peoples made their way either towards the Balkans, or along the Danube. On their way to the middle course of the great river, some of those peoples of eastern Europe avoided Moldavia, and they reached the Pannonian Plain through the Verecke Pass of the northern (Sylvanian, or Ukrainian) Carpathians. The direction of the nomad peoples' advance was, without exception, from east to west, their return to the Black Sea steppes taking place only when their incursions failed.

During the first millennium, southern Moldavia was one of the European regions most affected by the movement of people. Ever since the first half of the seventh century, when the Danube ceased to be the northern frontier of the Roman (Byzantine) Empire, the territories on the left bank of the river were not any more among the political and diplomatic priorities of the Byzantine government in Constantinople. However, both before and after the Iconoclastic crisis, Byzantium remained concerned with the situation in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea and strove to maintain control of the Danube Delta, especially by means of the navy, as well as of skilful diplomacy aimed at manipulated the military potentials of the "northern barbarians."

#### *Tenth Century*

By the end of the third quarter of the first millennium, a perceptible stagnation in the demographic dynamics of eastern Europe took place. This occurred due to the strengthening of the Khazar state north of the Caspian Sea, the Caucasus and the Black Sea. The Khazars were now a major power in eastern Europe. Their alliance with Byzantium,

consolidated during their confrontations with the Persians and the Arabs, was to remain stable until the end of the millennium, even if, temporarily, the interest of both in ruling Crimea also created discontinuities. The political circles on the Bosphorus saw in Khazaria not only an ally against some common enemies, but also a barrier meant to stop the penetration of the nomad peoples towards the Byzantine boundaries. From the latter point of view, the Kaghanate proved to be extremely efficient, by establishing a prolonged period of peace in the southern steppe lands of eastern Europe. At the same time, the Khazars effectively stopped the Arab advance into eastern Europe at the passes across the Caucasus Mountains, at about the same time Charles Martel was pushing the Arabs beyond the Pyrenees. Without those successes the balance between the Christian world and the Islamic one would overwhelmingly have weighed in the favour of the latter.

The infiltration of the Arab cultural influence in eastern Europe was but partially attenuated, and it materialized not only through the conversion of some communities to Islam, but also through getting some privileged positions in the caravan trade. Khazaria, a polity in which most inhabitants were Turanian pagans, was the target of missions from both the Caliphate and Byzantium. However, the confrontation between Christianity and Islamic did not lead to the conversion to either one of the two world religions, since the Khazar elites eventually chose to convert to Judaism.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> On Khazar history, see especially J. Marquart, *Osteuropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge* (Leipzig, 1903), pp. 1–27, 270–305, and 474–477; M. I. Artamonov, *История хазар* (Leningrad, 1962); D. M. Dunlop, *The History of the Jewish Khazars* (New York, 1967); W. Barthold – P. B. Golden, “Khazar,” in *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, NE, IV, eds. E. v. Donzel, B. Lewis, Ch. Pellat, C. E. Bosworth (Leiden, 1978), pp. 1172–1181; P. B. Golden, *Khazar Studies*, I–II (Budapest, 1980); idem, “Khazaria and Judaism,” *АЕМА* 3 (1983), pp. 129–156; idem, *An Introduction to the History of the Turkic Peoples. Ethnogenesis and State-Formation in Medieval and Early Modern Eurasia and the Middle East* (Wiesbaden, 1992), pp. 233–244; D. Ludwig, *Struktur und Gesellschaft des Chazaren-Reiches im Licht der schriftlichen Quellen* (Münster/Westf., 1982); M. G. Magomedov, *Образование хазарского каганата. По материалам археологических исследований и письменным данным* (Moscow, 1983); S. A. Pletneva, *Хазары*, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 1986); eadem, *Кочевники южнорусских степей в эпоху средневековья IV–XIII века. Учебное пособие* (Voronezh, 2003), pp. 28–102; A. P. Novosel'tsev, *Хазарское государство и его роль в истории Восточной Европы и Кавказа* (Moscow, 1990); T. S. Noonan, “The Khazar economy,” *АЕМА* 9 (1995–1997), pp. 253–318; S. A. Romashov, “Историческая география Хазарского каганата (V–XIII вв.),” *АЕМА* 11 (2000–2001), pp. 219–338; 12 (2002–2003), pp. 81–221; 13 (2004), pp. 185–264; 14 (2005), 107–196; L. Gmyria, “Восточная Европа в эпоху Хазарского каганата,” in *История татар с древнейших времен, I, Народы степной Евразии в древности*, gen. ed. S. Kliashornyĭ (Kazan,

The political supremacy of the Khazars extended westwards up to the Dnieper region. While some populations—including the Bulgars and the Alans—were under their direct rule, some Slav tribes—the Polianians, the Viatichi, the Severians, the Radimichi—had only to pay tribute.<sup>2</sup> The archaeological correlate of the multi-ethnic and multi-confessional Khazar polity is the so-called Saltovo-Maiaki culture, which between the eighth and the tenth century spread within a vast territory between the Volga and Dnieper rivers, while displaying four regional variants perhaps reflecting ethno-cultural distinctions.<sup>3</sup> Through the imposition of the Khazars' political control over the steppes of eastern Europe the liberty of motion of the nomad communities was drastically restricted. At the same time, the Lower Volga, now occupied by the Kaghanate, became a true filter for other groups attempting to cross the river. Thus, by imposition of the Khazar political domination upon numerous populations, a period of stability and peace was established, a *pax Chazarica* as some historians have named it.<sup>4</sup>

---

2002), pp. 277–295; V. Petrukhin, “Хазарский каганат и его соседи,” in *ibidem*, pp. 296–315; *Българи и хазари през ранното средновековие*, ed. Ts. Stepanov (Sofia, 2003); *Хазары/Khazars (Евреи и славяне/Jews and Slavs)*, 16), eds. V. Petrukhin, W. Moskovich, A. Fedorchuk, A. Kulik, D. Shapira (Moscow–Jerusalem, 2005); *The World of the Khazars. New Perspectives. Selected Papers from the Jerusalem 1999 International Khazar Colloquium hosted by the Ben Zvi Institute*, eds. P. B. Golden, H. Ben-Shammai, and A. Róna-Tas (Leiden–Boston, 2007).

<sup>2</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 16, 18, 20, 47.

<sup>3</sup> S. A. Pletneva, *От кочевий к городам. Салтово-Маяцкая культура* (MIA, 142) (Moscow, 1967), pp. 185–190; eadem (S. A. Pletnjowa), *Die Chasaren. Mittelalterliches Reich an Donau und Wolga*, trans. A. Häusler (Vienna, 1979), pp. 75–96; eadem (S. A. Pletneva), *Очерки хазарской археологии*, ed. V. Ia. Petrukhin (Moscow–Jerusalem, 1999), p. 7 ff.; eadem, *Кочевники южнорусских степей*, pp. 52–102; C. Bálint, *Die Archäologie der Steppe. Steppenvölker zwischen Volga und Donau vom 6. bis zum 10. Jahrhundert*, ed. F. Daim (Vienna–Cologne, 1989), pp. 44–71; G. E. Afanas'ev, *Донские аланы. Социальные структуры алано-ассо-буртасского населения бассейна Среднего Дона* (Moscow, 1993), *passim*; B. Werbart, “Khazars or ‘Saltovo-Majaki culture’? Prejudices about archaeology and ethnicity,” *Current Swedish Archaeology* 4 (1996), pp. 199–221.

<sup>4</sup> A. Zajaczkowski, *Ze studiów nad zagadnieniem chazarским* (Cracow, 1947), p. 77; I. Boba, *Nomads, Northmen and Slavs. Eastern Europe in the Ninth Century* (The Hague, 1967), p. 39; D. Obolensky, “The Crimea and the North before 1204,” *Археѳон пѳнѳтѳу* 35 (1979), p. 126; O. Pritsak, *The Origin of Rus', I, Old Scandinavian Sources other than the Sagas* (Cambridge, Mass., 1981), pp. 446–447; F. Conte, *Les Slaves. Aux origines des civilisations d'Europe centrale et orientale (VI–XIII siècles)* (Paris, 1986), pp. 410–411; I. Zimonyi, *The Origins of the Volga Bulgars* (Szeged, 1990), pp. 158, 183; P. R. Magocsi, *A History of Ukraine* (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1996), pp. 46–47; A. Róna-Tas, *Hungarian and Europe in the Early Middle Age. An Introduction to Early Hungarian History*, trans. N. Bodoczky (Budapest, 1999), p. 328.

Due to these realities, north of the Black Sea and the Danube's mouths there was a much more peaceful political climate. After the invasion of Asparukh's Bulgars on the left of the Danube, no important invasions were recorded. The local population of the Carpathian-Danubian area fully profited from the *pax Chazarica* for almost two centuries. During the period of the evolution of the Dridu culture (eighth to eleventh centuries), the Lower Danube Plain area experienced a steady demographic growth, which distinguishes this period from both previous and subsequent centuries (Fig. 2). The increase of the population in the Bugeac and the Bărăgan was a natural consequence of the prevention of the trouble caused by migrations and raids. It seems that the same circumstances account, at least partially, for the shift of the Slav tribes to the Black Sea steppe lands.<sup>5</sup>

In the ninth century, the Khazar Kaghanate was confronted with new difficulties, both internal and external. Within the ethnical conglomerate subject to its authority there were centrifugal movements, such as the one caused by the Kabars. After repressing the Kabars' rebellion, those of them who managed to escape joined the Hungarian tribes.<sup>6</sup> Religious reasons—that is, the adoption of Judaism by the Khazar aristocracy—have been invoked as causes for the Khazar-Kabar divergence,<sup>7</sup> and while we do not entirely reject that idea, it is not a very convincing explanation due to the confessional tolerance known to have been a dominant line of the Kaghanate's policy. The separation of the Kabars from the Khazars and their joining the Hungarians did not probably take place before the middle of the ninth century.<sup>8</sup> The break of the political balance in eastern Europe due to *pax Chazarica* represents, in our opinion, the result of two main factors, whose

<sup>5</sup> Boba, *Nomads*, p. 39 with n. 1; V. V. Sedov, *Славяне. Историко-археологическое исследование* (Moscow, 2002), pp. 525–551.

<sup>6</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 174–175.

<sup>7</sup> Dunlop, *History*, p. 203; Artamonov, *История*, p. 324.

<sup>8</sup> The event, whose dating is disputed, was supposed to have taken place ca. 780 (H. Schönebaum, “Zur Kabarenfrage,” in *Aus der byzantinistischen Arbeit der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik*, I [Berlin, 1957], p. 144; A. Bartha, *Hungarian Society in the 9th and 10th Centuries* [Budapest, 1975], p. 63); 800 (A. Róna-Tas, “Хазары и мадьяры,” in *Хазары/Khazars*, p. 118); 854/855 (Boba, *Nomads*, pp. 117 and 119); 860 (G. Györffy, *Tanulmányok a magyar állam eredetéről* [Budapest, 1959], pp. 50–51); 861 (C. Zuckerman, “On the date of the Khazars' conversion to Judaism and the chronology of the kings of the Rus Oleg and Igor,” *Revue des études byzantines* 53 [1995], pp. 237–270); or between 862 and 881 (K. A. Brook, *The Jews of Khazaria* [Lanham–Boulder–New York–Toronto–Oxford, 2004], p. 206).

simultaneous appearance, although non-corroborated, was facilitated by the internal convulsions in the Khazar tribal confederacy. On the one hand, the movements of the nomads from central Asia west of the Urals became more active, and, on the other hand, the Kievan Principality was established and grew stronger in the Middle Dnieper basin, by joint efforts of Varangians and Slavs. Both those moments directly affected the extra-Carpathian Romanian area too.

In the steppes north of the Caspian Sea, Khazaria had to confront the Pechenegs, whom the Khazars succeeded in defeating with the help of the Uzes in the late ninth century. An anonymous Persian geography of the tenth century mentions that, besides the “Turkish Pechenegs” (*Baḡanāk-i-turk*),<sup>9</sup> there also was a branch of “Khazarian Pechenegs” (*Baḡanāk-i-Hazar*),<sup>10</sup> the name indicating their acceptance of the Khazar sovereignty. The co-operation between the Khazars and the Uzes proved ephemeral, and shortly after the elimination of the Pecheneg danger their relationship became inimical.<sup>11</sup> Oriental sources indicate that the battles against the Uzes weakened the strength of the Kaghanate and led to its fall.<sup>12</sup> It is very likely that the Pechenegs had a certain role in that respect. During the second half of the tenth century, when Ibn Hauqal was writing and when the Rus’ struck heavy blows at the Kaghanate,<sup>13</sup> the Pechenegs settled “through violence” between the Khazars’ territories and those of Byzantium, and they came to be perceived as allies of the Rus’.<sup>14</sup> It is possible that, by approaching Kiev, the Pechenegs tried to counteract the effects of the military co-operation between the Khazars and the Uzes.

The impact of the the Varangians (as representatives of the great Viking expansion) on eastern Europe has specific traits on different regions, depending upon the social and political development, as well

---

<sup>9</sup> *Hudūd al-‘Ālam*. “*The Regions of the World*”. *A Persian Geography 372 a.H.–982 a.D.*, ed. V. Minorsky (London, 1937), p. 101; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 207.

<sup>10</sup> *Hudūd al-‘Ālam*, pp. 67, 83; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 214–215.

<sup>11</sup> Maḡoudi, *Les Prairies d’or*, eds. C. Barbier de Meynard and P. de Courteille, II (Paris, 1863), p. 19.

<sup>12</sup> P. B. Golden, “The migrations of the Oğuz,” *Archivum Ottomanicum* 4 (1972), pp. 77–80 (reprint in idem, *Nomads and their Neighbours in the Russian Steppe: Turks, Khazars and Qipchaqs* [Variorum Collected Studies Series] [Aldershot–Burlington, 2003], no. V); Novoseltsev, *Хазарское зочыдарство*, pp. 225–226.

<sup>13</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 47.

<sup>14</sup> Ibn Hauqal, *Configuration de la terre (Kūtab surat al-ard)*, I, eds. J. H. Kramers and G. Wiet (Beirut–Paris, 1964), p. 15.

as the ethnic configurations in those areas.<sup>15</sup> At the time the “people of the North” coming from Norway and Denmark were raiding the coasts of the British Isles, of northern Germany, France, and Spain, and Leif Eriksson was reaching the shores of North-America, five centuries before Christopher Columbus, the Vikings of Sweden (Varangians) took the opposite direction. A combination of piratical raids and commercial activities was a permanent practice with the Varangians, both on the route connecting the Baltic with the Black Sea and the one connecting the Baltic with the Caspian Sea along the Volga, that is, on the two main routes across eastern Europe *ca.* 1000. Through the co-operation between the Arab and Scandinavian tradesmen, the most stable and efficient connection between East and West was established in the last quarter of the first millennium. The reverberations of those

---

<sup>15</sup> On Varangians in Eastern Europe, see T. J. Arne, *La Suède et l’Orient* (Uppsala, 1914); A. Stender-Petersen, *Varangica* (Aarhus, 1953); H. Arbman, *The Vikings*, trans. A. Binns (New York, 1961), pp. 89–105; *I Normanni e la loro espansione in Europa nell’Alto Medioevo* (Spoleto, 1969); *Varangian Problems* (Copenhagen–Munksgaard, 1970); *Исторические связи Скандинавии и России IX–XX вв.* (Leningrad, 1970); S. Blöndal, *The Varangians of Byzantium*, ed. V. S. Benediktz (Cambridge, 1978); E. A. Rydzevskaia, *Древняя Русь и Скандинавия IX–XIV вв.* (Moscow, 1978); Pritsak, *Origin, passim*; P. H. Sawyer, *Kings and Vikings. Scandinavia and Europe AD 700–1100* (London–New York, 1982), pp. 113–130; G. Schramm, “Die Waräger: osteuropäische Schicksale einer nordgermanischen Gruppenbezeichnung,” *Die Welt der Slaven* 28 (NF, 8) (1983), pp. 38–67; J. Herrmann, “Slawen und Wikinger in der Frühgeschichte der Ostseevölker,” in *Wikinger und Slawen. Zur Frühgeschichte der Ostseevölker*, gen. ed. J. Herrmann (Berlin, 1982), pp. 9–148; G. Jones, *A History of the Vikings*, 2nd ed. (Oxford–New York, 1984), pp. 241–268; E. Roesdahl, *The Vikings*, trans. S. M. Margeson and K. Williams (London–New York–Victoria–Toronto–Auckland, 1992), pp. 277–292; F. Durand, *Les Vikings*, 5th ed. (Paris, 1993), pp. 45–56; K. Heller, *Die Normannen in Osteuropa* (Giessen, 1993); *The Viking Heritage, a Dialogue between Cultures/Наследие варягов, диалог культур*, ed. I. Jansson (Moscow–Stockholm, 1996); B. Wahlqvist, *Vikingarnas öar* (Malmö, 1996), p. 137 ff.; *Викинги и славяне. Ученые, политики, дипломаты о русско-скандинавских отношениях*, eds. A. Hedman and A. Kirpichnikov (St. Petersburg, 1998); R. Simek, *Die Wikinger* (Munich, 1998), pp. 71–79; I. Jansson, “Warfare, trade or colonisation? Some general remarks on the eastern expansion of the Scandinavians in the Viking period,” in *The Rural Viking in Russia and Sweden*, ed. P. Hansson (Örebro, 1997), pp. 9–64; idem, “Situationen i Norden och Östeuropa för 1000 år sedan—en arkeologs synpunkter på frågan om östkristna inflytanden under missionstiden,” in *Från Bysans till Norden. Östliga kyrkotinfluser under vikingatid och tidig medeltid*, ed. H. Janson (Malmö, 2005), pp. 37–95; B. Scholz, *Von der Chronistik zur modernen Geschichtswissenschaft. Die Warägerfrage in der russischen, deutschen und schwedischen Historiographie* (Wiesbaden, 2000); F. D. Raschellà, “Presenze scandinave nell’Europa orientale durante il medioevo,” *Medioevo e Rinascimento* 15 (n.s. 12) (2001), pp. 1–17; W. Duczko, *Viking Rus. Studies on the Presence of Scandinavians in Eastern Europe* (Leiden–Boston, 2004), pp. 10–114; F. D. Logan, *The Vikings in History*, 3rd ed. (New York, 2005), pp. 163–187; Ch. Hillerdal, “Vikings, Rus, Varangians. The ‘Varangian problem’ in view of ethnicity in archaeology,” *Current Swedish Archaeology* 14 (2006), pp. 87–107.

commercial relations with the Islamic Orient—made more dynamic by the east-Scandinavian merchants and those of the caliphate, as well as by participants from other populations—may also be detected in the Carpathian-Dniestrian area. One proof of that development is represented by discoveries of Arabic coins in the territory under discussion—an aspect to which we shall return below.

The contacts the Varangians and the eastern Slavs established with the Byzantine Empire were extremely active. Necessities, originally economic and later of other kinds as well, led to the opening of the famous “route from the Varangians to the Greeks,” which could only be covered by water. From the Baltic—also called the Varangians’ Sea—one could reach the Dnieper, either through the Gulf of Riga and on the Dvina, or through the Gulf of Finland, then on the Neva, Lake Ladoga, Volkhov, Lake Ilmen’ and the Lovat. The Varangians embarked on the Isle of Berezan at the estuary of the Dnieper, where the ships were equipped with sails and rudders, and sailed along the currents of the western Black Sea coast, to the estuary of the Dniester and the delta of the Danube.<sup>16</sup> Constantine Porphyrogenitus pointed out that between the Dniester and the Sulina branch the Varangians stopped at the river called *White* (τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ἄσπρον).<sup>17</sup> Its identification is difficult because in southern Bessarabia there is no river that flows directly into the sea, but only in riverine and sea lakes. Because the imperial scholar used information coming from various sources, it is possible that the Dniester was called the *White River*, which would explain why the fortified city located at its mouth was given the name of Asprocastron (Akkerman, Belgorod, Cetatea Albă = the White Castle).

<sup>16</sup> PVL, I, p. 11; DAI, I, pp. 56–63. See also E. Simões de Paula, *O comércio varegue e o Grão-Principado de Kíev* (São Paulo, 1942), p. 31–41; S. V. Bernshtein-Kogan, “Путь из Варяг в Греки,” *Вопросы географии* 20 (1950), pp. 239–270; H. R. E. Davidson, *The Viking Road to Byzantium* (London, 1976), pp. 80–96; G. S. Lebedev, *Эпоха викингов в Северной Европе. Историко-археологические очерки* (Leningrad, 1985), pp. 227–235; idem, “Путь из Варяг в Греки как фактор урбанизации Древней Руси, Скандинавии и Византии,” in *Славянский средневековый город*, ed. V. V. Sedov (*Труды VI Международного Конгресса славянской археологии*, 2) (Moscow, 1997), pp. 197–209; idem, “Путь из Варяг в Греки как объект археолого-навигационного исследования,” *Slavia Antiqua* 38 (1997), pp. 151–167; V. Petrukhin, “Les villes (*gardar*) sur la ‘Voie des Varègues aux Grecs’,” in *Les centres proto-urbains russes entre Scandinavie, Byzance et Orient*, eds. M. Kazanski, A. Nersessian and C. Zuckerman (Paris, 2000), pp. 357–364; G. V. Glazyrina, T. N. Dzhakson, E. A. Mel’nikova, “Скандинавские источники,” in *Древняя Русь в свете зарубежных источников*, ed. E. A. Mel’nikova, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 2003), pp. 475–476.

<sup>17</sup> DAI, I, pp. 62–63.



A proof of the Varangians' way to Constantinople is represented by the images of dragons and ships carved on the walls of the small churches dug in limestone at Basarabi (former Murfatlar, Constanța county), with clear analogies in Scandinavian art.<sup>18</sup> The recent identification of an incised representation of a heraldic sign of the Rurikid dynasty (on the wall of one of the little churches—No. B3) gives more credibility to the hypothesis according to which the Scandinavians who reached Dobrudja may have been in the service of Kievan prince Sviatoslav, during his ambitious campaign that started in 968.<sup>19</sup>

Along the way the Varangians could have come into contact with Romanians. A precise proof of such contacts—albeit a violent one—is provided by a memorial stone set at Sjonhem on the Isle of Gotland, by the couple of Rodvisl and Rodelf for their son Rodfos, killed by “Vlachs (*Blakumen*) during his trip abroad”. The stone with runes datable to the mid-eleventh century does not provide any other information about the place where the Varangian Rodfos met the *Blakumen*, but it was probably situated somewhere east of the Carpathians.<sup>20</sup> The writing on the stone at Sjonhem is the oldest source in which the Romanians outside the Carpathian range are mentioned.

The divisions and the conflicts among the Slav tribes facilitated the penetration of the Scandinavian groups east of the continent, and they even gained power in some important centres. The old Russian chroni-

<sup>18</sup> I. Barnea, “Предварительные сведения о каменных памятниках Басараби (Обл. Добруджа),” *Dacia*, NS, 6 (1962), p. 311; idem, “Monumentele de artă creștină descoperite pe teritoriul Republicii Populare Române,” *Studii teologice*, IInd Ser., 27 (1965), nos. 3–4, p. 171; R. Theodorescu, “Byzance, Balkans, Occident dans la civilisation roumaine aux X<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècles,” *Cahiers de civilisation médiévale, X<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècles* 15 (1972), no. 4, p. 273; Davidson, *Viking Road*, pp. 244–246; P.-M. Iliescu, “Spår av vikingatid i Rumänien,” in *Bysans och Norden. Acta för Nordiska forskarkursen i bysantinsk konstvenskap 1986*, ed. E. Piltz (Uppsala, 1989), pp. 196–200, figs. 7–10.

<sup>19</sup> A. Fetisov, I. Galkova, “The ‘Rurikid sign’ from the B3 Church at Basarabi-Murfatlar,” *Apulum* 44 (2007), pp. 299–314.

<sup>20</sup> J. G. Liljegren, *Run-urkunder* (Stockholm, 1833), p. 180; S. B. F. Jansson and E. Wessén, *Gotlands runinskrifter*, I (Stockholm, 1962), pp. 263–268; T. Snaedal, I. Jansson, “Gotländska runinskrifter 900-talets slut-ca 1100,” in *Gutar och vikingar*, ed. I. Jansson (Stockholm, 1983), pp. 429–432, fig. 4; S. B. F. Jansson, *Runes in Sweden*, trans. P. Foote (Gidlunds, 1987), p. 63. See also E. Lozovan, “Vikings et Valaques au Moyen Age,” *Revue internationale d’onomastique* 15 (1963), no. 2, p. 111–114; V. Spinci, “Informații despre vlahi în izvoarele medievale nordice, I,” *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 1, pp. 58–60; M. G. Larsson, “Rusernas rike. Nordborna och Rysslands födelse,” in idem, *Vikingar i Osterled* (Stockholm, 1999), pp. 71–72 and 169; F. Pintescu, “Presences de l’element viking dans l’espace de la romanité orientale en contexte méditerranéen,” *Studia Antiqua et Archaeologica* 8 (2002), pp. 260–264 and 268.

cle claims that in the mid-ninth century the Varangians forced several Slav and Finnic tribes to pay a tribute to them, and they imposed their domination on Novgorod, through Rurik, and on Kiev, through Askold and Dir. In 860 the latter attacked Constantinople with 200 ships, but the attack failed because of an unfortunate storm.<sup>21</sup> The Empire was confronted with a new naval power coming from a direction along which it had not been attacked before. Within a century the Varangians that ruled the Rus' principalities were assimilated by the Slav population, in a process similar to that suffered by the Scandinavians who settled in Normandy and southern Italy. By conquering the neighbouring Slav tribal unions and detaching them from the Khazar hegemony during the rule of Oleg (882–912), who had driven Askold and Dir out of Kiev, the authority and prestige of the Kievan state grew higher. In the early tenth century, in eastern Europe the balance of powers changed, with the Pechenegs and the Kievan Rus' emerging strongest, whereas the Khazar Kaghannate was weakening. Such phenomena had consequences for the Romanian society as well.

The complexity of the military-political situation in the Lower Danube area was produced not only by the appearance of the new states in eastern Europe, but primarily by the traditional factors in that part of the continent. Both the Byzantine Empire and the Bulgarian Tsarate had had ambitions concerning their supremacy over the Lower Danube area. The disputes between Byzantium and the Bulgars over that area had started as soon as the latter settled in the north of the Balkan Peninsula. Although the Empire had gradually withdrawn from its western boundaries because of the penetration of the Slavs and the Bulgars in regions on the right bank of the Danube, the Byzantine rulers had not abandoned the idea of revenge and of recovered control over the Danube Delta. They aimed to materialize their naval supremacy

---

<sup>21</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 19; *Ip.let.*-2, col. 15 (where the attack is dated in 866). See also A. Vasiliev, *The Russian Attack on Constantinople* (Cambridge, Mass., 1946); G. Vernadsky, "The problem of the early Russian campaigns in the Black Sea area," *The American Slavic and East European Review* 8 (1949), pp. 1–9; H. Ahrweiler, "Les relations entre les Byzantins et les Russes au IX<sup>e</sup> siècle," in eadem, *Byzance: les pays et les territoires* (Variorum Reprints) (London, 1976), no. VII, pp. 44–70; A. N. Sakharov, "The 'diplomatic recognition' of Ancient Rus (860 A.D.)," *Soviet Studies in History* 17 (1979), no. 4, pp. 36–98; Pritsak, *Origin.*, pp. 174–182; C. Zuckerman, "Deux étapes de la formation de l'ancien État russe," in *Les centres proto-urbains*, pp. 102–104; G. Schramm, *Altrusslands Anfang Historische Schlüsse aus Namen, Wörtern und Texten zum 9. und 10. Jahrhundert* (Freiburg im Breisgau, 2002), pp. 243–254.

in the Black Sea, even when the military circumstances did not favour a resumption of Byzantine domination over Scythia Minor.<sup>22</sup>

During Krum's rule (803–814) the balance in the Balkans was decisively deteriorating because of the Bulgar successes. The cup out of which the Bulgarian ruler drank after his victories was made from the skull of Emperor Nicephorus I, killed in battle against the Bulgars in 811. The death of the emperor did not put an end to the confrontation. Two years later, the inhabitants of Adrianople, threatened with starvation by a long siege, opened it's the city gates to Krum's armies, who promptly banished 10,000 or 12,000 of them to the lands north of the Danube. The human element was extremely valuable in the Middle Ages; in the Balkans, forced colonization was current practice, frequently employed and constantly improved by the Byzantine Empire itself. Victims of that system would become, among others, the Vlachs around Constantinople, who were expatriated, by imperial orders, to the shores of Asia Minor about 1285–1286.<sup>23</sup> In an anonymous chronicle on the rule of Leo V the Armenian (813–820) it is mentioned that the banished Adrianopolitans were taken to the “Bulgaria beyond the river Istros” (Βουλγαρία ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Ἰστρου ποταμοῦ),<sup>24</sup> words which—taken *ad litteram* by Symeon Magister<sup>25</sup>—indicate the Bulgar Khanate's desire of imposing its rule north of the river.

The precise location of the lands to which the Greeks from Adrianople were removed is not revealed by any sources. As a consequence, some believe the prisoners were transferred to the Bugeac,<sup>26</sup> others

<sup>22</sup> N. Bănescu, *Bizanțul și romanitatea de la Dunărea de Jos* (Bucharest, 1938); I. Barnea, “Dobrogea între anii 681–971,” in *DID*, III, pp. 7–12; P. Diaconu, “La Dobroudja et Byzance à l'époque de la genèse du peuple roumain (VII<sup>e</sup>–X<sup>e</sup> siècles),” *Pontica* 14 (1981), pp. 217–220; Curta, *Southeastern Europe*, pp. 81–110.

<sup>23</sup> Georgii Pachymeris *De Michaelae et Andronico Paleologis libri tredecim*, ed. Im. Bekker, II (Bonn, 1835), p. 106; Georges Pachymères, *Relations historiques*, III, ed. A. Failler (Paris, 1999), pp. 121–122.

<sup>24</sup> Scriptor incertus, *Historia de Leone Bardae Armenii filio*, in Leonis Grammatici *Chronographia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1842), pp. 345–346.

<sup>25</sup> Symeonis Magistri *Annales*, in Teophanes continuatus, Ioannes Cameniata, Symeon Magister, Georgius Monachus, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1838), pp. 615–616. On the forceful removal of the inhabitants of Adrianople by Krum, see also *Menologium Graecorum Basilii Porphyrogeniti imperatoris jussu editum*, in *PG*, CXVII (1894), col. 275–278; *Synaxarium Ecclesiae Constantinopolitanae*, ed. H. Delehaye, in *Proplaeum ad Acta Sanctorum novembris* [63] (Brussels, 1902), col. 418; G. Moravcsik, “Sagen und Legenden über Kaiser Basileios I,” *Dumbarton Oaks Papers* 15 (1961), pp. 71–78 and 117–119.

<sup>26</sup> V. N. Zlatarski, *История на българската държава презъ средните векове*, I, 1 (Sofia, 1918), pp. 339–340 and 449; A. Decei, “Români din veacul al IX-lea pînă în al XIII-lea în lumina izvoarelor armenești,” in idem, *Relații româno-orientale*,

that they moved to the Romanian Plain.<sup>27</sup> In fact, both locations are possible, and unfortunately the archaeological investigations have been inconclusive in this respect. Without rigorous control by the Bulgar garrisons, the deported people could have reached the Danube easily, at a place from where the Byzantine ships could have repatriated them, since the Bulgars did not possess a naval force. For a quarter of a century the Bulgar control over the north-Danubian regions proved efficient. But we doubt that the deported Greeks ever gave up the idea of moving back to their country, or that the Byzantine rulers were not interested in helping them. During that period, a Greek inscription on a stone column erected by khan Omurtag mentions the organizing of an expedition which, after crossing the southern part of Moldavia reached the Dnieper (τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Δάναπρην), where the *koran* Okorses found his death. The aim of the Bulgarian expeditions is not revealed by the lapidary text, but it is supposed to have been an attack on the Hungarian hordes.<sup>28</sup> Another column dating from the time of the same khan bears an inscription mentioning an expedition on the Tisza (Tisa), where the Bulgarian leader, the *zera-tarkan* Onegavon, had the same fate as Okorses.<sup>29</sup> Those epigraphic sources are also proofs of the Bulgarian expansionist tendencies north of the Danube.

---

ed. M. Popa (Bucharest, 1978), pp. 49–50; Gh. I. Brătianu, “‘Bulgaria de dincolo de Dunăre’ în izvoarele bizantine,” in *Omăgiu lui Ioan Lupăș la împlinirea vârstei de 60 de ani* (Bucharest, 1943), p. 130; Barnea, “Dobrogea,” in *DID*, III, pp. 13 and 29; P. Chirnoaga, *Istoria Daciei și continuitatea daco-romană* (Madrid, 1971), p. 162; E. Mikhailov, “За руско-българската етническа граница до края на X век,” *Annuaire de l’Université de Sofia. Fac. de Phil. et d’Hist., L-III Hist.* 65 (1971), p. 197; V. Tărkova-Zaimova, *Долни Дунав—гранична зона на византийския запад* (Sofia, 1976), p. 19; W. Treadgold, *The Byzantine Revival, 780–842* (Stanford, 1988), pp. 202–203. A similar opinion can be found in R. Browning, “Byzantines in Bulgaria—late 8th–early 9th centuries,” in *Studies on the Slavo-Byzantine and West-European Middle Ages. In memoriam Ivan Dujčev* (Sofia, 1988), p. 35, who believed the bulk of the prisoners from Adrianople moved to a region “somewhere in southern Bessarabia or Moldavia”.

<sup>27</sup> W. Miller, “The rise and fall of the first Bulgarian Empire,” in *The Cambridge Medieval History*, IV, *The Eastern Roman Empire (717–1453)* (Cambridge, 1936), p. 232; P. Diaconu, “Istoria Dobrogei în unele lucrări străine recente (I),” *RI* 29 (1976), no. 6, p. 936; D. Gh. Teodor, “Quelques aspects concernant les relations entre Roumains, Byzantins et Bulgares aux IX<sup>e</sup>–X<sup>e</sup> siècles n.è.,” *AIIA* 24 (1987), no. 2, pp. 9–14.

<sup>28</sup> G. Fehér, *A bolgár-török műveltség emlékei és magyar őstörténeti vonatkozásai/Les monuments de la culture protobulgare et leurs relations hongroises* (Budapest, 1931), p. 146; V. Beševliev, “Les inscriptions protobulgares (Suite),” *Byzantion* 28 (1958) (*Mélanges Rodolphe Guiland*), pp. 264–270; idem, *Die protobulgarischen Inschriften* (Berlin, 1963), pp. 281–285.

<sup>29</sup> Beševliev, “Les inscriptions,” pp. 270–272; idem, *Die protobulgarischen Inschriften*, pp. 285–287. See also Fehér, *A bolgár-török műveltség*, p. 146.

After Omurtag's death (831) the general political situation turned against the Bulgars, so that in 837 the population banished from Adrianople decided to move back to their native places by the help of the Greek fleet. A Bulgar "count" crossed the Danube to stop them but he was defeated, and another army with the same task did not succeed in crossing the river, probably because it was stopped by the Byzantine ships. The Bulgars asked Hungarian horsemen in the north of the Black Sea for help, but the latter were defeated too, so the deported people succeeded in getting aboard the ships.<sup>30</sup> From that success of the people of Adrianople in coming back to Thracia it results that the Bulgars no longer kept permanent troops in the Lower Danube Plain. Under the circumstances, the weakening of the Bulgarian position on the left bank of the river appears as natural, so their rule must have been only nominal.

North of the Danube the Bulgars had succeeded in incorporating some territories on the left of the Tisza for a longer period, those that had belonged to the Avars but were taken away from them after the Avaric Kaghanate had collapsed under the attacks of the Frankish armies.<sup>31</sup> In the opinion of several historians, Transylvania had also been under Bulgar control,<sup>32</sup> a point of view primarily based on information

<sup>30</sup> Georgii Monachi *Vitae imperatorum recentiorum*, in Theophanes continuatus, pp. 817–819; Leo Grammaticus, pp. 231–233.

<sup>31</sup> K. I. Grot, *Моравия и мадъяры съ половини IX до начала X века* (Записки Историко-Филологического Факультета Императорского С.-Петербургского Университета, IX) (St. Petersburg, 1881), p. 82 ff.; V. Hóman, *Geschichte des ungarischen Mittelalters*, I (Berlin, 1940), pp. 89–90; V. Beševliev, *Die protobulgarische Periode der bulgarischen Geschichte* (Amsterdam, 1981), pp. 280–283; S. Brezeanu, "La Bulgarie d'au-delà de l'Ister" à la lumière des sources écrites médievales," *Études balkaniques* (1984), 4, pp. 122–125 and 129–132; G. Kristó, "К вопросу о болгарском владычестве на Альфельде в IX в.," *Доклади*, 6, *Българските земи в древността. България през средновековиет* (Sofia, 1987), pp. 265–272.

<sup>32</sup> A. D. Xenopol, *Une énigme historique. Les Roumains au Moyen Age* (Paris, 1885), pp. 56–58; idem, *Istoria românilor din Dacia Traiană*, I, 4th ed. V. Mihailescu-Bîrliba (Bucharest, 1985), pp. 315–320; J. L. Pič and A. Amlacher, "Die Dacischen Slaven und Csergeder Bulgaren," *Sitzungsberichte der königlichen böhmischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, Phil.-histor.-philolog. Classe* (1888), pp. 221–223; D. Onciul, "Teoria lui Roesler," in idem, *Scrieri istorice*, I, ed. A. Sacerdoțeanu (Bucharest, 1968), pp. 142 and 205–209; I. I. Nistor, "Autohtonia daco-romanilor în spațiul carpato-dunărean," *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 24 (1941–1942), pp. 257–258; Decei, "Românii din veacul al IX-lea," pp. 53–54; C. Daicovicu, *La Transylvanie dans l'Antiquité* (Bucharest, 1945), pp. 212–213; A. Grecu [P. P. Panaitescu], "Bulgaria la nordul Dunării în veacurile al IX–X-lea," *Studii și cercetări de istorie medie* 1 (1950), pp. 229–230; V. Tărkova-Zaimova, "Ролята и административната организация на т. нар. 'Отвъддунавска България,'" *Studia Balcanica* 2 (1970), pp. 67–68; A. Madgearu, "Salt trade and warfare: the rise of the Romanian-Slavic military

concerning the German king Arnulf's demand to the Bulgars in 892 that they not permit any more selling of salt to Moravia, a country with which he was at war.<sup>33</sup> Because there were no salt mines in Bulgaria, a justified conclusion could be drawn that the salt sold to Moravia came from Transylvania. In order to hinder the selling of salt to Moravia, the Bulgars would not have had to watch the salt mines, but only the commercial routes across the Tisza valley, which they had temporarily under their control. In any case, when the Hungarians came to Transylvania there was no direct Bulgarian political rule there.<sup>34</sup>

For the time being, many specialists do not find very convincing the archaeological evidence<sup>35</sup> invoked in support of the idea of Bulgar control over Transylvania or its southern part.<sup>36</sup> The main reason is that since certain components of the material culture on both sides of the Danube are similar, influences from the Balkan Peninsula are the most that may be assumed. For the period immediately preceding (and even for the one following) the Hungarian settlement in the Tisza Plain, if there were any indications of state formations connected with or even dependent on Bulgaria,<sup>37</sup> those are to be found within the Carpathian

---

organization in early medieval Transylvania," in *East Central and Eastern Europe in the Early Middle Ages*, ed. F. Curta (Ann Arbor, 2005), pp. 106–109.

<sup>33</sup> *Annales Fuldenses*, in *MGH, SS*, I, ed. G. H. Pertz (1826), p. 408.

<sup>34</sup> C. Szalontai, "Kritische Bemerkungen zur Rolle der Bulgaren im 9. Jahrhundert in der Grossen Ungarischen Tiefebene und in Siebenbürgen," *A Móra Ferenc Múzeum Évkönyve, Studia Archaeologica* 6 (2000), pp. 263–286.

<sup>35</sup> I. M. Țiplic, "Necropolele medievale timpurii din Transilvania (sfârșitul sec. IX—prima jumătate a sec. XII)," in *Relații interetnice în Transilvania. Secolele VI–XIII*, eds. Z. K. Pinter, I. M. Țiplic, M. E. Țiplic (Bucharest, 2005), pp. 134–137 and 145; A. Dragotă, *Aspecte de multiculturalitate spirituală. Rît și ritual funerar în Transilvania și Europa Centrală și de Sud-Est (Secolele IX–XI)* (Alba Iulia, 2006), pp. 27–33; Z. K. Pinter, I. M. Țiplic, A. Dragotă, "Scurtă istorie a Transilvaniei—perspective arheologice," in Z. K. Pinter, A. Dragotă, I. M. Țiplic, *Piese de podoabă și vestimentație la grupurile etnice din Transilvania (sec. VII–XII)* (Alba Iulia, 2006), pp. 42–48.

<sup>36</sup> M. Comșa, "Die bulgarische Herrschaft nördlich der Donau während des IX. und X. Jh. im Lichte der archäologischen Forschungen," *Dacia*, NS, 4 (1960), pp. 395–422; I. Barnea, "Bulgarii," in *Ist. Rom.*, I, pp. 763–764; M. Rusu, "Note asupra relațiilor culturale dintre slavi și populația romanică din Transilvania (sec. VI–X)," *Apulum* 9 (1971), p. 722; I. Fodor, "Die Bulgaren in den ungarischen Ländern während der Ansiedlungsperiode der Ungarn," *Mitteilungen des Bulgarischen Forschungsinstitutes in Österreich* 6 (1984), no. 2, p. 47 ff.; U. Fiedler, "Bulgars in the Lower Danube region. A survey of the archaeological evidence and of the state of current research," in *The Other Europe in the Middle Ages. Avars, Bulgars, Khazars, and Cumans*, ed. F. Curta (Leiden-Boston, 2008), pp. 159–162.

<sup>37</sup> Anonymus, pp. 46–51, 70–71, 81–83, 89–91, and 103–105; Simon de Keza, p. 172; *CPict*, pp. 32, 148; *Chronicon Posoniense*, ed. A. Domanovszky, in *SRH*, II, p. 36; *Chronicon Monacense*, ed. A. Domanovszky, in *SRH*, II, p. 67. See also Decei, "Românii"

arch (*terra Ultransilvana*), the region where Vlachs/Romanians and Slavs (*Blasi et Sclavi*) were ruled by Gelou.<sup>38</sup>

The attestation of Gelou's principality reveals that, a long time before the medieval states of Moldavia and Wallachia were founded, the Romanian society had been in an advanced stage of political organization. The fortresses within the principality, with moat-and-wall defences and a complex system of stockades, affirm the Romanians' military qualities, which is recorded in the written sources as well.

The influence of Bulgaria on the territories on the left bank of the Danube, Wallachia and Moldavia, was different in intensity, duration and extension from that exercised in the Tisza Plain. That the Bulgars controlled southern Moldavia results from what Emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus has to say about the Pechenegs of his own time, namely that they possessed a part of Bulgaria.<sup>39</sup> In the mid-tenth century, that area could only have been north of the Danube. A *de plano* rejection of any possibility of Bulgar rule over the left bank of the Lower Danube<sup>40</sup> ignores the political developments of the age of Krum and Omurtag and contradicts the information of the written sources discussed above.

On the other hand, it is equally wrong to assume that ninth-century Bulgaria included all territories on the left bank of the Danube now inhabited by Romanians. Such a view is a result of an exaggerated evaluation of the Bulgar expansion beginning with Krum. According to such theories, the whole territory of Moldavia, as well as of Wallachia, outer-Carpathian Transylvania, Banat and Maramureş were supposedly parts of ninth-century Bulgaria, whose northern limits would thus have been the upper course of the Prut,<sup>41</sup> the lower<sup>42</sup> or the middle course

---

(see above, n. 26), pp. 66–69; J. Steinhübel, “Velká Morava a Bulharsko o dobe Rastislava a Svätopluka,” in *Svätopluk 894–1994*, eds. R. Marsina, A. Ruttkay (Nitra, 1997), pp. 207–211.

<sup>38</sup> Anonymus, pp. 65–69; *Die “Gesta Hungarorum” des anonymen Notars*, ed. G. Silagi, with the collab. of L. Veszprémy (Sigmaringen, 1991), pp. 74–79.

<sup>39</sup> *DAI*, pp. 54–55. See also Tărkova-Zaimova, “Ролята,” p. 65; P. S. Koledarov, “Историческата география на Северозападното Черноморие по данните на Константин Багренородни,” *Исторически преглед* 33 (1977), no. 3, p. 55.

<sup>40</sup> Iorga, *Histoire*, II, p. 387–389; N. Bănescu, *Vechiul stat bulgar și Țările Române* (offprint from *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 29) (Bucharest, 1947).

<sup>41</sup> Tărkova-Zaimova, “Ролята,” p. 65.

<sup>42</sup> V. I. Kozlov, “Към въпроса за хронологията на паметниците от североизточната провинция на Първото българско царство (върху материал от разкопките на селищата в степта на междуречието Дунав-Днестър),” in *Българите в Северното Причерноморие*, V (Veliko Tărnovo, 1996), pp. 109–125; I. Mladjov, “Trans-Danubian

of the Dniester,<sup>43</sup> or even to the springs of the Dniester.<sup>44</sup> Ninth-century Bulgaria would thus have included a good part of what would later become the Rus' principality of Galicia (Halych).

Concerning most of the dikes erected in the outer-Carpathian areas, some historians maintained that they were built during the First Bulgarian Tsarate and were meant to mark its borders. Such a function has been assumed in cases such as those of the dike in southern Bessarabia running between Vadul lui Isac on the Prut and the Sasicul Mare Lake; the dike in central Bessarabia, between the Prut and the Dniester, connecting Leova and Tighina; the so-called "Brazda lui Novac," a dike crossing Wallachia longitudinally from Hinova to the river Cricov; as well as the dike in southern Wallachia, between the Olt and Lake Greaca.<sup>45</sup> Without denying that possibility, one must note that some of those earthworks have been dated to the Roman period, while others were superficially and inconclusively investigated, their dating being uncertain. At the same time, there are opinions holding that the above-mentioned north-Danubian areas were inhabited by a Slavo-Bulgarian population, and that the ethnic border separating the latter from the eastern Slavs must have been the course of the Dniester. The assertion is based on some ambiguous narrative sources, on the attribution of the Dridu culture exclusively to the Bulgars, and on the attestation, in the late Middle Ages, of some south-Slavic toponyms in the Carpathian-Danubian area;<sup>46</sup> but there is no argument in favour of the idea that those place-names were in use at the end of the first millennium.

About AD 900, the areas around the Danube mouths became the scene of some troublesome events, generated by multiple conflicts. On

---

Bulgaria: reality and fiction," *Byzantine Studies*, N.S., 3 (1998), pp. 95–96 and maps 2–3; N. D. Russev, "Славяне, болгары и болгарское государство," in N. Tel'nov, V. Stepanov, N. Russev, R. Rabinovich, "И... разошлись славяне по земле". *Из истории Карпато-Днестровских земель VI–XIII вв.* (Kishinev, 2002), pp. 91–131.

<sup>43</sup> Mikhailov, "За руско-българската етническа граница" (see above, n. 26), pp. 191–192; P. S. Koledarov, in *A Historical Geography of the Balkan*, ed. F. W. Carter (London–New York–San Francisco, 1977), pp. 304–305; P. R. Magocsi, *Historical Atlas of East Central Europe* (Seattle–London, 1998), pp. 10–11.

<sup>44</sup> D. Angelov, *Die Entstehung des bulgarischen Volkes* (Berlin, 1980), map 3; H.-J. Härtel, R. Schönfeld, *Bulgarien: vom Mittelalter bis zur Gegenwart* (Munich, 1998), map on p. 34.

<sup>45</sup> R. Rashev, *Старобългарски укрепления на Долния Дунав (VI–XI в.)* (Varna, 1982), pp. 20–32; Fiedler, "Bulgars in the Lower Danube region", pp. 162–165.

<sup>46</sup> Mikhailov, "За руско-българската етническа граница" (see above, n. 26), p. 189 ff.



the one hand, there was a Byzantine-Bulgarian conflict, on the other hand, there were convulsions in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea, caused by fighting between the Pechenegs and the Hungarians, a development which coincided in time with an aggressive move of the Kievan Rus' principality against the Slavic tribes in the Dniester region, the purpose of which must have been the control of the Black Sea trade.

During the last years of the ninth century, after a temporary diminution of the armed external conflicts under the rule of Boris I (Michael) (852–889), influenced by the extremely important act of Christianisation, Bulgaria experienced a new period of strength under tsar Symeon (893–927). His classical and theological education in Constantinople did not prevent him from leading a policy of war, especially directed against Byzantium. The hostilities started shortly after Symeon ascended to the throne, and they continued to the detriment of the Byzantines, who were simultaneously waging war against the Arabs. The Byzantine diplomacy appealed to the Hungarian hordes that inhabited areas north of the Black Sea.<sup>47</sup> A few light ships, under the command of Niketas Skleros, were sent to the Danube to contact the Hungarians and to buy their co-operation, guaranteed by the delivery of some hostages, according to custom.<sup>48</sup>

<sup>47</sup> On the Byzantine-Bulgarian war and on the Hungarians' and Pechenegs' attacks, see Zlatarski, *История* (see above, n. 26), I, 2 (Sofia, 1927), p. 292 ff.; C. A. Macartney, *The Magyars in the Ninth Century* (Cambridge, 1930), pp. 177–188; P. Mutafchiev, *История на българския народ (681–1323)*, ed. V. Gjuzev (Sofia, 1986), pp. 177–183; B. Hóman and Gy. Szekfű, *Magyar történet*, I (Budapest, 1935), pp. 115–119 (B. Hóman); G. Sergheraert (C. Gerard), *Syméon le Grand (893–927)* (Paris, 1960), p. 59 ff.; M. Voinov, “Промяната в българо-византийските отношения при цар Симеон,” *Известия на Института за История* 18 (1967), pp. 147–202; G. Sankova-Petkova, “Der erste Krieg zwischen Bulgarien und Byzanz unter Simeon und die Wiederaufnahme der Handelsbeziehungen zwischen Bulgarien und Konstantinopel,” *Byzantinische Forschungen* 3 (1968) (*Polychordia. Festschrift Franz Dölger zum 75. Geburtstag*, ed. P. Wirth), pp. 80–113; cadem, “Първата война между България и Византия при цар Симеон и възстановяването на българската търговия с Цариград,” *Известия на Института за История* 20 (1968), pp. 167–200; R. Browning, *Byzantium and Bulgaria* (London, 1975), pp. 57–60; J. V. A. Fine, Jr., *The Early Medieval Balkans. A Critical Survey from the Sixth to the Late Twelfth Century* (Ann Arbor, 1983), pp. 137–140; Gy. Kristó, *Hungarian History in the Ninth Century*, trans. Gy. Novák (Szeged, 1996), pp. 182–190; S. Tougher, *The Reign of Leo VI (886–912). Politics and People* (Leiden–New York–Cologne, 1997), pp. 174–183; J. Howard-Johnston, “Byzantium, Bulgaria and the peoples of Ukraine in the 890s,” *Материали по археологии, истории и етнографии Таврии* 7 (2000), pp. 342–356.

<sup>48</sup> Theophanes continuatus, *Chronographia*, in Theophanes continuatus (see above, n. 25), p. 358; Georgius Monachus (see above, n. 30), p. 853; Leo Grammaticus (see

The fact that the Byzantine messengers met the Hungarians at the Danube clearly proves that for that moment—corresponding to AD 895—one cannot even speak of a nominal Bulgarian domination of southern Moldavia. The region close to the Danube Delta was controlled by the Hungarian tribes, which were hardly pressed from the east by the Pechenegs. The presence of the Hungarians on the Lower Danube at the end of the ninth century seems to be also confirmed, among others, by the Old Church Slavonic Life of St. Methodius.<sup>49</sup>

In the mid-eleventh-century geography of the Persian Gardizi, who made use of older Oriental texts, it is mentioned that the Hungarian (*Madjgharyan/Mağğariyān/M.ğf.rijān*) territory was flanked by two rivers, whose names were noted differently by various editors: *Itil/Etel/Atel/Atil* and *Duba/Duna*.<sup>50</sup> The same sources were partially known to the Arab al-Marvazi's treatise of geography, written about the year 1120, in which the rivers bordering the area occupied by the Hungarians were named *Runa/Rūxū* and *Atil*.<sup>51</sup> In the universal chronicle by Shūkrullākh, written in Persian about the middle of the sixteenth century, the names of the two rivers are *Wefa/Wjā* and *Etel/Ātīl*.<sup>52</sup>

Most of specialists have identified them as the Danube and the Don, respectively,<sup>53</sup> a conclusion drawn from the fact that in the Latin-Hungarian chronicles of the thirteenth–fifteenth centuries the Don is

---

above, n. 24), p. 267; Skylitzes, p. 176; Kedrenos, II, p. 255; Joannis Zonarae *Annales*, in *PG*, CXXXV (1887), col. 67–68.

<sup>49</sup> *Vita Methodii*, in *Prameny k dejinam Vel'kej Moravy*, ed. P. Ratkoš (Bratislava, 1968), pp. 244 and 465; Fr. Dvornik, *Les légendes de Constantin et de Méthode vues de Byzance*, 2nd ed. (Hattiesburg, Mississippi, 1969), p. 392.

<sup>50</sup> P. Martínez (trans.), *Gardizi's two chapters on the Turks*, *AEMA* 2 (1982), p. 160; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 174 (Gardīzī); I. Zimonyi, *Muslimische Quellen über die Ungarn vor der Landnahme. Das ungarische Kapitel der Ġaihānī-Tradition*, trans. T. Schäfer (Herne, 2006), p. 37. See also A. Decei, "Asupra unui pasajiu din geograful persan Gardizi (a. 1050)," in *Fraților Alexandru și Ion I. Lăpedatu la împlinirea vârstei de 60 de ani* (Bucharest, 1936), pp. 881–883; V. Minorsky, "Commentary," in *Hudūd al-'Ālam* (see above, n. 9), pp. 320–321; B. N. Zakhoder, *Каспийский свод сведений о Восточной Европе, II, Булгары, мадьяры, народа Севера, печенеги, русы, славяне* (Moscow, 1967), pp. 52–53.

<sup>51</sup> Sharaf al-Zaman Tahir Marvazi, *On China, the Turks and India*, ed. V. Minorsky (London, 1942), p. 35; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 252.

<sup>52</sup> J. de Hammer, *Sur les origines russes. Extraits des manuscrits orientaux* (St. Petersburg, 1827), p. 47; Zimonyi, *Muslimische Quellen*, p. 47 (Šükrullāh). See also *ibidem*, pp. 45 ('Aufī) and 49 (Muhammad Kātib; Hağğī Halīfa).

<sup>53</sup> Marquart, *Osteuropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge* (see above, n. 1), pp. 27–32; K. Czeglédy, "A XI. századi magyar történelem főbb kérdései," *Magyar nyelv* 41 (1945), nos. 1–5, pp. 36–37; T. Lewicki, "Мадьяры у средневековых арабских и персидских географов," in *VEDS*, pp. 56–58.

consistently called *Etlul*.<sup>54</sup> However, all Arab and Persian medieval texts gave the name *Itil* or *Etil* to the Volga.<sup>55</sup> There is therefore no reasons to believe that Gardizi and al-Marvazi had in mind any other river. It is difficult to imagine that the territory under Hungarian control could have stretched all the way from the Volga to the Danube.

Since their first temporary presence north of the Lower Danube, in 837, under the circumstances already described, and until the late ninth century, there had been consistent motion to the west of the Hungarian population accompanied by the Kabars in the so-called Atelkuzu/Etelkuzu (Ἀτελκούζου/Ἐτελ καὶ Κουζου). The toponym represents, in the opinion of some specialists, a distortion of the old Hungarian term *Etel-küzü*, meaning “between the rivers” or “Mesopotamia”.<sup>56</sup> According to another point of view, Etelkuzu could be a corruption of *Etelköz*, which meant “the Don country”. As we have shown, by the term *Etlul*, the Hungarians “from Scythia” meant the Don. Etelköz is supposedly similar to such place-names in present-day Hungary as Rábaköz, Bodrogeköz, Sárköz, which derive from the names of the rivers Rába (Raab), Bodrog and Sár, respectively.<sup>57</sup> It is known that in the mid-tenth century Atelkuzu was inhabited by the Pechenegs, whose settlements, taken over from the Hungarians, were located in the basins of five rivers: Baruh, Kubu, Trullos, Brutos and Seretos (Βαρούχ,

<sup>54</sup> Simon de Keza, p. 146; *Chronicon Posoniense* (see above, n. 37), pp. 15, 16, 24; *CPict*, pp. 5, 118. See also *Chronicon Henrici de Mügeln germanice conscriptum*, ed. E. Travník, in *SRH*, II, pp. 109, 120.

<sup>55</sup> Zimonyi, *Muslimische Quellen*, pp. 195–205.

<sup>56</sup> E. Sayous, *Les origines et l'époque païenne de l'histoire des Hongrois* (Paris, 1874), p. 14; *DAI*, II, p. 148; D. Sinor, “The outlines of Hungarian prehistory,” *Cahiers d'Histoire Mondiale* 4 (1958), no. 3, p. 526; I. Fodor, *Die grosse Wanderung der Ungarn von Ural nach Pannonien* (Budapest, 1982), p. 256; C. di Cavo, *L'arrivo degli Ungheresi in Europa e la conquista della patria* (Spoleto, 1995), pp. 83–84; M. Eggers, “Beiträge zur Stammesbildung und Landnahme der Ungarn, 1, Die ungarische Stammesbildung,” *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 23 (1997), p. 26; C. Zuckerman, “Les Hongrois au pays de Lebedia: une nouvelle puissance aux confins de Byzance et de la Khazarie ca 836–889,” in *Byzantium at War (9th–12th C.)* (Athens, 1997), pp. 55–56. According to another point of view, *Atelkuzu/Etel kai Kuzu* would have meant “riverland”. See G. Huxley, “Steppe-peoples in Konstantinos Porphyrogenetos,” *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 34 (1984), p. 82.

<sup>57</sup> P. Váczy, “Etelköz—die frühere Heimat der Ungarn,” *Mitteilungen des Archäologischen Instituts der Ungarischen Akademie der Wissenschaften* 14 (1985), pp. 169–175. See also L. Benkö, “Le sedi degli Ungari nel secolo nono,” in *Popoli delle steppe: Unni, Avari, Ungari* (Settimane di Studio del Centro Italiano di Studi sull'Alto Medioevo, XXXV), II (Spoleto, 1988), p. 295.

Κουβού, Τροῦλλος, Βρούτος, Σέρετος),<sup>58</sup> identified with the Dnieper, the South Bug, the Dniester, the Prut and the Siret.<sup>59</sup>

According to some recent opinions, the Hungarian tribes' movement to the west, as well as other populations' migrations, was largely caused by the alteration of the environment in the steppes in eastern Europe. Paleo-geographic investigations have established an alternation in the pluvial regime between the forest and the steppe regions of eastern Europe. During the rainy seasons in the forest areas, the level of the Caspian Sea would rise considerably, flooding the neighbouring areas and the Volga Delta, whereas the steppes suffered from drought. The period of climatic humidity in the east-European steppes, beginning with the fourth century, appears to have stimulated agricultural activities even among populations with predominantly pastoral preoccupations. It lasted until the late thirteenth century, interrupted for about one hundred years in the ninth-tenth centuries. Such perturbations caused floods in the Caspian areas, the waters covering large cultivated surfaces and, probably, even the capital of the Khazar Kaghannate, thus contributing to its decay and fall under the strikes of the Rus' and the Uzes. At the same time, the dry climate in the steppes caused great economic damage to the nomad and semi-nomad pastoralists, which accounts, at least partially, for the migratory tendencies of the Hungarians, Pechenegs and Uzes towards areas unaffected by drought.<sup>60</sup> In addition, numerous movements of the nomad cattle breeders of the Eurasian steppes, between the last centuries of the first millennium and

<sup>58</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 174–175.

<sup>59</sup> Grot, *Моравия* (see above, n. 31), pp. 248–260; G. Kuun, *Relationum Hungarorum cum Oriente gentibusque orientalis originis. Historia antiquissima*, I (Claudiopoli, 1893), pp. 186–189; Marquart, *Ostewropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge*, p. 33; G. Schramm, *Nordpontische Ströme* (Göttingen, 1973), pp. 19–20, 49–52, 93–102; I. Božilov, H. Dimitrov, “About the historical geography of the northern Black Sea coast,” *Bulgarian Historical Review* 13 (1985), no. 4, p. 58; S. L. Tóth, “Megjegyzések a Levadia-Etelköz problémához,” in *A Kárpát-medence és a steppe*, ed. A. Márton (Budapest, 2001), pp. 127–136.

<sup>60</sup> L. N. Gumilev, “New date of the history of the Khazars,” *ActaArchHung* 19 (1967), nos. 1–2, pp. 70–73 and 76–82; idem, “А казáрок утóдай,” *Történelmi szemle* 11 (1968), nos. 1–2, pp. 12–13; P. Veres, “Le rôle de facteurs écologiques et économiques dans la conquête du bassin des Carpathes par les Hongrois en 896,” in *Les questions fondamentales du peuplement du bassin des Carpathes du VIII<sup>e</sup> au X<sup>e</sup> siècle*, ed. L. Gerevich (Budapest, 1972), pp. 213–230; idem, “Les antécédents de la conquête du pays par les Hongrois,” in *Les anciens Hongrois et les ethnies voisines à l'Est*, ed. I. Erdélyi (Budapest, 1977), pp. 299–303.

the first half of the second one of our time, might have been caused by long periods of drought.<sup>61</sup>

After the agreement concluded with the Hungarians, the Byzantine fleet got them across the Danube, by removing the lines set by the Bulgars in order to resume anchoring on the right bank.<sup>62</sup> As the Bulgarians were engaged in battles with the imperial armies, they could not give an efficient response to the Hungarian attack, leading to great losses. Confronted with this danger, Symeon proved his prodigious diplomatic ability. On the one hand, he agreed to pay a ransom for the Bulgars taken prisoners by the Hungarians, in order to make the latter withdraw, on the other hand, he offered peace to emperor Leo VI the Wise (886–912). Succeeding in both attempts, he got the necessary respite to fight each of his adversaries. He made an alliance with the Pechenegs against the Hungarians. Together, they invaded and destroyed the Hungarian settlements, as the best Hungarian troops were away on a distant expedition.<sup>63</sup>

This defeat and the Bulgar-Pecheneg threat made the Hungarians leave Atelkuzu and look for settlements in the Middle Danubian Plain, a crucial decision, probably premeditated for a long time, which meant their survival as a nation. The confrontations between the Hungarians and the Pechenegs should not merely be regarded as a consequence of Symeons' instigations, as some chronicles and modern historians suggest. The imminence of the conflict became apparent when the Khazars and the Oghuz/Uzes managed to defeat the Pechenegs, who were thus forced to leave the east-European steppes in order to find a new homeland for themselves.<sup>64</sup> At about the same time, the Hungarians were crossing the Danube to attack Bulgaria. Thus, the usual chain reaction of migrations took place: the Uzes drove the Pechenegs away, and the latter did the same to the Hungarians.

---

<sup>61</sup> L. N. Gumilev, "Роль климатических колебаний в истории народов степной зоны Евразии," *История СССР* (1967), no. 1, pp. 53–66.

<sup>62</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 250–253.

<sup>63</sup> *Annales Fuldenses* (see above, n. 33), pp. 412–413; *Reginonis Chronicon*, in *MGH, SS*, I (1826), pp. 599–600; *Annales Mettense*, in *Gombos*, I, pp. 156–157; *FHB*, XII (1965), pp. 45 (*Sigeberti Chronica*), 143 (*Annalista Saxo*); *Theophanes continuatus*, p. 387; *Symeon Magister*, p. 722; *Georgius Monachus*, p. 879; *DAI*, I, pp. 176–177, 250–253; *Leo Grammaticus*, p. 293; *Skylitzes*, p. 201; *Kedrenos*, II, pp. 282–284; *Zonaras*, col. 67–68.

<sup>64</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 166–167 and 170–171.

Though the written sources are unanimous in considering that the western extremity of the areas controlled by the Hungarian tribal union during the period prior to 896 was represented by the Danube and the Siret basin, the archaeological data do not attest to their presence on the two rivers. Several metal items with analogies among Hungarian antiquities have been found in the Carpathian-Dniestrian area.<sup>65</sup> Those items include cordiform pendants—with a protuberance at the lower part—found in the Dridu-culture settlements of Dănești (Vaslui county) (Romania) (Fig. 8/2)<sup>66</sup> and Hansca (Ialoveni county) (Republic of Moldova).<sup>67</sup> They belong to a category of objects very common among the tenth- and eleventh-century finds in present-day Hungary. All the above-mentioned metal items were in use with other eastern-central European populations as well, so they cannot be said to be specifically Hungarian. However, they could reflect contacts between the local people and the Hungarians.

Also, besides other populations, the Hungarian and Kabar tribes seem to have played a certain part in the adoption by communities of the Dridu culture of clay kettles, a ceramic form which appears sporadically in Moldavia on settlement sites in Bârlălești, Epurenii (Vaslui county), Spinoasa (Iași county) (Romania), Calfa (Anenii Noi county) (Republic of Moldova), etc.<sup>68</sup> Their presence, like that of the above-mentioned cordiform pendants, suggest an some form of exchange between the steppe populations and the natives, but it does not necessarily indicate the presence of the steppe populations on any of the above-mentioned sites. Furthermore, in the Carpathian-Dniestrian area, no signs of destruction of the Dridu-type settlements have been found that might be connected to possible Hungarian raids. On the contrary, the late ninth century was a period of prosperity of the Dridu communities in the Romanian Plain and the Bugeac.

<sup>65</sup> S. Riabtseva, R. Rabinovich, “К вопросу о роли венгерского фактора в Карпато-Днестровских землях в IX–X вв.,” *Revista arheologică*, SN, 3 (2007), nos. 1–2, pp. 205–223.

<sup>66</sup> M. Petrescu-Dîmbovița and Em. Zaharia, “Sondajul arheologic de la Dănești,” *MCA* 8 (1962), p. 56 and fig. 9/1.

<sup>67</sup> Riabtseva, Rabinovich, “К вопросу о роли венгерского фактора,” p. 209, fig. 2/1.

<sup>68</sup> V. Spinei, “Considerații cu privire la populația locală din zona centrală și meridională a Moldovei în secolele XI–XII,” *CI*s 12–13 (1981–1982), pp. 197–198; idem, “Die Tonkessel aus dem Karpaten-Dnestr-Raum,” in *Die Keramik der Saltovo-Majaki Kultur und ihrer Varianten*, ed. C. Bálint (Varia Archaeologica Hungarica, III) (Budapest, 1990), pp. 327–342.

Several graves found in Moldavia and Wallachia have been attributed to the Hungarians. Some of those, such as the ones in the Republic of Moldova, at Brănești (Orhei county), Hansca-“Căprăria” (Ialoveni county), in Romania, at Grozești, Holboca, Probota (Iași county), Moscu (Galați county), Movilița (Ialomița county), in Ukraine, at Fridensfeld (Mirnopolie) (Sărata district) and Șabalat (Sadovoe) (Billhorod-Dnistrovs’kyi district) (Odessa region), have been considered as probably Hungarian,<sup>69</sup> whereas the grave at Frumușica (Florești county) (Republic of Moldova) has been considered as certainly Hungarian.<sup>70</sup> As I have already stated, the ethnic attribution proposed for those complexes cannot be accepted, since it is not based on adequate knowledge of the relevant archaeological material. The graves of Brănești and Hansca-“Căprăria” belong to native cemeteries, and the others are specific to either the Pechenegs or the Cumans. Actually, the ritual features and the inventory of those graves differ to an important extent from those of the Hungarian graves found in the Pannonian Plain.<sup>71</sup> By the items of its inventory, it is only the grave of Grozești (dated to the ninth-tenth century) that could belong, in principle, either to the Hungarians or to the Pechenegs. Unfortunately, the precise circumstances of the discovery were not written down, so the attribution remains uncertain.<sup>72</sup> In regions north of the Danube Delta no burial assemblages have so far been proved to have doubtless connections with the ninth-century migration of the Hungarians. Nevertheless, I will not a priori exclude the possibility that such assemblages may be found in the course of extended field investigations in the future.

---

<sup>69</sup> I. Bóna, “Daciatól Erdőelvéig. A népvándorlás kora Erdélyben (271–896),” in *Erdély története*, co-ord. B. Köpeczi, I, eds. L. Makkai, A. Mócsy (Budapest, 1986), p. 198; Róna-Tas, *Hungarian and Europe* (see above, n. 4), pp. 118–119. See also Bálint, *Die Archäologie der Steppe* (see above, n. 3), pp. 138–139, 142–143; P. Langó, “Archaeological research on the conquering Hungarians: A review,” in *Research on the Prehistory of the Hungarians: A Review*, ed. B. G. Mende (Varia Archaeologica Hungarica, XVIII) (Budapest, 2005), p. 299; L. Kovács, “Remarks on the archaeological remains of the 9th–10th century Hungarians,” in *ibidem*, pp. 352–353.

<sup>70</sup> I. Fodor, “Zur Problematik der Ankunft der Ungarn im Karpatenbecken und ihrer Fortlaufenden Besiedlung,” in *Interaktionen des mitteleuropäischen Slawen und andere Ethnika im 6.–10. Jahrhundert. Symposium Nové Vozokany 3.–7. Oktober, 1983* (Nitra, 1984), pp. 100–102; Bóna, “Daciatól Erdőelvéig,” p. 198.

<sup>71</sup> V. Spinei, “Migrația ungarilor în spațiul carpato-dunărean și contactele lor cu românii în secolele IX–X,” *AM* 13 (1990), pp. 110–114.

<sup>72</sup> *Idem*, *Realități etnice și politice în Moldova Meridională în secolele X–XIII. Români și turanici* (Iași, 1985), p. 113 and figs. 29 and 48/6, 9–15.

According to the present stage of research, there is no evidence of a permanent presence of the Hungarians in the lands to the west from the Dniester River. This does not of course exclude the possibility that those lands were crossed by the Hungarian warriors, while on a plundering raid, such as that requested by the Byzantines against Bulgaria in 895. In fact, there are several clues indicating that during the last quarter of the ninth century, the Lower Danube area was not within the Hungarian sphere of interest. At that time, the Hungarians were mostly preoccupied with expeditions into central Europe, an opportunity that might have given them the idea of conquering a new country, according to some opinions, as their remaining in Atelkuzu had exposed them to the Pecheneg attacks, and the Balkans were closed to them by the still powerful Bulgarians. There is some information about the Hungarian and Kabar raids into central Europe, the former being mentioned in 862 in the eastern province of the Carolingian Empire,<sup>73</sup> then in 881 around Vienna,<sup>74</sup> in 892 and 894 in Moravia and Pannonia;<sup>75</sup> their allies—under the name of *Cowari*—participated in a simultaneous expedition in 881,<sup>76</sup> but with a itinerary different from that of the Hungarians in the same year. The expedition of 894 presented an anonymous analyst of the Fulda monastery the opportunity to launch a real diatribe against the invaders, to whom the

---

<sup>73</sup> *Annales Alamannici*, in *MGH,SS*, I (1826), p. 50; *Annales Weingartenses*, in *ibidem*, p. 66; *Annales Sangallenses Maiores*, in *ibidem*, p. 76; Hincmari Remensis *Annales (Annales Bertiniani)*, in *ibidem*, p. 458.

<sup>74</sup> *Annales ex annalibus Iuvavensibus antiquis excerpti*, ed. H. Besslau, in *MGH,SS*, XXX, 2 (1926), p. 742.

<sup>75</sup> *Annales Fuldenses* (see above, n. 33), pp. 408, 410. On the late ninth-century Hungarian and Kabar raids into Central Europe, see Macartney, *Magyars* (see above, n. 47), *passim*; S. de Vajay, *Der Eintritt des ungarischen Stammesbundes in die europäische Geschichte (862–933)* (Mainz, 1968), pp. 10–23; S. Tóth, “Kabarok (kavarok) a 9. századi magyar törzsszövetségben,” *Századok* 118 (1984), no. 1, pp. 105–113; L. E. Havlik, “Mähren und die Ungarn am Ende des 9. und am Anfang des 10. Jahrhunderts,” in *Baiern, Ungarn und Slawen im Donauraum*, eds W. Katzinger and G. Marckhgott (Linz, 1991), pp. 105–110; Ch. R. Bowlus, *Franks, Moravians, and Magyars. The Struggle for the Middle Danube, 788–907* (Philadelphia, 1995), pp. 235–244; I. Panic, *Początki Węgiei. Polityczne aspekty formowania się państwa i społeczeństwa węgierskiego w końcu IX i w pierwszej połowie X wieku* (Cieszyn, 1995), pp. 44–65; Kristó, *Hungarian History*, pp. 175–182; M. G. Kellner, *Die Ungarneinfälle im Bild der Quellen bis 1150. Von der “Gens detestanda” zur “Gens ad fidem Christi conversa”* (Munich, 1997), p. 10–16; J. Giesler, *Der Ostalpenraum vom 8. bis 11. Jahrhundert. Studien zu archäologischen und schriftlichen Zeugnissen*, 2, *Historische Interpretation* (Rahden/Westf., 1997), pp. 52–54; M. Eggers, “Baiern, Pannonien und die Magyaren,” in *Baiern—Ungarn. Tausend Jahren*, eds H. W. Wurster, M. Treml, and R. Loibl (Passau-Regensburg, 2001), pp. 65–70.

<sup>76</sup> *Annales ex annalibus Iuvavensibus*, p. 742.



most reprobable atrocities were assigned: “The Avars, who are called Hungarians, penetrated across the Danube at this time, and did many terrible things. They killed men and old women outright, and carried off the young women alone with them like cattle to satisfy their lusts, and reduced the whole of Pannonia to a desert.”<sup>77</sup>

To the same effect is the information in the old Russian and Hungarian chronicles relating that on their way to Pannonia the Hungarian tribes passed by Kiev.<sup>78</sup> Equally relevant in this respect is the chronicle of Reginald of Prüm, which states that the decisive battle between the Pechenegs and the Hungarians—a battle that compelled the latter to leave the steppe lands north of the Black Sea—was fought near the mouth of the Don.<sup>79</sup> According to some, the name *Dentumoger* (Dentümogyer), which was given to the Hungarians’ ancestors,<sup>80</sup> etymologically meant “Hungarians from the Don.”<sup>81</sup> So, it is much more plausible that the main settlements of the Hungarians, before their crossing the northern Carpathians, lay in the Lower Dnieper basin and west of the Don, even if their active vanguard horsemen had reached the mouths of the Danube.

<sup>77</sup> *Annales Fuldenses*, p. 410; *The Annals of Fulda*, trans. T. Reuter (Manchester–New York, 1972), p. 129.

<sup>78</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 21; *Ip.let.*-2, col. 17–18; *Троицкая летопись*, ed. M. D. Priselkov (Moscow–Leningrad, 1950), p. 61; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 270; *Летописный сборникъ именуемый Тверская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XV (St. Petersburg, 1863), col. 34; *Симеоновская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XVIII (St. Petersburg, 1913), pp. 9–10 (where the event is wrongly dated to 6405 [= 897] or 6406 [= 898]); Anonymus, pp. 42–44; Simon de Keza, p. 165; *CPict*, pp. 18, 133; *Chronicon Monacense* (see above, n. 37), p. 61; Henric de Mügeln (see above, n. 54), p. 127. See also G. Vernadsky, M. de Ferdinandy, *Studien zur ungarische Frühgeschichte, I. Lebedia/II. Álmos* (Munich, 1957), pp. 10–14 and 26–29; T. Senga, “Some problems of Magyar–East Slavic relations in the ninth century,” *Uralica. Journal of the Uralic Society of Japan* 2 (1974), pp. 48–51; Gy. Kristó, I. H. Tóth, “Az orosz évkönyvek néhány magyar vonatkozásáról,” *Acta Universitatis Szegediensis de Attila József Nominatae. Acta Historica* 103 (1996), pp. 21–28.

<sup>79</sup> Reginonis *Chronicon* (see above, n. 63), p. 600.

<sup>80</sup> Anonymus, p. 39.

<sup>81</sup> Gy. Györfly, *Kronikáink és a magyar östörténet* (Budapest, 1948), pp. 55–58; O. Pritsak, “From the Sabirs to the Hungarians,” in *Hungaro-Turcica. Studies in honour of Julius Németh*, ed. Gy. Káldy-Nagy (Budapest, 1976), p. 23 (reprint in idem, *Studies in Medieval European History* [Variorum Reprint] [London, 1981]); P. B. Golden, “The peoples of the Russian forest belt,” in *The Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia*, ed. D. Sinor (Cambridge, 1990), p. 243; I. Boba, “Commentationes ad Anonymi Belae regis Gesta Hungarorum,” in *Varia Eurasiatrica. Festschrift für Professor András Róna-Tas* (Szeged, 1991), pp. 14–17; I. Fodor, “The Hungarian conquest,” in *The Ancient Hungarians. Exhibition Catalogue*, eds. I. Fodor and L. Révész, M. Wolf, I. M. Nepper (Budapest, 1996), p. 14.

Concerning the older supposition, occasionally still mentioned, according to which part of the ancient Hungarian inhabitants of Atelkuzu supposedly stayed in Moldavia after 896, being the ancestors of the Csangos,<sup>82</sup> it has no scientific support whatsoever. According to the most trustworthy investigations in the field of history and linguistics, the Csangos came across the eastern slopes of the eastern Carpathians from eastern Transylvania several centuries after the Hungarians moved from Atelkuzu to Pannonia.<sup>83</sup> Whereas Atelkuzu was situated east of the Siret basin and of the Danube, the Csangos who settled in Moldavia were grouped especially between the Carpathian and the Siret, where they influenced the toponymy and the hydronymy.<sup>84</sup>

The passage of the Hungarians towards the Pannonian Plain took place through the Verecke pass in the northern Carpathians, along one of the most important connecting roads between the east-European Plain and the Middle Danube basin, a road used by many other migrators, including the Mongols in 1241. That route had previously been known to the Hungarians. In their movement the Hungarians passed through the territories of the future Galician Principality,<sup>85</sup> thus avoiding Moldavia. The written sources and archaeological proofs do not indicate the passes in the eastern Carpathians or the Danube Iron Gates as means of penetration for the Hungarians and Kabars

<sup>82</sup> For a refutation of this idea, see P. Râmneanțu, *Die Abstammung der Tschangos* (Sibiu, 1944), p. 11; F. Pozsony, *Ceangăii din Moldova* (Cluj[-Napoca], 2002), p. 9; A. Coșa, "Problema originii catolicilor din Moldova," *Carpica* 31 (2002), pp. 81–82.

<sup>83</sup> R. Rosetti, "Despre unguri și episcopiile catolice din Moldova," *AARMSI*, Ser. II, 27 (1904–1905), pp. 282–287; L. Mikecs, "Ursprung und Schicksal der Tschango-Ungarn," *Ungarische Jahrbücher* 23 (1943), pp. 247–280; Râmneanțu, *Die Abstammung, passim*; G. Bakó, "Contribuții la problema originii ceangăilor," *SAI* 4 (1962), pp. 37–44; E. Wagner, "Ungarn (Csangonen) in der Moldau und in der Bukowina im Spiegel neuerer rumänischer Quelleneditionen," *Zeitschrift für Siebenbürgische Landeskunde* 3 (74) (1980), no. 1, pp. 27–35; B. Gunda, "Ursprung der Moldau-Ungarn," in *Forschungen über Siebenbürgen und seine Nachbarn. Festschrift für Attila T. Szabó und Zsigmond Jakó*, I, eds. K. Benda, Th. v. Bogyay, H. Glassl, Z. K. Lengyel (Munich, 1987), pp. 267–285; R. Baker, "On the origin of the Moldavian Csángos," *The Slavonic and East European Review* 75 (1997), no. 4, pp. 658–680.

<sup>84</sup> Rosetti, "Despre unguri," pp. 247–254; G. Lüko, "Havaselve és Moldva népei a X–XII. században," *Ethnographia népélet* 46 (1935), nos. 1–4, pp. 96–101; Mikecs, "Ursprung und Schicksal," pp. 262–266; M. Arends and D. Bein, "Katholische Ungarn in der Moldau. Eine Minderheit im historischen Kontext einer ethnisch und konfessionell gemischten Region," *Saeculum* 54 (2003), no. 2, pp. 213–267.

<sup>85</sup> Anonymus, pp. 47–48; Simon de Keza, p. 165; Andreae Danduli *Chronica per extensum descripta*, aa. 46–1280 d.C., ed. E. Pastorello, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, NE, XII, 1 (Bologna, 1938), p. 53.

towards Pannonia, as some scholars have tried to argue.<sup>86</sup> The most suitable pass between South Moldavia and Transylvania—the one of Oituz—was not at all fit for carts without special arrangements, even during the Middle Ages. Nothing is known about such arrangements in the late ninth century.

In contradiction to other sources is only the information in *Chronicon Pictum Vindobonense* concerning the killing of Almos, Arpad's father, in *Erdelw*, and the temporary stay of his troops in that region, before entering Pannonia.<sup>87</sup> But this information is far from being reliable. In *Gesta Hungarorum*, written a century and a half before, Almos is no longer signalled as acting in Transylvania, but at the siege of the Ung fortress.<sup>88</sup> It is possible that the form *Erdelw*/*Érdö-elve* (= "beyond the forest"/"Transylvania") was not present in the source compiled by *Chronicon Pictum Vindobonense*, but rather *erdö* (= "forest"), a name which was used for the Ung woodland,<sup>89</sup> where the Hungarians went immediately after crossing the Verecke pass. On the other hand, the idea of Almos's contribution to the conquest of the new country does not seem entirely likely, being probably a fancy of the chroniclers at the Arpadians' royal court, who were tempted to idealize the past of the dynasty. It is important to note in this respect that no mention is made of Almos during the last years of the Hungarian presence in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea. All Byzantine sources pertaining to that period indicate that Arpad and Cusan (Kurszan) were at that time leading the Hungarian tribal union.<sup>90</sup>

The efforts that have been made to sustain the idea of a crossing of the eastern Carpathians by the Hungarians reflect, in most cases, the tendency of trying to prove by any means that the occupation of

---

<sup>86</sup> Hóman, *Geschichte* (see above, n. 31), p. 101; Vajay, *Der Eintritt* (see above, n. 75), p. 26; I. Dienes, *Die Ungarn um die Zeit der Landnahme* (Budapest, 1972), p. 8; L. Makkai, in *Die Geschichte Ungarns*, ed. E. Pamlényi (Budapest, 1971), p. 13; Th. v. Bogyay, *Grundzüge der Geschichte Ungarns*, 3rd ed. (Darmstadt, 1977), p. 20; Gy. Györffy, "Honfoglalás, megtelepedés és kalandozások," in *Magyar őstörténelmi tanulmányok*, eds. A. Bartha, K. Czeglédy, A. Róna-Tas (Budapest, 1977), p. 126; T. Senga, "La situation géographique de la Grande-Moravie et les Hongrois conquérants," *Jahrbücher für Geschichte Osteuropas*, NF, 30 (1982), no. 4, pp. 535 and 539; Bóna, "Daciatól Erdőelvéig" (see above, n. 69), p. 198 ff.; Gy. Kristó, *Magyarország története, 895–1301* (Budapest, 1998), pp. 48–53.

<sup>87</sup> *CPict*, pp. 19, 133–134. See also *Chronicon Posoniense* (see above, n. 37), p. 32.

<sup>88</sup> Anonymus, pp. 50–52.

<sup>89</sup> G. Popa-Lisseanu, "Introducere," in *CPict*, pp. XXXII and 134 with n. 1.

<sup>90</sup> Georgius Monachus (see above, n. 30), p. 853; Leo Grammaticus (see above, n. 24), p. 267; *DAI*, I, pp. 172–173.

Transylvania had taken place long time before it really happened. By admitting such an idea we would ignore, among others, the information in the *Gesta Hungarorum*, according to which the state formations led by Gelou, Glad and Menumorut were attacked by the Hungarians from the west, after their conquest of Pannonia.<sup>91</sup> On the other hand, according to all written and archaeological proofs, the penetration and the domination of Transylvania by the Hungarians was made step by step from west to east.<sup>92</sup> The Szeklers—who, according to some opinions that are gaining unanimous acceptance, must be seen as descendants of the Kabars<sup>93</sup>—had also reached the eastern parts of Transylvania coming from the west.<sup>94</sup>

The confrontation of the Hungarian tribal confederation with the populations of Pannonia and Transylvania gave rise to the first written mentions about the Romanians north of the Danube, in two different sources, for which the possibility of interference was impossible: *The Russian Primary Chronicle*, elaborated in the second decade of the twelfth century at the Pecherskaia Monastery near Kiev, and *Gesta Hungarorum*, written around the year 1200 by Magister P., the so-called Anonymous, who was the notary of King Bela [III] (1172–1192). Both works say that, when the Hungarians came in, they encountered Vlachs and Slavs.<sup>95</sup> The matter contained in the two chronicles was the object of

<sup>91</sup> Anonymus, pp. 65–67, 89–91, 103–105.

<sup>92</sup> K. Horedt, *Contribuții la istoria Transilvaniei în secolele IV–XIII* (Bucharest, 1958), pp. 109–131; Pascu, *Trans.*, I, pp. 95–98; M. Rusu, “The autochthonous population and the Hungarians on the territory of Transylvania in the 9th–11th centuries,” in *Relations*, pp. 207–213; V. Spinci, “Migrația ungarilor” (see above, n. 71), pp. 120–121; Th. Năgler, “Transilvania între 900 și 1300,” in *Istoria Transilvaniei*, I (până la 1541), eds. I.-A. Pop, Th. Năgler (Cluj–Napoca, 2003), pp. 212–215.

<sup>93</sup> J. Németh, *La question de l'origine des Sicules* (offprint from *AECO* 6 [1940], nos. 1–4) (Budapest, 1941), pp. 11–13; G. Györffy, “Formation d'États au IX<sup>e</sup> siècle suivant les “Gesta Hungarorum” du Notaire Anonyme,” in *Nouvelles études historiques*, I (Budapest, 1965), p. 41; Th. v. Bogyay, “Über Herkunft, Gesellschaft und Recht der Székler,” *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 2 (1970), p. 22; Z. Kordé, “Kabars, Sicules et Petchenègues. Les Hongrois et les auxiliaires militaires (IX<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècle),” in *Les Hongrois et l'Europe: conquête et intégration*, eds. S. Csernus and K. Korompay (Paris–Szeged, 1999), p. 235; Brook, *Jews of Khazaria* (see above, n. 8), pp. 212–213; N. Kálnoky, *Les constitutions et privilèges de la noble nation sicule. Acculturation et maintien d'un système coutumier dans la Transylvanie médiévale* (Budapest–Paris–Szeged, 2004), pp. 35–38.

<sup>94</sup> B. Hóman, “Der Ursprung der Siebenbürger Székler,” *Ungarische Jahrbücher* 2 (1922), no. 1, p. 9 ff.; Iorga, *Histoire*, III, pp. 125–128; Németh, “La question,” *passim*; Pascu, *Trans.*, I, pp. 109–114; A. Simon, *În jurul Carpaților. Formele și realitățile genezei statale românești* (Cluj–Napoca, 2002), pp. 236–238.

<sup>95</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 21 and 210; *Iplet.*-2, col. 18; Anonymus, pp. 45, 65, 66, and 90. On Vlachs in the *Russian Primary Chronicle* and the *Gesta Hungarorum*, see V. D. Koroliuk,

some fierce and not always objective historiographical disputes launched by the enemies of the Daco-Roman continuity on the left side of the Danube, controversies which we are not going to discuss here. The essence is that Robert Roesler<sup>96</sup> and his disciples say that the ethnonym *Vlachs* (*Blasi*, *Blaci*, *Влахи*) would not refer to the Romanians, but to the Franks or, possibly, to the Italians.<sup>97</sup> The main incrimination against Anonymous is that he transposed his contemporary historical realities to the previous periods, the first point of contention being his mention of the Romanians and the Cumans during the Hungarians' settlement in Pannonia. Because, as concerns the Cumans, it is quite evident that their first contacts with the Arpadian Kingdom were recorded only towards the end of the eleventh century, *mutatis mutandis* it was admitted that the Vlachs must have been signalled in the chronicle around the year 900 by mistake as well.

---

*Волохи и славяне русской летописи* (Kishinev, 1971); idem, "Славяне, вlahи, рымляне и римские пастухи венгерско 'Анонима'," in *IVESV*, pp. 139–158; D. Dvoichenko-Markov, "The Russian Primary Chronicle and the Vlachs of Eastern Europe," *Byzantion* 49 (1979), pp. 175–187; R. Windisch, "Die frühesten Erwähnungen der Rumänen und ihrer Vorfahren in den antiken, byzantinischen, mittelalterlichen und neueren Quellen," *BBR* 8 (12), NS (1980–1981), pp. 169–176; S. Brezeanu, "'Romani' și 'Blachi' la Anonymus. Istorie și ideologie politică," *RI*s 34 (1981), no. 7, pp. 1313–1340; idem, "'Romans' and 'Blachi' with 'Anonymous'. History and political ideology," *Transylvanian Review* 5 (1996), no. 2, pp. 15–43; V. Ciociltan, "Observații referitoare la românii din cronica Notarului Anonim al regelui Bela," *RI*s 40 (1987), no. 5, pp. 445–453; D. Deletant, "Ethno-History or Mytho-History? The Case of Chronicler Anonymous," in idem, *Studies in Romanian History* (Bucharest, 1991), pp. 332–351; I.-A. Pop, *Românii și maghiarii în secolele IX–XIV. Geneza statului medieval în Transilvania* (Cluj–Napoca, 1996), pp. 84–91 and 131–141; A. Madgearu, *Românii în opera Notarului Anonim* (Cluj–Napoca, 2001), pp. 53–72 and 117–149; M. Pillon, "L'exode des "Sermésiens" et les grandes migrations des Romains de Pannonie dans les Balkans durant le Haut Moyen Âge," *Études balkaniques* (2002), no. 3, pp. 112–114; T. Sălăgean, *Țara lui Gelou. Contribuții la istoria Transilvaniei de Nord în secolele IX–XI* (Cluj–Napoca, 2006), pp. 58–67.

<sup>96</sup> R. Roesler, *Romänische Studien. Untersuchungen zur älteren Geschichte Romäniens* (Leipzig, 1871), pp. 79–82. Gy. Kristó ("Rómaiak és vlahok Nyeszternál és Anonymusnál," *Századok* 112 [1978], pp. 623–661) has admitted that the Vlachs from Anonymous' and Simon de Keza's chronicles would be Romanians, but he viewed their mention as anachronistic.

<sup>97</sup> M. Gyóni, "Les Volochs des Annales primitives de Kiev," *Études slaves et roumaines* 2 (1949), no. 1, pp. 56–92; L. S. Domonkos, "The multiethnic character of the Hungarian Kingdom in the later Middle Ages," in *Transylvania. The Roots of Ethnic Conflict*, eds. J. F. Cadzow, A. Ludanyi, L. J. Elteto (Kent, Ohio, 1983), pp. 51–53; P. Váczy, *A magyar történelem korai századaiából*, ed. F. Glatz (Budapest, 1994), p. 94; L. Makkai, "Erdély a középkori Magyar Királyságban (896–1526)," in *Erdély története* (see above, n. 69), I, pp. 301–304; I. Boba, "Vlachs in the history of Central Europe. A 'Problemstellung,'" *Kelet és Nyugat között. Történeti tanulmányok Kristó Gyula tiszteletére*, ed. L. Koszta (Szeged, 1995), pp. 95–102.

The elaborate studies of the last decades on the text *Gesta Hungarorum* have revealed that most of the reports are not inventions, but they have a real support, even if here and there some anachronisms occurred. Among other things, the opinion according to which Anonymous often designated the Kabar-Khazars by the name of *Cumani* has been almost generally accepted.<sup>98</sup> Its double significance comes perhaps from the fact that the ethnonym *kun*, translated by Anonymous into Latin by the term *Cumani*, designated in the Hungarian language not only the Cumans, but the Turkic nomads in general, including the Kabars.<sup>99</sup> In other passages of his chronicle the substitution of the Pechenegs by the related Cumans is obvious. In the case of the Cumans there is no longer suspicion concerning the plausibility of the text belonging to the Anonymous notary of the king Bela. But nobody has thought of exculpating him of the “error” of having mentioned the Vlachs at the end of the ninth century and the beginning of the tenth, and of recognizing that in reality he had not been wrong, a fact which dampens the prestige of the venerable scholar. Another Hungarian chronicler from the second half of the thirteenth century—Simon of Keza—stated that after the Szeklers had helped the Hungarians to conquer the Pannonian Plain, they received from them territories in the mountainous regions neighbouring those belonging to the Vlachs (*Blacki*), from whom they seem to have adopted their writing system.<sup>100</sup>

Generally, those who contest the Daco-Roman continuity claim that the Romanian populations west of the Balkan Peninsula infiltrated slowly and progressively to the north of the Danube, directly into the Arpadian Kingdom, or even by making a detour through outer-Carpathian regions, with the consent or even at the solicitation of state

<sup>98</sup> Györfly, *Krónikáink* (see above, n. 81), pp. 124–125; idem, “Время составления Анонимом ‘Деяний венгров’ и степень достоверности этого сочинения,” in *Летописи и хроники. Сборник статей 1973 г.* (Moscow, 1974), p. 119; I. Erdélyi, “Les relations hungaro-khazaes,” *Studia et acta orientalia* 4 (1962), p. 40; H. Göckenjan, *Hilfswölker und Grenzwachter im mittelalterlichen Ungarn* (Wiesbaden, 1972), pp. 36–38; K. Mesterházy, “Honfoglalás kori keramiánk keleti kapcsolatai,” *Folia archaeologica* 26 (1975), p. 114.

<sup>99</sup> C. A. Macartney, “The Lives of the St Gerard,” in idem, *Studies on Early Hungarian and Pontic History* (Variorum Collected Studies Series), eds. L. Czigány and L. Péter (Aldershot-Brookfield-Singapore-Sidney, 1999), p. 93; Németh, “La question,” pp. 12–13; Györfly, *Krónikáink*, pp. 96, 125; idem, “A kun és komán népnév eredetének kérdéséhez,” *Antiquitas Hungarica* 2 (1948), nos. 1–2, pp. 173–176 (reprint in idem, *A magyarság keleti elemei* [Budapest, 1990], pp. 200–219).

<sup>100</sup> Simon de Keza, pp. 162–163. See also *CPict*, pp. 16, 130.

authorities, approximately between the year 1200 (or during the eleventh century, at the earliest) and the fourteenth century.<sup>101</sup> Undoubtedly, if in the period when Anonymous and Simon of Keza were writing their works the Vlachs had continued to flow from the Balkans towards Transylvania, or if their movement had begun only a couple of decades before, the two chroniclers might have been informed about that important event, especially because their position in the court circles offered them the possibility of access to all kinds of informative contemporary sources. It would have been incredibly strange to see an omission of the Romanian's migration—if it had really taken place—just at the moment when it was meant to play an essential role on the opposite bank of the Danube, in the formation of a state and in founding a dynasty well-known all over Europe, that of the Asens.

The fact that a migration of such proportions left not even the smallest trace in the places where it supposedly had started, or in the ones where it ended, remains inexplicable.<sup>102</sup> On the other hand, the eleventh-century Byzantine author Kekaumenos knew of clashes between Vlachs in Serbia and the Byzantine authorities. According to him, following those clashes, the Vlachs withdrew southwards, to Epirus, Macedonia, and Hellas, and not to the region north of the Danube.<sup>103</sup> An anonymous author at the beginning of the fourteenth century, supposed to be a French Dominican,<sup>104</sup> was also informed about an emigration of Romanian (*blazi*, *blachi*) shepherds from Pannonia towards the Balkans, again from the north towards the south, as a consequence of the coming of the Hungarians. That does not mean that there were no possible crossings of Vlachs from the Balkans to the left side of the Danube, taking into account that population exchanges from one side of the river to the other were frequent throughout history. Certain linguistic affinities prove the existence of contacts between speakers of

<sup>101</sup> For a presentation and refutation of such views, see A. Sacerdoțeanu, *Considerații asupra istoriei românilor în evul mediu* (Bucharest, 1936); I. Moga, *Păveri istorice ungrești privitoare la românii din Transilvania medievală* (Sibiu, 1941); I. Hurdubețiu, *Die Deutschen über die Herkunft der Rumänen* (Bucharest, 1977); N. Stoicescu, *Continuitatea românilor* (Bucharest, 1980); I. A. Pop, *Istoria Transilvaniei medievale de la etnogeneza românilor până la Mihai Viteazul* (Cluj-Napoca, 1997), pp. 73–152.

<sup>102</sup> I. Moga, *Les Roumains de Transylvanie au Moyen Âge* (Sibiu, 1944), pp. 16–17; Stoicescu, *Continuitatea*, pp. 186–187; idem, *O falsă problemă istorică—discontinuitatea poporului român pe teritoriul strămoșesc* (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 261–262.

<sup>103</sup> *Советы и рассказы Кекавмена/Cecaumeni Consilia et narrationes*, ed. G. G. Litavrin (Moscow, 1972), pp. 268–271.

<sup>104</sup> Anonymi Geographi *Descriptio Europae Orientalis* (IIR, II) (1934), pp. 17 and 42.

Romance languages on both sides of the river.<sup>105</sup> The displacements of Romanian-speaking populations from the right to the left side of the Danube could not have been significant, and they did not mean, as the supporters of the “migration theory” claim, the implantation of the Romanic element in the Carpathian-Danubian region; at the most, it could only indicate the reinforcement of that element.

Being aware of how feeble the theory was, which identified with Franks the Vlachs of the period of the so-called “taking of the homeland” (*honfoglalás*, *Landnahme*) by Hungarians, some have relatively recently put forward a new, yet aberrant hypothesis concerning the Romanian ethnogenesis. As no one has yet responded to this hypothesis, I feel obliged to reply, even though what we have to deal with is a more than doubtful opinion. According to that opinion, the ethnic names *Blac/Blac* and *Vlach* supposedly designated two distinct peoples, the former of Turkic, the latter of Latin origin. The *Blaci/Blasi* of Anonymus, the *Blacki* of Simon of Keza and Villehardouin, the *Blaci* of William of Rubruck, Roger Bacon and Johannes Schöner, or those of the Hungarian kings’ charters of 1222 and 1224—all of them among the oldest mentions of Romanians in history—would thus be nothing more than references to an obscure Turkic tribe named Bulaq, from the tribal union of the Qarluqs, who initially lived in the Ural area and in Bashkiria. The tribe was attested in the eleventh and twelfth centuries and after that only at the end of the sixteenth century, before having been conquered by the Russians. The presumed presence of the Bulaq population in Transylvania and the Balkan Peninsula was explained as the result of a migration taking place during the seventh century, in the company of the Onogur-Bulgars, who under Asparukh (Isperikh) later moved to settle south of the Danube.<sup>106</sup>

The idea of a correspondence between the Blacs in the Carpathian-Balkan area and the Bulaq tribe in the Ural Mountains was probably suggested to G. Bodor and L. Rásonyi by a remark made by William of Rubruck (Willem van Rubroek), the messenger of King Louis IX

<sup>105</sup> D. Macrea, *Probleme de lingvistică română* (Bucharest, 1961), *passim*; G. Ivănescu, *Istoria limbii române* (Iași, 1980), pp. 30–46; N. Saramandă, *Romanitatea orientală* (Bucharest 2004), *passim*; V. Arvinte, “Formarea limbii și poporului român în lumina cercetărilor recente,” in idem, *Studii de istorie a limbii române* (Iași, 2006), pp. 21–22 and 24.

<sup>106</sup> G. Bodor, “Egy krónikás adat helyes értelmezése,” *Magyar nyelv* 72 (1976), no. 3, pp. 268–271; L. Rásonyi, “Bulaqs and Oguzs in mediaeval Transylvania,” *AOH* 33 (1979), no. 2, pp. 129–143; idem, *Hidak a Dunán. A régi török népek a Dunánál* (Budapest, 1981), pp. 48–80; idem, *Tuna köprüleri* (Ankara, 1984), pp. 28–58.



to the Mongolian great khan. The Franciscan messenger signalled a population called *Illac*, beyond *Pascatur* (= Bashkiria), whose real name he considered to be *Blac*, the same name as that of the inhabitants of Asan's country, that is in the Vlach in Asenid Bulgaria (Second Bulgarian Tsardom): *Et iuxta Pascatur sunt Illac, quod idem est quod Blac, sed B nesciunt Tartari sonare, a quibus venerunt illi qui sunt in terra Assani. Utrosque enim vocant Illac, et hos et illos.*<sup>107</sup> William of Rubruck knew that the Bulgars of the Balkans were natives from *Bulgaria Magna*, that there was the so-called *Hungaria Magna* situated beyond *Etilia* (= the Volga), and that the languages of the Bashkirs and of the Hungarians were very much alike—a fact that actually clarifies the starting place of the Hungarians. The Franciscan diplomat appears to have been convinced, even if he did not make the point explicitly, that the Romanians originated in a way similar to that of their neighbours, that is through a migration from eastern Europe.<sup>108</sup> As a natural result, the historians that referred to the passages in Rubruck's travel narrations grasped the inadvertences they contain, and therefore suggested other identifications of the *Illac* population.<sup>109</sup>

Accepting the identification of the Turkic tribe Bulaq with the Vlachs mentioned by Anonymus, Simon of Keza, Villehardouin, and the other chronicles previously mentioned, would mean depriving the history of the Romanians not only of simple ethnonymical attestations, but also of a wealth of important events. The above mentioned remarks about the *Blaci*, *Blacki*, etc., cannot be detached from the other references to the Romanians, in which they are designated by names with slightly different spellings: *Βλάχοι*, *Vlachs*, *Völochs*, *Wlachen*, etc.; sometimes variations in that ethnonym occur even in reporting on the same events. Situations of that kind are to be found, for instance, in

<sup>107</sup> Rubruck, p. 219. See also Roger Bacon, *The Opus majus*, ed. J. H. Bridges, I (Oxford, 1897), p. 367.

<sup>108</sup> Rubruck, pp. 218–219. The idea was accepted by some historians who were either not objective or less acquainted with the history of Eastern Europe. On this passage, see A. Sacerdoțeanu, “Guillaume de Rubrouck et les Roumains au milieu du XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle,” *Mélanges de l'École Roumaine en France* (1929), no. 2, pp. 258–259.

<sup>109</sup> G. I. Brătianu, “Lak. O interpretare greșită a unui capitol din ‘Cartea lui Marco Polo,’” *CIs* 1 (1925), pp. 369–376; idem, *Recherches sur le commerce génois dans la mer Noire au XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Paris, 1929), pp. 295–300; Sacerdoțeanu, “Guillaume de Rubrouck,” pp. 262–271; P. Pelliot, *Notes sur l'histoire de la Horde d'Or* (Paris, 1949), pp. 147–151. For more details on this identification, see also V. Ciocîltan, “Wilhelm von Rubruks Angaben über Rumänen und Baschkiren im Lichte der orientalischen Quellen,” *Südost-Forschungen* 42 (1983), pp. 113–122.

the presentation of the Romanians' clashes with the Hungarians who had penetrated into Transylvania, made by Anonymus and by the old Russian chronicle, as well as in the case of the descriptions of the wars between Asenid Bulgaria and the Latin Empire, found in Frankish and Byzantine chronicles.<sup>110</sup> Such facts obviously lead to the conclusion that the forms *Blaci* and *Blacki* indicated the same population as the other forms derived from the ethnonym *Vlachs*, as the Romanians were called by other peoples throughout the Middle Ages.

Concerning the identification of *Blaci* as *Bulaq*, it is not the linguistic difficulties—confined to the elision of the *u* in the latter ethnonym—that are impossible to surpass, but those of a historical nature. There is not the a single narrative or archaeological find indicating that the *Bulaq* tribe might have migrated from their country towards the Carpathian-Balkan area. If, however, this was the case, it is impossible to explain how such an unimportant group was able to keep itself unassimilated for several centuries, while living among numerous and powerful tribes far from the places from which it had been displaced. It is well known that during the great migrations small communities were swallowed up quite fast by larger ones. It would also be surprising that the alleged *Bulaq* could have preserved their ethnical identity both in Transylvania and in the Balkans, even after Christianisation, while the Proto-Bulgars themselves, although in dominant political positions, were assimilated by the Slavs. At the same time, we doubt that the *Blacs/Vlachs* on both sides of the Danube, unlike the Hungarians, would have ever claimed their supposed Asian origin. Instead, according to the historical tradition recorded in the text of King Bela's Notary, the *Vlachs* in Pannonia were regarded as "the Romans' shepherds" (*Blachi ac pastores Romanorum*),<sup>111</sup> an idea that is to be found again, expressed identically, in an anonymous description of eastern Europe.<sup>112</sup> No matter the strength of imagination one could be endowed with, it is impossible to understand how could

---

<sup>110</sup> For details, see A. Cioranescu, *La tradition historique et l'origine des Roumains* (Bucharest, 1942); D. Gazdaru, "Los latinos de Oriente en monumentos literarios e históricos de la Edad Media," *Romanica*, La Plata, 2 (1969), pp. 43–75; A. Armbruster, *Der Donau-Karpatenraum in den mittel- und westeuropäischen Quellen des 10.–16. Jahrhundert* (Cologne–Vienna, 1990), pp. 28–34.

<sup>111</sup> Anonymus, p. 45.

<sup>112</sup> *Anonymi Geographi Descriptio*, pp. 17, 42. See also G. Popa-Lisseanu, *Continuitatea românilor în Dacia. Dovezi nouă* (offprint from *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 23 [1940], no. 9) (Bucharest, 1941), pp. 68–74; A. Armbruster, *La romanité des Roumains. Histoire d'une idée* (Bucharest, 1977), pp. 33–38.

a Turanic group from the Urals been labeled “the Romans’ shepherds,” a designation clearly implying a recognition of a Latin origin. On the other hand, it is known that the tribal union of the Qarluqs, made up of nine tribes, including that of the *B.laq/Bulāq*, migrated towards the “Islamic territories,”<sup>113</sup> therefore south and not west, in a period prior to the beginning of the twelfth century.

The untenable views of György Bodor and László Rásonyi recall some similar opinions of the World War I period, according to which the Vlachs were descendents of Romanised Turko-Tartars<sup>114</sup> (!), an idea that was rightly laughed at.<sup>115</sup> In addition, these standpoints have traits in common with the strange supposition that the Vlachs were the same as some Slavic speakers on the Volga, known as Volkhvy, which would also place the origin of the Romanians in the eastern extremity of Europe, from where they were supposed to emigrate to the Carpathian-Danubian area at the dawn of the Middle Ages<sup>116</sup> (!). Certainly, that bold supposition could not possibly enjoy the approval of medievalists.<sup>117</sup>

Among the oldest attestations of the countries of the Vlachs on the left side of the Danube, there is a quotation of a passage from a book of geography attributed to the Armenian Moses Khorenats’i, a source first brought to the attention of Romanian historiography by Aurel Decei, who dated it to the ninth century. That passage refers to an “unknown country called Balak,” situated in the neighbourhood of the “Sarmatians’ country” and of *Žagura* (*Zagora* = Bulgaria), i.e. in the north of the Danube.<sup>118</sup> According to the latest investigations, that geographical outlook might have been formulated in the seventh century by Ananias of Shirak (Shirakats’i), with only later copies of the work having been preserved. These later copies show signs of subsequent interpolations,<sup>119</sup> including the aforementioned passage. It is obvious

<sup>113</sup> Marvazi (see above, n. 51), p. 31; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 248.

<sup>114</sup> J. Peisker, “Die Abkunft der Rumänen,” *Zeitschrift des historischen Vereines für Steiermark* 15 (1917), nos. 1–4, pp. 160–205.

<sup>115</sup> L. Niederle, *Manuel de l’antiquité slave*, I, *L’histoire* (Paris, 1923), p. 70 with n. 1; Al. Philippide, *Originea românilor*, I (Iași, 1923), p. 840.

<sup>116</sup> R. A. Rabinovich, “Искушение ‘волошским орехом’ или Балканские волохи и русские волхвы,” *Stratum plus*, 5 (2000), 5, pp. 262–390.

<sup>117</sup> V. Spînci, *Universa Valachica. Români în contextul politic internațional de la începutul mileniului al II-lea* (Chișinău, 2006), pp. 48–49 (Addenda 1).

<sup>118</sup> Decei, “Românii” (see above, n. 26), pp. 24, 32, and 70–72.

<sup>119</sup> R. H. Hewsens, “On the date and authorship of the Ašxarhac’oyc’,” *Revue des études arméniennes*, NS, 4 (1967), pp. 409–432; idem, “Introduction,” in *Ashkharhatsoyts*

that this passage could have been written by neither Moses Khorenats'i nor Ananias Shirakats'i, who lived in the fifth and the seventh century, respectively. The interpolation is probably from the first centuries of the second millennium. Specifications in that respect will be possible after an exegesis of the numerous manuscripts of Armenian geography. The passage about the Balak country is not included in a remarkable recent publication of the treatise on geography attributed to Ananias Shirakatsi (that publication being based on more manuscripts and on some previous editions of that work). This fact confirms our supposition that the passage would represent an insertion dated after the seventh century. Regarding the presentation of the Carpathian-Danubians area in Armenian geographic writings, the latter specify that the Tyras (Dniester) separated Sarmatia from Dacia, and that "the large country of Dacia," was inhabited by Slavs, who had had 25 tribes.<sup>120</sup>

Another eleventh-century reference to the Vlachs' country appears to be a passage inserted into the ancient Turkic chronicle *Oghuzname* (*The Oghuz Khan's Tale*), which evokes events from the Oghuz ethnogenesis and migration under a mythical cover. *Oghuzname* is known in several versions, most of them being transcriptions written several centuries after the moment of the elaboration of the original oral version. Romanian historians have so far only looked at the most recent version of the chronicle, which is incorporated into the chronicle of Abu'l Ghâzi Behadur-Khan, written in the mid-seventeenth century in the chaghatay dialect. The *Oghuzname* narrates the battles of the Qipchaqs (= Cumans) against several peoples, including the Romanians (*Ulak*).<sup>121</sup> In the account written by Rashid al-Din at the beginning of the fourteenth century, there are quite important differences in the presentation of the events. The Persian chronicler gives details about the conflict of the Qipchaqs with the population *It-Baraq*,<sup>122</sup> an ethnonym that presents

---

(*Ašxarhac'oyc'*). *The Seventh Century Geography attributed to Ananias of Shirak* (Delmar, New York, 1994), pp. 7–24; S. T. Erémianian, "La reconstitution des cartes de l'atlas arménien du monde ou *Ašxarhac'oyc'*," *Revue des études arméniennes*, NS, 14 (1980), pp. 143–155.

<sup>120</sup> Ananias of Širak, *The Geography (Ašxarhac'oyc')*. *The Long and the Short Recensions*, ed. R. H. Hewsen (Wiesbaden, 1992), p. 48.

<sup>121</sup> M. A. Ekrem, "O mențiune inedită despre românii din secolul al IX-lea în *Oguzname*—cea mai veche cronică turcă," *SCIVA* 31 (1980), no. 2, pp. 287–294; idem, "Mențiuni despre români în izvoare turcești preotomane și otomane (secolele IX–XV)," *Analele Universității Creștine "Dimitrie Cantemir," Seria Istorie* 2 (1998), pp. 61–70.

<sup>122</sup> Rashiduddin Fazlullah's *Ĵami'u't-tawarikh: Compendium of Chronicles. A History of the Mongols*, trans. and ed. W. M. Thackston, I (Harvard [Cambridge, MA], 1998), p. 30. See also W. Radloff, *Das Kudsatku Bilik des Jusuf Chass-Hadschib aus Balaşagun*, I

only a vague resemblance with that of *Vlach*. We may also mention that a similar name, *Batchaka/Barqan/Baraka*, was attributed to a region. That information can be found in a fifteenth-century Uighur version of *Oghuzname*, in which the other details concerning the conflicts of the Qipchaqs are missing.<sup>123</sup>

Considering that sporadic penetrations of the Cumans in the outer-Carpathian space are recorded only beginning with the last decades of the eleventh century, and the more lasting contacts with the Romanians were established during the following century, the quoted account cannot possibly mention events situated chronologically before the second half of the eleventh century. Therefore the references to Romanians in *Oghuzname* and in the interpolations in the Armenian chronicle, however interesting they may be, do not refer to the ninth century, but to a subsequent period. The arguments invoked by the historians who see the ethnonym *Ulak* referring to a population from the Urals and the Volga area<sup>124</sup> rather than the Romanians, do not seem to be convincing.

There is also Oriental information about the Romanians in which specialists have not been very much interested. In that respect, we may mention the passages from the chronicles of Mutahhar al-Maqdisi and Ibn al-Nadim as outstanding representatives of the tenth-century Arab historiography.

In the former Arab chronicle one can find the following statement: “they say that in the Turks’ neighbourhood there are the Khazars, Russians, Slavs, Waladj, Alans, Greeks and many other peoples that look like them.”<sup>125</sup> The same chronicle specifies that—in comparison with the Slavs and the Russians—the Waladj and Alans were “not very numerous”.<sup>126</sup> Without suggesting any identification with a specific east-European ethnic group and without providing other arguments,

---

(St. Petersburg, 1891), p. XIX; K. Jahn, “Zu Rašid al-Din’s ‘Geschichte der Oguzen und Türken’,” *Journal of Asian History* 1 (1967), no. 1, p. 51.

<sup>123</sup> R. Nour, *Oughouz-Namé. Épopée turque* (Alexandria, 1928), p. 54; W. Bang and G. R. Rachmati, “Die Legende von Oguz Qagan,” *Sitzungsberichte der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philos.-hist. Kl.* 25 (1932), pp. 700–701; A. M. Shcherbak, *Огуз-наме. Мухаббат-наме. Памятники древнеуйгурской и староузбекской письменности* (Moscow, 1959), p. 54.

<sup>124</sup> Pelliot, *Notes sur l’histoire* (see above, n. 109), pp. 151–153; N. Beldiceanu, “Sunt valahii amintiți în Oghuzname?,” *BBR*, 12 (16) (1985), pp. 287–292.

<sup>125</sup> Motahhar ben Tâhir el-Maqdisî, *Le Livre de la Création et de l’Histoire*, attribué a Abou-Zéïd Ahmed ben Sahl el-Balkhî, IV, ed. Cl. Huart (Paris, 1907), p. 62.

<sup>126</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 63.

Clément Huart, the editor and translator into French of Mutahhar al-Maqḍisi assumed that *Waladj* referred to a population on the Volga.<sup>127</sup> Some specialists believe however that the above-mentioned ethnonym designated the Wallachians, that is the Romanians,<sup>128</sup> taking into account that Waladj are mentioned together with other peoples living in eastern and south-eastern Europe.

The author of a valuable *Index* of Arabian books (*Kūtāb al-Fihrist*), Abu'l Faradj Muhammad b. Abi Ya'kub Ishak al-Warrak al-Baghdadi, known under the name of Ibn al-Nadim, stated that "the Turks, the Bulgar, the Blaghā', the Burghaz, the Khazar, the Llān (Alans-?), and the types with small eyes and extreme blondness have no script, except the Bulgarians and the Tibetans write with Chinese and Manichaean, whereas the Khazar write Hebrew".<sup>129</sup> As B. Dodge (the editor and the translator of the scholar of Baghdad) intuited, the ethnonym Blaghā could refer to Wallachians/Romanians.<sup>130</sup> Considering the long distance of the Arab author from the Carpathian-Balkan territories, it is not surprising that their names were slightly distorted.

At the end of the ninth century and during the tenth century the narrative and archaeological sources attest to the presence of the Tivertians and the Croatians in the middle and in the superior basin of the Dniester, respectively, a fact that supposes direct contacts between those populations and the Romanians. The Kievan chronicle, *The Primary Chronicle* (the so-called Nestor letopis') in its Laurentian version, points out that the Ulichians and the Tivertians settled on the Dniester, spreading up to the Danube, and that previously they had inhabited the area between the Dniester and the Black Sea. At the same time, their large number is evoked, as well as the fact that they had possessed fortresses, whose traces were still visible at the moment when the chronicle was elaborated, i.e. at the beginning of the twelfth century.<sup>131</sup> In other manuscripts of the chronicle the indications on the settlement of the

<sup>127</sup> Ibidem, pp. 62–63.

<sup>128</sup> V. M. Veilis, "Народы Восточной Европы в кратком описании Мутаххара ал-Мақдиси (X в.)," in *Восточные источники по истории народов Юго-Восточной и Центральной Европы*, II, ed. A. S. Tveritinova (Moscow, 1969), pp. 308–310; A. Decei, V. Ciociltan, "La mention des Roumains (Walah) chez Al-Maqḍisi," in *Romano-arabica*, I (Bucharest, 1974), pp. 49–54.

<sup>129</sup> Al-Nadim, *The Fihrist. A Tenth-Century Survey of Muslim Culture*, ed. B. Dodge, I (New York–London, 1970), pp. 36–37.

<sup>130</sup> Ibidem, p. 37 with n. 82.

<sup>131</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 14; *Лаврентіевская летопись*, in *PSRL*, I (St. Petersburg, 1846), p. 5.

two populations differ, in the respect that they are presented as situated on the South Bug and the Dnieper, from where they are said to have spread up to the Danube.<sup>132</sup> But according to the tradition recorded in other chronicles, the Ulichians and the Tivertsians initially lived on the Dnieper, subsequently shifting and settling between the South Bug and the Dniester,<sup>133</sup> a piece of information that Lubor Niederle considers to be more exact than the others.<sup>134</sup> In spite of the alteration of the original text of some chronicles by copyists, by collecting all the data they comprise and by taking into account the results of archaeological investigations of the last decades, we can conclude that the Ulichians and the Tivertsians had gradually moved west, to the South Bug and the Dniester.

The origin and settlement of these two tribes has been dated earlier by much of the literature, due especially to the laconism and ambiguity of the available written sources.<sup>135</sup> If there have been no restraints concerning the appurtenance of the Ulichians to the southern group of the eastern Slavs, the hypotheses related to the origin of the Tivertsians have gained a much more varied character<sup>136</sup> due, of course, to the unusual name the chronicle mentions for them: *тиверци, яже суть толковины*.<sup>137</sup> In regard to the meaning of the term *tolkoviny*, most scholars have interpreted the term as *translators/interpreters*. By starting from that point, the conclusion has been drawn that the Tivertsians were bilingual. Quite recently it has been reconsidered that the short passage reproduced above must have been altered because of the subsequent abbreviations and distortions, so that its reconstruction in translation—which we do not share—would be like this: *The Tivertsians who are called Scythians by some people*.<sup>138</sup>

<sup>132</sup> *Ip.let.*-2, col. 9.

<sup>133</sup> *NPL*, p. 109. See also *PVL*, II, p. 226.

<sup>134</sup> Niederle, *Manuel*, I (see above, n. 115), p. 216.

<sup>135</sup> R. A. Rabinovich, “Уличи и тиверцы в оценках историографии,” *Stratum plus* (2003–2004), no. 5, pp. 440–484.

<sup>136</sup> On these hypothesis, see A. V. Boldur, “The enigma of the Ulichy-Tivertsy people,” *Balkan Studies* 9 (1968), no. 1, pp. 55–71; I. G. Hâncu, “К вопросу расселении тиверцев и уличей в Поднепровье,” in *IVESV*, pp. 165–175; C. Goehrke, *Frühzeit des Ostslaventum* (Darmstadt, 1992), pp. 43–44 and 198–199; V. Ghimpu, “O istorie redescoperită a românilor din secolele IX–XII,” in idem, *Biobibliografie la 50 de ani. Studium* (Chişinău, 2007), pp. 45–50.

<sup>137</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 23; *PSRL*, I, p. 12; *Ip.let.*-2, col. 21.

<sup>138</sup> J. Lépissier, “Les tolvoviny de la Chronique de Kiev,” *Revue des études slaves* 42 (1963), nos. 1–4, pp. 107–108.

In addition to the generalized opinions, according to which the Tivertsians appear to have belonged to the southern branch of the eastern Slavs, or to have represented a hybrid ethnic group with a dominant Slavic component, other suppositions have also been put forth whose unusual character makes them unacceptable. Among other things, it has been considered that the Tivertsians were of Turkic<sup>139</sup> or of Thracian<sup>140</sup> origin. The name *tolkoviny* that suggests the Tivertsians' bilingualism might be due to the existence of mixed ethnic elements in the area occupied by them, those elements possibly containing an older Daco-Roman stock to which an east-Slavic component was added. For the time being it is difficult to specify whether that component had remained in the Dniester basin since the times of the Antes' migration,<sup>141</sup> or penetrated there during the ninth century. At any rate, the name of *translators/interpreters* was not given to the Tivertsians for their knowledge of Greek,<sup>142</sup> a language with which they could not have possibly been in contact. Instead, their qualities of translators must refer to their knowledge of Romanian, a language which would have been easy to learn from a neighbouring population.

In all probability one must associate the Tivertsians with the archaeological monuments dated between the ninth and the eleventh centuries and situated between the Dniester and the Răut rivers. These are fortified and open settlements, as well as cemeteries, some of them with barrows. Hillforts such as those at Alcedar (Șoldănești county), Echimăuți (Rezina county), Lucășeuca (Orhei county), Rudi (Soroca county) and Țareuca (Rezina county) (Republic of Moldova) have earthen ramparts with palisades and deep moats. The archaeological evidence includes various iron tools and weapons, bronze and silver jewels, and Arab dirhams. The Slavic character of the communities established between the middle course of the Dniester and the Răut rivers is evident not only from the settlement finds with multiple analogies in other regions of eastern Europe, but also from the cremation graves in barrows, such as those discovered at Alcedar and Rudi, of a

<sup>139</sup> H. Paszkiewicz, *The Origin of Russia* (New York, 1969), pp. 55–57.

<sup>140</sup> Boldur, "The enigma" (see above, n. 136), *passim*; idem, *La Grande Thrace*, I (Madrid, 1980), pp. 53, 61, 139, 140, 195, and 201.

<sup>141</sup> V. V. Sedov, *Восточные славяне в VI–XIII вв.* (Moscow, 1982), p. 129.

<sup>142</sup> *Ibidem*.



type widely spread throughout Slavic eastern Europe during the last quarter of the first millennium.<sup>143</sup>

Towards the end of the ninth century the Kievan Principality continued its work of unifying the east-Slavic tribes. In a relatively short period of time its domination spread over the Drevlians, the Severians, the Radimichi, and others. Among the tribes attacked by Oleg's armies there were also those of the Ulichians and Tivertsians, an event which the Kievan chronicle fixed as having taken place in 885, without specifying the result of the war.<sup>144</sup> In any case, in 907 and 944, when Oleg and Igor started their expeditions against Byzantium, the Tivertsians were among the tribes that accompanied them,<sup>145</sup> a piece of evidence indicating that between 885 and 907 they were included in the sphere of Kiev's political influence. Being on the side of the Rus' was not always the result of military defeat. Sometimes, such a political choice was a deliberate attempt to seek allies against the Pechenegs.

The same thing did not happen with the Ulichians, who were not among the participants in the above-mentioned campaigns. They had probably succeeded—although they lived much closer to Kiev—in maintaining their independence until 940, when a war that lasted three years put an end to their resistance, and resulted in the conquest of their capital Peresechen.<sup>146</sup> Already during the last century the residence of the Ulichians was identified as the village Peresecina, situated near Orhei (Orhei county).<sup>147</sup> At the same time, some maintained that Ulichians moved into the Bugeac, a name which in several Turkic languages means “corner,” the meaning of the Slavic word *уголь* from which the

<sup>143</sup> G. V. Fedorov, “Древнерусская культура Поднепровья (X–XII вв.),” in *Древняя культура Молдавии*, eds. V. S. Zelenciuc (gen.ed.), A. I. Meliukova, I. G. Hâncu (Kishinev, 1974), pp. 109–126; Fedorov, Chebotarenko, *Pamiatniki*, pp. 74–105; V. O. Timoshchuk, *Пивнична Буковина—земля слов'янська* (Uzhgorod, 1969), pp. 55–64; N. P. Tel'nov, “Восточнославянские древности Днестровско-Прутского междуречья VIII–X вв.,” *Stratum plus* (2001–2002), no. 5, pp. 173–193.

<sup>144</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 21; *Ip.let.-2*, col. 17.

<sup>145</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 23, 33; *Ip.let.-2*, col. 21, 34.

<sup>146</sup> *NPL*, pp. 110, 436, 516. On the inadvertencies that appear in chronicles regarding the date of Peresechen's occupation, see Spinei, *Moldova*, p. 71 with n. 10.

<sup>147</sup> N. Nadezhdin, “О местоположении древняго города Пересечена, принадлежавшаго народу угличамъ,” *ЖОО* 1 (1844), pp. 235, 245 and 256; Niederle, *Manuel*, I, p. 217; V. V. Mavrodin, *Образование древнерусского государства* (Leningrad, 1945), p. 237; E. A. Rikman, “Особенности исторического развития населения Карпато-Дунайских и Карпато-Днестровских земель в X–XI вв.,” in *История Молдавской ССР*, I, gen. ed. L. V. Cherepnin (Kishinev, 1965), pp. 67–68.

name of the Ulichians was supposed to derive.<sup>148</sup> However, according to subsequent investigations, the residence of the Ulichians had nothing to do with the above-mentioned village in central Bessarabia, but was rather situated on the Stugna, right-bank tributary of the Dnieper.<sup>149</sup> That settlement was also mentioned on the “list of the ancient and new Russian towns,” made at the end of the fourteenth century.<sup>150</sup> The evidence from archaeological excavations does not support the idea that Peresecina was ever a tribal centre: although materials dated to the end of the first millennium have been found in that settlement near Orhei,<sup>151</sup> they have nothing to do with a tribal residence or any kind of fortified settlement.

Though it has been clearly established that the residence town of Ulichians was not in Bessarabia, an idea has arisen recently that the above-mentioned ninth-eleventh century vestiges between the Răut and the Dniester, as well as those between the South Bug and the Dniester, represent the Ulichians as well.<sup>152</sup> Along the same line, finds that represent the Balkan-Danubian (= Dridu) culture were considered to belong to Tivertsians.<sup>153</sup> Such conclusions have no credibility, taking into consideration the unity of the Dridu culture in all Carpathian-Danubian regions, and the fact that the Tivertsians could not possibly have spread over all of that space. In the present stage of investigation, the thesis according to which the Tivertsians lived between the Răut and the Dniester rivers and the left bank of the Middle Dniester, while the Ulichians occupied territories of the middle basin of the South Bug<sup>154</sup> is the most trustworthy.

<sup>148</sup> Nadezhdin, “О местоположении древняго города Пересечена,” pp. 248–253.

<sup>149</sup> В. А. Рыбаков, “Уличи,” *КС* 35 (1950), pp. 6–7; L. Mikhailina, *Слов’яни VIII–X ст. між Дніпром і Карпатами* (Kiev, 2007), pp. 176–178. Paszkiewicz, *Origin* (see above, n. 139), pp. 355–356, disputed that location.

<sup>150</sup> *NPL*, p. 475; *Let. Vöskr.*, p. 240; *Новгородская четвертая летопись. Списокъ Н. К. Никольскаго*, in *PSRL*, IV, 1, 3 (Leningrad, 1929), p. 623; M. N. Tikhomirov, “Список русских городов дальних и ближних,” in *idem*, *Русское летописание* (Moscow, 1979), p. 101.

<sup>151</sup> I. Hâncu, *Vetre strămoșești din Republica Moldova. Materiale arheologice informativ-didactice* (Chișinău, 2003), p. 312.

<sup>152</sup> Fedorov, “Древнерусская культура” (see above, n. 143), pp. 109–110.

<sup>153</sup> I. G. Hâncu, “К вопросу расселения тиверцев,” in *IVESV*, pp. 168–175; *idem*, *Cine sînt strămoșii moldovenilor?* (Chișinău, 1990), p. 23–27; *idem*, “Triburile tivertilor și ulicilor în spațiul carpato-nistrin,” in *Spațiul nord-est-carpatic în milenul întunecat*, ed. V. Spinei (Iași, 1997), pp. 125–133.

<sup>154</sup> P. I. Havliuk, “Древньоруські городища на Південному Бузі,” in *Слов’яно-руські старожитності* (Kiev, 1969), pp. 156–174; D. T. Verezovets, “Поселения

The withdrawal of some Ulichians—after the defeat of 940, as it has been supposed—to the west, up to the regions occupied by the Tivertsians between the Răut and the Dniester, does not appear to us to be sufficiently sustainable. Such a migration to lands on the left bank of the Dniester is not convincingly reflected in the archaeological finds that have thus far been investigated. On the other hand, during the mid-tenth century, the *Oultines* (Ούλτινοι) (= Ulichians), the *Dervlenines* (Δερβλενίνοι) (= Drevlianians) and the *Lenzenines* (Λενζενίνοι) (= Poles) were mentioned among the Slavic peoples tributary to the Rus's, with the specification that they bordered on the Pecheneg “theme” of Javdi-Ertim (δέμα Ἰαβδιερτίμ).<sup>155</sup> Taking into account the Drevlianians' existence on the right of the Middle Dniester, between the Goryn basin and the river Ros, as well as the position of the other Pecheneg tribes, the settlement of the Ulichians west of the Dniester becomes even less credible.

In regard to the political status of the Tivertsians' territories in the tenth century, one can estimate that a full control of the Kievan Rus' was not possible there, because those boundaries included the Ulichians, who were not among the subjects of the Riurikid rulers. The fact that, after their defeat of 940, the Ulichians took refuge between the South Bug and the Dniester, shows that that area was not under Kievan domination. It is obvious that the Tivertsians' territory between the Dniester and the Răut rivers could not be efficiently controlled either.

Between the ninth and eleventh centuries, in northern Moldavia the Romanians and the Tivertsians had Croats (*хорваты*) as their neighbours, who lived on the upper courses of the Dniester and Prut rivers. The specification of the chronicle that the Croats accompanied Oleg in his expedition to the Bosphorus in 907<sup>156</sup> is a sign that they had been under Kievan influence. The situation of the political relations appears to have changed in the subsequent decades, because the Croats were not among the allies of Kiev in 944. With the intention of imposing his authority on the Croats, prince Vladimir (Volodimer)

---

уличей на р. Тясмине,” in *МИА*, 108 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1963), pp. 145–208; Sedov, *Восточные славяне* (see above, n. 141), pp. 131–132.

<sup>155</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 168–169; Константин Багрянородный, *Об управлении империй*, eds. G. G. Litavrin, A. P. Novosel'tsev (Moscow, 1989), pp. 156–157; *Die Byzantiner und ihre Nachbarn. Die De administrando imperio genannte Lehrschrift des Kaisers Konstantinos Porphyrogennetos für seinen Sohn Romanos*, trans. and eds. K. Belke and P. Soustal (Vienna, 1995), p. 186.

<sup>156</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 23.

decided to wage war against them in 992.<sup>157</sup> The archaeological finds assigned to the Croats over the upper basin of the Prut include cremation cemeteries, some of them with barrows, as well as open and fortified settlements.<sup>158</sup> The latter have close analogies with the fortified centres at Fundu Herței and Dersca (Botoșani county, Romania), in both building system and finds.<sup>159</sup>

In the tenth century, while waging wars against Slavic and Finnic tribes, the Kievan Rus' also embarked upon several plundering raids on the Lower Volga, the Caspian Sea and the Black Sea, the most famous ones being those against Byzantium. After the first attack, organized in 860/866 by Askold and Dir, the ones of Oleg in 907 and of Igor in 941 and 944 followed.<sup>160</sup> If Oleg's action and that of Igor in 941 were based only on naval forces, Igor's second expedition and Sviatoslav's later campaigns in the Balkans were more complex, because they went by both sea and land. The Kievan expeditions to the imperial city, just as the commercial ships, followed "the route from the Varangians to the Greeks" along the north and west coasts of the Black Sea, with landings on the Moldavian and Dobrudjan shores. Coinciding in time with the strengthening of the Pecheneg tribal confederacy in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea, the success of both the warlike and the commercial expeditions of the Rus' depended upon relations with the new lords of the steppe. The region of the Dnieper rapids, which the Rus' could cross only by land, was the most vulnerable segment of the trade route between Scandinavia, Kiev and Constantinople, the point where that route could be strangulated in case relations with the Turkic nomads deteriorated.

<sup>157</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 84.

<sup>158</sup> I. P. Rusanova, B. A. Timoshchuk, *Древнерусское Поднестровье* (Uzhgorod, 1981), pp. 34–36; Sedov, *Восточные славяне*, pp. 123–129; Mikhailina, *Слов'яни VIII–X ст.* (see above, n. 149), pp. 60–74.

<sup>159</sup> M. Petrescu-Dimbovița, D. Gh. Teodor, and V. Spinei, "Les principaux résultats des fouilles archéologiques de Fundu Herței (Roumanie, départ. de Botoșani)," *Archeologia Polski* 16 (1971), pp. 363–383; D. Gh. Teodor, "Les établissements fortifiés des régions est-carpatiques de la Roumanie aux VIII<sup>e</sup>–XI<sup>e</sup> siècles de notre ère," *Slovenská archeológia* 26 (1978), no. 1, pp. 69–77; M. Petrescu-Dimbovița, D. Gh. Teodor, *Sisteme de fortificații medievale timpurii la est de Carpați. Așezarea de la Fundu Herței (jud. Botoșani)* (Iași, 1987).

<sup>160</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 19, 23–29, and 33–39; *Ip.let.*-2, col. 15, 21–31, and 33–35. See also G. Laehr, *Die Anfänge des russischen Reiches* (offprint from *Historische Studien*, 189) (Berlin, 1930); M. V. Levchenko, *Очерки по истории русско-византийских отношений* (Moscow, 1956), pp. 91–171; I. Sorlin, "Les traités de Byzance avec la Russie au X<sup>e</sup> siècle (I) (II)," *Cahiers de Monde Russe et Soviétique* 2 (1961), no. 3, pp. 313–360; no. 4, pp. 447–475; V. T. Pashuto, *Внешняя политика Древней Руси* (Moscow, 1968), pp. 57–89.

The shift of Pecheneg power to the steppe lands north of the Black Sea in the last years of the ninth century was a consequence of the destruction of the Pecheneg camps in the Volga region by the Uzes allied with the Khazars.<sup>161</sup> Through driving away the Hungarians in the area of Atelkuzu/Etelkuzu, the Pechenegs realised the possibility of a great enlargement of the territories they could control. A sudden conquest of the whole area where their enemies had lived is certainly difficult to imagine. In any case, in the first years of the tenth century the Pechenegs groups had already approached the Danube.

The Pechenegs also attacked the Transylvanian principality ruled by Gelou, which prevented Gelou from organizing the defence against the Hungarians: *dux [...] Geleou [...] non [...] auderent stare contra audatiam Hungarorum, quia a Cumanis et Picenatis multas iniurias paterentur.*<sup>162</sup> Although this piece of information has not been given much attention in modern historical literature, it must be considered as credible, because the Pechenegs' mobility and military capacity are well-known. Unlike Gelou, who was attacked at the same time from two sides, Glad must have asked the Pechenegs for help, in order to face the Hungarian attacks. According to the *Gesta Hungarorum*, Glad's army included Cumans, besides Bulgars and Romanians.<sup>163</sup> *Cumani* is a name, which the chronicler probably used in lieu of Pechenegs. During the subsequent centuries, the presence of the latter is also recorded in Banat, where it left traces in toponymy.<sup>164</sup> The Pecheneg contacts with Gelou's and Glad's principalities must have taken place before 907, the year of Arpad's death. To reach the principalities in intra-Carpathian Transylvania and Banat, the Pechenegs had moved through Romanian outer-Carpathian regions, and then through mountain passes.

<sup>161</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 166–168. See also Zimonyi, *Origins* (see above, n. 4), pp. 165–167; idem, “A besenyők nyugatra vándorlásának okai,” *Acta Universitatis Szegediensis de Attila József Nominatae. Acta Historica* 106 (1998), pp. 133–143; S. A. Romashov, “The Pechenegs in Europe in the 9–10th centuries,” *Rocznik Orientalystyczny* 52 (1999), no. 1, pp. 22–24; V. Zervan, “Úloha Pečenehov v kríze euroázijskej stepi v 9. storočí na základe informácií Konštantína Porfyrogenneta,” *Byzantinoslovaca* 1 (2006), pp. 163–165.

<sup>162</sup> Anonymus, p. 66.

<sup>163</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 90.

<sup>164</sup> Pascu, *Trans.*, I, pp. 29, 51, 57, and 82; Rusu, “The autochthonous population and the Hungarians” (see above, n. 92), p. 204; G. Bakó, “The relations of the principality of the Banat with the Hungarians and the Petchenegs in the tenth century,” in *Relations*, pp. 246–247; S. Oța, “Populații nomade de stepă din Banat (secolele XI–XIV), I. Pecenegii și cumanii,” in *Prinos lui Petre Diaconu la 80 de ani*, eds. I. Câdea, V. Sîrbu, M. Neagu (Brăila, 2004), pp. 489–520.

A letter of Nicholas Mysticus, the patriarch of Constantinople, reveals that before the Byzantine-Bulgarian war of 917 broke, the Bulgarian ruler Symeon had sent several messengers to the Pechenegs, in order to convince them to come on his side against the Byzantines. Matrimonial alliances were contracted for that purpose. From John Bogas, the *strategos* (general-governor) of Chersonesus, or directly from the Pecheneg envoys,<sup>165</sup> the Byzantine court learnt about those manoeuvres, and, by means of lavish gifts, it managed to discomfit Symeon's actions and to bring the nomads on the Byzantine. The fact that the Turanians were not mentioned as being close to the Danube (a situation that recalls that of the Hungarians about a quarter of a century before), but in Crimea, would be a sign that their main forces were rather far from the river.<sup>166</sup>

The Byzantine efforts of co-operation with the Pechenegs proved to be in vain, because the latter decided to withdraw and because of the disagreements that arose when the Byzantine fleet intended to cross the Danube. Deprived of that valuable help, the imperial armies were defeated by Symeon in the battle near the river Acheloos on the August 20, 917.<sup>167</sup> An interesting piece of information about that battle was given by a Greek hagiographic sources about a miracle of St George.<sup>168</sup> It was written perhaps in the tenth century by an unknown author, perhaps a monk named Markos.<sup>169</sup> That writing enumerates the Hungarians, Scythians, Moesians and Turks among the allies of the Bulgars.<sup>170</sup> The second ethnic names, Scythians, may very well refer to the Pechenegs, but if so, then the battle mentioned in the source was not that of 917, about whose development other Byzantine sources

<sup>165</sup> Nicolai Constantinopolitani archiepiscopi *Epistolae*, in *PG*, CXI (1863), col. 71–74; Nicholas I, Patriarch of Constantinople, *Letters*, eds. R. J. H. Jenkins and L. G. Westerink (Washington, D.C., 1973), pp. 60–63.

<sup>166</sup> Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, p. 15; I. A. Božilov “България и печенезите (896–1018 г.),” *Исторически преглед* 29 (1973), no. 2, p. 40; F. E. Wozniak, “Byzantium, the Pechenegs and the Rus’: the limitations of a great power’s influence on its clients in the 10th century European steppe,” *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 305–306.

<sup>167</sup> Theophanes continuatus (see above, n. 48), pp. 389–390; Symeon Magister (see above, n. 25), pp. 722 and 724; Georgius Monachus (see above, n. 30), p. 879; Leo Grammaticus (see above, n. 24), pp. 295–296; Skylitzes, pp. 201–205; Kedrenos, II, pp. 283–288; Zonaras (see above, n. 48), col. 85–88; *PVL*, I, pp. 31–32.

<sup>168</sup> I. Božilov, “Les Petchénègues dans l’histoire des terres du Bas-Danube,” *Études balkaniques* (1971), no. 3, pp. 172–173; idem, “България и печенезите,” pp. 47–51.

<sup>169</sup> G. Moravcsik, *Byzantinoturcica*, I, *Die byzantinischen Quellen der Geschichte der Türkvölker*, 2nd ed. (Berlin, 1958), p. 441.

<sup>170</sup> *Miracula S. Georgii*, ed. J. B. Aufhauser (Lipsiae, 1913), p. 20.

provide quite different data. The unsuccessful attempt to co-operate with the Pechenegs in 917 did not discourage the politicians of Constantinople, which was directly threatened by Symeon's armies. A few years later there were negotiations with various populations, "whether Turks (= Hungarians), or Alans, or Pechenegs, or Russians, or other Scythian nations," in order to turn them against the Bulgars, if needed. The alliances with those populations were maintained by subsidies.<sup>171</sup>

In the following years new motions of the Pechenegs towards the west were recorded. They now had a good opportunity to cross through the plain of southern Moldavia. Thus, for the year 932 (actually 934) an oriental source mentions the Pechenegs joining Hungarians and Bulgarians in an raid against Byzantium,<sup>172</sup> which may have been planned by the Bulgarian ruler. That is the oldest certain narrative source about a crossing of the Danube by the Pechenegs, an expedition that corresponds with their first raid against Byzantium.

In 944 southern Moldavia was troubled by Igor's troops that passed through there in order to meet their naval forces at the mouths of the Danube, from where they were to continue their advance to Constantinople separately. The Kievan prince was accompanied by forces from the Slavic tribes and from the Varangians, to which the Pecheneg groups were added. The gold and other gifts sent to the Rus' and to the Pechenegs by the emperor, as well as the promise of periodical stipends, convinced Igor to give up continuing his expedition. Before returning he urged the Pechenegs to attack Bulgaria.<sup>173</sup> We do not know if the nomads followed the prince's advice. Instead, we have testimonies that, before the middle of the tenth century, they launched more raids into Bulgaria and White Croatia,<sup>174</sup> thus crossing Bugeac and the Romanian Plain many times.

Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus (945–959), who recorded that information in his famous teaching book dedicated to his son (the future emperor Romanus II), gives very valuable data both for the knowledge of ethnical and political realities, and for the historical geography of his time, taken from various sources. Since Herodotus and Strabo no other sources had provided such precise information about the steppe

<sup>171</sup> Nicholas I, Patriarch of Constantinople, *Letters*, pp. 160–161 and 514–515.

<sup>172</sup> Maçoudi, *Les Pains d'or*, II (see above, n. 11), pp. 58–64; Marquart, *Osteuropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge* (see above, n. 1), pp. 61–63.

<sup>173</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 34; *Ip.let.*-2, col. 34–35; *Let. Vöskr.*, pp. 278–279.

<sup>174</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 52–53, 152–153.

lands north of the Black Sea. The book advised the future ruler what to do in case of conflicts with other peoples,<sup>175</sup> and it revealed the refinement and the “Machiavellism” of the Byzantine diplomacy, which continued and improved Roman methods. The enemies’ attacks had to be stopped not only by force, but also by subsidies or by setting other peoples against them, according to the doctrine *divide et impera*. The work of the emperor is important because it discloses the great hegemonic ambitions and the amplitude of Byzantium’s political actions at a moment when its military forces had weakened, when the confrontation with the Islamic world was unresolved, and when the rise of the other empire of Europe, the Holy Roman Empire, could be anticipated. One of the concerns of Constantinople was to ensure the protection of Chersonesus, a territory in Crimea with an important strategic position, from where its influence spread all over the Black Sea area. The role of mediator that the Empire assumed in that area enabled the Byzantine emperors to obtain allies, to hire mercenaries and to establish profitable commercial relationships.

The conclusion of the compromise peace with Kievan Rus’ in 944 and of the treaty of 945 was at least partly a consequence of the Empire’s fears of a prolonged alliance of the Rus’, the Pechenegs and the Bulgarians against Byzantium. It is perhaps in connection with that situation that the date of the mission led by the prelate Gabriel to the Hungarians, in order to win them over against the Pechenegs, must be established. The persisting memory of the catastrophe in Atelkuzu prevented the Hungarian rulers from responding to the Byzantine instigations.<sup>176</sup>

The most revealing information concerning the space controlled by the Pechenegs north of the Lower Danube is the one provided by Constantine Porphyrogenitus. Although the data about that people came from different sources—which he could not, or did not try to corroborate—, they do coincide in most of their essential aspects. As already mentioned above, the Pechenegs had taken from the Hungarians the region called Atelkuzu/Etelkuzu (Ἀτελκούζου or Ἐτέλ καὶ Κουζοῦ), whose western part was crossed by the rivers *Trullos* (= Dniester),

---

<sup>175</sup> *DAI*, II, pp. IX–X and 1–9 (R. J. H. Jenkins); A. Toynbee, *Constantin Porphyrogenitus and His World* (London, 1973); G. G. Litavrin, “Введение,” in Константин Багрянородный, *Об управлении империй* (see above, n. 155), pp. 10–30.

<sup>176</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 56–57.



*Brutos* and *Seretos*.<sup>177</sup> In a chapter of his work that did not have the same source of documentation, the emperor mentions that the rivers *Danastris*, *Sarat* and *Burat* (Δάναστρίς, Σαράτ, Βουράτ) flowed through Patzinakia (Πατζινακία), which makes it possible to see those three names as referring to what is known as the Dniester, the Siret and the Prut. At the same time it was specified that Patzinakia stretched from the bank opposite Distra (modern Silistra) to Sarkel on the Don.<sup>178</sup> From other excerpts we can find that the zone controlled by the Pechenegs was situated only half a day's walk from Bulgaria, from which it was separated by the Danube.<sup>179</sup>

Emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus' account of Patzinakia is confirmed by other tenth-century sources. Thus, the Jewish traveller Abraham Iakobsen (Ibrahim ibn Yakub), whose travel notes were kept in the Arab transcription of al-Bakri, knew that "Constantinople was situated south of Bulgaria; north of it were the Pechenegs."<sup>180</sup> According to a more recent translation the author appears to have referred not to the Pechenegs, but to their country, Patzinakia (*Bádžánákija*),<sup>181</sup> which does not change the content of the matter in its essence. The Pechenegs were also presented as inhabiting territories beyond the north frontiers of the Byzantine Empire by the geographer Ibn Hauqal, who took into account the situation during the reign of Nicephorus II Phocas (963–969).<sup>182</sup> An entry in the so-called Suidas lexicon drawn up at some point during the second half of the tenth century, claims that *Dacians* were now called Pechenegs.<sup>183</sup> This can only mean that the Pechenegs were ruling over the lands of ancient Dacia, which were inhabited at that time by Romanians.<sup>184</sup> In the early twelfth century,

<sup>177</sup> Ibidem, pp. 172–177.

<sup>178</sup> Ibidem, pp. 182–185.

<sup>179</sup> Ibidem, pp. 62–63, 168–169, and 182–183. For the western limits of the Pecheneg lands during the first half of the tenth century, see Romashov, "Pechenegs in Europe" (see above, n. 161), pp. 21–35.

<sup>180</sup> Abraham Jakobsens *Bericht über die Slavenlande vom Jahre 973*, in Widukinds *Sächsische Geschichte*, trans. R. Schottin, 2nd ed. W. Wattenbach (Leipzig, 1891), p. 143.

<sup>181</sup> *Žápadoslovanské krajínu u Ibrahim ibn Iakúba*, in *Pramene k dejinám Vel'kej Moravy* (see above, n. 49), p. 340.

<sup>182</sup> Ibn Hauqal (see above, n. 14), I, p. 194.

<sup>183</sup> *Suidae Lexicon*, ed. A. Adler, II (Lipsiae, 1931), p. 2. This appreciation is also found in two notes on a manuscript of *De administrando imperio*, kept in Paris. See G. Moravcsik, *Byzantinoturcica*, II, *Sprachreste der Türkenvölker in der byzantinischen Quellen*, 2nd ed. (Berlin, 1958), p. 116.

<sup>184</sup> V. Spinei, "La signification des ethnonymes des *Daces* et des *Gètes* dans les sources byzantines des X<sup>e</sup>–XV<sup>e</sup> siècles," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, II, eds. E. Popescu, O. Iliescu and T. Teoteoi (Bucharest, 1991), pp. 120–121.

another lexicon compiled by John Zonaras reproduce the note in the Suidas and claimed that the Pechenegs “had been called Dacians in earlier times”.<sup>185</sup>

The so-called *Josippon*—a Hebrew historical work written in southern Italy in the mid-tenth century, perhaps in 953<sup>186</sup>—mentions the fact that “the Hungarians, the Bulgars and the Pechenegs dwelt on the great river called Danube”.<sup>187</sup> The anonymous author referred, of course, to the Pechenegs established on the left bank of the river, in the southern Moldavia and Wallachia. Bishop Liudprand of Cremona may have had the same group in mind when writing about the northern peoples. He had become accustomed to the political reality ever since his first diplomatic mission to Byzantium in 949–950. The Lombard prelate recorded in one of his works, which contained various memoirs, that to the north from Constantinople were many warlike peoples, such as Hungarians, Pechenegs, Khazars, Rus’ (whom he called Normans) and Bulgars (*Constantinopolitana urbs, quae prius Bizantium, nova nunc dicitur Roma, inter ferocissimas gentes est constituta. Habet quippe ab aquilone Hungarios, Pizenacos, Chazaros, Rusios, quos alio nos nomine Nordmannos apellamus, atque Bulgarios nimium sibi vicinos*).<sup>188</sup> That Patzkinakia (Πατζινακία) was adjacent to the Byzantine Empire is also mentioned in a military treatise composed in Constantinople in the early eleventh century.<sup>189</sup>

The news about the rapacious raids of the Pechenegs spread to central Europe as well. Consequently, they were promptly blamed for the martyrdoms of St Adalbert, bishop of Prague, and of St Bruno, bishop of Augsburg (known as Bruno of Querfurt), in the late tenth

<sup>185</sup> Ioannis Zonarae *Lexicon*, ed. I. A. Tittman, I (Lipsiae, 1808), p. 464.

<sup>186</sup> M. Sc(hloessinger), “Joseph ben Gorion (Josephus Gorionides),” in *The Jewish Encyclopedia*, VII (New York–London, 1904), pp. 259–260; C. Roth, *The History of the Jews of Italy* (Philadelphia, 1946), p. 60; D. Fl(usser), “Josippon,” in *Encyclopaedia Judaica*, 10 (Jerusalem, 1971), col. 296–298.

<sup>187</sup> *Сказания еврейскихъ писателей о хазарахъ и хазарскомъ царстве*, ed. A. Ia. Garkavi (St. Petersburg, 1874), p. 39; Josephus Gorionides, eds. M. L. v. Ameringen, G. I. Polak (Amsterdam, 1868), p. 744; V. Ia. Petrukhin, *Начало этнокультурной истории Русу IX–XI веков* (Smolensk, 1995), pp. 37–38.

<sup>188</sup> Liudprandi *Antapodosis*, in *MGH,SS*, III, ed. G. H. Pertz (1839), p. 277; Liudprand, *Antapodosis*, in *Quellen zur Geschichte der sächsischen Kaiserzeit (Ausgewählte Quellen zur Deutschen Geschichte des Mittelalters, VIII)*, eds. A. Bauer and R. Rau (Darmstadt, 1977), pp. 258–259; Liudprand of Cremona, *The Embassy of Constantinople and Other Writings*, trans. F. A. Wright, ed. J. J. Norwich (London–Rutland, Vermont, 1993), p. 12 (*Antapodosis. Tit-for-Tat*).

<sup>189</sup> *Three Byzantine Military Treatises*, ed. G. T. Dennis (Washington, D.C., 1985), pp. 292–293.

and early eleventh century, respectively.<sup>190</sup> In reality, both men died while on mission to the Prussians.<sup>191</sup>

The data above show that the Pechenegs had extended their political domination westward, up to the Bărăgan. Records on the repeated incursions into the Balkans beginning with 934 prove that the what Emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus had to say about them had in fact happened at least ten years before he committed the information to writing. The continuation of Dridu-culture settlements after the middle of the tenth century does not preclude the nomads' presence in the outer-Carpathian space. Even if the Turkic tribes' migration was accompanied by great ravages and depopulation, it could not have possibly lead to a total displacement of local sedentary communities. Actually, in the outer-Carpathian regions, settlements of the Dridu type coexist with Pecheneg burial assemblages dated to the tenth and eleventh centuries. Also, in some of the native settlements various nomadic objects were found, a fact that suggests some kind of relationships with the migratory peoples.<sup>192</sup>

Until the first half of the eleventh century, when the Uzès drove the Pechenegs away from the left bank of the Dnieper, the latter controlled the whole area north of the Black Sea, a quite large territory. Therefore, they may not have needed the strip of steppe stretching from the Bugeac to the Bărăgan, which was good for grazing, but which, unlike the steppe lands to the east from the Dniester River, was populated by agricultural communities. Archaeology shows clear differences between the left and the right banks of the Lower Dniester during the whole period between the ninth and the eleventh century. There are multiple settlements on the right bank (Fig. 2), every one of which was inhabited by people involved in agriculture, while the opposite bank has only a small number of settlements, linking this area to that between the Dnieper and the Don rivers, the core region of the Saltovo-Maiaki culture. The use of the plains north of the Lower Danube as grazing fields must therefore have posed difficult problems

---

<sup>190</sup> Ademari Cabannensis *Chronicon*, ed. P. Bourgain (*Corpus Christianorum. Continuatio Mediaevalis*, CXXIX, Ademari Cabannensis *Opera omnia*, I) (Turnhout, 1999), pp. 152–153.

<sup>191</sup> Brunonis *Vita S. Adalberti*, in *MGH,SS*, IV, ed. G. H. Pertz (1841), pp. 596–612; *Miracula Sancti Adalberti martiris*, in *ibidem*, pp. 513–616; Ioannis Dlugossii *Annales seu cronicae incliti regni Poloniae*, [I.] ed. I. Dabrowski (Warsaw, 1964), pp. 215–218.

<sup>192</sup> V. Spinei, “Relations of the local population of Moldavia with the nomad Turanian tribes in the 10th–13th centuries,” in *Relations*, pp. 265–276.

to the nomads. On one hand, they had to remove the sedentary, local population, and on the other hand they had to turn the agricultural fields into pasture lands. However, given the low population density in the region north of the Lower Danube, the presence of the local, Romanian population was no obstacle in the way of the Turkic horsemen bent on raiding the Balkans or the regions beyond the Carpathian Mountains. In other words, the Pechenegs had neither the need, nor the means of exterminating or removing the natives from the plain region, all the more as the latter could be forced into paying tribute. It is obvious that under such circumstances, a Bulgar rule in that region could have only been nominal.

In the second half of the tenth century, the Pechenegs' constant offensive against the Tivertsians probably began, and continued into the eleventh century, when the violent destruction of the fortifications between the Dniester and the Răut took place. After these events it was supposed that part of the Tivertsians took refuge towards the north, in the Croats' regions, where the nomad tribes' incursions would take place later.<sup>193</sup> Nowhere in the old Russian chronicles is any help given to the Tivertsians by the Kievan Rus' recorded, which is another reason for rejecting the supposition that the lands between the Răut and the Dniester belonged to the above-mentioned principality. Since the Tivertsian fortified settlements were centres of resistance against the Pechenegs, it is possible that they would have become more of a target of the nomads' attacks than mere civilian settlements would have been. The hillfort of Dridu type excavated in Calfa probably suffered a fate similar to that of the Tivertsian defensive constructions.<sup>194</sup>

The last decades of the tenth century correspond to a sudden change in the political life of the Byzantine state, magnified by an increase in its prestige, economic stability, revival of trade and of urban life, reforms in the administrative structure, the strengthening of the terrestrial army and navy, cultural regeneration—all changes that followed the representatives of the Macedonian dynasty taking power. After a long period of both failures and successes, of reasonable or irrational

---

<sup>193</sup> G. V. Fedorov, "Тенезис и развитие феодализма у древнерусского населения Днестровско-Прутского междуречья в IX–XII вв. (по археологическим данным)," in *Юго-Восточная Европа в эпоху феодализма*, eds. V. D. Koroliuk and P. V. Sovetov (Kishinev, 1973), pp. 49–50; Sedov, *Восточные славяне* (see above, n. 141), p. 128.

<sup>194</sup> G. F. Chebotarenko, *Калфа—городище VIII–X вв. на Днестре* (Kishinev, 1973), pp. 87–88.

attitudes, the political forces of the Empire adopted incisive positions towards the enemies who had taken important territories from them in the previous centuries.

The offensive capacity of Byzantium could be shown in all its amplitude due to the exceptional aptitudes of certain army commanders, who later also acceded to the throne, through their own merits. Such commanders included Nicephorus II Phocas (963–969) and John I Tzimiskes (969–976). Byzantium concentrated its forces especially in the East, where they stopped the Arab expansion and restored the imperial administration in vast and rich regions, and then in the northern Balkans.<sup>195</sup> Just like the Arab emirates, the Bulgaria went through a period of decline during the unusually long reign of Peter (927–969), Symeon's successor. The Byzantine-Bulgarian conflict—which broke out again in 967, because the Bulgars allowed the Hungarians to cross their territories in order to plunder the Empire, and because Nicephorus Phocas decided to pay no more annual subsidies—assumed greater proportions due to the Rus', who became involved in the strife. As he paid special attention to the war in Syria, the emperor thought he would be able to put an end to the dissensions in the Balkans. His intention was to resort to an older precept of the Byzantine diplomacy, that of instigating other peoples against the enemies. For this purpose he asked for the help of the Kievan prince Sviatoslav.

The Byzantine plans for the Rus' involvement in the Balkans proved to be a great political mistake, because—after Sviatoslav's landing south of the Danube, in the summer of 968, and after his victories against the Bulgars—he no longer acted in the service of the Empire, but only for his own interests and ambitions. His offensive in Bulgaria had to be interrupted, because the Pechenegs besieged Kiev, their attack possibly being the result of the Byzantine diplomatic intervention. After driving the Turanians back to the steppes, Sviatoslav returned to Bulgaria the following year. The famous confession of the prince—recorded in the old Russian chronicle—about the reasons that led him back to

---

<sup>195</sup> A. A. Vasiliev, *Histoire de l'Empire byzantin*, I, trans. P. Brodin and A. Bourguina, (Paris, 1932), p. 397 ff.; G. Ostrogorsky, *Geschichte des byzantinischen Staates*, 3rd ed. (Munich, 1963), pp. 176–274; D. Angelov, *История на Византия*, II, 867–1204, 3rd ed. (Sofia, 1978), pp. 79–87; D. A. Zakythinos, *Byzantinische Geschichte, 324–1071* (Vienna–Cologne–Graz, 1979), pp. 132–157; W. Treadgold, *A History of the Byzantine State and Society* (Stanford, 1997), pp. 498–512; J. Koder, *Το Βυζάντιο ως χόρος. Εισαγωγή στην Ιστορική Γεωγραφία της Ανατολικής Μεσογείου στη Βυζαντινή Εποχή* (Thessalonike, 2005), pp. 123–131.

the Lower Danube, is extremely relevant in regard to the prosperity of the above-mentioned regions, and it contains elements that, aside from some anachronisms, cannot be suspected of inadvertency.<sup>196</sup> The fulfilment of his projects of expansion appeared to be facilitated by several convergent factors: the Rus' coalition with a part of the Bulgars, the anti-Byzantine incursions of the Hungarians and the Pechenegs, the disorders that had burst in the Empire after Nicephorus II Phokas' assassination, and the extension of Byzantine military activities in the East and in Italy.

After repelling a Rus' attack south of the Balkan Mountains, the Byzantine forces led by the new emperor, John I Tzimiskes, started to pursue the enemy, and they conquered fortress after fortress. Scholars have considered it to be one of the most brilliant campaigns in the military history of the Empire. Besieged at Dristra (Dorostolon) for three months both by the Byzantine land army and by the imperial navy, the Kievan prince was forced to sign a treaty that stipulated his obligation to give up the lands on the right bank of the Danube, which now came under Byzantine control, after three centuries since the disappearance of the Roman administration from that area. On his way back to his own country, along the "route from the Varangians to the Greeks," Sviatoslav was ambushed and killed by the Pechenegs at the rapids of the Dnieper in 972. The Pechenegs' attitude of duplicity towards the Rus', and their pendulation from neutrality and alliance to hostile positions, depended on the ability of the parties involved in the conflict to gain their benevolence.<sup>197</sup>

<sup>196</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 48. See also *Nik. let.*, I, p. 34.

<sup>197</sup> On the Byzantine-Bulgarian-Rus' war from 967–972, see Leonis Diaconi Caloënsis *Historiae*, ed. C. B. Hase (Bonn, 1828), pp. 63, 77–81, 103–111, 123–124, and 128–159; Skylitzes, pp. 277, 287–291, and 294–310; Kedrenos, II, pp. 372, 383–388, and 392–413; Zonaras, col. 127–128 and 135–144; Yahya-ibn-Sa'ïd d'Antioche, *Histoire*, eds. I. Kratchkovsky and A. Vasiliev, in *Patrologia orientalis*, XVIII (Paris, 1924), pp. 813, 826, and 833; XXIII (Paris, 1932), p. 350; Étienne Asolik de Tarôn, *Histoire universelle*, ed. Fr. Macler, II (Paris, 1917), pp. 44–45; *FHDR*, IV, pp. 80–81 (Constantin Manasses); *PVL*, I, pp. 47–53. See also G. Schlumberger, *L'Épopée byzantine à la fin du dixième siècle*, I (Paris, 1896), pp. 37–58, 76–77, and 87–184; Levchenko, *Очерки* (see above, n. 160), pp. 238–290; A. D. Stokes, "The Balkan campaigns of Svyatoslav Igorevich," *The Slavonic and East European Review* 40 (1962), pp. 466–496; J. Luciw, *Sviatoslav the Conqueror: Creator of a Great Kyivian Rus' Empire* (State College, PA, 1986), pp. 104–135; A. N. Sakharov, *Дипломатия Святослава*, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 1991), pp. 141–178; W. K. Hanak, "The infamous Svyatoslav. Master of duplicity in war and peace?," in *Peace and War in Byzantium. Essays in Honor of George T. Dennis, S.J.*, eds. T. S. Miller and J. Nesbitt (Washington, D.C., 1995), pp. 138–151; S. McGrath, "The battles of Dorostolon (971). Rhetoric and reality," in *ibidem*, pp. 152–164; R. Busetto,

The result of John Tzimiskes' campaign in the summer of 971 was also of a great importance for the outer-Carpathian area, which became a direct neighbour of the Byzantine Empire. Thus the Romanians on the left bank of the Danube could establish close commercial, confessional and political contacts with the Balkan centres. According to Greek sources, already during the siege of Dristra, emissaries of some fortresses north of the Danube came to the emperor to ask for his protection. The emperor agreed and sent garrisons to occupy the fortifications.<sup>198</sup> On the left bank of the river, in the vicinity of Dristra, the only strongholds so far identified by means of archaeological excavations are the three fortresses at Slon (Prahova county, Romania). Located at the entrance through one of the most important mountain passes across the southern Carpathians, Tabla Buții, the three forts are made of stone and brick, with several building phases.<sup>199</sup> It is difficult to decide whether these were fortresses where Byzantine garrisons were stationed. Some believe that the forts were built by Bulgars before the war between John Tzimiskes and Sviatoslav<sup>200</sup> while others see the stronghold at Slon as the seat of a proto-Romanian dynasty of rulers.<sup>201</sup> In addition, it has been proposed that the earliest fortress of Slon might have been built for the Bulgars by their Adrianopolitans prisoners of war, who had been moved into this area by Krum.<sup>202</sup> Within the precincts of the fortress, some runic

---

“Giovanni Tzimisce e Sviatoslav di Kiev. Le operazioni militari bizantine nei Balcani (969–971),” *Acta Musei Napocensis* 33 (1996), no. 2, pp. 9–32; P. Stephenson, *Byzantium's Balkan Frontier. A Political Study of the Northern Balkans, 900–1204* (Cambridge, 2000), pp. 47–55; M. V. Bibikov, “Византийские источники,” in *Древняя Русь в свете* (see above, n. 16), pp. 122–127; M. A. Nikiforov, “К вопросу о характере русско-византийских отношений при императоре Никифоре II Фоке,” *Материалы по археологии, истории и этнографии Таврии* 10 (2003), pp. 441–451; V. Mărculeț, *Stăpânirea bizantină la Dunărea de Jos în secolele X–XII. Aspecte din istoria Themei Mesopotamia Apusului, a Strategatului de Dristra-Dorostolon și a Themei Paristrion-Paradunavon* (Mediaș, 2005), pp. 18–47; Curta, *Southeastern Europe*, pp. 237–240.

<sup>198</sup> Skylitzes, p. 301; Kedrenos, II, p. 401.

<sup>199</sup> M. Comșa, “Die Forschungen von Slon und ihre Bedeutung für das Studium der Entwicklung der Feudalbeziehungen südlich der Karpaten,” in *Siedlung, Burg und Stadt. Studien zu ihren Anfängen*, eds. K.-H. Otto and J. Herrmann (Berlin, 1969), pp. 232–238.

<sup>200</sup> D. Dimitrov, *Прабългарите по Северното и Западното Ченоморие* (Varna, 1987), pp. 224–225; A. A. Rusu, *Castelarea carpatică. Fortificații și cetăți din Transilvania și teritoriile învecinate (sec. XIII–XIV)* (Cluj-Napoca, 2005), p. 89.

<sup>201</sup> M. Comșa, “Un knézat roumain des X<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècles à Slon-Prahova,” *Dacia*, NS, 22 (1978), pp. 303–317; I. Bica, *Thema Paristrion (Paradounavon) în istoriografia bizantină și română* (Pitești, 2003), pp. 45–46.

<sup>202</sup> O. Damian, “Considérations sur la citadelle en brique de Slon-Prahova,” *Studia Antiqua et Archaeologica* 9 (2003), p. 491.

inscriptions have been found,<sup>203</sup> which have analogies on sites south of the Danube. That may indicate a Bulgar presence in the region.

Once the war was over, John I Tzimiskes began the administrative and military reorganization of the newly conquered territories. Besides a *thema* named Paristrion or Paradunavon and covering the eastern parts of Bulgaria, a *strategia* of Western Mesopotamia (Μεσσοποταμία τῆς Δύσεως) was set up in the vicinity of the Danube Delta. According to some historians, at least part of the latter's territory lay north of the mouths of the Danube, in the Bugeac,<sup>204</sup> a hypothesis which has been meanwhile rejected. In any case, though there is semantic coincidence between Mesopotamia and Atelkuzu, it is impossible for anyone to admit their geographical identity. Western Mesopotamia was probably situated in northern Dobrudja.<sup>205</sup>

Because of the civil wars that broke out in the Empire after John I Tzimiskes' death in 976, parts of his conquests were lost. The so-called rebellion of the Comitopouloi erupted in Bulgaria, led by the brothers David, Moses, Aaron and Samuel—sons of a *comes*. Because the other three died in the course of the struggle, the leadership of the Tsardom was taken by the enterprising Samuel, who, during some

<sup>203</sup> Comşa, “Die bulgarische Herrschaft” (see above, n. 36), pp. 401–403; eadem, “Inscripții “runice” din secolele IX–X descoperite la Slon-Prahova (Notă preliminară),” in *Cercetări arheologice* 11 (1998–2000), no. 2, pp. 615–622.

<sup>204</sup> N. A. Oikonomidès, “Recherches sur l'histoire du Bas-Danube aux X<sup>e</sup>–XI<sup>e</sup> siècles: la Mésopotamie de l'Occident,” *RESEE* 3 (1965), nos. 1–2, pp. 57–59; idem, “À propos de la première occupation byzantine de la Bulgarie (971–ca. 986),” in *Ευρυχια. Mélanges offerts à Hélène Ahrweiler*, II (Paris, 1998), pp. 584–585; I. A. Božilov, “Към въпроса за византийското господство на Долиня Дунав в края на X век,” *Studia Balcanica* 2 (1970), pp. 81–85; idem, “Към историческата география на северозападното Черноморие: Μεσσοποταμία—Μεσσοποταμία τῆς Δύσεως,” *Известия на Народния Музей—Варна* 12 (27) (1976), pp. 19–32; P. Diaconu, “Cîmpia Dunării și Bizanțul în sec. X (note preliminarii),” *Istros* 5 (1987), pp. 218–219.

<sup>205</sup> Търкова-Займова, *Долни Дунав* (see above, n. 26), pp. 38–44; eadem, “L'administration byzantine au Bas Danube (fin du X<sup>e</sup>–XI<sup>e</sup> s.),” *Byzantinoslavica* 54 (1993), no. 1 (*Byzantium and its Neighbours from the Mid 9th till the 12th Centuries*, ed. Vl. Vavřinec), p. 96; H.-J. Kühn, *Die byzantinische Armee im 10. und 11. Jahrhundert. Studien zur Organisation der Tagmata* (Vienna, 1991), pp. 221–222; A. Madgearu, “The restauration of the Byzantine rule on the Danube,” *RESEE* 27–28 (1999–2000), pp. 5–7 and 16; idem, *Organizarea militară bizantină la Dunăre în secolele X–XII* (Târgoviște, 2007), pp. 31–33; Gh. Zbucnea, “Revenirea Imperiului bizantin la Dunărea de Jos,” in *Istoria românilor*, III, *Genezele românilor*, gen.ed.s. Șt. Pascu, R. Theodorescu (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 276 and 282. See also I. Jordanov, “Болгария и Византия на Нижнем Дунае в конце X века (по данным сфрагистики),” *Balcanica Posnaniensia. Acta et studia*, 4 (1989), pp. 79–86; Gh. Mănucu-Adameșteanu, *Istoria Dobrogei în perioada 969–1204. Contribuții arheologice și numismatice* (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 90–93.



decades, succeeded in restoring and consolidating the Tsardom, whose power nucleus shifted towards the central regions of the Balkans. The account of the rebellion of the Comitopouloi related in the chronicle of John Skylitzes, written in the late eleventh century, includes one of the earliest attestations of the Vlachs south of the Danube. Even if the information about the Vlachs did not belong to John Skylitzes himself, it remains credible, since the interpolation appears to have used sources contemporary with the events.<sup>206</sup>

### *Eleventh Century*

After defeating the inner rebellions and after appeasing the conflicts with the Arab emirs in favour of the Empire, Basil II (976–1025) became more and more insistent in regard to Balkan problems. In 1001 the armies led by the patrician Theodorokanos and by the protospatharus Xiphias regained the main fortresses in the eastern part of Bulgaria. In the following years, the anti-Bulgarian campaigns continued until the decisive victory at Kimba Longos (Κιμβά Λόγγος) in 1014, the conquests of Ochrid, the Tsardom's capital, and then the last Bulgarian possessions in 1018.<sup>207</sup> When the ecclesiastical organization of the con-

<sup>206</sup> Skylitzes, p. 329; Kedrenos, II, p. 435; Gregory Abū'l-Faraj, *The Chronography, 1225–1286*, ed. E. A. Wallis Budge (London, 1932), p. 203. See also E. Stănescu, "Byzantinovlachica, I: Les Vlaques à la fin du X<sup>e</sup> siècle-début du XI<sup>e</sup> siècle et la restauration de la domination byzantine dans la Péninsule Balkanique," *RESEE* 6 (1968), no. 3, p. 424 ff.; W. Seibt, "Untersuchungen zur Vor- und Frühgeschichte der 'bulgarischen' Kometopulen," *Handes Amsorya. Zeitschrift für Armänische Philologie* 89 (1975), nos. 1–3, pp. 89–91; R. C. Iăzărescu, "Din nou despre vlahii din cronică lui Skylitzes," *BBR* 7 (11) (1979), pp. 357–368.

<sup>207</sup> For Emperor Basil II's wars with the Bulgarians, see Skylitzes, pp. 328–332 and 341–360; Kedrenos, II, pp. 434–436 and 457–476; *FHB*, XI (1965), p. 76 (*Chronicon Bruxellense*); Michaelis Glycae *Annales*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1836), pp. 574–578; Matthieu d'Édesse, *Chronique*, ed. [E.] Dulaurier (Paris, 1858), p. 35; Yahya-ibn-Sa'īd d'Antioche, *Histoire*, in *Patrologia orientalis*, XXIII (see above, n. 197), pp. 418–419, 430–431, 446–447, and 461–462. See also G. Finlay, *A History of Greece from its Conquest by the Romans to the Present Time*, II (Oxford, 1877), pp. 369–391; Schlumberger, *L'Épopée byzantine* (see above, n. 197), II (Paris, 1900), p. 333 ff.; *История Болгарии*, I (Moscow, 1954), pp. 94–97; G. Györfly, "Zur Geschichte der Eroberung Ochrids durch Basileios II.," in *Actes du XII<sup>e</sup> Congrès International d'études byzantines, Ochride 10–16 septembre 1961*, II (Belgrade, 1964), pp. 149–154; Zakythinos, *Byzantinische Geschichte* (see above, n. 195), pp. 224–230; Treadgold, *History* (see above, n. 195), pp. 516–533; J. Shepard, "Byzantium expanding, 944–1025," in *The New Cambridge Medieval History*, III, c. 900–c. 1024, ed. T. Reuter (Cambridge, 1999), pp. 595–601; Stephenson, *Byzantium's Balkan Frontier* (see above, n. 197), pp. 62–77; Curta, *Southeastern Europe*, pp. 241–247.

quered territories took place in 1020, among the suffragan dioceses of the archbishop from Ochrid there was the one set up especially for the Vlachs of the former Bulgarian state, which was also maintained under Alexius I (1081–1118).<sup>208</sup> It is very likely that its influence extended over the north-Danubian Romanian territories as well.

The Byzantine presence in the northern Balkans during the reign of the powerful Emperor Basil II, later nicknamed Bulgaroktonos (“Bulgarian-Slayer”), a period of spectacular increase of the Empire in both size and power, brought peace to the whole Lower Danube area, which was not to be disturbed any more by riotous Turanian hordes. No invasion of Pechenegs is recorded during the long reign of Basil II. A short time before the Bulgarians’ final capitulation, in 1018, they could obtain the Pechenegs’ promise to attack the Byzantines.<sup>209</sup> The planned invasion never took place, as it was thwarted by the diplomacy of Constantinople. The extension of the period of peace with the nomads is probably due to the renewal of the peace treaty concluded in 971 between the Byzantines and Pechenegs,<sup>210</sup> in the last stage of the war against Sviatoslav.

During the reign of Basil II a big success of Byzantine proselytism occurred, with important consequences for the history of eastern Europe: the conversion of the Rus’ under Prince Vladimir, an event which, according to chronicles, took place in 988.<sup>211</sup> During the following decades and centuries, Christianity spread from Kievan Rus’ to the other eastern Slav tribes. Taking into account that in the area between the rivers Răut and Dniester, as well as on the Upper Prut, inhumations began to replace cremations in barrows, it is very likely that Christianity was also adopted by Tivertsians and Croats.<sup>212</sup> Shortly after the conversion of the Rus’, the Hungarian conversion also took

---

<sup>208</sup> H. Gelzer, “Ungedruckte und wenig bekannte Bistümerverzeichnisse der orientalischen Kirche, I,” *BZ* 1 (1892), p. 257; *FHB*, XI, eds. G. Cankova-Petkova, Iv. Dujčev, L. Jončev, V. Tăpkova-Zaimova, P. Tivčev (Sofia, 1965), p. 47 (*Грамоты на Василий II/Sigillia Basilii*); *FHB*, XIV, eds. G. Cankova-Petkova, Str. Lišev, P. Tivčev, V. Tăpkova-Zaimova (Sofia, 1968), p. 105 (*Епархийски списъци от средата на XI до средата на XII в./Notitiae episcopatum*); *FHDR*, IV, pp. 24–25 (*Știri referitoare la organizarea bisericească a vlahilor balcanici*); *Macedonia. Documents and Material*, eds. V. Bozhinov, L. Panayotov (Sofia, 1979), p. 31.

<sup>209</sup> Skylitzes, p. 356; Kedrenos, II, pp. 465–466.

<sup>210</sup> Skylitzes, p. 309; Kedrenos, II, p. 412; Zonaras, col. 143–144.

<sup>211</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 80–82; *Nik.let.*, I, p. 54.

<sup>212</sup> Timoshchuk, *Пивнична Буковина* (see above, n. 143), pp. 120–121; Fedorov, “Древнерусская культура” (see above, n. 143), p. 125.

place, *ca.* 1000, followed by the war King Stephen I waged against the Transylvanian prince Gyula, his uncle, who had refused to accept Christianity.<sup>213</sup> As a result of all those developments, most peoples around the Romanians became Christian, with the only exception of the nomads in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea. The southern and eastern Slavs adopted the Byzantine, the Hungarians the Roman rite. In this way, the confessional isolation of the Romanians disappeared. Because Old Church Slavonic had been recognized as a sacred language much like Hebrew, Greek, and Latin, it was adopted as liturgical and state language by most powers in the Carpatho-Danubian area. Consequently, Old Church Slavonic was also adopted by the church and the chancery of the Romanian principalities to emerge in the late thirteenth and early fourteenth century. That language remained in use among Romanians for century, a phenomenon still insufficiently studied and understood.

Whenever they had to face the prestige of the Empire, whose forces were displayed along the Danube line, marked by newly built or rebuilt stone fortresses,<sup>214</sup> the Pechenegs showed much caution, preferring to realise their expansive capacity in other directions. The confrontations with Kievan Rus' were especially frequent, combined with interferences in the quarrels between different Rus' principalities, or between different feudal parties. The Polish king Boleslav the Brave (Chrobry) secured an alliance with the Pechenegs' (*Pezineigi, Pedenci, Petinei, Pecinegi*) during his conflicts with the Rus', in 1013 and 1018.<sup>215</sup>

Both the Pechenegs and the Romanians were engaged in the disputes for the Kievan throne, beginning with 1015, when Vladimir died. The most interesting references concerning this event can be found in an Icelandic source, *Eymundar páttir/saga*, preserved in a transcription dated to the end of the fourteenth century.<sup>216</sup> By cross-referencing the data

<sup>213</sup> Simon de Keza, p. 172; *CPict*, pp. 32, 148; *Chronicon Posoniense* (see above, n. 37), p. 36; *Chronicon Monacense* (see above, n. 37), pp. 66–67; *Annales Hildesheimenses*, in *MGH, SS*, III (1839), p. 92; *Annales Altahenses Maiores*, in *MGH, SS*, XX (1868), p. 790.

<sup>214</sup> E. Condurachi, I. Barnea, P. Diaconu, "Nouvelles recherches sur le Limes byzantin du Bas-Danube aux X<sup>e</sup>–XI<sup>e</sup> siècles," in *Proceedings of the XIIIth International Congress of Byzantine Studies* (Oxford, 1966), pp. 179–193; Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, pp. 26–32; Madgearu, *Organizarea militară bizantină* (see above, n. 205), pp. 87–100.

<sup>215</sup> Thietmari *Chronicon*, ed. V. Cl. Ioh. M. Lappenberg in *MGH, SS*, III (1839), pp. 833, 870–871; Thietmari *Chronicon*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, I, ed. A. Bielowski (Lwów, 1864), pp. 292 and 317.

<sup>216</sup> On the historical importance of the information contained in the *Eymundar saga*, see S. H. Cross, "Yaroslav the Wise in Norse tradition," *Speculum* 4 (1929), pp.

of the Russian *Primary Chronicle* with those of the above-mentioned saga, one can check the trustworthiness of the information recorded in the latter source. The information must have been obtained by the Icelandic author(s) of the saga from Scandinavian mercenaries in the service of Rus' princes. According to *Eymundar þáttur/saga*, during the struggle for power, Burizleifr, identified as Sviatopolk, appears to have taken refuge in Tyrkland, where he gathered a great army made up of "Turks, Wallachians and a good many other nasty people" (*Tyrkir ok Blökumenn, ok mörg önnur ill þjóð*).<sup>217</sup> Despite such assistance for his war against Jarizleifr (= Iaroslav the Wise), it was the latter who eventually won. The Turks in the Icelandic saga must be identified as Pechenegs, among whom, according to the Russian chronicle, Sviatopolk found shelter. The battle in which Pechenegs helped the Kievan pretender took place at Alta, in 1019.<sup>218</sup>

As for *Blökumenn*, it was the name that designated the Romanians living in east-Carpathian regions. Sviatopolk could have come into contact with them either in 1015, when he chased his brother Sviatoslav up to the Carpathians, near the border with Hungary, or in 1018, when he himself had to flee to the Pechenegs.<sup>219</sup> Since the Kievan prince did not extend his domination over regions inhabited by Romanians, the participation of the latter in the disputes for the Kievan throne must have been motivated, just as in the case of the Pechenegs, by rewards. The name *Blökumenn* given to Romanians in *Eymundar þáttur/saga* is almost identical with that attested in the eleventh-century runic inscription of Sjonhem, *Blakumen*. Both terms recall the *Blökumennaland* (which

---

186–191; N. T. Belaiew, "Eymundar Saga and Icelandic research in Russia," *Saga-Book of the Viking Society* 11 (1928–1936), pp. 93–99; B. A. Rybakov, "Киевская Русь," in *История СССР с древнейших времен до наших дней*, Первая серия, I, eds. S. A. Pletneva, B. A. Rybakov (Moscow, 1966), pp. 516–519; Davidson, *Viking Road* (see above, n. 16), pp. 158–162; A. B. Golovko, in *Киев и западные земли Руси в IX–XIII вв.* (Minsk, 1982), pp. 31–32; R. Cook, "Russian history, Icelandic story, and Byzantine strategy in Eymundar þáttur Hringssonar," *Viator* 17 (1986), pp. 65–89; Larsson, "Rusernas rike" (see above, n. 20), pp. 141–165; G. V. Glazyrina, T. N. Dzhakson, E. A. Mel'nikova, "Скандинавские источники," in *Древняя Русь в свете* (see above, n. 16), pp. 513–523; P. Żmudzki, "Najemnicy na Rusi i w krajach sąsiednich w X–XII w.," *Kwartalnik historyczny* 111 (2004), no. 4, pp. 15–28.

<sup>217</sup> *Eymundar Saga*, in *Antiquités russes d'après les monuments historiques des Islandais et des anciens Scandinaves*, II, ed. C. C. Rafn (Copenhagen, 1852), p. 193; *Saga ob Ėjmundē*, in Rydzevskaia, *Древняя Русь* (see above, n. 14), p. 97; *Vikings in Russia. Yngvar's Saga and Eymund's Saga*, trans. H. Pallson and P. Edwards (Edinburgh, 1989), p. 79.

<sup>218</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 97; *Nik.let.*, I, p. 176.

<sup>219</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 94, 97; *Nik.let.*, I, pp. 74–76.

designated the land of the Balkan Vlachs) mentioned in *St Olaf's Saga*<sup>220</sup> and *Heimskringla* ("The Circle of the World")<sup>221</sup> written by the great Icelandic chronicler and skald Snorri Sturluson (1178–1241), as well as in *Egils saga einhenda ok Ásmundar berserjabana* written in the early 1300s<sup>222</sup>. Whereas Snorri Sturluson spoke about a "land" of the Romanians in the Balkans, the anonymous saga about Egil and Asmund mentioned a "land" situated in an indefinite area of eastern Europe. It is obvious that all the Scandinavian ethnonyms mentioned above refer to one and the same people, identified by most scholars as Romanians.<sup>223</sup> Throughout the years other opinions have also been expressed, according to which the name of *Blökumenn/Blakumen* designated the Cumans,<sup>224</sup> or the White<sup>225</sup> or Black<sup>226</sup> Cumans. But the contexts in which *Blökumenn* and *Blakumen* are mentioned make any reference to Cumans untenable. For example, the *Blökumenn* of the *Eymundar páttur/saga* appear in the context of events taking place in 1018 or 1019, several decades before the earliest appearance of the Cumans in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea.

The supposition that *Blakumen* and *Blökumannaland* are etymologically derived from some old German terms (*blök/blak* = "black", *Kumana*, *Kumen* = "Cumans" and *Land* = "country")<sup>227</sup> is even less credible. As is known, in medieval German the Cumans were designated as *Valwen*, so

<sup>220</sup> *Saga Ólafs konungs hins helga*, 2, in *Fornmanna sögur*, V (Kaupmannahofn, 1830), p. 137; *Antiquités russes*, I (Copenhagen, 1850), p. 468; *Saga Ólafs konungs hins Helga. Den store saga om Olav den Hellige*, eds. O. A. Johnsen and J. Helgason, I (Oslo, 1941), p. 633.

<sup>221</sup> Snorri Sturluson, *Heimskringla. Nóregs konunga sögur*, ed. F. Jónsson (Oslo, 1966), p. 371; idem, *Heimskringla*, eds. B. S. Kristjánssdóttir, B. Halldórsson, J. Torfason, Ö. Thorsson, II (Reykjavik, 1991), p. 814.

<sup>222</sup> *Sagan uf Egli einhenda ok Asmundi berserjabana*, in *Fornaldar sögur Norðlanda*, III (Kaupmannahofn, 1830), p. 377; *Egils saga einhenda ok Ásmundar berserjabana*, in *Drei lygisögur*, ed. Å. Lagerholm (Halle/Saale, 1927), p. 29.

<sup>223</sup> Spinei, "Informații, I," *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 1 (see above, n. 20), pp. 72–73; "Informații, II," *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 2, pp. 267–272; idem, *Universa Valachica* (see above, n. 117), pp. 227–235 (Addenda 4).

<sup>224</sup> A. Sobolevskii, "О поисках следов варягов-викингов," *Slavia* 8 (1930), no. 4, p. 764; Pritsak, *Origin*, I (see above, n. 4), pp. 373–374.

<sup>225</sup> *Эймундова сага*, trans. O. I. Senkovskii, in *Древнесеверные саги и песни скальдовъ въ переводах русскихъ писателей*, ed. I. Glazunov (St. Petersburg, 1903), p. 46.

<sup>226</sup> Kuun, *Relationum Hungarorum* (see above, n. 59), p. 254; K. Horedt, "Blökumannaland și Blakumen," *AM* 6 (1969), pp. 179–185; C. Cihodaru, "Observații cu privire la procesul de formare și de consolidare a statului feudal Moldova în sec. XI–XIV," *AIIA* 16 (1979), p. 183.

<sup>227</sup> Horedt, "Blökumannaland," pp. 183–184; idem, "Interpretări arheologice (V)," *SCIVA* 25 (1974), no. 4, pp. 558–560.

for the Black Cumans a name such as *\*Blakvalwen* would have been normal. Had the Varangians adopted the east-Slavic terminology—which would have been quite natural—or Byzantine or Latin names, then the name of the Black Cumans would have appeared as somewhat related to, or derived from *черные половцы*, *μαυρο Κομανοι* or *cumani nigri*, respectively. Nothing like that is attested in the available sources. A mixed form, made up of a German adjective and a proper name from Greek or Latin is highly improbable. Thus one has to reject the idea that *Blökumenn* or *Blakumen* referred to any other people but the Vlachs.

At the beginning of the second quarter of the eleventh century the Pechenegs' invasions in the Balkan Peninsula assumed greater frequency and amplitude. Such attacks against Moesia, Thrace and Macedonia took place in 1025/1027, 1032/1033, 1034, 1035 and 1036.<sup>228</sup> In 1036, when three incursions against the Empire are recorded, the Pechenegs could also organize a great expedition against Kiev. Iaroslav the Wise returned to his capital with help from the Varangians and from the people of Novgorod; he defeated his enemies, so that they did not dare to attack Rus' anymore,<sup>229</sup> as they were also hindered by their clashes with the Uzes, as well as by their own intertribal disagreements. Records on their attacks against the Arpadian Hungary are fewer. That nomads were not familiar with the mountain passes may explain why the Pechenegs rarely crossed the Carpathians. At least one such raid into Transylvania took place during the reign of Stephen I (997–1038),<sup>230</sup> and must have gone through one or many of the passes across the eastern Carpathians. According to Heinrich of Mügeln, the Pecheneg raid took place in 1028.<sup>231</sup>

The intensity and regularity of those raids indicate the considerable increase in the Pecheneg offensive capacity north of the Lower Danube, made possible by the nomads' movement towards the Bugeac and the Bărăgan plains. The shift of the Pecheneg power from the left to the right bank of the Dnieper was a consequence of the pressure exerted by the Uzes, who, in their turn, had to move west from the steppes

<sup>228</sup> Skylitzes, pp. 373, 385, 397, and 399; Kedrenos, II, pp. 483–484, 499, 512, and 514–515. See also Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, pp. 39–49; Gh. Mănuclu-Adameşteanu, "Les invasions de Petchénègues au Bas Danube," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, IV, eds. E. Popescu and T. Teoteoi (Iaşi, 2001), pp. 87–112.

<sup>229</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 101–102.

<sup>230</sup> *Legendae S. Stephani regis*, ed. E. Bartonick, in *SRH*, II, pp. 389, 397, and 424.

<sup>231</sup> Henric de Mügeln (see above, n. 54), pp. 109–111.

along the Volga, since they were pressed by the Cumans. In the period immediately preceding the mass migration of the Pechenegs into the Byzantine Empire, during the reign of Constantine IX Monomachus (1042–1055), the narrative sources mention several attacks of the Uzès against the Pechenegs. Those were repelled due especially to the efforts of Kegen, a skilful, yet minor chieftain. Unlike Kegen, Tyrach, the paramount chief of the Pechenegs, showed less courage, as he avoided a direct confrontation on the occasion of one of his enemies' incursions, when he took refuge among the lakes and marshes of the Danube Delta.<sup>232</sup>

After the climax of the last years of the reign of Basil II, Byzantium encountered a period of political decline. The throne was taken in turn by a number of emperors who were representatives of the civilian aristocracy; they lacked both energy and the qualities necessary for strategy or diplomacy. That fact was immediately felt at the Lower Danube, where the Pechenegs' devastating attacks came one after the other for a decade. At last, a treaty put an end to the Turanian invasions<sup>233</sup> and restored peace in the northern Balkans. But on the left bank of the Danube the Pechenegs' migration certainly caused great disturbances, so that an important part of the local population had to move from the plain to the hilly regions protected by woods. Against the background of the latent crisis that affected Byzantium after Basil II's death, the last attempt of the Rus' to attack Constantinople took place in 1043. The expedition had the same route between Kiev and the Bosphorus, off the Danube mouths. The Rus' again had no chance of victory, because a storm sank part of their ships and made the task of the Byzantines easier.<sup>234</sup>

In the second quarter of the eleventh century, when the Uzès threat became inevitable, two Pecheneg groups, led by Kegen, refused to obey Tyrach's supreme authority; but in the clashes with Tyrach's superior

---

<sup>232</sup> Skylitzes, p. 455; Kedrenos, II, p. 582.

<sup>233</sup> Skylitzes, p. 457; Kedrenos, II, p. 584. See also C. A. Macartney, "The Pechenegs," *The Slavonic and East European Review* 8 (1929–1930), p. 346; Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, p. 52.

<sup>234</sup> Psellos, II, pp. 8–12; Michaelis Attaliothae *Historia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1835), pp. 20–21; Skylitzes, pp. 430–433; Kedrenos, II, pp. 551–555; Glycas (see above, n. 207), p. 595; Gregorii Abulpharagii sive Bar-Hebraei *Chronicon Syriacum*, eds. P. I. Bruns and G. G. Kirsch (Lipsiae, 1789), pp. 244–245; Gregory Abû'l-Faraj, *The Chronography, 1225–1286*, I, ed. E. A. Wallis Budge (London, 1932), p. 203; *PVL*, I, pp. 103–104; *Nik. let.*, I, pp. 82–83.

forces made up of eleven tribes, Kegen's people were defeated and took refuge first in the Danube everglades, and then on an island near Dorostolon,<sup>235</sup> situated, very probably, in the Ialomița marshes (*Balta Ialomitei*) of the Danube.<sup>236</sup> As a consequence of the negotiations with Constantinople, the tribes led by Kegen were allowed to settle on the Danube frontier, the conditions being their conversion to Christianity, and service as allies of the Empire. Their integration in the Byzantine military system is proved, among other things, by two seals that have been published recently: one of them discovered at Durostorum (modern Siliștra),<sup>237</sup> and another whose place of discovery is not known.<sup>238</sup> On their reverse there is the name of Ioannes Kegen, with his title as “*magistros* and *archon* of Patzinakia,” which indicates the bestowing of some military prerogatives in a territory conceded to the Turanians. The name of Ioannes was given to Kegen when, obliged by the imperial authorities, he agreed to be christened together with his companions. Between the Pechenegs on the opposite banks of the Danube the clashes continued. By invoking the treaties concluded with Byzantium long before, Tyrach asked the emperor to stop Kegen's incursions to the left bank of the Danube. The Greek chronicles mention that, because his demand was not observed, Tyrach decided to invade the Empire. They also mention that the whole of the Pecheneg people moved over to Byzantium.<sup>239</sup> However, both statements must be treated with caution.

<sup>235</sup> Skylitzes, p. 456; Kedrenos, II, p. 583.

<sup>236</sup> C. Brătescu, “Pecenegii. Pagini de istorie medievală (sec. XI) traduse din Georgios Kedrenos,” *AD* 5–6 (1924–1925), p. 146 with n. 1; Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, p. 57 with n. 161.

<sup>237</sup> I. Jordanov, “Sceau d'archonte de Patzinakia du XI<sup>e</sup> siècle”, *Études balkaniques* 28 (1992), no. 2, pp. 79–82; *Corpus of Byzantine Seals from Bulgaria*, 1, *Byzantine Seals with Geographical Names*, ed. I. Jordanov (Sofia, 2003), pp. 138–142; T. Krumova, “Pecheneg chieftains in the Byzantine administration in the theme of Paristrion in the eleventh century,” *Annual of Medieval Studies at CEU* 11 (2005), pp. 210–211.

<sup>238</sup> W. Seibt, M. L. Zarnitz, *Das byzantinische Bleisiegel als Kunstwerk. Katalog zur Ausstellung* (Vienna, 1997), pp. 131–132; I. Jordanov, “Печати на Йоан Кеген, магистър и архонт на Печенегия (1050–1051),” *Нумизматика и сфрагистика* 5 (1998), no. 1, pp. 96–101.

<sup>239</sup> Skylitzes, pp. 455–459; Kedrenos, II, pp. 581–587; Attalates, p. 30; Zonaras (see above, n. 48), col. 223–226. See also V. G. Vasilievskii, “Византия и печенеги (1048–1094),” in idem, *Труды*, I (St. Petersburg, 1908), p. 9–25; I. Dujčev, *Проучвания върху българското средновековие* (Sofia, 1945), pp. 30–39; Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, pp. 56–65; J. Shepard, “John Mauroπους, Leo Tornicius and an alleged Russian army: the chronology of the Pecheneg crisis of 1048–1049,” *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 24 (1975), pp. 61–89; J. Lefort, “Rhétorique et politique: Trois discours de Jean Mauroπους en 1047,” *Travaux et mémoires* 6 (1976), pp. 265–303; A. P. Každan, “Once more about the “alleged” Russo-Byzantine treaty (ca. 1047) and the Pecheneg



On the one hand, the crossing of the bulk of the population led by Tyrach over the frozen Danube was a decision taken as a result of the impossibility of stopping the Uzes. Relevant in that respect is a passage in Michael Psellos' chronicle (taken up by Anna Comnena), which describes the war of Isaac I Comnenus with the Pechenegs. Before narrating the battles proper, Michael Psellos reports that the whole people of the *Missians* had crossed the frozen Danube and had moved into the Empire because of the attacks of the *Getae*.<sup>240</sup> Using the ancient names of *Missians* and *Getae*, the Byzantine authors actually referred to the Pechenegs and the Uzes. Because the specifications regarding the settlement of all *Missians* (= Pechenegs) within the borders of Byzantium, and those referring to the crossing of the Danube on the ice are also found with the chroniclers who describe the Pecheneg exodus of 1046/1047, it is possible that both Michael Psellos and Anna Comnena referred to that event, even if in their text the episode under discussion appears to refer to Isaac I's reign. The identification of the *Getae* with the Romanians of Wallachia<sup>241</sup> is improbable; the latter did not have, by that time, the military capacity necessary to drive away the Pechenegs from the Lower Danube region. Nevertheless, that region did not provide security for Tyrach's Pechenegs, which is demonstrated by the fact that they would not return there after having been defeated by the Byzantine armies, and instead preferred to submit to the Empire.

Not all the Pecheneg forces accompanied Tyrach to the Balkans. Some groups of Pechenegs eluded Tyrach's authority and decided to stay in the steppes; their presence there is mentioned in documentary sources from the second half of the eleventh and the twelfth century. The Pechenegs could not maintain their autonomy and were obliged to enter other Turkic tribal unions, or to offer their services to the Rus' princes, who allowed them to settle at the borders of their states

---

crossing of the Danube," *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 26 (1977), pp. 65–77; N. Bănescu, *Istoria Imperiului Bizantin*, II [*Imperiul Bizantin clasic*] (610–1081), ed. T. Teoteoi (Bucharest, 2003), pp. 606–610; O. Schmitt, "Die Petschenegen auf dem Balkan von 1046 bis 1072," in *Pontos Euxeinus. Beiträge zur Archäologie und Geschichte des Antiken Schwarzmeer- und Balkanraumes (Manfred Oppermann zum 65. Geburtstag von Kollegen, Freunden und Schülern)*, eds. S. Conrad, R. Einicke, A. E. Furtwängler, H. Löhr, A. Slawisch (Langenweissbach, 2006), pp. 473–483.

<sup>240</sup> Psellos, II, p. 125; Anne Comnène, *Alexiade*, I, ed. B. Leib (Paris, 1937), pp. 127–128.

<sup>241</sup> I. Barnea, "Stăpînirea bizantină asupra Dobrogei între anii 971–1185: Thema Paristrion (Paradunavon)," in *DID*, III, p. 132.

in the vicinity of the steppes.<sup>242</sup> Some Pecheneg groups continued to live side by side with the Oghuz/Uzes, after the latter, in alliance with the Khazars, had driven away the bulk of their forces from the Volga basin.<sup>243</sup> The Pechenegs that did not leave the Volga territories were mentioned in 922 by the Arab traveller Ibn Fadlan.<sup>244</sup> It is not very clear if the “barbarians”—supposed to be Pechenegs<sup>245</sup>—who set about incursions into Hungary in 1053,<sup>246</sup> belonged to the group of Turanians established in the Balkan Peninsula, or to the enclaves on the Lower Danube.

As for the Pechenegs who migrated into the Balkans, for four decades they represented a source of great troubles for the European provinces of Byzantium. By profiting from the general crisis of the Empire, from the incursions of the Seljuq Turks into Asia Minor, and from the effects of internal uprisings, the Pechenegs often refused to submit to the provincial governors and found support in local communities discontented with the Byzantine taxes, or they allied themselves with other nomadic groups who crossed the Danube for plunder.<sup>247</sup> As a consequence of such a situation the Empire lost control over vast regions of Paristrion, for longer or shorter periods. Most of the praises addressed by Michael Psellos to Constantine IX Monomachus for the latter’s contribution to

<sup>242</sup> *Ip.let.*-2, *passim*. See also D. Rassovsky, “Печенеги, торки и берендеи на Руси и въ Угрии,” *СК* 6 (1933), pp. 12 and 50–63; S. A. Pletneva, *Древности черных клобуков* (*ASAI*, E 1–19) (Moscow, 1973), pp. 24–25.

<sup>243</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 166–169. See also Marvazi (see above, n. 51), p. 30; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 245 (al-Marwazī).

<sup>244</sup> Ibn Fadlan’s *Reisebericht*, ed. A. Z. V. Togan, in *Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 24 (1939), no. 3, p. 33; R. P. Blake and R. N. Frye, “Notes on the Risala of Ibn-Fadlan,” *Byzantina Metabyzantina* 1 (1949), no. 2, p. 20; M. Canard, “La relation du voyage d’Ibn Fadlān chez les Bulgares de la Volga,” *Annales de l’Institut d’Études Orientales*, Alger, 16 (1958), p. 83.

<sup>245</sup> J. Riley-Smith, *The First Crusaders, 1095–1131* (Cambridge, 1997), p. 37.

<sup>246</sup> *Vita Theodorici abbatis Andaginensis*, ed. W. Wattenbach, in *MGH,SS*, XII (1856), p. 44.

<sup>247</sup> Ioannis Euchaitorum metropolitae *Quae in codice Vaticano graeco 676 supersunt*, J. Bollig descripsit, P. de Lagarde edidit (Gottingae, 1882), pp. 144–146 and 179–193; Cesaumeni *Consilia* (see above, n. 103), pp. 150–153, and 162–167; Nicephori Bryennii *Commentarii*, ed. A. Meinecke (Bonn, 1836), pp. 57, 100, and 157; Skylitzes, pp. 460–461 and 465–476; Kedrenos, II, pp. 588–589 and 594–607. See also Vasilievskii, “Византия и печенеги,” pp. 16–24; Дуйчев, *Проучвания* (see above, n. 239), pp. 35–39; Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, pp. 73–78; Barnea, “Stăpînirea bizantină,” pp. 127–131; Zakythinus, *Byzantinische Geschichte* (see above, n. 195), pp. 263–265; E. Malamut, “L’image byzantine des Petchénègues,” *BZ* 88 (1995), no. 1, p. 124 ff.; Stephenson, *Byzantium’s Balkan Frontier* (see above, n. 197), pp. 89–98; Schmitt, “Die Petschenege” (see above, n. 239), pp. 483–487.

the Christianization and settlement of the Pechenegs<sup>248</sup> were unfounded. Naturally, in the second half of the eleventh century the influence of Byzantium over the outer-Carpathian Romanian lands decreased at the same time as the strengthening of the nomadic Turkic tribes' strategic positions.

The aggressive presence of the Pechenegs between the Danube and the Balkan Mountains brought about difficult problems for Byzantine authorities, so that their description—in a *typikon* of Gregory Pakourianos, written in December 1083 for the monastery of Bachkovo, near Philippopolis (modern Plovdiv)—does not appear as excessively exaggerated: “most terrible and most arrogant enemies, who set themselves not only against the Roman Empire, but also every race of Christians, whose defeat and complete destruction is altogether one of the most difficult things to set down in writing”.<sup>249</sup>

The usual discord-breeding Byzantine policy could not be applied efficiently in the Carpathian-Balkan regions between the reigns of Basil II and Alexius I Comnenus. On the contrary, the neighbours of the Empire often united their forces when planning incursions across the Danube. Isaac I Comnenus (1057–1059) was forced to react to such a joint raid, planned by the Hungarians and the Pechenegs of Paristrion. First the emperor energetically repelled the Hungarians, and then he went against the Pechenegs; some of the latter submitted to him, others continued the fight in the Danube everglades until they were defeated.<sup>250</sup> The Armenian chronicler Matthew of Edessa (Urha) (Matt'ēos Urhajec'i) reports that Isaac I himself crossed the Danube in pursuit,<sup>251</sup> information which suggest that the Pechenegs with whom the Byzantine armies had clashed were from the region to the north of the Danube. However, the imperial expedition to the north of the Danube River is not mentioned in any Byzantine source. The restora-

---

<sup>248</sup> Michaelis Pselli *Scripta minora*, I, *Orationes et dissertations*, eds. E. Kurtz and F. Drexler (Milan, 1936), pp. 18 and 340.

<sup>249</sup> *Byzantine Monastic Foundation Documents. A Complete Translation of the Surviving Founder's Typika and Testaments*, 2, eds. J. Thomas and A. Constantinides Hero, with the assistance of G. Constable (Washington, D.C., 2000), p. 526.

<sup>250</sup> Psellos, II, pp. 124–126; *FHDR*, IV, pp. 34–39 (Psellos, *Scironi*); Attaliates (see above, n. 234), pp. 66–67; *Excerpta ex breviario historico* Ioannis Scylitzae Curopalatae, in Kedrenos, II, pp. 645–646; Anne Comnène, I, pp. 127–129; Zonaras (see above, n. 48), col. 245–248; Michel le Syrien, *Chronique*, III, ed. J. B. Chabot (Paris, 1905), p. 165.

<sup>251</sup> Matthieu d'Édesse (see above, n. 207), pp. 105–106; *Armenia and the Crusades. Tenth to Twelfth Centuries. The Chronicle of Matthew of Edessa*, ed. A. E. Dostourian (Lanham–New York–London, 1993), p. 90.

tion of order in Paristrion by authorities from Constantinople was short, because of the new nomadic waves that crossed the Danube.

Meanwhile the crisis within the Christian church took an irreversible turn, due to the general political conditions and to the intransigent positions of Patriarch Michael Cerularius and Pope Leo IX, which led to the great schism of 1054. In the outer-Carpathian region, which was under the confessional influence of the Constantinopolitan patriarchate, the effects of this event were to be felt much later, during the political and confessional offensive of the Arpadian Kingdom. After the settlement of the tribes led by Kegen and Tyrach in the Balkan Peninsula, nothing could stop the Uzes' advance up to the Lower Danube Plain. In the tenth century, the Oghuz (Ghuzz, Uzes) lived in the space bordered by the Aral Lake, the Syr-Daria, the Caspian Sea, the Volga, and the Upper Irtysh. Because of inter-tribal conflicts,<sup>252</sup> they split into two groups: one going to the south-west, led by Seljuq (after whom they were designated as Seljuk Turks); the other heading westwards.<sup>253</sup> In less than half a century the latter group covered the hundreds of kilometres between the Lower Volga and the Danube; they were driven away by the Cumans, and in their turn chased the Pechenegs. One of the 22 branches that, according to Oriental sources, made up the tribal union of the Oghuz were the *Bajanak/Baj'nak/Bäcänäk* (= the

---

<sup>252</sup> On conflicts between different Turkic Ghuzz (= Oghuz) tribes, see Ibn Hauqal (see above, n. 14), I, p. 379.

<sup>253</sup> V. V. Barthold, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, III (Leiden, 1962), pp. 91–108; O. Pritsak, "The decline of the Empire of the Oghuz Yabghu," *The Annals of the Ukrainian Academy of Arts and Sciences in the U.S.* 2 (1952), pp. 279–292 (reprint in idem, *Studies in Medieval Eurasian History* [Variorum Reprints], London, 1981); C. E. Bosworth, *The Ghaznavids. Their Empire in Afghanistan and Eastern Iran, 994–1040* (Edinburgh, 1963), pp. 205–226; idem, "The political and dynastic history of the Iranian world (A.D. 1000–1217)," in *The Cambridge History of Iran*, 5, *The Seljuq and Mongol Periods*, ed. J. A. Boyle (Cambridge, 1968), p. 1 ff.; D. Sinor, *Introduction à l'étude de l'Eurasie Centrale* (Wiesbaden, 1963), pp. 287–290; C. Cahen, "Ghuzz," in *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, NE, II, eds. B. Lewis, Ch. Pellat, J. Schacht (Leiden–London, 1965), pp. 1106–1110; idem, *The Formation of Turkey. The Seljukid Sultanate of Rum: Eleventh to Fourteenth Century*, trans. and ed. P. M. Holt (Harlow, 2001), p. 7 ff.; D. and J. Soudel, *La civilisation de l'Islam classique* (Paris, 1968), pp. 107–113; Golden, "The migrations of the Oğuz" (see above, n. 12), pp. 45–84; S. G. Agadzhanov, *Очерки истории огузов и туркмен Средней Азии IX–XIII вв.* (Ashkhabad, 1969), pp. 122–210; idem, *Государство сельджукидов и Средняя Азия в XI–XII вв.* (Moscow, 1991); idem (S. G. Agadzhanov), *Die Oguzen Mittelasiens im 9. bis 10. Jahrhundert*, trans. R. Schletzer (*Turkmenenforschung*, 7) (Hamburg, sine anno), pp. 7–28; A. Sevin and C. E. Bosworth, "The Seljuqs and the Khwarazm shahs," in *History of Civilisations of Central Asia*, IV, 1, *The Age of Achievement: A.D. 750 to the End of the Fifteenth Century*, eds. M. S. Asimov and C. E. Bosworth (Paris, 1998), pp. 145–175.

Pechenegs).<sup>254</sup> They were naturally not all of the Pechenegs, but just a small group who had been defeated and forced to accept the Oghuz/Uzes supremacy.

The first clash between the Uzes and the Rus' took place near Voin, in the region of Pereiaslavl, in 1055, and five years later the Kievan prince Iziaslav, together with his brothers, who had the power in Chernigov and Pereiaslavl, and with Vseslav Briachislavich of Polotsk, organized a great expedition against the Uzes. According to Russian sources, the *Torki* (Uzes), overcome by the great number of their enemies, left their settlements and never returned.<sup>255</sup> The Cuman attacks also contributed decisively to the departure of the Uzes from the steppes north of the Black Sea. In 1064–1065 the Uzes migrated from the Lower Danube region into the Empire. The efforts of the Byzantine military commanders to stave off the nomad flood were useless, so that the invaders advanced up to Illyricum and Greece. The severity of winter, epidemics and starvation caused more damage than the imperial armies, so that in the following year the scattered groups of the Uzes were easily destroyed by provincial troops and by the Pechenegs of Paristrion. One part of the Uzes submitted to Byzantium and they were colonized in Macedonia; others returned to the region north of the Danube and sought refuge in the domains of the Rus' princes, who accepted them as mercenaries,<sup>256</sup> much as the Byzantines had done.

Not all the Uzes in the region of the Black and Caspian seas chose to migrate to the Byzantine Empire. Some of their groups stayed behind in the basin of the Lower Volga. They were mentioned around the town of Saskin by an Arab traveller from Spain. His specification that they were divided into 40 tribes led by independent emirs<sup>257</sup> seems to be

<sup>254</sup> Mahmūd al-Kāshgārī, *Compendium of the Turkic Dialects (Dīwān Luḡāt at-Turk)*, ed. R. Dankoff, in collab. with J. Kelley, I (Harvard [Cambridge, MA], 1982), pp. 101–102 and 362. See also M. Th. Houtsma, “Die Ghuzenstämme,” *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 2 (1888), p. 224; Barthold, *Four Studies*, III, p. 110.

<sup>255</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 109.

<sup>256</sup> Attaliates, pp. 83–87; Skylitzes, *Excerpta* (see above, n. 250), in Kedrenos, II, pp. 654–657; Glycas (see above, n. 207), p. 605; Zonaras, col. 251–254; Matthieu d'Édesse, pp. 126–127; Matthew of Edessa, p. 105. See also Vasilievskii, “Византия и печенеги” (see above, n. 239), pp. 26–30; C. Necşulescu, “Năvălirea uzilor prin Țările Române în Imperiul bizantin,” *RIR* 9 (1939), p. 185–206; T. Nagrodzka-Majchrzyk, “Les Torks-Ogouzes en Russie de Moyen-Âge,” in *IX. Türk Tarih Kongresi, Ankara: 21–25 Eylül 1981, Kongreye Sunulan Bildiriler*, II (Ankara, 1988), pp. 596–599.

<sup>257</sup> Abu Hamid el Granadino, *Relación de viaje por tierras eurasiáticas*, ed. C. E. Dubler (Madrid, 1953), p. 50.

unlikely for a period in which the Cumans had firmly established their supremacy in the area. Even more numerous groups of Uzes (*морки*) were hired by Rus' princes; the chronicles mentioned them in that role between the last decades of the eleventh century and the first part of the thirteenth century. They appear especially in the basin of the river Ros, a right-hand tributary of the Dnieper River.<sup>258</sup>

The first Uzes detachments reached the Bugeac and the Romanian Plain probably a short time after the displacement of Tyrach's tribes to the south of the Danube, about 1050. The bulk of the Uzes population moved into north-Danubian plain regions only after the Cuman's pressure became very strong and the Rus' princes' coalition drove them away from the Dnieper basin in 1060. Their stay on the left bank of the Lower Danube was short, because they forced the crossing of the river in 1064. Taking into account the houses excavated in Dinogetia-Garvăn (Tulcea county, Romania), all of which were apparently destroyed by fire, as well as some of the coin hoards found in Dobrudja, which could be dated to the mid-1060s, it is quite possible that the Uzes came to the Balkans through the Bugeac.<sup>259</sup>

In spite of the concentration of the Uzes hordes on the left bank of the Danube, which occurred less than two decades after the migration of the Pechenegs to the Balkans, there are no signs of a total destruction of the native population of the plain region (Fig. 2). In this respect the testimony of the Byzantine chronicles is self-evident; according to them the Uzes used, for crossing the Danube, not only leather bags, but also ships and boats.<sup>260</sup> The information given by many sources of that time indicates that the nomadic horsemen usually crossed the large water courses by means of leather bags, which they made by themselves from animal skin.<sup>261</sup> They quite rarely made wooden crafts,<sup>262</sup> so it is

<sup>258</sup> *Ip.let., passim.*

<sup>259</sup> Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, pp. 79–80; Spinei, *Moldova*, p. 129.

<sup>260</sup> Attaliates, p. 83; Skylitzes, *Excerpta*, in Kedrenos, II, p. 654.

<sup>261</sup> Ibn Fadlan (see above, n. 244), p. 31; *Tour du monde ou voyages du rabbin Péthachia de Ratisbonne dans le douzième siècle*, ed. E. Carmoly (Paris, 1831), p. 8; Nicetae Choniatae *Historia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1835), p. 124; Georgii Acropolitae *Annales*, in *PG*, CXL (1887), col. 1061–1062; Nicephori Gregorae *Byzantina historia*, ed. L. Schopen, I (Bonn, 1829), pp. 36–37; Plano Carpini, pp. 80–81; Anonymus, p. 41; Simon de Keza, p. 149; *CPict.*, pp. 7, 120; *Chronicon Posoniense* (see above, n. 37), p. 19; *Chronicon Monacense* (see above, n. 37), p. 58.

<sup>262</sup> D. Sinor, "On water-transport in Central Eurasia," *Ural-Altäische Jahrbücher* 33 (1961), pp. 156–179 (reprint in idem, *Inner Asia and its Contacts with Medieval Europe* [Variorum Reprints], London, 1977).

natural for one to conclude that the boats and the ships the Uzes used in crossing the Danube were supplied by the Romanian communities of the Danube everglades. Several bands of Uzes who had taken refuge in the Romanian Plain and the Bugeac after the failure of the invasion of 1064–1065, could have returned to live side by side with those Pechenegs who had chosen to stay behind.

In the older historical literature, the hypothesis that the Hutzuls, a Ukrainian population on the eastern side of the northern Carpathians, represented a remainder of the Uzes, enjoyed a certain popularity. That assumption was based mainly on an alleged relationship between the two ethnonyms, Hutzuls and Uzes, which has never been adequately demonstrated.<sup>263</sup> In addition, one cannot explain how a Turkic group of the steppes could have chosen to settle in a mountainous area, a possibility supported neither by archaeology, nor by written sources.

Shortly after the Uzes migration to the Balkans, the Cumans—another Turkic tribe of the steppe tribe—approached the Danube Delta. Their vanguard entered the Bugeac at some point between 1065 and 1078. Evidence of the first Cuman expedition to the Balkans, undertaken together with the Pechenegs, was recorded in 1078.<sup>264</sup> The medieval texts do not tell us whether the incursion of 1078 against Adrianople involved the Pechenegs from the north or the south of the Danube. In any case, the Cuman forces participating in the raid were not strong enough, since they needed the collaboration of the Pechenegs. During the same year the Cumans engaged in the wars against the Rus'.<sup>265</sup> In the middle of the eleventh century the Cumans reached the Dnieper, by driving the Uzes away to the west. In 1055 the Cumans (Polovtsy) advanced towards Pereiaslavl, but Prince Vsevolod reached an agreement with them in order to avoid a military confrontation.<sup>266</sup> The first battle between the Rus' and the Cumans took place in 1061, when the Cumans under their chief Sokal obtained a major victory, the first of a long and bitter war that would last 175 years.<sup>267</sup> The Cuman positions

---

<sup>263</sup> I. I. Nistor, *Problema ucrainiană în lumina istoriei* (Cernăuți, 1934), pp. 65–68; H. Kunstmann, "Woher die Huzulen ihren Namen haben," *Die Welt der Slaven* 31 (NF, 10) (1986), pp. 317–323.

<sup>264</sup> Attaliates (see above, n. 234), pp. 300–301; Skylitzes, *Excerpta* (see above, n. 250), in Kedrenos, II, p. 741.

<sup>265</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 132.

<sup>266</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 109.

<sup>267</sup> *Ibidem*; *Die Nestorchronik. Die altrussische Chronik, zugeschrieben dem Mönch des Kiever Höhlenklosters Nestor, in der Redaktion des Abtes Sil'vestr aus dem Jahre 1116, rekonstruiert nach*

in the steppes north of the Black Sea were strengthened even more after the victory they obtained in 1068 against a coalition of forces led by the Kievan prince Iziaslav I Iaroslavich,<sup>268</sup> who had defeated the Uzes (Torki) eight years earlier. The Cumans now controlled the entire territory between the Aral Lake and the Lower Danube.<sup>269</sup>

It appears that, even if we admit that some Cuman enclaves had been established in the Bugeac and the Bărăgan by the end of the eleventh century, a significant Cuman presence in those territories was recorded only later on. In referring to the migration of the Turkic peoples Michael the Syrian, who wrote his chronicle of the world in the late 1100s, maintained that their northern groups, made up of Cumans (*Qumanayê*), had settled at the frontiers of the Greek Empire and had “joined the Christian people” who lived there.<sup>270</sup> The Christians living together with the Cumans at the northern border of Byzantium were probably Romanians. According to a variant of the oldest Turkic chronicle, *Oghuzname*, inserted in the *Turkish Genealogy* by Abu'l-Ghazi Behadur Khan (1603–1663), the Cumans—personified in the eponymous hero Qipchaq—fought against the countries of the Rus', the Romanians (*Ulak*), the Magyars and the Bashkirs, who had refused to submit to their authority. With troops from Oghuz Khan, Qipchaq was ordered to conquer the region of *Ten* (= Don) and *Itil* (= Volga), which he promptly did.<sup>271</sup> The unknown author of the chronicle thus claimed that all four countries were controlled by the Cumans, which may be true for the Romanian lands, but certainly not for Rus' or Hungary.

During the second half of the eleventh century, hordes of Pechenegs continued to inhabit the left bank of the Danube. In 1068, led by Osul, they launched a great attack against Transylvania and Hungary through

---

*den Handschriften Lavrent'evskaja, Radzivilovskaja, Akademičeskaja, Troickaja, Ipat'evskaja und Chlebnikovskaja*, ed. and trans. L. Müller (Munich, 2001), p. 200.

<sup>268</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 112; *Niklet.*, I, p. 94. See also M. Dimnik, *The Dynasty of Chernigov: 1054–1146* (Toronto, 1994), pp. 66–68.

<sup>269</sup> N. Aristov, *О земле половецкой* (Kiev, 1877); D. Rassovsky, “Половцы, III, Пределы ‘Поля Половецкаго’,” *СК* 10 (1938), pp. 155–178; Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 145–150; S. A. Pletneva, “Половецкая земля,” in *Древнерусские княжества X–XIII вв.*, eds. L. G. Beskrovnyi (gen. ed.), V. A. Kuchkin, V. T. Pashuto (Moscow, 1975), pp. 260–300.

<sup>270</sup> Michel le Syrien (see above, n. 250), p. 155.

<sup>271</sup> Абуль-Гази, *История*, ed. G. Sablukov, in *Библиотека восточных историков*, co-ord. I. Berezin, III, 1 (Kazan, 1854), p. 19; Aboul-Ghâzi Bêhâdour Khan, *Histoire des Mongols et des Tatares*, II, ed. P. I. Desmaisons (St. Petersburg, 1874), p. 19. See also M. A. Ekrem, “Mențiuni despre români în izvoare turcești preotomane și otomane (secolele IX–XV),” *Anale de istorie* 28 (1982), no. 4, pp. 73–75.



the mountain passes across the Carpathian range. After they had crossed the Mezeş Gate and robbed the province of Nyr, they advanced to the fortress of Biharea. On their way back, they were ambushed and defeated by King Salomon (1063–1074) and his sons near the Dăbâca stronghold. Whereas Simon of Keza and the *Annales Posonienses* ascribe the attack to the Pechenegs (*Bessi*),<sup>272</sup> the Latin-Hungarian chronicles of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries ascribe it to Cumans (*Cumi*).<sup>273</sup> The latter may not be just an adaptation of a piece of information taken from older sources, since at the time of the raid the Cuman vanguard was already in the vicinity of the Carpathian Mountains. One thing seems to be certain, namely that the marauders of 1068 were not Uzes.<sup>274</sup> A west-Russian chronograph misdated the raid to 1059, but blamed it on Cumans and Romanians (*Валаху*). The unknown author of the Russian chronography then explained that Cumans were also called *Половцы* and *Кум*.<sup>275</sup> Historians now agree that the marauders of 1068 were Pechenegs and that those medieval authors who wrote of Cumans made a mistake, given that the ethnic name *Cuni* did not have a very clear meaning in the Latin-Hungarian chronicles.<sup>276</sup>

The movements of the Turkic populations from the steppe lands north of the Black Sea were too fast for the Byzantines to monitor, much less control them. Emperor Romanus IV Diogenes was defeated in 1071 by the Seljuq Turks in the great battle of Mantzikert (Malazgyrt), which resulted in important territorial losses in Asia Minor. The concomitant abandonment of the last Byzantine possessions in southern Italy and the

<sup>272</sup> Simon de Keza, p. 182 (where the invasion is dated in the time of Ladislas I); *Annales Posonienses*, ed. E. Madzsar, in *SRH*, I, p. 126.

<sup>273</sup> *Chronici Hungarici composito saeculi XIV*, ed. A. Domanovszky, in *SRH*, I, pp. 366–368; *CPict*, pp. 55–57, 175–177; *Chronicon Monacense* (see above, n. 37), p. 75; *Chronicon Posoniense* (see above, n. 37), p. 38; Henric de Mügelin (see above, n. 54), pp. 176–177 (where the invaders are identified with the Tatars !); *Chronicon Budense*, ed. I. Podhradczky (Budae, 1838), pp. 127–129; *Chronicon Dubnicense*, in *Historiae Hungaricae Fontes Domestici*, III, ed. M. Florianus (Quinque-Ecclesiis, 1884), pp. 75–76; Johannes de Thurocz, *Chronica Hungarorum*, I, *Textus*, eds. E. Galántai and J. Kristó (Budapest, 1985), pp. 98–99.

<sup>274</sup> B. Kossányi, “Az úzok és kománok történetéhez a XI–XII. században,” *Századok* 57–58 (1923–1924), pp. 532–533.

<sup>275</sup> *Русский хронографъ*, 2, *Хронографъ Западно-Русской редакции*, in *PSRL*, XXII, 2 (Petrograd, 1914), p. 211.

<sup>276</sup> Györffy, “A kun és komán néprnév” (see above, n. 99), pp. 168–170; idem, “Besenyők és magyarok,” in idem, *A magyarság keleti elemei* (see above, n. 99), pp. 118–119; Pascu, *Trans.*, I, pp. 84–86; Göckenjan, *Hilfsvölker* (see above, n. 98), p. 97.

loss of Belgrade to the Hungarians contributed much to the decrease of state resources and implicitly of its defensive power.

Taking advantage of the receding Byzantine power in the area, the multi-ethnic population of Paristrion joined the Pecheneg hordes previously established or recently arrived from the left bank of the Danube. They were all trying to get rid of the Byzantine administration of the *theme* and to become autonomous. The dissident groups of Dristra, Vicina and the other cities of the Lower Danube were led by three chieftains named Tatos (or Chalis), Sesthlay, and Satza.<sup>277</sup> Fierce disputes have erupted among historians of the modern age concerning the ethnicity of the three chieftains, as well as that of the population they commanded and of the nomadic tribes who had settled north of the Danube River.<sup>278</sup> The debate was fueled by much misunderstanding originating from the ambiguity of the corresponding account in Anna Comnena's biography of Emperor Alexius I (1081–1118). There seems to be some agreement that Vlachs (Romanians) said to have lived near the Danube had a significant contribution to the movement.<sup>279</sup> Michael the Syrian's chronicle appears to confirm this conclusion. He mentioned the Vlachs (*Balakayê*), together with Franks, Cumans and Serbs, among those peoples who caused the greatest difficulties to Emperor Alexius.<sup>280</sup>

The Pechenegs north of the Danube had also contributed to the strengthening of the Byzantine camp in Paristrion. They came to the

<sup>277</sup> Anne Comnène, II, ed. B. Leib (Paris, 1943), pp. 81–82.

<sup>278</sup> N. Bănescu, "Ein ethnographisches Problem am Unterlauf der Donau aus dem XI. Jahrhundert," *Byzantion* 6 (1931), pp. 297–307; idem, "Dobrogea bizantină," *Analele Dobrogei* 19 (1938), no. 2, pp. 57–58; C. Necşulescu, "Ipoteza formaţiunilor politice române la Dunăre în sec. XI," *RIR* 7 (1937), nos. 1–2, pp. 122–151; M. Gyóni, "Zur Frage der rumänischen Staatsbildungen im XI. Jahrhundert in Paristrion (Archaisierende Volksnamen und ethnische Wirklichkeit in der "Alexias" von Anna Komnene)," *AECO* 9–10 (1943–1944), pp. 83–188; E. Lozovan, "Byzance et la romanité scythique," *Revue des études roumaines* 5–6 (1960), p. 233–237; A. Tonchev, "Сведения за българската история в "Алексиада" на Ана Комнина," *Исторически преглед* 26 (1970), no. 5, pp. 128–130; I. Barnea, "Stăpînirea bizantină," pp. 139–146; N.-Ş. Tanaşoca, "Mixo-barbarii paristrieni şi ipoteticele cristalizări de stat româneşti de la Dunărea de Jos," in idem, *Bizanţul şi românii* (Bucharest, 2003), pp. 59–77; V. Mărculeţ, *Imperiul Bizantin la Dunărea de Jos în secolele X–XII. Spaţiul carpato-balcanic şi politica vest-pontică a Imperiului Bizantin* (Târgu Mureş, 2005), pp. 152–159; Madgearu, *Organizarea militară bizantină* (see above, n. 205), pp. 63–68.

<sup>279</sup> Anne Comnène, II, p. 193.

<sup>280</sup> Michel le Syrien, p. 204. See also V. Spinei, "Realităţi etnico-politice de la Dunărea de Jos în secolele XI–XII în cronică lui Mihail Sirianul (I)," *RI*s 36 (1983), no. 10, p. 1001.

Balkans in 1086, as the Cumans kept devastating their settlements. Anna Comnena seems to suggest that north of the Lower Danube, in the Romanian Plain and in the Bugeac, there were still Pecheneg groups, which the Cumans wanted to subdue, in order to control the Danube line at will. Taking advantage of the political and military crisis in the Empire, the Cumans joined the Pechenegs led by Tzeglu and the Hungarians led by the former king Salomon, and they all plundered the Balkan provinces. After Tzelgu's defeat, the Cumans came back to the left bank of the Danube, but soon returned to the Balkans, in response to a call for support from Tatos, the lord of Dristra. The disagreement between the Cumans and the Pechenegs regarding plunder shares produced a decisive breach between the two Turkic peoples, a breach which Alexius I skilfully exploited in the spring of 1091. At Lebunion, with the Cuman support, he managed to obtain a decisive victory over the Pechenegs.<sup>281</sup> The battle of Lebunion effectively put an end to the Pecheneg problem in the Balkans and led to the re-establishment of Byzantine authority on the Danube. The victory against the Pechenegs, obtained almost at the same time as that against the Turkic emirs of Asia Minor, signalled a new (and final) rise of Byzantium to the status of European political power, a position the Empire maintained throughout the entire period of the Comnenian dynasty.

The Pecheneg disaster at Lebunion seems to have also been a warning to the Cumans in the Balkans, who consequently withdrew quickly to the lands beyond the Danube.<sup>282</sup> A few weeks after the destruction of the Pechenegs, however, a Cuman invasion hit the Balkans at the same time as the Byzantine rule was seriously challenged in Dalmatia.<sup>283</sup> Since no clashes are mentioned between Emperor Alexius and the Cumans

---

<sup>281</sup> Anne Comnène, II, pp. 87–97, 139–144; Matthieu d'Édesse (see above, n. 207), pp. 199–200; Matthew of Edessa (see above, n. 251), p. 155; Zonaras, col. 303–304; Ioannis Zonarae *Epitomae historiarum libri XVIII*, III, *Libri XIII–XVIII*, ed. Th. Büttner-Wobst (Bonn, 1897), pp. 740–741. See also Vasilevskii, “Византия и печенегии” (see above, n. 239), pp. 48–98; K. Dieter, “Zur Glaubwürdigkeit der Anna Komnena, 1. Der Petschenegenkrieg 1084–1091,” *BZ* 3 (1894) pp. 386–390; F. Chalandon, *Essai sur le règne d'Alexis Ier Comnène (1081–1118)* (Paris, 1900), pp. 105–134; A. A. Vasiliev, *Histoire de l'Empire byzantin*, II, trans. P. Brodin and A. Bourguina (Paris, 1932), pp. 11–16; G. Buckler, *Anna Comnena. A Study* (Oxford, 1968), pp. 434–438; Malamut, “L'image byzantine” (see above, n. 247), pp. 141–142; eadem, *Alexis Ier Comnène* (Paris, 2007), pp. 84–88; Bica, *Thema Paristrion* (see above, n. 201), pp. 115–117; Curta, *Southeastern Europe*, pp. 300–302.

<sup>282</sup> Anne Comnène, II, p. 145.

<sup>283</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 147.

of 1091, it is possible that the marauders preferred to return to their abodes north of the Danube before encountering the Byzantine army. It is worth mentioning that the Cuman armies that helped Byzantium against the Pechenegs were led by the chieftains Tugorkan and Boniak,<sup>284</sup> famous for their repeated and extremely energetic expeditions against Kievan Rus', as still mentioned even in the Ukrainian folklore.<sup>285</sup> They especially had much military success in the basin of the Dnieper, where the centre of the Cuman tribal union was located at the end of the eleventh century. Their involvement in the military developments in the Balkans suggests that the Cuman hordes living near the Danube Delta were not sufficiently strong to organize raids on their own.

Shortly after their return from the campaign into the Byzantine lands, in 1091 or 1092, the Cumans led by Kopolch launched another raid into Transylvania and Hungary, most likely crossing the Carpathian Mountains from southern Moldavia. From the central Transylvania, the Cumans then moved to Bihor and then as far as the Tisza, the Timiș and the Danube rivers. They split into three groups, each now loaded with captured goods and prisoners. The marauders were attacked and defeated by King Ladislav (László) the Saint (1077–1095), who then accused the Rus' of having instigated the Cumans and subsequently organized an expedition of reprisals into Galicia.<sup>286</sup> After many years of war incursions into the Byzantine Empire and Hungary, during which the Cumans crossed southern Moldavia several times, the targets of their main attacks shifted again to the Rus' regions of the Middle Dnieper. The incursions against Rus' resumed in 1092, when the nomads also attacked Poland, most likely as a consequence of a particularly harsh drought in the steppe lands.<sup>287</sup>

Though fully involved in fighting in southern Rus', the Cumans answered in 1094 or 1095 to a request for military assistance from an alleged son of Romanus IV Diogenes, and invaded the Balkans. The fact that the pretender contacted the Turanians in Chersonesus<sup>288</sup> and

<sup>284</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 136 (where they are called Togorták and Maniák).

<sup>285</sup> Vasilievskii, "Византия и печенеги," pp. 76–77; Pletneva, "Половецкая земля" (see above, n. 269), pp. 272–274.

<sup>286</sup> *Chronici Hungarici* (see above, n. 273), pp. 412–414; *CPict*, pp. 75–76, 197–198; *Chronicon Monacense*, p. 78; Johannes de Thurocz, I, pp. 116–117. See also P. Golubovskii, *Половцы в Венгрии* (Kiev, 1889), pp. 3–4.

<sup>287</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 141.

<sup>288</sup> Anne Comnène, II, p. 191.

that one of their commanders was Togorták (Tugorkan)<sup>289</sup> strongly suggests that the Cumans who invaded the Balkans belonged to a group controlling the steppe lands north of the Black Sea. The invasion went well and the Cumans (Polovtsy) do not seem to have had any problem conquering Paristrion, at least in part because of Emperor Alexius' lack of popularity during the first years of his reign. That much results from the fact that the local Vlachs led the Cumans through the passes of the Balkan Mountains, while some strongholds even opened their gates for them.<sup>290</sup> That the Balkan Vlachs were hostile to the imperial authorities was also noted, as we have seen, by Michael the Syrian, and may explain subsequent developments throughout the twelfth century, up to their uprising led by the Asenid brothers. The Vlach hostility towards the Byzantines was also noted by Kekaumenos<sup>291</sup> and of Benjamin of Tudela.<sup>292</sup>

The Cumans advanced up to Anchialos and Adrianople, but they could not manage to conquer them.<sup>293</sup> The capture of the pretender to the throne produced confusion in his camp, so the imperial troops defeated the Cumans and drove them away.<sup>294</sup> They would not dare to trespass the frontiers of Byzantium again for two decades. Nevertheless, the threat of Cuman invasions did not disappear. Following the passage of the crusaders through the Empire, the Danube line was kept under control by the Byzantines. Anna Comnena relates that, in order to temper "the barbarians" who were fussing at the borders, the emperor offered them prestige titles and gifts. Since, in a previous sentence, that author had referred to the unrest of Cumans and Hungarians,<sup>295</sup> it is

<sup>289</sup> Ibidem, p. 198.

<sup>290</sup> Ibidem, p. 194. The dating of this expedition to 1094, which was advanced, among others by Diaconu (*Coumans*, pp. 48–50), was rejected by P. Gautier, "La synode des Blachernes (fin 1094). Étude prosopographique," *Revue des études byzantines* 29 (1971), pp. 280–284, and Gh. Mănușu-Adameșteanu, "Din nou despre atacul cumanelor din anul 1095 și încetarea locuirii de la Păcuil lui Soare," in *Simpoșion de numismatică dedicat împlinirii a patru secole de la prima Unire a românilor sub Mihai Voievod Viteazul, Chișinău, 28–30 mai 2000*, gen. ed. E. Nicolae (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 109–120.

<sup>291</sup> Cecaumeni *Consilia* (see above, n. 103), pp. 254–265 and 270–271.

<sup>292</sup> Benjamin of Tudela, *The Itinerary*, ed. M. N. Adler (London, 1907), p. 11; idem (Benjamin de Tudela), *Itinerario*, ed. L. Riber, *Boletín de la Real Academia Española* 35 (1956), pp. 406–407; idem (Benjamin von Tudela), *Buch der Reisen (Sefür ha-massa'ot)*, I, *Text*, trans. R. P. Schmitz (Frankfurt am Main–Bern–New York–Paris, 1988), p. 10.

<sup>293</sup> *Vita Meletii/Житие Мелетии*, in *FHB, XXII (Fontes Graeci Historiae Bulgaricae, X)*, eds. M. Voynov, V. Tăpkova-Zaimova, L. Ionchev (Sofia, 1980), pp. 97–98; Anne Comnène, II, pp. 195–201.

<sup>294</sup> Anne Comnène, II, pp. 202–204.

<sup>295</sup> Ibidem, III, ed. B. Leib (Paris, 1945), pp. 160–161.

very probable that they were “the barbarians” in question. This could also explain, at least in part, the good relations the nomads subsequently maintained with the Empire. In order to ensure the security at the Danube frontier, the Byzantine emperor recruited Cuman mercenaries. Cuman, as well as Pecheneg auxiliary troops were attested near the Danube on the occasion of the crusaders’ passing through the western region of the 1096 and 1097.<sup>296</sup> Some Western sources also mention the Uzes (*Usi*,<sup>297</sup> *Husi*)<sup>298</sup> among those auxiliary troops.

### *Twelfth Century*

The Cumans appear also in a number of late eleventh- and early twelfth-century political developments in the lands his headquarters in north of the Lower Danube. In 1097 a nomadic army, led by Boniak and Altunopa, is recorded as helping the princes in south-western Rus’

---

<sup>296</sup> *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens occidentaux*, III (Paris, 1866), pp. 19 (Petri Tudebodi seu Tudebovis *Historia de Hierosolymitano itinere*), 178 (Tudebodus imitatus et continuatus, *Historia Peregrinorum*), 236 (Raimundi de Aguilers *Historia Francorum qui ceperunt Iherusalem*); IV (Paris, 1879), pp. 279, 417, 579 and 651 (Alberti Aquensis *Historia Hierosolymitana*); Petrus Tudebodus, *Historia de Hierosolymitano itinere*, eds. J. H. Hill and L. L. Hill (Paris, 1977), p. 44; Raymond d’Aguilers, *Le “Liber,”* eds. J. H. Hill and L. L. Hill (Paris, 1969), p. 38; Willermo Tyrensi archiepiscopo, *Historia rerum in partibus Transmarinis gestarum a tempore successorum Mahumeth usque ad annum Domini MCLXXXIV*, in *Gesta Dei per Francos*, I, ed. I. Bongarsius (Hanoviae, 1611), p. 663. Some chronicles mention only “Turcopoli” and Pechenegs among those who harassed the crusaders. See *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, in *Gesta Dei*, I, p. 2; *Historia Iherosolimitana* Baldrico episcopo Dolensi, in *Gesta Dei*, I, p. 91; *Anonymi Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, ed. H. Hagenmeyer (Heidelberg, 1890), pp. 142 and 162; *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum/The Deeds of the Franks and the other Pilgrims to Jerusalem*, ed. R. Hill (London–Edinburgh–Paris–Melbourne–Toronto–New York, 1962), pp. 6 and 9; Orderici Vitalis *Historiae ecclesiasticae libri XIII*, in *Patrologiae cursus completus, Patrologiae latinae*, ed. J.-P. Migne, CLXXXVIII (Paris, 1890), col. 661; Gombos, II, p. 1450 (Leo Marsicanus et continuator eius Petrus Diaconus); Robertus Monachus, *Historia Hierosolimitana*, in *Itinera Hierosolymitana Crucesignatorum (saec. XII–XIII)*, I, ed. S. de Sandoli (Jerusalem, 1978), p. 204; Metellus von Tegernsee, *Expeditio Ierosolimitana*, ed. P. C. Jacobsen (Stuttgart, 1982), pp. 11 and 13. Others blamed Alans, Bulgarians, and Pechenegs for attacks on the crusaders. See *Historia Hieroso[l]imitana auctoris incerti*, in *Gesta Dei*, I, p. 1159.

On the chronology of the crusaders’ movements through the Byzantine territories in the Balkans, see H. Hagenmeyer, “Chronologie de la première Croisade (1094–1100),” *Revue de l’Orient Latin* 6 (1898), pp. 241–284; J. Prawer, *Histoire du Royaume latin de Jérusalem*, trans. G. Nahon, I (Paris, 1969), pp. 186–201; P. Lock, *The Routledge Companion to the Crusades* (London–New York, 2006), pp. 20–22.

<sup>297</sup> Petrus Tudebodus, *Historia*, 1977, p. 44.

<sup>298</sup> Raymond d’Aguilers, *Le “Liber,”* p. 38.

against the Hungarian king Coloman (1095–1116), the call for help coming from great prince Sviatopolk II (1093–1113). The Cuman attack caused the total destruction of the Hungarian army, whose remnants retreated through passes of the northern Carpathians.<sup>299</sup> A few years later, in 1106, a Cuman incursion into Volhynia was repelled by Sviatopolk II, with the Turanians subsequently seeking refuge at the Danube frontier.<sup>300</sup> This particular detail noted in the Russian chronicles shows that the nomadic group that had launched the raid lived in the vicinity of the river. The Cumans who invaded the Empire in 1114 came from the neighboring territories, namely from the western region of the Romanian Plain. At least this is the conclusion to which leads Anna Comnena's remark that Emperor Alexius first moved against in the region of Vidin. As the nomads' forces were reduced, they did not dare engage in fights with the Byzantine armies; instead they immediately crossed the Danube to its left bank, where they were pursued for three days and three nights. The military developments of 1114 suggest that a tight Byzantine control over the Danube region. Before crossing the river, the Byzantines had been warned about the intentions of the Cumans, so that Alexius had enough time to establish Philippopolis (present-day Plovdiv), and to place troops at different strategic points in the northern Balkans.<sup>301</sup>

During the second part of Alexius I's reign, the Empire resurfaced as the main political force in the region close to the steppe lands north of the Lower Danube and the Black Sea, even though the Byzantine possessions in the Balkans and in Crimea were now threatened by the Rus' princes, Hungary, and the Cumans. In response to this new political configuration, Emperor Alexius offered in 1104 a matrimonial alliance to Prince Volodar of Premysl, who was at the time an ally of the Cumans, but an enemy of both Hungary and Kiev. In response, the Kievan prince established dynastic ties with Hungary.<sup>302</sup> The end result of such diplomatic moves was that the Empire now strove to remain on good terms with the Cumans, while hostile to Kievan Rus' princes.

Russian sources mention a temporary conquest, in 1116, of a few towns on the Danube by the armies of prince Vladimir II Monomakh

<sup>299</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 179; *CPict*, pp. 79–80 and 201–202.

<sup>300</sup> *NPL*, pp. 19 and 203; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 20; *Летописный сборникъ именуемый Тверскою летописью*, in *PSRL*, XV (1863), col. 189.

<sup>301</sup> Anna Comnène, III, pp. 177–178 and 182–183.

<sup>302</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 185.

(1113–1125), but also his failure to conquer Dristra.<sup>303</sup> Some have rightly raised doubts about the trustworthiness of that information, not only because of a possible confusion with other events (Cumans' expedition of 1094/1095), but also because neither Anna Comnena, nor any other Byzantine source mentioned a Byzantine-Rus' military confrontation on the Lower Danube.<sup>304</sup> Nevertheless, when taking into account other pieces of information from the chronicles, it seems safe to conclude that Vladimir II Monomakh was genuinely interested in the Danube area.<sup>305</sup> Considering the 1097 testimony of prince Vasilko Rostislavich,<sup>306</sup> it seems that Sviatoslav's old dream to extend his rule south of the Danube had not been completely forgotten.

In any case, Kievan dreams of expansion into regions at the mouths of the Danube were thwarted by the nomads who controlled the steppe lands north of that river and of the Black Sea. Nevertheless, there is now archaeological evidence from the Byzantine towns in Dobrudja of twelfth- and thirteenth-century goods produced in Rus'.<sup>307</sup> This evidence suggests a commercial expansion of Rus' to the Lower Danube, which is a much more likely possibility than a military occupation.

The peace established in the Lower Danube area by the Comnenian rulers was disturbed again in 1122–1123, when a "Scythian" army of nomads from the steppes north of the Black Sea invaded the Balkans.<sup>308</sup>

<sup>303</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 201; *Ip.let.*, pp. 7–8; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 24; *Hust.let.*, p. 291. See also *Nik.let.*, I, p. 150 (where the events are dated to 6625 = 1117).

<sup>304</sup> Chalandon, *Essai sur le règne d'Alexis Ier*, pp. 152 and 267–268; M. Mathieu, "Les faux Diogènes," *Byzantion* 22 (1952), pp. 145–146; Diaconu, *Coumans*, pp. 59–61; A. I. Gonța, *Relațiile românilor cu slavii de răsărit pînă la 1812* (Chișinău, 1993), pp. 61–63.

<sup>305</sup> G. G. Litavrin, "Русь и Византия в XII веке," *Вопросы истории* (1972), no. 7, pp. 43–44; A. A. Gorskiĭ, "Русско-византийские отношения при Владимире Мономахе и русское летописание," *Исторические записки* 115 (1987), pp. 308–328.

<sup>306</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 176.

<sup>307</sup> I. Barnea, "Byzance, Kiev et l'Orient sur le Bas-Danube du X<sup>e</sup> au XII<sup>e</sup> siècle," in *Nouvelles études d'histoire* (Bucharest, 1955), pp. 173–177; Gh. Mănucu-Adameșteanu, "Noi descoperiri arheologice la Isaccea," *SCIVA* 38 (1987), no. 3, pp. 285–292; V. B. Perkhavko, *Связи Древней Руси со славянскими странами* (История, 4) (Moscow, 1987), pp. 32–34; idem, "Russia's trade with Byzantium's Danubian provinces in the eleventh-twelfth centuries," in *Acts XVIIIth International Congress of Byzantine Studies, Selected Papers: Main and Communications, Moscow, 1991*, II, eds. I. Ševčenko and G. G. Litavrin, corresponding ed. W. K. Hanak (Shepherdstown, WV, 1996), pp. 13–18.

<sup>308</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome rerum ab Ioanne et Alexio Comnenis gestarum*, ed. A. Meineke (Bonn, 1836), pp. 7–8; Choniates (see above, n. 261), pp. 19–23; *Rhetoris anonymi Oratio ad Ioannem Comnenum imperatorem*, in *Fontes rerum Byzantinorum*, 2, ed. W. Regal (Petropoli, 1917), p. 334; Eustathii metropolitae Thessalonicensis *Opuscula*, ed. T. L. F. Tafel (Frankfurt, 1832), p. 44 (VII. *Ad Isaacium Angelum imperatorem post Scythas fugatos allocutio Philippopoli*); *FHDR*, IV, pp. 62–63 (*Typica*), 70–71 (Theodoros Prodromos); Michel le



Niketas Choniates normally used the name “Scythians” in reference to the Pechenegs,<sup>309</sup> but Michael the Syrian maintains that the invaders were Cumans.<sup>310</sup> There may have been some connection between the above-mentioned incursion into the Empire and Vladimir Monomakh’s action of driving the Berendei away from Rus’, followed by the Torki (= Uzes) and the Pechenegs (*Прозна Володимеръ Береньдичи изъ Руси, а Торци и Печенежи сами бежаша*) in 1121.<sup>311</sup> Since the Cumans had driven the Uzes and the Pechenegs away from the lands along the Don,<sup>312</sup> it is difficult to believe that those tribes also sought refuge in Desht-i Qipchaq (= the Cumans’ Steppe).

The Berendei first moved to Hungary, and then, in 1139, returned to Rus’.<sup>313</sup> As for the Pechenegs and the Uzes, they probably turned towards the Balkan Peninsula, crossing the Danube together with their families on their carts. It is not impossible that Cuman groups on the Lower Danube joined them. In any case, from Byzantine sources one can infer that several tribes with their own chieftains took part in the expedition of 1122–1123. The Pechenegs must have had the leading role in the campaign, because after the victory of Emperor John II Comnenus over the invaders, a celebration was instituted in Constantinople of the so-called “festival of the Pechenegs” (*Πατζινάκων τελετή*).<sup>314</sup> After this last outbreak, the Pechenegs never created any problems for Byzantium, and were only rarely mentioned in sources pertaining to the Balkans. In fact, they only reappear in reports of the Second and

---

Syrien (see above, n. 250), pp. 206–207. See also M. V. Bibikov, “Источниковедческие проблемы изучения истории кочевников в Нижнем Подунавье в XII веке,” *RRH* 19 (1980), no. 1, pp. 47–52; idem, “Сведение Ипатьевской летописи о печенегах и торках в свете данных византийских источников XII в.,” in *Летописи и хроники 1980 г.* (Moscow, 1981), pp. 55–68; A. G. K. Savvides, “Η τελευταία Πατζινάκική ἐπιδρομή στό Βυζάντιο (1122/23),” *Παρνασσός* 27 (1985), no. 3, pp. 493–503.

<sup>309</sup> Choniates, pp. 20–23.

<sup>310</sup> Michel le Syrien, p. 206. On this problem, see also I. Ferent, *Cumanii și episcopiile lor* (Blaj, [1931]), pp. 36–37; Diaconu, *Coumans*, pp. 66–71; Stephenson, *Byzantium’s Balkan Frontier* (see above, n. 197), p. 106.

<sup>311</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 8. See also *Let. Voskr.*, p. 25; *Hust.let.*, p. 292; *Холмогорская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 33, ed. K. N. Serbin (Leningrad, 1977), p. 42. In *Продолжение Лаврентіевской летописи*, in *PSRL*, I, p. 128, mention is made only of Torki and Berendei running away from Rus’ in 6628 (= 1120).

<sup>312</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 8.

<sup>313</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 14–15.

<sup>314</sup> Choniates, p. 23. See also Eustathii metropolitae Thessalonicensis *Opuscula*, p. 44.

Third Crusades. In 1147<sup>315</sup> and, again, in 1189,<sup>316</sup> the crusaders crossing the Balkans are said to have been harassed by Pechenegs and Cumans, who were either in Byzantine service or allies of the Asenids.<sup>317</sup> In the south Russian steppes, the Pechenegs disappear from the historical record after 1169.<sup>318</sup>

For twenty-five years, no invasion of Turanian horsemen has troubled the Balkan provinces of Byzantium, an indication that John II Comnenus (1118–1143) had been just as concerned as his father and predecessor, Alexius I, with the protection of the northern frontier of the Empire. It is difficult to decide whether the Cumans were kept at bay by the military garrisons of Paristrion or the gold paid to them as gifts. In any case, Moldavia ceased to be the launching pad for raids into the Balkan provinces of the Empire. Maintaining peace with the Cumans seems to have been a high priority for the Byzantines, given that the imperial armies were already engaged in struggles against the Seljuq Turks, the Normans of southern Italy, the Hungarians, and other enemies. Twice during the wars with Hungary, in 1128 and 1156, the imperial fleet sailed along the Danube for joint actions with the land forces.<sup>319</sup>

At the same time, the campaigns, which Vladimir II Monomakh led against the nomads in the steppes created great problems for the Cumans,<sup>320</sup> and effectively prevented them from raiding other territories. It is possible that Vladimir II's offensive convinced the horde led by Atrak (Otrok), Sharukan's son, to accept the invitation of King Davit II Aġmashenebeli (the Builder) (1089–1125) to settle in northern Georgia,

---

<sup>315</sup> Odo of Deuil, *De profectione Ludovici VII in Orientem*, ed. V. Gingerick Berry (New York, 1948), pp. 52–53; idem (Eudes de Deuil), *La Croisade de Louis VII, roi de France*, ed. H. Waquet (Paris, 1949), pp. 40–41.

<sup>316</sup> *Das Itinerarium peregrinorum*, ed. H. E. Mayer, in *MGH,SS*, 18 (Stuttgart, 1962), p. 21.

<sup>317</sup> K. Schünemann, "Ungarische Hilfsvölker in der Literatur des deutschen Mittelalters," *Ungarische Jahrbücher* 4 (1924), no. 1, pp. 104–105; Spinei, *Great Migrations*, I, pp. 209–213; II, pp. 388–390 and 405–406.

<sup>318</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 96.

<sup>319</sup> Choniates (see above, n. 261), p. 24; Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome*, p. 133.

<sup>320</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 4–8; *Nik.let.*, I, pp. 138–141 and 151. See also S. A. Pletneva, "Донские половцы," in "Слово о полку Игореве" и его время, ed. B. A. Rybakov (Moscow, 1985), pp. 257–262; eadem, *Половцы* (Moscow, 1990), pp. 53–68; I. B. Mikhailova, "Древняя Русь и Степь," in *Россия и степной мир Евразии*, ed. Iu. V. Krivosheev (St. Petersburg, 2006), pp. 103–107.

and to become his mercenaries.<sup>321</sup> It was only after the Kievan great prince's death that the nomadic Turks became aggressive again, and they began to interfere in the conflicts between different Rus' princes. A Cuman invasion of Poland is also mentioned in 1135.<sup>322</sup>

Under Manuel I Comnenus (1143–1180) the Byzantine presence was felt outside the Empire's frontiers. The emperor's unreasonable ambitions, which centred upon his idea of dominating the seas, implied an exhausting involvement of the imperial armies on various battlefields. Though the still rich Byzantium and its dynamic ruler could not avoid some failures, there were favourable results in the Balkans. After Manuel's ascent to the throne his relationships with the Cumans deteriorated; the latter crossed the Danube in 1148 and took to plunder. The Turanians did not have enough forces to fight directly against Manuel's armies, so they went back across the river, and were pursued up to *Tenu Ormon*,<sup>323</sup> which must have been somewhere in the Lower Danube plain. Numerous hypotheses have been proposed for its exact location.<sup>324</sup> The similarity between *Tenu Ormon* and the Romanian place name *Teleorman*, a Turkic loan meaning "crazy forest," has been taken as a decisive argument. However, a new interpretation of the account of those events in the chronicle of John Kinnamos, proposes the reading of τὸ ὄρος (= mountain, height), the noun associated with the place

<sup>321</sup> *Life of David, King of Kings*, in *The Georgian Chronicle. The Period of Giorgi Lasha*, ed. S. Qaukhchishvili, trans. K. Vivian (Amsterdam, 1991), pp. 19–20, 26, and 28; *Histoire de la Géorgie depuis l'Antiquité jusqu'au XIX siècle*, trans. [M.-F.] Brosset, I, *Histoire ancienne, jusqu'en 1469 de J.-C.* (St. Petersburg, 1849), pp. 362–363 and 368–370 (Wakhtang). See also P. B. Golden, "The Turkic people and Caucasia," in *Transcaucasia. Nationalism and Social Change. Essays in the History of Armenia, Azerbaijan and Georgia*, ed. R. G. Suny (Ann Arbor, 1983), p. 59; idem, "Cumanica I: the Qıpçaqs in Georgia," *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 57–64; idem, "Nomads in the sedentary world: the case of pre-Chinggisid Rus' and Georgia," in *Nomads in the Sedentary World*, eds. A. M. Khazanov and A. Wink (Richmond, Surrey, 2001), pp. 46–51; A. N. Karsanov, "Об одном известии Ипатьевской летописи" in *Аланы: история и культура*, III (Vladikavkaz, 1995), pp. 399–400.

<sup>322</sup> *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, II, ed. A. Bielowski (Lwów, 1872), pp. 832 (*Rocznik Traski*) and 875 (*Rocznik Sedziwoja*). See also D. Rassovsky, "Половцы, IV, Военная история половцевъ," *SK* 11 (1940), p. 120.

<sup>323</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome* (see above, n. 308), pp. 93–94. See also Choniatas, pp. 103–104.

<sup>324</sup> For a survey of the relevant literature, see Barnea, "Stăpînirea bizantină" (see above, n. 241), pp. 158–160. For the battles of 1148, see P. Ş. Năsturel, "Valaques, Coumans et Byzantins sous le règne de Manuel Comnène," *Byzantina* 1 (1969), pp. 169–176; M. V. Bibikov, "Византийские хроники и локализация половецко-византийской войны 1148 г.," in *Летописи и хроники 1976 г.* (Moscow, 1976), pp. 17–22; P. Diaconu, "À propos de l'invasion cumane de 1148," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, I, eds. E. Stănescu and N. Ş. Tanaşoca (Bucharest, 1979), pp. 19–27.

name *Tenu Ormon* (ἐπι ὄρος τένου ὄρμον) as ὄρος (= edge, territory),<sup>325</sup> which makes much more sense. In his account of the fighting between the Byzantines and the Cumans, John Kinnamos mentions a “barbarian” chieftain, named Lazarus,<sup>326</sup> an obviously Christian name. Lazarus may have been a Romanian ruler allied with the nomads.<sup>327</sup>

The involvement of the Byzantine in the disputes over the north-western parts of the Balkan Peninsula was the opportunity the Cumans used to return to the Empire in 1150, when they sacked the fortresses on the Danube and defeated the troops sent against them.<sup>328</sup> Manuel I’s response consisted not just in bringing troops to the Lower Danube, but also in sending a Byzantine army, which landed on the shore of the Sea of Azov 1152 or 1153. The expeditionary corps was meant to strike the Cuman settlements by surprise.<sup>329</sup> All we know about military action undertaken by the emperor comes from a panegyric written by Michael Rhetor, a Byzantine churchman.<sup>330</sup> The result of the expedition is not known, which suggests that it was not very successful.

Another invasion of the Cumans occurred in the subsequent years.<sup>331</sup> Since they immediately withdrew north of the Danube when Manuel I moved against them, one can infer that the military capacity of the nomads was rather weak. However, the Cuman forces do not appear diminished, given that the emperor led his armies in battle against them

<sup>325</sup> P. Ş. Năsturel, “À propos du Tenou Ormon (Teleorman) de Kinnamos,” in *Geographica Byzantina*, ed. H. Ahrweiler (Paris, 1981), pp. 81–91.

<sup>326</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome*, p. 95.

<sup>327</sup> Iorga, *Histoire*, III, p. 70; Năsturel, “Valaques,” p. 175; idem, “Axiopolis sous les Comnènes. Une relecture de Kinnamos (III 3),” in *Prinos lui Petre Diaconu la 80 de ani*, eds. I. Căndeia, V. Sîrbu, M. Neagu (Brăila, 2004), pp. 531–532; Şt. Ştefănescu, *Țara Românească de la Basarab I “Întemeietorul” până la Mihai Viteazul* (Bucharest, 1970), p. 18.

<sup>328</sup> Choniates, pp. 123–124.

<sup>329</sup> A. P. Kazhdan, in *История Византии*, co-ord. S. D. Skazkin, 2, ed. A. P. Kazhdan (Moscow, 1967), pp. 323 and 455 with n. 27; idem, “Some little-known or misinterpreted evidence about Kievan Rus’ in twelfth-century Greek sources,” *Harvard Ukrainian Studies* 7 (1983) (= *Okeanos. Essays Presented to Ihor Ševčenko on his Sixtieth Birthday by his Colleagues and Students*, eds. C. Mango and O. Pritsak), pp. 344–358; M. V. Bibikov, “Древняя Русь и Византия в свете новых и малоизвестных византийских источников,” in *VEDS*, p. 299.

<sup>330</sup> Michaelis Rhetoris *Oratio ad Manuelem imperatorem*, in *Fontes rerum Byzantinorum*, 1–2, *Rhetorum saeculi XII. Orationes politicae*, ed. W. Regel (Petropoli, 1917; reprint Leipzig, 1982), p. 152.

<sup>331</sup> Ioannina Cinnami *Epitome* (see above, n. 308), pp. 201–202. The dating of this invasion is disputed, with some placing it in 1156 or 1157 (*FHDR*, III, p. 237), other in 1157 or 1158 (Ferenț, *Cumani* [see above, n. 310], p. 43), and others 1159 (Diaconu, *Cumans*, p. 90) or 1161 (F. Chalandon, *Jean II Comnène et Manuel I Comnène* [Paris, 1912], p. 474).

in 1048. The fact that Byzantium was confronted with three raids within a single decade indicates the growing power of the Cumans north of the Danube. In referring to the neighbours of the Hungarian Kingdom in the middle of the eleventh century, bishop Otto of Freising shows that to the north and the east (in fact south-east), Hungary was bounded by the large country of the Pechenegs and the Cumans, which was rich in game, but without agriculture (*unter aquilonem et item orientem Pecenatorum et Falonum maximam venationum copiam habente, sed vomere ac rastro pene experte campania*).<sup>332</sup> Unfortunately, it remains unclear whether the bishop, when mentioning the Pechenegs, had in mind an earlier or a contemporary situation. The existence of some Pecheneg groups under the Cuman domination in the Bugeac and the Romanian Plain is quite possible. After the third raid, the Cumans did not cross the Danube any more, which suggests that some settlement may have been reached between Manuel I and the nomads.

The positive course of those relationships can be deduced from an anonymous chronicle written in a monastery of Cologne. The chronicle refers to events that occurred in the year 1161. According to that source, at that moment the “king of Greece,” that is Manuel I Comnenus, warned the “kings of Turkey, Babylon, Persia and Cumania” against Frederick I Barbarossa’s upcoming attack against them: *Scrīpsit etiam idem rex Graeciae regibus Turchiae Babiloniae, Persidis et Comaniae, nunciāns illis, quod Romanus imperator terram suam et illorum occupare intendat*.<sup>333</sup> It is, of course, highly unlikely that Frederick, who was at the time involved in military expeditions in Lombardy, would have taken any such military undertaking.<sup>334</sup> However, Manuel’s message to the rulers of the East and Desht-i Qipchaq may have been designed to energise them with a view to a foreseeable future conflict with Frederick I.

---

<sup>332</sup> *Otonis episcopi Frisingensis et Rahewini Gesta Frederici seu rectius cronica*, ed. F.-J. Schmale (Darmstadt, 1965), p. 192.

<sup>333</sup> *Annales Colonienses Maximi*, ed. K. Pertz, in *MGH, SS, XVII*, ed. G. H. Pertz (1861), p. 774; *Chronica regia Coloniensis (Annales maximi Colonienses) cum continuationibus in monasterio S. Pantaleonis scriptis aliisque historiae Coloniensis monumentis*, ed. G. Waitz (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis recusi* [18]) (Hannoverae, 1880), p. 108.

<sup>334</sup> *Annales Colonienses Maximi*, pp. 773–777; *Chronica regia Coloniensis*, pp. 107–111. See also W. Ohnsorge, “Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte Manuels I. von Byzanz,” in idem, *Abendland und Byzanz. Gesammelte Aufsätze zur Geschichte der byzantinisch-abendländischen Beziehungen und des Kaisertums* (Darmstadt, 1979), p. 387 ff.; K. P. Todt, “Kaiser Friedrich I. Barbarossa und Byzanz,” *Hellenika. Jahrbuch für die Freunde Griechenlands* (1993), pp. 143–144.

In the mid-twelfth century the outer-Carpathian area was troubled not only by Cuman horsemen, but also by plots of pretenders to the Galician and Byzantine thrones, as well as by Manuel I Comnenus' campaign across the Danube. Ivan Rostislavich, who coveted the power in Galicia, and Andronicus Comnenus, who plotted to gain the imperial crown, sought temporary refuge in the region to the east of the Carpathian Mountains. As if descending from the world of Shakespearean dramas, the two characters of princely extraction, driven by fate into the Romanian lands, were in many respects similar, in ambition, spirit of adventure, and tenacity doubled with inconstancy.

Ivan Rostislavich, nicknamed "the Berladnik," first appeared on the Danube in 1144, after an unsuccessful attempt to seize power in Galicia.<sup>335</sup> Hoping to obtain assistance from Kiev, which had been in conflict with the Galician principality, he went first to Kiev, and then wandered around other princely courts, getting involved in the conflicts that afflicted Rus' after the death of Vladimir II Monomakh. In 1159, he came to the region north of the Lower Danube, where he began preparing an expedition designed to remove Iaroslav Osmomysli (1153–1187) from power. Before the beginning of the expedition, Ivan, together with his Cuman allies, is said to have looted two boats belonging to Galician fishermen on the Danube. Ivan's army consisted of 6,000 Berladniks and "many Cumans" from southern Moldavia. They made for Kuchelmin and Ushitsa, both towns on the southern frontier of Galicia. Ivan's troops were not strong enough to remove the prince, so that following the first encounters, they disbanded and Ivan fled to Kiev.<sup>336</sup>

The Berladniks did not return to Moldavia either, since in 1160 they are mentioned near the estuary of the Dnieper River as attacking Oleshia,<sup>337</sup> a locality recently identified with the twelfth- and thirteenth-century settlement on the Velikopotemkinski Isle in the Dnieper estuary.<sup>338</sup> Ivan Rostislavich's wanderings ended in Thessalonike, where he

<sup>335</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 20.

<sup>336</sup> *Ip.let.*, pp. 83–84; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 68; *Летопись по Уваровскому списку*, in *PSRL*, XXV (Moscow-Leningrad, 1949), p. 64.

<sup>337</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 86; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 71; *Летопись по Уваровскому списку*, in *PSRL*, XXV, p. 67.

<sup>338</sup> A. L. Sokulskii, "К локализации летописного Олешья," *СА* (1980), no. 1, pp. 64–73.

had fled in 1162. He was killed by the Byzantines,<sup>339</sup> which may be interpreted as a Byzantine attempt to please the powerful Galician ruler at a moment of strenuous Byzantine-Hungarian relations.

Two years later, however, when he had the opportunity to respond in kind, Iaroslav Osmomysli, who hesitated politically between Byzantium and Hungary, took a different attitude. Andronicus Comnenus, Emperor Manuel's cousin and political rival, had escaped from prison and fled to Halych. Before crossing into Galicia, Andronicus was caught by Romanians from Moldavia. He managed to escape again and reached Galicia, where he was well received.<sup>340</sup> Niketas Choniates' account of Andronicus' adventures contains one of the earliest mentions of Romanians north of the Danube.<sup>341</sup> The fact that the Romanians acted in Manuel I's interest suggests that the Empire had a strong political influence beyond its Danube frontier. In fact, Manuel's expeditions to the lands north of the Lower Danube aimed not only to discourage enemies endangering Byzantine interests in the area, but also to extend the Byzantine political control beyond the Danube.

Among Manuel I's great campaigns, there is one which he undertook in 1166 through the Romanian Plain against Hungary. During the ample display of forces on the Danube, with some simulated attacks and manoeuvres designed to divert the attention of the enemy, an important role was played by Leo Vatatzes' army, which contained a large number of Vlachs. John Kinnamos notes that those were probably descendents from Roman colonists from Italy,<sup>342</sup> a remark which may go back to information he may have obtained from Vlachs themselves, who were proud and obviously aware of their Roman origin.<sup>343</sup> According to the emperor's order, Vatatzes and his troops moved against Hungary from the Black Sea shore, perhaps crossing the Danube in northern Dobrudja in order to approach the Carpathian Mountains in the region of their bend. The recruiting of Vlachs must therefore have been a measure

<sup>339</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 91; *Let. Vöskr.*, p. 75; *Летопись по Уваровскому списку*, in *PSRL*, XXV, p. 71.

<sup>340</sup> Choniates (see above, n. 261), pp. 168–172. See also Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome* (see above, n. 308), p. 234; *Ip.let.*, p. 93; *Let. Vöskr.*, p. 78; *Hust.let.*, p. 308.

<sup>341</sup> Choniates, p. 171.

<sup>342</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome* p. 260.

<sup>343</sup> Armbruster, *La romanité*, pp. 29–30. See also I. Căndea, *Brăila. Origini și evoluție până la jumătatea secolului al XVI-lea* (Brăila, 1995), pp. 68–70; V. V. Muntean, "Les relations byzantino-roumaines au Moyen-Age. Nouvelles précisions," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, IV (see above, n. 228), pp. 170–171.

designed to secure a safe access of the Byzantine troops through a region inhabited by Romanians.<sup>344</sup>

In targeting Transylvania, the Byzantine expedition may have aimed at something more than just weakening the military forces of the Hungarian Kingdom. The twelfth-century Hungarian coins found in Wallachia and Oltenia<sup>345</sup> point to the existence of trade relations with Hungary, a situation that does not exclude the possibility of Arpadian kings intending to expand militarily across the Carpathian Mountains. As a hypothesis—that requires verification—I suggest that the imperial armies moving through the Romanians may have been an attempt to thwart any possibility of Hungary's entering the outer-Carpathian Romanian lands. Any action against the Hungarians through the Lower Danube plain was also a move to neutralise the Cumans, who could otherwise spoil the Byzantine military intervention. The Byzantine diplomacy had taken that element into account. The information according to which Cuman detachments fought as mercenaries in the Byzantine armies,<sup>346</sup> as well as the fact that for many years the Turkic invasions in the Balkans had been interrupted are proofs in that respect. Furthermore, Manuel I envisaged reconciliation with his cousin Andronicus, who was endeavouring to persuade the Cumans to join him for a combined invasion of the Empire.<sup>347</sup> At the same time, the Byzantine messengers sent Galicia succeeded in securing the alliance with Iaroslav Osmomysli, who thus abandoned his previously pro-Hungarian policies.<sup>348</sup>

---

<sup>344</sup> G. G. Litavrin, "Влахи византийских источников X–XIII вв.," in *IVESV*, p. 102. On Byzantine-Hungarian relations in 1166, see also R. Browning, "A new source on Byzantine-Hungarian relations in the twelfth century," *Balkan Studies* 2 (1961), pp. 173–214 (reprint in idem, *Studies on Byzantine History, Literature and Education* [Variorum Reprints] [London, 1977], no. IV, pp. 173–214); Z. J. Kosztolnyik, *From Coloman the Learned to Béla III (1095–1196). Hungarian Domestic Policies and Their Impact upon Foreign Affairs* (Boulder–New York, 1987), p. 180 ff.; P. Stephenson, "Manuel I Comnenus, the Hungarian crown and the 'feudal subjection' of Hungary, 1162–1167," *Byzantinoslavica* 57 (1996), no. 1, pp. 55–59; idem, *Byzantium's Balkan Frontier* (see above, n. 197), pp. 259–261; F. Makk, *A tizenkettedik század története* ([Budapest,] 2000), pp. 146–150; Curta, *Southeastern Europe*, pp. 316–317.

<sup>345</sup> B. Mitrea, "Oboli ungurești din prima jumătate a secolului al XII-lea descoperiți în Muntenia," *SCN* 4 (1968), pp. 409–412; D. Ciobotea, "Circulația monetară în Oltenia în preajma constituirii statului feudal independent Țara Românească (sec. X–XIV)," *Arhivele Olteniei*, SN, 2 (1983), pp. 80–82.

<sup>346</sup> Choniates, p. 230.

<sup>347</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 172–173.

<sup>348</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome*, pp. 235–236. On the Byzantine-Galician relations during the reign of Manuel I, see G. Vernadskij, "Relations byzantino-russes au



The Hungarian kings relied heavily on auxiliary troops recruited from among the populations within and outside the kingdom. The employment of Romanian auxiliaries is not attested before the early thirteenth century. During the twelfth century, the Romanians in Transylvania were either not interested to fight side by side with Hungarians, or they were considered untrustworthy because of living within a region in which the Hungarian kings had not yet brought fully under their control. Instead the twelfth-century Hungarian kings employed mercenaries recruited from among pagans or Muslim populations of eastern Europe.<sup>349</sup> On their way to Hungary those mercenaries probably passed through the outer-Carpathian Romanian lands, or through the Verecke pass in the north. An Arab traveller and missionary, Abu Hamid Al-Garnati (born in Andalusia), who lived in Hungary (*Bāšgird*) between 1150 and 1153, mentions military units under the Hungarian king's command, which were made up of Khwarazmians and "Magribians" (Pechenegs). Al-Garnati also mentions that Hungary had no less than 78 cities, as well as gold and silver mines.<sup>350</sup> The mines, as well as some of the cities, must have been those of Transylvania.

---

XII<sup>e</sup> siècle," *Byzantion* 4 (1927–1928), pp. 269–276; Levchenko, *Очерки* (see above, n. 160), pp. 479–496; E. Frances, "Les relations russo-byzantines au XII<sup>e</sup> siècle et la domination de Galicie au Bas-Danube," *Byzantinoslavica* 20 (1959), no. 1, pp. 50–62; O. Jurewicz, "Aus der Geschichte der Beziehungen zwischen Byzanz und Russland in der zweite Hälfte des 12. Jahrhunderts," in *Byzantinistische Beiträge*, ed. J. Irmscher (Berlin, 1964), pp. 333–357; idem, *Andronikos I. Komnenos* (Amsterdam, 1970), pp. 63–70; G. G. Litavrin, A. P. Kazhdan, Z. V. Udaltsova, "Отношения Древней Руси и Византий в XI-первой половине XIII в.," in *Proceedings of the XIIIth International Congress of Byzantine Studies* (Oxford, 1966) (offprint), pp. 10–12; Litavrin, "Русь и Византия" (see above, n. 305), pp. 46–48; N.-M. P. Murgulia, "The Byzantine Empire and centripetal tendencies in Rus in the 12th century," in *Actes du XV<sup>e</sup> Congrès international d'études byzantines, Athènes—septembre 1976, IV, Histoire, Communications* (Athens, 1980), pp. 259–267; O. Ioannisian, "Об одном эпизоде византийско-венгеро-галицких отношений во второй половине XII в.," in *Галицько-Волинська держава: передумови виникнення, історія, культура, традиції*, eds. Iu. Babik, V. Ivanovs'kii, Z. Matchak (L'viv, 1993), pp. 68–70; M. V. Bibikov, *Byzantinorossica. Свод византийских свидетельств о Руси, I* (Moscow, 2004), pp. 97–103.

<sup>349</sup> S. Balić, "Der Islam im mittelalterlichen Ungarn," *Südost-Forschungen* 23 (1964), pp. 19–35; C. A. Macartney, "The eastern auxiliaries of the Magyars," in idem, *Studies on Early Hungarian and Pontic History* (see above, n. 99), pp. 55–64; Gy. Györfly, *A magyarországi keleti elemei* (see above, n. 99), *passim*; Göckenjan, *Hilfsvölker* (see above, n. 98), pp. 23–139; G. Hatházi, "Az Árpád-kori magyar hadszervezet nomád elemeinek kérdéséhez. A besenyők," *Hadtörténelmi közlemények* 103 (1990), no. 2, pp. 22–60.

<sup>350</sup> Abu Hamid el Granadino, *Relación de viaje por tierras eurasiáticas*, ed. C. E. Dubler (Madrid, 1953), pp. 65–66; *Путешествие Абу Хамида ал-Гарнати в Восточную и*

As for twelfth-century Moldavia, some historians believe it to have been under Galician control.<sup>351</sup> That opinion is primarily based on the so-called “Bârlad diploma,” a charter allegedly issued by Ivanko Rostislavich in 1134 and claiming that the Galician prince’s rule extended as far south as Bârlad, Tecuci and “Malyi Galich,” which has been identified as the present-day city of Galați. However, the diploma has been convincingly shown to be a forgery more than a century ago,<sup>352</sup> although some still continue to believe in its authenticity.<sup>353</sup>

Another argument in favour of the idea of a Galician rule over Moldavia is a line from the poem *The Lay of Igor’s Campaign* referring to Iaroslav Osmomyśl: “O Iaroslav of Halich [Galicia],/the prince of

---

*Центральную Европу (1131–1153 гг.)*, eds. O. G. Bolshakov, A. L. Mongait (Moscow, 1971), pp. 38, 39, and 54.

<sup>351</sup> Roesler, *Romänische Studien* (see above, n. 96), pp. 323–326; M. Arkas, *Історія України-Русі*, ed. V. G. Sarbei (Odessa, 1994), p. 110; V. V. Mavrodin, “Русские на Дунае,” *Ленинградский Государственный Университет, Ученые записки*, 87, *Серия гуманитарных наук*, Saratov (1943), pp. 9–10; idem, *Образование* (see above, n. 147), pp. 90–91; K. G. Guslitsyi, “Период феодальной раздробленности Руси (XII–XIV вв.),” in *История Украинской ССР*, I, eds. A. K. Kasimenko (co-ord.), V. A. Diadichenko, F. E. Los’, F. P. Shevchenko, F. A. Iastrebov (Kiev, 1953), pp. 98–99; E. Frances, “Slavii pe pămîntul patriei noastre în veacul al XII-lea,” *RI* 8 (1955), no. 3, p. 65 ff.; A. Žukovs’kij, “Історія Буковини,” in *Буковина її минуле и сучасне*, eds. D. Klitkovs’kij, T. Brindzan, A. Žukovs’kij (Paris–Philadelphia–Detroit, 1956), pp. 103–113; Levchenko, *Очерки*, pp. 437–439; P. Gritsak, *Галицько-Волинська держава* (New York, 1958), pp. 40–44; C. Cihodaru, “Teritoriul Moldovei sub dominația cnejilor ruși,” in *Ist.Rom.*, II, pp. 204–205; N. Chubaty, “The medieval history of Ukraine: the princely era,” in *Ukraine. A Concise Encyclopaedia*, ed. V. Kubijovyc, I (Toronto, 1963), p. 605; A. Belopol’skii [Bielopole], *СССР на фоне прошлого России. Очерк русской истории в новом освещении* (Washington, D.C., 1973), pp. 27 and 30–31 (map); W. A. Serczyk, *Historia Ukrainy* (Wrocław–Warsaw–Cracow–Gdańsk, 1979), pp. 41 and 45; J. Z. Horodysky, *Byzantium and Rus’ Relations During the Reign of the Comneni Dynasty*, A thesis submitted to the Graduate School (New Brunswick–New Jersey, 1982), pp. 263–265; P. R. Magocsi, *Galicia: A Historical Survey and Bibliographic Guide* (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1983), pp. 51–52. G. Stöckl, “Das Fürstentum Galizien-Wolhynien,” in *HGR*, I, 1, p. 498 adopts a hesitating attitude in this problem.

<sup>352</sup> I. Bogdan, “Diploma birlădeană din 1134 și principatul Bârladului,” *AARMSI*, Ser. II, 11 (1888–1889), p. 65 ff.; A. I. Sobolevskii, “Грамота кн. Иванка Берладника 1134 г.,” in *Труды восьмого археологического съезда в Москве 1890*, II (Moscow, 1895), pp. 173–174. See also P. P. Panaitescu, “Din nou despre Diploma birlădeană din 1134,” *Romanoslavica* 13 (1966), pp. 85–91; S. M. Kashtanov, *Из истории русского средневекового источника. Акты X–XVI вв.* (Moscow, 1996), pp. 71–72.

<sup>353</sup> R. A. Rabinovich, “Призрачная Берладь. О достоверности одной фальсификации,” *Stratum plus* (1999), no. 5, pp. 357–378; idem, “Берладники, бродники, галицкие выгонцы,” in N. Tel’nov, V. Stepanov, N. Russev, R. Rabinovich, “И ... разошлись славяне по земле”. *Из истории Карпато-Днестровских земель VI–XIII вв.* (Chișinău, 2002), pp. 139–165.

eight senses!/You sit high on your throne wrought of gold./Your iron regiments defend the Hungarian mountains./You bar the way to the [Hungarian] king./You close the gates of the river Danube./You hurl stones over the clouds./Your law reigns up to the river Danube./Your thunder resounds above the lands./You keep the gates of Kiev open./From your father's golden throne you shoot at the sultan/beyond the [Russian] lands".<sup>354</sup> The passage is obviously hyperbolic, the intention being here to raise the status of Iaroslav, perhaps because he was a relative of Igor of Novgorod-Seversk, the poem's hero.<sup>355</sup> Leaving aside the impossibility of using such hyperboles as evidence of Yaroslav's rule over Moldavia, all the way to the Danube, the authenticity of the *The Lay of Igor's Campaign*, about which doubts had already been raised in the 1930s, has recently been disputed with very strong arguments by two outstanding Slavists, the Russian Aleksandr Aleksandrovich Zimin and the American Edward L. Keenan. The former claims that the poem was composed by a Russian monk named Ivan (Ioil) Bykovskii, who lived in the late 1700s,<sup>356</sup> while Keenan identifies the forger as no other than the Czech scholar Josef Dobrovský (1753–1829). Dobrovský appears to have written the poem shortly after his journey of study to Russia, at some point between 1792 and 1793, when Ossian (alias James Macpherson) was first translated into Russian.<sup>357</sup> As for the presence of

<sup>354</sup> *Слово о полку Игореве*, 2nd ed. D. S. Likhachev (Moscow-Leningrad, 1954), p. 86; *The Lay of Igor's Campaign*, in *Medieval Russia's Epics, Chronicles, and Tales*, ed. S. A. Zenkovsky (New York, 1974), p. 182; G. Barbă, L. Cotorcea, A. Crasovschi, *Слово о полку Игореве/Cântec despre oastea lui Igor*, ed. A. Crasovschi (Bucharest, 2000), pp. 66, 78–79, 97, 120, 146, 165–166, 210–211, 244, and 268.

<sup>355</sup> A. V. Boldur, "Teritoriul Moldovei față de principatele Kiev și Halici," *AM* 12 (1988), p. 230; Gh. Postică, "Spațiul pruto-nistean și vechile cnezate rusești în secolele X–XII," in *Civilizația medievală și modernă în Moldova. In honorem Demir Dragnev*, ed. L. Zabolotnâi (Chișinău, 2006), p. 224.

<sup>356</sup> A. A. Zimin, "When was *The Song of Prince Igor* written?," *Russian Studies in History* 45 (2006), no. 2 (*A. A. Zimin and the Controversy Over the Igor Tale*, eds. R. E. Martin and D. Ostrowski), pp. 13–34; idem, "The annotation to the 1307 Pskov *Apostol* and *The Song of Prince Igor*," *ibidem*, pp. 35–62; idem, "The Hypatian Chronicle and *The Song of Prince Igor*," *ibidem*, pp. 63–94. See also R. E. Martin and D. Ostrowski, "Guest editors' introduction," *ibidem*, pp. 3–12.

<sup>357</sup> E. L. Keenan, *Josef Dobrovský and the Origins of the "Igor Tale"* (Dumbarton Oaks Public Lecture, December 9, 1998); idem, "Was Iaroslav of Halych really shooting sultans in 1185?," *Harvard Ukrainian Studies* 22 (1998) (*Cultures and Nations of Central and Eastern Europe. Essays in Honor of Roman Szporluk*, eds. Z. Gitelman, L. Hajda, J.-P. Himka, R. Solchanyk), pp. 313–327; idem, "Turkic lexical elements in the *Igor Tale* and the *Žadonščina*," *The Slavonic and East European Review* 80 (2002), no. 3, pp. 479–482; idem, *Josef Dobrovský and the Origins of the Igor' Tale* (Cambridge, Mass., 2003), *passim*. See also

the small crosses and other artefacts of Rus' origin in Moldavia, they certainly show trade and confessional relations, not military conquest or political rule.<sup>358</sup>

The fact that Ivan Rostislavich, during his disputes with the princes of Galicia, twice fled to the lands by the Danube, in other words to southern Moldavia, clearly shows that his security was not endangered in that region. If so, that same region could not have been under the rule of those same princes from whom Ivan Rostislavich was fleeing. As for the events taking place in the vicinity of the Danube, a region in which Galician rulers appear to have been only occasionally and indirectly involved, their sway must have covered an area farther to the north. In fact, there is no evidence for either a Rus'<sup>359</sup> or a Byzantine rule<sup>360</sup> over the lands on the left bank of the Lower Danube, a territory which was at that time inhabited by, and under the control of nomads such as the Cumans. The Romanians in the outer-Carpathian regions were certainly under the rule of those nomads, not of Galicia.

Another idea favored by some historians is that the Lower Danube was a "no man's land" to which Rus' princes fled when faced with social or political challenges.<sup>361</sup> Such an idea is ultimately based on the belief that the Berladniks, the Brodniks and of other "Scythian" peoples mentioned in Byzantine sources were eastern Slavs. Southern Moldavia thus appears as a place where any political refugee could find shelter.<sup>362</sup> From an archaeological point of view, however, eleventh- and

---

Ch. J. Halperin, "Authentic? Not authentic? Not authentic, again!," *Jahrbücher für Geschichte Osteuropas* 54 (2006), no. 4, pp. 556–571.

<sup>358</sup> V. Spinei, "Les relations de la Moldavie avec Byzance et la Russie au premier quart du II<sup>e</sup> millénaire à la lumière des sources archéologiques," *Dacia*, NS, 19 (1975), pp. 235–241.

<sup>359</sup> Pashuto, *Внешняя политика* (see above, n. 160), p. 195; Rusanova, Timoshchuk, *Древнерусское Поднестровье* (see above, n. 158), p. 85.

<sup>360</sup> Diaconu, *Cumans*, pp. 99–100.

<sup>361</sup> M. N. Tikhomirov, *Крестьянские и городские восстания на Руси XI–XIII вв.* (Moscow, 1955), pp. 202–205; M. F. Kotliar, "Русь на Дунаї," *Український історичний журнал* (1966), no. 9, pp. 12–22; J. Shepard, "Tzetzes' letters to Leo at Dristra," *Byzantinische Forschungen* 6 (1979), pp. 207–210 and 219–228; P. P. Tolochko, "Галицьке князівство," in *Давня історія України*, 3, gen. ed. P. P. Tolochko (Kiev, 2000), p. 368.

<sup>362</sup> Several alternative points of view, based on well-informed and objective research, have been expressed in recent years by various Russian historians. See V. B. Perkhavko, "Князь Иван Берладник на Нижнем Дунае," in *Восточная Европа в древности и средневековье. Политическая структура древнерусского государства* (Moscow, 1996), pp. 70–75; I. O. Kniiaz'kii, *Славяне, волохи и кочевники Днестровско-Карпатских*

twelfth-century sites in the region produced artefacts very different from those in Rus', even when accounting for genuinely Rus' artefacts, which testify to trade relations with Rus' towns. There is, in other words, no evidence for a population originating from, or somewhat related, to that of the Rus' lands to the north-east. To the contrary, the above-mentioned artefacts have clear analogies on sites discovered elsewhere in Romania, on both sides of the Carpathian Mountains.

It is worth mentioning that recent studies have shown that the Cuman presence in the Lower Danube region during the eleventh and twelfth century was temporary and episodic, and that the bulk of the hordes occupied the lands to the east of the Dnieper River. The region north of the Danube appears to have been inhabited at that same time by groups of Pechenegs and Uzes, who, at a certain moment, obeyed Byzantine military orders.<sup>363</sup> In my opinion, the available archaeological material appears to point out to the maintenance of Pecheneg and Uzian elements on the left side of the Lower Danube, but it is very unlikely that the two populations could have elude the Cuman hegemony, who also had important positions near the river. That much is clear from the analysis of the narrative sources presented above.

The outbreak of the 1185 Vlach and Bulgar rebellion led by the Vlach brothers Peter and Asen took Byzantium by surprise. After almost two decades of sustained, but ultimately fruitless efforts to quell the uprising, the Byzantines were forced to admit defeat.<sup>364</sup> The

---

земель (конец IX–сер. XIII вв.) (Kolomna, 1997), pp. 197–204; I. G. Konovalova, V. B. Perkhavko, *Древняя Русь и Нижнее Подунавье* (Moscow, 2000), pp. 70–86; N. F. Kotliar, “Стратегия обороны галицкими и волыньскими князьями государственных рубежей в XII в.,” *Византийский временник* 65 (90) (2006), pp. 78–79 and 82–83.

<sup>363</sup> E. Stoliarik, *Essays on Monetary Circulation in the North-Western Black Sea Region in the Late Roman and Byzantine Periods. Late 3rd Century–Early 13th Century A.D.* (Odessa, 1993), pp. 86–89.

<sup>364</sup> C. R. v. Höfler, “Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiete der slavischen Geschichte, I, Die Walachen als Begründer des zweiten bulgarischen Reiches, der Asaniden, 1186–1257,” *Sitzungsberichte der Philosophisch-Historische Classe der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften* 95 (1879), nos. 1–4, pp. 229–245; N. Bănescu, *Un problème d'histoire médiévale. Création et caractère du second Empire bulgare (1185)* (Bucharest, 1943); R. L. Wolff, “The “Second Bulgarian Empire”. Its origin and history to 1204,” *Speculum* 24 (1949), no. 2, pp. 167–206 (reprint in *The Expansion of Orthodox Europe. Byzantium, the Balkans and Russia*, ed. J. Shepard [Variorum] [Aldershot-Burlington, 2007], pp. 267–306); B. Primov, “Crearea celui de-al doilea țarat bulgar și participarea vlahilor,” in *Relații româno-bulgare de-a lungul veacurilor (sec. XII–XIX). Studii*, I (Bucharest, 1971), pp. 9–56; Ch. M. Brand, *Byzantium Confronts the West, 1180–1204* (Cambridge, Mass., 1968), pp. 88–126;

rebellion began in the mountainous region of Haemus (= the Balkan Mountains), which was at that time inhabited by Vlachs and where strongholds perched on cliffs offered good conditions for natural protection.<sup>365</sup> However, the population on both sides of the Danube played a decisive role in the success of the Asenid uprising. In 1186, when Emperor Isaac II Angelus (1185–1195) undertook his first campaign in the north against the rebels, Peter and Asen crossed to the left bank of the Danube and returned with Cuman assistance.<sup>366</sup> From that moment on the Cuman light cavalry, attracted by the possibility of plundering rich regions, fought together with the Vlachs and the

---

G. Cankova-Petkova, *България при Асеновци* (Sofia, 1978); Ph. Malingoudis, "Die Nachrichten des Niketas Choniates über die Entstehung des Zweiten Bulgarischen Staates," *Byzantina* 10 (1980), pp. 51–147; N.-Ş. Tanaşoca, "De la Vlachie des Assénides au second Empire bulgare," *RESEE* 19 (1981), no. 3, pp. 581–594; G. G. Litavrin, "Становление Второго Болгарского царства и его международное значение в XIII столетии," *Études balkaniques* 21 (1985), no. 3, p. 17 ff.; P. Petrov, *Възстановяване на българската държава 1185–1197* (Sofia, 1985); T. J. Winnifrieth, *The Vlachs: The History of a Balkan People* (New York, 1987), pp. 116–117; *Răscoala și statul Asăneștilor*, ed. E. Stănescu (Bucharest, 1989) (S. Brezeanu, O. Iliescu, E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, E. Stănescu, N.-Ş. Tanaşoca, T. Teoteoi); Stephenson, *Byzantium's Balkan Frontier* (see above, n. 197), pp. 288–294 and 300–312; M. V. Bibikov, *Византийские источники по истории Древней Руси и Кавказа* (St. Petersburg, 1999), pp. 233–238 and 250–257; G. Prinzing, "Demetrius-Kirche und Aseniden-Aufstand. Zur chronologischen Präzisierung der Frühphase des Aseniden-Aufstandes," *Зборник радова Византолошког института* 38 (1999–2000), pp. 257–265; P. Angelov, "България и българите XI–XIV в.," in *История на българите, I, От древността до края на XVI век*, ed. G. Bakalov (Sofia, 2003), p. 336 ff.; I. Vásáry, *Cumans and Tatars. Oriental Military in the Pre-Ottoman Balkans, 1185–1365* (Cambridge, 2005), pp. 42–47 and 54–56; Curta, *Southeastern Europe*, pp. 357–365.

<sup>365</sup> Choniates (see above, n. 261), p. 482. For strongholds in the Balkans during the first centuries of the second millennium, see A. Попов, *Крепости и укрепителни съоръжения в крънската средновековна области* (Sofia, 1982); P. Balabanov, S. Boiadzhiev, N. Tuleshkov, *Крепостно строителство по българските земи* (Sofia, 2000), p. 191 ff. There is of course no way to distinguish the mountain strongholds of the Vlachs from those of the Bulgarians.

<sup>366</sup> Choniates, pp. 487–488; *FHDR*, III, pp. 258–259 (Choniates), 416–417 (Teodor Skutariotes), 462–463 (Efrem); *FHB*, XV, *Fontes Graeci historiae Bulgaricae*, VIII, edidit M. Vojnov, curantibus M. Vojnov, V. Tâpkova-Zaimova, L. Joncev (Serdicae, 1972), pp. 244–245 (Theodori Scutariotae *Compendium chronicum*/Теодор Скутариот, *Обзорна хроника*).

Bulgarians against Byzantium,<sup>367</sup> and later against the Latin Empire.<sup>368</sup> The Romanian lands north of the Danube could escape the political influence of the Byzantine Empire. Nonetheless, Byzantine coins continued to be circulate in the Romanian Plain throughout the period of the Angelus dynasty, some of them collected in hoards buried precisely because of the vicissitudes of those times.<sup>369</sup>

Most historians dealing with the Vlach-Bulgarian uprising believe that the Cumans whose alliance the Asenids were able to secure were the nomads of the region immediately to the north of the Lower Danube. Two passages in the Galician-Volhynian Chronicle reveal a different situation. Among events of 6695 (= 1187), that chronicle lists the conquest of Cuman strongholds beyond the Dnieper (i.e., on it's the left bank of the river) by troops of Black Caps (*Chornye klobuki*) dispatched by prince Sviatoslav III Vsevolodovich. The success of that military action seems to have been facilitated by the bulk of the Cuman troops being at that time on the Danube, which left the strongholds without defenders (*Половцы до бяхуть шли въ Дунай, и не бе ихъ дома въ вежахъ swoich*).<sup>370</sup> According to the same source, three years later, in the winter of 6698 (= 1190), the Cumans from the Dnieper region again moved to the Danube (*Подунайци*), thus offering a new opportunity to the Rus' and the Black Caps to attack their settlements.<sup>371</sup> In

<sup>367</sup> Choniates, pp. 487–489, 515–520, 561–562, 569, 573, 587, 600, 616–617, 643, 663–665, 673, 691–692, 808; Eustathii metropolitae Thessalonicensis *Opuscula* (see above, n. 308), pp. 42, 44; *FHDR*, III, pp. 380–383 (Euthymios Tornikes), 398–403 (Akropolites), 416–437 (Teodor Skutariotes), 462–473 (Efrem), 530–531 (Pseudo-Kodinos); IV, pp. 88–91 (*Cronică universală*), 94–95 (Ioannes Staurakios); *FHB*, XV, pp. 246–265 (Theodori Scutariotae *Compendium chronicum*); *Historia de expeditione Friderici imperatoris* (Der sogenannte Ansbert), in *Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzuges Kaiser Friedrichs I*, ed. A. Chroust (Berlin, 1928), p. 58. See also Ferent, *Cumanii*, pp. 46–52; D. Rassovsky, “Роль Половцевъ въ войнахъ Асеной съ Византійской и Латинской имперіями въ 1186–1207 годахъ,” *Списание на Българската Академия на Науките*, Sofia (1939), pp. 203–211; Wolff, “The “Second Bulgarian Empire”,” pp. 198–201; Diaconu, *Coutans*, pp. 114–119, 130; Malingoudis, “Die Nachrichten,” pp. 103–105; P. Pavlov, “Средновековна България и куманите. Военнополитически отношения (1186–1241 г.),” *Трудове на Великотърновския Университет “Св. Св. Кирил и Методий,” Исторически Факултет* 27 (1989 [1992]), no. 3, pp. 20–31.

<sup>368</sup> See footnote 383. See also Pavlov, “Средновековна България и куманите,” pp. 33–36; I. Vásáry, “Cuman warriors in the fight of Byzantium with the Latins,” *AOH* 57 (2004), no. 3, pp. 263–270.

<sup>369</sup> E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, “Moneda bizantină și de tip bizantin pe teritoriul de la sud de Carpați în secolele XII–XIII—o analiză critică a documentelor numismatice,” *Mousaios* 7 (2001), pp. 348–352, 375, and 382–385.

<sup>370</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 136.

<sup>371</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 140.

both cases, what the chronicler had to say about the Cumans must be understood in the context of the Cuman assistance to the Vlach and Bulgarian rebels in the northern Balkans. It appears, therefore, that Peter and Asen's allies were not just neighboring Cumans from the Lower Danube plain, but also those whose camps were at that time in the Dnieper region.

Romanians on the left of the Danube also participated in the uprising against Byzantium. Vlachs and "Scythians" (= the Cumans) crossing the river from north to south are explicitly mentioned by Niketas Choniates among the military events of 1199,<sup>372</sup> the year in which the leadership of the newly emerging state was taken by the younger Asenid brother, Ioannitsa (nicknamed Kaloyannes—"the Handsome John"). It is quite possible that even before 1199, Romanians from Wallachia had participated in the fighting, much like the Cumans. According to Niketas Choniates, another group joining the "Scythians" (Cumans) was that of the *Bordones*.<sup>373</sup> Many believe the latter to be the same as the Brodniks, who are mentioned several times in southern Moldavia during the decades leading to the great Mongol invasion of 1241.<sup>374</sup> If so, then the Brodniks must have moved to the east-Carpathian lands as early as the late twelfth century.

### *First Half of the Thirteenth Century*

Unable to control the situation in the Balkans all by himself, Emperor Alexius III Angelus asked for the assistance of Roman Mstislavich (1199–1205), prince of Galich-Volhynia, whom he urged to attack the Cumans. Roman's repeated incursions (in 1201/1202 and 1203/1204) against the nomads put a temporary end to their raids into Thrace,<sup>375</sup>

<sup>372</sup> Choniates (see above, n. 261), p. 663.

<sup>373</sup> Nicetae Choniatae *Orationes et epistolae*, ed. I. A. van Dieten (Berolini et Novi Eboraci, 1972), p. 93.

<sup>374</sup> F. Uspenskii, *Образование второго Болгарского царства, Приложение V* (Odessa, 1879), p. 35; D. Onciul, "Originile Principatelor Române," in idem, *Scieri istorice*, I, p. 693; G. Popa-Lisseanu, *Brodnicii* (*IIR*, XII) (1938), pp. 41 and 64; Levchenko, *Очерки* (see above, n. 160), p. 495; Kotliar, "Русь на Дунаї" (see above, n. 361), p. 19; Ștefănescu, *Țara Românească* (see above, n. 327), p. 19; Malingoudis, "Die Nachrichten" (see above, n. 364), pp. 135–137; I. O. Kniaz'kii, *Русь и степь* (Moscow, 1996), p. 61.

<sup>375</sup> Choniates, pp. 691–692; *FHDR*, III, pp. 432–433 (Teodor Skutariotes), 472–473 (Efrem); *FHB*, XV, p. 260 (Theodori Scutariotae *Compendium chronicum*); *Продолжение*



but the Byzantines were not able to use the opportunity thus offered to gain the upper hand in the northern Balkans. Roman's expeditions were cut short by the counter-attack of Rurik II Rostislavich (1203–1210), prince of Kiev, who attacked Roman together with the Cuman princes Kotian (= Kuthen) and Somogur.<sup>376</sup>

When Roman died, dissensions between aristocratic factions facilitated the temporary imposition of Hungarian rule over Galich-Volhynia, after many decades of unsuccessful Hungarian attempts to expand into Rus'. With the rule over Galich-Volhynia barely consolidated, King Andrew II hastily adopted in 1206 title of *Galiciae Lodomeriaeque rex*,<sup>377</sup> a title which Hungarian rulers would sport long after their rule on Galich-Volhynia ceased. Andrew II's title, however, was meant to convey a clear sense of the claims to the Rus' territories beyond the Carpathian Mountains. Such claims were not limited to Galich-Volhynia, but were also directed at the neighboring territories to the south and east from the mountains, which were at that time inhabited by Romanians.

The consolidation throughout the second half of the twelfth century of the Hungarian rule in Transylvania was accompanied by the arrival of the Saxon and Szekler "guests." By 1200, the Hungarians built on the cliff at Bâta Doamnei (Piatra Neamț, Neamț county) a stronghold designed destined to monitor access to the the route from Moldavia to Transylvania along the Bistrița valley and across the Carpathian Mountains.<sup>378</sup> Archaeological excavations on that site produced a number of crosses of Rus' origin, a clear indication that the inhabit-

---

*Лаврентієвской летописи*, in *PSRL*, I, p. 176; *Nik.let.*, II, pp. 34 and 36; *Hust.let.*, p. 328; *Типографская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXIV (Petrograd, 1921), p. 84; *Летописец Переяславля Суздальского (Летописец русских царей)*, in *PSRL*, 41, eds. S. N. Kisterev, B. M. Kloss, L. A. Timoshina, I. A. Tikhoniuk, red. V. I. Buganov (gen.red.), S. N. Kisterev, I. A. Tikhoniuk (Moscow, 1995), p. 124.

<sup>376</sup> *Ip.let.*, pp. 155–156; Choniates, p. 692. See also M. Grushevskii, *Історія України-Руси*, III (Lwów, 1905), pp. 9–10; Rassovsky, "Роль Половцевъ" (see above, n. 367), p. 210; L. Voitovich, "Роман Мстиславич і утворення Галицько-Волинського князівства," in *Галичина та Волинь у добу середньовіччя. До 800-річчя з дня народження Данила Галицького*, gen. ed. Ia. Isacvich (Lviv, 2001), pp. 23–27; M. Dimnik, *The Dynasty of Chernigov, 1146–1246* (Cambridge, 2003), pp. 242–247 and 251.

<sup>377</sup> *Codex diplomaticus Hungariae ecclesiasticus ac civilis*, ed. G. Fejér, III, 1 (Budae, 1829), pp. 31–32; IX, 4 (Budae, 1834), p. XVIII; *DIR, C, v. XI, XII și XIII*, I, pp. 31–32.

<sup>378</sup> C. Scorpan, "L'ensemble archéologique féodal de Bâta Doamnei," *Dacia*, NS, 9 (1965), pp. 441–454 (where the stronghold is interpreted as the seat of a local ruler); V. Spinei, "Unele considerații cu privire la descoperirile arheologice din Moldova din secolul al XII-lea pînă în prima jumătate a secolului al XIV-lea," *SCIV* 21 (1970), no. 4, p. 614; idem, "Contribuții la istoria spațiului est-carpatic din secolul al XI-lea pînă la invazia mongolă din 1241," *MA* 6–8 (1974–1976), pp. 145–148.

ants of the stronghold were Orthodox. Since Romanians were the only Orthodox population in the area at that time, it is likely that the stronghold's garrison was recruited from among Romanians. According to Tholomeus of Lucca (1236–1327), whose information was adopted by other authors, Romanians and Szeklers (*Olleraci* <*Ollaci*> *et Siculi*) guarded the mountain passes in the eastern Carpathians at the time of the Mongol invasion.<sup>379</sup> It is precisely at this time that Romanians began to be recruited for the auxiliary units under the command of the Hungarian kings.

Cumans were simultaneously involved in military operations not just in Rus' and in the Balkans, but also in the Caucasus. In order to get the better of his neighbours, and especially in order to face the attacks of the Seljuq Turks, king David IV of Georgia paid much attention to co-operation with the Cumans, so that 40,000 horsemen together with their families were settled on his estates, some of them accepting conversion to Christianity. With a view to consolidating the alliance, the Georgian king married Goranduxt (or Guaranduxt), the daughter of the Cuman chieftain Atrak (Otrok).<sup>380</sup> The Cuman presence in the north-Caucasus region is also archaeologically confirmed by recent finds of graves of horsemen.<sup>381</sup>

On April 13, 1204 one of the greatest events on world history took place: the West European participants in the Crusade conquered Constantinople, which became (and remained, until 1261) the capital of the Latin Empire. The Byzantine Empire was broken up and divided (*Partitio Romaniae*) among the crusaders, Venices and various Greek princes,

---

<sup>379</sup> Tholomeus von Lucca, *Die Annalen in doppelter Fassung*, ed. B. Schmeidler, in *MGH, Scriptores rerum Germanicarum*, NS, VIII (Berlin, 1930; reprint Munich, 1984), p. 117; Marinus Sanutus, dictus Torsellus, *Liber secretorum fidelium crucis super Terrae Sanctae recuperatione et conseruatione*, in *Gesta Dei per Francos*, II, ed. I. Bongarsius (Hanoviae, 1611), p. 214; Paulinus von Venedig, *Bruchstücke aus der Weltchronik (I. Recension)*, I, ed. W. Holtzmann (*Texte zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters*, ed. F. Schneider, 3) (Rome, 1927), p. 29; Johannis Iperii abbatís *Chronicon Sythiense S. Bertini*, in E. Martene and U. Durand, *Thesaurus novus anecdotorum*, III (Lutetiae Parisiorum, 1717), col. 717. See also V. Spinci, "Les répercussions de la grande invasion mongole de 1241–1242 sur l'espace carpatodanubien reflétées surtout dans les oeuvres des chroniqueurs italiens," *Südost-Forschungen* 61–62 (2002–2003), pp. 1–47.

<sup>380</sup> *The History of David, King of Kings*, in *Rewriting Caucasian History. The Medieval Armenian Adaptation of the Georgian Chronicles*, ed. R. W. Thompson (Oxford, 1996), pp. 325–328.

<sup>381</sup> Y. V. Zelenskii, "Половцы на Кубани," *Древности Кубани* 10, Krasnodar (1998), pp. 15–20; idem, "Несколько предметов из разрушенного средневекового погребения на территории г. Краснодара," *Историко-археологический альманах* 4, Armavir-Moscow (1998), pp. 141–142.

on whose estates the successor states were set up: Nicaea, Trebizond, and Epirus.<sup>382</sup> In the aftermath of the Vlach and Bulgarian rebellion, the catastrophe of 1204 had much more serious consequences for the decline of the Byzantine influence over the lands north of the Lower Danube. In the Balkans, the disputes between Byzantines and Asenids were now replaced with a fierce confrontation between the Second Bulgarian Tsardom and the Latin Empire. The Cumans remained on the side of Ioannitsa (1197–1207), who used them against his new enemies. In 1205, Ioannitsa obtained against a major victory against the Latins under the walls of Adrianople. The commander of the Latin forces, Baldwin I, who had just been crowned emperor in Constantinople, was captured and died in a prison in Tărnovo.<sup>383</sup>

<sup>382</sup> Ostrogorsky, *Geschichte* (see above, n. 195), p. 346 ff.; G. Prinzing, *Die Bedeutung Bulgariens und Serbiens in den Jahren 1204–1219 im Zusammenhang mit der Entstehung und Entwicklung der byzantinischen Teilstaaten nach der Einnahme Konstantinopels infolge des 4. Kreuzzuges* (Munich, 1972), pp. 25–47; M. Angold, *A Byzantine Government in Exile. Government and Society under the Laskarids of Nicaea (1204–1261)* (London, 1975), pp. 9–36; A. Carile, *Per una storia dell'Impero Latino di Costantinopoli (1204–1261)*, 2nd ed. (Bologna, 1978), pp. 175–217; Treadgold, *History* (see above, n. 195), pp. 709–730; R.-J. Lilie, *Byzanz und die Kreuzzüge* (Stuttgart, 2004), p. 175 ff.; J. Phillips, *The Fourth Crusade and the Sack of Constantinople (1204–1453)* (London, 2004), p. 281 ff.; J. Heers, *Chute et mort de Constantinople (1204–1453)* (Paris, 2007), p. 121 ff.; É. Patlagean, *Un Moyen Âge grec. Byzance IXe–XVe siècle* (Paris, 2007), pp. 288–303.

<sup>383</sup> *Urkunden zur älteren Handels- und Staatsgeschichte der Republik Venedig mit besonderer Beziehung auf Byzanz und die Levante*, II, eds. T. L. Fr. Tafel and G. M. Thomas (*Fontes rerum Austriacarum/Oesterreichische Geschichts-Quellen*, 2nd Ser., *Diplomatia et acta*, XIII, 2) (Vienna, 1856), pp. 37–42; B. Hendrickx, *Régestes des empereurs latins de Constantinople (1204–1261/1272)* (Thessalonike, 1988), p. 45; Choniates (see above, n. 261), pp. 808–814; Acropolites (see above, n. 261), col. 1013–1014; *FHB*, XII (1965), p. 241 (*Historia peregrinorum*); XV (1972), pp. 264–265 (*Theodori Scutariotae Compendium chronicum*); *FHDR*, III, pp. 436–437 (Teodor Skutariotes), 476–477 (Efrem); IV, pp. 164–173 (*Cronica Morei*); *Chronique de Morée (1204–1305)*, ed. J. Longnon (Paris, 1911), pp. 22–25; *Versione italiana inedita della cronaca di Morea*, in Ch. Hopf (ed.), *Chroniques gréco-romanes inédites ou peu connues* (Berlin, 1873), pp. 420–421; Gregoras, I, pp. 15–16; Robert de Clari, *La conquête de Constantinople*, in *Historiens et chroniqueurs du Moyen Âge*, eds. A. Pauphilet, Ed. Pognon (Paris, 1952), pp. 50–51, 79; Villehardouin, *La conquête de Constantinople*, in *Historiens*, pp. 161–163, 168–169, 172–176, 185, and 188; Salimbene de Adam, *Cronica*, ed. G. Scalia, I (Bari, 1966), p. 36; *L'estoire de Eracles empereur et la conquête de la terre d'Outremer*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens occidentaux*, II (Paris, 1859), pp. 280–283; Roberti canonici S. Mariani Altissiodorensis *Chronicon*, ed. O. Holder-Egger, in *MGH, SS*, XXVI (1882), p. 269; *Recueil des historiens des Gaules et de la France*, XVIII (Paris, 1822), pp. 103 (Ex Radulfi Coggeshalae abbatiss *Chronico Anglicano*), 272 (Ex *Chronologia* Roberti Altissiodorensis), 525–527 (Henricus Imperii moderator ad Innocentium III Papam), 528–529 (Henricus Imperator Constantinopolitanus *De varia Latinorum in Imperio fortuna*), 563 (Ex *Genealogia comitum Flandriae*), 573 (Ex *Andrensis monasterii Chronico*), 602 (Ex *Joannis Iperii Chronico sythiensis Sancti Bertini*), 720 (Ex *Chronico* S. Medard Sussionensis), 770 (Ex *Chronico* Alberici Trium-Fontium

The Cuman alliance was not always working to the advantage of the Vlach emperor of Bulgaria. If we are to believe the Miracles of St. Demeterius, Ioannitsa was murdered by a group of conspirators led by the Cuman chieftain Manastras.<sup>384</sup> Given their frequent involvement in fighting, first against Byzantium, then against the Latin Empire, some Cumans chose to move permanently south of the Danube. As a consequence, the military potential of the of the Cumans in the outer-Carpathian regions must have been diminished. That much results from the repeated defeats they suffered during the subsequent years. Around 1210, an army from Transylvanian led by Joachim (*Iwachin*) of Sibiu and made up of Saxons, Romanians, Szeklers and Pechenegs (*associatis sibi Saxonibus, Olacis, Siculis et Bissenis*) advanced on Vidin after probably crossing Oltenia and met with “three chieftains from Cumania,” one of whom was called Karaz (a name of Turkic origin). That Karaz was from “Cumania” does not indicate the exact region of his origin, because “Cumania” was a name applied not just to the east-European steppes, but also and more specifically to the outer-Carpathian lands inhabited by both Romanians and Cumans. In any case, the Cumans were no match for Joachim’s army. In the ensuing battle, two chieftains

---

monachi); Guillelmus de Nangis sive Nangiaci *Chronicon*, in *Recueil des historiens des Gaules et de la France*, XX, eds. [F.] Daunou and [J.] Naudet (Paris, 1840), p. 751; Gombos, I, p. 48 (Albertus Milioli); II, pp. 847 (Detmar-*Chronik*), 1216 (Iacobus de Guisia), 1331 (Ioannes Longus de Ypra); Johannis Iperii abbatis *Chronicon* (see above, n. 379), col. 687; Caffari ejusque continuatorum *Annales Genuenses ab anno MC. ad annum usque MCCXCIII*, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, VI, ed. L. A. Muratorius (Mediolani, 1725), col. 390–391; Andreae Danduli *Chronicon Venetum*, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, XII, ed. L. A. Muratorius (Mediolani, 1728), col. 132; Joannes Leunclavius, *Glycanorum Annalium continuatio*, in *PG*, CLVIII (1866), col. 636; Ricardi de Gerboredo *De capta et direpta a Latinis Constantinopoli*, in *Exuvie Sacrae Constantinopolitanae*, I (Genovae, 1877), pp. 36–37; N. Camariano, “La Chronique de la Morée sur les combats de Jean Assen avec les Latins,” *Balkanica* 7 (1944), no. 2, p. 358; I. Lazarov and P. Lungarova, “Хрониката на Алберт де Безано за третия и четвъртия кръстоносен поход и преминаването им през българските земи,” in *Studia protobulgarica et mediaevalia europensia. В честна професор Веселин Бешевилив* (Veliko Tŕrnovo, 1993), pp. 105–109.

<sup>384</sup> Ἰωάννου Σταυρακίου λόγος εἰς τὰ θαύματα τοῦ Ἁγίου Δημητρίου ed. I. Iverites, *Μακεδονικά* 1 (1940), pp. 369–372; Ioannis Stauracii *Oratio laudatoria de Sancti Myroblytae Demetrii miraculis*, in *FHB*, XXII (*Fontes Graeci Historiae Bulgaricae*, X) (Sofia, 1980), pp. 128–132. According to other sources, Kaloyannes would have died because of a pleurisy. See *FHDR*, III, pp. 400–403 (Akropolites), 436–437 (Teodor Skutariotes), 479–480 (Efrem). For the circumstances of Ioannitses Kaloyannes’ death, see also Prinzing, *Die Bedeutung*, pp. 84–85; L. Krăstev, “‘Les miracles de Saint Démètre de Thessalonique’ et la participation d’Alains et de Coumans au siège de Thessalonique en 1207,” *Études balkaniques* 33 (1997), nos. 3–4, p. 129; F. Dall’Aglio, “The Bulgarian siege of Thessaloniki in 1207: between history and hagiography,” *Eurasian Studies* 1 (2002), no. 2, pp. 278–279.

died and Karaz was taken prisoner (*tres duces de Cumania ipsis occurrentes, cum eis prelium commiserunt, quorum duobus occisis tertium nominae Karaz comes Jwachinus vinctum transmisit ad regem*).<sup>385</sup>

In 1211, the Hungarian king invited the Teutonic knights to the Bârsa Land (*Țara Bârsei*), in order to put an end to the frequent incursions of the Cumans into Transylvania.<sup>386</sup> From that point of view fulfilled the expectations of the Hungarian king and effectively curbed the Cuman raiding expeditions. However, they were not content to secure south-eastern Transylvania, an area in which they began building timber forts, but decided to expand “beyond the snow-clad mountains” (*ultra montes nivium*) and managed to impose their military control over territories outside the Carpathian arch.<sup>387</sup> It is difficult to estimate the extent of the land under their control. According to a royal diploma dated to the beginning of 1222, and to a bull dated December 19, 1222, the territories allotted to the knights stretched to the boundaries of the Brodniks (*ad terminos prodnicorum*) and to the Danube (*ad Danubium*).<sup>388</sup> A few decades ago, the authenticity of those documents was contested by Wojcieck Ketrzyński<sup>389</sup> and Iosif Șchiopul,<sup>390</sup> but reinstated by Max Perlbach<sup>391</sup> and Emil Lăzărescu.<sup>392</sup> No more doubts could apparently be raised about their authenticity. More recently, however, through a detailed analysis of both diploma and bull in the context of their time, Maria Holban concluded that both documents were apocryphal, having been forged in 1231 or 1232.<sup>393</sup> But even with such caveats in mind,

<sup>385</sup> *Codex diplomaticus regni Croatiae, Dalmatiae et Slavoniae*, V, ed. T. Smičiklas (Zagreb, 1907), no. 641, p. 132; *DRH,D*, I, no. 11.

<sup>386</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, p. 57; H. Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden im Burzenland. Eine diplomatische Untersuchung* (Cologne–Weimar–Vienna, 2000), pp. 162–163.

<sup>387</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 82, 85, 88, 91, 93, 95, and 96; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden*, pp. 175, 177, 178, 180, 182, 183, 185, 186, 193, 194, 199, 201, 203, 204, 206, and 209.

<sup>388</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 74–77; *DRH,D*, I, no. 1, 2; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden*, pp. 170 and 177.

<sup>389</sup> W. v. Ketrzyński, *Der Deutsche Orden und Konrad von Masovien, 1225–1235* (Lemberg, 1904), pp. 11–27.

<sup>390</sup> I. Șchiopul, *Contribuțiuni la istoria Transilvaniei în secolele XII și XIII* (Cluj, 1932), p. 35 ff.

<sup>391</sup> M. Perlbach, “Der Deutsche Orden in Siebenbürgen,” *Mitteilungen des Instituts für Österreichische Geschichtsforschung* 26 (1905), pp. 415–430. See also K. K. Klein, *Saxonica Septemcastrensia* (Marburg, 1971), pp. 86–90.

<sup>392</sup> E. C. Lăzărescu, “Notă despre documentele Țării Bârsei și cavalerii teutoni,” *Țara Bârsei* 6 (1934), no. 4, pp. 339–348.

<sup>393</sup> M. Holban, “Despre aria de întindere a cavalerilor teutoni în Țara Bârsei (1221–1225),” in eadem, *Din cronica relațiilor româno-ungare în secolele XIII–XIV* (Bucharest, 1981),

the basic facts about the rule of the Teutonic knights in the Bârsa Land and on either side of the Carpathian Mountains remain the same.

The growth of the Arpadian Kingdom through the actions of the Order was anticipated by a charter issued for the Knights by King Andrew II in 1211. There is no question that, whether sanctioned by royal grant or not, the Teutonic knights could not have conquered all the land to the Danube in such a short period of time. At the most, the knights must have established military control over a strip of land to the south and to the east of the Carpathian Mountains, next to the Bârsa Land. Meanwhile, major disagreements arose between the king and the knights. Because they refused to abide by the stipulations of the charter, ignoring the royal authority and recognizing only that of the Holy See, the Teutonic knights were removed by force from Transylvania in 1225.<sup>394</sup>

The establishment of the Teutonic knights in south-eastern Transylvania greatly contributed to the consolidation of royal power in the area. The regions to which the Teutonic knights and the Saxons moved

---

pp. 9–48. See also the book's review by S. Iosipescu, in *AILA* 19 (1982), pp. 696–699, who rejects Holban's arguments against authenticity.

<sup>394</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 91–93; *DRH,D*, I, no. 5; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden*, pp. 186–188. For Teutonic knights in Bârsa Land, see W. Kuhn, "Ritterorden als Grenzhüter des Abendlandes gegen das östliche Heidentum," *Ostdeutsche Wissenschaft* 1959, pp. 16–22; K. Wieser, "Zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens in Osteuropa in den ersten drei Jahrzehnten des 13. Jahrhunderts," *Österreichische Osthefte* 7 (1965), no. 1, pp. 12–21; G. Adriányi, "Zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ritterordens in Siebenbürgen," *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 3 (1971), pp. 9–22; H. Glassl, "Der Deutsche Orden im Burzenland und in Kumanien (1211–1225)," *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 3 (1971), pp. 23–49; J. Schütze, "Bemerkungen zur Berufung und Verreibung des Deutschen Ordens durch Andreas II. von Ungarn," *Siebenbürgisches Archiv* 8 (1971), pp. 277–283; A. Armbruster, "Nachspiel zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens im Burzenland," *RRH* 18 (1979), no. 2, pp. 277–287; F. Martini, "Der Deutsche Ritterorden und seine Kolonisten im Burzenland," *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 10 (1979), pp. 41–57; Ș. Papacostea, *România în secolul al XIII-lea între cruciată și Imperiul mongol* (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 31–35; H. Bogdan, *Les chevaliers Teutoniques. Vérités et légendes* (Paris, 1995), pp. 85–97; H. Zimmermann, *Siebenbürgen und seine Hospites Teutonici: Vorträge und Forschungen zur südostdeutschen Geschichte. Festgabe zum 70. Geburtstag*, ed. K. Gündisch (Cologne–Weimar–Vienna, 1996); idem, *Der Deutsche Orden, passim*; M. Biskup, G. Labuda, *Die Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens in Preussen. Wirtschaft—Gesellschaft—Staat—Ideologie*, trans. J. Heyde and U. Kodur (Osnabrück, 2000), pp. 132–138; I. M. Țiplic, "Cavalerii teutoni și fortificațiile lor din Țara Bârsei," *Corviniana. Acta Musei Corviniensis* 6 (2000), no. 6, pp. 138–159; Ș. Turcuș, *Sfântul Scaun și românii în secolul al XIII-lea* (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 205–233; J. Laszlovszky and Z. Soós, "Historical monuments of the Teutonic Order in Transylvania," in *The Crusades and the Military Orders Expanding the Frontiers of Medieval Latin Christianity*, eds. Z. Hunyadi and J. Laszlovszky (Budapest, 2001), pp. 319–336.

were neither deserted nor depopulated (*vacua et inhabitata*<sup>395</sup> or *deserta et inhabitata*),<sup>396</sup> as claimed by contemporary documents of the Hungarian chancery. In fact, some of them even mention that the royal “guests” were given land bordering on Romanian settlements, a land said to be sparsely populated and partly untilled.<sup>397</sup>

While the Teutonic knights advanced into the Romanian regions that had been under the military control of the Turanians, whose domination was thus diminished, at the opposite, easternmost frontier of their lands, the Cumans were attacked by Muhammad, the shah of Khwarazm. They eventually had to surrender a part of their territory to the shah.<sup>398</sup> Because the Cumans lived in communities scatter over a vast area, without any political unity, and their forces were engaged simultaneously on multiple fronts, the military ability of the Cuman tribal confederacy greatly diminished in the early thirteenth century. In 1221/1222, when the Seljuk sultan from Konya (Iconium) launched a surprising naval attack on Sudak in southern Crimea, the Cumans, who until then had controlled the city, were defeated, in spite of the assistance they received from the Rus’ princes.<sup>399</sup>

In his account of the Seljuq expedition, the Turkish chronicler Iazyçyoğlu Ali, who wrote in the early 1400s, has the army moving both by sea and by land. The land forces crossed the Straits and advanced along the seashore across the “land of the Vlachs”. After defeating the Cumans and the Rus’ and establishing their own garrison in Sudak, the Seljuqs returned along the same route. The passage concerning the Seljuq land troops is absent from Ibn Bibi’s detailed Persian

<sup>395</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, p. 63; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden* (see above, n. 386), p. 167.

<sup>396</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 74 and 76; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden*, pp. 170 and 173.

<sup>397</sup> Pascu, *Trans.*, I, pp. 127–128; Th. Nägler, “Zum Gebrauch des Ausdrucks „terra deserta“ in einigen Urkunden des 12.–13. Jahrhunderts,” *Studii și comunicări, Arheologie-istorie* (Muzeul Brukenthal), 18 (1974), pp. 51–60; idem, *Die Ansiedlung der Siebenbürger Sachsen* (Bucharest, 1979), p. 119.

<sup>398</sup> W. Barthold, *Turkestan down to the Mongol Invasion*, 3rd ed. (London, 1968), pp. 369–370; S. M. Akhinzhanov, “Кипчаки и Хорезм в канун монгольского нашествия,” *Вестник Академии Наук Казахской ССР* 1 (297) (1970), pp. 45–49; idem, *Кипчаки в истории средневекового Казахстана* (Alma-Ata, 1995), p. 222 ff.

<sup>399</sup> H. W. Duda, *Die Seltshukengeschichte des Ibn Bibi* (Copenhagen, 1959), pp. 130–139. See also A. Iakubovskii, “Рассказ Ибн-ал-Биби о походе малоазийских турок на Судак, половцев и русских в начале XIII в.,” *Византийский временник* 25 (1927), pp. 53–76; A. C. S. Peacock, “The Saljūq campaign against the Crimea and the expansionist policy of the early reign of ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Kayqubād,” *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 3rd Ser., 16 (2006), no. 2, pp. 133–149.

chronicle, the main source for the Cuman-Seljuq conflict in southern Crimea. Iazyčyoğlu Ali certainly used Ibn Bibi's chronicle, but he must have also had access to other sources, which did not survive.<sup>400</sup> Assuming that a Seljuq army truly travelled by land from Konya to Crimea, that army must have crossed the frontiers of the Nicaean Empire, of the Latin Empire, of Bulgaria, before entering the Desht-i Qipchaq. At the time of the expedition, relations between the sultan of Konya (Rum) and Nicaea were tense, while those between John Asen II and the Cumans were cordial. There is therefore little evidence to support the idea of such a military expedition at a distance of more than 1,000 km from Konya, through several countries, many of which were both militarily strong and not particularly friendly to the Seljuqs. Iazyčyoğlu Ali's account may be the result of some confusion with other events to be attributed either to him or to one of his unknown sources. The expedition is certainly not mentioned in older sources, such as Ibn Bibi's chronicle.

Shortly after the failure of the Sudak expedition, the Cumans received a new, unexpected, and strong blow. After initially setting forth against Khwarazm, a Mongol army led by Jebe (Ėebe, Jäbä) and Sübütäi went south of the Caspian Sea, then north of the Caucasus. The Cuman-Alan alliance was rapidly broken, as the Mongols defeated both peoples one after the other. In Crimea, the Mongols sacked Sudak and scattered its population.<sup>401</sup> Jebe and Sübütäi then moved into Desht-i Qipchaq, causing panic among the Cumans, whose khan, Kuthen (Kotian), immediately requested the assistance of Mstislav III and of the other Rus' princes.<sup>402</sup> Though divided by bitter rivalry, which had

<sup>400</sup> T. Gemil, "Țara Românească de pe țărmul mării," *Magazin istoric* 15 (1981), no. 6, pp. 16–18.

<sup>401</sup> Tiesenhäusen, I, pp. 25–26 (Ibn el Asyr), 502 (Al-'Aini); II, p. 32 (Rashid-ad-Din); *Extrait d'Ibn-Alathir*, in [Ch. F.] Defrémery, *Fragments de géographes et d'historiens arabes et persans inédits relatifs aux anciens peuples du Caucase et de la Russie Méridionale* (offprint from *Journal Asiatique*, 4th Ser., 13, 1848; 14, 1849) (Paris, 1849), pp. 78–80; Abou'l-Fedä, *Annales*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, I (Paris, 1872), p. 96; Rashiduddin Fazlullah (see above, n. 122), I, p. 260; *Из "Летописи" Себастаци*, in *Армянские источники о монголах извлечения из рукописей XIII–XIV вв.*, ed. A. G. Galstian (Moscow, 1962), p. 23.

<sup>402</sup> *NPL*, pp. 62, 265; *Троицкая летопись*, in *PSRL*, I (St. Petersburg, 1846), pp. 216–217; *Новгородская четвертая летопись*, in *PSRL*, IV (St. Petersburg, 1848), p. 28; *Let. Voskr.*, pp. 129–130; *Hust.let.*, p. 335; *Густынская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 40, eds. V. A. Kuchkin (gen. ed.), L. L. Murav'eva, A. M. Panchenko (St. Petersburg, 2003), p. 115; *Летописный сборник именуемый Тверскою летописью*, in *PSRL*, XV (St. Petersburg, 1863), col. 339; *Рогожский летописец*, in *PSRL*, XV, 1 (Petrograd,



lasted for over a century and a half, the Rus' gathered their forces and came on the side of the Cumans with an impressive army. Some of the Galician forces dispatched to help the Cumans sailed down the Dniester and then moved by se, and up the river Dnieper.<sup>403</sup> This was not the first time the river Dniester was used for the transportation of Galician warriors: a few years before, Daniil Romanovich's expedition to Oleshia has done the same.<sup>404</sup>

The ensuing battle, which took place in 1223 on the little river named Kalka, was a brilliant Mongol victory over the Cuman-Rus' alliance.<sup>405</sup> The disaster was amplified by the fact that the Brodniks under their chieftain ("voivode") Ploskynia switched sides in the middle of the battle. The immediate consequences of the battle at Kalka were not as damaging as the battle itself. The Mongols were at the end of a long campaign (in which, among other things, they had been

---

1922), col. 27; *Постниковский, Пискаревский, Московский и Бельский летописцы*, in *PSRL*, 34, eds. V. I. Buganov, V. I. Koretskii (Moscow, 1978), p. 83 (*Пискаревский летописец*); *Новгородская летопись по списку П. П. Дубровского*, in *PSRL*, XLIII, ed. A. Koshelev (Moscow, 2004), p. 85.

<sup>403</sup> *Let. Voskr.*, p. 130; *Софійскія летописи*, in *PSRL*, V (St. Petersburg, 1851), p. 173; *Летописный сборникъ именуемый Тверскою летописью*, in *PSRL*, XV, col. 340; *Постниковский, Пискаревский, Московский и Бельский летописцы*, in *PSRL*, 34, p. 83 (*Пискаревский летописец*). In *Ip.let.*, p. 164, "Dnieper" should be replaced with "Dniester."

<sup>404</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 161.

<sup>405</sup> *NPL*, pp. 61–63 and 264–267; *Ip.let.*, pp. 163–165; *Let. Voskr.*, pp. 129–132; *Nik.let.*, II, pp. 89–92; *Hust.let.*, p. 335; *Троицкая летопись*, in *PSRL*, I, pp. 216–219; *Псковская первая летопись*, in *PSRL*, IV, pp. 177–178; *Летописный сборникъ именуемый Тверскою летописью*, in *PSRL*, XV, col. 335–343; *Рогожскій летописецъ*, in *PSRL*, XV, 1, col. 27–28; *Ермолинская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXIII (St. Petersburg, 1910), pp. 69–71; *Летопись по Уваровскому списку*, in *PSRL*, XXV (see above, n. 336), pp. 118–120; *Вологодско-Пермская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXVI (Moscow-Leningrad, 1959), pp. 66–69; *Холмогорская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 33, pp. 62–64; *Постниковский, Пискаревский, Московский и Бельский летописцы*, in *PSRL*, 34, p. 83 (*Пискаревский летописец*); *Густынская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 40, pp. 115–116; *Новгородская летопись по списку П. П. Дубровского*, in *PSRL*, XLIII, p. 85; Tiesenhause, I, pp. 25–27 (Ibn el Asyr); II, pp. 32–33 (Rashid-ad-Din); Rashiduddin Fazlullah, I, p. 260; Abou'l-Fedâ, *Annales*, p. 96; E. Bretschneider, *Mediaeval Researches from Eastern Asiatic Sources*, I (London, 1910), pp. 294–299; *Sächsische Weltchronik*, ed. L. Weiland, in *MGH, Deutsche Chroniken und andere Geschichtsbücher des Mittelalters*, II, 1 (Hannoverae, 1876), p. 243; *Heinrici Chronicon Lyvoniae*, ed. W. Arndt (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis recudi fecit*) (Hannoverae, 1874), p. 181; *Heinrici Chronicon Livoniae/Heinrichs Livländische Chronik*, 2nd ed., recognoverunt L. Arbusov and A. Bauer (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis separatim editi*) (Hannover, 1955), pp. 186–187.

defeated by the Volga Bulgars),<sup>406</sup> too weak and too far from their bases to be able to begin the conquest of the territories through which their army passed. They eventually withdrew from eastern Europe, for the moment content with the booty collected and with the occupation of a part of the steppe lands on the right bank of the Volga. After the Mongols' withdrawal from the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas, the Cumans lost again the control over Sudak, when a new naval expedition undertaken by the bey of Kastamonu imposed the Seljuq rule over in that city.<sup>407</sup> In respect to territorial losses, the wars with Khwarazm were more detrimental to the Cumans than Jebe and Sübütai's incursions. However, the impressive demonstration of military strength during the expedition of 1222–1223, the conquest of certain regions of central Asia, including perhaps the easternmost Cuman territories, were clear signals for the nomads in Desht-i Qipchaq that a new power had emerged in Eurasia. The Cuman (*Kimčaq* = Qipchaq) lands in central-western Asia, close to Qangli, are mentioned in the so-called *Secret History of the Mongols* for a period before the famous *quriltai* of 1206 when Temugin (Genghis Khan) was still fighting against the Merkits and the Naimans.<sup>408</sup>

The eastern Qipchaq/Cuman territories occupied by the Mongols during Genghis Khan's lifetime (i.e., before his death on August 18, 1227) were given to Jochi, the elder son of the great khan.<sup>409</sup> Genghis Khan's heir appeared to be very much interested in expanding his domination over the whole Desht-i Qipchaq, and it was only his death that prevented him from doing so. A contemporary Persian chronicler

<sup>406</sup> *Extrait d'Ibn-Alathir*, pp. 82–83; Tiesenhäusen, I, p. 27; *Les invasions mongoles en Orient vécues par un savant médiéval arabe Ibn Abi l-Hadid al-Madâ'ini (1190–1258 J.C.)*. *Extrait du Sharh Nahj al-balâgha*, ed. M. Djebli (Paris, 1995), pp. 52–53.

<sup>407</sup> I. Kafesoğlu, "Seljuks," in *A History of Seljuks. Ibrahim Kafesoğlu's Interpretation and the Resulting Controversy*, ed. G. Leiser (Carbondale-Edwardsville, 1988), p. 74; C. Cahen, *La Turquie pré-ottomane* (Istanbul-Paris, 1988), p. 125; M. Kursanskis, "L'Empire de Trébizonde et les Turcs au 13<sup>e</sup> siècle," *Revue des études byzantines* 46 (1988), pp. 117–118.

<sup>408</sup> *Die Geheime Geschichte der Mongolen*, ed. W. Heissig (Düsseldorf, 1981), p. 105; *Histoire secrète des Mongols. Chronique mongole du XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle*, trans. and eds. M.-D. Even and R. Pop (Paris, 1994), p. 164; *The Secret History of the Mongols. A Mongolian Epic Chronicle of the Thirteenth Century*, trans. and ed. I. de Rachewiltz, I (Leiden–Boston, 2004), p. 126. See also I. de Rachewiltz, *Commentary*, in *ibidem*, II (Leiden–Boston, 2004), pp. 733–734.

<sup>409</sup> Juvaini, *The History of the World-Conqueror*, I, ed. J. A. Boyle (Manchester, 1959), pp. 139 and 149; Maulana, Minhaj-ud-Din, Abu-'Umar-i-'Usman [= Juzjani], *Tabakat-i-nasiri: A General History of the Muhammadan Dynasties of Asia, including Hindustan*, II, ed. H. G. Raverty (London, 1881), p. 1101; Gregory Abû'l-Faraj, *The Chronography* (see above, n. 234), p. 398.

expresses Jochi's enthusiastic appreciation for the regions controlled by the Cumans: "in the whole universe, there could not be a more delightful land, a more pleasant climate, softer water, meads more verdant, and pasture-land more extensive".<sup>410</sup> The words assigned to Jochi are relevant for the ideals of the nomads of the Eurasian steppes, and those words account for the bitter fights among those populations. A similar characterisation of the same area is to be found in an earlier work, written in the earliest decades of the thirteenth century by the Arab Abdallatif al-Bagdadi and compiled by ad-Dahabi at the beginning of the following century: "The Qipchaqs' [Cumans'] country is large, [having] a moderate climate, fresh waters, full wells and whishing streams. It is a cool country, having rich lands".<sup>411</sup>

Fully aware of the gravity of the situation, the Cumans sought to befriend the Hungarian king, and in 1227 asked to be converted to Christianity by the archbishop of Esztergom (Strigonium). As the contemporary chronicles and the papal documents clearly testify, the initiative had come from the nomads.<sup>412</sup> The Teutonic knights may have had some contribution to the conversion of the Cumans,<sup>413</sup> but their work does not seem to have made any progress, for it had been a forceful conversion. The Hungarian heir to the crown, future King Bela IV, whose father, Andrew II, had entrusted him with the rule of Transylvania in 1222, hurried to take advantage of the Cuman request. He conferred upon it not only a strictly confessional meaning, but also a political one. To that purpose, he closely collaborated with Robert,

<sup>410</sup> Juzjani, p. 1101; Tiesenhausen, II, p. 14.

<sup>411</sup> J. v. Somogyi, "Ein arabischer Bericht über die Tataren im 'Ta'rih al Islam' von ad-Dahabi," *Der Islam* 24 (1937), p. 117. A more realistic description of *Comania* is made by the Armenian Hethum/Hayton (See Hayton, *La flor des estoires de la terre d'Orient/Flos historiarum terre Orientis*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Documents arméniens*, II [Paris, 1906], pp. 124, 264; L. de Backer, *L'Extrême Orient au Moyen-Age* [Paris, 1877], p. 129), reproduced by other authors as well. See Mandeville's *Travels*, ed. M. Letts (Nendeln, Liechtenstein, 1967), I, p. 177; II, p. 374.

<sup>412</sup> *Chronica Albrici monachii Trium Fontium*, ed. P. Scheffer-Boichorst, in *MGH,SS*, XXIII, ed. G. H. Pertz (1874), p. 920; *Magnum Chronicon, in quo cum primis Belgicae res et familiae diligenter explicantur*, in *Rerum Germanicarum veteres iam primum publicati scriptores VI*, ed. I. Pistorius, III (Ratisbonae, 1726), p. 242; *Acta Honorii III (1216–1227) et Gregorii IX (1227–1241) e registris Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegit A. L. Tăutu (Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes, Series III, III)* (Vatican, 1950), pp. 206–208; *DRH,D*, I, no. 6.

<sup>413</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 121–124 and 129–130; *DRH,D*, I, no. 7, 8; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden* (see above, n. 386), pp. 199, 203, and 206.

Archbishop of Esztergom, who had been appointed as papal legate for Cumania and the Brodnik lands.<sup>414</sup>

The Cuman willingness to accept conversion through the church of Hungary is not unique. Before the battle at Kalka, in 1223 the Cuman prince Basty, afraid of the Mongols, accepted conversion to Christianity in Rus',<sup>415</sup> the land from which he hoped to secure assistance against the new enemy. Several other "Polovtsian princes" had converted before him in the Rus' principalities. Unfortunately, nothing is known about the circumstances forcing them to do so. The Rus' chronicles simply mention that, for example, Amurat was baptized in Riazan' in 6640 (= 1132),<sup>416</sup> while Aidar placed himself in 6676 (= 1168) the service of the great prince of Kiev, Iziaslav Mstislavich, and after a while converted to Christianity.<sup>417</sup> It is possible to see both "Polovtsian princes" as forced into exile in the foreign lands by internal strife. A few years later, in 1239, when khan Kuthen was granted asylum in Hungary, he also had to accept the religion of the host country.<sup>418</sup> The same had happened to the Pecheneg chieftains Kegen and Týrach as soon as they were allowed to move to Byzantium.<sup>419</sup> The Byzantine policy of conversion towards the Pechenegs was also applied successfully to the Seljuk Turks and to other Turkic groups (*Τουρκόπουλοι*, *Turcopuli*, etc.), which were subsequently integrated into the imperial armies and dispatched to the Anatolian and Balkan provinces.<sup>420</sup> The same is true for the Cumans who under Atrak (Otrok) had settled in Georgia in the early twelfth century.<sup>421</sup> Those examples show that most Christian powers used proselytism to obtain political advantage. At the very least,

<sup>414</sup> *Acta Honorii III*, pp. 206–208; *DRH, D*, I, no. 6. See also Emonis *Chronicon*, ed. L. Weiland, in *MGH, SS*, XXIII (1874), p. 511; Albric (see above, n. 412), p. 920.

<sup>415</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 164.

<sup>416</sup> *Nik.let.*, I, p. 158.

<sup>417</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 236.

<sup>418</sup> Rogerii *Carmen miserabile*/Rogerius, *Cântecul de jale* (*IIR*, V) (1935), pp. 23, 29, 61, and 67.

<sup>419</sup> Skylitzes, pp. 456–457, 459; Kedrenos, II, pp. 583–584, 587.

<sup>420</sup> S. Vryonis, Jr., *The Decline of Medieval Hellenism in Asia Minor and the Process of Islamization from the Eleventh through the Fifteenth Century* (Berkeley–Los Angeles–London, 1971), pp. 442–444; M. Balivet, *Romanie byzantine et pays de Rum turc. Histoire d'un espace d'imbrication gréco-turque* (Istanbul, 1994), pp. 31–42; P. Bádenas, "L'intégration des Turcs dans la société byzantine (XI<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècles). Echecs d'un processus de coexistence," in *Byzantine Asia Minor (6th–12th Cent.)* (Athens, 1998), pp. 179–188; P. I. Zhavoronkov, "Тюрки и Византии (XIII–середина XIV в.). Часть первая: Тюркская аристократия," *Византийский временник* 65 (90) (2006), pp. 163–177.

<sup>421</sup> *Life of David*, p. 20; *Histoire de la Géorgie*, I, p. 363. See also Michel le Grand, *Chronique*. Version arménienne du prêtre Ischök, trans. V. Langlois (Venice, 1868), p. 316.

the Christianisation of the nomads was expected to make their political manipulation easier.

The successful conversion of the Cumans, due largely to the zeal of the Dominicans, led to the creation of a Cuman Bishopric.<sup>422</sup> At its head Archbishop Robert appointed in 1228 Theodoric, a Dominican, an appointment swiftly confirmed by Pope Gregory IX.<sup>423</sup> The bishopric comprised a portion of south-eastern Transylvania around the city of Corona (= Braşov, Kronstadt)<sup>424</sup> and an unspecified territory to the east from the Carpathian Bend, which in any case could not have gone beyond the Siret.<sup>425</sup> The inclusion of the Bârsa Land in that bishopric was meant to provide a safe income to its head, because in the outer-Carpathian space he could certainly not rely on gathering tithes from churches. In addition, it appears that, except for the Lower Siret plain, the bishopric did not comprise any landscape adequate for the life of

<sup>422</sup> On the conversion of the Cuman and the creation of the Cuman Bishopric, see I. Gyárfás, *A jász-kunok története*, II (Kecskemét, 1873), pp. 219–225; C. Auner, “Episcopia Milcoviei,” *Revista catolică* 1 (1912), no. 4, pp. 533–551; N. Pfeiffer, *Die ungarische Dominikanerordensprovinz von ihre Gründung 1221 bis zur Tatarenverwüstung 1241–1242* (Zurich, 1913), pp. 75–92; B. Altaner, *Die Dominikanermissionen des 13. Jahrhunderts. Forschungen zur Geschichte der kirchlichen Unionen und der Mohammedaner- und Heidenmission des Mittelalters* (Habelschwerdt/Schles., 1924), pp. 141–148; Ferent, *Cumanii* (see above, n. 310), pp. 115–152; idem, *Începuturile Bisericii Catolice din Moldova* ed. E. Ferent (Iaşi, 2004), pp. 243–271; Gh. I. Moisescu, *Catolicismul în Moldova pînă la sfârşitul veacului XIV* (Bucharest, 1942), pp. 10–25; V. T. Pashuto, “Половецкое епископство,” in *Ost und West in der Geschichte des Denkens und der kulturellen Beziehungen. Festschrift für Eduard Winter zum 70. Geburtstag*, eds. W. Steinitz, P. N. Berkov, B. Suchodolski, and J. Dolanský (Berlin, 1966), pp. 33–40; J. Richard, *La papauté et les missions d’Orient au Moyen Age (XIII<sup>e</sup>–XV<sup>e</sup> siècles)* (Rome, 1977), pp. 20–26; I. O. Kniaz’kii, “О половецких епископиях в Карпато-Дунайских землях (Сообщение),” in *Социально-экономическая и политическая история Юго-Восточной Европы (до середины XIX в.)*, ed. V. D. Koroliuk (Kishinev, 1980), pp. 244–251; V. Gh. Sibiescu, “Episcopatul cuman de la Milcovia (1227 [1228]–1241)” in *Spiritualitate și istorie la întorsura Carpaților*, ed. A. Plămădeală, I (Buzău, 1983), pp. 284–320; O. Bârlea, *Die Konzile des 13.–15. Jahrhunderts und die ökumenische Frage* (Wiesbaden, 1989), pp. 76–79; Papacostea, *Românii*, pp. 66–69 and 75–76; F. Solomon, “Episcopia Cumaniei—Episcopia Milcoviei. Două episoade din istoria relațiilor româno-maghiare,” in *Studii istorice româno-ungare*, ed. L. Nastasă (Iaşi, 1999), pp. 7–18; V. Iorgulescu, *Le sud-est européen entre Byzance et Occident aux X<sup>e</sup>–XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles. Le cas des Roumains* (Iaşi, 2005), pp. 130–149; V. Achim, “La Coumanie de l’espace extracarpatique à l’époque de la domination hongroise, 1227–1241,” *RRH* 45 (2006), nos. 1–4, pp. 3–25; V. Spinici, “The Cuman bishopric—genesis and evolution,” in *The Other Europe in the Middle Ages. Avars, Bulgars, Khazars, and Cumans*, ed. F. Curta (Leiden–Boston, 2008) pp. 413–456.

<sup>423</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, p. 111; *Acta Honorii III* (see above, n. 412), pp. 208–209; Albric (see above, n. 412), p. 921.

<sup>424</sup> N. Backmund, *Monasticon Praemonstratense*, III (Staubing, 1956), p. 402.

<sup>425</sup> Rogerius (see above, n. 418), pp. 33, 72.

the steppe nomads. Judging by the information in the papal bull of November 14, 1234, most inhabitants of the Cuman bishopric were Romanians (*Walati, Walathi*), under whose influence both Hungarian- and the German-speaking locals appear to have converted to Orthodoxy (*In Cumanorum episcopatu [...] quidam populi, qui Walati vocantur, existunt [...] et nonnulli de regno Ungarie, tam Ungari, quam Theutonici et alii orthodoxi, morandi causa cum ipsis transeunt ad eosdem, et sic cum eis, quia populus unus facti cum eisdem Walathis...*). The Romanians had their own bishops, called “pseudo-bishops” in the papal letter, who did not obey to Theodorik. Consequently, Pope Gregory IX urged prince Bela to take drastic measures against them.<sup>426</sup>

Bishops and bishoprics thus appear to have existed among the Romanians of the outer-Carpathian lands well before the Cuman Bishopric or the Teutonic knights’ attempts at forceful conversion. The existence of local ecclesiastical structure does not seem to have been at all prevented by Catholic proselytism. Given the close relation between lay and ecclesiastical power throughout the Middle Ages, the existence of Romanian bishoprics begs the question of what political entities may have also existed in the area. Neither the size, nor the form of such an entity can be established at the moment, but the existence of “pseudo-bishops” and the Romanian resistance to Catholic proselytism cannot be explained away simply as Orthodox activism by churchmen coming from the Bulgarian lands south of the Danube or as an attempt by the Asenid rulers to expand their influence to the lands north of that river.<sup>427</sup> There is simply no basis for such an explanation in the evidence of the papal bull. Nonetheless, the confessional dependence of the north-Danubian “pseudo-bishops” on the ecclesiastical structures of the Second Tsardom seems to be normal for the first half of the thirteenth century, when the Bulgarian church took over the prerogatives held before 1204 by the Constantinopolitan Patriarchy.<sup>428</sup>

The name of the Cuman Bishopric does not seem to correspond to the realities on the ground at that time, for neither its location, nor its inhabitants had anything to do with the Cumans. The Cuman Bishopric

---

<sup>426</sup> O. Raynald, *Annales ecclesiastici ab anno MCXCVIII. ubi desinit cardinalis Baronius*, ed. J. D. Mansi, II (Lucae, 1747), pp. 111–112; *Acta Honorii III*, pp. 284–285; *DRH, D, I*, no. 9.

<sup>427</sup> Altaner, *Die Dominikanermissionen des 13. Jahrhunderts*, pp. 146–147.

<sup>428</sup> Č. Bonev, “L’Église orthodoxe dans les territoires carpatodanubiens et la politique pontificale pendant la première moitié du XIII<sup>e</sup> s.,” *Études balkaniques* 22 (1986), no. 4, p. 105.

was in fact located in an area inhabited by Romanians and marked by hilly and mountain landscape, which was not suitable for nomadic life. Consequently, the name of the new bishopric was not a reflection of the achievements of the Dominican mission, but an anticipation of future successes of both that mission and the military expansion of the Hungarian Kingdom. Its goals were limited to the activity of missionaries and royal agents, without much concern for the creation of either military and ecclesiastical structures. The conversion of the Cumans would have given the Holy See and Hungary the opportunity to expand to the eastern lands of the continent. In that respect, it is important to note that just ten years after the conversion of the Cumans, several missions were sent to the pagan tribes of the Middle Volga, to the so-called *Magna Hungaria*—a region believed to have been the homeland from which the Hungarians had migrated to Pannonia.<sup>429</sup> The Cuman Bishopric thus illustrates the ample vision and the tenacity of the leaders of the Church of Hungary.

The enthusiasm generated by the initial success of the Cuman conversion of 1227–1228 slowly faded away as it became clear how difficult it was to spread Christianity into a cultural area very different from Catholic Europe. The Dominicans may have been ill-prepared for the enormity of the task and may have greatly underestimated the effort of converting the nomads to Christianity. Moreover in the ideological confrontation taking place in the steppe lands between Christianity and Islam, the latter seems to have prevailed, perhaps because that religion too had originated in a nomadic milieu, and was therefore better adapted to the lifestyle of the east-European nomads.

For all those difficulties, the Hungarian kings followed in the footsteps of the Teutonic knights and slowly consolidated their position of power in the outer-Carpathian Romanian lands, despite the opposition of both natives and nomads. Some Cuman groups, certainly those in the region north of the Lower Danube, who had partly adopted Christianity, may have favored a military alliance with Hungary. When Prince Bela crossed the “Hungarian Mountains” (i.e., the northern or Ukrainian Carpathians) and moved in 1229 against Galicia, he had on his side the Cumans led by Begovars. In turn, Daniil Romanovich, the prince

---

<sup>429</sup> L. Bendefy, “Fontes authentici itinera (1235–1238) fr. Iuliani illustrantes,” *AECO* 3 (1937), nos. 1–4, pp. 1–51; H. Dörrie, “Drei Texte zur Geschichte der Ungarn und Mongolen,” *Nachrichten der Akademie der Wissenschaften in Göttingen, Philologisch-historische Klasse* (1956), 1, pp. 125–202.

of Galicia, demanded the assistance of both the Poles and the Cumans of Kotian (Kuthen).<sup>430</sup> For the first time in their recorded history, two Cuman tribes living in the immediate vicinity of the Romanians lands found themselves on opposing sides, a clear sign of internal strife and of the disintegration of the Cuman tribal confederacy. In the end, Bela was defeated by the Galicians with their Cuman allies, and quickly crossed the Dniester River near Vasileu (= Vasilev), on the southern frontier of Galicia, to withdraw to Moldavia. From there he led his armies towards the Prut, and then, as the Hungarians were harassed by enemies and epidemics, he crossed the mountains back into Transylvania.<sup>431</sup> Being too far from the safety of the Verecke pass, Bela may have moved across the mountains along the valley of the river Moldova and then along that of the Someșul Mare until reaching Rodna.

That route was again by the Mongol army led by Kadan, who entered Transylvania in 1241.<sup>432</sup> Before that, Prince Rostislav, the son of the prince of Chernigov, may have employed the same route when fleeing to Hungary after he had failed to eliminate Danilo. The Galician-Volhynian chronicle dates the event to 6743 (= 1235), but it must have taken place a little later. In any case, Rostislav is said to have run away “on the Hungarian road” (*бежа во Угры путемъ*), moving Borsukov “to Baia, called Rodna, and then to the Hungarians” (*и прииде къ Бани, рекомей Родна, и оттуда иде во Угры*).<sup>433</sup> The passage indicates that Rodna was also called Baia, no doubt because of the adjacent mining settlement. Similarly, a settlement named Molda (Molga, Mulda) on the other side of the Carpathian Mountains, in Moldova, was also known as Baia.<sup>434</sup> The location of Borsukov is not known, but the chronicler may have had in mind the site of the modern village of Bursuceni (Verești commune, Suceava county, Romania), situated on the right bank of the river Siret, east of Suceava.

While expanding to the south, across the Carpathian Mountains, Hungarian kings took a serious interest in both Wallachia and Bulgaria. When adopting the title “king of Cumania,” which first appears in his

<sup>430</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 170.

<sup>431</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 169–170.

<sup>432</sup> Rogerius, pp. 33, 72.

<sup>433</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 175.

<sup>434</sup> *Молдавско-немецкая летопись*, in *Славяно-молдавские летописи XV–XVI вв.*, ed. F. A. Grecul, co-ord. V. I. Bugarov (Moscow, 1976), p. 37; C. I. Karadja, “Delegații din țara noastră la conciliul din Constanța (în Baden) în anul 1415,” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 7 (1927), pp. 70 and 82–83.



charters in 1233,<sup>435</sup> King Andrew II already ruled over a number of territories previously under local Cuman and Romanian chieftains. It is no accident that the new title was adopted at the time the Severin Banate was established.<sup>436</sup> During the first four decades of the thirteenth century, for all its inner turmoils, the Hungarian Kingdom appeared to be the main political force in the Middle and Lower Danube area. The Arpadian kings of Hungary had ambitions of expansion directed towards the territories inhabited by “schismatics” (i.e., Orthodox) and pagans. Such a political program had not only the approval, but also the full support of the Holy See. Moreover, Hungarian expansionism took advantage of the Bulgarian involvement in affairs in the southern Balkans. Meanwhile, neither the Rus’ principalities, nor the Cumans seem to have had sufficient political and military clout to be a serious obstacle. Therefore, during the first part of the thirteenth century, Hungary became a much more serious threat for the local Romanian communities than the nomads of the steppe.

The conquest of Constantinople by the crusaders drastically diminished the prestige of Orthodoxy, given that none of the competing centers of power—Nicaea, Târnovo, Thessalonike, Trebizond, or Galicia—had the authority to replace Constantinopolitan Patriarchate in order to counterbalance the increasingly successful offensive of Catholicism. Although various Greek and Slavic rulers showed themselves open to the union with the Church of Rome, Catholic proselytims in south-eastern and eastern Europe never gained much support among common people. The cooperation between the military and political structures, on one hand, and the church hierarchy in Hungary was viewed by both sides as an opportunity for the advancement of their own, specific goals. The resistance to Hungarian expansion into the Orthodox lands was thus viewed as resistance to the conversion to Catholicism.

---

<sup>435</sup> *Codex diplomaticus*, ed. G. Fejér (see above, n. 377), III, 2 (Budae, 1829), pp. 347–348; Hurmuzaki, I, p. 127.

<sup>436</sup> For that event, see M. Holban, “Despre Țara Severinului și Banatul de Severin în secolul al XIII-lea,” in eadem, *Din cronica relațiilor*, pp. 55–63; Ș. Papacostea, “Înfruntări politice și spirituale în sud-estul Europei: 1204–1241 (II),” *AIJ* 27 (1990), pp. 35–36; V. Achim, “Despre vechimea și originea Banatului de Severin,” *Revista istorică*, NS, 5 (1994), nos. 3–4, pp. 234–236; idem, “Istoria unei provincii de frontieră: banatul de Severin în secolul al XIII-lea,” in *Secolul al XIII-lea pe meleagurile locuite de către români*, ed. A. A. Rusu (Cluj–Napoca, 2006), pp. 31–40.

Among the nomads who lived in southern Moldavia, similar to the Cumans were the Brodniks, attested in several contemporary diplomas and bulls. The first of those are two documents of 1222,<sup>437</sup> considered by some to be apocryphal. If so, however, the forgery cannot have taken place more than a decade after the date indicated in the documents. In documents issued in 1227, 1231 and 1250 the land of the Brodniks appears together with Cumania in the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains,<sup>438</sup> the Brodniks' being mentioned under the name of *Bordones* (*Βορδόνης*), together with *Scythians* (= Cumans) who supported the Vlachs and the Bulgarians in 1186.<sup>439</sup> In 1146/1147<sup>440</sup> and in 1216<sup>441</sup> the Brodniks were mentioned as being involved in wars between the Rus' princes, and in 1223 they participated in the battle at Kalka.<sup>442</sup>

Given that in all sources, they are mentioned along with other ethnic names, the Brodniks must have been a distinct ethnic group, not a social category. The vast area within which they are said to have been able to move, from Suzdal to the steppes north of the Black Sea and the Lower Danube, point to them being nomads. Their name or their "country" was often associated with Cumans or Cumania, and their special mobility may indicate that the Brodniks' belonged to the family of Turkic peoples. In the eleventh and twelfth centuries, besides the great Turkic tribes—Pechenegs, Uzes, Cumans—and the remainders of the Bulgars and Khazars, there were also smaller groups, such as the

<sup>437</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 74–77; *DRH,D*, I, no. 1 and 2; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden* (see above, n. 386), pp. 170 and 173.

<sup>438</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 102, 114, and 260; *DIR*, C, v. XI, XII și XIII, I, pp. 228, 245, and 345.

<sup>439</sup> Uspenskii, *Образование* (see above, n. 374), p. 35; Nicetae Choniatae *Orationes* (see above, n. 373), p. 93.

<sup>440</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 30; *Ip.let.-2*, col. 342; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 38; *Летопись по Уваровскому списку*, in *PSRL*, XXV (see above, n. 336), p. 40; *Летописный свод 1497 г.*, in *PSRL*, 28 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1963), p. 28; *Летописный свод 1518 г. (Уваровская летопись)*, in *ibidem*, p. 183; *Холмогорская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 33 (Leningrad, 1977), p. 43.

<sup>441</sup> *Новгородская четвертая летопись*, in *PSRL*, IV, p. 22; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 122; *Летопись по Уваровскому списку*, in *PSRL*, XXV, pp. 112–113.

<sup>442</sup> *MPL*, pp. 63, 266; *Троицкая летопись*, in *PSRL*, I (see above, n. 402), p. 218; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 132; *Летописный сборникъ именуемый Тверскою летописью*, in *PSRL*, XV, col. 342; *Ермолинская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXIII (see above, n. 405), p. 71; *Летопись по Уваровскому списку*, in *PSRL*, XXV, p. 120; *Вологодско-Пермская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXVI (see above, n. 405), p. 69; *Холмогорская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 33, p. 64.

Berendei, the Turpei, the Kaepichi, and the Koui.<sup>443</sup> Their respective homelands and origins remain unknown, but they may have all become distinct groups in central Asia, or during the migration to the west. Some of them may have simply been clans of the larger tribes.

Earlier studies maintained that the Brodniks were Romanians,<sup>444</sup> most of those who advocated the idea being misled by an erroneous transcription of names in a document of 1222.<sup>445</sup> As often happens, even after the mistake was revealed, that misconception continued to be reproduced. The fact that the Brodniks appear in the Romanian lands to the east from the Carpathian Mountains during a period of much ethnic change and population movement is not sufficient proof for them being natives to those lands, especially considering that they also appear in territories at a long distance from the Carpathian Mountains. Furthermore, we cannot ignore the fact that in contemporary sources the Romanians are consistently identified by other names, all of which derive from the ethnic name Vlach or Voloch. However, it would have been nonsensical for Niketas Choniates and for the emitters of the two documents of 1222<sup>446</sup> to have used two different names for the same ethnic group.

The idea that the Brodniks were Rus' or semi-nomadic Rus' mixed with Turkic nomads (*avant-la-lettre* Cossacks of sorts)<sup>447</sup> is equally ground-

<sup>443</sup> *Ip.let.*; *PSRL*, I; *Let. Voskr.*; *Nik.let.*, I, II, *passim*. See also Rassovsky, "Печенеги, торки и берендеи" (see above, n. 242), pp. 11–16; Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 165; eadem, *Половцы*, pp. 78–82; N. A. Baskakov, "Микроэтнонимы узов (огузов)—черных клобуков в русских летописях," *АОН* 36 (1982), nos. 1–3, pp. 39–40 and 42–44; T. Nagrodzka-Majchrzyk, *Czarni Klobucy* (Warsaw, 1985), p. 18 ff.

<sup>444</sup> D. Onciul, "Originile" (see above, n. 374), pp. 693–695; Kogălniceanu, *Istoria românilor*, I (Iași, 1903), p. 28; A. Bunea, *Încercare de istoria românilor pînă la 1382* (Bucharest, 1912), pp. 128–131; V. Motogna, *Articole și documente. Contribuții la istoria românilor din v. XIII–XVI* (Cluj, 1923), pp. 35–42; A. V. Boldur, *Istoria Basarabiei. Contribuții la studiul istoriei românilor*, I (Chișinău, 1937), pp. 111–119.

<sup>445</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, p. 77.

<sup>446</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, p. 74–76; *DRH.D.*, I, nos. 1 and 2; Zimmermann, *Der Deutsche Orden* (see above, n. 386), pp. 170–171.

<sup>447</sup> M. Karamzin, *Histoire de l'Empire de Russie*, II (Paris, 1819), p. 274; P. J. Šafařík, *Slovanské starožitnosti*, II (Prague, 1863), p. 650; D. Rassovsky, "Печенеги, торки и берендеи" (see above, n. 242), p. 176; Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 186; Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, p. 203; C. Goehrke, "Wüstungsperioden des frühen und hohen Mittelalters in Osteuropa," *Jahrbücher für Geschichte Osteuropas*, NF, 16 (1968), no. 1, p. 116; M. F. Kotliar, "Хто таки бродники," *Український історичний журнал* (1969), no. 5 (98), pp. 95–101; A. T. Smilenko, *Слов'яни та їх сусиди в степовому Подніпров'ї (II–XIII ст.)* (Kiev, 1975), p. 190; Al. A. Bolșacov-Ghimpu, *Cronica Țării Moldovei pînă la întemeiere* (Bucharest, 1979), pp. 55–56; Malingoudis, "Die Nachrichten" (see above, n. 364), p. 135; A. Bartha, "The typology of nomadic empires," in *Popoli delle steppe* (see above,

less. Against the idea is the fact that the term *kosak*, which is of Cuman origin<sup>448</sup> means “sentinel,” or “watch guard,”<sup>449</sup> and is thus very different in meaning from “brodник.” The name Brodник most probably derived from the Slavic verb *бродить* (“to wander,” “to roam”), so the original meaning must have been “wanderer,” “vagrant,”<sup>450</sup> which does not exclude a Turkic origin for the Brodniks.<sup>451</sup> An undoubtedly Turkic tribe was known by a Slavic name, the *Chornye klobuki* (черные клобуки, Black Caps), perhaps a translation of the Turkic *Qara-börkli*.<sup>452</sup>

Equally controversial is the ethnicity of the Bolokhovens, a population mentioned as living in the Rus’ regions to the north-east from Moldavia. On the basis of similarity with the name of the Volokh/Wallachians, some have regarded them as of Romanian origin, the more so since during the Middle Ages there seems to have been many Romance speaking enclaves within the Galician-Volhynia Principality.<sup>453</sup> Archaeological investigations undertaken in the last few decades have precisely detected the settlements of the Bolokhoven princes mentioned in the

---

n. 57), I (Spoleto, 1988), pp. 157–158; A. A. Kozlovs’kii, *Историко-культурный розвиток Південного Подніпров’я в IX–XIV ст.* (Kiev, 1992), pp. 164–171; Іu. V. Sukharev, “Половцы,” *Московский журнал* 8 (2006), p. 55.

<sup>448</sup> G. Kuun, *Codex Cumanicus bibliothecae ad templum divi Marci Venetiarum* (Budapest, 1880), p. 268.

<sup>449</sup> G. Stökl, *Die Entstehung der Kosakentums* (Munich, 1953), pp. 39–41.

<sup>450</sup> F. K. Brun, *Черноморье. Сборникъ изследований по исторической географіи Южной Россіи*, I (Odessa, 1879), p. 114; N. N. Petrașcu and G. G. Bezviconi, *Relațiile ruso-române* (Bucharest, 1945), p. 13; V. A. Rybakov, “Древние русы,” *СА* 17 (1953), pp. 62–63; N. Polonska-Vasylenko, *Geschichte der Ukraine. Von den Anfängen bis 1923*, trans. R. Szuper (Munich, 1988), p. 133.

<sup>451</sup> Some believe the Brodniks to have been Alans. See O. B. Bubenok, *Ясы и бродники в Восточной Европы (VI–начало XIII вв.)* (Kiev, 1997), pp. 131–136.

<sup>452</sup> J. Marquart, “Über das Volkstum der Komanen,” in W. Bang and J. Marquart, “Osttürkische Dialektstudien,” *Abhandlungen der Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Philologisch-Historische Klasse*, NF, 13 (1914), no. 1, pp. 157–158; H. H. Schaefer, *Vorwort des Herausgebers*, in J. Marquart, *Wöhrot und Arang* (Leiden, 1938), p. 44 (the book-review translation of J. Marquart’s study made by V. Barthold in 1921). See also P. B. Golden, “The Černii Klobouci,” in *Symbolae Turcologicae. Studies in Honour of Lars Johanson on his Sixtieth Birthday, 8 March 1996*, eds. A. Berta, B. Brendemoen, and C. Schönig (Uppsala, 1996), p. 99: “we do not have to identify the Černii Klobouci with the Qara Qalpaq (and certainly not with the Qara Börkli who were a Cuman/Qipčaq tribe)”.

<sup>453</sup> A. S. Petrushevich, *Кто были Болеховские князья?* (offprint of *Слово*, 94–95) (Lwow, 1877); Kogălniceanu, *Istoria românilor* (see above, n. 444), pp. 28–29; Boldur, *Istoria Basarabiei* (see above, n. 444), I, pp. 120–125; C. C. Giurescu, *Țiguri sau orașe și cetăți moldovene din secolul al X-lea până la mijlocul secolului al XVI-lea* (Bucharest, 1967), pp. 37–39; Th. Holban, “Contribuții la problema originii și localizării bolohovenilor,” *RLS* 21 (1968), no. 1, pp. 26–27.

chronicles, and defined the features of their material culture.<sup>454</sup> Those features are specific to western Rus' territories, a fact that is believed to be relevant for defining the ethnicity of the Bolokhovens. The idea that the Bolokhovens were Rus' is also supported by evidence of relations between Bolokhoven princes and Galician noble families.<sup>455</sup>

Some believe that prior to the battle at Kalka, the lands of the Bolokhovens were ruled from Kiev.<sup>456</sup> Bolokhoven princely were sworn enemies of Daniil (Danylo) Romanovich, against whom they fought in 1231, 1235, 1241, and 1257.<sup>457</sup> As the confrontations were between unequal military forces, the Bolokhovens allied themselves with Daniil's enemies, the Hungarians and the Mongols. Their fortified settlements enabled the Bolokhovens to oppose the Galicians for many decades. However they could not stand the campaign organized by Daniil in 1257, and thus their chances of political emancipation were ruined.

Medieval place names and the existence of villages organized according to the so-called Romanian law (*jus Valachicum*) on Galicia-northern slopes of the northern Carpathians, which were part of Galych-Volhynia, indicate a numerous Romanian population and point out certain features of its organization.<sup>458</sup> The adoption of numerous

---

<sup>454</sup> P. A. Rappoport, "Города Болховской земли," *КС* 57 (1955), pp. 52–59; K. I. Tereshchuk, "До питання про локалізацію Болхівської землі," in *Дослідження з слав'яно руської археології*, eds. V. I. Dovzhenok (gen. ed.), V. D. Baran, V. I. Bidzilia, L. V. Vakulenko, M. P. Kuchera, O. M. Prikhodniuk (Kiev, 1976), pp. 164–175; I. S. Vinokur, P. A. Gorishnii, *Бакота. Столиця давньоруського Пониззя* (Kamienets-Podolsk, 1994), pp. 249–254; V. I. Iakubovskii, "Болхівські скарби як пам'ятки давньоукраїнського костюму і ремесла," in *Давня і середньовічна історія України (історико-археологічний збірник). На пошану Юна Винокура з нагоди його 70-річчя* (Kam'ianets'-Podil's'kii, 2000), pp. 260–275; I. S. Vinokur, O. I. Zhurko, V. P. Megei, V. I. Iakubovskii, "Дослідження літописного Губина у 2001–2002 роках," in *Археологічні відкриття в Україні 2001–2002 рр.* (Kiev, 2003), pp. 72–74; idem, "Дослідження літописного Губина у 2003 р.," in *Археологічні відкриття в Україні 2002–2003 рр.* (Kiev, 2004), pp. 83–86; I. S. Vinokur, V. I. Iakubovskii, O. I. Zhurko, V. P. Megei, "Речовий скарб із літописного Губина," *Археологія* (2007), no. 1, pp. 54–65.

<sup>455</sup> N. P. Dashkevich, "Болховская земля и ея значение въ русской истории," in *Труды третьяго археологического съезда въ Россіи, вышшаго въ Києве въ августъ 1874 года*, II (Kiev, 1878), p. 69 ff.; D. P. Bogdan, "Despre bolhoveni cu prilejul unui studiu al ucraineanului Andrijaşev," *Arhiva românească* 5 (1940), pp. 272–274; Polonska-Vasylenko, *Geschichte*, p. 132.

<sup>456</sup> P. P. Tolochko, "Киевская земля," in *Древнерусские княжества* (see above, p. 269), p. 13.

<sup>457</sup> *Ip.let.*, pp. 172, 174, 179–180, and 194–195.

<sup>458</sup> L. Wyrostek, *Ród Dragów-Sasów na Węgrzech i Rusi Halickiej* (Cracow, 1932), pp. 27–39; N. Drăganu, *Românii în veacurile IX–XIV pe baza toponimiei și a onomasticeii* (Bucharest, 1933), pp. 404–411; M. N. Popp, "Urme românești în viața pastorală a Carpaților polonezi," *BSRRG* 44 (1935), pp. 210–223; Th. Holban, "Răspîndirea coloniilor

words of neo-Latin origin in the Ukrainian language is due, to a great extent, to the influence of those Romanian enclaves.

Meanwhile, in the lands on the left bank of the Danube, which witnessed the disintegration of the nomadic power, Romanians succeeded in creating several political entities, some of them covering vast territories. Nothing is known about such entities in the years prior to the great Mongol invasion. By contrast, there are several references for the years following that invasion. The 1247 diploma granted to the Knights of St John lists in Oltenia and western Wallachia, the principalities of two voivodes named Litovoi and Seneslau, and two knezes names John and Farcaș.<sup>459</sup> In that same year, on his way back from the great khan, John of Plano Carpini (Giovanni di Pian di Carpine) met a “duke” named Olaha, who was on his way to the court of Batu Khan.<sup>460</sup> The name of the duke is striking similar to the ethnic name for the Romanians, *oláh*, in Hungarian.<sup>461</sup>

The Franciscan William of Rubruck, who took a message from the king of France to the great khan in 1253, reported that at the court of Sartak he encountered messengers of the Russians, of the Romanians and of other peoples. They had stopped there on their way to the Volga, to the court of Batu Khan, to whom they carried their gifts: *Ipse enim est in itinere christianorum, scilicet Rutenorum, Blacorum, Bulgarorum minoris Bulgarie, Soldainorum, Kerkisorum, Alanorum, curiam patris sui, defferentes ei munera, unde magis ampectitur eos.*<sup>462</sup> The fact that Romanian princes sent emissaries to Sarai, or even had personal contacts with the Mongol leaders of the Horde indicates that such actions were necessary in getting confirmation of the status of regional rulers. Since immediately after the great

---

românești în Polonia,” *Arhiva* 42 (1935), nos. 1–2, pp. 28–33; idem, “Contribuții” (see above, n. 453), pp. 21–27; M. Jurkowski, “Z hydronimii Karpat polskich,” *Acta Archaeologica Carpathica* 11 (1970), no. 2, p. 317; O. Horbatsch, “Ukrainische Ortsnamen rumänischer Herkunft,” *Beiträge zur Namenforschung*, NF, 6 (1971), no. 4, pp. 357–377; T. Sulimirski, “Trakowie w północnych Karpatach i problem pochodzenia wołochów,” *Acta Archaeologica Carpathica* 14 (1974), pp. 79–105; G. Jawor, “Zasięg i charakter osadnictwa wołoskiego na Rusi Czerwonej w XIV–XVI wieku,” in *Галицько-Волинська держава: передумови виникнення*, pp. 123–125; idem, *Osady prawa wołoskiego i ich mieszkańcy na Rusi Czerwonej w późnym średniowieczu* (Lublin, 2000), p. 15 ff.

<sup>459</sup> *Urkundenbuch zur Geschichte der Deutschen in Siebenbürgen*, I, eds. F. Zimmermann and C. Werner (Hermannstadt, 1892), no. 82; *DRH*, B, I, no. 1.

<sup>460</sup> Plano Carpini, p. 129.

<sup>461</sup> Gh. I. Brătianu, “Roman și Vlachata în tradiția istorică a descălecatului Moldovei,” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 27 (1944–1945), pp. 43–48; idem, “În jurul întemeierii statelor românești,” *Ethos*, Paris, 2 (1975), pp. 40–41.

<sup>462</sup> Rubruck, p. 209.

invasion several Romanian political formations or their rulers were mentioned in documents, we may assume that those structures had existed previously, and that they were strong enough to survive the shock of the Mongol invasion. They cannot possibly have been organized in the few years after the invasion, especially if we take into account the damage inflicted upon the whole Romanian society.

The traditional relations that had brought together the populations on both sides of the Danube continued after the victory of the Vlach-Bulgarian uprising in the Balkans, and the rise of the Second Bulgarian Empire. Hordes of Cumans continued to be included in the military forces of Ioannitsa's successors, and those horsemen were used in the disputes south of the Balkans. In order to consolidate his reign and his alliance with the nomads of the steppes, Boril (1207–1218) married a Cuman woman, his uncle Ioannitsa's widow.<sup>463</sup> In addition, the pretender to the throne, John, Asen's son—the future John Asen II, who was Boril's cousin—fled with his supporters to the “Scythians” (= Cumans) in the lands north of the Danube. Possibly they came in touch with the Romanians of that area too. In 1218, after having obtained the neutrality of the Cumans of the Romanian Plain, John Asen II, with help from the Russians, returned to Bulgaria and overthrew Boril.<sup>464</sup> In the 1230 great battle at Klokotnitsa, in which the new tsar defeated the armies of Theodore Angelus, the emperor of Thessalonike, John Asen II (1218–1241) had Cuman forces on his side as well.<sup>465</sup> A little later, in 1234/1235, the Nicaean emperor John III Ducas Vatatzes (1222–1254), who aimed to recover Byzantine possessions from the Latins, concluded a peace treaty with John Asen II, not only in order to have him as an ally against the Latin Empire, but also because he feared the good relationship between the Cumans and the tsar.<sup>466</sup>

As they wasted their military capacity in supporting the Asens, the Cuman tribes of the Lower Danube ignored the great threat represented by their own relatives of the extreme eastern territories of Desht-i Qipchaq. About 20,000 Cumans were said to have participated—together with Georgians, Armenians, Lezghians, Abkhazians, and other groups—

<sup>463</sup> Acropolites (see above, n. 261), col. 1019.

<sup>464</sup> Ibidem, col. 1033–1034; *FHB*, XV, p. 267 (Theodori Scutariotae *Compendium chronicum*).

<sup>465</sup> Acropolites, col. 1048; *FHB*, XV, pp. 269–270 (Theodori Scutariotae *Compendium chronicum*).

<sup>466</sup> Gregoras, I (see above, n. 261), p. 29.

in the coalition formed against Jalal-al-Din (Jalaluddin)—the successor of the shah Muhammad, who had invaded the Caucasian area in a.H. 625 (= 1227–1228). As they were diplomatically lured by Jalal-al-Din, the Cumans eventually stopped fighting against him. Their forces had come, probably, from the above-mentioned extremity of Desht-i Qipchaq, that is, from territories bordering on Khwarazm.<sup>467</sup> It was at that point, after the destruction of the Khanate of Khwarazm, that the Mongols re-appeared in Europe, enthusiastically preparing themselves to move to the west. Their plans were delayed due to the death of Jochi, to whom his father, Genghis Khan (who also died shortly thereafter), had granted as *ulus* the western territories to be conquered.

The *kuriltai* of 1229 again raised the question of invading Desht-i Qipchaq and the neighbouring regions. Before launching that great campaign, the Mongol hordes undertook some manoeuvres on the Volga, which were meant either to consolidate their positions on the left bank of the river, or to scatter enemy forces. For 1229 and 1231/1232 Russian and Oriental chronicles mention raids against the Bulgars and other populations on the Volga.<sup>468</sup> On the occasion of the first expedition, an attack against the Cumans took place too, dated by Ibn Wasil to a.H. 627<sup>469</sup> (= Nov. 20, 1229–Nov. 9, 1230). The Mongol advance to the west was also facilitated by the disputes between the Cuman tribes of Durut and Toksoba, as presented by authors belonging to the Mamluk state. That conflict, as result of a competition for hunting grounds, led to the murder of Mangush, Kotian's (Kothen's) son, of the tribe of Durut. The reprisals launched by Kotian against the tribe of Toksoba forced the khan of the latter, Akkubul, to ask for Mongol aid.<sup>470</sup> Accute tensions among various Cuman tribal groups were also

---

<sup>467</sup> Juvaini (see above, n. 409), II, 1959, pp. 438–440; Rashid al-Din, *The Successors of Genghis Khan*, ed. J. A. Boyle (New York–London, 1971), pp. 43–44; Rashiduddin Fazlullah (see above, n. 122), II (Harvard [Cambridge, Mass.], 1999), pp. 318–319.

<sup>468</sup> *Продолжение Лаврентьевской летописи*, in *PSRL*, I (see above, n. 375), pp. 192, 196; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 138; *Nik.let.*, II, p. 103; *Холмогорская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 33 (see above, n. 440), p. 66; Juvaini, I, p. 190; Bretschneider, *Medieval Researches* (see above, n. 405), I, p. 300; Gregorii Abulpharagii sive Bar-Hebraei *Chronicon*, p. 503. See also V. V. Kargalov, *Внешнеполитические факторы развития феодалной Руси* (Moscow, 1967), pp. 66–67; L. V. Шерерин, “Монголо-татары на Руси XIII в.,” in *Татаро-монголы в Азии и Европе*, ed. S. L. Tikhvinskii, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 1977), p. 190; Th. T. Allsen, “Prelude to the Western campaigns: Mongol military operations in the Volga-Ural region, 1217–1237,” *АЕМА* 3 (1983), pp. 14–18.

<sup>469</sup> Tiesenhausem, I, p. 73.

<sup>470</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 541 (an-Nuwairi), 542 (Ibn Khaldun).



observed by the Dominican Julian, an emissary to *Hungaria Magna* in 1237. Several protagonists of those intertribal conflicts called for the assistance of both Khwarazmians and Mongols, in order to get the upper hand and to destroy their opponents.<sup>471</sup>

In 1236 a huge Mongol army, under the supreme command of Batu Khan, Jochi's son, set forth to the west, in one of the greatest invasions in the history of the world. It was to produce radical changes in the political and ethnic structure of eastern Europe, as well as in the Carpathian-Danube region. It seems that the ample operations of 1236 were preceded by some attacks undertaken in Desht-i Qipchaq, as mentioned above, in a.H. 632 (= 1234–1235), by the Persian chronicler Rashid al-Din.<sup>472</sup> The bulk of the Mongol forces began to move only after those initial attacks. The first victims of the invasion were the populations living on the Lower and Middle Volga, Cumans included. The Cuman leader Bachman, in alliance with the Bulgars and the Iassians, offered vigorous resistance to the aggressors.<sup>473</sup> The fact that he received no help from the Cumans in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea speaks volumes about of the political blindness of the Cuman chieftains.

Towards the end of 1237 the Mongol hordes attacked the principalities of Riazan' and Vladimir, which were conquered before the following spring. According to Rashid al-Din, in a.H. 635 (= Aug. 24, 1237–Aug. 13, 1238) the Mongol actions focused on the steppes north of the Black Sea,<sup>474</sup> which were inhabited by Cumans and by other nomads still living in Desht-i Qipchaq under their rule. The attempted

<sup>471</sup> Bendefy, "Fontes authentici" (see above, n. 429), pp. 35–36, 39–40; Dörrie, "Drei Texte" (see above, n. 429), pp. 170–171 (Iulianus).

<sup>472</sup> Rashid al-Din, *Successors*, p. 61; Rashiduddin Fazlullah, II, p. 328.

<sup>473</sup> W. Abramowski, "Die chinesischen Annalen des Mōngke. Übersetzung des 3. Kapitels des Yüan-shih," *Zentralasiatische Studien* 13 (1979), p. 16; Juvaini, II, p. 553; Rashid al-Din, *Successors*, pp. 58–59; Tiesenhausen, II, pp. 24 (Juvaini), 35–36 (Rashid-ad-Din); Rashiduddin Fazlullah, II, pp. 326 and 402; Bretschneider, *Mediaeval Researches*, I, pp. 311–312; P. Pelliot, "À propos des Coumans," *Journal Asiatique*, Ser. 11, 15 (1920), no. 2, 165–167; Allsen, "Prelude to the Western campaigns," pp. 18–20; A. J. Frank, "Historical legends of the Volga-Ural Muslims concerning Alexander the Great, the city of Yelabuga, and Bāchmān Khān," in *Figures mythiques des mondes musulmans. Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée, Série Histoire* 89–90 (2000), pp. 101–104; E. P. Mys'kov, "Рассказ о Бачмане," *Нижевожский археологический вестник* 3 (2000), pp. 238–239; D. Korobeinikov, "A broken mirror: the Kipçak world in the thirteenth century," in *Other Europe in the Middle Ages. Avars, Bulgars, Khazars, and Cumans*, ed. F. Curta (Leiden–Boston, 2008), pp. 404–405.

<sup>474</sup> Tiesenhausen, II, p. 37 (Rashid-ad-Din); Rashiduddin Fazlullah, II, p. 327; Korobeinikov, "A broken mirror," p. 391.

resistance, under Kuthen's command, was in vain, although the results of the first clashes were favourable to the Cumans.<sup>475</sup> The development of the battles in Desht-i Qipchaq was not very well recorded in the documents, but the Cumans' subsequent migration to the south and to the west is eloquent enough. One part of the Cumans made for the the Caucasian passes,<sup>476</sup> another for the Balkans and Panonnian Plain.

Hordes of Cumans crossed the Danube on leather bags stuffed with straw, then they moved to southern Bulgaria, plundered Thrace and Macedonia along the way.<sup>477</sup> Ibn Tagribirdi relates that the Vlach chieftain Unus Khan attacked the Cumans after initially having allowed them to settle within his territories.<sup>478</sup> Taking into account that the Bulgarians opposed the crossing of their country by the Cumans,<sup>479</sup> and that medieval authors frequently referred to the state of the Asens as the "Land of the Vlachs," the above-mentioned "khan" must have been John Asen II.<sup>480</sup> Although the military collaboration with the Cumans had been very profitable for him, and although in his youth he had taken refuge among them, John Asen II could not accept the idea of having to deal with more nomads within his own country. He certainly could foresee what ravages hordes of at least 10,000 people could cause.

In having to choose between fighting the Turkic tribes and using them as auxiliary troops, John III Ducas Vatatzes opted for the latter.<sup>481</sup> His rivals, the Latins of Constantinople, were also preoccupied with getting the Cumans on their side.<sup>482</sup> The emperors of Nicaea had hired Cuman detachments in Asia Minor, but they also used them in their campaigns in south-eastern Europe. Those detachments were frequently mentioned in the armies of John III Ducas Vatatzes'

<sup>475</sup> Rogerius (see above, n. 418), pp. 23, 61.

<sup>476</sup> Tiesenhausen, II, p. 38 (Rashid-ad-Din); Rashiduddin Fazlullah, II, p. 332.

<sup>477</sup> Acropolites, col. 1062; Gregoras, I, pp. 36–37.

<sup>478</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, p. 542.

<sup>479</sup> Acropolites, col. 1062.

<sup>480</sup> V. Spinei, "Aspekte der politischen Verhältnisse des Gebietes zwischen Donau und Schwarzem Meer zur Zeit der Mongolenherrschaft (XIII.–XIV. Jahrhundert)," *Dacoromania. Jahrbuch für Östliche Latinität*, Freiburg-Munich, 3 (1975–1976), p. 30; P. Pavlov, "По въпроса за заселванията на кумани в България през XIII в.," *Доклади*, 6, *Българските земи в древността. България през средновековието* (Sofia, 1987), pp. 631–632.

<sup>481</sup> Gregoras, I (see above, n. 261), p. 37.

<sup>482</sup> Joinville, *Histoire de Saint Louis*, in *Historiens* (Paris, 1952) (see above, n. 383), p. 311; idem, *Vie de Saint Louis*, trans. and ed. J. Monfrin (Paris, 1998), pp. 244–245; Albric, p. 950. For similar, previous attempts, see *L'estoire de Eracles*, p. 381.

successors, Theodore II Lascaris (1254–1258) and Michael VIII Palaeologus (1258–1282). Among other campaigns, they took part even in the reconquest of Constantinople from the Latins in July, 1261.<sup>483</sup> Other Cuman mercenaries came from various Balkan provinces. They were not always reliable. For example, in 1327 and the subsequent years, 2,000 Cumans who were suspected of planning a coalition with the Mongols were carried from Thrace to three islands in the Aegean Sea: Lemnos, Thasos and Lesbos.<sup>484</sup>

In order to consolidate the cooperation with the Turkic nomads the imperial house resorted to matrimonial alliances, a method that recalled that previously employed in relationships with Rus', Georgia, Bulgaria and Hungary. Very significant in this respect is the case of a late-thirteenth-century Cuman leader's son, Sytzigan (baptized as Syrgiannes), who married a member of the Palaeologus family and got positions of honour at the court of Andronicus II (1282–1328).<sup>485</sup> As a result of such matrimonial arrangements, descendants of Cumans were related to the members of the royal house of Georgia, and they also came to appear as members of the imperial family of the Grand Comneni of Trebizond in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.<sup>486</sup> The Cumans scattered over such a vast area that their assimilation came naturally, especially when facilitated by conversion and the adoption of a sedentary way of life.

The third Cuman branch, which came from the steppes north of the Black Sea under the rule of Kuthen, was allowed by king Bela IV to settle in the Hungary despite being very large, about 40,000 people, according to Rogerius. Because of the troubles caused by the settlement of the Turkic nomads in Hungary, the authorities undertook reprisals against them. Kuthen was killed and the Cumans took refuge in Bulgaria, thus depriving the Hungarian Kingdom of important assistance

---

<sup>483</sup> A. G. K. Savvides, "Οἱ Κομάνοι (Κουμάνοι) καὶ τὸ Βυζάντιο, 11ος–13ος αἰ μ.Χ.," *Byzantina* 13 (1985), no. 2, pp. 953–955; M. C. Bartusis, "On the problem of smallholding soldiers in Late Byzantium," *Dumbarton Oaks Papers* 44 (1990), pp. 12–13; idem, *The Late Byzantine Army. Arms and Society, 1204–1453* (Philadelphia, 1992), pp. 26–27.

<sup>484</sup> Ioannis Cantacuzeni *Historiarum libri IV*, ed. L. Schopen, I (Bonn, 1828), p. 259.

<sup>485</sup> Ibidem, p. 18; Gregoras, I, p. 296. The Mongol origin of Sitzigan (Syrgiannes) proposed by D. M. Nicol, *The Last Centuries of Byzantium, 1261–1453*, 2nd ed. (Cambridge, 1993), p. 156, cannot be accepted.

<sup>486</sup> E. A. Zachariadou, "Noms coumans à Trébizonde," *Revue des études byzantines* 53 (1995), pp. 285–288.

just at the moment when the great Mongol invasion was on its way.<sup>487</sup> Only a few years after the withdrawal of Batu's armies, the Cumans were again allowed to settle in Hungary, where they were to become a strong constituent of the royal armies for more than a century. Under such circumstances, the Cumans often fought side by side with the Romanians recruited by Arpadian and Angevin kings. They appear together in the Hungarian campaigns of 1260<sup>488</sup> and 1271<sup>489</sup> against Bohemia, in those of 1291<sup>490</sup> and 1296<sup>491</sup> into Austria, and in that against the Polish magnates of 1383.<sup>492</sup> Cuman troops accompanied Charles Robert in his unfortunate expedition to Wallachia in 1330.<sup>493</sup> In 1282 the Cumans who had rebelled against Ladislas IV the Cuman fled to the Mongols,<sup>494</sup> certainly after crossing the territory of Moldavia.

After the conquest of Desht-i Qipchaq in 1238–1239, the Mongols resumed their campaign against the Rus' principalities, which had not yet been conquered. In 1241–1242 they invaded the Romanian regions, Poland, Bohemia, Hungary and Bulgaria. The human losses and the destruction of settlements and of cultivated fields were enormous, and many years were needed for recovery. In the Carpathian-Danube area some perturbations took place on the occasion of the Cuman exodus

<sup>487</sup> Rogerius (see above, n. 418), pp. 22–24, 26, 28, 29, 35–37, 61, 62, 64, 65, 67, and 74–76; Dörrie, "Drei Texte" (see above, n. 429), p. 175; Marinus Sanutus, p. 236.

<sup>488</sup> *Historia Russiae monumenta*, II, ed. A. J. Turgenev (Petropoli, 1842), p. 348; Hurmuzaki, I, p. 287; Joannes de Marignoli, *Chronicon*, in *Monumenta historica Boemiae*, II, ed. G. Dobner (Prague, 1768), p. 221; *Annales Otakariani*, ed. R. Koepke, in *MGH, SS*, IX (1851), p. 185; Giovanni Villani, *Historie fiorentine*, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, ed. L. A. Muratorius, XIII (Mediolani, 1728), col. 203; idem, *Nuova cronica*, I, ed. G. Porta (Parma, 1990), p. 363; Io. Dubravii *Historia Boiémica* (Basileae, 1575), p. 158.

<sup>489</sup> *Chronicon Claustro-neuburgense*, in *Rerum Austriacarum Scriptores*, I, ed. A. Rauch (Vindobonae, 1793), p. 108; *Continuatio Claustro-neuburgensis VI*, in *MGH, SS*, IX (1851), p. 743; *Rocznik kapituly Krakowskiej*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, SN, V, *Annales Cracovienses priores cum kalendario*, ed. S. Kozłowska-Budka (Warsaw, 1978), p. 101.

<sup>490</sup> *Continuatio Vindobonensis*, in *MGH, SS*, IX (1851), p. 716; Gombos, I, p. 515; Thomas Ebendorfer, *Cronica Austriae*, ed. A. Lhotsky, in *MGH, Scriptores rerum Germanicarum*, NS, XIII (Berlin–Zurich, 1967), pp. 200–201.

<sup>491</sup> Anonymi Leobicensis *Chronicon*, in *Scriptores rerum Austriacarum*, I, ed. H. Pez (Lipsiae, 1721), col. 874; Gombos, I, p. 279.

<sup>492</sup> *Kalendarz Krakowsky*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, II, ed. A. Bielowski (Lwów, 1872), p. 931; *Calendarii Cracoviensis notae historicae ad annorum dierumque ordinem redactae*, ed. W. Bruchnalski, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, VI (Cracow, 1893), p. 657.

<sup>493</sup> *Cronici Hungarici* (see above, n. 273), p. 499; *CPict*, pp. 111, 235; *Chronicon Budense*, p. 249; Johannes de Thurocz, I, p. 151.

<sup>494</sup> *Cronici Hungarici*, pp. 471–472; *CPict*, pp. 97–98, 221; *Chronicon Pisoniense*, p. 44; Henric de Mügelin, p. 209. See also *Chronicon Zagrabienense cum textu Chronici Varadiensis collatum*, ed. E. Szentpétery, in *SRH*, I, p. 213; *Chronicon Budense*, p. 207; Johannes de Thurocz, I, p. 139.

from eastern Europe. The steppes of that part of the continent were conquered by Batu Khan's armies and became parts of the Golden Horde, whose western frontiers were on the Lower Danube. Among the major consequences of the great Mongol invasion was the destruction of the Turkic tribes in the steppes north of the Black and Caspian seas. That situation extended over the plains of the outer-Carpathian space, where a great part of the Turkic groups were exterminated, subjugated or forced to migrate to other lands, because neither the Bugeac, nor the Romanian Plain offered sufficient protection against the enemy.

The massacre of the Cumans and their exodus did not lead to total evacuation of Desht-i Qipchaq. John of Plano Carpini, the messenger of Pope Innocent IV to the great khan, travelled throughout the Mongol Empire in 1245–1247, and he related that the Tatars had slaughtered the Cumans, but some of the latter could flee and return later, whereas others were taken away as captives: *Istos autem Comanos Tartari occiderunt; quidam etiam a facie ipsorum fugerunt, et alii sunt in eorum servitute redacti. Plurimi tamen ex eis qui fugerunt, revertuntur ad ipsos.*<sup>495</sup>

Some Turkic groups were subdued by the new rulers of the Eurasian steppes, and they had to accompany Batu in his great expedition to Hungary.<sup>496</sup> Shortly after the invasion, the messengers of the pope and of the king of France, as well as different oriental travellers mentioned the presence of numerous groups of Cumans in the steppes north of the Black Sea and in Crimea. Evidence regarding their presence in the territories conquered by the Mongols can be found in many passages of contemporary chroniclers.<sup>497</sup> The information is also confirmed by archaeological excavations of numerous burial assemblages of thirteenth- and fourteenth-century nomads. Such assemblages show the continuation of the Turkic burial rites, especially the inhumation under

---

<sup>495</sup> Plano Carpini, p. 112.

<sup>496</sup> Matthaei Parisiensis *Chronica majora*, ed. H. R. Luard, IV (London, 1877), p. 131; Rogerius, pp. 49–51 and 89–91; *Chronicon monasterii Mellicensis*, in *Scriptores rerum Austriacarum*, I (see above, n. 491), col. 239; *Chronicon Salisburgense*, in *ibidem*, col. 356; Anonymi Leobensis *Chronicon*, in *ibidem*, col. 816; *Chronicon Claustroneuburgense* (see above, n. 489), p. 85.

<sup>497</sup> Plano Carpini, pp. 90, 112, and 127; Rubruck, pp. 186, 194–195, and 217; Simon de Saint-Quentin, *Histoire des Tartares*, ed. J. Richard (Paris, 1965), p. 47; Ibn Batoutah, *Voyages*, eds. C. Defrémery and B. R. Sanguinetti, II (Paris, 1949), pp. 357 and 364; B. Spuler, *Geschichte der Mongolen nach östlichen und europäischen Zeugnissen des 13. und 14. Jahrhunderts* (Zurich–Stuttgart, 1968), p. 218 (Ibn 'Abd az-Zahir).

barrows, with human skeletons accompanied by sacrificed horses.<sup>498</sup> The Cuman communities maintained their individuality for a long time in central Asia as well. Their detachments are mentioned as part of Saribugha Jalayir's armies, sent against the Moghuls in a.H. 766 (= 1365) by Timur Lenk (Tamerlane). In a.H. 777 (= 1373–1377) they joined the uprising against Timur. Many Qipchaq emirs were also in the service of Timur Lenk during the last years of the fourteenth century.<sup>499</sup>

The evolution of the Mongol-Cuman co-habitation was rightly understood by the Muslim scholar Al-'Umari (1301–1349), who used the detailed and accurate information provided by merchants travelling across Desht-i Qipchaq. Here is his presentation of the geographic and ethnic background of the Golden Horde: "In the past the Empire had belonged to the Qipchaq Turks. Defeated by the Tatars and subdued to them [in the course of time], they mixed and became related to them, the territory defeating [little by little] the nature and the character [of the conquerors]; therefore, the Mongols who had established here, married the Qipchaqs, took their country, became similar to them and [today together with them] seemed to descend from the same race. Using this way of staying for a longer time in each town and in each country, they can reach a corresponding assimilation of the [human] nature and an equalization of the original elements of the specific features from the respective territory".<sup>500</sup>

The close and long contacts between Mongols and Cumans had linguistic consequences, as the Cuman language was eventually adopted

---

<sup>498</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 145–150; idem, *Die Goldene Horde und ihre Vorhänger* (Leipzig, 1972), p. 94 ff.; V. A. Ivanov, V. A. Kriger, *Курганы кыпчакского времени на Южном Урале (XII–XIV вв.)* (Moscow, 1988), pp. 51–54, 56–57, and 70–72; D. V. Dubrovskii, "Жертвенный конь в погребальном обряде кочевников улуса Джучи," in *Тюркологический сборник, 2001, Золотая Орда и ее наследие*, eds. S. G. Kliash-tornyi (gen. ed.), V. V. Trepavlov, D. M. Iskhakov (Moscow, 2002), pp. 198–211; M. V. Vlaskin, A. I. Garmashov, Z. V. Dode, S. A. Naumenko, *Погребения знати золотоордынского времени в междуречье Дона и Сала (Материалы по изучению историко-культурного наследия Северного Кавказа, VI)* (Moscow, 2006), pp. 11–73.

<sup>499</sup> B. F. Manz, *The Rise and Rule of Tamerlan* (Cambridge, 1989), p. 163; S. Ando, *Timuridische Emire nach dem Mu'izz al-ansab. Untersuchungen zur Stammesaristokratie Zentralasiens im 14. und 15. Jahrhundert* (Berlin, 1992), pp. 67, 98, 99, 163, 184, 240, and 242; Ch. J. Halperin, "The Kipchak connection: the Ilkhans, the Mamluks and Ayn Jalut," *Bulletin of School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London* 62 (2000), no. 2, p. 239. See also *The Baburnama. Memoirs of Babur, Prince and Emperor*, ed. W. M. Thackston (Washington, D.C.–New York–Oxford, 1996), pp. 44–45 and 63.

<sup>500</sup> *Das mongolische Weltreich. Al-'Umari's Darstellung der mongolischen Reiche in seinem Werk Masalik al-abzar fi mamalik al-ansar*, ed. K. Lech (Wiesbaden, 1968), p. 141; Tiesenhausen, I, p. 235.

by their conquerors and rulers. Some of the official documents issued by the Mongol khans (*jarlyks*) in the late fourteenth century are written in Qipchaq.<sup>501</sup> Various other sources from that period testify to the use of that language in eastern Europe.<sup>502</sup> In addition, it was not an accident that one of the Tatar tribes of sixteenth-century Crimea was called Kiptchak<sup>503</sup> (Qipchaq). The great proliferation of names such as *Comania*, *Cumania*, or *terra Comanorum* in the twelfth and in the first decades of the thirteenth century, as well as the survival of the Cumans in the aftermath of the great Mongol invasion, account for the existence of such names, in identical or derivative forms, in travel notes,<sup>504</sup> chronicles,<sup>505</sup>

<sup>501</sup> A. P. Grigor'ev, "Grants of privileges in the edicts of Toqtamiš and Timur-Qutlug," in *Between the Danube and the Caucasus*, ed. G. Kara (Budapest, 1987), pp. 85–104.

<sup>502</sup> F. Balducci Pegolotti, *La pratica della mercatura*, ed. A. Evans (Cambridge, Mass., 1936), p. 21; Paschalis de Victoria, *Epistola*, in *SF*, I, p. 503; Vincentius Bellovacensis, *Speculum historiale (Bibliotheca mundi seu Speculi maioris, IV)* (Duaci, 1624; reprint Graz, 1965), p. 1294; M. Balard, *Gènes et l'Outre-mer*, II, *Actes de Kilia du notaire Antonio di Ponzó, 1360* (Paris–The Hague–New York, 1980), no. 50, p. 99; no. 56, p. 108; L. Waddingus Hibernus, *Annales Minorum seu trium ordinum a S. Francisco institutorum, VII (1323–1346)*, 3rd ed. J. M. Fonseca ab Eborā (Ad Clara Aquas/Quaracchi, 1932), p. 304.

<sup>503</sup> M. Guboglu, "Campania lui Suleiman I Magnificul în Moldova (1538) într-o cronică turco-tătărească," in *Izvoare străine pentru istoria românilor*, ed. Șt. S. Gorovei (*Români în istoria universală*, III, 3) (Iași, 1988), p. 13.

<sup>504</sup> Plano Carpini, pp. 72, 89, 95, and 126; Benedictus Polonus, *Relatio*, in *SF*, pp. 137–138; C. de Bridia Monachi, *Hystoria Tartarorum*, ed. A. Önnersfors (Berlin, 1967), pp. 19 and 21; Христианский мир и "Великая Монгольская империя". Материалы францисканской миссии 1245 года [*История Тартар" брата П. де Бридуа*], eds. and trans. S. V. Aksenov and A. G. Iurchenko (St. Petersburg, 2002), pp. 84 and 88; Marco Polo, *Il Milione*, ed. D. Olivieri (Bari, 1928), p. 245; idem, *La description du monde*, ed. L. Hambis (Paris, 1955), p. 326; Mandeville's *Travels* (see above, n. 411), I, pp. 4, 177, and 178; II, pp. 232, 374, 375, and 420; Josaphat Barbaro, *Viaggio alla Tana*, in *Барбаро и Контарини о России*, ed. E. Ch. Skrzhinska (Leningrad, 1971), p. 114.

<sup>505</sup> *Continuation de Guillaume de Tyr, de 1229 à 1261, dite du manuscrit de Rothelin*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens occidentaux*, II (Paris, 1859), p. 636; Hayton, *La flor des estoires* (see above, n. 411), pp. 124, 125, 161, 162, 215, etc.; Hetoum, *A Lytell Cronycle*. Richard Pynson's Translation (c 1520) of *La Fleur des histoires de la terre d'Orient* (c 1307), ed. G. Burger (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1988), pp. 10–11, 35, and 61; Marinus Sanutus (see above, n. 379), p. 236; *Crusaders as conquerors. The Chronicle of Morea*, ed. H. E. Lurier (New York–London, 1964), p. 97; Giovanni Villani, *Cronica*, in *Croniche di Giovanni, Matteo e Filippo Villani*, ed. D. A. Racheli, I (Triest, 1857), pp. 8, 71, and 85; A. Kern, *Der "Libellus de notitia orbis" Johannes' III. (De Galonifontibus) O. P. Erzbischofs von Sulthanyeh*, in *Archivum Fratrum Praedicatorum* 8 (1938), p. 106; Roger Bacon (see above, n. 107), pp. 360 and 366; Johannes de Thurocz (see above, n. 273), I, p. 34; Petrus de Reva, *De monarchia et sacra corona regni Hungariae*, in *Scriptores rerum Hungaricarum*, II, ed. I. G. Schwandtner (Vindobonae, 1746), p. 832.

documents,<sup>506</sup> maps,<sup>507</sup> after the creation of the Golden Horde as well, both in the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas, and in the Carpathian-Danube region. At the same time, eastern sources continued to use the name *Desht-i Qipchaq* after the twelfth century.<sup>508</sup>

Judging by all this evidence, it appears that the Cuman element remained a solid one in the southern region of the eastern Europe, without endangering the Mongol political and military supremacy. The history of the world has many other examples of conquerors adopting the language of the conquered, because the latter were either numerically or economically superior to the former. Things happened in much the same manner with the Franks and the Romanised Gauls in Gaul, with the Bulgars and the Slavs in the Balkans, with the Normans and the French in Normandy, with the Langobards and the Italians in northern

<sup>506</sup> *Bullarium franciscanum Romanorum pontificum* (Rome), I (1759), pp. 269 and 360; II (1761), p. 285; IV (1768), p. 278; V (1898), pp. 35, 150, and 211; VI (1902), pp. 427, 432–433, and 436–438 (I–IV—ed. I. H. Sbaralea; V–VII—ed. C. Eubel); *Bullarium franciscanum Romanorum pontificum. Epitome et supplementum quattuor voluminum priorum*, ed. C. Eubel (Ad Claras Aquas, 1908), pp. 27, 98, and 197; Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 220, 257, and 483; I, 2, p. 575; *Acta Romanorum pontificum ab Innocentio V ad Benedictum XI (1276–1304) e regestis Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegerunt* F. M. Delorme et A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes, Series III, V/II*) (Vatican, 1954), pp. 142, 184, and 209; *Acta Clementis PP. V (1303–1314) e regestis Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegerunt* F. M. Delorme et A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes, Series III, VII/I*) (Vatican, 1955), p. 25; *Acta Ioannis XXII (1317–1334) e regestis Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegit* A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes, Series III, VII/II*) (Vatican, 1952), pp. 21 and 94; *DRH, D, I*, nos. 10 and 11.

<sup>507</sup> Santarem, *Atlas, composé de mappemondes, de portulans et de cartes hydrographiques et historiques, depuis le VI<sup>e</sup> jusqu'au XVII<sup>e</sup> siècle, pour la plupart inédites, devant servir de preuves à l'histoire de la cosmographie et de la cartographie pendant le Moyen Age et a celle des progrès de la géographie* (Paris, 1842–1853); A. E. Nordenskiöld, *Periplus, an Essay on the Early History of Charts and Sailing-Directions* (New York, 1897); E. L. Stevenson, *Facsimiles of Portulan Charts belonging to the Hispanic Society of America* (New York, 1916); R. Almagià, *Planisferi, carte nautiche e affini dal secolo XIV al XVII esistenti nella Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana* (= *Monumenta cartographica Vaticana, I*) (Vatican, 1944); D. Bennett Durand, *The Vienna-Klosterneuburg Map Corpus of the Fifteenth Century* (Leiden, 1952); M. de La Roncière and M. Mollat du Jourdin, *Les portulans. Cartes marines du XIII<sup>e</sup> au XVII<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Fribourg/Suisse, 1984); B. Dimitrov, *България в средновековната морска картография XIV–XVII век* (Sofia, 1984); I. Dumitriu-Snagov, *Monumenta Romaniae Vaticana. Manuscripti—Documenti—Carte/Manuscripts—Documents—Maps. Catalogo della mostra Salone Sistino* (Vatican, 1996), *passim*.

<sup>508</sup> Tiesenhausen, I; II; *Материалы по истории киргизов и Киргизии*, I, ed. V. A. Romodin (Moscow, 1973); *Материалы по истории казахских ханств XV–XVIII веков*, eds. S. K. Ibragimov, N. N. Mingulov, K. A. Pishulina, V. P. Iudin (Alma-Ata, 1969); *Cronici turcești privind Țările Române. Extrase*, I, eds. M. Guboglu and M. Mehmet (Bucharest, 1966); II, ed. M. Guboglu (Bucharest, 1974); Aboul-Ghâzi Bêhâdour Khan, *Histoire*, II (see above, n. 271), *passim*.



Italy, with the Varangians and the Slavs in the Kievan Rus', and with the Normans and the Anglo-Saxons in England, to name a few. Taking into account the indubitable proofs of the massive presence of the Cumans in the steppe lands north of the Caspian and Black seas, it is safe to assume the continuity of certain Turkic groups in the region during the Golden Horde period. If so, the contacts between the Romanians and the nomadic Turks must have continued for several decades after the 1241 invasion, albeit under very different circumstances.

Some features of special significance can be pointed out in the analysis of the disparate and often vague data concerning the political events in the southern half of Moldavia and the surrounding regions. Between the tenth and the thirteenth century the last migrations of took place in eastern Europe, a part of the continent with a medieval history of migrations longer than that of the western parts by several centuries. The evolution of Romanian communities in the regions to the east from the eastern Carpathians (Fig. 2–3) took place in a context of long and complex contacts with various nomads. The presence of the nomadic horsemen considerably slowed the general development of the local society, and sometimes it even threatened its existence.

Those migrating to the steppe lands north of the Black Sea between the tenth century and the great Mongol invasion of 1236–1242 were exclusively of Turkic origin (Fig. 4). Such migrations began with the Hungarian exodus of 896 and ended with the Mongol invasion. Although they occurred in the last part of the so-called *Völkerwanderungszeit*, the late Turkic movement of people was no feeble imitation of earlier migrations. On the contrary, the movements of the Pechenegs, the Uzes and the Cumans had a force that was not inferior to that of their predecessors, the Avars and the Bulgars. Moments of weakening of their power were recorded in certain periods, especially towards the end of their stay in the plains north of the Danube and the Black Sea. Those moments were mainly determined by the scattering of their own forces, by the more active centrifugal tendencies within tribal confederacies, and by the severe blows coming from other nomad groups and from neighbouring states.

The general political background of the tenth to thirteenth centuries was considerably different from that of the previous period. Beginning with the end of the first millennium, in the eastern half of the continent there was not just one very strong state, the Byzantine Empire, but several: Bulgaria, Rus', Hungary, each of them capable of great military and political initiatives. Their actions, when added to those

of Byzantium, affected at various moments and to various degrees the ethnic and political configuration of the Carpathian-Danube area. Both the Romanian communities and the Turkic nomads in the Carpathian-Dniester area were under the conspicuous and multilateral influence of the Byzantine Empire and they depended on its military potential and firm control of the Danube. The rise of the Second Bulgarian Empire and the conquest of Constantinople by the crusaders temporarily interrupted the Byzantine influence of the Byzantine world on the Romanian lands north of the Danube, a phenomenon with long-term consequences. In the thirteenth century, the Cuman power was on the decline and Desht-i Qipchaq became the stage of new disputes, as Khwarazm, Kievan Rus' and Hungary strove to increase their own spheres of influence. Under those circumstances the Turkic domination of Romanian society weakened considerably, and the Carpathian-Danube area became the target of Hungarian expansion. Arpadian Kingdom emerged as the most active and enterprising political and military force in the area.

The equilibrium of forces in the eastern half of the continent was shattered by the great Mongol invasion, which produced great changes in the demographic and political situation of the region, as it stopped, for about one century, the Hungarian penetration across Carpathians. Also, the vigorous advance of the Mongols practically eliminated the Turkic nomads from the political map of eastern Europe. The Mongols thus put an end to the migration period in that part of the continent, and the consequences of their invasion remained manifest for a long time, both within the Carpathian-Dniester area and the lands farther to the east.



## CHAPTER THREE

### CONTRASTING WAYS OF LIFE: ROMANIAN AGRICULTURISTS AND TURKIC PASTORALISTS

One of the main features in the history of the outer-Carpathian region at the turn of the second millennium was undoubtedly the interaction between Romanians and Turkic nomads. In order to understand the complex nature of that relationship, its multifaceted character, and the large number of phenomena it involves, an method of analysis is needed, which should take into consideration the most relevant aspects of the two kinds of society. Such a method is appropriate given that most sources concerning the relations between Romanians and nomadic Turkic populations often contain only vague and equivocal information. Understanding the social structure of each community may contribute to a better understanding of the the relations between them. This is also a way to avoid broad, but ultimately meaningless generalizations despite the fact that the scarcity of sources may inevitably lead to omissions and inadvertences. Where no written sources exist to help with the interpretation, archaeological excavations have produced a large and very detailed body of information. Not only can the archaeological evidence refine the chronologies of developments, but at times and in certain cases it can even clarify the ambiguity of the written sources.

A presentation side by side of the distinctive features of the native and nomadic ways of life is best suited for their easier identification, and for a better understanding of the mutual relations between those ways of life. Such a presentation allows for a comparative treatment of the issues. If Plutarch's "parallel lives" scrutinized the destiny of some celebrities of the Greek and Roman Antiquity, the target here is to pinpoint the interactions between various ethnic groups in the outer-Carpathian region during the Middle Ages.

#### *Linguistic and Ethnic Aspects*

At the time of their contact with the late nomads, the ethnogenesis of the Romanians was a *fait accompli*. This has been a relatively long-drawn

process involving a numerous population on both sides of the Lower Danube. Most linguists believe that the Romanian vernacular separate from both late (or “vulgar”) Latin and Romance appeared between the eighth and ninth centuries, after the incorporation of a relatively strong influence of Late Common Slavic. That influence decisively marked the distinction of Romanian from other Romance languages in phonetical and morphological terms. The subsequent influence of Common Slavic or of Slavic vernaculars on Romanian is commonly interpreted as the historical equivalent of the influence of old Germanic dialects upon the western Romance languages. Linguists speak of proto-Romanian after the eighth century, and of a pre-literary phase of development of Romanian between the tenth and the fourteenth century.<sup>1</sup>

The gradual ethnic and linguistic individualization of the Romance-speaking population in the East is reflected in the consistent use in contemporary sources of the term Vlach or of its variants in reference to Romanians, first those on the right, then those on the left bank of the Danube. That the first Vlachs mentioned in the sources were those in the Balkans is a consequence of their proximity to the sources of information, especially to Constantinople. There is no serious reason to believe that such a priority can be interpreted as an indication of a Vlach migration from the southern to the northern banks of the river Danube. Were that the case, then, by the same token, one should assume a migration from the Continent to Scandinavia, given that the Germanic-speaking population on the Continent appears in written sources at a much earlier date than that in Scandinavia.

It is important to note that all names employed by outsiders to refer to Romanians referred to speakers of Romance languages, in general. That Romanians were fully aware of the Roman origins of their language and ethnic identity is repeatedly mentioned in contemporary sources, especially by such authors writing about the eleventh- to thirteenth-century Balkan Vlachs<sup>2</sup> as Kekaumenos<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> G. Ivănescu, *Istoria limbii române* (Iași, 1980), pp. 285–289, 319–322, 367, 420–422, 476–478, and 499–502; V. Arvinte, “Conceptul ‘română primitivă’ în *Istoria limbii române* de G. Ivănescu,” in idem, *Studii de istorie a limbii române* (Iași, 2006), pp. 89–95.

<sup>2</sup> R. Ortiz, *Manualetto rumeno* (Bucharest, 1936), p. 7; Gh. I. Brătianu, *Tradiția istorică despre întemeierea statelor românești*, ed. V. Râpeanu (Bucharest, 1980), pp. 62–64; A. Armbruster, *La romanité des Roumains. Histoire d'une idée* (Bucharest, 1977), pp. 25–33; V. Arvinte, *Die Rumänen. Ursprung, Volks- und Landesnahmen* (Tübingen, 1980), p. 37 ff.; A. Ruzé, *Ucrainiens et Roumains (XI<sup>e</sup>–XX<sup>e</sup> siècle). Rivalités carpatho-pontiennes* (Paris–Montréal, 1999), pp. 36–43.

<sup>3</sup> *Советы и рассказы Кекамена / Cecaumeni Consilia et narrationes*, ed. G. G. Litavrin (Moscow, 1972), pp. 268–269.

and John Kinnamos.<sup>4</sup> The same is true for the correspondence between Pope Innocent III and Ioannitsa Kaloyannes.<sup>5</sup> Romanians living north of the Danube may have been equally aware of their Roman origins, but all evidence for that is rather late.<sup>6</sup>

One of the earliest mentions of the name, which Romanians used to refer to themselves appears in an Italian description of the world,<sup>7</sup> probably drawn up in Tuscany and now in the Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana (ms. *Chigi M.V 116*, ff. 65 r<sup>o</sup>–72 r<sup>o</sup>). Among the peoples living in the region (*provincia*) of *Vngaria* (Hungary), the unknown author lists *i Rumeni e i Valacchi*, obviously without knowing that the two names referred to one and the same people.<sup>8</sup> The Italian author also wrongly described the *Rumeni* and the *Valacchi* as pagans. An approximate date for this source may be established on the basis of another reference to “emperor” *Osbeccho*, no doubt the Italianized form the name of Golden Horde khan Özbäg (1313–1342).<sup>9</sup>

Migration and expansion have been invoked to explain the distinction between the language in use among Romanians north of the

<sup>4</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome rerum ab Ioanne et Alexio Comnenis gestarum*, ed. A. Meineke (Bonn, 1836), p. 260; Jean Kinnamos, *Chronique*, trans. J. Rosenblum (Paris, 1972), p. 168; John Kinnamos, *Deeds of John and Manuel Comnenus*, ed. Ch. M. Brand (New York, 1976), p. 195.

<sup>5</sup> A. Theiner, *Vetera monumenta Slavorum meridionalium historiam illustrantia*, I (Rome, 1863), p. 11 ff.; *Die Register Innocenz' III*, 2, 2. *Pontifikatsjahr, 1199/1200*, eds. O. Hegeneder, W. Maleczek and A. A. Strnad (Rome-Vienna, 1979), pp. 485–486; *Die Register Innocenz' III*, 5, 5. *Pontifikatsjahr, 1202/1203*, ed. O. Hegeneder, with the collab. of C. Egger, K. Rudolf, and A. Sommerlechner (Vienna, 1993), pp. 224–233; I. M. Mălinaș, *Regeste și registre de la Constantinopol și Roma, din prima jumătate a secolului al XIII-lea, privitoare la primatul Vasile I și la împăratul Ioniță Caloian, din Târnovo* (Oradea, 2000), pp. 105–120.

<sup>6</sup> Ș. Papacostea, “Les Roumains et la conscience de leur romanité au Moyen-Age,” *RRH* 4 (1965), no. 1, pp. 15–24; G. Bonfante, *Studi Romeni* (Rome, 1973), p. 307 ff.; Armbruster, *La romanité*, pp. 46–49; S. Iosipescu, “«La colonia delli Romani Negri che dicono Valacchi». La romanité des Roumains dans la conscience européenne du XIV<sup>e</sup> siècle,” *RRH* 18 (1979), no. 4, pp. 673–685; C. Alzati, “La coscienza etnico-religiosa romana in età umanistica, tra echi di romanità e modelli ecclesiastici bizantino-slavi,” *Byzantinische Forschungen* 17 (1991), pp. 85–104; S. Brezeanu, *Romanitatea orientală în Evul Mediu de la cetățenii romani la nașterea medievală* (Bucharest, 1999), *passim*; L. Renzi, “Ancora sugli umanisti italiani e la lingua rumena,” *Romanische Forschungen* 112 (2000), no. 1, pp. 1–38.

<sup>7</sup> Ș. Turcuș, “Prima mărturie străină despre etnonimul român (1314),” *Cele Trei Crișuri*, IIIrd Ser., 1 (2000), nos. 7–9, pp. 1–14; V. Spinei, “Românii în cronică atribuită lui Amaretto Mannelli,” in *Națiune și europenitate. Studii istorice. In honorem magistri Camilii Mureșanu*, eds. N. Edroiu, S. Andea, Ș. Turcuș (Bucharest, 2007), pp. 19–20.

<sup>8</sup> P. G. Dalché, “Une géographie provenant du milieu des marchands toscans (début XIV<sup>e</sup> siècle),” in *Società, istituzioni, spiritualità. Studi in onore di Cinzio Violante*, I (Spoleto, 1994), p. 439.

<sup>9</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 434–435.

Danube river (“Daco-Romanian”) from the dialect spoken by Romanian communities in Macedonia calling themselves “Aromanians” (Macedo-Romanian). If so, then the same may certainly be true about the separation of two other dialects, the Megleno-Romanian in the Moglena region of Greece, and Istro-Romanian in Istria and the surrounding islands of the northern Adriatic sea.<sup>10</sup> While several dialects of Romanian exist south of the river Danube, Daco-Romanian displays a remarkable linguistic uniformity within the entire Carpathian-Danube region to the north, in spite of the political separation of Romanians into three different states throughout the Middle Ages and until the modern era. There are in fact no linguistic arguments for the idea of a separate, east-Carpathian dialect of Romanian, and even less for a language different from Daco-Romanian.<sup>11</sup> What is often presented as the Moldavian language is in fact (Daco-)Romanian, in spite of the political circumstances behind recent attempts to draw a distinction. Despite regional variation, Daco-Romanian is in fact the only Eastern Romance language still spoken north of the Danube River.

\* \* \*

As already mentioned, most tribes of nomadic horsemen entering the outer-Carpathian area at some point between the Hungarian migration to Pannonia and the great Mongol invasion of 1241–1242 were of Turkic origin and originated in central Asia.

---

<sup>10</sup> O. Densusianu, *Histoire de la langue roumaine. I—Les origines; II—Le seizième siècle*, ed. V. Rusu (Bucharest, 1997), pp. 274–325; Ivănescu, *Istoria* (see above, n. 1), pp. 285–328; I. Ghețic, *Introducere în dialectologia istorică românească* (Bucharest, 1994), p. 47 ff.; *Românii de la sud de Dunăre. Documente*, eds. S. Brezeanu, Gh. Zbucea (Bucharest, 1997), *passim*; M. Pillon, “L’exode des «Sermésiens» et les grandes migrations des Romains de Pannonie dans les Balkans durant le Haut Moyen Âge,” *Études balkaniques* (2002), no. 3, pp. 103–141; N. Saramandu, “Romanitatea sud-dunăreană (pe baza surselor istorice),” in *Spațiul lingvistic și literar românesc din perspectiva integrării europene*, eds. D. Mănuță, O. Ichim and E.-T. Olariu (Iași, 2004), pp. 337–346; idem, *Romanitatea orientală* (Bucharest 2004), *passim*.

<sup>11</sup> C. Tagliavini, *Le origini delle lingue neolatine. Introduzione alla filologia romanza* (Bologna, 1959), pp. 300–304; N. Dima, *Bessarabia and Bukovina* (New York, 1982), pp. 94–100; G. Ciorănescu, *Bessarabia, Disputed Land between East and West* (Munich, 1985), pp. 222–227; K. Bochmann, “«Moldoveneste» sau «românește»? Aspecte lingvistice, culturale și politice ale limbii de stat,” in idem, *Limba română. Istorie, variante, conflicte. O privire din afară*, eds. V. Dumbravă and I. Șarov (Chișinău, 2004), pp. 191–200.

None of the tribal confederacies created during that period were ethnically or linguistically homogenous, first and foremost because such confederacies were conglomerates of smaller groups of population, which had been forced to migrate by their neighbors. Nonetheless, a predominantly Turkic character of the Pecheneg, Oghuz / Uzes, and Qipchaq / Polovtsy / Cuman confederacies is beyond any doubt.<sup>12</sup> The old idea that Pechenegs spoke an Ugrian language<sup>13</sup> has now been entirely discredited, much like the nineteenth-century concept of Pechenegs of “Mongol race”<sup>14</sup> True, late nomadic tribal confederacies were often multinational and multilingual. In that respect, some have argued in favour of Iassians living among the Pechenegs but speaking Iranian languages.<sup>15</sup> Others believe some Cuman dynasties to be of “proto-Mongol” origin.<sup>16</sup>

At some point during the second half of the early eleventh century, after living for a long time among Turkic populations and studying their languages and traditions, Mahmud al-Kashghari produced a well-documented work about the “Turks.” According to him, only the Qırqız, the Qipchaq, the Oghuz and five other tribes spoke a pure Turkic language, while the languages of the Bulgars, Suvars and Pechenegs (*Bäcänäk*), while undoubtedly Turkic, had been altered by foreign influences. Mahmud al-Kashghari believed that initially there were very

---

<sup>12</sup> R. Grousset, *L'empire des steppes. Attila. Gengis-Khan. Tamerlan*, 4th ed. (Paris, 1982), pp. 203–219 and 238–242; P. B. Golden, *An Introduction to the History of the Turkic Peoples. Ethnogenesis and State-Formation in Medieval and Early Modern Eurasia and the Middle East* (Wiesbaden, 1992); idem, “The peoples of the south Russian steppes,” in *The Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia*, ed. D. Sinor (Cambridge, 1990), pp. 256–284; I. Vásáry, *Geschichte des frühen Innerasiens*, trans. T. Schäfer (Herne, 1999), pp. 122–129 and 167–174; C. Schönig, “A new attempt to classify the Turkic languages (1), (2),” *Turkic Languages* 1 (1997), pp. 117–133 and 262–277; L. Rásonyi, “Turcs non-islamisés en Occident (Pétchénegues, Ouzes et Qiptschaqs et leurs rapports avec les Hongrois),” in *History of the Turkic Peoples in the Pre-Islamic Period / Histoire des Peuples Turcs à l'Époque Pré-Islamique*, ed. H. R. Roemer, with the assist. of W.-E. Scharlipp (Berlin, 2000), pp. 303–331; S. G. Kliashtornyi, T. I. Sultanov, *Государства и народы Евразийских степей. Древность и средневековье*, 2nd ed. (St. Petersburg, 2004), pp. 111–138.

<sup>13</sup> C. Cihodaru, “Informații despre pecenegi din opera lui Constantin Porphyrogenetos,” *AȘUI*, Sect. III, a. *Istorie* 20 (1974), no. 1, p. 21.

<sup>14</sup> A. D. Xenopol, *Istoria românilor din Dacia Traiană*, I, 4th ed. V. Mihăilescu-Bîrliba (Bucharest, 1985), p. 411; C. Kogălniceanu, *Istoria veche a românilor* (Bucharest, 1938), p. 6.

<sup>15</sup> O. Pritsak, “The Pečenegs,” *AEMA* 1 (1975), p. 23.

<sup>16</sup> Idem, “Половці,” *Український історик* 10 (1973), nos. 1–2 (37–38), p. 117; idem, “The Polovcians and Rus’,” *AEMA* 2 (1982), pp. 368–369.



few differences between all those languages, all phonetical.<sup>17</sup> He saw the linguistic fragmentation as a natural phenomenon, given the vast area, between the Byzantine and the Chinese frontiers, in which those peoples lived. Mahmud al-Kashghari's examples support his idea of a great similarity between Qipchaq and Oghuz, both different in some respects from the language of the Pechenegs. However, to outsiders such nuances do not seem to have been obvious, as Byzantine authors believed that Pechenegs and Cumans spoke one and the same language, without any difference.<sup>18</sup>

To Ibn Khordâdhbeh, the *Ghozz*, the *Badjanâk* and the *Khifschâkh* were Turkic countries.<sup>19</sup> Most other medieval sources written in Arab explicitly regarded the Oghuz, the Pechenegs, the Qipchaq as "Turks." This is the case not only for Mahmud al-Kashghari,<sup>20</sup> but also for al-Marvazi,<sup>21</sup> Idrisi,<sup>22</sup> Shams al-Din al-Dimashqi,<sup>23</sup> Mahammad Ibn Mansur Merverrudi,<sup>24</sup> Abu'l-Fîda,<sup>25</sup> Ibn Khaldun<sup>26</sup> and Shükrüllakh

<sup>17</sup> Mahmūd al-Kāšrārī, *Compendium of the Turkic Dialects (Dīwān Luḡāt at-Turk)*, ed. R. Dankoff, in collab. with J. Kelley, I (Harvard, 1982), pp. 83–84. See also C. Brokelmann, "Mahmud al-Kašghari über die Sprachen und die Stämme der Türken im 11. Jahrh.," *Körösi Csoma-Archivum* 1 (1921), no. 1, pp. 37–38.

<sup>18</sup> Anne Comnène, *Alexiade*, II, ed. B. Leib (Paris, 1943), p. 142.

<sup>19</sup> Abu'l-Kāsim Obaidallah ibn Abdallah Ibn Khordâdhbeh, *Kitâb al-masâlik wa'l-mamâlik*, ed. J. de Goeje (Lugduni-Batavorum, 1889), pp. 22–23. See also J. Marquart, "Über das Volkstum der Komanen," in W. Bang and J. Marquart, "Osttürkische Dialektstudien," *Abhandlungen der Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Philologisch-Historische Klasse*, NF, 13 (1914), no. 1, p. 97.

<sup>20</sup> Mahmūd al-Kāšrārī, I, pp. 82, 101, 354, 362; idem [Makhmud Kashgari], *Дивану лугат ат-турк*, in *Материалы по истории Средней и Центральной Азии X–XIX вв.* (Tashkent, 1988), pp. 21–23.

<sup>21</sup> Sharaf al-Zaman Tahir Marvazi, *On China, the Turks and India*, ed. V. Minorsky (London, 1942), pp. 29–33; *Orient. Ber.*, pp. 241, 250.

<sup>22</sup> Édrisi, *Géographie*, ed. A. Jaubert (*Recueil de voyages et de mémoires*) (Paris), I (1836), p. 498; II (1840), pp. 342, 407; I. G. Kononova [ed. and trans.], *Ал-Идриси о странах и народах Восточной Европы* (Moscow, 2006), p. 122.

<sup>23</sup> Shems ed-Din Abou-'Abdallah Moh'ammed de Damas, *Manuel de la cosmographie du Moyen Âge traduit de l'arabe. "Nokhbet ed-dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr wal-bah'r"*, ed. A. F. Mehren (Copenhagen-Paris-Leipzig, 1874), p. 379.

<sup>24</sup> Makhhammad Ibn Mansur Merverrudi, *Тарих-и Мубарак-шах*, in *Материалы по истории Средней и Центральной Азии X–XIX вв.*, p. 92.

<sup>25</sup> Aboulféda, *Géographie*, II, 1, ed. T. J. Reinaud (Paris, 1848), pp. 291–292 and 296.

<sup>26</sup> Ibn Khaldûn, *The Muqaddimah. An Introduction to History*, I, ed. F. Rosenthal (New York, 1958), pp. 156, 161, 162, and 165; idem, *Discours sur l'histoire universelle. Al-Muqaddima*, trans. V. Monteil, 2nd ed., I (Paris, 1978), pp. 155, 160, and 163.

(Šükrallāh).<sup>27</sup> The Pechenegs appear as “Turks” in al-Qazwini<sup>28</sup> and al-Wardi;<sup>29</sup> the Oghuz in Ya’kubi,<sup>30</sup> al-Istakhri<sup>31</sup> and Birdzhandi;<sup>32</sup> both Pechenegs and Oghuz in Mas’udi,<sup>33</sup> Ibn Hauqal,<sup>34</sup> al-Bakvi<sup>35</sup> and Yakut al-Hamavi.<sup>36</sup> The Qipchaq / Cumans are mentioned as “Turks” in Ibn Abi l-Hadid al-Madā’ini,<sup>37</sup> but also in Jacques de Vitry.<sup>38</sup> It is important to note at this point that in Arab, Persian, and Turkish sources a “Turk” is simply another word for a nomad from the Eurasian steppe lands, the equivalent of what pedantic Byzantine authors called “Scythian.”<sup>39</sup> This may explain what otherwise well-informed authors such as Ibn

<sup>27</sup> J. de Hammer, *Sur les origines russes* (St. Petersburg, 1827), pp. 44–46; G. Hazai, “Les manuscrits, conservés à Sofia, des remaniements médiévaux de Marvāzī et ‘Auḫī,” *AOH* 7 (1957), nos. 2–3, pp. 159–164.

<sup>28</sup> *Extraits du traité de géographie de Zakaria Qazwīnī, intitulé Curiosités des pays et renseignements sur leur habitants*, in F.-B. Charmoy, *Relation de Mas’oudi et d’autres auteurs musulmans sur les anciens slaves* (in *Mémoires de l’Académie impériale des sciences de St.-Petersbourg*, VI<sup>e</sup> série, *Sciences politiques, histoire et philologie*, 2, 1834, pp. 297–408), in *Die Erforschung arabischer Quellen zur mittelalterlichen Geschichte der Slaven und Volgabulgaren*, ed. H. Haarmann (Hamburg, 1976), p. 338.

<sup>29</sup> *Extrait de l’ouvrage de Sērādj-u’d-dīn ‘Omar (...) Ibn-ul-Wardī*, in Charmoy, *Relation*, p. 349.

<sup>30</sup> Ya’kubi, *Les Pays*, ed. G. Wiet (Cairo, 1937), p. 113.

<sup>31</sup> Al-Istakhri, *Китаб масалик ал-мамалик*, in *Материалы по истории киргизов и Киргизии*, I, ed. V. A. Romodin (Moscow, 1973), pp. 16 and 25.

<sup>32</sup> Birdzhandi, *Аджа’иб ал-булдан*, in *Материалы по истории киргизов и Киргизии*, I, p. 171.

<sup>33</sup> Maçoudi, *Les Prairies d’or*, eds. C. Barbier de Meynard and P. de Courteille, I (Paris, 1861), pp. 59, 262, and 288; Al-Mas’ūdī, *Bis zu den Grenzen der Erde. Auszüge aus dem “Buch der Goldwäschen,”* ed. G. Rotter (Tübingen-Basel, 1978), pp. 35, 53, and 91.

<sup>34</sup> Ibn Hauqal, *Configuration de la Terre (Kitāb surat al-ard)*, II, eds. J. H. Kramers and G. Wiet (Beirut-Paris, 1964), pp. 379 and 387.

<sup>35</sup> Abd ar-Rashid al-Bakvi, *Китаб талхис ал-асар ва ‘аджа’иб ал-малик ал-каххар (“Сокращение [книги о] «Памятникаха и чудеса царя могучело»”)*, ed. Z. M. Buniatov (Moscow, 1971), pp. 102–103.

<sup>36</sup> Yakut al-Khamavi, *Му’джем ал-булдан*, in *Материалы по истории Средней и Центральной Азии X–XIX вв.* (see above, n. 20), p. 77.

<sup>37</sup> *Les invasions mongoles en Orient vues par un savant médiéval arabe Ibn Abil-Hadid al-Madā’ini (1190–1258 ʔ.C.). Extrait du Sharh Nahj al-balāgha*, ed. M. Djabli (Paris, 1995), p. 21.

<sup>38</sup> Iacobi a Vitriaco *Libri duo, quorum prior Orientalis sive Hierosolymitanae, alter Occidentalis historiae nomine inscribitur* (Duaci, 1597), p. 37; idem (Jacques de Vitry), *Historia Orientalis*, ed. C. Buridant (Paris, 1986), p. 74; idem, *Histoire orientale*, trans. M.-G. Grossel (Paris, 2005), pp. 105–106.

<sup>39</sup> C. M. Frähn, *Ibn-Fozlan’s und anderer araber Berichte über die Russen älterer Zeit* (St. Petersburg, 1823), p. 41 with n. 5.

Rusta,<sup>40</sup> Mas'udi,<sup>41</sup> the unknown authors of the late tenth-century Persian geography *Hudūd al-'Ālam*,<sup>42</sup> Gardizi,<sup>43</sup> al-Marvazi,<sup>44</sup> Abu'l-Fida,<sup>45</sup> Shūkrūllakh,<sup>46</sup> Muhammad Kātib (Mohammed the Writer),<sup>47</sup> and many others treated the Hungarians as "Turks." In doing so, they were certainly not alone: Byzantine authors, especially Emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus, consistently called the Hungarians "Turks." "Turks" were also the Mongols of Ibn Battuta.<sup>48</sup>

The ethnic names of the Pecheneg, Uzes (Oghuz), and Cumans (Qipchak), as well as a great number of names of chieftains mentioned in the sources testify to the Turkic character of their languages. Pecheneg names such as Boga, Temir and Kūchūg appear with other Turkic peoples as well. The Pechenegs have been associated with runes and runic inscriptions found in the Maiaki and Sarkel (Belaia Vezha) strongholds, as well as on items from the the Sânnicolau Mare (Nagyszentmiklós) (Timiș county, Romania) hoard.<sup>49</sup> The population of the Saltovo-Maiaki culture was undoubtedly multi-ethnic, with Khazars, Bulgars, Alans, and Pechenegs living side by side. However, the presence of the Pechenegs is not documented in any of the urban centers of the Khazar Khaganate and, consequently, the runes from Maiaki and Sarkel are hardly Pecheneg. As for the 18 to 20 runes on the vessels found in the Sânnicolau Mare hoard, which has recently been re-dated much earlier and associated with the Avars,<sup>50</sup> it is important

<sup>40</sup> Ibn-Dasta [Ibn-Rusta], *Известия о хозарахъ, буртасахъ, болгаряхъ, мадьярахъ, славянах и руссахъ*, ed. D. A. Khvolson (St. Petersburg, 1869), p. 25; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 67.

<sup>41</sup> Al-Mas'ūdī, p. 53.

<sup>42</sup> *Hudūd al-'Ālam*. "The Regions of the World". *A Persian Geography 372 a.H.–982 a.D.*, ed. V. Minorsky (London, 1937), p. 101; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 210.

<sup>43</sup> A. P. Martínez (trans.), "Gardizi's two chapters on the Turks," *AEMA* 2 (1982), p. 159; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 172. See also A. Decei, "Asupra unui pasagiu din geograful persan Gardizi (a. 1050)," in *Frașilor Alexandru și Ion I. Lăpedatu la împlinirea vârstei de 60 ani* (Bucharest, 1936), pp. 881 and 883.

<sup>44</sup> Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 35; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 252.

<sup>45</sup> Aboulfēda (see above, n. 25), II, 1, p. 324.

<sup>46</sup> Hammer, *Sur les origines russes* (see above, n. 27), p. 47; I. Zimonyi, *Muslimische Quellen über die Ungarn vor der Landnahme. Das ungarische Kapitel der Gāhānī-Tradition* trans. T. Schäfer (Herne, 2006), p. 47.

<sup>47</sup> Hammer, *Sur les origines russes*, p. 64; Zimonyi, *Muslimische Quellen*, p. 49.

<sup>48</sup> Ibn Batoutah, *Voyages*, eds. C. Defrémery and B. R. Sanguinetti, II (Paris, 1949), *passim*.

<sup>49</sup> A. M. Shcherbak, "Знаки на керамике и кирпичих из Саркела-Белой Вежи," in *MLA*, 75 (Moscow-Leningrad, 1959), pp. 378–380.

<sup>50</sup> F. Daim, "Avars and Avar archaeology. An introduction," in *Regna and Gentes. The Relationship between Late Antique and Early Medieval Peoples and Kingdoms in the Transformation of*

to note that only six or seven of them have analogies among known Turkic runes. If indeed the runes in question render a short text in the Pecheneg language, than whoever carved them certainly had a poor knowledge of that or of any other related, Turkic language.<sup>51</sup> The old Turkic runes, first attested in southern Siberia and central Asia during the eighth and ninth centuries, was in use with several ethnic groups, some of which eventually migrated to the southern regions of eastern Europe.<sup>52</sup> The use of Turkic runes is attested among Khazars,<sup>53</sup> Bulgars<sup>54</sup> and Avars.<sup>55</sup> Besides runes, the Turkic tribes within the territories to the east from the Ural Mountains used other scripts borrowed from neighbouring populations in central Asia.<sup>56</sup>

---

*the Roman World*, eds. H.-W. Goetz, J. Jarnut and W. Pohl, with the collab. of S. Kaschke (Leiden-Boston, 2003), pp. 515–516 and 568–570 with figs. 42–44; O. Gamber, “Der Goldschatz von Nagyszentmiklós im Wiener Kunsthistorischen Museum,” *Jahrbuch des Kunsthistorischen Museums Wien* 2 (2001), pp. 73–84; C. Bálint, *A nagyszentmiklósi kincs. Régészeti tanulmányok* (Budapest, 2004).

<sup>51</sup> N. Diyarbekirli, “Pecenek hazinesi ve Türk sanatının çeşitli kitalarda gelişen ortak nitelikleri,” *Tarih enstitüsü dergisi*, Istanbul, 4–5 (1973–1974), pp. 395–428; Shcherbak, “Знаки,” pp. 386–388. See also J. Németh, *Die Inschriften des Schatzes von Nagy-Szent-Miklós* (Budapest, 1932), pp. 17–36; G. Vékony, “Spätvölkerwanderungszeitliche Kerbinschriften im Karpatenbecken,” *ActaArchHung* 39 (1987), nos. 3–4, pp. 211–233; R. Göbl, A. Róna-Tas, *Die Inschriften des Schatzes von Nagy-Szentmiklós. Eine paläographische Dokumentation* (Vienna, 1995), p. 25 ff.; A. Róna-Tas, “The inscriptions of the Nagyszentmiklós treasure,” in *The Gold of the Avars. The Nagyszentmiklós Treasure*, gen. ed. T. Kovács, ed. E. Garam (Budapest, 2002), pp. 121–127; P. Georgiev, “Новое направление в чтении рунических текстов клада из Надь-сент-Миклоша,” *Byzantinoslavica* 62 (2004), pp. 289–298.

<sup>52</sup> G. Clauson, “The origin of the Turkish “runic” alphabet,” *Acta Orientalia ediderunt Societates Orientales Danica Norvegica Suecica* 32 (1970), pp. 51–76; E. Tryjarski, “Runes and runelike scripts of Eurasian area,” *Archivum Ottomanicum* 20 (2002), pp. 5–80; 21 (2003), pp. 5–90; Kliashtornyi, Sultanov, *Государства* (see above, n. 12), pp. 170–174; D. D. Vasil’ev, “The Eurasian areal aspects of Old Turkic written culture,” *АОН* 58 (2005), no. 4, pp. 323–330; I. L. Kyzlasov, “Особенности тюркской рунологии,” in *Центральная Азия. Источники, история, культура* (Moscow, 2005), pp. 427–449.

<sup>53</sup> V. Je. Flörova, *Граффити Хазарии* (Moscow, 1997), p. 23 ff.; eadem (V. E. Flerova), “Сюжеты хазарской графики,” in *Хазары / Khazars (Евреи и славяне / Jews and Slavs*, 16), eds. V. Petrukhin, W. Moskovich, A. Fedorchuk, A. Kulik, D. Sharira (Moscow–Jerusalem, 2005), pp. 153–172; S. G. Kliashtornyi, “Хазарские заметки,” *Тюркологический сборник* (2003–2004) [2005], pp. 95–102.

<sup>54</sup> I. Kyzlasov, “Руническая эпиграфика древних болгар,” *Татар археологиясе*, Kazan (2000), nos. 1–2 (6–7), pp. 5–18.

<sup>55</sup> W. Pohl, *Die Awaren. Ein Steppenvolk in Mitteleuropa 567–822 n. Chr.* (Munich, 1988), pp. 182, 224–225, and 399.

<sup>56</sup> G. Clauson, “The diffusion of writing in the Altaic world,” in *Aspects of Altaic Civilization*, ed. D. Sinor (Westport, Connecticut, 1963), pp. 139–144; idem, *Studies in Turkic and Mongolic Linguistics*, 2nd ed. (London–New York, 2002), *passim*; T. Tekin, M. Ölmez, *Türk dilleri / Les langues turques* (Ankara, 1995), p. 20 ff.; A. Róna-Tas,

According to the Rus' learned tradition of the early twelfth century, the Pechenegs, the Torki (Uzes), and the Cumans (Polovtsy) were all related to each other, as successors of the Biblical sons of Ishmael.<sup>57</sup> On the other hand, Seljuq legends also reflect the awareness of a common descent of the Oghuz and the Cumans.<sup>58</sup> The Slavs called the Oghuz *Torki* because they regarded them as of Turkic origin.<sup>59</sup>

According to N. A. Baskakov, most groups of nomads moving into the Carpathian-Danube region between the tenth and the thirteenth centuries spoke Turkic-Western Hun languages of the Oghuz and Qipchaq groups. The former includes such language subgroups as Oghuz-Turkman, Oghuz-Bulgarian, and Oghuz-Seljuk. The language of the tenth- to eleventh-century Oghuz belonged to the Oghuz-Turkman subgroup. The language of the Pechenegs, of the later Oghuz and of the Gagauz are all of the Oghuz-Bulgarian sub-group. The oldest language in the Qipchaq subgroup is Qipchaq (Cuman, Polovtsy).<sup>60</sup>

Cuman is the best-known old Turkic language, largely due to the *Codex Comanicus* a collection of Latin-Persian-Cuman texts preserved in a manuscript of the San Marco (Marciana) Library in Venice.<sup>61</sup> The manuscript includes a Latin-Persian-Cuman glossary, as well as a collection of prayers, sermons, sacred stanzas and other religious texts written in the Cuman language. According to the most recent studies, the earliest part of the collection must be dated between and attributed to a Genoese merchant familiar with, and involved in the Black Sea trade network. The later parts of the manuscript were written by a monk in eastern or central Germany at some point between 1330 and 1350.<sup>62</sup> The idea that some Cuman entries in the glossary may be of

---

“Turkic writing systems,” in *The Turkic Languages*, eds. L. Johanson and É. Á. Csató (London–New York, 1998), pp. 126–137.

<sup>57</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 152–153; *Nik.let.*, I, p. 126.

<sup>58</sup> Michel le Syrien, *Chronique*, III, ed. J.-B. Chabot (Paris, 1905), p. 155; Aboul-Ghâzi Bêhâdour Khan, *Histoire des Mongols et des Tatares*, II, ed. P. I. Desmaisons (St. Petersburg, 1874), p. 19.

<sup>59</sup> *PVL*, I; *Ip.let.*; *Let.Voskr.*; *Nik.let.*, I, *passim*.

<sup>60</sup> N. A. Baskakov, *Тюркские языки* (Moscow, 1960), pp. 103–148. See also K. H. Menges, *The Turkic Languages and Peoples. An Introduction to Turkic Studies* (Wiesbaden, 1968), p. 60.

<sup>61</sup> G. Kuun, *Codex Cumanicus bibliothecae ad templum divi Marci Venetiarum* (Budapest, 1880); *Codex Cumanicus, Cod. Marc. Lat. DXLIX in Faksimile*, ed. K. Grønbech (Copenhagen, 1936); V. Drimba, *Codex comanicus* (Bucharest, 2000).

<sup>62</sup> D. Drüll, *Der Codex Cumanicus: Entstehung und Bedeutung* (Stuttgart, 1979), pp. 24–43. On details concerning Cumanian language, see G. Golubovich, *Bibliotheca bibliografica della Terra Santa e dell'Oriente Francese*, III (*dal 1300 al 1332*) (Quaracchi /

Romanian origin is not supported by any piece of evidence. Instead, scholars have identified Greek, East Slavic, Mongolian, Arab, Persian, Hebrew loans, as well as a strong influence on the Cuman language of the specialized vocabulary of Christianity.<sup>63</sup> Fragments of the Cuman language have also been preserved in some texts originating from the sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Armenian communities in the towns of Kam'ianets Podil's'kyi (Kamenets-Podolsk) and L'viv (Lwów), which were written in the Armenian alphabet.<sup>64</sup>

---

Florence, 1919), pp. 1–28; Gy. Györffy, “A kipcaki kun társadalom a Codex Cumanicus alapján,” in idem, *A magyarság keleti elemei* (Budapest, 1990), pp. 242–273; A. v. Gabain, “Die Sprache des Codex Cumanicus,” in *Philologiae Turcicae fundamenta*, I, eds. J. Deny, K. Grønbech, H. Scheel, Z. V. Togan (Wiesbaden, 1959), pp. 46–73; O. Pritsak, “Das Kiptschakische,” in ibidem, pp. 74–87; V. Drimba, *Syntaxe comane* (Bucharest-Leiden, 1973); idem, “Miscellanea Cumanica (I–IV),” *Revue Roumaine de Linguistique* 15 (1970), no. 5, pp. 455–459; no. 6, pp. 579–584; 16 (1971), no. 4, pp. 275–286; 17 (1972), no. 1, pp. 3–21; M. Mollova, “Nouveaux côtés dévoilés du *Codex Cumanicus*,” *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 83 (1993), pp. 117–148; A. Coman, *Rumänen, Kumanen, Osmanen. Zur Geschichte und Sprachgeschichte Südosteuropas vom IX.–XX. Jhd.* (Fulda-Hermannstadt, 1998), pp. 421–426 and 471–476; V. Stoianov, “Codex Cumanicus: история изучения,” *Материалы по археологии, истории и этнографии Таврии* 10 (2003), pp. 481–505; idem (V. Stoianow), “Der *Codex Cumanicus* in der Forschungsgeschichte,” in *Il codice Cumanico e il suo mondo*, eds. F. Schmieder and P. Schreiner (Rome, 2005), pp. 3–44; F. Schmieder, “The world of the *Codex Cumanicus*, the *Codex Cumanicus* in its world,” in ibidem, pp. XIII–XXXI; eadem, “Die Welt des *Codex Cumanicus*. Aussereuropäische Kontexte lateinisch-christlicher Sprachgrenzüberwindungen,” in *Grenze und Grenzüberschreitung im Mittelalter*, eds. U. Kniefelkamp and K. Bosselmann-Cyran (Berlin, 2007), pp. 285–294. For an ample survey of the literature pertaining to the re-evaluation of the *Codex Cumanicus*, see V. Stoianov, *Bulgaro-Turcica*, 3, *История на изучаването на Codex Cumanicus. Неславянска, кумано-печенежка антропонимика в българските земи през XV век* (Sofia, 2000), pp. 30–151.

<sup>63</sup> P. B. Golden, “The Codex Cumanicus,” in *Central Asiatic Monuments*, ed. H. B. Paksoy (Istanbul, 1992), pp. 57–62.

<sup>64</sup> *Документы на половецком языке XVI в. (Судебные акты Каменец-Подольской армянской общины)*, ed. and trans. T. I. Grunin, red. E. V. Sevortian (Moscow, 1967); E. Tryjarski, *Dictionnaire arméno-kiptchak d'après trois manuscrits des collections viennoises* (Warsaw), I, 1 (1968); I, 2 (1968); I, 3 (1969); I, 4 (1972); idem, “Die armeno-kiptschakische Sprache und Literatur—ein Beispiel für kulturellen Synkretismus,” *Ural-Altäische Jahrbücher*, NF, 5 (1985), pp. 209–224; E. Schütz, “Armeno-Kipchak texts from Lvov (A.D. 1618),” *АОН* 15 (1962), nos. 1–3, pp. 291–309; idem, “Notes on the Armeno-Kipčak script and its historical background,” in *Aspects of Altaic Civilization* (see above, n. 56), pp. 145–154; idem, “Armeno-kiptschakisch und die Krim,” in *Hungaro-Turcica. Studies in Honour of Julius Németh*, ed. Gy. Káldy-Nagy (Budapest, 1976), pp. 185–205; idem, “An Armeno-Kipchak document of 1640 from Lvov and its background in Armenia and in the diaspora,” in *Between the Danube and the Caucasus*, ed. G. Kara (Budapest, 1987), pp. 247–330; idem, “Armeno-kiptschakische Ehekontrakte und Testamente aus dem XVI. Jahrhundert,” in idem, *Armeno-Turcica. Selected Studies* (Bloomington, Indiana, 1998), pp. 265–300; S. Vásáry, “Armeno-Kipchak parts from the Kamenets Chronicle,” *АОН* 22 (1969), no. 2, pp. 139–189; Ya. R. Dachkevych, “Who are Armeno-Kipchaks?”

Turkic nomadic societies were typically multi-ethnic, first and foremost because conquered groups were forcefully incorporated into the political and military structures of the conquering group. Equally important in that respect were alliances between different groups against common enemies.<sup>65</sup> Such ephemeral associations are mentioned in the sources for the Hungarians and the Kabars; the Khazars and the Uzes; the Pechenegs and the Uzes; the Pechenegs and the Hungarians; the Pechenegs, the Uzes and the Berendei; the Cumans and the Berladniks; the Cumans and the Brodniks; the Cumans and the Pechenegs; the Cumans and the Alans and the Mongols and the Cumans.

### *Demographic Aspects*

The objective assessment of the relationship between the Romanians and the nomads is still unconvincing, unless we establish or at least estimate the numerical relationship between these populations. From the very beginning, it is necessary to specify that the narrative sources provide little reliable information in this respect: they tend to underestimate the Romanian element and exaggerate the number of Turkic nomads. That those sources would reflect the ethno-demographic realities in such a way is hardly surprising, given that not only in the Middle Ages, but at all times in history it is the spectacular—usually violent—events and their protagonists that attract particular attention. Peaceful events and historical characters tend to be ignored, irrespective of their contribution to the society in which they happen to live. This serves to explain the paucity of information referring to the Romanian population in the tenth to thirteenth centuries and the incomparably more substantial sources we have for the nomads, as well as the more generous assessments of their number.

A particularly relevant source for the demographic weight of the natives in southwestern Moldavia and north-eastern Wallachia is the aforementioned bull of November 14, 1234, according to which Hungarians and Germans in the Catholic Cuman diocese had adopted the

---

(On the ethnical substrate of the Armenian colonies in the Ukraine),” *Revue des études arméniennes*, NS, 16 (1982), pp. 357–416.

<sup>65</sup> G. Vernadsky, “The Eurasian nomads and their impact on medieval Europe,” *Studi medievali*, 3rd Ser., 4 (1963), pp. 415–419.

religion of the Romanians.<sup>66</sup> This could only have been possible if within a region under direct Hungarian control, the Romanians were not only numerous, but also well organized. This is not a unique episode in the confessional history of the east-Carpathian region. The conversion of Catholics to Orthodoxy, without any pressure from the authorities, is mentioned in the late sixteenth and early seventeenth century.<sup>67</sup> By that time, the political circumstances have considerably changed.

Some estimate that an ideal ratio of farmers to nomads within one and the same territory is 10 to 1.<sup>68</sup> This is commonly explained in terms of agricultural fields supporting a much larger population than the equivalent area used as pasture land. It is not possible at this moment to evaluate the demographic ratio of Romanians to nomads. However, judging from the archaeological evidence, it is not too far-fetched to advance the 10 to 1 ratio for the tenth to twelfth centuries. The Romanian population in Moldavia substantially decreased during the thirteenth, possibly beginning in the late twelfth century, and increased again in the fourteenth century.

There is currently no way to assess the relative population growth of Romanians and nomads other than by archaeological means. However, the demographic interpretation of the archaeological evidence is only at the beginning. There is nevertheless a sufficient amount of data for attempting to advance some preliminary estimates.

The local population in tenth- to twelfth-century Moldavia is known from excavations of sites attributed to the so-called Dridu (or Carpathian-Danube) and Răducăneni cultures. It was imperative to abandon these names as soon as a general consensus (not yet possible, apparently) would be reached in regard to some of the main aspects about the genesis and evolution of these cultures. Since the basic features of the Dridu and the Răducăneni cultures, as well as those of the thirteenth-century settlements, are essentially the same, they can be presented together.

---

<sup>66</sup> O. Raynald, *Annales ecclesiastici ab anno MCXCVIII. ubi desinit cardinalis Baronius*, ed. J. D. Mansi, II (Lucae, 1747), pp. 111–112; *Acta Honorii III (1216–1227) et Gregorii IX (1227–1241) e registris Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegit A. L. Tăutu (Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes, Series III, III)* (Vatican, 1950), pp. 284–285.

<sup>67</sup> *Călători*, IV, pp. 43–44 (B. Quirini) and 187 (Șt. Balthazar).

<sup>68</sup> F. Ratzel, *Politische Geographie*, 3rd ed. E. Oberhummer (Munich–Berlin, 1923), p. 52.



The population of the Dridu culture appears to have been multi-ethnic, with Romanians, Bulgarian Slavs, and Turks living side by side, as indicated by large cemeteries excavated in the Romanian Plain. For example, some of the burial assemblages found in southern Wallachia on such sites as Izvoru (Giurgiu county),<sup>69</sup> Păuleasa (Teleorman county),<sup>70</sup> Platonești (Ialomița county),<sup>71</sup> and Sultana (Călărași county),<sup>72</sup> have numerous analogies in the northern Balkans, as well as in the Lower Volga region. To some, this appears as sufficient for a blanket attribution of such assemblages to the Bulgars.<sup>73</sup>

Settlement sites dated to the same period have also been excavated in southern and central Moldavia at Gara Banca,<sup>74</sup> Bârlad-“Prodana,”<sup>75</sup> Bârlălești,<sup>76</sup> Dodești,<sup>77</sup> Epureni<sup>78</sup> (Vaslui county), Brășăuți<sup>79</sup> (Neamț county), Câmpineanca<sup>80</sup> (Vrancea county), Hlincea-Iași<sup>81</sup> Șorogari<sup>82</sup>

<sup>69</sup> B. Mitrea, “Das Gräberfeld aus dem VIII. Jahrhundert von Izvoru, jud. Giurgiu (I),” *Dacia*, NS, 33 (1989), nos. 1–2, pp. 145–219.

<sup>70</sup> M. Comșa and Gh. Bichir, “Date preliminare cu privire la necropola de la Păuleasa,” *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 2, pp. 317–320; U. Fiedler, *Studien zu Gräberfeldern des 6. bis 9. Jahrhunderts an der unteren Donau*, 2 (Bonn, 1992), pp. 418–420.

<sup>71</sup> Gh. Matei, “Platonești, jud. Ialomița,” in *Cronica cercetărilor arheologice. Campania 1997. A XXXII-a Sesiune națională de rapoarte arheologice, Călărași, 20–24 mai 1998* ([Bucharest,] 1998), pp. 57–58; Gh. Matei, R. Coman, “Platonești, jud. Ialomița,” in *Cronica cercetărilor arheologice. Campania 1998. A XXXIII-a Sesiune națională de rapoarte arheologice, Vaslui, 30 iunie–4 iulie 1999* ([Bucharest,] 1999), pp. 86–87; Gh. Matei, R. Coman, “Platonești, com. Săveni, jud. Ialomița,” in *Cronica cercetărilor arheologice din România. Campania 2002. A XXXVII-a Sesiune națională de rapoarte arheologice, Covasna, 2–6 iunie 2003* ([Bucharest,] 2003), p. 239.

<sup>72</sup> B. Mitrea, “La nécropole birituelle de Sultana. Résultats et problèmes,” *Dacia*, NS, 32 (1988), pp. 91–139.

<sup>73</sup> Fiedler, *Studien*, 1 (Bonn, 1992), pp. 332–342. See also D. Dimitrov, *Правългарите по Северното и Западното Черноморие* (Varna, 1987), pp. 207–219.

<sup>74</sup> R. Maxim-Alaiba, “Considerații preliminare cu privire la viața spirituală a locuitorilor așezării de la Gara Banca-Vaslui din secolele IX–X,” *AM* 12 (1988), pp. 253–261.

<sup>75</sup> Teodor, *Teritoriul*, p. 101 and figs. 24/3; 62/9–10; Coman, *Statornicie*, p. 71.

<sup>76</sup> Spinei, *Moldova*, pp. 84, 90, 96, and 103.

<sup>77</sup> D. Gh. Teodor, *Continuitatea populației autohtone la est de Carpați. Așezările din secolele VI–XI e.n. de la Dodești-Vaslui* (Iași, 1984), pp. 107–128.

<sup>78</sup> Idem, “Așezarea feudală timpurie de la Epureni-Vaslui,” *AM* 11 (1987), pp. 141–167.

<sup>79</sup> V. Spinei and D. Monah, “Așezarea prefeudală de la Brășăuți,” *MA* 2 (1970), pp. 371–387.

<sup>80</sup> I. Mitrea, “Cercetări arheologice privind secolele IV–XI în județul Vrancea,” *Studii și comunicări*, Focșani, 1 (1978), pp. 53–59.

<sup>81</sup> M. Petrescu-Dîmbovița et al., “Șantierul arheologic Hlincea-Iași,” *SCIV* 6 (1955), nos. 3–4, pp. 687–693.

<sup>82</sup> Zaharia, etc., *Așezări*, pp. 219–220.

(Iași county), Oituz,<sup>83</sup> Oncești<sup>84</sup> (Bacău county), Șendreni,<sup>85</sup> Vânători<sup>86</sup> (Galați county) (Romania), Calfa (Anenii Noi county),<sup>87</sup> Hansca<sup>88</sup> (Ialoveni county), Etulia<sup>89</sup> (the Gagauz Autonomous Territorial Unit), Giurgiulești<sup>90</sup> (Cahul county) (Republic of Moldova), Bogatoc,<sup>91</sup> Safian,<sup>92</sup> Suvorovo<sup>93</sup> (Ismail district), Șaba<sup>94</sup> (Bilhorod Dnistrovs'kyi

<sup>83</sup> D. Gh. Teodor, C. Buzdugan, and I. Mitrea, "Descoperirile arheologice de la Oituz (județul Bacău)," *Carpica* 2 (1969), pp. 309–324.

<sup>84</sup> I. Mitrea, "Așezarea prefeudală de la Oncești (jud. Bacău)," *Carpica* 4 (1971), pp. 271–286.

<sup>85</sup> N. Gostar, "Săpăturile și sondajele de la Șendreni-Barboși (r. Galați)," *MCA* 8 (1962), pp. 506–507; D. Gh. Teodor, "Descoperirile arheologice de la Șendreni-Galați," *Danubius* 1 (1967), pp. 129–135.

<sup>86</sup> M. Brudiu, "Cercetări arheologice de la Vânători (jud. Galați)," *MCA* (1983), pp. 407–413.

<sup>87</sup> G. F. Chebotarenko, *Калфа-городище VIII–X вв. на Днестре* (Chișinău, 1973).

<sup>88</sup> I. G. Hâncu, "Археологические исследования на поселении Лимбарь-Кэпрэрия X–XII вв. в 1968–1969 гг.," in *AIM v 1968–1969 gg* (1972), pp. 159–178; idem, "Rezultaty arheologicheskikh raspekov selișca X–XIV vv. u s. Ханска в 1970–1971 гг.," in *AIM v 1970–1971 gg* (1973), pp. 177–195; idem, "Раскопки на поселении X–XIV вв. у села Ханска," in *AIM (1972 g)* (1974), pp. 159–171; idem, "Раскопки на селище Ханска X–XIV вв.," in *AIM (1973 g)* (1974), pp. 175–187; G. I. Postică, "Раскопки поселения Лимбарь-Кэпрэрия," in *AO 1981 G* (1983), pp. 400–401; idem, "Археологические исследования на средневековом поселении Ханска," in *AIM v 1981 g* (1985), pp. 162–167; idem, *Românii din codrii Moldovei în evul mediu timpuriu (Studiu arheologic pe baza ceramicii din așezarea Hansca)* (Chișinău, 1994).

<sup>89</sup> G. F. Chebotarenko, "Поселение Этулия VI," in *AIM (1972 g)* (1974), pp. 173–182; G. F. Chebotarenko, T. A. Shcherbakova, "Раскопки поселения у с. Этулия," in *AIM (1973 g)* (1974), pp. 140–155.

<sup>90</sup> Gh. Postică, I. Hâncu, I. Tentiuc, "Așezarea din secolele IX–XI de la Giurgiulești și unele considerații privind siturile medievale timpurii din zona lacurilor dunărene," in *Studia in honorem Ion Nicolăiță. Omagiu cu prilejul împlinirii a 60 de ani*, eds. T. Arnăuț, A. Zănoși, S. Matveev (Chișinău, 1999), pp. 280–298.

<sup>91</sup> A. T. Smilenko, A. A. Kozlovskii, "Поселения у сел Шабо и Богатое Одесской области," in *Днестро-Дунайское междуречье в I-начале II тыс. н.э.* (Kiev, 1987), pp. 112–121; V. I. Kozlov, "Богатое—поселение Первого болгарского царства на левобережье Дуная," *Добруджа* 14–16 (1997–1999), pp. 98–130.

<sup>92</sup> A. A. Kravchenko, "Поселение IX–X вв. н.э. у села Сафьяны," *MASP* 7 (1971), pp. 71–77; V. I. Kozlov, A. E. Maliukevich, L. V. Subbotin, "Раскопки поселения IX–X вв. Сафьяны близ Дуная," in *Старожитності степового Причорномор'я і Криму* (Zarogizhzhia, 2001), pp. 227–239.

<sup>93</sup> A. T. Smilenko, "Раскопки поселения Суворово I," in *AO 1981 G* (1983), p. 320.

<sup>94</sup> V. I. Kozlov, "Охранные работы на поселении VIII-начала X в. у с. Шабо," in *Северное Причерноморье (Материалы по археологии)* (Kiev, 1984), pp. 138–144; A. T. Smilenko, V. I. Kozlov, "Славянское поселение конца I тысячелетия н.э. у с. Шабо на Днестровском лимане," in *Археологические исследования средневековых памятников в Днестровско-Прутском междуречье*, eds. P. P. Bârnea (gen. ed.), E. N. Abyzova, V. I. Grosu, N. P. Tel'nov, T. A. Shcherbakova (Kishinev, 1985), pp. 119–136; Smilenko, Kozlovskii, "Поселения у сел Шабо," p. 98 ff.

district) (Odessa region) (Ukraine). Later settlements attributed to the Răducăneni culture have also been excavated in Brădicești,<sup>95</sup> Hlincea-Iași,<sup>96</sup> Răducăneni<sup>97</sup> (Iași county), Dănești,<sup>98</sup> Oltenești<sup>99</sup> (Vaslui county) (Romania), Hansca,<sup>100</sup> Molești<sup>101</sup> (Ialoveni county), Durlești<sup>102</sup> (in Chișinău) (Republic of Moldova), while twelfth- and thirteenth-century villages have been unearthed in Dobrovăț,<sup>103</sup> Hlincea-Iași,<sup>104</sup> and Iași-“Nicolina”<sup>105</sup> (Iași county) (Romania). I shall return shortly to the burial assemblages dated between the tenth and the thirteenth century and attributed to the local population.

According to a recent study, there are 107 tenth- to eleventh-century sites in southern, and 87 in central Bessarabia. Forty-eight of those 87 sites (56 percent) also produced evidence of an eighth to ninth-century occupation, an indication of continuity.<sup>106</sup> The number of known sites within the same region substantially diminishes for the twelfth and thirteenth centuries by as much as 40 percent. The greatest decrease occurs in southern Bessarabia, where so far only three settlements have been found, which could be dated between the twelfth and the

<sup>95</sup> Excavations carried by Constantin Iconomu.

<sup>96</sup> M. Petrescu-Dîmbovița et al., “Șantierul Hlincea-Iași,” *SCIV* 4 (1953), nos. 1–2, pp. 316–320; idem, “Șantierul arheologic Hlincea-Iași,” *SCIV* 5 (1954), nos. 1–2, pp. 240–242.

<sup>97</sup> D. Gh. Teodor, “Săpăturile arheologice de la Răducăneni,” *MCA* 8 (1962), pp. 723–731.

<sup>98</sup> M. Petrescu-Dîmbovița and Em. Zaharia, “Sondajul arheologic de la Dănești,” *MCA*, 8 (1962), p. 56; V. Spinci, “Aspecte economice și sociale ale evoluției comunităților locale din spațiul est-carpatic în secolele X–XIII,” *Hierarus. Anuar '78*, Botoșani, 1 (1980), fig. 4.

<sup>99</sup> V. Spinci, “Săpăturile de salvare de la Oltenești,” *Carpica* 5 (1972), pp. 133–141.

<sup>100</sup> Hâncu, “Раскопки на поселении X–XIV вв. у села Ханска” (see above, n. 88), p. 169; idem, “Раскопки на селище Ханска X–XIV вв.” (see above, n. 88), p. 185; G. F. Chebotarenko, *Население центральной части Днестровско-Прутского междуречья в X–XII вв.* (Kishinev, 1982), pp. 7–18; G. F. Chebotarenko, N. P. Tel’nov, “Исследования южнославянской экспедиции в 1979 г.,” in *AIM v 1979–1980 gg* (1983), pp. 92–102; Postică, *Românii* (see above, n. 88), pp. 8–11 and 62–97.

<sup>101</sup> G. F. Chebotarenko, “Раскопки на поселении у с. Мошешты Кутузовского р-на,” in *AIM v 1979–1980 gg* (1983), pp. 183–192.

<sup>102</sup> I. S. Tentiuc, “Исследование поселений у с. Дурлешты,” in *AO 1986 G* (1988), pp. 432–433; idem, “Cercetări arheologice în așezarea medievală Durlești-Valea Babei,” *AM* 17 (1994), pp. 253–269.

<sup>103</sup> Excavations carried by Maria-Voica Pușcașu and Nicolae Pușcașu.

<sup>104</sup> Zaharia, etc., *Așezări*, pp. 136–137.

<sup>105</sup> Excavations carried by the author.

<sup>106</sup> Gh. Postică, “Evoluția așezărilor din spațiul pruto-nistean în epoca migrațiilor (sec. V–XIII),” *Thraco-Dacia* 20 (1999), nos. 1–2, p. 333.

thirteenth century.<sup>107</sup> In Moldavia, to the west from the Prut River, field surveys identified 129 ninth- to tenth-century sites attributed to the Dridu culture (Fig. 2), with 121 settlements, 4 cemeteries or isolated burial assemblages, and 4 coin finds. Forty-one of those sites were located in the plain and hilly region, 80 in the highlands, and only eight in the mountains.<sup>108</sup> The number of sites is substantially greater for the tenth to eleventh centuries. Out of 296 sites, 247 were settlements, 16 cemeteries or isolated burial assemblages, 23 coin finds, three coin hoards, and seven hoards of agricultural implements and weapons. Most tenth- to eleventh-century sites cluster in the plain and in the hills (107), as well as in the highlands (173), with only a few in the mountain region (16).<sup>109</sup> Judging from the published archaeological evidence, there are about 100 sites of the Răducăneni culture dated to the eleventh and twelfth centuries known from the area east from the Carpathian Mountains (Fig. 3). By contrast, only 35 sites are known, which have been dated to the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.<sup>110</sup> The small number of thirteenth-century sites is certainly a problem of the current research, and must therefore be treated with caution.

The evidence of field surveys thus shows that native Romanians were far more numerous than the Turkic nomads. There is a clear decrease in the number of sites at the time of the migration of the Turkic nomads. The greatest variation in the number of sites is that

<sup>107</sup> Ibidem, p. 334; Gh. Postică, "Obști sătești și formațiuni teritoriale românești din perioada medievală timpurie în spațiul pruto-nistrean," *Destin românesc*, SN, 2 (13) (2007), nos. 1–2 (49–50), pp. 156, 200–201, and 212.

<sup>108</sup> D. Gh. Teodor, *Descoperiri arheologice și numismatice la est de Carpați în secolele V–XI d.H.* (Contribuții la continuitatea daco-romană și veche românească), ed. D. Popovici (Bucharest, 1996 [1997]), p. 24.

<sup>109</sup> Ibidem, p. 27.

<sup>110</sup> E. K. Chernysh, I. T. Cherniakov, "Археологические разведки в Подунавье," *КС 99* (1964), pp. 89–96; M. M. Shmaglii, I. T. Cherniakov, "Археологічні ровідки 1964 р в Пониззі Дунаю," *Археологія* 19 (1965), pp. 215–221; G. F. Chebotarenko, "Материалы к археологической карте памятников VIII–X вв. южной части Пруто-Днестровского междуречья," in *DPM*, pp. 211–229; idem, *Население* (see above, n. 100); Zaharia, etc., *Așezări, passim*; M. Brudiu, "Cercetări periegetice în sudul Moldovei," *MCA* 9 (1970), pp. 511–528; Fedorov, Chebotarenko, *Pamiatniki*, pp. 40–74; Teodor, *Teritorial*; Coman, *Statornicie, passim*; V. Spinei, "Considerații cu privire la populația locală din zona centrală și meridională a Moldovei în secolele XI–XII," *CIs*, SN, 12–13 (1981–1982), pp. 173–179; V. Chirica, M. Tanasachi, *Repertoriul arheologic al județului Iași* (Iași) I (1984); II (1985); A. T. Smilenko, A. A. Kozlovskii, "Средневековые поселения в приморской часть Днестро-Дунайского междуречья," in *Днестро-Дунайское междуречье*, pp. 67–83; Gh. Postică, *Civilizația medievală timpurie din spațiul pruto-nistrean (secolele V–XIII)* (Bucharest, 2007), pp. 102–108, 116–119, and 126–129.

from the plain region between the Siret and the Dniester rivers. The field surveys also indicate that the largest population, judging from the number of sites, was that of the tenth- and eleventh-century southern Moldavia, followed by a sharp decrease in that same region during the subsequent centuries. Many sites were abandoned in that region, no doubt because of the Turkic steppe nomads moving in the neighbourhood. The smallest number of sites throughout the entire period between the tenth and the thirteenth century was that of the mountain region, clearly not suitable for a population of agriculturists.

Given the current state of research, it is not possible to estimate the absolute numbers of the local population in the Carpathian-Dniester area. Some believed the population of Moldavia in the mid-fourteenth century to have raised to some 85,000, the majority of whom were Romanians and Slavs.<sup>111</sup> Others advanced a much larger figure of 400,000, with 500,000 and 900,000 for contemporary Wallachia and Transylvania, respectively.<sup>112</sup> Judging from the military forces at the disposal of Prince Ștefan cel Mare (Stephen the Great) during the late 1400s, the population of Moldavia may have been as large as 600,000.<sup>113</sup> Until the second half of the eighteenth century, a period for which there is more consistent census data, the demographic evolution in Moldavia must have had its ups and downs, depending largely upon wars and military campaigns. A census of 1591 lists 46,860 families.<sup>114</sup> If the average family consisted of five persons, then the total population of Moldavia before 1600 must have been 234,300 strong.<sup>115</sup>

Throughout the Middle Ages the natural increase in population was greatly limited by high rates of infant and child mortality. The anthropological study of skeletal remains from twelfth- to fourteenth-century

---

<sup>111</sup> L. L. Polevoi, "Premizele social-economice. Economia și orînduirea socială în a doua jumătate a sec. XIII-prima jumătate a sec. XIV," in *Istoria RSS Moldovenești*, I, eds. V. L. Ianin (gen. ed.), V. A. Dergacev, V. M. Masson, L. L. Polevoi, I. P. Rusanova, P. V. Sovetov (Chișinău, 1988), pp. 313–314. See also idem, *Очерки исторической географии Молдавии XIII–XV вв.* (Kishinev, 1979), pp. 19–25.

<sup>112</sup> V. Georgescu, *Istoria românilor de la origini pînă în zilele noastre*, 2nd ed. (Los Angeles, 1989), p. 28. Others reached similar conclusions regarding the population of Transylvania (Șt. Pascu, *A History of Transylvania*, trans. R. Ladd [Detroit, 1982], p. 67) and of the three large Romanian provinces, the population of which was estimated at 1,800,000–1,900,000 (V. Trebici, *Demografia* [Bucharest, 1979], p. 457).

<sup>113</sup> P. Cernovodeanu, P. Binder, *Cavalerii Apocalipsului. Calamitățile naturale din trecutul României (pînă la 1800)* (Bucharest, 1993), p. 39.

<sup>114</sup> *DIR.A. v. XVI*, IV, pp. 4–6.

<sup>115</sup> P. G. Dmitriev, *Народонаселение Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1973), p. 82.

rural cemeteries excavated in the region to the east and south from the Carpathian Mountain suggest a rate of infant mortality as high as 40 percent and an average age of no more than 30.<sup>116</sup>

Those travelling through Moldavia in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth century estimated the population of the country to have been 500,000 (J. L. Carra—1777),<sup>117</sup> 525,000 (Ch. F. Reinhard—1806),<sup>118</sup> 600,000 (Struve—1793;<sup>119</sup> F. Káracsay—1812)<sup>120</sup> or 730,000 (D. Bantysz-Kamenski—1808)<sup>121</sup> strong. By contrast, abbot Ruggero Giuseppe Boscovich estimated in 1762 that about 150,000 people lived in Moldavia, while twenty years later Raičevich believed the population of Moldavia and Wallachia was one million strong,<sup>122</sup> which seems to fit the above-mentioned estimates. Such figures are also confirmed by census data for the years 1772–1774, which recorded 2,299 settlements, excluding those under Turkish administration. According to some calculations, in those settlements there were about 113,600 houses, which means 568,000 inhabitants.<sup>123</sup> A century ago, a Dutch source

<sup>116</sup> D. Botezatu and Gh. Ștefănescu, “Contribuții la studiul antropologic al populației feudale timpurii din Moldova din sec. XIII e.n.,” *Studii și cercetări de antropologie* 7 (1970), no. 1, pp. 13–18; M. S. Velikanova, *Палеоантропология Прутско-Днестровского междуречья* (Moscow, 1975), pp. 114–138; I. Popovici, M. Adam, and M. St. Udrescu, “Contribution anthropologique au problème du peuplement de la Plaine Roumaine du Moyen Âge,” in *Populație și societate*, IV, ed. Șt. Pascu (Cluj-Napoca, 1980), pp. 210–214; S. Antoniu, C. Obreja, “Studiul antropologic al scheletelor medievale de la Hudum-Botoșani din secolele XIII–XV,” *AM* 10 (1985), pp. 89–96; D. Botezatu, P. Cantemir, and G. Miu, “Observații antropologice asupra materialului osteologic uman de la Trifești (jud. Iași), datînd din perioada feudală timpurie (secolele XIII–XIV e.n.),” *AM* 11 (1987), pp. 247–259; G. Miu and R. Simalcsik, “Necropola feudal-timpurie de la Hudum (județul Botoșani). Studiu antropologic,” *Academia Română. Memorile Secțiilor Științifice*, Ser. IV, 26 (2003), pp. 207–220; G. Miu, R. Simalcsik, and M. Stupu, “La nécropole féodale de Hudum (département de Botoșani), XIII–XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles. Analyse démographique,” *Annuaire Roumain d'Anthropologie* 40 (2003), pp. 3–9.

<sup>117</sup> N. Iorga, *Istoria românilor prin călători*, ed. A. Anghelescu (Bucharest, 1981), p. 380.

<sup>118</sup> Șt. Ștefănescu, *Demografia, dimensiune a istoriei* (Timișoara, 1974), p. 24; *Călători străini despre Țările Române în secolul al XIX-lea*, SN, I (1801–1821), eds. G. Filitti, B. Marinescu, Ș. Rădulescu-Zoner, M. Stroia, co-ord. P. Cernovodeanu (Bucharest, 2004), p. 267.

<sup>119</sup> Iorga, *Istoria românilor prin călători*, p. 410; Gh. Teodorescu, *Mărturie geografice despre țările noastre de la Herodot pînă la Wilkinson (450 î.Hr.–1820)* (Buzău, 1942), pp. 102–103.

<sup>120</sup> *Călători străini despre Țările Române în secolul al XIX-lea*, SN, I, p. 763.

<sup>121</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 405.

<sup>122</sup> D. A. Lăzărescu, *Imaginea României prin călători*, I, 1716–1789 (Bucharest, 1985), pp. 64 and 198.

<sup>123</sup> Dmitriev, *Народонаселение Молдавии* (see above, n. 115), pp. 62, 78–79, and 83. Others advanced different figures. See I. A. Kotenko, N. A. Mokhov, P. V. Sovetov “О тенденции роста народонаселения Молдавии в эпоху феодализма,” *Ученые*

indicated a greater number of villages for Moldavia: 3,000.<sup>124</sup> According to French statistics, the total population of Moldavia in 1808, that is after the annexation of Bucovina by the Habsburgs, was of about 800,000 inhabitants, in addition to 20,000 in the Hotin *raia* and 140,000 in “Bessarabia” (= Bugeac).<sup>125</sup> The figures are finally confirmed by internal ecclesiastical statistics (1810), which indicate 814,884 “souls” in Moldavia and “Bessarabia” (= Bugeac).<sup>126</sup>

Taking into account the dynamics of the demographic increase, which results from the evidence mentioned above, as well as from the archaeological studies, it is possible to give a rough estimate of the local population of Moldavia between the tenth and the thirteenth century. Given the uneven development of the archaeological research on ninth- to eleventh-century sites, the number of rural settlements from that period must have been higher than the 400 sites so far known, perhaps as large as 2,000. Judging from the evidence of systematically excavated sites, such as Băiceni (Iași county), Bârlălești, Dodești, Gara Banca (Vaslui county) (Romania), Calfa (Anenii Noi county), Etulia (the Gagauz Autonomous Territorial Unit) and Hansca (Ialoveni county) (Republic of Moldova), an average number of 25 houses per village may be advanced, which would produce a total number of 50,000 households for the entire Carpathian-Danube area. Further assuming five members per household, this will give a total population of some 250,000 inhabitants for the period between the ninth and the first half of the eleventh century.

The removal of the agricultural communities from the Bugeac and the substantial decrease in population in eastern Moldavia, led to a diminishing demographic index for the second half of the eleventh and the twelfth century. The population may have been no more 150,000–200,000 strong, with even lower levels of 100,000–150,000 inhabitants for the thirteenth century, the period of the most serious

---

*записки 6 (Серия историческая)* (1957), pp. 55–56; Șt. Ștefănescu, “Aspects de la révolution démographique dans les pays roumains à la fin du XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle,” in *Nouvelles études d'histoire*, VI, 1 (Bucharest, 1980), p. 313.

<sup>124</sup> *Călători*, VII, p. 522 (*Relație anonimă olandeză, 1687*).

<sup>125</sup> T. Holban, *Documente românești din arhivele franceze (1801–1812)* (Bucharest, 1939), p. 49.

<sup>126</sup> C. Istrati, “Statistici eclesiastice efectuate în Moldova între anii 1808 și 1812,” *AIIA* 25 (1988), no. 1, p. 354.

demographic depression. The population began to increase again only after 1300, without however going beyond the tenth-century level.<sup>127</sup>

\* \* \*

As for the nomads, different sources provide different population estimates. According to John Skylitzes, when crossing the Danube into the Empire in 1046/1047, Tyrach brought with him 800,000 people, divided into 11 tribes.<sup>128</sup> If so, then each Pecheneg tribe must have been some 72,700 strong. Before Tyrach's horde, two other Pecheneg tribes, led by Kegen, had settled in the Balkans. John Skylitzes estimates that they were 20,000 strong. The total number of Pechenegs in the mid-eleventh-century Balkans was thus one million, which is clearly exaggerated. Omeljan Pritsak's estimate of 2.8 to 3 million Pechenegs is equally unlikely.<sup>129</sup> The figure of 600,000 Uzes invading the Empire in 1064–1065 must also be treated with suspicion.<sup>130</sup> The army of "Sauromanthians" (Cumans), "Scythians" (Pechenegs) and "Dacians" (Hungarians), who crossed the Danube in 1087 under the command of Tzelgu, is said to have been 80,000 strong,<sup>131</sup> whereas the Pechenegs gathered in 1091 to battle Alexius I Comnenus at Lebunion were believed to have been 600,000.<sup>132</sup> Both estimates can hardly be accepted at face value. Their rhetorical flavour is enhanced by what one of emperor Alexius I's panegyrists had to say about the emperor's enemies: "their multitude exceeds the number of spring bees."<sup>133</sup>

More reliable appear to be the figures advanced for the Cuman forces fleeing the Mongols: 10,000 went to the Balkans<sup>134</sup> and 40,000 to Hungary.<sup>135</sup> If these figures are close to reality, then those about the

<sup>127</sup> V. Spinei, "Note sull'evoluzione della Moldavia prima di Stefano il Grande," *Annuario dell'Istituto Romeno di Cultura e Ricerca Umanistica di Venezia* 6–7 (2004–2005), nos. 6–7, pp. 17–19.

<sup>128</sup> Skylitzes, p. 458; Kedrenos, II, p. 585.

<sup>129</sup> O. Pritsak, "Печеніги," *Український історик* 7 (1970), nos. 1–3 (25–27), p. 97; idem, "Pechenegs" (see above, n. 15), p. 21.

<sup>130</sup> Michaelis Attaliothae *Historia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1853), p. 88; Michaelis Glycae *Annales*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1836), p. 605; *Excerpta ex breviario historico* Ioannis Scylitzae Curopalatae, in Kedrenos, II, p. 654.

<sup>131</sup> Anne Comnène (see above, n. 18), II, p. 87.

<sup>132</sup> Matthieu d'Édesse, *Chronique*, ed. Ed. Dulaurier (Paris, 1858), p. 199; *Armenia and the Crusades. Tenth to Twelfth Centuries. The Chronicle of Matthew of Edessa*, ed. A. E. Dostourian (Lanham–New York–London, 1993), p. 155.

<sup>133</sup> *FHDR*, III, pp. 18–19 (Teofilact al Ohridei).

<sup>134</sup> Nicephori Gregorae *Byzantina historia*, ed. L. Schopen, I (Bonn, 1829), p. 37.

<sup>135</sup> Rogerius, pp. 23 and 63.



Pechenegs and the Uzes must be grossly exaggerated and altogether reliable. Given the subsistence economy of the Balkans in the eleventh century, a sudden surplus of 800,000 or even 600,000 people would have meant a real catastrophe for both natives and invaders.

In their desire to emphasise the great danger caused by the migration of the nomads and thus to find an excuse for Byzantine defeats, the Greek authors exaggerated the military potential of the nomads, a sufficient reason for not taking their information at face value. True, the figures advanced did not refer to all Pechenegs, for no Byzantine author seems to have been concerned with just how many nomads were out there, in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea. It is perhaps safe to assume no more than one million Pechenegs, Uzes, and Cumans altogether.

Large concentrations of military forces such as mentioned in the Byzantine sources were unique episodes in the history of nomadic societies, the end result of which was mass migration. By contrast, even large raids to the south or to the west implied only a relatively small number of participants. The organization of the great forays against neighbouring states frequently involved warriors not only from hordes scattered in the Bugeac and the Romanian Plain, which were never sufficient, but also from the entire area north of the Black Sea. Since in the early eleventh century there were still native settlements in the lowlands of the outer-Carpathian area, the Pechenegs must have at that time come from farther to the east. They moved into the Bugeac and the Bărăgan only after the mid-eleventh century, mainly because of an increasing need for grazing fields, and in doing so they forced the native population out. This was a clear increase in the nomadic population, but just how large that population was, it is impossible to decide.

Nonetheless, some idea may still be obtained by means of comparison with later Tatar forces settled in the Bugeac. During the second quarter of the sixteenth century, Georg Reicherstorffer knew that the Tatars in south-eastern Moldavia had some 500 farms (*sessiones*),<sup>136</sup> while more than a century later Elvya Çelebi mentioned only 200 settlements and 45,000 Tatars.<sup>137</sup> The figures advanced for the military forces of

<sup>136</sup> *Călători*, I, p. 197. See also *Călători*, VIII, p. 635 (*Descriere "curioasă" a Moldovei și Țării Românești, 1699*).

<sup>137</sup> *Călători*, VI, p. 413. Elsewhere, Elvya Çelebi evaluated the Tatar forces at 40,000 (see *Călători*, VI, p. 434) or 47,000 (*ibidem*, p. 632).

the Tatars by French travellers of the second half of the seventeenth century are contradictory: François Gaston de Béthume has 25,000 horsemen, and Guillaume Levasseur de Beauplan—probably closer to truth—only between 4,000 and 5,000.<sup>138</sup> In 1806, at the time of their final removal from the Bugeac, count Langeron estimated the Tatar army was 30,000 strong.<sup>139</sup> This is obviously exaggerated, because such an army would require a population of more than 100,000 inhabitants. Others believed the total Tatar population to have been 40,000, and that only as a result of the Ottoman-led colonization following the wars with Russia. A part of the Nogai-Tatars fled to the Turks south of the Danube, while those who remained behind (about 6,404) were forcefully removed by the Russian armies.<sup>140</sup>

It is possible to admit numbers as large for the eleventh- to thirteenth-century Turkic populations as those advanced for the later Tatars. Until the Mongol invasion, most Turkic populations in the steppe were practicing nomadism, whereas the Tatars living during the late Middle Ages and the modern era in that region had already begun to settle and to adopt agricultural occupations, which contributed to a demographic increase far superior to that of purely nomadic communities. This is further substantiated by the comparatively larger numbers of people buried in Tatar cemeteries in the Bugeac.<sup>141</sup>

Archaeological excavations have so far offered extremely helpful indication of the population numbers for the Turkic nomads in the Carpathian-Dniester area (Fig. 4). I will return to those problems in the section dedicated to burial assemblages.

<sup>138</sup> *Călători*, VII, pp. 410 and 516.

<sup>139</sup> Hurmuzaki, supl. I, III (1889), p. 110. See also V. Spinei and M. Spinei, “Însemnările cu caracter istorico-etnografic asupra Principatelor române ale conțelului de Langeron,” *Patrimoniul*, Chișinău (1992), no. 2, pp. 12–13.

<sup>140</sup> A. O. Dobroliubskii, *Кочевники на юго-западе СССР в X–XVIII веках* (Автор. дисс. на соиск. учен. ст. докт. ист. наук) (Moscow, 1988), pp. 22–23. See also L. Roman, “Basarabia,” in L. Roman, R. Șt. Vergatti, *Studii de demografie istorică românească* (Bucharest, 2002), p. 157.

<sup>141</sup> A. O. Dobroliubskii, L. V. Subbotin, S. P. Segeda, “Погребальные памятники Буджакской орды,” in *Средневековые памятники Днестровско-Прутского междуречья*, eds. P. P. Bârnea (gen. ed.), G. F. Chebotarenko, A. A. Nudel'man, N. P. Tel'nov, E. N. Abyzova (Kishinev, 1988), pp. 131–144.

*Settlements and Life Style*

The ninth- to thirteenth-century native villages are quite large, sometimes covering several hectares. They were located on exposed positions, in river everglades, on hills with mild slopes, or in the lowlands. They are not normally found at high altitude, away from arteries of communication or bodies of water. Some in fact are right on the banks of rivers or on lake shores. Throughout the whole period under discussion, native fortified settlements appear only exceptionally, as most settlements were open. By contrast, in neighbouring Transylvania; ever since the end of the first millennium, a number of earthworks were built with ditches and palisades.<sup>142</sup> The same is true about the mountain region in the northern Balkans, where according to the written sources the Vlachs had their own stone fortresses.<sup>143</sup> The Slavic tribes living in the Middle Dniester and Upper Prut regions also had settlements fortified with earth walls and palisades, like most other peoples of central and eastern Europe at that time.<sup>144</sup>

The scarcity, if not total absence, of earthworks in the Romanian lands south and east from the Carpathians requires some explanation. It cannot have been either the level of development reached by local com-

<sup>142</sup> M. Rusu, "Castrum, urbs, civitas (Cetăți și 'orașe' transilvănene din sec. IX–XIII)," *Acta Musei Napocensis* 8 (1971), pp. 197–203; Șt. Matei, P. Iambor, "Observații privind așezările fortificate din Transilvania în perioada feudalismului timpuriu," *Acta Musei Napocensis* 17 (1980), pp. 507–516; Pascu, *Trans.*, I, pp. 42–47; P. Iambor, *Așezări fortificate din Transilvania (secolele IX–XIII)*, ed. T. Sălăgean (Cluj–Napoca, 2005), pp. 62–137; A. A. Rusu, *Castelarea carpatică. Fortificații și cetăți din Transilvania și teritoriile învecinate (sec. XIII–XIV)* (Cluj–Napoca, 2005), pp. 80–94; I. M. Țiplic, *Fortificațiile medievale timpurii din Transilvania (secolele al X-lea—al XII-lea)* (Iași, 2007), pp. 115–146.

<sup>143</sup> Nicetae Choniatae *Historia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1835), p. 482.

<sup>144</sup> R. v. Uslar, *Studien zu frühgeschichtlichen Befestigungen zwischen Nordsee und Alpen* (Cologne–Graz, 1964); W. Hensel, *Die Slawen im frühen Mittelalter* (Berlin, 1965), pp. 290–301; M. Štěpánek, *Opevněná sídliště 8.–12. století ve střední Evropě* (Prague, 1965); Ć. Staňa, "Mährische Burgwälle im 9. Jahrhundert," in *Die Bayern und ihre Nachbarn*, 2, eds. H. Freisinger and F. Daim (Vienna, 1987), pp. 157–205; J. Giesler, *Der Ostalpenraum vom 8. bis 11. Jahrhundert. Studien zu archäologischen und schriftlichen Zeugnissen*, 2, *Historische Interpretation* (Rahden/Westf., 1997), p. 418 ff.; *Burgen in Mitteleuropa. Ein Handbuch*, I, *Bauformen und Entwicklung*, eds. H. W. Böhme, B. v. d. Dollen, D. Kerber, C. Meckseper, B. Schock-Werner, J. Zeune (Stuttgart, 1999), p. 38 ff.; B. O. Timoshchuk, *Східні слов'яни VII–X ст.: полюддя, язичництво, початки держави* (Chernivtsi, 1999), pp. 69–104; S. Brather, *Archäologie der westlichen Slawen. Siedlungen, Wirtschaft und Gesellschaft im früh- und hochmittelalterlichen Ostmitteleuropa* (Berlin–New York, 2001), pp. 119–164; Iambor, *Așezări fortificate*, pp. 32–61; L. Mikhailina, *Слов'яни VIII–X ст. між Дніпром і Карпатами* (Kiev, 2007), pp. 43–45 and 60–68; A. Buko, *The Archaeology of Early Medieval Poland. Discoveries—Hypotheses—Interpretations* (Leiden–Boston, 2008), pp. 84–99.

munities, or some technological inability to erect strongholds. Instead, one should perhaps look elsewhere for a credible explanation. In my opinion, the lack of strongholds is to be associated to the particular relations between natives and nomads. Strongholds are bastions of resistance, so any political or military power trying to suppress the ability of the conquered population to rebel would begin by demolishing the existing strongholds and preventing the building of new ones. This was certainly the logic behind the measures taken by the Mongols in 6758 (= 1250) against the Rus' of Galich-Wolhynia to prevent them from building new forts,<sup>145</sup> and in 6769 (= 1261) to destroy the fortresses of the principality.<sup>146</sup> Prior to that, the Mongols had not only extracted tribute and military cooperation from the Caucasus region, but also asked for all fortifications of Armenia and Georgia to be destroyed.<sup>147</sup> The same is true for Ilkhan Hülügü, who in a.H. 654 (= 1257/1258) demanded that all fortifications on in the lands of Khur-shah (Khwarshah) be destroyed.<sup>148</sup> When allowing the rebuilding and resettlement of Kantzag, the Mongols nonetheless forbade the restoration of the city's ramparts.<sup>149</sup> During the sixteenth century, the Ottoman asked the princes of Moldavia to demolish the walls of their own fortresses and forbade them to build new ones.<sup>150</sup> It is very likely that a similar prohibition applied to the Romanian communities in the outer-Carpathian region under Bulgar, later nomadic rule. The destruction, at some point between the tenth and the eleventh century, of Tivertsiian strongholds, as well as of the fortress at Calfă (Anenii Noi county), by either Pechenegs and Uzes, or by Cumans must be understood as a stern warning to anyone challenging their power.

<sup>145</sup> *Ip.let.*, p. 184.

<sup>146</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 198.

<sup>147</sup> Grigor of Akane', *History of the Nation of the Archers (the Mongols)*, eds. R. P. Blake and R. N. Frye, *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 12 (1949), no. 2, p. 297.

<sup>148</sup> Rachid-Eddin, *Extraits de l'Histoire des Mongols écrite en persan*, in *Journal Asiatique* 9 (1832), pp. 532–537; Rashiduddin Fazlullah's *Jami'u't-tawarikh: Compendium of Chronicles. A History of the Mongols*, trans. and ed. W. M. Thackston, III (Harvard [Cambridge, Mass.], 1999), p. 484.

<sup>149</sup> Guiragos, *Extrait*, in Éd. Dulaurier, "Les Mongols d'après les historiens arméniens," *Journal Asiatique*, 5th Ser., 11 (1858), nos. 2–3, pp. 215–216.

<sup>150</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, supl. 1, p. 23; *Cronica moldo-polonă*, in *Cronicile slavo-române din sec. XV–XVI publicate de Ion Bogdan*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1959), p. 186; *Călători*, III, pp. 18 (F. Sivori), 352 (T. Korobeinikov); VIII, pp. 245 (I. Vişenski), 260 (D. Krmann); *Curiose Beschreibung von der Moldau und Wallachey*, trans. S. Mehedinţi, in *BSGR* 16 (1895), nos. 1–2, p. 116. See also Gh. Pungă, *Ţara Moldovei în vremea lui Alexandru Lăpuşneanu* (Iaşi, 1994), pp. 152–158.

The settlements in Moldavia (Figs. 2–3) were rural, as no towns came into being before the great Mongol invasion. The delayed urbanization of the east-Carpathian region is most likely the result of the absence of any viable urban traditions.<sup>151</sup> Since the cities in existence during Antiquity in the Lower Danube region disappeared during the subsequent centuries, no traces were left in the Romanian language of the Latin vocabulary of city life.<sup>152</sup>

In the densely forested hilly and sub-Carpathian regions, villages were isolated. Such villages are in existence even to the present day, and their number must have considerably larger in the recent past. River valleys served as arteries of communications, along with roads crossing natural barriers. Land needed for new housing, agricultural or grazing fields was obtained through clearance of the forest. Neighbouring woods also provided shelter in case of emergency. In the eastern Carpathians, permanent settlements, consisting of hamlets or isolated buildings, may be found today up to an altitude of 1,000 to 1,200, with seasonal settlements, especially those associated with transhumance going as high as 1,300 to 1,500 m.<sup>153</sup> Although no archaeological evidence exists so far in that respect, it is likely that such seasonal settlements must have also existed on mountain peaks at the beginning of the second millennium, given the pastoral traditions of the Romanians.

Since no single settlement dated between the ninth and thirteenth century has been so far totally excavated, one has only a partial view of intrasite arrangement of houses and adjacent buildings. As a consequence, very little may be surmised in terms of population density. Nonetheless, some conclusions can still be drawn on the basis of ampler and more methodical excavations of settlement sites, each one with some 20 to 30 features. Judging from that evidence, buildings in ninth- to eleventh-century villages in the hilly regions of central and

---

<sup>151</sup> V. Spinei, "La genèse des villes du sud-est de la Moldavie et les rapports commerciaux des XIII<sup>e</sup>–XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles," *Balkan Studies* 35 (1994), no. 2, pp. 197–210 and 258; idem, "La genèse des villes médiévales de Moldavie," in *The Colloquia of the XIII International Congress of Prehistoric and Protohistoric Sciences, Forlì (Italia) 8–14 September 1996*, 14, *Archaeology and History of the Middle Ages*, eds. R. Francovich, G. P. Brogiolo, S. Gelichi, R. Hodges, H. Steuer (Forlì, 1996), pp. 55–70; M. D. Matei, *Geneză și evoluție urbană în Moldova și Țara Românească până în secolul al XVII-lea* (Iași, 1997), pp. 45–56.

<sup>152</sup> S. Pușcariu, *Limba română*, I, *Privire generală*, ed. I. Dan (Bucharest, 1976), p. 361.

<sup>153</sup> T. Morariu, A. Bogdan, and M. Mihail, "High-zone settlements in the Romanian Carpathians," *Revue Roumaine de Géologie, Géophysique et Géographie, Serie de géographie* 12 (1968), nos. 1–2, p. 156.

southern Moldavia were clustered together, their position depending on the shape and stability of the ground. Ethnographic studies have shown that villages with houses placed at a small distance from each other are typical for communities involved in mixed farming (intensive agriculture and stock breeding), while villages with dispersed houses set at a greater distance from each other are of communities specializing in stock breeding.<sup>154</sup> The tight correlation between natural conditions and the intrasite structure of villages is particularly manifest in mountain villages, where networks of villages tend to expand tentacularly among valleys.

The great variety of types of relief, climate, soil and vegetation of the east-Carpathian territory, much like that of other regions in the Carpathian-Danube area, had a great influence on the classification of (modern) Romanian villages according to the position and density of their houses. The Romanian geographer Vintilă Mihăilescu classified Romanian inter-war rural settlements into three main categories: grouped (or concentrated), dispersed, and scattered (or spread-out) villages<sup>155</sup> (Fig. 5). Accepted by most ethnographers, geographers, historians and sociologists,<sup>156</sup> Mihăilescu's classification was later expanded by Romulus Vuia.<sup>157</sup> It is likely that that classification applies to medieval villages as well, given that the types of villages depended upon economic requirements, which did not change much for centuries. Most villages in central Moldavia were of either the grouped or of the dispersed kind. In the early twentieth century, those were the most common forms of villages.<sup>158</sup> Systematic research in Moldavia and in the Șomuzul Mare area showed that between the thirteenth and the sixteenth century, as well as in modern times, dispersed villages predominated in the

---

<sup>154</sup> R. Vuia, "Satul românesc din Transilvania și Banat," in idem, *Studii de etnografie și folclor*, I (Bucharest, 1975), p. 239.

<sup>155</sup> V. Mihăilescu, "Trebuie să recunoaștem trei tipuri de sat: satul adunat (sau concentrat), satul răsfrat și satul risipit?," *BSRRG* 45 (1926), pp. 106–110.

<sup>156</sup> V. Butură, *Etnografia poporului român. Cultura materială* (Cluj-Napoca, 1978), pp. 58–64; idem, *Străvechi mărturii de civilizație românească. Transilvania—Studiu etnografic* (Bucharest, 1989), pp. 37–62; I. H. Ciubotaru, *Catolicii din Moldova. Universul culturii populare*, I, *Arhitectura tradițională. Textilele de interior. Portul popular de sărbătoare* (Iași, 1998), pp. 21–23; I. Praoveanu, *Etnografia poporului român* (Pitești-Brașov-Bucharest-Cluj-Napoca, 2001), pp. 47–51; C. Iașu, *Depresiunea Rădăuților—Studiu de geografie umană* (Iași, 2002), pp. 293–295; P. I. Panait, D. Flaut, *Arheologie medievală română* (Constanța, 2004), pp. 65–67.

<sup>157</sup> Vuia, "Satul românesc din Transilvania și Banat," *passim*.

<sup>158</sup> V. Mihăilescu, "O hartă a principalelor tipuri de așezări rurale din România" *BSRRG* 46 (1927), pp. 62–75.

region.<sup>159</sup> There are also cases in which parts of a village have the characteristics of one kind, whereas the remainder those of another kind of village.<sup>160</sup>

Much like in Wallachia, in modern Moldavia compact villages typically appear in hilly regions and in the lowlands (the Bugeac, the Romanian Plain, the Bălți Plain), in which the chernozem soil type and the steppe flora prevail. It is from this region that, beginning with the eleventh century, the nomads evacuated the native agricultural communities. Their resettlement by agriculturists took place only after the nomads were driven away. The expansion of the grouped kind of villages in this region appears to be a recent phenomenon.

\* \* \*

The steppe Turkic tribes were primarily nomads on horseback, with all that that mode of life implies in material and spiritual terms. In contemporary sources, the explicit category of “nomads” applied to all important peoples of Turkic origin living in the east-European steppes: the Pechenegs,<sup>161</sup> the Uzes<sup>162</sup> and Cumans.<sup>163</sup> This is demonstrated, among other things, by the fact that all three were called “Scythians” in Byzantine sources, precisely because of their supposed similarity with the most famous nomads of Antiquity. In Arab sources, the Pechenegs appear as “a nomadic people who search for places that are wet

<sup>159</sup> M. D. Matei, E. I. Emandi, *Habitatul medieval rural din Valea Moldovei și din bazinul Șomuzului Mare (secolele XI–XVII)* (Bucharest, 1982), *passim*.

<sup>160</sup> I. Vlăduțiu, *Etnografia românească* (Bucharest, 1973), p. 126.

<sup>161</sup> Michaelis Pselli *Orationes panegyricae*, ed. G. T. Dennis (Stuttgartiae et Lipsiae, 1994), p. 63; Iohannis Euchaitorum metropolitae *Quae in codice Vaticano graeco 676 supersunt*, I. Bollig descripsit, P. de Lagarde edidit (Gottingae, 1882), pp. 144 and 192; Skylitzes, p. 455; Kedrenos, II, p. 582; *Extrait d'Abou-Obeid Al-Bécri*, in [Ch. F.] Defrémery, *Fragments de géographes et d'historiens arabes et persans inédits relatifs aux anciens peuples du Caucase et de la Russie Méridionale* (offprint from *Journal Asiatique*, 4th Ser., 13, 1848; 14, 1849) (Paris, 1849), p. 14.

<sup>162</sup> Ibn Fadlan's *Reisebericht*, ed. A. Z. V. Togan, *Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 24 (1939), no. 3, p. 19; Frähn, *Ibn-Foszlan's und anderer araber Berichte* (see above, n. 39), p. 244; Maçoudi, *Le livre de l'avertissement et de la revision*, ed. B. Carra de Vaux (Paris, 1896), pp. 244–245; V. Minorsky, *A History of Sharvan and Darband in the 10th–11th Centuries* (Cambridge, 1958), p. 150 (Mas'udi); Juvaini, *The History of the World-Conqueror*, I, ed. J. A. Boyle (Manchester, 1959), p. 90; *Die altosmanischen anonymen Chroniken*, II, ed. Fr. Giese (*Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, 17, 1) (Leipzig, 1925), p. 10.

<sup>163</sup> Eustathii metropolitae Thessalonicensis *Opuscula*, ed. T. L. F. Tafel (Frankfurt, 1832), p. 44; A. Theiner, *Vetera monumenta historica Hungariam sacram illustrantia*, I (Rome, 1859), pp. 87–88.

and rich in pastures,"<sup>164</sup> with their chieftain being constantly on the move.<sup>165</sup> The Cumans maintained their nomadic way of life for many decades after being allowed by King Bela IV to enter his kingdom,<sup>166</sup> just like his comrades who had remained in Desht-i Qipchaq under the Mongol rule.<sup>167</sup>

All activities of the steppe Turkic populations, from family to social-political life, were influenced by pastoralism. Loss of animals was fatal for nomadic communities, since hunting, gathering, or, where possible, sporadic cultivation of crops could substitute for more substantial subsistence strategies only for brief periods. As a consequence, except plundering raids, all movements of Turkic populations took place together with whole families and flocks. Even when undertaking long-distance expeditions, Turkic warriors were accompanied by herds of horses used for riding, for drawing carts, and for food.

The basic features of equestrian nomadism remained the same from Antiquity to modern times. Consequently, Greek and Roman ethnographic descriptions of the tribes living in the steppes of Eurasia are strikingly similar to those found in Byzantine, Arab, Persian, Russian, and Western medieval sources, as well as to those from the period just before the expansion of Muscovy beyond the Volga. As a result, details about the pastoralist mode of life during a certain period may sometimes be used to fill in the gap of information regarding other periods.<sup>168</sup>

---

<sup>164</sup> Al-Bécri, p. 14; Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 32; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 221 (al-Bakrī) and 250 (al-Marwazī).

<sup>165</sup> Maçoudi, *Les Prairies d'or* (see above, n. 33), II, 1863, p. 59; Al-Mas'ûdi (see above, n. 33), p. 103.

<sup>166</sup> Rogerius, pp. 23, 26, 62, and 65.

<sup>167</sup> *Das mongolische Weltreich*. Al-'Umari's *Darstellung der mongolischen Reiche in seinem Werk Masalik al-abşar fi mamalik al-amsar*, ed. K. Lech (Wiesbaden, 1968), p. 138.

<sup>168</sup> E. D. Phillips, *Les nomades de la steppe*, trans. A. Zundel-Bernard (Paris-Bruxelles, 1966), p. 11 ff.; *Être nomade aujourd'hui* (Neuchâtel, 1979); *The Nomadic Alternative. Modes and Models of Interaction in the African-Asian Deserts and Steppes*, ed. W. Weissleder (The Hague-Paris, 1979); *Pastoral Production and Society / Production pastorale et société* (Cambridge-Paris, 1979); Ph. C. Salzman, "Is 'nomadism' a useful concept?," *Nomadic Peoples* 6 (1980), pp. 1-7; I. Ecsedy, "Nomads in history and historical research," *AOH* 35 (1981), nos. 2-3, pp. 201-227; R. P. Lindner, "What was a nomadic tribe?," *Comparative Studies in Society and History* 24 (1982), pp. 689-711; E. Turri, *Gli uomini delle tende. I pastori nomadi tra ecologia e storia, tra deserto e bidonville* (Milan, 1983), p. 48 ff.; D. Kshibekov, *Кочевое общество: генезис, развитие, упадок* (Alma-Ata, 1984), pp. 43-147; *Nomaden und ihre Umwelt im Wandel*, ed. E. Baum (Witzenhausen, 1989); *Ecology and Empire. Nomads in the Cultural Evolution of the Old World* (Proceedings of the Soviet-American Academic Symposia in Conjunction with the Museum Exhibition *Nomads: Masters of the Eurasian Steppe*, 1), ed. G. Seaman (Los Angeles, 1989); A. Khazanov, "Ecological limitations of nomadism in the Eurasian steppes and their social and cultural implications," *Asian and*



The ancient tribes of central Asia, the region from which countless populations moved to the west, shared the same mode of life. Quite suggestive in that respect is the description of the Hiung-nu to be found in the Chinese *Shi ki* (“Historical Writings”): “Their stock is made mostly of horses, cattle and sheep. Less frequent are domestic animals such as camels, donkeys and mules. They roam to and fro, in search of water and pastures. They have no fortified cities, nor stable settlements, and they practise no tilling either, although they do each possess a plot of land. They have no writing. Alliances among them are established verbally. Children are allowed to ride rams and sheep, and to shoot arrows at birds, weasels and rats; when they grow, they hunt foxes and hares, for food. The valiance of their warriors is demonstrated in archery. They are all armoured horsemen. In keeping with their customs and abilities, they move around with their stock in times of peace, and they also hunt birds and animals, for more food. When they are threatened, men prepare for war. They provoke and launch impetuous attacks, according to their temper. Their shooting weapons are bows and arrows; for close combat they use sabres and spears. When they have some advantage, they attack promptly, but when they are at bay they are quite ready to retreat suddenly, and even in such situations they maintain favourable positions [...] Both their princes and their commoners eat meat and dress in animal skins, over which they put on yet another fur coat.”<sup>169</sup>

The movements of the Turkic populations were either locally limited or determined by transhumance. Practically speaking, no nomadic community could settle in any place for more than a few weeks, since

---

*African Studies* 24 (1990), pp. 1–15; *The Archaeology of the Steppes. Methods and Strategies*, ed. B. Genito (Napoli, 1994); E. I. Kuchanov, *Кочевые государства от гуннов до маньчжуров* (Moscow, 1997); C. Humphrey and D. Sneath, *The End of Nomadism? Society, State and the Environment in Inner Asia* (Durham, 1999); D. M. U. Rodrigues, *Nômadas e sedentários na Ásia Central. Continuidade e descontinuidade no processo civilizatório* (Porto, 1999), pp. 209–282; S. Stark, “Nomaden und Sesshafte in Mittel- und Zentralasien: Nomadische Adaptationsstrategien am Fallbeispiel der Alttürken,” in *Grenzüberschreitungen. Formen des Kontakts zwischen Orient und Okzident im Altertum*, eds. M. Schuol, U. Hartmann, A. Luther (*Oriens et Occidens. Studien zu antiken Kulturkontakten und ihrem Nachleben*, ed. J. Wiesehöfer, 3) (Stuttgart, 2002), pp. 363–404; I. Lebedynsky, *Les Nomades. Les peuples nomades de la steppe des origines aux invasions mongoles IX<sup>e</sup> siècle av. J.-C.—XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle apr. J.-C.* (Paris, 2003), pp. 15–244; M. Weiers, *Zweitausend Jahre Krieg und Drangsal und Tschinggis Khans Vermächtnis* (Wiesbaden, 2006), pp. 16–69; R. Batty, *Rome and the Nomads. The Pontic-Danubian Realm in Antiquity* (Oxford, 2007), pp. 30–33, 138–161, and 264–277.

<sup>169</sup> *Die Hunnen der vorchristlichen Zeit. Chinesische Urkunden zur Geschichte Asiens*, I, trans. and ed. J. J. M. Groot (Berlin and Leipzig, 1921), pp. 2–3.

the pasture land would have been exhausted by intensive or prolonged grazing, and regeneration required a rather long time. That is why flocks led by shepherds and their families were constantly moving to neighbouring pastures. In referring to Scythians, Hippocrates, the founder of ancient medicine, noticed that they “remained in the same place as long as their cattle had enough grass to eat. When they ran out of grass, they moved somewhere else”.<sup>170</sup> Alans<sup>171</sup> and Avars<sup>172</sup> are known to have done the same.

At the beginning of summer, when humidity decreased in the plain and the grassy vegetation was no longer abundant, the nomads drove their animals to the north, along the river everglades at the limit of the steppe and forest-steppe belts, where grass was still fresh. The pastoralist community returned to the south in winter, with brief stops near lakes, near the sea, or at points where rivers flow into the sea. There, under the influence of the Black Sea microclimate, the weather was a little warmer than in the interior. The snow was blown away or melted quickly enough, for the animals to feed on dry grass. Indeed, until modern times, the nomads of Eurasia had but only small quantities of stocked fodder.

The pastoralists’ seasonal wandering over the steppes is one of the essential features of nomadic life, specific to all the tribes in the southern area of eastern Europe. According to the folk tradition of the Turkic peoples, their ancestor—Japheth (Ulğay-Khan), Noah’s son—was a nomad who had his summer and winter camps in Turkestan.<sup>173</sup> The summer migration of the Pechenegs to the Dnieper is mentioned by Constantine Porphyrogenitus,<sup>174</sup> and that of the Oghuz north of the Caspian Sea by an anonymous, tenth-century Persian geographer,<sup>175</sup> as

<sup>170</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 80–81 (Hippocrate).

<sup>171</sup> Ammiani Marcellini *Rerum gestarum libri qui supersunt*, II, ed. W. Seyfarth (Leipzig, 1978), p. 165; P. Aalto and T. Pekkanen, *Latin Sources on North-Eastern Eurasia*, I (Wiesbaden, 1975), p. 20 ff.

<sup>172</sup> Pohl, *Die Awaren* (see above, n. 55), pp. 163–170.

<sup>173</sup> Rashid-ad-din, *Сборник летописей*, I, 1, trans. L. A. Khetagurov, ed. A. A. Semenov (Moscow–Leningrad, 1952), pp. 80–81; K. Jahn, *Die Geschichte der Oghuzen des Rasūid ad-Dīn* (Vienna, 1969), p. 17; Rashiduddin Fazlullah (see above, n. 148), I (Harvard [Cambridge, Mass.], 1998), p. 27.

<sup>174</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 56–57.

<sup>175</sup> *Hudūd al-ʿĀlam* (see above, n. 42), p. 100: “Both in summer and winter they [the Oghuz] wander along the pasture-lands and grazing-grounds”. See also *Orient. Ber.*, p. 206. Seljuq pastoralists spent the summer in the “Bulgarian land” and the winter in Turkestan. See Makrizi, *Histoire d’Égypte*, trans. E. Blochet (offprint from *Revue de l’Orient latin*) (Paris, 1908), p. 84.

well as by Mas'udi.<sup>176</sup> Similar data concerning the Cumans north of the Caucasus appear in a Georgian chronicle about Davit II Aġmashenebeli (The Builder) (1089–1125).<sup>177</sup> The Kimak tribe wintered together with their flocks in the Oghuz country.<sup>178</sup> It is known that before their migration in the east of Europe, the Cumans belonged to the tribal union led by the Kimaks.<sup>179</sup> A variant of Oghuz-Khan's legend (*Oghuzname*) mentions the summer and winter camps of the Oghuz, who lived by a un-named sea.<sup>180</sup> Similar accounts exist for the Toquz-Oghuz, one of the main branches of the Oghuz, who lived on the western border of China: "In summer and winter they wander from place to place along the grazing grounds in the climates which [happen to be] the best".<sup>181</sup> In Antiquity, the Sarmatians wintered in the swampy region near the Meotic Lake (Sea of Azov), and moved to the steppe lands in the summer.<sup>182</sup>

A revealing description of pastoralist nomads is that of the Oghuz (called Turks or Turkomans) by William of Tyre, the outstanding chronicler of the crusades. The "Turks" entered northern Persia to live a nomadic life, which is described as follows: "They were constantly roaming about here and there in search of the best pasture for their flocks. They had no cities or towns or permanent place of abode anywhere. When they wished to change their location, the people of the same tribe went together, some elder man of their tribe acting as chief. All questions which arose in the tribe referred to him, and his word was obeyed by both disputants, for no one was allowed with impunity to set aside his decision. In their wanderings, they carried along with them all their substance: studs of horses, flocks and herds, servants and maid-servants; for in these lay all their property. They paid no atten-

<sup>176</sup> Maçoudi, *Les Prairies d'or* (see above, n. 33), II, p. 19.

<sup>177</sup> P. B. Golden, "Cumanica, I: The Qipçaq in Georgia," *AEMA* 4 (1984), p. 49 (reprint in idem, *Nomads and their Neighbours in the Russian Steppe: Turks, Khazars and Qipchaqs* [Variorum Collected Studies Series] [Aldershot–Burlington, 2003], no. XI).

<sup>178</sup> Marvazi, p. 32; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 249.

<sup>179</sup> *Hudūd al-'Ālam*, p. 101; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 202–203. See also Golden, *Introduction* (see above, n. 12), pp. 202, 273, and 277; S. M. Akhinzhanov, *Кипчаки в истории средневекового Казахстана* (Alma-Ata, 1995), pp. 99–132; В. Е. Кумекон, "О древнетюркских государственных традициях в Кимакском каганате и Кипчакском ханстве," *Хабарлары известия. Серия общественных наук*, Alma-Ata, 1 (239) (2003), pp. 74–77.

<sup>180</sup> Jahn, *Die Geschichte*, p. 33.

<sup>181</sup> *Hudūd al-'Ālam*, p. 94; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 191.

<sup>182</sup> *The Geography of Strabo*, III, ed. and trans. H. L. Jones (Cambridge, Mass.–London, 1967), pp. 222–223.

tion to agriculture. Buying and selling were unknown to them, for they obtained only by exchange whatever was necessary for existence".<sup>183</sup>

Transhumance is deeply rooted in the traditions of nomadic life, and is preserved even by populations who moved towards semi-nomadism and towards state organization. This was the case of the Khazars, Bulgars and Mongols. About the former, Ibn Rusta, Gardizi and al-Marvazi knew that in winter they stayed in two towns, and when spring came they moved to the steppes, where they remained until the cold season returned.<sup>184</sup> Such accounts are substantiated by the tenth-century author Mutahhar al-Maḡdasi<sup>185</sup> and by the anonymous author of *Muḡmal al-tewariḥ* writing in the early twelfth century.<sup>186</sup> Moreover, the seasonal wanderings of the Volga Bulgars are described by Ibn Hauḡal.<sup>187</sup>

The Mongols had a very similar organization of pastoralist traditions. The Golden Horde khans—among the others, Batu and Özbäg—did the same: left their residence at Sarai in the spring and moved to a temporary camp, situated in a cooler region to the north.<sup>188</sup> Naturally, the practice of seasonal nomadism was also adopted by the ilkhans of Persia.<sup>189</sup> Transhumance was also practiced by ordinary Mongols,<sup>190</sup> as

<sup>183</sup> William, Archbishop of Tyre, *A History of Deeds Done Beyond the Sea*, I, eds. E. A. Babcock and A. C. Krey (Saint Paul, Minn., 1943), p. 72.

<sup>184</sup> Ibn-Dasta [Ibn Rusta] (see above, n. 40), p. 17; A. P. Martinez (trans.), *Gardizi* (see above, n. 43), p. 153; Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 33; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 53–54 (ibn Rusta), 167 (Gardizī), 250–251 (al-Marwazī).

<sup>185</sup> Motahhar ben Tâhir el-Maḡdisī, *Le Livre de la Création et de l'Histoire*, attribué à Abou-Zéid Ahmed ben Sahl el-Balkhī, IV, ed. Cl. Huart (Paris, 1907), p. 62; V. M. Veilis, "Народы Восточной Европы в кратком списании Мутаххара ал-Макдиси (X в.)," in *Восточные источники по истории народов Юго-Восточной и Центральной Европы*, II, ed. A. S. Tveritinova (Moscow, 1969), p. 309.

<sup>186</sup> D. Ludwig, *Struktur und Gesellschaft des Chazaren-Reiches im Licht der schriftlichen Quellen* (Münster / Westf., 1982), p. 363.

<sup>187</sup> Ibn Hauḡal (see above, n. 34), p. 387.

<sup>188</sup> Rubruck, p. 212; Al-'Umari (see above, n. 167), p. 147. See also B. Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde. Die Mongolen in Russland, 1223–1502*, 2nd ed. (Wiesbaden, 1965), pp. 264–266.

<sup>189</sup> Al-'Umari, p. 149; *Relatio* Fr. Odorici, in *SF*, I, p. 418; *Die Reise des Selingen Odorich von Pordenone nach Indien und China (1314/18–1330)*, ed. F. Reichert (Heidelberg, 1987), p. 28.

<sup>190</sup> *Meng-Ta pei-lu und Hei-Ta shih-lüeh. Chinesische Gesandtenberichte über die frühen Mongolen 1221 und 1237*, Nach Vorarbeiten von E. Haenisch und Yao Ts'ung-wu, trans. P. Olbricht and E. Pinks (Wiesbaden, 1980), pp. 104–105 (*Hei-Ta shih-lüeh*); Plano Carpini, p. 108; Rubruck, pp. 172 and 197–198; Al-Makin ibn al-'Amid, *Chronique des Ayyoubides (602–658 / 1205–6–1259–60)*, eds. A.-M. Eddé and F. Micheau (Paris, 1994), p. 23; Marco Polo, *Il Milione*, 2nd ed. D. Olivieri (Bari, 1928), p. 61; Ruy Gonzáles de Clavijo, *La route de Samarkand au temps de Tamerlan. Relation du voyage de l'ambassade de Castille à la cour de Timour Beg, 1403–1406*, ed. L. Kehren (Paris, 1990), pp. 186–188.

well as by numerous other populations of the Eurasian steppes, up to modern times. The length of the seasonal routes varied from region to region, depending upon local climate and flora. Twice a year the Turkmen and the Qırqız covered distances ranging from 20–30 to 150–200 km, but the Kazakhs are said to have moved over distances of 1,000–1,500 km.<sup>191</sup> The routes of the nomads in the east-Carpathian region, who wintered near the Danube and the sea lakes were perhaps between 250 and 600 km long for each season.

When gathering together for winter, the nomads were more vulnerable to attack, because their mobility was comparatively more restricted. Not surprisingly, the Rus' princes regularly attacked the Cumans in winter time.<sup>192</sup> Illustrative in that respect is also the “barbarian” saying, which John Skylitzes puts in the mouth of Kegen, who was urging the Byzantines to slaughter Tyrach's men that had crossed the frozen Danube: “You must kill the snake in wintertime when it cannot move its tail; for, after having warmed up in the sun, it will bring us great miseries and troubles.”<sup>193</sup> On the other hand, it is equally true that the nomads may sometimes take advantage of the winter time to cross rivers on the ice and plunder neighbouring lands.

Earlier opinions maintained that only the transhumance of the Romanian shepherds in Transylvania was a rhythmic movement, on well-established routes, whereas that of the tribes in the Eurasian steppes was more chaotic.<sup>194</sup> This is contradicted by the fact that the movement of the nomads were neither accidental, nor irregular wanderings within the territory they controlled politically and militarily. On the contrary, their seasonal migrations occurred on previously fixed routes to avoid the risk of starvation for their flocks. It is not an accident that the late Turkic burial assemblages may be found on the same sites that earlier nomads (such as those of the Bronze-Age Yamnaia, Pit-Grave and Srubby cultures, as well as the Sarmatians) buried their dead.

Soon after the Mongols obtained supremacy in Desht-i Qipchaq, precise demarcations between the grazing grounds of each clan were

---

<sup>191</sup> A. M. Khazanov, *Nomads and the Outside World*, trans. J. Crookenden (Cambridge, 1984), p. 52.

<sup>192</sup> *Лаврентіевская летопись*, in *PSRL*, I (St. Petersburg, 1846), pp. 121 and 176 (expeditions of 1109 and 1202); *Ip.let.*, pp. 136, 141 (expeditions of 1187 and 1192).

<sup>193</sup> Skylitzes, p. 459; Kedrenos, II, pp. 586–587.

<sup>194</sup> G. Vâlsan, “O fază în popularea țărilor românești,” in idem, *Opere alese*, ed. T. Morariu (Bucharest, 1971), p. 551.

established for all seasons.<sup>195</sup> It is certain that such boundaries were used also by the nomads moving in the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas before the Mongol invasion. It is also true that the repeated movements of peoples through the steppes disrupted the organization of tribal societies. Medieval sources often mention conflicts between different tribes, sometimes of one and the same confederacy. This created a relatively permanent state of tension and conflict over the control of the pasture lands. That several groups of Pechengs, Uzes, Berendei, and Cumans offered their services to neighbouring states is simply an indication that in the most of the case those nomads were losers in the struggle for grazing fields.

The nomadic way of life thus implied a fundamental contradiction between the need to impose rigorous rules for the distribution of lands, and the desire to increase those lands and the stock. Although in their essential characteristics, the Turkic communities of pastoralists in the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas may be regarded as nomads, elements of sedentism, including the cultivation of crops, are readily apparent. I will return shortly to this key change in the life of those communities. For the moment, it is important to note that the origin of such a semi-nomadic lifestyle may perhaps be the winter camps, which the nomadic communities occupied for an extended period of time. Unlike large grazing fields of the summer months, the wintering pasture lands were much more limited. While most of the clan returned to the north, it was likely that elderly or poor people remained behind to form permanent settlements. The consolidation and growth of such settlements were often curtailed by the invasion of new nomads.

Russian chroniclers often refer to the strongholds (*бежы*) of the Polovtsy / Cumans,<sup>196</sup> which were probably simple, fortified settlements, built for the purpose of wintering and for defense against attacks from Rus' or from their proxies, the Black Caps. In 1111 and 1116, the same sources mention the Cuman "towns" (*грады*) of Sharukan, Sugrov and Balin.<sup>197</sup> Those towns have not yet been unidentified, but are believed to have been somewhere in the region of the Northern Donets.<sup>198</sup> Sharukan and Sugrov were apparently named after two Cuman khans

---

<sup>195</sup> Rubruck, p. 172.

<sup>196</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 189; *Ip.let.*, pp. 129, 136, and 140.

<sup>197</sup> *Ip.let.*, pp. 2 and 7–8.

<sup>198</sup> К. В. Кудряшов, *Половецкая степь* (Moscow, 1948), pp. 91–95.

(Sharukan, Sugr), while Balin may be an altered form of the Turkish word for town, *balig*.<sup>199</sup> It is not clear whether or not those “towns” were truly urban settlements, all the more so as the Cuman tribes, as it has already been proved, did not want to perpetuate the town-like life at Sarkel-Belaia Vezha after conquering it in the early twelfth century.<sup>200</sup> As for the Pechenegs and the Oghuz, the author of *Hudūd al-ʿĀlam* specifically notes that they had no towns.<sup>201</sup> By contrast, the unknown author of the Persian chronicle mentioned above knew that the Toquz-Oghuz confederacy near the borders of China had two towns.<sup>202</sup> During the second part of the eleventh century, Mahmud al-Kashghari wrote about the “towns” of the Oghuz in central Asia.<sup>203</sup> One century later, the Arab geographer Idrisi too had learned of Oghuz fortresses.<sup>204</sup> The existence of several urban centres in the territories occupied by the Pechenegs,<sup>205</sup> Oghuz<sup>206</sup> and Cumans<sup>207</sup> in central Asia is attested in other oriental sources as well, but their testimony cannot be entirely trusted. It is not clear whether the nomads had built those towns by themselves or had conquered them from some other peoples. In the territories dominated politically by the Cumans, there were several truly urban settlements, such as Sudak in Crimea and Saksin on the Lower Volga. Both were important trade centres, but the majority of the inhabitants were not Cuman.<sup>208</sup> In the east-Carpathian area, there is no evidence of either fortifications of Turkic nomads, or of towns.

<sup>199</sup> S. A. Pletneva, *Кочевники средневековья* (Moscow, 1982), p. 59. In relation to this interpretation, see also Akhinzhanov, *Кипчаки* (see above, n. 179), pp. 138–143. For *balik* as “town,” see Mahmūd al-Kāšrārī (see above, n. 17), I, p. 290; G. Doerfer, *Türkische und mongolische Elemente im Neupersischen*, II (Wiesbaden, 1965), pp. 257–258.

<sup>200</sup> M. I. Artamonov, “Саркел-Белая Вежа,” in *МИА*, 62 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1958), pp. 82–84.

<sup>201</sup> *Hudūd al-ʿĀlam* (see above, n. 42), pp. 100–101; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 206 and 208.

<sup>202</sup> *Hudūd al-ʿĀlam*, p. 94; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 192.

<sup>203</sup> Mahmūd al-Kāšrārī, I, pp. 329, 333, 352, 353, and 362.

<sup>204</sup> Édrisi, *Géographie* (see above, n. 22), II, p. 339.

<sup>205</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 437; Konovalova [ed. and trans.], *Ал-Идриси* (see above, n. 22), p. 128; Aboulféda (see above, n. 25), II, 1, p. 293.

<sup>206</sup> Iakut al-Khamavi, *Му’джам ал-булдан*, in *Материалы по истории Средней и Центральной Азии X–XIX вв.* (see above, n. 20), p. 81; S. P. Tolstov, “Города гузов,” *Советская этнография* (1947), no. 3, pp. 52–102; *idem*, *По следам древнехорезмийской цивилизации* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1948), pp. 244–249; T. Nagrodzka-Majchrzyk, *Geneza miast u dawnych ludów tureckich (VII–XII w.)* (Wrocław–Warsaw–Cracow–Gdańsk, 1978), p. 87 ff.

<sup>207</sup> Édrisi, *Géographie*, II, pp. 398, 400, 401, and 435; I. G. Konovalova [ed. and trans.], *Ал-Идриси*, p. 119.

<sup>208</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, pp. 26 (Ibn el Asyr), 303 (Ibn Battuta); Shems ed-Din Abou-ʿAbdallah Mohʾammed de Damas, p. 381. See also J. Marquart, “Über das Volkstum”

*Dwellings and their Annexes*

Houses in native settlements are either above-ground buildings or sunken-floor features.<sup>209</sup> The above-ground buildings are houses either with ground-level floors or with slightly sunken floors, commonly by no more than 0.30–0.45 m.

The walls of the above-ground buildings were made of wattle-and-daub. It is very difficult, if not impossible in some case, to establish the contours of such houses, given that remains of daub and burnt soil have not always been discovered in coherent positions. However, judging from the existing evidence, it seems that such buildings were modest in size and were commonly of a rectangular plan. They were usually equipped with stone hearths of various sizes or of a circular rough cast surrounded by river stones. Such buildings have been found in relatively large numbers in Spinoasa and Băiceni (Iași county) (Romania), but only sporadically on other settlements of the Dridu and Răducăneni cultures. It is likely that the number of above-ground buildings on contemporary settlement sites was larger than that, but most were almost completely destroyed and thus left no traces in the archaeological record.

Above-ground buildings with slightly sunken floors, which are used nowadays as barns, kitchens and stables in the valleys of the Moldova and Siret rivers, were quite common on ninth- to thirteenth-century sites. All were rectangular and each had a single room with 2.5 to 5.0 m long walls. Holes for posts (used to support the walls and roofs) lined the contours of the buildings, but some may have also had wooden beams placed laterally. Where post holes have been found in the middle of the

---

(see above, n. 19), pp. 143 and 157; B. D. Grekov, A. Iu. Iakubovskii, *Золотая Орда и ее падение* (Moscow-Leningrad, 1950), pp. 23 and 29–31; V. Ciocîltan, *Mongolii și Marea Neagră în secolele XIII–XIV. Contribuția Cinghizhanizilor la transformarea bazinului pontic în placă turanată a comerțului euro-asiatic* (Bucharest, 1998), pp. 130–132.

<sup>209</sup> I. G. Hâncu, “Жилища на территории Молдавии в X–XVII вв.,” in *Древние жилища народов Восточной Европы* (Moscow, 1975), pp. 89–98; Teodor, *Teritoriul*, pp. 72–74, 105; I. Tentiuc, *Populația din Moldova Centrală în secolele XI–XIII* (Iași, 1996), pp. 26–50; C. Vârlan, “Locuințele și anexele gospodărești din sudul Basarabiei în secolele VIII–XI,” in *Studii de istorie medievală și premodernă. Omagiu profesorului Nicolae Edroiu, membru corespondent al Academiei Române*, ed. A. Andea (Cluj-Napoca, 2003), pp. 53–66; idem, “Câteva considerații privind cultura materială și spirituală din sudul Basarabiei în secolele VIII–XI,” in *Studii de istorie veche și medievală. Omagiu Profesorului Gheorghe Postică*, eds. T. Arnăutu, O. Munteanu, S. Musteață (Chișinău, 2004), pp. 195–199; V. Pleșca, “Locuința medievală timpurie la est de Carpați,” in ibidem, pp. 187–191.



building floor, it seems safe to assume that the posts served as supports for a gable or hip roof, which may have been covered with shingles or simply thatched. No traces of wooden floors have been found, but they may have existed at least in some of those houses with sunken floors. A few houses produced evidence of a sort of bench along the wall, fixed in the ground. Above-ground buildings with slightly sunken floors were equipped with open stone or clay hearths, with stone ovens of circular or rectangular plan and walls of stones bonded with clay mixed with pebbles, or with clay ovens of semi-oval or rectangular plan with vault, niches and front walls polished with gravel or broken glass and covered with clay. The number of such buildings with stone ovens is relatively larger in central Moldavia, on such sites as Băiceni (Iași county), Brășăuți (Neamț county) (Romania), Calfa (Anenii Noi county), Lucășeuca (Lucașovca) and Orhei-“Petruha” (Orhei county) (Republic of Moldova), while sites in southern Moldavia such as Bârlălești, Epurenii (Vaslui county) (Romania), and Hansca (Ialoveni county) (Republic of Moldova) have produced more clay ovens. Both ovens and hearths were commonly placed in the corner opposite the entrance, and only rarely in the middle of the building.

Only a few sunken-featured buildings have so far been identified, and they are all similar in shape and size to above-ground buildings with slightly sunken floors. Sunken-featured buildings had the advantage over above-ground buildings of retaining heat longer in winter, as well as of offering a cool environment in the heat of the summer. Pits for sunken-featured buildings were dug to between 0.70 and 1.20 m from the ground level. The walls of such buildings must have reached above the ground. An exception to this is a sunken-floored building found in Lucășeuca, the pit of which was 2 metres deep and was more than 31 square metres in size, being divided into two rooms.<sup>210</sup> All other sunken-floored buildings known so far are single-roomed, much like contemporary above-ground houses. Sunken-featured buildings produced no open hearths, but either clay ovens carved into one of the walls or stone ovens placed in a corner. The tradition of building sunken-featured or above-ground houses with slightly sunken floors, equipped with hearths or ovens goes back to the Neolithic Age and continues through the post-medieval period, in certain regions up to

---

<sup>210</sup> Hâncu, “Жилища на територии Молдавии,” p. 95.

early twentieth century.<sup>211</sup> After visiting the Romanian Principalities in 1788, the Italian scholar Domenico Sestini aptly described the sunken-floored dwellings in villages in the lowlands, which had been stricken by poverty, as having “a sad, miserable aspect.” He wrote: “The houses are rather dense; they are dug in the ground and they are called pit-houses (*bordei*). From the distance you can see only the smoke coming out of chimneys and when you get closer you can notice the roofs only a little higher above the ground, made of pillars covered with earth on which the grass grows.”<sup>212</sup>

Associated with clay ovens or hearths, archaeologists found in ninth- to tenth-century houses so-called “portable fireplaces,” made of daub in the form of a square tray, with a flat bottom, 4–8 cm wide, and borders raised to 10 cm.<sup>213</sup> “Portable fireplaces” appear frequently on contemporary sites in eastern Europe.<sup>214</sup> Some of them are as much as 1 m long. One specimen of rectangular shape was found Brășăuți (Neamț county), flanked by large river stones.<sup>215</sup> “Portable fireplaces” were commonly attached to the upper part of clay ovens by means of daub, an indication that they were not portable at all. However, there are also examples of large trays, which were certainly moveable, such as the round specimen found in Bârlad-“Prodana” (Vaslui county), with a wide opening in the middle and a back wall of the same height and thickness as the lateral one, through which smoke could pass without affecting the rest of the oven. This unique type of tray, without any parallels on any medieval sites in the extra-Carpathian area, is known in modern Oltenia as *cirimna* (or *ciripnea*), and is used for baking loaves of unleavened bread.<sup>216</sup> This strongly suggests that rectangular specimens may have also been used for baking bread or cereals.

Houses in ninth- to thirteenth-century settlements were often surrounded by baking clay or stone ovens, silos, and refuse pits. Silo pits

---

<sup>211</sup> V. Butură, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 156), pp. 81–86; I. Praoveanu, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 156), pp. 66–67; M. I. I. Gorgoi, “Antropologia spațiului,” *Anuarul Muzeului Etnografic al Moldovei* 1 (2001), pp. 193–194.

<sup>212</sup> *Prin țările române. Călători străini din secolul al XIX-lea*, ed. S. Vărzaru (Bucharest, 1984), p. 52.

<sup>213</sup> Teodor, *Teritoriul*, pp. 74–75.

<sup>214</sup> J. Kudrnač, “Cîteva date noi despre agricultura la slavi,” *AM* 1 (1961), p. 232; J. Eisner, *Rukověť slovanské archeologie. Počátky Slovanů a jejich kultury* (Prague, 1966), pp. 283–285.

<sup>215</sup> Spinei and Monah, “Așezarea prefeudală” (see above, n. 79), p. 375.

<sup>216</sup> M. Brătloveanu-Popilian, “Cirimna—o vatră portativă,” *Revista muzeelor* 5 (1968), no. 6, pp. 554–555.

are known since the Neolithic Age, are mentioned in the Latin literature, and in certain parts of Romania are still employed. The walls of the silo pit were commonly fired for insulation and protection against rodents.<sup>217</sup>

Several ninth- to eleventh-century settlements produced evidence of clusters of two to three buildings within less than 5 metres from each other. Such clusters do not necessarily indicate the existence of different families, as has been suggested. They may rather represent compounds inhabited by two or three generations of the same kin group, with each generation inhabiting a separate house, and houses abandoned after the death of their owners being turned into barns. There are clear ethnographical analogies for such practices.<sup>218</sup> A family may have built several buildings at the same time for various purposes. Thus, buildings found next to each other may not all have been used at the same time. Rather, when one building was abandoned, another was built next to it. There is no evidence of stables, and judging from the ethnographic analogies, it is likely that animals (cattle and sheep) were kept either in open air or in corrals.<sup>219</sup>

The building style of the native settlements found within the entire region between the eastern Carpathians and the Dniester River, as well as the associated finds (Figs. 6–22), bespeak the sedentary character of their inhabitants.

\* \* \*

Equestrian nomadism has a strong influence upon the shape and function of buildings erected by pastoralists in the Eurasian steppes. Most contemporary authors with good knowledge of the nomadic lifestyle emphasize the absence of permanent, stable dwellings, the use of carts or wagons, and of tents, sometimes replaced by felt huts. Several Byzantine and Arab sources describe the Pechenegs as living in tents

---

<sup>217</sup> R. O. Maier, "Gropile de păstrat bucate (cereale) în Dobrogea," *Revista muzeelor* 5 (1968), no. 3, pp. 278–279; V. Neamțu, *La technique de la production céréalière en Valachie et en Moldavie jusqu'au XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Bucharest, 1975), pp. 258–262.

<sup>218</sup> R. Vuia, "Curtea și gospodăria," in *Etnografia Văii Bistriței. Zona Bicaz*, gen. ed. R. Vuia (Piatra Neamț, 1973), pp. 110–112.

<sup>219</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 116; Vlăduțiu, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 160), p. 254. That horses in sixteenth-century Moldavia were not kept in stables is specifically mentioned by A. M. Graziani. See *Călători*, II, p. 383.

and in wagons or carts.<sup>220</sup> Carts were also used for the protection of the camps, even during military campaigns.<sup>221</sup> There are also references to Oghuz life in felt huts<sup>222</sup> and to their crossing the frozen Volga on carts.<sup>223</sup> On the basis of earlier sources, Sharaf al-Zaman Tahir Marvazi wrote in the early 1100s that some of the Ghuzz (= Oghuz) of central Asia “live in wastelands and deserts, having tents and felt-huts (*khargah*); their wastelands are on the border of Transoxiana and partly also of Khwarazm”.<sup>224</sup> In the early 900s, a chronicler in Baghdad made the following remarks about the Qarluqs, the Toquz-Oghuz, the Turkash, the Kimak and the Oghuz of central Asia: “These Turkic populations had neither halting places nor fortification: they lived in Turkic tents, with rings whose straps are made of horse or ox skin, covered with felt, because the peoples are very skilful in making felt, as they used to make clothes of it”.<sup>225</sup>

A French chronicler of the Fourth Crusade had similar things to say about the Cumans: “They are a wild people who neither plough, nor sow, nor have any cabin or house, but they have some felt tents, dwellings where they hide, and they feed on milk, cheese and meat” (*Ce sont une gent sauvage, qui ne arent ne sèment, ne n’ont borde ne maison, ains ont unes tentes de feutre, habitacles où il se mussent, et si vivent de lait et de fromage et de chair*).<sup>226</sup> This in turn dovetails an-Nuwairi’s comments about Cumans under Mongol rule: “These [people] live in shelters not in houses, they do not have stable settlements, and they spend their summer in one place and the winter in another”.<sup>227</sup> The illuminations of the *Radziwiłł Chronicle*, dated long after the conquest of Desht-i-Qipchak by the Mongols, show Cumans using, besides carts or wagons, some

---

<sup>220</sup> *Hudūd al-‘Ālam* (see above, n. 42), p. 160; A. P. Martínez (trans.), *Gardizi*, p. 151; *Orient. Ber.*, pp. 164 (Gardīzi), 215 (*Hudūd al-‘Ālam*); Attaliates (see above, n. 130), p. 30; Psellos, II, p. 127; Skylitzes, p. 455; Kedrenos, II, p. 582; *FHDR*, III, pp. 84–85 (Anna Comnena), 222–223 (Zonaras); IV, pp. 32–33 (Psellos, *Discursus*).

<sup>221</sup> Leonis Diaconi Caloensis *Historiae*, ed. C. B. Hase (Bonn, 1828), p. 157; Matthieu d’Édesse (see above, n. 132), p. 200; Matthew of Edessa (see above, n. 132), p. 155; Anne Comnène (see above, n. 18), II, pp. 96–98, 107–109, 117, 119, 122, 141; Snorri Sturluson, *Heimskringla*, ed. B. Adalbjarnarson, III (Reykjavik, 1951), p. 371.

<sup>222</sup> Ibn Fadlan (see above, n. 162), p. 19; *Hudūd al-‘Ālam*, p. 100; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 206.

<sup>223</sup> Al-Mas’ūdī (see above, n. 33), p. 91; Marquart, “Über das Volkstum” (see above, n. 19), p. 26; Minorsky, *History of Sharvan* (see above, n. 162), p. 150.

<sup>224</sup> Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 29; *Orient. Ber.*, pp. 242–243.

<sup>225</sup> Ya’kubi (see above, n. 30), p. 113.

<sup>226</sup> Robert de Clari, *La conquête de Constantinople*, in *Historiens et chroniqueurs du Moyen Âge*, eds. A. Pauphilet, Ed. Pognon (Paris, 1952), p. 50.

<sup>227</sup> Tiesenhhausen, I, p. 540.

rectangular or circular beehive-like structures as winter dwellings<sup>228</sup> That Cumans, like Mongols,<sup>229</sup> used tents<sup>230</sup> is repeatedly mentioned in several sources.

Even the Turkic and Mongol khans lived in cloth tents or felt yurtas called *orda* or *ürgü*. The latter were quite large, hundreds of people.<sup>231</sup> Évariste-Régis Huc, a nineteenth-century French traveller and missionary, describes similar tents in use among the nomads on the northern frontier of China: “The Mongol tent, about three feet from the ground, is cylindrical in form. It then becomes conical, like a pointed hat. The woodwork of the tent is composed below of a trellis-work of crossed bars, which fold up and expand at pleasure. Above these a circle of poles, fixed in the trellis-work, meets at the top, like the sticks of an umbrella. Over the woodwork is stretched, once or twice, a thick covering of coarse linen, and thus the tent is composed. The door, which is always a folding door, is low and narrow. A beam crosses it at the bottom by way of threshold, so that on entering you have at once to raise your feet and lower your head. Besides the door there is another opening at the top of the tent to let out the smoke. This opening can at any time be closed with a piece of felt fastened above it in the tent, which can be pulled over it by means of a string, the end of which hangs by the door”.<sup>232</sup>

<sup>228</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 200.

<sup>229</sup> *The Travels of an Alchemist. The Journey of the Taoist Ch'ang-ch'un from China to the Hindukush at the Summons of Chingiz Khan Recorded by his Disciple Li Chih-ch'ang*, trans. A. Waley (London, 1931; reprint Westport, Connecticut, 1976), p. 67; *Meng-Ta pei-lu und Hei-Ta shih-lüeh* (see above, n. 190), pp. 104–105 (*Hei-Ta shih-lüeh*); Guiragos, *Extrait*, in Éd. Dulaurier, “Les Mongols d’après les historiens arméniens,” *Journal Asiatique*, 5th Ser., 11 (1858), no. 4–5, p. 457; Tiesenhäusen, I, p. 292 (Ibn Battuta); Marco Polo, *Il Milione* (see above, n. 190), p. 61; Ruy Gonzáles de Clavijo (see above, n. 190), p. 186; C. Brunel, “David d’Ashby auteur méconnu des Faits des Tartares,” *Romania* 87 (1958), no. 79, pp. 42–43. On the later period, see Nicolaie Milescu Spătarul, *Jurnal de călătorii în China*, ed. C. Bărbulescu (Bucharest, 1956), p. 86.

<sup>230</sup> *Tour du monde ou voyage du rabbin Péthachia de Ratisbonne dans le douzième siècle*, ed. E. Carmoly (Paris, 1831), p. 12; Rogerius, pp. 26 and 65; Hurmuzaki, I, p. 421.

<sup>231</sup> Ibn Fadlan, pp. 182–183 (commentary A. Z. V. Togan); Taki-Eddin-Ahmed Makrizi, *Histoire des sultans Mamlouks de l’Égypte*, trans. [É. M.] Quatremère, I, [1] (Paris, 1837), p. 214; Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde* (see above, n. 188), pp. 428–431; L. L. Viktorova, *Монголы. Происхождение народа и истоки культуры* (Moscow, 1980), pp. 51–58; P. A. Andrews, *Nomad Tent Types in the Middle East*, I, *Framed Tents*, 1 (Wiesbaden, 1997), *passim*; idem, *Felt Tents and Pavilions. The Nomadic Tradition and its Interaction with Princely Tentage*, I (London, 1999), pp. 89–665; C. P. Atwood, *Encyclopedia of Mongolia and the Mongol Empire* (New York, 2004), pp. 613–616.

<sup>232</sup> É.-R. Huc, *Travels in Tartary*, ed. H. D’Ardenne de Tizac, trans. W. Hazlitt (New York–London, 1927), p. 47.

John of Plano Carpini's description of the Mongol yurts, used both in peacetime and on campaign, points to tent-like round structures made of sticks and wattle. Each had an opening at the top for both light to come in and smoke to get out. The fireplace was located in the middle of the yurt. The walls, the roof and the doors were all covered with felt. The size of the yurt corresponded to the rank and wealth of the owner. Some of them were permanent, others could be carried around on wagons pulled by oxen; they could be transported as such or dismantled.<sup>233</sup> The details of this description are substantiated by the travelogue of William of Rubruck.<sup>234</sup> An eighteenth-century lithography shows Kalmuks still living in yurts similar to those described by John of Plano Carpini (Giovanni di Pian di Carpine).<sup>235</sup>

The felt huts of the Pechenegs, the Khazars and the Oghuz, which are mentioned by an anonymous Persian author of the tenth century,<sup>236</sup> were probably not much different from those of Mongols. Until very recent times, the kind of yurt described by John of Plano Carpini remained in use among the nomads of central Asia and the south of eastern Europe<sup>237</sup> (Fig. 60). Numerous other sources reveal that Mongols also lived in wagons.<sup>238</sup> The Moldavian chronicler Grigore Ureche

<sup>233</sup> Plano Carpini, p. 35; idem (Giovanni di Pian di Carpine), *Storia dei Mongoli*, eds. P. Daffinà, C. Leonardi, M. C. Lungarotti, E. Menestrò, L. Petech (Spoleto, 1989), pp. 234–235 and 341–342; idem (Jean de Plan Carpin), *Histoire des Mongols*, trans. and eds. D. J. Becquet and L. Hambis (Paris, 1965), p. 34; idem (Johannes von Plano Carpini), *Künde von den Mongolen, 1245–1247*, ed. F. Schmieder (Sigmaringen, 1997), p. 45.

<sup>234</sup> Rubruck, p. 172. See also B. Vladimirtsov, *Le régime social des Mongols. Le féodalisme nomade*, trans. M. Carsow (Paris, 1948), pp. 49–51.

<sup>235</sup> W. Heissig, *Die Mongolen*, 2nd ed. (Munich–Nördlingen, 1978), p. 85.

<sup>236</sup> *Hudūd al-'Ālam* (see above, n. 42), pp. 100 and 160; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 206 and 215.

<sup>237</sup> H. Haslund, *Tents in Mongolia (Yabonah). Adventures and Experiences among the Nomads of Central Asia* (New York, 1934); *Etnografia continentelor*, II, 2, eds. S. P. Tolstov, M. G. Levin, N. N. Cheboksarov (Bucharest, 1961), pp. 31, 51, 97, 278, 363, etc. On the typology of the yurts and felt huts used by Eurasian nomads, see also S. I. Vainshtein, "Problems of the history of the dwellings of the steppe nomads of Eurasia," *Soviet Anthropology and Archeology* 18 (1979), no. 1, pp. 50–83; D. Couchaux, *Habitats nomades* (Paris, 1980), p. 83 ff.; E. E. Kuz'mina, V. A. Livshits, "Еще раз о происхождении юрты," in *Прошлое Средней Азии (Археология, нумизматика, эпиграфика и этнография)*, ed. V. A. Ranov (Dushanbe, 1987), pp. 243–250; N. Zh. Shakhanova, "The yurt in the traditional worldview of Central Asian nomads," in *Foundations of Empire. Archaeology and Art of the Eurasian Steppes*, ed. G. Seaman (Los Angeles, 1992), pp. 157–183; Andrews, *Nomad Tent Types*, I, 1, p. 3 ff.

<sup>238</sup> *The Travels of an Alchemist* (see above, n. 229), p. 67; *Meng-Ta pei-lu und Hei-Ta shih-liieh* (see above, n. 190), pp. 104–105 (*Hei-Ta shih-liieh*); Guiragos (see above, n. 149), p. 457; Laonic Chalcocondil, *Expuneri istorice*, ed. V. Grecu (Bucharest, 1958),

(c. 1590–1647) knew that the Tatars did not live in houses, but on carts,<sup>239</sup> and western travellers of the fourteenth to the seventeenth century confirm that the Tatars in the Bugeac were nomads who lived on carts or wagons.<sup>240</sup> When arranged in a circle and tied together, the carts formed a kind of corral.

For transport, the nomads of the first half of the second millennium used horses, oxen and sometimes camels. When large rivers were not frozen, and no fords were available, the nomads crossed them on large, inflated skin bags, on which both people and wagons were loaded. Horses were tied to such skins and they had to swim and pull them. The nomadic lifestyle and use of tents and wagons by the Turkic and Mongol populations continued the traditions of the nomads of Antiquity and the early Middle Ages (Scythians, Sarmatians, Huns, and Avars). Many interesting written references about them have been preserved.<sup>241</sup>

The wagons were not only a shelter and a means of locomotion; they also had an important strategic role, as they could make up real mobile fortresses of the steppe tribes. During campaigns, they were arranged in a circle and tightly tied together, in order to protect the warriors, as well as their families, herds and wealth. During the battle on the Catalaunic Fields (Châlons-sur-Marne) in 451 Attila is said to have rescued his army from disaster by withdrawing to his camp encircled

---

p. 94; N. Nicoloudis [ed.], Laonikos Chalkokondyles, *A Translation and Commentary of the «Demonstrations of Histories» (Books I–III)* (Athens, 1996), pp. 294–295.

<sup>239</sup> Gr. Ureche, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1955), p. 117.

<sup>240</sup> *Călători*, III, p. 179 (François de Pavie); VII, p. 516 (G. Levasseur de Beauplan).

<sup>241</sup> Herodotus, II, *Books III and IV*, trans. A. D. Godley (Cambridge, Mass.–London, 1982), pp. 246–247 and 322–323; *FHDR*, I, pp. 30–31 (Herodotus), 78–81 (Hippocrates), 182–183 (Salustius), 210–213 (Horatius), 226–227, 242–243 (Strabon), 596–597 (Arian), 656–657 (Filostratus); II, pp. 102–103 (Scriitorii istoriei împăraților), 116–119 (Ammianus Marcellinus), 458–459 (Procopius din Caesarea, *Despre zidiri*), 508–509 (Menander Protector), 526–527 (Euagrios Scolasticul), 554–555 (Mauricius); IV, pp. 20–21 (*Chronicon Monembasiae*), 126–127 (Nicephoros Callistos Xanthopoulos); P. Cornelius Tacitus, *Despre originea și țara germanilor*, trans. T. A. Naum, in idem, *Opere*, I (Bucharest, 1958), p. 127; Theophylacti Simocattae *Historiarum libri octo*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1834), p. 98; *Tò perì tēs ktíseōs tēs Monembasías chronikón / Cronica Monemvasiei*, trans. M. Alexianu and R. Curcă (Iași, 2005), pp. 86–87. See also A. Forbiger, *Handbuch der alten Geographie aus den Quellen bearbeitet*, II, 2nd ed. (Hamburg, 1877), pp. 464–465; D. Braund, “The movement of Scythian nomads nuancing ‘otherness,’” *Journal of Mediterranean Studies* 10 (2000), nos. 1–2, pp. 21–30.

by wagons.<sup>242</sup> The same tactics was used by Khazars against Arabs,<sup>243</sup> by Pechenegs against Byzantines,<sup>244</sup> and by Mongols against all their enemies.<sup>245</sup> John Kinnamos mentions that during a battle with Emperor John II Comnenus in 1122–1123, the Pechenegs and their allies used wagons as battlements.<sup>246</sup> In this respect, moving the army flanked by the carts to the battlefield was a specifically nomadic tactic, much like fortifying the camp by surrounding it with carts. Such tactics were also adopted by non-nomadic peoples, from Byzantines<sup>247</sup> and Slavens,<sup>248</sup> to the Cossacks,<sup>249</sup> Poles<sup>250</sup> and Hussite rebels in Bohemia.<sup>251</sup>

### *Agriculture*

In the economic structure of the Romanian communities two traditional occupations prevailed during the tenth to thirteenth centuries: agriculture and stock breeding. Given the favourable environment, this economic profile was sufficient for subsistence and could occasionally produce a surplus for exchange.

<sup>242</sup> Iordanes, *Getica* (*IIR*, XIV) (1939), pp. 59 and 130.

<sup>243</sup> M. I. Artamonov, *История хазар* (Leningrad, 1962), p. 207; Ludwig, *Struktur* (see above, n. 186), p. 217.

<sup>244</sup> Leonis Diaconi Caloensis *Historiae*, p. 157; Matthieu d'Édesse (see above, n. 132), p. 200; Matthew of Edessa (see above, n. 132), p. 155; Anne Comnène (see above, n. 18), II, pp. 96–98, 107–109, 117, 119, 122, 141; Snorri Sturluson (see above, n. 221), p. 371; *Saga Óláfs konungs hins helga. Den store saga om Olav den Hellige*, I, eds. O. A. Johnsen and J. Helgason (Oslo, 1941), p. 633.

<sup>245</sup> S. A. Pletneva, “О построении кочевнического лагеря-вежи,” *СА* (1964), 4, p. 139.

<sup>246</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome* (see above, n. 4), p. 8; Choniates (see above, n. 143), p. 21; Michel le Syrien, III (see above, n. 58), p. 207.

<sup>247</sup> Mauricius, *Arta militară*, ed. H. Mihăescu (Bucharest, 1970), pp. 340–341 and 254–255.

<sup>248</sup> Theophylactus Simocatta, p. 272.

<sup>249</sup> *Călători*, VII, p. 517 (G. Levasseur de Beauplan); Miron Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei de la Aron vodă încoace*, in idem, *Opere*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1958), pp. 145 and 155.

<sup>250</sup> *Călători*, II, p. 620 (Graziani); III, p. 646 (*Țiarul expediției lui Żamoyski în Moldova din anul 1595*); IV, pp. 413 (Ch. de Joppécourt), 455 (*Jurnal de campanie din 1620*), 464 (Anonim polon, 1620); D. Cantemir, *Viața lui Constantin Cantemir zis cel Bătrîn, domnul Moldovei* (Bucharest, 1959), p. 83.

<sup>251</sup> M. Dan, *Sub flamura Taborului. Mișcarea revoluționară husită*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1964), pp. 171 and 250; J. Boulier, *Jean Hus* (Brussels, 1982), pp. 273–274; Z. Żygulski Jr., “The wagon laager,” *Fasciculi Archaeologiae Historicae*, Łódź, 7 (1994), pp. 15–18.



One of the features of the Romanian rural economy is the absence of any contradiction between the two main occupations. On the contrary, they worked together and harmoniously completed each other almost everywhere in the Carpathian-Danube region. Tilling the fields requires animals, the food supply for humans depended not only on pastures, but also on the growing of various grassy species. Such a concord could not exist between the sedentary societies of agriculturists, on one hand, and nomadic or semi-nomadic societies specializing in pastoralism, because of disputes over land use. What a farmer may wish to use for the cultivation of crops, a shepherd may like to be turned into a grazing field. Such dissensions do not seem to have affected Romanian communities, whose rural economy was mixed but also autarkic. Each family combined the growing of the cereals and other crops with animal breeding, and sometimes with handicrafts that did not require too much specialisation. This subsistence economy was designed to produce everything necessary without resorting to exchange with other communities. Vegetables made the greatest contribution to the daily diet, especially since meat and dairy were prohibited by church canons for three days a week and another 95 days during Lent and other fasting periods before major holidays.<sup>252</sup>

The archaeological, linguistic, and ethnographic evidence combined emphasize the role of agriculture in economy, even prior to the rise of the independent medieval states. The location of settlement sites next to some of the most fertile soil types is typical for a population of agriculturists. Finds from the settlements themselves confirm that conclusion: agricultural implements, querns, silos containing charred seeds. The implements come in a large variety of coulter, sickles (Fig. 7/10, 11, 15), hoes, billknives (Figs. 7/12, 13; 9/10) and scraping tools. In comparison to the previous period, ninth- to eleventh-century agricultural implements show a certain degree of technological progress. They have also been found in much larger numbers.<sup>253</sup> Hoards of

---

<sup>252</sup> Butură, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 156), p. 127; K. Heitmann, *Das Rumänenbild im deutschen Sprachraum, 1775–1918. Eine imagologische Studie* (Cologne–Vienna, 1985), pp. 142–143.

<sup>253</sup> N. Edroiu, “Despre apariția plugului în țările române,” *Terra nostra* 2 (1971), pp. 109–113; D. Gh. Teodor, “Descoperiri arheologice în Moldova referitoare la agricultura din secolele VI–XI e.n.,” *Terra nostra* 3 (1973), pp. 223–232; Șt. Olteanu, “Agricultura la est și la sud de Carpați în sec. IX–XIV (I),” *Muzeul Național* 1 (1974), pp. 45–47 and 51–52; Neamțu, *La technique* (see above, n. 217), pp. 62–64, 69–79, 177–179, and 201; Gh. Postică, “Agricultura medievală timpurie în spațiul Pruto-Nistrean,” in *Studia*

agricultural implements and weapons are particularly relevant in this respect. Many such hoards have been found in the Carpathian Bend area of present-day Vrancea, in Răstoaca and Dragosloveni (Vrancea county) as well as Budești (Buzău county).<sup>254</sup> A large number of tools have been found on the settlement site at Gârbovăț (Galați county)<sup>255</sup> (Fig. 7/5, 7, 11–15). The sharp increase in the number of agricultural implements ever since the last centuries of the first millennium is a clear sign of an increasing demand of food, which in turn signals significant demographic changes.

Given that agricultural implements in the Carpathian-Dniester region are very similar to those in other neighbouring areas,<sup>256</sup> it appears that at least from a technological point of view, communities of agriculturists in that region were not very different from others in central and eastern Europe. Until the eighteenth century, productivity in agriculture was very low, with relatively small yields, in spite of field and crop rotation, as well as the use of manuring. As it was very difficult to store, and no cereals could be imported, a year with a poor harvest must have had a catastrophic impact on local communities. Much like elsewhere in Europe at that time,<sup>257</sup> the local population was thus exposed to starvation in years of famine, a phenomenon which persisted in Moldavia during the subsequent centuries.

The paleobotanical analysis of charred seeds found on several sites dated to the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth century, has revealed that the main crops were several species of wheat and barley, as well as rye, oats, millet, and peas.<sup>258</sup> Many of them were known in the area since the

---

*in honorem Ion Năcuță. Omagiu cu prilejul împlinirii a 60 de ani*, eds. T. Arnăuț, A. Zănoici, and S. Matveev (Chișinău, 1999), pp. 268–279.

<sup>254</sup> A. Paragină, “Un nou depozit de arme și unelte din feudalismul timpuriu descoperit pe teritoriul județului Vrancea,” *Studii și comunicări* 2, Focșani (1979), pp. 41–44; A. Canache and F. Curta, “Depozite de unelte și arme medievale timpurii de pe teritoriul României,” *Mousaios* 4 (1994), no. 1, pp. 179–221.

<sup>255</sup> Excavations carried by Adrian C. Florescu. See D. Gh. Teodor, “Depozitul de unelte și arme medievale timpurii de la Gârbovăț, jud. Galați,” *MA* 23 (2004), pp. 395–406.

<sup>256</sup> J. Henning, *Südosteuropa zwischen Antike und Mittelalter. Archäologische Beiträge zur Landwirtschaft des 1. Jahrtausends u. Z.* (Berlin, 1987), p. 42 ff.; F. Curta, “Blacksmiths, warriors, and tournaments of value: dating and interpreting early medieval hoards of iron implements in Eastern Europe,” *Ephemeris Napocensis* 7 (1997), pp. 211–268.

<sup>257</sup> F. Braudel, *Civilisation matérielle et capitalisme (XV<sup>e</sup>–XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle)*, I (Paris, 1967), p. 78 ff.; J. Le Goff, *La civilisation de l'Occident médiéval* (Paris, 1967), p. 290 ff.

<sup>258</sup> Z. V. Ianushevich, *Культурные растения Юго-Запада СССР по палеоботаническим исследованиям* (Kishinev, 1976), pp. 86–89, 95, 101, 117, 129, 138, 142, 147, 151, 159, 165, and 172; Chebotarenko, *Калфа* (see above, n. 87), p. 82.

Neolithic Age,<sup>259</sup> an indication of a very long continuity of agricultural practices. Equally relevant for the long traditions established in agricultural occupations among Romanians are the many names of crops, tillage and harvesting, as well as gardening practices and tools., all of which are of Latin origin: *câmp* (Latin “campus”) = field, *a ara* (“arare”) = to plough, *a săpa* (“sappare”) = to dig by means of a hoe, *a semăna* (“seminare”) = to sow, *sămânță* (“sementia”) = seed, *a secera* (“sicilare”) = to reap, *a treiera* (“tribulare”) = to thresh, *a culege* (“colligere”) = to gather, *a măcina* (“machinare”) = to grind, *seceră* (“sicilem”) = sickle, *sapă* (“sappa”) = hoe, *furcă* (“furca”) = pitchfork, *grâu* (“granum”) = wheat, *secară* (“sicalem”) = rye, *orz* (“hordeum”) = barley, *spic* (“spicus”) = corn ear, *pai* (“palium”) = straw, *mei* (“miliun”) = millet, *in* (“linum”) = flax, *cânepă* (“canapa” < “cannabis”) = hemp, *legumă* (“legumen”) = vegetable, *ceapă* (“cepa”) = onion, and *varză* (“viridia”) = cabbage.<sup>260</sup>

There are also a great number of Slavic loans in Romanian for all sorts of agricultural tools and techniques. It has long been noted that such a diverse terminology could not been adopted by speakers of Romanian, if indeed at the time of their linguistic contact with the Slavs, Romanians would not have already practiced an advanced agriculture that needed such a terminology.<sup>261</sup>

Many beliefs and ritual practices, some of clear pre-Christian origin, have been preserved in connection with agriculture. In fact, rituals connected with agriculture are among the most important in rural areas and reveal the enduring continuity of agricultural occupations in the areas populated by Romanians. Most significant in this respect is the fact that such rituals and magic practices concern the cultivation of wheat and not of maize, which has been introduced only in the seventeenth

<sup>259</sup> Ianushevich, *Культурные растения, passim*; E. Comşa, “Betrachtungen über den Pflanzenanbau während der Jungsteinzeit auf dem Gebiet Rumäniens,” *Beiträge zur Ur- und Frühgeschichte* 1 (1981), pp. 111–127.

<sup>260</sup> Al. Bocăneţu, “Terminologia agrară în limba română,” *Codrul Cosminului* 2–3 (1925–1926), pp. 123–137; D. Ionescu-Sachelarie, “Despre viaţa păstorească şi agricolă din trecutul nostru,” *Cercetări şi studii geografice*, 2nd Ser., 1 (1937–1938), pp. 146–147; S. Puşcariu, “Contribuţia Transilvaniei la formarea şi evoluţia limbii române,” in idem, *Cercetări şi studii*, ed. I. Dan (Bucharest, 1974), pp. 420–421; D. Macrea, *Linguistică şi cultură* (Bucharest, 1978), pp. 60–61; D. Rancu, “Terminologia românească de origine latină a uneltelor agricole din Banatul roman,” *Tibiscum (Studii şi comunicări de etnografie-istorie)*, Caransebeş, 11 (2003), pp. 285–292. See also E. Gamillscheg, *Romania Germanica. Sprach- und Siedlungsgeschichte der Germanen auf dem Boden des alten Römerreichs*, II (Berlin–Leipzig, 1935), p. 241.

<sup>261</sup> Ivănescu, *Istoria* (see above, n. 1), p. 259.

century. Most such practices revolve around the concept of fertility, for which people used to make various invocations in order to bring the rain, to stop or prevent the hail, to protect the cattle, or to secure the regeneration of crops.<sup>262</sup>

The data mentioned above show how wrong those are who continue to assert the idea that the Romanians were a people almost exclusively of shepherds in the early Middle Ages, with only secondary agricultural occupations, which they supposedly adopted from their Slavic and Hungarian neighbours, after the foundation of national states. Such ideas are based exclusively on the situation in the mountain region of northern and central Balkans, where transhumant pastoralism was the major economic strategy of communities of Vlachs. However, in the lands north of the Lower Danube the environment, as well as the social and political circumstances were different, and consequently no parallels can be drawn between Vlachs in the Balkans and Romanians in the Romanian lands.

The relation between agriculture and cattle breeding must have been different from that of the modern period, given that grazing fields were larger than cultivated fields. By 1850, the latter spanned an area that was only half of that of the pastureland in the Romanian Principalities. In addition, forests, which occupied a much larger area in the past, were also used for grazing.<sup>263</sup> One must also keep in mind that while the profits of cattle breeding were relatively speaking the same, the adoption of technological innovations and new practices increased yield in agriculture, which encouraged the growth of cultivated fields at the expense of pastureland. The use of marginal areas with less fertile soils led to their rapid exhaustion, a phenomenon that was much faster than if the fields would have been used as pastureland. With fields left fallow, productivity rapidly declined. The threat of crop failure or famine thus compelled local communities to be more flexible and adopt a mixed economy, with an equal emphasis on cattle breeding.

Just as in modern times, the importance of agriculture and stock-breeding in the peasant farming of the Middle Ages was not the same

---

<sup>262</sup> Gh. Iordache, *Ocupații tradiționale pe teritoriul României*, I (Craiova, 1985); Al. Popescu, *Tradiții de muncă românești în obiceiuri, folclor, artă populară* (Bucharest, 1986); D. Pop, *Obiceiuri agrare în tradiția populară românească* (Cluj-Napoca, 1989).

<sup>263</sup> P. P. Panaitescu, "Producția și viața economică," in V. Costăchel, P. P. Panaitescu, A. Cazacu, *Viața feudală în Țara Românească și Moldova (sec. XIV–XVII)* (Bucharest, 1957), pp. 16–23; Iordache, *Ocupații*, I, pp. 69–72.

for all the regions of Moldavia. Close to the mountains, in marginal areas with poor soils and harsh weather, the cultivation of crops was not particularly profitable. Instead, local communities relied on the breeding of small horned cattle. Dimitrie Cantemir claimed that during his lifetime, people in the hilly districts of Vrancea and Câmpulung Moldovenesc had no idea what a plough was, their main occupation being cattle breeding.<sup>264</sup> By contrast, in the lowlands with fertile soils the cultivation of crops was comparatively much more important.

\* \* \*

Since they were nomads, the Pechenegs, the Uzes / Oghuz, and the Cumans were not interested in agriculture. Most authors insist that they had an exclusively pastoralist economy. Otto of Freising specifically mentions Pechenegs and Cumans neighbouring Hungary, who did not till the soil.<sup>265</sup> With different words, Robert de Clari nonetheless confirmed Otto of Freising's earlier account.<sup>266</sup> However, Abd ar-Rashid al-Bakivi insisted that the Pechenegs ate millet.<sup>267</sup> This bit of information, though from an early fifteenth-century geography, must not be dismissed, for it most certainly is of an earlier date. According to Abul-'Abbas Ahmed Yak'ubi, millet was the only crop cultivated in Turkestan, among the Qarluqs, the Toquz-Oghuz, the Turkash, the Kimaks, and the Oghuz.<sup>268</sup> Recent archaeological studies have confirmed the existence of agricultural practices among the Huns, the Avars and the Bulgars.<sup>269</sup> That the same must have been true about late Turkic groups Rabbi Pethachia from Ratisbona (modern Regensburg), Desht-i Qipchaq in the twelfth century, noticed the existence of sown fields and the fact that the *Kedars*—a Biblical name used in reference to the

<sup>264</sup> Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 302–303.

<sup>265</sup> Ottonis episcopi Frisingensis et Rahewini *Gesta Frederici seu rectius cronica*, ed. F.-J. Schmale (Darmstadt, 1965), pp. 192–193; Otto of Freising and his continuator, Rahewin, *The Deeds of Frederick Barbarossa*, trans. and ed. C. C. Mierow, with the collab. of R. Emery (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1994), p. 66.

<sup>266</sup> Robert de Clari (see above, n. 226), p. 50.

<sup>267</sup> Al-Bakivi (see above, n. 35), p. 102.

<sup>268</sup> Ya'kubi (see above, n. 30), p. 113.

<sup>269</sup> M. Beranová, "Die Archäologie über die Pflanzenproduktion bei den Hunnen, Awaren und Protobulgaren," *Památky archeologické* 76 (1986), pp. 81–103.

Cumans—prepared a meal of rice and millet, but, as confirmed by other contemporary sources,<sup>270</sup> they did not eat bread.<sup>271</sup>

The diet of the Turkic-Mongol population of Desht-i Qipchaq, as described by travellers crossing the region after the invasion of 1236–1242, contained millet, barley, rice and beans.<sup>272</sup> As most cereals were not baked, but used in the preparation of drinks, it follows that the harvest was rather poor. Moreover, this is a situation shortly after the rise of the Golden Horde, when the economic and social configuration in the steppe had changed. Under Mongol rule, the Cumans were surely deprived of their herds, and maybe some of them were forced to learn how to work the land. Judging from the existing ethnographical analogies, most scholars agree that pastoralists do not adopt agricultural occupations, unless constrained by poverty.<sup>273</sup>

Speaking about the sowing of millet and wheat by the “Scythian people” (*γένος τι Σκυθικόν*) who attacked the Byzantine Empire in 1086 and concluded an alliance with the rulers of the Paristran towns,<sup>274</sup> those people cannot be considered to have been Pechenegs, as some specialists believe.<sup>275</sup> By the above-mentioned designation, Anna Comnena must have meant the natives, who had joined the nomads, because it is not conceivable that the latter practised tillage themselves during a plunder expedition.

Between the tenth and the thirteenth century, agriculture played only a secondary role in the pastoralist economy of the Turkic tribes, as their way of life did not allow them to take care for cultivated fields.

---

<sup>270</sup> Heinrici *Chronicon Lyvoniae*, ed. W. Arndt (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis recudi fecit*) (Hannoverae, 1874), p. 181; Heinrici *Chronicon Livoniae* / Heinrichs *Livländische Chronik*, 2nd ed., recognoverunt L. Arbusov and A. Bauer (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis separatim editi*) (Hannover, 1955), p. 186.

<sup>271</sup> *Tour du monde ou voyages du rabbin Péthachia de Ratisbonne dans le douzième siècle*, ed. E. Carmoly (Paris, 1831), pp. 10–13.

<sup>272</sup> Rubruck, p. 175; Ibn Batoutah, II (see above, n. 48), p. 364; Al-Umari (see above, n. 167), p. 137.

<sup>273</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 188; Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevnik*, p. 199.

<sup>274</sup> Anne Comnène (see above, n. 18), II, p. 82.

<sup>275</sup> C. A. Macartney, “The Petchenegs,” *The Slavonic (and East European) Review* 8 (1929–30), p. 353 with n. 2; M. Gyóni, “Zur Frage der rumänischen Staatsbildungen im XI. Jahrhundert in Paristrion (Archaïsierende Volksnamen und ethnische Wirklichkeit in der ‘Alexias’ von Anna Komnene),” *AECO* 9–10 (1943–1944), pp. 168–169 and 179–183; E. Tryjarski, “Pieczyngowie,” in K. Dabrowski, T. Nagrodzka-Majchrzyk, and E. Tryjarski, *Hunowie europejscy, Protobulgarzy, Chazarowie, Pieczyngowie* (Wrocław–Warsaw–Cracow–Gdańsk, 1975), p. 527.

*Animal Husbandry*

The second important occupation of the local communities, animal husbandry, also has old roots in the whole Carpathian-Danube area. Consequently, it is no wonder that the general pastoral terminology retains great number of words of Geto-Dacian origin: *baci* (= chief shepherd), *balegă* (= dung), *brânză* (= cheese), *cârlan* (= yearling), *cârliș* (= hook), *ghioagă* (= club), *mânz* (= colt), *strungă* (= sheepfold), *țap* (= billy goat), *țarc* (= corral), *urdă* (= cheese obtained by boiling whey), *zăr* (= whey).<sup>276</sup> The great extent to which that occupation was practised and the movements of Romanian shepherds into neighbouring lands led to the adoption in Czech, Polish, Russian, Slovak and Ukrainian, of many words of Romanian origin, which refer to pastoralism.<sup>277</sup>

Zooarchaeological studies of faunal assemblages found on settlement sites show the importance of cattle breeding and the various ratios of domestic animals. Bone assemblages found in Bârlălești (Vaslui county), Iași-“Nicolina” (Iași county) (Romania), Calfa (Anenii Noi county), Hansca (Ialoveni county), Orhei-“Petruha” (Orhei county) (Republic of Moldova), Krinichnoe (Odessa region) (Ukraine), etc. indicate the breeding of cattle, sheep, goats, pigs, and horses, with ratios between those animal species varying from one settlement to another.<sup>278</sup> Zoo-

<sup>276</sup> I. I. Russu, *Etnogeneza românilor* (Bucharest, 1981), pp. 217–218. See also N. Dunăre, “Forme de viață pastorală,” in *Țara Bârsei*, I, gen. ed. N. Dunăre (Bucharest, 1972), pp. 242–243; G. R. Solta, *Einführung in die Balkanlinguistik mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Substrats und des Balkanlateinischen* (Darmstadt, 1980), pp. 39–44; Gr. Brâncuș, *Vocabularul autohton al limbii române* (Bucharest, 1983), p. 31 ff.; idem, *Cercetări asupra fondului traco-dac al limbii române* (Bucharest, 1995), pp. 18–47; H. Mihăescu, *La romanité dans le sud-est de l'Europe* (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 311–314; G. Mihăilă, “Les plus anciennes attestations des mots roumains autochtones (X<sup>e</sup> siècle—1520),” *Thraco-Dacica* 17 (1996), nos. 1–2, pp. 29–41; M. Sala, *De la latină la română* (Bucharest, 1998), pp. 82–83.

<sup>277</sup> D. Scheludko, “Rumänische Elemente im Ukrainischen,” *Balkan-Archiv* 2 (1926), pp. 113–146; S. Lukasik, *Pologne et Roumanie* (Cracow, 1938), pp. 158–187; A. Walaschofsky, “Einflüsse des Hirtenleben auf die Entwicklung von Volk und Staat in Rumänien,” *Südostdeutsche Forschungen* 3 (1939), no. 4, p. 815; D. Krandžalov, “Rumänische Einflüsse in der slawischen Hirtenterminologie und Toponomastik in den Karpaten,” *Zeitschrift für Slavistik* 10 (1965), no. 3, pp. 354–366; D. Macrea, *Studii de lingvistică română* (Bucharest, 1970), pp. 14–16.

<sup>278</sup> G. B. Fedorov, in *AO 1967 G* (1968), p. 287; I. G. Hâncu, *Поселения XI–XIV веков в Ореевских кодрах Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969), p. 50; idem, “Археологические исследования” (see above, n. 88), p. 178; idem, “Результаты археологических раскопок” (see above, n. 88), pp. 194–195; Chebotarenko, *Калфа* (see above, n. 87), p. 82; S. Haimovici, “Studiul materialului paleofaunistic din așezarea datînd din secolele X–XI e.n. de la Bîrlălești (jud. Vaslui),” *Acta Moldaviae Meridionalis* 5–6 (1983–1984), pp. 205–212; L. Bejenaru, “Date arheozoologice privind unele tipuri de animale domes-

archaeological studies have revealed that some species were used for work in the fields or for transportation, others as a source of meat and dairy products. That remains of domestic animals were found inside houses substantiates the idea of a mixed economy. This further confirms that the forms of pastoralism practiced by local Romanian communities were directly associated with the cultivation of crops and were not linked to the practice of transhumance beyond the limits of any individual community.

By contrast, near the mountains, herds may have indeed been sent for the summer to high-altitude pastures in the company of temporarily hired shepherds. During their stay in the mountains, shepherds may have built temporary sheepfolds, where they prepared the dairy products and sheared the sheep. In more recent times, shepherds and their flocks remained in the mountains until September 14 (the feast of the Elevation of the Cross), when the sheep were returned to their owners. For the duration of the autumn, until the first snow, the sheep grazed on the communal fields, guarded by shepherds. During winter, each owner kept his own sheep close to home, until the following spring. Communal sheepfolds were occasionally built in the fields or even in the mountains, where haystacks were brought well in advance.<sup>279</sup>

---

tice existente în evul mediu pe teritoriul României,” *Arheologia Medievală* 3 (2000), pp. 255–262; eadem, *Arheozoologia spațiului românesc medieval* (Iași, 2003), pp. 53–138; eadem, *Arheozoologia Moldovei medievale* (Iași, 2006), pp. 14–15, 29–30 and 36–38; S. M. Stanc, *Relațiile omului cu lumea animală. Arheozoologia secolelor IV–X d.Hr. pentru zonele extracarpatice de est și de sud ale României* (Iași, 2006), pp. 91–94 and 100–101.

<sup>279</sup> On cattle breeding in Moldavia, and Romanian pastoralism in general, see P. Cancel, “Păstoritul la poporul roman,” *Convorbiri literare* 47 (1913), no. 9, pp. 851–875; A. Veress, “Păstoritul ardelenilor în Moldova și Țara Românească (până la 1821),” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 7 (1927), pp. 127–230; L. Someșan, “La transhumance des bergers transylvains dans les provinces roumaines,” *Revue de Transylvanie* 1 (1935), no. 4, pp. 465–476; T. Herseni, *Probleme de sociologie pastorală* (Bucharest, 1941); Panaitescu, “Producția și viața economică” (see above, n. 263), pp. 16–28; R. Vuia, *Țipurile de păstorit la români* (Bucharest, 1964); D. Krandžalov, “Zur Frage des Ursprungs des Hirtenwesens und seines Wortschatzes in den Karpaten,” in *Viehweirtschaft und Hirtenkultur. Ethnographische Studien*, ed. L. Földes (Budapest, 1969), pp. 220–243; Dunăre, “Forme de viață pastorală” (see above, n. 276), pp. 157–244; idem, “Typologie des traditionellen Hirtenlebens in karpato-balkanischen Raum,” *Zeitschrift für Balkanologie* 11 (1975), no. 2, pp. 5–39; idem, *Civilizație tradițională românească în Carbură Carpatică Nordică* (Bucharest, 1984), pp. 68–142; idem, “Types traditionnels de vie pastorale dans les régions carpatiques de pâturages et de fenaisons (Roumanie, Ukraine, Pologne, Tchécoslovaquie, Hongrie),” in *Acte du Colloque International “L’élevage et la vie pastorale dans les montagnes de l’Europe au moyen âge et à l’époque moderne”* (Clermont-Ferrand, 1984), pp. 55–68; Vlăduțiu, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 160), p. 250 ff.; I. Donat, “La vie pastorale chez les Roumains et ses problèmes,” *Dacoromania. Jahrbuch für Östliche Latinität*, Freiburg-Munich, 1 (1973),



Ethnographic studies show that a different form of cattle breeding was practised on a large scale in densely forested mountain and hilly regions, and in major river everglades, as well as in the Danube Delta. In all those areas, cows, pigs, and horses roamed freely, sometimes for as long as an entire season.<sup>280</sup>

Such an archaic system may not have been too profitable, given the relatively large numbers of animals who may have fallen prey to predators or who may have turned feral and consequently could not have re-captured. On the other hand, sedentary grazing required large quantities of hay to be stored for the winter. To this end, the majority of the the population in the mountain region moved for almost a month to areas rich in grass, which members of the community mowed, gathered, stocked, and turned into hay for transport. This activity, of utmost importance for the economy, known as “the migration of hay,”<sup>281</sup> has a long tradition in Romania, where it is widespread and well organized.

No information exists on Romanian transhumant pastoralism on the eastern slopes of the Carpathian Mountains. Until several decades ago, flocks of Transylvanian shepherds could still be descending from the pastures in the eastern Carpathians to spend the winter in the lowlands of southern Moldavia, by the Danube and the sea lakes, in southern Bugeac, in the Danube Delta, next to the marshy areas on both sides of the river Danube, along the sea coast of Dobrudja, or and even on the left bank of the Dniester River. Contrary to a widespread misconception, transhumant pastoralism is not nomadism, because the shepherds are not accompanied by their families, who in this case remained home, in Transylvania.

The movements of shepherds and flocks were not chaotic, but followed well-known routes to the pastures in the Carpathian Mountains, and then to the lowlands in winter. Transhumance was also not a system of generalised grazing. Instead, it appears to have been limited to a small number of rich Transylvanian families. Most animals were bred on the farm, within the limits of the village, and did not travel at

---

pp. 78–103; Butură, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 156), pp. 201–242; Iordache, *Ocupații*, I (see above, n. 262), II (Craiova, 1986), pp. 7–179; Praoveanu, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 156), pp. 116–129; I. A. Goia, “A methodology for the study of Romanian shepherding,” *Transylvanian Review* 10 (2001), no. 1, pp. 24–35.

<sup>280</sup> Vlăduțiu, *Etnografia*, pp. 253–254.

<sup>281</sup> N. Al. Rădulescu, *Vrancea. Geografie fizică și umană* (Bucharest, 1937), pp. 115–116.

any great distances. When the Turkic nomads entered the Bugeac and the Romanian Plain, they must have disrupted the seasonal moving of flocks to the plain along the Danube and the Black Sea, as Romanian shepherds were now exposed to raids by nomads using the same areas to spend the winter season.

The diet of the local population was complemented with game and fish from the rich forests and rivers of Moldavia. Both hunting and fishing seem to have been practised, according to techniques that were both archaic and somewhat rudimentary. In addition, hunting was practised for the procurement of furs or the control of the predator population, in order to protect cattle and people. The zooarchaeological analysis of faunal remains from Bârlălești, Calfa, Hansca, and Orhei-“Petruha” revealed the presence of wild animals such as stags, roebucks, wild boar, aurochs, elks, rabbits, and foxes.<sup>282</sup> Hunting seem to have been practised more by bow and arrow than by traps. Several types of arrow-heads found in archaeological assemblages may have been used exclusively for hunting.

By contrast, little archaeological evidence exists of fishing, which, however, does not in any way indicate that it was not practised. Calfa, for example, was located on the shore of Lake Bâc, at the confluence of the Bâc and Dniester rivers. If fishing implements are rare in the archaeological record, faunal remains often include bones and scales of carp, pike, sheatfish, and other species.<sup>283</sup> Fish bones were found in Krinichnoe,<sup>284</sup> a settlement located on the shore of Lake Ialpuș. The Lower Danube was apparently sufficiently rich in fish to attract fishermen from other neighboring countries. Galician fishermen are mentioned on the Lower Danube in the mid-twelfth century.<sup>285</sup> Except on settlements located next to the Danube or to lakes, fish, much like venison, does not seem to have ever been a major component of the local diet, which relied heavily on agricultural products, on meat, and dairy products.

---

<sup>282</sup> See above, n. 278.

<sup>283</sup> Chebotarenko, *Калфа*, p. 83.

<sup>284</sup> G. B. Fedorov, in *AO 1967 G* (1968), p. 287; idem, in *AO 1968 G* (1969), p. 391.

<sup>285</sup> *Ip.let.*, pp. 83–84; *Let. Voskr.*, p. 68.

\* \* \*

Both before and after the Mongol invasion, all Turkic communities in the southern regions of eastern Europe were pastoralist. Since they practised the cultivation of crops only occasionally, their diet was mostly of meat and dairy products. In addition, cattle breeding provided hides for clothing, saddles, and trade goods. Consequently, large numbers of animals were necessary, for the breeding of which itinerant grazing was not sufficient, hence the adoption of a nomadic lifestyle. Contemporary sources point out the great number of animals, which the nomads owned and the nature of food required for maintaining such a large livestock. The Pechenegs owned cattle and sheep<sup>286</sup> (in other sources, horses<sup>287</sup> and sheep)<sup>288</sup> and they were known for engaging in business with cattle, horses, and sheep.<sup>289</sup> Likewise, the Oghuz owned horses, cows, and sheep.<sup>290</sup> At the time of its separation from the tribal confederacy of the Oghuz, the Seljuks had a great number of horses, camels, sheep, and oxen.<sup>291</sup> Ibn Fadlan claims that rich Oghuz / Uzes who owned up to 10,000 horses and 100,000 sheep.<sup>292</sup> The unknown author of the Persian geography of 982 describes the Kimaks (the western tribe of whom were called Qipchaqs, i.e., Cumans) as people who live “in felt-huts and in both summer and winter wander along grazing-grounds, waters, and meadows. Their commodities are sable-martens and sheep. Their food in summer is milk, and in winter preserved meat.”<sup>293</sup> This account is substantiated by the information provided by Gardizi<sup>294</sup> and al-Marwazi. The latter adds that Kimaks are “a people without villages or houses, who possess woods, water, and pastures; they have cattle and sheep in plenty, but they have no camels, for camels will not live in their country more than a year. They also have no salt, except

---

<sup>286</sup> *Hudūd al-ʿĀlam* (see above, n. 42), p. 160; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 215.

<sup>287</sup> Al-Bēcri (see above, n. 162), p. 15; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 222.

<sup>288</sup> A. P. Martínez (trans.), *Gardīzi* (see above, n. 43), p. 152; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 165 (Gardīzi), 250 (al-Marwāzī). That Pechenegs had many sheep is also mentioned in the first half of the fifteenth century by Ahmed of Tus (See Hammer, *Sur les origines russes* [see above, n. 27], p. 33), who most likely relied on much earlier Persian sources.

<sup>289</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 50–51.

<sup>290</sup> *Hudūd al-ʿĀlam*, p. 100; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 206.

<sup>291</sup> Gregory Abū'l-Faraj, *The Chronography, 1225–1286*, I, ed. E. A. Wallis Budge (London, 1932), p. 195.

<sup>292</sup> Ibn Fadlan, p. 33.

<sup>293</sup> *Hudūd al-ʿĀlam*, pp. 99–100; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 203.

<sup>294</sup> *Orient.Ber.*, p. 112. See also Ia. A. Fedorov, G. S. Fedorov, *Ранние тюрки на Северном Кавказе* (Moscow, 1978), pp. 224–225.

what may be imported by merchants, who for a heap of it obtain a fox and sable skin. In summer they live on the milk of mares, in winter on jerked meat.”<sup>295</sup>

Cumans in their turn owned very large flocks. When the Rus’ armies plundered their settlements or camps in 1095,<sup>296</sup> 1103,<sup>297</sup> 1111,<sup>298</sup> 1165,<sup>299</sup> 1170,<sup>300</sup> 1183,<sup>301</sup> 1184,<sup>302</sup> 1185,<sup>303</sup> 1190,<sup>304</sup> 1191,<sup>305</sup> or 1193,<sup>306</sup> they always took as booty many horses, sheep, oxen, and camels.<sup>307</sup> Some years later, when Kotian (Kuthen) and other Cuman princes came to Galicia and to other Rus’ courts in 1223 to ask for assistance against the Mongols, their gifts included Rus’ horses, camels, buffaloes, and young female slaves.<sup>308</sup> In their migration to Hungary and to the Balkans the Cumans moved together with their herds.<sup>309</sup>

Following the rise of the Golden Horde, the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas continued to impress foreign travellers with the richness of the herds, most of which had most likely been captured by the Mongols from the Cumans. Pointing out the great number of camels, oxen, sheep, goats, and especially horses, which the Mongols had in large numbers than all other peoples taken together, John of Plano Carpini noticed at the same time the scarcity of pigs.<sup>310</sup> Such an observation should not surprise, given that pigs are not suitable for a nomadic lifestyle. John of Plano Carpini’s remark reminds one of Herodotus noting that Scythians had no pigs.<sup>311</sup> Al-‘Umari described

<sup>295</sup> Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 32; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 249.

<sup>296</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 149; *Ip. let.*-2, col. 219.

<sup>297</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 185; *Ip. let.*-2, col. 255.

<sup>298</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 192; *Ip. let.*-2, col. 268.

<sup>299</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 525.

<sup>300</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 540.

<sup>301</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 625.

<sup>302</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 636.

<sup>303</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 637.

<sup>304</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 669.

<sup>305</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 673.

<sup>306</sup> *Ip. let.*-2, col. 677.

<sup>307</sup> T. S. Noonan, “Rus’, Pechenegs, and Polovtsy: economic interaction along the steppe frontier in the Pre-Mongol era,” *Russian History* 19 (1992), nos. 1–4, pp. 311–312.

<sup>308</sup> *NPL*, p. 62; *Летописный сборникъ именуемый Тверскою летописью*, in *PSRL*, XV (St. Petersburg, 1863), col. 339; *Новгородская летопись по списку П. П. Дубровского*, in *PSRL*, XLIII, ed. A. Koshelev (Moscow, 2004), p. 85.

<sup>309</sup> Rogerius, pp. 23–24, 26, 62, and 65; *FHDR*, III, pp. 404–405 (Akropolites), 440–441 (Teodor Skutariotes).

<sup>310</sup> Plano Carpini, p. 36.

<sup>311</sup> Herodotus, II (see above, n. 241), pp. 260–261.

the situation in Desht-i Qipchaq under Özbäg Khan as following: “The population of his empire consists mainly of nomads, who live on herds of horses, oxen and small cattle [...] Meat is very cheap here, and horses are slaughtered very often, but the nomads do not buy and sell meat among themselves. Their food consists mostly of venison, milk, butter and millet.”<sup>312</sup> Such remarks echo the account of the Song envoys sent to Mongolia in the early thirteenth century.<sup>313</sup> In recording the great number of livestock that the Tatars had, Hethum listed cows and mares.<sup>314</sup> John Kinnamos wrote about the Seljuqs of Asia Minor that they did not know how to do agriculture, but consumed instead milk and meat.<sup>315</sup>

Very revealing in this respect are the words, which the author of the Mongol chronicle *Altan tobchi*, writing during the second half of the seventeenth century, put in the mouth of Jöchi, the oldest son of Chingis Khan: “To me the greatest pleasure is found in herding our animals and finding the best area for pasture, in determining the best place for the royal camp to settle and in having all our people there together with a great feast, this is the best”.<sup>316</sup>

The animals, which the nomads were grazing in the steppes, were strong and sturdy, perfectly adapted to the continental climate in the area. Travellers through the steppe repeatedly noted that, for example, during winter, the sheep of the Oghuz<sup>317</sup> or the horses of the Mongols<sup>318</sup> rummaged in the snow with their hooves to find grass. The camels and the cattle of the Tatars in the Bugeac were equally adapted to harsh winters.<sup>319</sup> The pastoralist economy provided nomads with large quantities of milk and dairy products. *Kumys* (*kymys*), a drink typical for the Turkic populations and the Mongols, which was prepared by

---

<sup>312</sup> Al-‘Umari (see above, n. 167), p. 137. For this issue, see also Ibn Batoutah, II (see above, n. 48), p. 264; Tiesenhausen, I, pp. 286–287.

<sup>313</sup> *Meng-ta pei-lu und Hei-Ta shih-lüeh* (see above, n. 190), pp. 58 (*Meng-ta pei-lu*), 110, and 112 (*Hei-Ta shih-lüeh*).

<sup>314</sup> Hayton, *La flor des estoires de la terre d’Orient / Flos historiarum terre Orientis*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Documents arméniens*, II (Paris, 1906), pp. 217 and 338.

<sup>315</sup> Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome* (see above, n. 4), p. 9; John Kinnamos, *Deeds of John and Manuel Comnenos* (see above, n. 4), p. 17.

<sup>316</sup> S. Jagchid, P. Hyer, *Mongolia’s Culture and Society* (Boulder, Col.-Folkestone, 1979), p. 20.

<sup>317</sup> Ibn Fadlan (see above, n. 162), p. 33.

<sup>318</sup> Plano Carpini, p. 104.

<sup>319</sup> *Cälători*, VIII, p. 288 (M. Eneman).

the fermentation of mare milk,<sup>320</sup> is still consumed in central Asia and Siberia.<sup>321</sup> The *kumys* was not only a daily drink for common nomads; it was also offered during the diplomatic ceremonies at the courts of the Mongol khans<sup>322</sup> and of the Mamluk sultans.<sup>323</sup>

At the time the steppe lands had not yet been turned to agriculture, the diet of the nomads in Desht-i Qipchaq included also venison.<sup>324</sup> As they were excellent archers, hunting must have posed no problems to them. Fishing, on the other hand, appears to have been less important for both Turkic populations and Mongols. William of Rubruck even claimed that the Mongols did not know how to fish.<sup>325</sup> His observation is probably right, as fishing seem to have been associated more often with sedentary populations.

### *Crafts*

Crafts and household industrial activities played an important part in the economy of the local communities. They confined themselves to the manufacturing of objects and tools for household and personal use, and to the preparation of food and clothing for their own families. The tasks were gender-specific. As for craftsmen proper (i.e., people specialised in trades that were not available to all members of the village community), they produced more than was necessary for their own households; and thus they also marketed the results of their work in the whole village, or even in some other localities.

Ironworking was one of the most important crafts, as it involved not just smelting, but also the production of tools and weapons. Since no iron ores exist in the region east of the Carpathian Mountains, looking for iron resources required great efforts to trace and explore the

---

<sup>320</sup> Guiragos, p. 249; Rubruck, p. 175; Ibn Batoutah, II, p. 365; *Ip.let.*, p. 133. See also Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde* (see above, n. 188), pp. 439–440; J. Masson Smith, Jr., “Dietary decadence and dynastic decline in the Mongol empire,” *Journal of Asian History* 34 (2000), no. 1, pp. 37–39 and 42–46; Th. T. Allsen, *Conquest and Culture in Mongol Eurasia* (Cambridge, 2001), pp. 128–129; A. Ruotsala, *Europeans and Mongols in the Middle of the Thirteenth Century. Encountering the Other* (Helsinki, 2001), pp. 113–117.

<sup>321</sup> *Etnografia continentelor*, II, 2 (see above, n. 237), pp. 52, 291, 308, 362, etc.

<sup>322</sup> Makrizi (see above, n. 175), p. 215; *Ip.let.*-2, col. 807.

<sup>323</sup> *Ayyubids, Mamlukes and Crusaders. Selection from the Tarikh al-Duwal wa'l-Muluk of Ibn al-Furat*, 2, eds. U. and M. C. Lyons (Cambridge, 1971), pp. 166–168.

<sup>324</sup> Rubruck, p. 180; Al-'Umari, p. 137.

<sup>325</sup> Rubruck, p. 197.

sporadic accumulations of iron in various deposits.<sup>326</sup> The efforts to obtain metal were however absolutely essential for the production of numerous agricultural tools and other things, because the demographic growth of the population required better crops, which could guarantee its subsistence. Signs of the extent of smelting, such as iron blooms and slag, may be found in most ninth- to twelfth-century settlement sites, on which investigations have gone beyond the stage of trial excavation. Of course, the evidence for ironworking consists of the very tools and weapons found on the same settlement sites.

Pottery production was the second most important craft, for which there is now evidence of considerable progress beginning with the ninth century. It is at that time that the handmade pottery, as well as that produced on a tournette (slowly revolving wheel), which had been present in every sixth- to eighth-century ceramic assemblage, was gradually replaced with wheel-made pottery. The adoption of that advanced, foot-activate type of wheel coincided in time with a significant improvement of the fabric, tempered now by sand, not by crushed potsherds, as well as of firing. The range of forms was relatively limited. Most vessels found in Dridu-type sites are pots (Figs. 11; 12/1–11; 13; 15; 16/1, 3) or bowls (Fig. 12/12). Settlement sites attributed to the Răducăneni culture produced pots (Figs. 16/2, 4; 17/1, 2, 4, 6, 7; 18/3, 5–7, 9), bowls, and clay kettles (Figs. 17/3, 5, 8; 18/1, 2, 4, 8), while those of the twelfth and thirteenth century produced only pots (Figs. 19; 20/3–10). Besides the pottery of brick-red fabric, with combed decoration, Dridu pottery assemblages produced also fine pottery of grey or yellow fabric, with burnished decoration (Fig. 12/1), the origin of which is still debated. Part of the grey or yellow pottery with burnished decoration may have well been produced locally, but such pottery was certainly produced also in Bulgaria, south of the Danube. Clay kettles appear in large quantities in Răducăneni ceramic assemblages, but are not very common on sites attributed to the Dridu culture. Conversely, the grey or yellow pottery cannot be dated later than the second half of the eleventh century. Much like the pots of brick-red fabric with combed

---

<sup>326</sup> Șt. Olteanu, V. Cazacu, “Condițiile economice și social-politice ale dezvoltării științei și tehnicii medievale,” in *Istoria gândirii și creației științifice și tehnice românești*, I, ed. Șt. Pascu (Bucharest, 1982), pp. 276–281.

decoration, clay kettles appear in the entire Carpathian-Danube area, as well as in neighboring regions.<sup>327</sup>

While numerous finds of querns bespeak the practice of the household production of flour, spindle whorls (Fig. 9/5) indicate the equally household-based production of textiles. There is little evidence for any other crafts, although it is only natural to surmise that cart-making, for example, played a key role in the local economy. However, judging by the existing evidence, it appears that crafts had already become independent, separate activities within rural communities.

\* \* \*

As far as crafts in communities of Turkic nomads, narrative sources are less conclusive, as precise data are practically absent. William of Rubruck's account of nomadic occupations during the Mongol rule may also apply to the previous centuries. According to the French king's envoy, household occupations were gender-specific, except the guarding and milking of cattle. Men built houses and carts, made bows and arrows, harnesses and saddles, prepared the *kumys* and tanned hides, while women cooked and made clothes, footwear, or bedclothes.<sup>328</sup> That the Pechenegs<sup>329</sup> and the Oghuz<sup>330</sup> had a great number of weapons and other implements is mentioned in various Arab sources. Gardizi noted that "these Pechenegs' are the possessors of [great] wealth [...]. They have many gold and silver vessels (or utensils). They have many weapons. They have silver belts. They have flags and pennants which they raise up in the battle, [as well as] bugles [made] from the horns of oxen which they sound in battle".<sup>331</sup> Obviously, most weapons and implements must have been manufactured by Pecheneg smiths. Much

---

<sup>327</sup> I. Fodor, "Der Ursprung der in Ungarn gefundenen Tonkessel," *ActaArchHung* 29 (1977), nos. 3–4, pp. 323–349; Spinei, "Considerații cu privire la populația locală" (see above, n. 110), pp. 181–194; M. Takács, *Die arpadenzeitlichen Tonkessel im Karpatenbecken* (Varia Archaeologica Hungarica) (Budapest, 1986); *Die Keramik der Saltovo-Majaki Kultur und ihrer Varianten*, ed. C. Bálint (Varia Archaeologica Hungarica, III) (Budapest, 1990); Postică, *Românii* (see above, n. 88), *passim*.

<sup>328</sup> Rubruck, p. 184.

<sup>329</sup> Al-Bécri (see above, n. 162), p. 15; A. P. Martinez (trans.), *Gardizi* (see above, n. 43), p. 152; Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 33; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 165 (Gardīzi), 222 (al-Bakrī), 250 (al-Marwazī); Shūkrūllakh, in Hammer, *Sur les origines russes* (see above, n. 27), p. 46.

<sup>330</sup> *Hudūd al-'Ālam* (see above, n. 42), p. 100; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 206.

<sup>331</sup> A. P. Martinez (trans.), *Gardizi*, p. 152; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 165.



like other related tribes of central Asia, the Oghuz made their own arrow-heads of bone,<sup>332</sup> because iron was not easy to procure.

The artefacts found in burial assemblages attributed to the Turkic nomads illustrate the abilities of their craftsmen. The relative uniformity of the panoply of such artefacts demonstrates that most of them were made by the nomads themselves. This is certainly true for weapons, horse gear, as well as some household items made of metal, antler, or bone. Burial assemblages have produced relatively large numbers of sabres, lance- and arrow-heads, daggers, knives, axes, stirrups, buckles, scissors, flint steels, ear- and lock-rings, bronze, silver and gold rings, kettles, pendants, bronze mirrors, wooden bows with bone or antler reinforcement plates, as well as bone or antler arrowheads and buttons (Figs. 24–42, 44–56). The quality of some of those artefacts is by no means inferior to that of similar specimens known from the steppe lands farther to the east. Given that the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas are devoid of bog iron deposits, the question of how did nomads procure the metal for their weapons and horse gear remains unanswered. It is nonetheless clear that the smiths were also responsible for finding the ore.<sup>333</sup>

The vocabulary of the *Codex Comanicus* pertaining crafts and specific products<sup>334</sup> can be of only partial assistance in illuminating this aspect of nomadic society, given that such terms may have also referred to non-nomadic craftsmen or to imported artefacts. However, the absence of any word for *pottery* may not be an accident. Judging by the archaeological evidence, Turkic nomads do not appear to have used the potter's wheel. All the pottery found in assemblages attributed to them, except of course the imported pottery, is handmade<sup>335</sup> (Figs. 38/9; 39/9; 40/6; 56/18). Nothing can currently substantiate the idea the wheel-made clay kettles with combed decoration (Figs. 17/3, 5, 8; 18/1, 2, 4, 8) were made by Turkic nomads. The clay kettle was a ceramic form widely spread within the valley of the Lower and Middle Danube. That the form itself may have been of eastern origin has no implications for its supposed production by nomads.

<sup>332</sup> Ya'kubi (see above, n. 30), p. 113.

<sup>333</sup> O. Lattimore, "The Nomads and South Russia," *Археϊον πόντου* 35 (1979), p. 196.

<sup>334</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, pp. 189–190.

<sup>335</sup> Eadem, "Средневековая керамика Таманского городища," in *Керамика и стекло древней Тамаракани*, gen. ed. B. A. Rybakov (Moscow, 1963), p. 10 ff.

Most crafts practised within nomadic communities were household-based, each tribal community providing by its own means most of the products necessary for the household and for other activities.

### *Trade*

Despite the autarkic tendencies of their domestic economy (*Hauswirtschaft*), Romanian rural communities were not isolated from the outside world. They had commercial exchanges with their neighbours, even if only to supplement the needs of everyday life. In fact, even the most primitive societies, despite the secluded character of their subsistence economies, never lived in complete isolation from other tribal communities.<sup>336</sup> Total separation from other populations existed only in exceptional cases imposed by special geographical conditions. The Romanian communities had various relationships with other, similar communities in the east-Carpathian region. That communities in southern Moldavia shared so many cultural features, from house construction and pottery to tools and dress accessories, could not be explained without such contacts, in other words without the existence of a network of communication. Such communication was not restricted to southern Moldavia, but extended also to other neighboring regions inhabited by Romanians and other ethnic groups.

Though no hard evidence exists in that respect, it is likely that Romanian communities may have offered for exchange largely the same goods as available at the time of the medieval states: horned cattle, horses, sheep, cheese, fish, honey, wax, hides, furs, cereals and salt. Most, if not all those goods appear consistently in later medieval sources.<sup>337</sup> Some appear also in the list given by Erasmus Heinrich Schneider von Weismantel in the early 1700s.<sup>338</sup> Animals seem to have been preferred

---

<sup>336</sup> V. G. Childe, *The Dawn of European Civilization*, 2nd ed. (London, 1939); C. S. Chard, *Man in Prehistory* (New York, 1969); J. Lichardus, M. Lichardus-Itten et al., *La Protohistoire de l'Europe. Le Néolithique et le Chalcolithique entre la Méditerranée et la mer Baltique* (Paris, 1985); H. Parzinger, *Studien zur Chronologie und Kulturgeschichte der Jungstein-, Kupfer- und Frühbronzezeit zwischen Karpaten und Mittlerem Taurus, I* (Mainz am Rhein, 1993); idem, *Die frühen Völker Eurasiens. Vom Neolithikum bis zum Mittelalter* (Munich, 2006); *Handel, Tausch und Verkehr im Bronze- und früheisenzeitlichen Südosteuropa*, ed. B. Hänsel (Südosteuropa-Schriften, 17) (Munich-Berlin, 1995), *passim*.

<sup>337</sup> Al. I. Goņa, *Legăturile economice dintre Moldova și Transilvania în secolele XIII–XVII*, ed. I. Caproșu (Bucharest, 1989), pp. 46–64.

<sup>338</sup> *Călători*, VIII, p. 349.

for foreign trade, both because of the numbers, and because flocks did not require any special means of transportation. Exchange relations existed with communities in the northern Balkans, as well as in the east-Slavic regions. The return of Byzantium to the Lower Danube and the revival of city life in the centres of Paristrion marked an intensification of the exchange contacts with the Balkans. As the archaeological discoveries indicate, ceramic and metal artefacts (such as simple and double crosses; Figs. 9/12 and 21/1) were brought from Byzantium. Other double crosses originated in Rus'<sup>339</sup> (Fig. 21/2).

An accurate way to gauge the intensity of trade contacts is to look at coin circulation. Besides Byzantine coin, which circulated outside the Empire within the entire east-Carpathian region, there are also a few ninth- to tenth-century Islamic coins. During the the last quarter of the first millennium, Islamic coins enjoyed a special prestige not only in the East, but also in eastern and central Europe. Impressive amounts of dirhams, often associated with dress accessories of eastern origin, have been found in the Scandinavia and in the Baltic countries, as well as in the east-Slavic regions.<sup>340</sup> The Carpathian-Dniester region felt

<sup>339</sup> V. Spinei, "Les relations de la Moldavie avec Byzance et la Russie au premier quart du IIe millénaire à la lumière des sources archéologiques," *Dacia*, NS, 19 (1975), pp. 228–240; idem, "Pieșe de cult din regiunile carpato-dunărene în secolele X–XV," *Teologie și viață*, NS, 3 (69) (1993), nos. 4–7, pp. 67–83; D. Gh. Teodor, *Creștinismul la est de Carpați de la origini până în secolul al XIV-lea* (Iași, 1991), pp. 91–93 and 99–102; figs. 18/1, 2, 6; 24–32; I. Tentiuc, "Some considerations regarding Byzantine influences in the East of the Carpathians in the 10th–13th centuries," in *Exchange and Trade in Medieval Europe. Papers of the "Medieval Europe Brugge 1997" Conference*, 3, eds. G. De Boe and F. Verhaeghe (Zellik, 1997), pp. 15–22; S. Pivovarov, *Християнські старожитності в межиріччі Верхнього Пруту та Середнього Дністра* (Chernivtsi, 2001), pp. 61–92; G. F. Korzukhina, A. A. Peskova, *Древнерусские энколпионы. Нагрудные кресты-реликварии XI–XIII вв.* (St. Petersburg, 2003), pp. 43–45, 51–53, 62, 66, 72, 74–75.

<sup>340</sup> G. F. Korzukhina, *Русские клады IX–XIII вв.* (Moscow-Leningrad, 1954); V. V. Kropotkin, "Новые находки сасанидских и куфических монет в Восточной Европе," *Нумизматика и Эпиграфика* 9 (1971), pp. 76–97; C. Bálint, "Einige Fragen des Dirhem-Verkehrs in Europa," in *ActaArchHung* 33 (1981), nos. 1–4, pp. 105–131; T. S. Noonan, "Why dirhams first reached Russia: the role of Arab-Khazar relations in the development of the earliest Islamic trade with Eastern Europe," *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 151–282; idem, "Khazaria as in intermediary between Islam and Eastern Europe in the second half of the ninth century: the numismatic perspective," *AEMA* 5 (1985), pp. 179–204; idem, "Viking-age dirham hoards from Eastern and Northern Europe," in *A Survey of Numismatic Research 1990–1995*, gen.eds. C. Morrisson, B. Kluge (Berlin, 1997), pp. 751–759; A. Nazmi, *Commercial Relations between Arabs and Slavs (9th–11th Centuries)* (Warsaw, 1998), p. 225 ff.; S. Brather, "Frühmittelalterliche Dirham-Schatz- und -Einzelfunde im südlichen Ostseeraum. Die Anfänge der Gewichtsgeldwirtschaft bei den Westslawen," in *Archäologie als Sozialgeschichte. Studien zu Siedlung, Wirtschaft und Gesellschaft im frühgeschichtlichen Mitteleuropa. Festschrift für Heiko Steuer zum 60. Geburtstag*,

the effects of the trade networks established between Scandinavia and the Muslim markets in the south by Vikings, Khazars, Volga Bulgars, Slavs, and others. Several dirhams discovered in the region illustrate those effects.

Islamic coins have so far been found primarily on settlement sites. A silver coin struck for Nasr II ibn Ahmad (914–943) and an imitation of a kufic dirham, struck around 947/948 in Suvar or Bulgar, were found in Alcedar (Șoldănești county, Republic of Moldova).<sup>341</sup> Two anonymous bronze coins, struck under the rule of Marwan II (747–750) are known from Bosia (Iași county, Romania).<sup>342</sup> From Echimăuți (Rezina county, Republic of Moldova): no less than nineteen kufic dirhams are known, which were minted for the Samanid emirs Ismail ibn Ahmad (in a.H. 291 and 293, i.e., A.D. 903/904 and 905/906), Ahmad ibn Ismail (in a.H. 296 or A.D. 908/909), Nasr II ibn Ahmad (914–943, in a.H. 314 [A.D. 926/927], 322 [A.D. 933/934], and an unknown year).<sup>343</sup> A dirham struck for the Buyid emir Adud al-Dawla (949–983) in a.H. 363 (A.D. 973/974) in Arradjan has been found in Iacobeni (Vlădeni commune, Iași county).<sup>344</sup> A still unidentified Islamic coin is said to have been found in Șcheia (Iași county).<sup>345</sup> Finally, seven dirhams, issued between a.H. 140 (A.D. 757/758) and a.H. 190 (A.D. 805/806) during the Abbasid caliphs Al-Mansur (754–775), Al-Mahdi (775–785) and Harun al Rashid (786–809) (one from each of the former caliphs, and five from Harun al-Rashid) have been found in a hoard assemblages, in Răducăneni-“Bazga” (Iași county), together with silver, bronze, and billon dress accessories (earrings, pendants, beads, bracelets, appliqués),

---

eds. S. Brather, C. Bucker, and M. Hoepfer (Rahden/Westf., 1999), pp. 179–197; S. Musteață, “Răspândirea monedei islamice timpurii la nordul Dunării de Jos în secolele VIII–X,” in *Monedă și comerț în sud-estul Europei / Coin and Commerce in the South-East of Europe*, gen. ed. C. Munteanu (Sibiu, 2007), pp. 165–182.

<sup>341</sup> Кроткин, “Новые находки,” p. 91; A. A. Nudel'man, *Топография кладов и находок единичных монет (АКМ, 8)* (1976), pp. 89–90.

<sup>342</sup> O. Piescu, “Însemnări privitoare la descoperiri monetare,” *SCN* 1 (1957), 462.

<sup>343</sup> Кроткин, “Новые находки,” pp. 91–92; Nudel'man, *Топография*, p. 90; idem, *Очерки истории монетного обращения в Днестровско-Прутском регионе* (Kishinev, 1985), pp. 84–86; R. A. Rabinovich, “Дирхемы на территории Молдовы: культурно исторический контекст,” *Stratum plus* (1999), no. 6, pp. 263–275.

<sup>344</sup> E. Nicolae, “Un dirhem din secolul al X-lea descoperit la Iacobeni, com. Vlădeni, jud. Iași,” in *Simpoziu de numismatică dedicat împlinirii a patru secole de la prima Unire a românilor sub Mihai Voievod Viteazul, Chișinău, 28–30 mai 2000*, gen. ed. E. Nicolae (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 95–96.

<sup>345</sup> Zaharia, etc., *Așezări*, p. 333.

as well as silver ingots.<sup>346</sup> One of the richest hoards of dirhams in eastern Europe, which includes some 400 coins (368 of which have been identified) minted in the central Asian towns in the late 800s and early 900s, was found in an unknown location (not in Hust/Huszt, as it was supposed in the past) in the neighboring region of Maramureș (either in the Maramureș county of Romania, or the trans-Carpathian region of Ukraine),<sup>347</sup> i.e. in another region inhabited by Romanians.

After a period of sharp decline in the Byzantine coin circulation within the territory north of the Danube, which was primarily caused by the settlement of Slavs and Bulgars in the northern Balkans and by economic crisis, a revival is visible beginning with the late tenth century, especially after emperors John I Tzimiskes and Basil II took northern Balkans from the Bulgars. From Southern Moldavia not only stray hoard finds are known (Dolhești and Pașcani surroundings, Iași county, Romania; Goian, Chișinău municipality, Republic of Moldova; Arciz surroundings, Ismail, Reni and Suvorovo, all in the Odessa region of Ukraine). Most known specimens are of bronze, a clear indication that they were used as coins, and not selected for their intrinsic value. The so-called anonymous *folles* were struck in the early eleventh century, the period during which the lands on the left bank of the Danube witnessed the highest degree of monetization.

By contrast, coins struck for the Comnenian emperors are rare in the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains. It is of course possible that that is the result of the current stage of research. A true decrease in the number of Byzantine coins in the region took place only after the rebellion of the Vlachs and Bulgar, the rise of the Second Bulgarian Empire and the conquest of Constantinople by the crusaders.<sup>348</sup> Following those dramatic developments, the Byzantine

<sup>346</sup> D. Gh. Teodor, "Tezaurul de la Răducăneni-Iași," *SCIVA* 31 (1980), no. 3, pp. 403–423; Nicolae, "Un dirhem din secolul al X-lea," pp. 99–101.

<sup>347</sup> A. V. Fomin, L. Kovács, *The Tenth Century Maramaros County ("Huszt") Dirham Hoard* (Budapest, 1987); L. Kovács, "A Máramaros megyei («huszt») dirhemkincséről," in *Honfoglalás és Árpád-kor* (Ungvár, 1997), pp. 234–244. See also A. Bartha, *Hungarian Society in the 9th and 10th Centuries* (Budapest, 1975), pp. 114–115. The hoard was certainly not found in Hust/Huszt, as previously thought.

<sup>348</sup> On tenth- to twelfth-century Byzantine coins in the Carpathian-Dniester region, see C. Preda, "Circulația monedelor bizantine în regiunea carpato-dunăreană," *SCIV* 23 (1972), no. 3, pp. 375–415; idem, "The Byzantine coins—an expression of the relations between the Empire and the populations north of the Danube in the 6th–13th centuries," in *Relations*, pp. 229–233; Nudel'man, *Топография*, pp. 81–89; idem, "Некоторые наблюдения над находками византийских монет в Карпато-Днестровском

coins appeared only sporadically in the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains. When they do, they now tend to be not bronze, but gold coins, specifically hyperpyra struck for the Nicaean emperors. The name of those gold coins, which re-established the prestige of the Byzantine currency, was also adopted in Romanian as *perper*. Both Byzantine and Genoese merchants were responsible for the spread of hyperpers in Black Sea and Caspian regions.<sup>349</sup>

\* \* \*

The movement of the Turkic nomads into the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas disturbed the trade routes previously established through those lands by Khazars, Vikings, Arabs, and Byzantines. The lack of a centralized political organization, the periodical migration and the endemic warfare made any crossing of the steppe lands from north to south or viceversa impossible. However, exchange relationships did not disappear. The great rivers of eastern Europe,

---

регионе (общие закономерности и локальные особенности проникновения),” in *AIM v 1977–1978 gg* (1982), pp. 27–53; idem, *Очерки*, pp. 58–84 and 171–175; Spinei, *Moldova*, pp. 96–99; idem, “Monede bizantine din spațiul est-carpatic,” *SCN* 8 (1984), pp. 77–83; R. D. Bondar, S. A. Bulatovich, “К находкам византийских монет в Орловке,” in *Северное Причерноморье* (Kiev, 1984), pp. 145–148; E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, “Numismatic and historical remarks on the Byzantine coin hoards from the 12th century at the Lower Danube,” *RESEE* 30 (1992), nos. 1–2, pp. 41–60; E. S. Stoliarik, *Очерки монетного обращения Северо-Западного Причерноморья в поздне римское и византийское время (конец III–начала XIII в.)* (Kiev, 1992), pp. 50–71; A. Paragină, “Piese din secolele XI–XIV descoperite în zona de curbură a Carpaților,” *Mousaios* 4 (1994), no. 1, pp. 223–228; G. Custurea, *Circulația monedei bizantine în Dobrogea (secolele IX–XI)* (Constanța, 2000), pp. 169–202; E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, “Societate, economic și politică—Populațiile de pe teritoriul Moldovei și lumea sud-est europeană în secolele IV–XIV în lumina descoperirilor monetare,” *Suceava. Anuarul Muzeului Național al Bucovinei* 36–37–38 (1999–2000–2001), pp. 329–353; Gh. Mănușu-Adameșteanu, *Istoria Dobrogei în perioada 969–1204. Contribuții arheologice și numismatice* (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 22–30 and 189–199; A.-M. Velter, *Transilvania în secolele V–XII. Interpretări istorico-politice și economice pe baza descoperirilor monetare din bazinul Carpatic, secolele V–XII* (Bucharest, 2002), pp. 71–112.

<sup>349</sup> O. Iliescu, “L’hyperpère byzantin au Bas-Danube du XI<sup>e</sup> au XV<sup>e</sup> siècle,” *RESEE* 7 (1969), no. 1, pp. 109–115; E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, “From *perperi auri* ‘ad saqium Vicine’ to *părpăr*—Money of account of Byzantine-Balkan origin in Wallachia (thirteenth to nineteenth centuries),” in *130 Years since the Establishment of the Modern Romanian Monetary System* (Bucharest, 1997), pp. 97–182; idem, “Les hyperpères de type Jean III Vatatzès—classification, chronologie et évolution du titre (à la lumière du trésor d’Uzun Baïr, dép. de Tulcea),” in *Istro-Pontica. Muzeul Tulcean la a 50-a aniversare, 1950–2000. Omagiu lui Simion Gavrilă la 45 de ani de activitate, 1955–2000*, eds. M. Iacob, E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, F. Topoleanu (Tulcea, 2000), pp. 499–562.

the Volga, the Don, the Dnieper and the Danube, continued to be used as avenues for trade.<sup>350</sup> Those rivers solidly maintained the traffic of goods, given that, even though they had no ability or interest in sailing along the rivers, like most nomads,<sup>351</sup> the late Turkic populations of the Eurasian steppes were nonetheless interested in protecting transiting of goods—slaves, fur, silk, animals, etc.—through territories they had conquered or controlled.<sup>352</sup>

Although they had no tradition in engaging in long-distance trade, Turkic nomads took advantage from the exchange of goods. The narrative sources claim that the Pechenegs sold to the Rus' horned cattle, horses, sheep, and (at Chersones) furs and wax. In exchange, they received fine textiles, pepper, furs from the East, and other goods.<sup>353</sup> The Pechenegs even traded the prisoners captured during expeditions against neighbouring peoples.<sup>354</sup> In return, the Pechenegs also suffered from their neighbours' incursions, especially from those of the Khazars, who not only plundered, but also to took prisoners.<sup>355</sup> In addition, the Khazars bought Slavic slaves from the Rus' (Varangians).<sup>356</sup> The Hungarians, who had controlled the steppe lands north of the Black Sea before the Pechenegs, also conducted raids against the Slavs and the Rus'. They too sold their prisoners on the markets in Byzantium.<sup>357</sup> According to told local traditions, the trade with prisoners captured

<sup>350</sup> Grekov, Iakubovskii, *Золотая Орда* (see above, n. 208), pp. 23–27; V. P. Dashkevich, “К истории торговых связей Древней Руси,” *КЗ* 138 (1973), pp. 93–103; Tryjarski, “Pieczyngowie” (see above, n. 275), pp. 541–545; J. Shepard, “The Russian steppe-frontier and the Black Sea zone,” *Археѳон πόντου* 35 (1979), pp. 218–237.

<sup>351</sup> L. Febvre, *La Terre et l'évolution humaine. Introduction géographique a l'histoire* (Paris, 1938), pp. 329–330.

<sup>352</sup> A. Babkine, “La culture matérielle des Qipçaq̄s d'après les sources de l'époque,” *Études Slaves et Est-Européenne* 18 (1973), pp. 96–104; P. B. Golden, “Aspects of the nomadic factor in the economic development of Kievan Rus',” in *Ukrainian Economic History. Interpretive Essays*, ed. I. S. Koropeckyj (Cambridge, Mass., 1991), pp. 67–72; A. C. S. Peacock, “Black Sea trade and the Islamic world down to the Mongol period,” in *The Black Sea: Past, Present and Future*, eds. G. Erkut and S. Mitchell (London–Istanbul, 2007), pp. 65–72.

<sup>353</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 50–53 and 286–287.

<sup>354</sup> *Hudūd al-'Ālam* (see above, n. 42), p. 160; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 215.

<sup>355</sup> A. P. Martinez (trans.), *Gardīzi* (see above, n. 43), p. 151; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 164–165.

<sup>356</sup> A. P. Martinez (trans.), *Gardīzi*, p. 154 and 167; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 164–165, 167, and 180.

<sup>357</sup> Ibn Dasta [Ibn Rusta] (see above, n. 40), p. 27; A. P. Martinez (trans.), *Gardīzi*, pp. 161–162; Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 35; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 73–74 (ibn Rusta), 177 (Gardīzi), and 252 (al-Marwazi); Hammer, *Sur les origines russes* (see above, n. 27), pp. 47, 65, and 71; B. N. Zakhoder, *Каспийский свод сведений о Восточной Европе*,

from neighboring communities continued to flourish under the Tatar rule in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea.<sup>358</sup>

The Cumans exchanged goods with the Byzantines in Chersones.<sup>359</sup> From Sudak they bought cloth and sold female and male slaves, furs of black-fox, beaver and squirrel.<sup>360</sup> The main trade centre for the Oghuz of central Asia during the tenth century was the town of Djurdjaniya, situated in a region under Khwarazmian control.<sup>361</sup> The Oghuz used to trade with merchants from Khorasan, where the fine wool of their sheep was highly appreciated.<sup>362</sup> It has also been noted that the Oghuz/Uzes of the Volga region were visited by many merchants.<sup>363</sup>

The evidence of the written sources shows that the late Turkic populations traded almost the same commodities as the Khazars before them,<sup>364</sup> including slaves captured from the neighbouring peoples, furs of hunted animals, and especially the animals they bred. The fact that they wanted luxury goods in exchange is an indication of social differentiation, with a tribal elite striving to obtain foreign or “exotic” items. Grave goods from assemblages attributed to Pecheneg, Uzes, and Cuman warriors reveal the existence of weapons and dress accessories of foreign origin. Before entering the archaeological record, they must have been obtained either through booty or be means of commerce.

Particularly illustrative in this respect is the very rich grave goods found in a “princely grave” in Zamozhnoe (Zaporozhie region, Ukraine), on the Chingul river. Among such goods was a mante adorned with

---

II, *Булгары, мадьяры, народа Севера, печенеги, русы, славяне* (Moscow, 1967), pp. 55–56.

<sup>358</sup> Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde* (see above, n. 188), pp. 384–386; Ch. Verlinden, “Esclavage et ethnographie sur les bords de la mer Noire (XIII<sup>e</sup> et XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles),” in *Miscellanea historica in honorem Leonis van der Essen Univeritatis Catholicae in oppido Lovaniensi iam annos XXXV professoris*, I (Brussels–Paris, 1947), pp. 247–298; idem, *L’esclavage dans l’Europe médiévale*, II (Gent, 1977), pp. 220–227, 456–473, and 484; L. Tardy, *Skawenhandel in der Tartarei. Die Frage der Mandscharen* (Szeged, 1983); Spinci, “La genèse des villes” (see above, n. 151), pp. 225–228; M. Balard, “Esclavage en Crimée et sources fiscales génoises au XV<sup>e</sup> siècle,” *Byzantinische Forschungen* 22 (1996), pp. 9–17; P. Jackson, *The Mongols and the West, 1221–1410* (Harlow, 2005), pp. 307–308.

<sup>359</sup> Anne Comnène (see above, n. 18), II, p. 191.

<sup>360</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, p. 26 (Ibn el Asyr); *Extrait d’Ibn-Alathir*, in [Ch. F.] Defrémery, *Fragments de géographes et d’historiens arabes et persans inédits relatifs aux anciens peuples du Caucase et de la Russie Méridionale* (offprint from *Journal Asiatique*, 4th Ser., 13, 1848; 14, 1849) (Paris, 1849), p. 80.

<sup>361</sup> Ibn Hauqal (see above, n. 34), II, p. 460.

<sup>362</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 437.

<sup>363</sup> *Hudūd al-‘Ālam*, p. 100; *Orient. Rev.*, p. 206.

<sup>364</sup> Ibn Hauqal, pp. 382 and 385.



pieces of golden sheet, two vessels with enamel decoration, a chalice with a lid, a gilded silver belt kit of West European origin, an old Rus' helmet, and many other dress accessories made of precious metals.<sup>365</sup> The Cumans benefited from trade in Crimea and along the Volga, two regions on which they imposed their political control, especially on flourishing urban centres such as Sudak and Saksin.<sup>366</sup>

Judging from the archaeological evidence, monetary exchanges in pre-Mongol Turkic societies played a less important role than barter. The number of coins deposited in graves increased considerably in the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries, an indication of an increased monetization of nomadic society. That, however, does not seem to have trickle down to the lower strata of society, but remained restricted to the elites.<sup>367</sup> The fact that most of such coins were not of bronze, but of silver substantiates the idea of a limited monetization. So far the only burial assemblages in the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains, which produced coins are those excavated in Suvorovo (Ismail district, Odessa region, Ukraine; with thirteen late twelfth-century Byzantine scyphates)<sup>368</sup> (Fig. 38/1, 2, 5–8), Pârteștii de Jos (Suceava county, Romania; late thirteenth-century Mongol coin),<sup>369</sup> and Grădești (Reni district, Odessa region, Ukraine; with a groat struck in Prague in the 1300s).<sup>370</sup>

<sup>365</sup> V. V. Otroshchenko, Iu. Ia. Rassamakin, "Гробницы царей находятся в Геррах," *Знание-сила* (1982), no. 6, pp. 16–17; idem "Половецкий комплекс Чингульского кургана," *Археология* 53 (1986), pp. 14–36; L. S. Geras'kova, "Культура середньовічних кочівників," in *Історія української культури*, 1, *Історія культури давнього населення України*, eds. P. P. Tolochko (gen. ed.), D. N. Kozak, R. S. Orlov, S. V. Smirnov, V. V. Otroshchenko, S. D. Krizhits'kii, S. S. Bessonova, R. V. Terpilovs'kii (Kiev, 2001), pp. 1024–1025 and figs. pp. 1023, 1026–1028, 1030, and 1034.

<sup>366</sup> Grekov, Iakubovskii, *Золотая Орда* (see above, n. 208), pp. 29–31; Pritsak, "Polovcians" (see above, n. 16), p. 371; J. Martin, *Treasure of the Land of Darkness. The Fur Trade and its Significance for Medieval Russia* (Cambridge, 1986), pp. 24–27, 47, and 188; Noonan, "Rus', Pechenegs, and Polovtsy" (see above, n. 307), pp. 316–317 and 320–323.

<sup>367</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 214–216.

<sup>368</sup> A. O. Dobroliubskii, O. S. Stoliarik, "Візантійські монети у кочівницькому похованні XII ст. у Дністро-Дунайському межиріччі," *Археология* 43 (1983), pp. 71–75.

<sup>369</sup> O. Iliescu, "Însemnări privitoare la descoperiri monetare," *SCN* 1 (1957), p. 463.

<sup>370</sup> A. O. Dobroliubskii, L. V. Subbotin, S. P. Segeda, "Золотоордынское погребение у Дуная (К истории кочевого населения Северо-Западного Причерноморье в XIV в.)," in *Днестро-Дунайское междуречье в I-начале II тыс. н.э.* (Kiev, 1987), pp. 89–91.

*Social and Political Life*

The basic structure of the social and political organization of the local population in the Carpathian-Dniester region was the rural village community (*obște*). Its structure was outlined as early as prehistory and survived with remarkable vigour almost into modern times. Territorial communities derive from pre-existing social formations based on kinship. There is yet no agreement as to the way in which Romanian villages appeared. However, there is no need of a single scenario: in some cases, the inhabitants of a village could indeed have had common ancestors, but not in other cases. Because until the thirteenth or fourteenth centuries, the only communities in existence in the east-Carpathian area were exclusively rural, no influence existed from urban communities. The understanding of the social relations in existence prior to the rise of the medieval state of Moldavia is still at an incipient stage. The structure of the village communities of the late Middle Ages and the modern period have been the subject of a number of high-quality studies.<sup>371</sup> However, because of the complete absence of any written sources, reconstructing the defining features of the rural communities of the early Middle Ages remains hypothetical. Some analogies may be advanced from the late medieval period or from even from the ethnographic record of relatively recent communities, either in Romania or elsewhere in Europe. But the most important source of direct information is still archaeology.

There is no evidence so far of wealth differentials within the local communities in the region to the east from Carpathian Mountains. Moreover, a certain homogeneity has been noted in the grave goods associated with burial assemblages dated between the tenth and the thirteenth century. The only indications of sharp differences in wealth are hoards of coins and dress accessories. Petre P. Panaitescu described

---

<sup>371</sup> H. H. Stahl, *Contribuții la studiul satelor devălmașe românești* (Bucharest), I (1958); II (1959); III (1965); V. Costăchel, "Obștea sătească," in V. Costăchel, P. P. Panaitescu, and A. Cazacu, *Viața feudală în Țara Românească și Moldova (sec. XIV–XVII)* (Bucharest, 1957), pp. 79–108; Șt. Pascu, "Cristalizarea relațiilor feudale și apariția primelor formațiuni politice pe teritoriul țării noastre în secolul al X-lea și la începutul secolului al XI-lea," in *Ist. Rom.*, II, pp. 34–42; P. P. Panaitescu, *Obștea țărănească în Țara Românească și Moldova. Orînduirea feudală* (Bucharest, 1964); D. M. Dragnev, P. V. Sovetov, "Основные этапы развития и разложения общины в Молдавии (до начала XIX в.)," in *Славяно-волошские связи*, ed. N. A. Mokhov (Kishinev, 1978), pp. 64–114; L. L. Polevoi, *Раннефеодальная Молдавия* (Kishinev, 1985), pp. 32–68; Al. I. Gonța, *Satul în Moldova medievală. Instituțiile* (Bucharest, 1986).

the rural village community as a community of labor, “that is a community performing labor directed by the community and having communal rights to land use. Indeed, the essential aspect for defining a village community is labor and its organization, not possession of land.”<sup>372</sup> Panaitescu’s sharp distinction appears to suggest that access to farming lands or pastures played only a secondary place in the organization of rural communities. However, ethnographic analogies show that quite is true: the entire structure of the community was dictated by rights of access to land. Most typical in that respect was the communal use of pastures, forests, as well as courses or bodies of water. The land under cultivation was periodically divided between individual families by means of drawing lots. There is in fact no evidence that within Romanian village communities in existence before the rise of the medieval state, landed property had already become hereditary and was therefore not divided periodically any more.<sup>373</sup> Following his two visits to Moldavia in 1633 and 1639, respectively, Friar Niccolò Barsi from Lucca described local villages as following: “No one, townsman or villager, can say: ‘This land is mine, and that is yours.’ At sowing time all townsmen go out in the fields, where the *șoltuz* (judge) and the *pârgar* (member of the town council, syndic) divide and distribute the lands in keeping with the members of the family: if there are eight people in the family, they give eight plots; if there are ten, they give the same number of plots. They are so numerous that people can never sow them all, so they sow one part in two years, then in the other part in the next two years”<sup>374</sup>

The Italian monk described communities in towns, but the situation cannot have been much different in the countryside, either at that time or centuries earlier. Barsi insisted on the availability of arable land, a phenomenon duly noted by other travellers to medieval Moldavia as well.<sup>375</sup> A periodical redistribution of lands among members of the village community is a practice, which survived well into the early modern period in Transylvania. During the sixteenth-century, several princes

<sup>372</sup> P. P. Panaitescu, *Introducere în istoria culturii românești* (Bucharest, 1969), p. 157.

<sup>373</sup> An idea advanced by E. Zaharia, *Populația românească din Transilvania în secolele VII–VIII (Cimitirul nr. 2 de la Bratei)* (Bucharest, 1977), pp. 112 and 116.

<sup>374</sup> *Călători*, V, p. 80 (N. Barsi).

<sup>375</sup> *Călători*, IV, p. 575 (G. Botero).

of Transylvania issued regulations concerning the proportion and the means for the distribution of lands under cultivation.<sup>376</sup>

Village communities (*obști*) were independent social and political units. They had economic, as well as administrative, juridical and fiscal functions. Communal meetings were not regular, but summoned as needed. The village community as a whole was involved in all aspects of life, including family affairs. The village community was taxed collectively by both rulers of medieval states and by the nomads. It also had juridical freedom in criminal cases involving members of the community or crimes committed within the community boundaries, irrespective of the status or origin of the persons involved. A village community consisted of several groups of people, all with equal rights, who were also members of the same kin group, i.e., were descendants of the same ancestor.<sup>377</sup>

The internal stability of village communities was dramatically altered by the emergence of wealth differentials and of the private property of the family. To regulate activity within such communities, a council of “good and old people” was selected from among experienced and respected heads of households, whose prestige was often based on wealth. In time, members of the council transformed their position into one of power, as they became the mediators between village communities and the nomads. They collected the tribute and enforced the prestation of corvées imposed by the new rulers. It has long been noted that that position of power turned such men into leaders of later village confederacies.

The structure of the Romanian village community bears some resemblance to the village community known to have been in existence in Byzantium. This is especially true for the balance between communal and individual property, as well as for composition and prerogatives of the rural elite.<sup>378</sup> During the second half of the first millennium, in some villages of the Prôtomeria district, a council of old people was in existence, a body known as the “elders who held the main offices,” led by “a chief of the old people” (*πρωτοπρεσβύτερος*). Other village

<sup>376</sup> D. Prodan, “Domeniul cetății Ciceu la 1553,” *Anuarul Institutului de Istorie din Cluj* 8 (1965), p. 77; Șt. Imreh, I. Pataki, “Contribuții la studiul agriculturii transilvănene (1570–1610),” *Acta Musei Napocensis* 4 (1967), pp. 158–159.

<sup>377</sup> Stahl, *Contribuții* (see above, n. 371), I, pp. 55, 169; II, pp. 152–174; Panaitescu, *Obștea* (see above, n. 371), p. 50.

<sup>378</sup> V. Al. Georgescu, *Bizanțul și instituțiile românești pînă la mijlocul secolului al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1980), pp. 61–71.

leaders were also noted at the same time in other regions of the Empire under different names, but it is not known whether or not they were recruited from among elders.<sup>379</sup> The “old people” or “good and old people” (люди добри и стари) are also mentioned in sixteenth- and eighteenth-century documents relating to several towns in Moldavia.<sup>380</sup> They were often consulted in matters of administration, which were of concern for all members of the community.<sup>381</sup> Their summons followed an old custom going back, without any doubt, to the period before the rise of the medieval town and state in the region between the eastern Carpathians and the Dniester River.

The perimeter of every village community was clearly demarcated by boundaries often in the form of pillars or stones. Several medieval charters refer to “boundaries” (*hotar*) in existence “for centuries.” The bounded perimeter included not only the houses, but also the arable land, the pastures, and the forest collectively owned by the community.

<sup>379</sup> M. Kaplan, *Les hommes et la terre à Byzance du VI<sup>e</sup> au XI<sup>e</sup> siècle. Propriété et exploitation du sol* (Paris, 1992), pp. 198–200.

<sup>380</sup> L. T. Boga, *Documente basarabene, V, Hrisoave și cărți domnești (1507–1594)* (Chișinău, 1929), no. XXX, pp. 44–45; idem, *Documente basarabene, VII, Hrisoave și cărți domnești (1604–1653)* (Chișinău, 1929), no. XXXIX, p. 41; no. XLII, p. 45; no. XLIV, p. 47; I. Antonovici, *Documente bărlădene, IV* (Bârlad, 1924), no. XVII, p. 32; no. XXVI, p. 48; no. XXVII, p. 50; etc.; *Documente privitoare la istoria orașului Iași, I, Acte interne (1408–1660)*, eds. I. Caproșu and P. Zahariuc (Iași, 1999), nos. 21, 171, 267, 276, 327, 349, 357, 421, 494; *Ibidem, II (1661–1690)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2000), nos. 89, 142, 183, etc.; *Ibidem, III (1691–1725)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2000), nos. 32, 51, 61, etc.; *Ibidem, IV (1726–1740)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2001), nos. 63, 105, 224, etc.; DRH,A, VI, no. 127; XVIII, nos. 8, 65, 155, etc.; XIX, nos. 61, 91, 344 etc.; XXII, nos. 18, 33, and 105; XXIII, nos. 2A, 2B, 56; XXIV, nos. 16, 39, 52, etc.; XXV, nos. 6, 12, 49, etc.; XXVI, nos. 42, 49, 62, etc.; XXVII, nos. 191, 215, 226, etc.; *Documenta Catholicorum Moldaviae, A. Documente românești, I. Fondul Episcopiei Romano-Catolice Iași, 1 (1627–1750)*, eds. S. Văcaru and A. Despinescu (Iași, 2002), nos. 4, 7, 72, 80, etc.; *Documente privitoare la istoria Țării Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea, 1751–1774. Cărți domnești și zapise (Moldova în epoca feudalismului, IX)*, eds. L. Svetlicinâi, D. Dragnev, E. Bociarov, co-ord. D. Dragnev (Chișinău, 2004), nos. 109, 159, and 185; *Documente privitoare la istoria Țării Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea (1775–1786). Cărți domnești și zapise (Moldova în epoca feudalismului, X)*, eds. L. Svetlicinâi, D. Dragnev, E. Bociarov, co-ord. D. Dragnev (Chișinău, 2005), nos. 24, 98, 130, and 162; D. Agache, *Hrisoave inedite de la Ștefan cel Mare și destinul unor sate din Moldova* (Iași, 2006), nos. II, 5, 9; and III, 10, etc.

<sup>381</sup> N. Grigoraș, *Instituții feudale din Moldova, I. Organizarea de stat pînă la mijlocul sec. al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1971), pp. 248–252; A. I. Galben, *Из истории феодального право Молдовы XVIII—начала XIX в. (турецко-фанариотский период)* (Kishinev, 1998), pp. 180–189; Șt. Ștefănescu, “Aspecte ale civilizației rurale românești în evul mediu. Factori afectivi și dinamici ai vieții sociale,” in *Studia historica et theologica. Omagiu Profesorului Emilian Popescu*, eds. C. C. Petolescu, T. Teoteoi, A. Gabor (Iași, 2003), pp. 617–619.

Maintaining the boundary depended upon the success of the cyclical redistribution of land among members of that community.<sup>382</sup>

Following the appearance of social stratification—much earlier than the rise of the medieval state—the institution of the local lord (knez) was introduced. Knezes are mentioned not only for Romanians in Moldavia, but also for those in the western Balkans, Transylvania, and Wallachia. In Moldavia, knezes and judges (*iudices*) first appear in charters during the first half of the fifteenth century. In Romanian, the word for knez (*neaz*) is of Slavic origin, that for judge (*jude*) of Latin origin. A village normally had only one knez (only exceptional cases are known of villages with two or three knezes), and his office appears to have been hereditary from the very beginning. In Romanian villages of the Galician territories annexed by the Polish Crown in 1349, which were organized according to the “Romanian law” (*ius Valachicum*), villagers had to work for several days on the estates of their knezes.<sup>383</sup> The office of knez, which is the equivalent to what was known in western Europe as *comes*, appears also among southern, eastern, and western Slavic peoples, with varying attributions.<sup>384</sup>

The community as a whole was supposed to approve any levy of goods and the acceptance of foreigners within the community. Such prerogatives were abrogated only when there was no a protective political organism. Foreigners were sometimes allowed to live the village, but without the privileges, which other, regular members of the community enjoyed.<sup>385</sup> An indication of an enclave of foreigners within a local village community may be detected in the cemetery at Hansca-“Limbari”. Anthropological studies have indicated a sharp distinction between dolicocephalic females and brachycephalic males, some of them with Mongoloid features. This has been interpreted as evidence of a group of newcomers from the eastern Europe, who shared a number of forensic features otherwise typical for cemeteries attributed to Alans

<sup>382</sup> A. I. Galben, *Din “obiceul pământului” al Moldovei feudale (sec. XVIII-prima jumătate a sec. XIX)* (Chișinău, 1986), p. 15 ff.

<sup>383</sup> I. Bogdan, “Despre cnejii români,” in idem, *Scrieri alese*, ed. G. Mihăilă (Bucharest, 1968), pp. 180–206; R. Rosetti, *Pământul, sătenii și stăpînii în Moldova*, I, *De la origini până la 1834* (Bucharest, 1907), p. 23 ff.; I. A. Pop, “Statutul social-economic al cnezilor din Țările Române în secolele XIV–XV (I),” *AIIA* 25 (1988), no. 1, pp. 19–20; idem, *Instituții medievale românești. Adunările cneziale și nobiliare (boierești) din Transilvania în secolele XIV–XVI* (Cluj–Napoca, 1991), pp. 36–57.

<sup>384</sup> K. Kadlec, *Introduction à l'étude comparative de l'histoire du droit public des peuples slaves* (Paris, 1933), pp. 37–38, 54, 93, 99, 133, 200, and 302–304.

<sup>385</sup> Stahl, *Contribuții* (see above, n. 371), II, pp. 164–170 and 232–256.

and to Bulgars within the Saltovo-Maiaki culture.<sup>386</sup> As the graves with male skeletons displaying the above-mentioned anthropological features do not cluster anywhere within the territory of the cemetery, but instead appear among other graves of men, women, or children, this can only mean that the immigrants were quickly integrated within the local community. A rather similar situation was discovered in the medieval cemetery at Dinogetia-Garvăn (Tulcea county) (Romania), where, except for some inhumations with anthropological features indicating a group of foreigners, which have been buried on the cemetery fringes, all other graves with similar skeletal remains have been found among graves of the native population.<sup>387</sup>

Members of the village community had to perform a number of communal activities, from the cleaning of the forest and the pastures of briars and weeds to the fencing of plots. To elude such duties could have led to penalties consisting primarily in the suspension of the right of access to communal lands.<sup>388</sup> Several late medieval and early modern sources show that even priests cultivated their respective plots by themselves, and sometimes went to the forest to fell trees.<sup>389</sup> This strongly suggests, on one hand, that the performing of the liturgy and of other ritual celebrations did not bring to any priest a sufficient income to survive, and, on the other hand, that members of the village communities had no obligation to work on the lands of the parish. That the clergy had no special privileges within the village community and that they had to perform the same kind of work as the other members of that community is strikingly similar to the situation in Byzantium after the tenth century. Some priests were even ranked lowest in the local hierarchy, for they were *paroikoi*, dependant, not free people.<sup>390</sup> Perhaps

---

<sup>386</sup> M. S. Velikanova, *Палеоантропология Прутско-Днестровского междуречья* (Moscow, 1975), pp. 114–138; Chebotarenko, *Население* (see above, n. 100), p. 54.

<sup>387</sup> E. Comșa, “Cimitirul,” in Gh. Ștefan, I. Barnea, M. Comșa, E. Comșa, *Dinogetia, I, Așezarea feudală timpurie de la Biserița-Garvăn* (Bucharest, 1967), pp. 369–371; G. Bakó, “Despre organizarea obștilor sătești ale epocii feudale timpurii din sud-estul României,” *SCIVA* 26 (1975), no. 3, p. 375.

<sup>388</sup> C. Cihodaru, “Contribuții la cunoașterea obștii țărănești în Moldova,” *Studii și cercetări științifice, Istorie*, Iași, 7 (1956), no. 1, p. 21.

<sup>389</sup> *Călători*, V, p. 78 (N. Barsi); *Kurtze Beschreibung von denen moldauischen Ländern*, in N. Iorga, “O nouă descriere a Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea de un suedez,” *Revista istorică* 16 (1930), nos. 4–5, p. 91; Al. P. Arbore, “Informațiunile unor călători străini și alte însemnări răzlețe despre Focșani și vecinătățile lui,” *Milcovia* 1 (1930), no. 2, p. 133.

<sup>390</sup> Kaplan, *Les hommes et la terre*, pp. 202–203 and 228–229; G. T. Dennis, “Popular religious attitudes and practices in Byzantium,” *Proche Orient Chrétien* 43 (1993), nos. 3–4, pp. 285–286.

because they were involved sometimes too much in gaining their own bread, those priests are said to have neglected their duty as priests, which caused the intervention of emperor Alexius I in 1107.<sup>391</sup>

In short, the situation of the Orthodox clergy in the Romanian lands during the first centuries of the second millennium could not have been better than that of the Byzantine clergy at that same time. In Galician villages of south-eastern Poland, which were organized according to *jus Valachicum*, there were significant wealth differences between the priests. Some grew rich through trade and had mills and ponds with fish on lease. Others were poor and tilled their own fields, which were exempt from taxes. They had to pay for cultivating the parochial plots. The lack of education had serious consequences on the quality of the liturgical service.<sup>392</sup> Following the rise of the medieval state of Moldavia, priests had landed property, and commonly worked their own fields,<sup>393</sup> a situation which apparently was hindered their priestly duties. As most of them were of peasant origin, and, before modern times, with no access to formal education, local priests and monks were completely ignorant of theological subtleties and sometimes of questionable moral behaviour. Another impediment in assimilating the ecclesiastical dogma was the Old Church Slavonic language, which most clergymen did not master. They must have known it only to a degree sufficient for performing the liturgy.<sup>394</sup> Nothing indicates that priests had any privileged position prior to 1300. In medieval Moldavia, clergymen of all ranks were not just ministers in the altar, but also men with juridical competence, who also assumed responsibilities in guiding social and family life. At the same time, both priests and monks benefited from individual fiscal exemptions, and sometimes from donations from the prince.<sup>395</sup>

---

<sup>391</sup> P. Gautier, "L'édit d'Alexis Ier Comnène sur la réforme du clergé," *Revue des études byzantines* 31 (1973), pp. 165–201.

<sup>392</sup> Th. Holban, "Jus Valachicum in Polonia," *Studii și cercetări istorice*, Iași, 18 (1943), pp. 326–333.

<sup>393</sup> B.-P. Maleon, *Clerul de mir din Moldova secolelor XIV–XVI* (Iași, 2007), pp. 306–307.

<sup>394</sup> N. Djuvara, *Le pays roumain entre Orient et Occident. Les Principautés danubiennes au début du XIX<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Paris, 1989), pp. 144–146; I. Țighiliu, *Societate și mentalitate în Țara Românească și Moldova. Secolele XV–XVII* (Bucharest, 1998), pp. 172–190.

<sup>395</sup> Țighiliu, *Societate*, pp. 190–194; B.-P. Maleon, "Clerul ortodox din Moldova medievală. Între credința populară și disciplina ecleziastică", in *Etnie și confesiune în Moldova medievală*, ed. I. Toderașcu (Iași, 2006), pp. 43–46 and 81–83; idem, *Clerul de mir*, pp. 308–311, 327–329, 360–369, and 386–387.



Many Romanian historians still endorse Dimitrie Cantemir theory, according to which the regions of Câmpulung Moldovenesc, Vrancea, and Tigheci were “republics” of sorts, as remnants of political entities pre-dating the rise of the medieval state.<sup>396</sup> The Moldavian scholar claimed that, in spite of paying tax to the prince, the inhabitants of those regions enjoyed great freedom and had their own laws and judges.<sup>397</sup> Like many other parts of Moldavia, the three regions in question may have preserved a number of features of a self-governing body most typical for village community confederacies. That, however, is no indication of their status prior to the rise of the medieval state. It has been demonstrated that Cantemir’s description of the Câmpulung Moldovenesc region contains a number of inaccuracies and contradictions, especially when compared to data from diplomatic sources. For example, there is no evidence whatsoever that the inhabitants of the Câmpulung Moldovenesc region were able, as Cantemir claimed, to depose the officials whom the prince had delegated to their region. Nor is there any evidence that they were eager to accept the Polish rule. Cantemir’s odd statement must be interpreted in the light of the conflict between his father, Constantin Cantemir (1685–1693), and the townsmen of Câmpulung Moldovenesc, which had taken place shortly after a brief occupation of Northern Moldavia by Polish troops. Dimitrie Cantemir collapsed the two events and thus gave a spin to the story, which had no relation to what had actually happened. Moreover, his idea of the Câmpulung Moldovenesc region being independent is in sharp contradiction to the existence of no less than two officials and to the collection of tax from the region for the treasury.<sup>398</sup> There is therefore no serious reason to put any trust on the idea of so-called “republics.” This information, like many other passages in the *Descriptio Moldaviae*, a work Cantemir wrote in his Russian exile, is simply inaccurate, written when the author was far away from his native land, has proven to be accurate. The privileges of the inhabitants of the Câmpulung Moldovenesc, Vrancea, and Tigheci regions resulted instead from their military

<sup>396</sup> A. D. Xenopol, “Întemeierea Țărilor române (I și II),” *Revista pentru istorie, arheologie și filologie* 3 (1885), 5, no. 1, pp. 6–7; idem, *Istoria românilor*, I (see above, n. 14), pp. 436 and 439; C. C. Giurescu, *Istoria românilor*, I, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1935), p. 319; S. Columbeanu, *Cnezate și voievodate românești* (Bucharest, 1973), pp. 128–130; N. Grigoraș, “Românii la est de Carpați și organizarea lor pînă la întemeierea statului românesc al Moldovei,” *CI*s, SN, 8 (1977), pp. 270–271.

<sup>397</sup> Cantemir, *DM*, pp. 300–303.

<sup>398</sup> T. Bălan, *Din istoricul Câmpulungului Moldovenesc* (Bucharest, 1960), pp. 25–29.

duties. Câmpulung Moldovenesc was near the Polish border, not far from the most important road across the Carpathian Mountains, from Northern Moldavia and Transylvania. The region of Vrancea, which next to the Oituz Pass, bordered on Wallachia, while the woodlanders of Tigheci were neighbours of the Tatars of the Bugeac.

Rejecting the idea that Câmpulung Moldovenesc, Vrancea, and Tigheci were pre-state political structures does not imply excluding the possibility of such structures having actually been in existence in the lands east of the Carpathian Mountains before the fourteenth-century “dismounting” (*descălecat* = state formation established by the coming of an external elite) of Dragoș and Bogdan. Important historical sources in fact support such an idea. At the basis of those political structures were confederacies of village communities, whose presence was determined by the internal evolution of the native communities and by the need to protect them against both Turkic nomads and neighbouring medieval states.

There must have been a pre-state political structure in the region of the Carpathian Bend, in which a papal letter of 1234 located the Romanian “pseudo-bishops,” given what is known about the link established in the Middle Ages between bishoprics and secular political organization. Without any doubt, that political structure must have appeared before the Teutonic Knights and the Cuman bishopric gained privileged positions outside the Carpathian Mountains. A “duke Râmunc of Wallachia” (*herzoge Râmunc úzer Vlâchen lant*) is mentioned in the *Nibelungenlied*,<sup>399</sup> an indication that by 1200, the latest date which can be assigned to the last stage in the composition of the Old German epic, there was Romanian political entity—duchy or otherwise—somewhere in the Carpathian region. That that entity may have been located to the east from the Carpathian Mountains results from another passage in the epic, in which Wallachians are associated with Rus’, Greeks, Poles, and Pechenegs, all ethnic groups in the vicinity of Moldavia. In addition, *Eymundar pátttr / saga* mentions east-Carpathian Romanians (*Blökumenn*) among the participants in the conflicts between the princes of Rus’ who attempted to take over Kiev in the early eleventh century. Again, the military assistance provided under such circumstances

---

<sup>399</sup> *Das Nibelungenlied nach der Handschrift C*, ed. U. Hennig (Tübingen, 1977), p. 212; *Das Nibelungenlied, mittelhochdeutsch / neuhochdeutsch*, eds. D. Buschinger and W. Spiewok (Amiens, 1991), pp. 312–313.

indirectly points to a social and political structure capable of sustaining that military organization. The increasing military power of the local society is otherwise illustrated by the great number of weapons found in the archaeological record: axes, maces, arrowheads, and coats of mail. Along with an increasing quantity, an improvement of earlier types of weapons is also visible.<sup>400</sup>

\* \* \*

At the basis of nomadic society was the patriarchal clan made up of several related families. Such a structure is represented by the Mongol clan (*oboq* or *oboh*), with a common ancestor (*äbügä*).<sup>401</sup> That clan practised exogamy, blood-revenge, and levirate.

Conspicuous wealth differentials within clans manifest themselves in burial assemblages. While some were devoid of both grave goods and horse skeletons, many grave goods have been found in others. Rich burial assemblages have been found in Balabanu (Taraclia county, Republic of Moldova; Fig. 25/3–6), Bădragii Vechi (Edineț county, Republic of Moldova; Fig. 27/11), Fridensfeld (Mirnopol), Limanscoe-“Fricăței,” Pavlovca, Plavni, Sărata, and Tuzla (Fig. 38/3; 4) (all in the Odessa region of Ukraine). Each produced golden rings and other luxury artifacts. Golden mounts have been found in Pogonești (Vaslui county, Romania; Figs. 28/7, 8; 55/1, 2), which were part of a belt kit. The burial assemblage found in Moscu (Galați county, Romania) included an iron helmet with gilded silver decoration, while that from Seliște (Orhei county, Republic of Moldova) produced small silver plates with Arabic inscriptions (Fig. 37/7) and several other artifacts (Fig. 37). Forty years ago, between 17 and 18 percent of all burial assemblages attributed to the Turkic nomads of the pre-Mongol era had one or several grave goods made of gold. Once the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas were under the control of the Golden Horde, there no more golden artefacts in any burial assemblages attributed to the nomads.<sup>402</sup>

<sup>400</sup> Spinci, *Moldova*, pp. 103–104; idem, “Incipient forms of statal organisation with the Romanians East of the Carpathians,” *Transylvanian Review* 5 (1996), no. 2, pp. 44–54.

<sup>401</sup> Vladimirtsov, *Le régime social* (see above, n. 234), p. 56.

<sup>402</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Köchevniki*, p. 220.

When noting that the Pechenegs were rich and had gold and silver, weapons, adorned belts and flags, al-Bakri<sup>403</sup> certainly had in mind not all Pechenegs, but just the rich ones. Both the large number of cattle, which wealthy Oghuz are said to have owned, and conspicuous display of wealth in ceremonies of Cuman chiefs bespeak the remarkable wealth differentials in nomadic society. Domestic animals, especially horses and camels, were not just an economic asset, but also a way to show off and compete for status.<sup>404</sup>

Several clans made up a tribe. The number of Turkic tribes varied over time. In the mid-tenth century, Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus knew that the Pechenegs were divided into eight “themes” (θέματα), by which he certainly meant “tribes,” each further subdivided into five smaller “districts” (clans). Four of these themes / tribes, namely *Giazichopon*, *Kato Gyla* (= Lower Gyla), *Charaboi* and *Iabdiertim* (Γιαζιχοπόν, κάτω Γύλα, Χαραβόη, Ἰαβδιερτίμ), were on the right bank of the Dnieper River, with the other four on the left bank: *Kuartzitzur*, *Syrukalpei*, *Borotalmat* and *Bulatzopon* (Κουαρτζιτζούρ, Συρουκάλπει, Βοροταλάματ, Βουλατζοπόν).<sup>405</sup> The original names are thought to have been Jazi-Qapon, Jula, Qara-Baj, Javdi-Ertim, Küerçi-Čur, Suru-Külbej, Boro-Talmač and Bula-Čaban.<sup>406</sup> A Hungarian scholar even tried to associate *Bulatzopon* and the name *Buila zoapan* (zhupan-? Chaban-?) (ΒΟΥΗΛΑ ΖΟΑΠΑΝ) from the Greek inscription on the golden cup from the Sânicolau Mare hoard (Timiș county) (Romania).<sup>407</sup>

The number of the tribes is confirmed by Mas’udi’s account, while Bruno of Querfurt has only four Pecheneg tribes,<sup>408</sup> perhaps because he knew nothing about those to the east from the Dnieper River. Mas’udi gives the following names for the Pecheneg tribes: *Ārtim*, *Čur*, *Jyla*, *Külpej*,

<sup>403</sup> Al-Bécri (see above, n. 162), p. 15. See also A. P. Martínez (trans.), *Gardizi* (see above, n. 43), p. 152; Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 33; *Orient.Ber.*, pp. 165 (Gardīzī), 222 (al-Bakrī), 250 (al-Marwazī); Zakhoder, *Каспийский свод сведений* (see above, n. 357), p. 74 ff.

<sup>404</sup> F. Kussmaul, “Das Reiternomadentum als historisches Phänomen,” in *Nomadismus als Entwicklungsproblem* (Bielefeld, 1969), p. 33.

<sup>405</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 168–169.

<sup>406</sup> G. Györfy, “Sur la question de l’établissement des Petchénègues en Europe,” *AOH* 25 (1972), nos. 1–3, p. 289.

<sup>407</sup> Németh, *Die Inschriften* (see above, n. 51), pp. 9–14 and 31–33.

<sup>408</sup> *Epistola Brunonis ad Henricum regem*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, I, ed. A. Bielowski (Lwów, 1864), p. 225.

*Charawoj*, *Talmač*, *Chopon* and *Čopon*.<sup>409</sup> These may be closer to the original names. The Pechenegs of three of the themes mentioned by Constantine Porphyrogenitus—Javdi-Ertim, Küerči-Čur, and K’abukšyn-Jula (Χαβουξίγγυλά)—are said to have been called *Kangar* (κάγγαρ) because of being the most valiant and powerful of all Pechenegs.<sup>410</sup> The names of the Pecheneg tribes have been explained as referring either to personalities or to horses. For example, K’abukšyn Jula is translated as “the tribe of Jula, who had bark-coloured horses,” while *Giazichopon* (= jazы K’apan) is “K’apan’s tribe.”<sup>411</sup> According to some, the term of *Giazi* (probably *jazы*) means “flat land” or “steppe.”<sup>412</sup>

For the themes to the west of the Dnieper River, the emperor-chronicler tries a general localisation: the province of Jazi-Qapan bordered on Bulgaria, Jula on Turkey (= Hungary), Qara-Baj on Rus’, and Javdi-Ertim on the country of the Ultinians, Dervlenians and Lenzenians (that is Ulichians, Drevlianians and Poles). Elsewhere in the *De administrando imperio*, Constantine Porphyrogenitus claims that *Patzinakia* is only a half-day’s walk away from Bulgaria, a whole day’s walk from Rus’, and four days from “Turkey.”<sup>413</sup> The understanding of the precise location of the Pecheneg tribes depends upon the coordinates of Emperor Constantine’s account, especially on the rivers mentioned in his work and on their neighbours. Thus, Jazi-Qapan must have been in the Romanian Plain, Jula between the Siret and the Dniester, Javdi-Ertim between the Dniester and the Bug, and Qara-Baj between the Bug and the Dnieper. All the tribes mentioned above occupied only the steppe lands on the lower courses of those rivers. It is doubtful that the Kato Gyla tribes were located north of Giazichopon, on the

<sup>409</sup> J. Marquart, *Osteuropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge* (Leipzig, 1903), p. 65. See also A. N. Kurat, *Pecheneg tarihi* (Istanbul, 1937), pp. 52–53; Golden, *Introduction* (see above, n. 12), p. 266.

<sup>410</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 170–171.

<sup>411</sup> J. Németh, “Die petschenegischen Stammesnamen,” *Ungarische Jahrbücher* 10 (1930), p. 33. See also Shcherbak, “Знаки” (see above, n. 49), p. 383; G. Györfy, “Monuments du lexique petchénegue,” *AOH* 18 (1965), nos. 1–2, pp. 76–77.

<sup>412</sup> K. H. Menges, “Etymological notes on some Păcănăg names,” *Byzantion* 17 (1944–1945), p. 266; Shcherbak, “Знаки,” p. 383; G. Vörös, “Relics of the Pecheneg language in the works of Constantine,” in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik (Ankara, 2002), p. 626. For the etymology of the Pecheneg tribal names mentioned by Constantine Porphyrogenitus, see also N. A. Baskakov, “Этнонимы и антропонимы печенегов в исторических источниках,” in *Studia turcologica memoriae Alexii Bombaci dicata*, eds. A. Gallotta, U. Marazzi (Napoli, 1982), pp. 15–20.

<sup>413</sup> *DAI*, pp. 168–169.

same river courses, i.e. in southern Moldavia, as maintained by many scholars.<sup>414</sup> Turkic nomads did not share the steppe lands with anyone, and their direction of their transhumant movements was from south to north, not from east to west.

A century after emperor Constantine's account, the Pechenegs driven away from the steppe between the Dnieper and the Danube by the Uzes, are said to have been divided into thirteen tribes, eleven under Tyrach and another two under Kegen.<sup>415</sup> Although those tribes eventually moved to the Balkans in 1046–1047, the Byzantines experienced two more Pecheneg invasions, in 1086 and 1122–1123, respectively. This goes against the idea that by 1050, there were only thirteen Pecheneg tribes. No doubt, there were many more, which escaped the attention of the Byzantine authors, because of not getting involved in Balkan affairs.

The number of Oghuz / Uzes tribes also varied in time. During the second half of the eleventh century, Mahmud al-Kashghari knew 22 groups: Qiniq, Qayigh, Ba'yundur, Iwa, Salghur, Afshar, Baktily, Bukduz, Baya't, Yazghir, Aymur, Qr'bulk (Qara bölük), 'Lqa'buluk (Alqa bölük), Ikdiar, Urakir, Tuvtirq, Uvla'yundlugh, Tuvkar, Bajanak, Juvuldar, Jabny and Jaruqlugh.<sup>416</sup> In addition, two other branches, made up of the Khalaj, had long separated from the Oghuz confederacy. Mahmud al-Kashghari's information is partly confirmed by Rashid al-Din, who listed 24 Oghuz tribes at the beginning of the fourteenth century.<sup>417</sup> Of these, 21 had names similar to those mentioned above. The Persian scholar (a Jewish convert to Islam) in all probability wrote on the basis of sources dating back to Mahmud al-Kashghari's time.

<sup>414</sup> G. Csebe, "Turco-byzantinische Miszellen," *Körosi Csoma-Archivum* 1 (1921), no. 3, p. 216; A. Decei, "Româniî din veacul al IX-lea pînă în al XIII-lea în lumina izvoarelor armenesti," in idem, *Relații româno-orientale*, ed. M. Popa (Bucharest, 1978), p. 64; Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, p. 35 with note 83; Pritsak, "Pečenegs" (see above, n. 15), pp. 13–14.

<sup>415</sup> Skylitzes, pp. 455–456; Jean Skylitzès, *Empereurs de Constantinople*, trans. B. Flusin, red. J.-C. Cheynet (Paris, 2003), pp. 377–378; Kedrenos, II, pp. 581 and 583; Ioannis Zonarae *Epitomae historiarum libri XVIII*, III, *Libri XIII–XVIII*, ed. Th. Büttner-Wobst (Bonn, 1897), pp. 641–642.

<sup>416</sup> Mahmūd al-Kāšrārī (see above, n. 17), I, pp. 101–102. See also M. Th. Houtsma, "Die Ghuzenstämme," *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 2 (1888), pp. 221–226; V. V. Barthold, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, III (Leiden, 1962), pp. 109–111.

<sup>417</sup> Rashid-ad-din, *Сборник*, I, 1 (see above, n. 173), p. 83; Rachid-Eddin, "Extraits de l'Histoire des Mongols" (see above, n. 148), pp. 519–520; Jahn, *Die Geschichte* (see above, n. 173), p. 46; Rashiduddin Fazlullah (see above, n. 148), I, p. 25.

During the first half of the twelfth century, almost a century after the group led by Seljuk had separated from the Oghuz confederacy, al-Marvazi knew of only twelve Oghuz tribes.<sup>418</sup>

The information about the number of the Cuman tribes is contradictory, with the most trustworthy testimony being written in the 1300s. Shams al-Din Dimashqi lists eight main Qipchaq tribes—Bärgü, Toqsapa, Itapa, Barat, Il-äris, Burğ-oglu, Mingür-oglu, Jimak—to which he adds six smaller ones: Tog-Jaşqut, Qumangü, Buzangi, Băcănă, Qara böklü and Uzu čartan.<sup>419</sup> In his encyclopaedia, an-Nuwairi lists eleven Turkic tribes from the “Northern countries” (the Golden Horde), most likely on the basis of the information obtained from Rukn al-Din Baibars: Toksoba, Ieta, Burdžogly, Burly, Kangogly (or Kangarogly), Andžogly, Durut, Karabarogly, Džuznan, Karabirkli and Kotian.<sup>420</sup> Ibn Khaldun has the same tribal names, with slight differences of spelling.<sup>421</sup> However, these lists can hardly be accurate or complete. For example, during the pre-Mongol period, the Qara böklü (more precisely the Qara börklü) or Karabirkli, that is the Black Caps (*черные клобуки*) of the Rus’ chronicles were subjects of the Kievan princes, and as such they fought against other Cumans. Moreover, it appears that the lists are based on information pertaining to the mid-thirteenth-century situation, given that they list the Kotian tribe (so called after the Kotian Khan) as under the Golden Horde rule.

Judging from the map and the accompanying text written of Idrisi’s geography written in 1154, as well as from several Hungarian and Italian chronicles of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, it appears that both the White and the Black Cumania were north of the Black Sea.<sup>422</sup> Beyond that, the descriptions are too imprecise to allow for

<sup>418</sup> Marvazi (see above, n. 21), p. 29; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 241.

<sup>419</sup> Marquart, “Über das Volkstum” (see above, n. 19), p. 157. See also P. B. Golden, “Cumanica IV: The tribes of the Cuman-Qipčaq,” *AEMA* 9 (1995–1997), pp. 109–113, 115–116, 118–119, and 121.

<sup>420</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, p. 541. In the recently re-evaluated text of Rukn al-Din Baibars, the 11 tribes appear as follows: Tuqsubā, İtubā, Burj-ūghlī, Albarlī / al-Barlī, Qanghar-ūghlī, Ūnajughlī, Dürut, Qul-ābā-ūghlī, Jurtān, Qarā Burklī and Kutān. See D. Korobeinikov, “A broken mirror: the Kipčak world in the thirteenth century,” in *The Other Europe in the Middle Ages. Avars, Bulgars, Khazars, and Cumans*, ed. F. Curta (Leiden–Boston, 2008), pp. 402–403.

<sup>421</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, p. 541; C. D’Ohsson, *Histoire des Mongols depuis Tchinguiz-Khan jusqu’à Timour Bey ou Tamerlan*, I (Amsterdam, 1852), p. 339.

<sup>422</sup> Édrisi, *Géographie*, ed. A. Jaubert, II (*Recueil de voyages et de mémoires*, 6) (Paris, 1840), pp. 400–401; J. Lelewel, *Géographie du Moyen Age*, I (Breslau, 1852), pp. LVII, 92–106, 192–199; Konovalova [ed. and trans.], *Ал-Идриси*, pp. 118, 119, 121, and 219–221;

more detail. Some believe that the two names refer to two separate tribal confederacies living on the right and left bank of the Dnieper, respectively.<sup>423</sup>

The examination of the Rus' chronicles produces yet another classification of the twelfth-century Cuman tribes. The chroniclers knew of several distinct groups living in the steppe lands along the bend of the Black Sea (*lukomorskie* / *лукоморские*) and on the Danube, on the Dnieper, in Orel, near the Sea of Azov, on the Donets and on the Don.<sup>424</sup> Several other groups are mentioned: on the Volga, north of the Caucasian Mountains, and in Crimea.<sup>425</sup> According to other opinions, the Cumans were divided into five autonomous groups, situated in central Asia, between the Ural and the Volga, between the Volga and the Dnieper (with power centres on the Don and the Donets), on the right of the Lower Dnieper, and on the Lower Danube.<sup>426</sup> More recently, the idea of eleven Cuman groups has been put forward. They were located on the Volga, the Don, the Donets, on the left bank of the Dnieper, the Dnieper meadows, around the Sea of Azov, Crimea, right bank of the Dnieper, Kiev-Korsun, the Bug, *lukomorskie*, and the Danube.<sup>427</sup>

Any attempt to establish a precise number of Cuman tribal confederacies will stumble upon the problem of instability and continuous merging and splitting according to the changing political and military circumstances. Sometimes the Cumans of the Bugeac and the Bărăgan enjoyed autonomy, while at other times they were under the rule of the tribal confederacies in the Dnieper region. Their loss of autonomy seems to date back to the period during which the nomads gathered

---

Simon de Keza, pp. 146, 148, and 165; *CPict*, pp. 6–7 and 119–120; Andreae Danduli *Chronica per extensum descripta aa. 46–1280 d.C.*, ed. E. Pastorello, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, NE, XII (Bologna, 1938), p. 53.

<sup>423</sup> В. А. Рыбаков, “Русские земли по карте Идриси 1154 года,” *КС* 43 (1952), pp. 36 and 42–44; S. A. Pletneva, *Половецкие каменные изваяние (АСАI, Е 4–2)* (Moscow, 1974), p. 23; Fedorov, Fedorov, *Ранние тюрки* (see above, n. 294), p. 235; I. O. Kniaz'kii, *Русь и степь* (Moscow, 1996), pp. 47–53; I. G. Konovalova, *Восточная Европа с сочинении ал-Идриси* (Moscow, 1999), pp. 179–189.

<sup>424</sup> Kudriashov, *Половецкая степь* (see above, n. 198), pp. 130–138.

<sup>425</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 147–150; Pletneva, *Половецкие каменные изваяние*, pp. 18–19; A. Pálóczi-Horváth, “A kunok megtelepedése Magyarországon,” *Archaeologiai értesítő* 101 (1974), no. 2, p. 248; idem, *Magyományok, kapcsolatok és hatások a kunok régészeti kultúrájában* (Karcag, 1994), pp. 35–41.

<sup>426</sup> D. Rassovsky, “Половцы, III, Пределы ‘Поля Половецкаго,’” *СК* 10 (1938), pp. 166–175.

<sup>427</sup> Pritsak, “Polovcians” (see above, n. 16), pp. 342–368.



their forces on the Lower Danube in preparation for raids into the Balkans.

On the basis of the classification of stone statues—which were found primarily in the region between the Ingulets and the Volga rivers—, as well as due to an uncritical use of information culled from chronicles, some authors believed that the Cumans lived only between the Ingulets and the Volga. According to those authors, nomads in the steppe lands north of the Danube were in fact Pechenegs and Uzes subject to the Cumans.<sup>428</sup> That groups of Pecheneg and Uzes remained behind under Cuman rule cannot be denied. However, there is no reason to believe that the Cumans would have stopped at the Ingulets. In fact, all available information, both from chronicles (including Rus' ones) and from archaeological excavations proves the contrary.

The evidence strongly suggests that no political unity existed in the lands inhabited by Pechenegs, Uzes and Cumans. Wilhelm Barthold (V. V. Bartol'd) once wrote that “under normal circumstances, no nomadic people strives for political unity,” because of customary law and its resulting application for the settlement of disputes among individuals, clans, and tribes.<sup>429</sup> Barthold's remark obviously applies to all nomadic population and not tribal elites, whose interests converged towards the organization of centralized states in order to control the intensification of social conflicts among various classes, or to oppose any threats from the outside. There is some evidence that it was not only the Huns and the Mongols who dreamt of world domination, but the late Turkic populations as well, particularly the Cumans and the Uzes, as can be seen in the *Oghuznâme*.<sup>430</sup>

---

<sup>428</sup> Pletneva, *Половецкие каменные изваяние*, pp. 275–276; eadem, “Половецкая земля,” in *Древнерусские княжества X–XIII вв.*, eds. L. G. Beskrovnyi (gen. ed.), V. A. Kuchkin, V. T. Pashuto (Moscow, 1975), pp. 275–276; eadem, *Кочевники южно-русских степей в эпоху средневековья IV–XIII века. Учебное пособие* (Voronezh, 2003), pp. 175–176.

<sup>429</sup> W. Barthold, *Histoire des Turcs d'Asie Centrale* (Paris, 1945), p. 8. See also P. B. Golden, “The Qipčaq of medieval Eurasia: an example of stateless adaptation in the steppes,” in *Rulers from the Steppe. State Formation on the Eurasian Periphery*, eds. G. Seaman and D. Marks (Los Angeles, 1991), pp. 138–139.

<sup>430</sup> O. Turan, “The ideal of world domination among the medieval Turks,” *Studia Islamica* 4 (1955), pp. 77–90; P. B. Golden, “Imperial ideology and the sources of political unity amongst the pre-Ginggisid nomads of Western Eurasia,” *AEMA* 2 (1982), pp. 37–76; S. Koca, “The state tradition and organization among ancient Turks,” in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages* (see above, n. 412), pp. 698–701.

Each tribe had a specific grazing area with well-established routes of seasonal migration, and collective sharing of lands. If during peacetime the centrifugal tendencies of the tribes or regional tribal unions were obvious, when external dangers appeared, elements of these political organizations merged. The greatest threats to any nomadic community did not come from sedentary societies, but from other nomads coveting their flocks and pastures. That is why the association and the solidarity of the main groups of Pechenegs was shown when the Uzes arrived; those of the Uzes when the Cumans arrived; and those of the Cumans at the same of the Mongol invasion.

The growth in power of the Rus' principalities encouraged attempts at political consolidation by several Cuman tribes, especially the confederacies led by Boniak and Tugorkan west of the Dnieper, that of by Sharukan east of river, and later on that led by Konchak, which was the closest to a state formation. Because of their leaders' personalities, their energy and appetite for war, such tribal confederacies were weak and short-lived. The lack of political centralization in Desht-i Qipchaq is obvious in Pethachia's estimation, according to which the Cumans did not have a "king", but only "princes and noble families."<sup>431</sup> Sometimes, great expeditions, such as those against Byzantium organized by the Uzes in 1064–1065, or by the Pechenegs in 1122–1123, were not led by a single leader but by several, and they did not always act in concert.

Intra-tribal strife seems to have virulent and did not decrease even at times of great threats from the outside. The confrontation between Tyrach and Kegen during the Uzes attack is significant in that respect. The same is true about the less known conflict between the Cuman tribes Durut and Toksoba, the leaders of which, following the battle of Kalka, called for Mongol military arbitration between them in an astounding show of political myopia.<sup>432</sup> Such dissension prevented the Turkic tribal unions from reaching the level of state organization, achieving the political unity of all the nomads, maintaining the authority of the khans, and developing an efficient administrative and fiscal system.

The high official tribal titles became the attribute of aristocratic families and precise rules concerning succession were issued. With the Pechenegs, the position of chief was hereditary, but was passed not to

---

<sup>431</sup> Péthachia (see above, n. 271), p. 10.

<sup>432</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, pp. 541 (an-Nuwairi), 542 (Ibn Khaldun).

sons or brothers, but to cousins and their sons.<sup>433</sup> When the Cumans settled in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea, the position of khan was hereditary, but it was transmitted not from the father to the son, but to the brother or the nephew. Therefore, after the death of Sharukan the Elder, who was the oldest in his family, power passed onto his brother Sugr, then to Sugr's nephew and Sharukan's son, Syrchan, who in turn passed the title of khan to his brother, Atrak (Otrok).<sup>434</sup> In the early thirteenth century, along with other social changes, the hereditary rules changed too and the son could inherit power directly from his father, as with Iurii Konchakovich, Konchak's son and follower.<sup>435</sup>

The council of elders, which was made up of representatives of the tribal aristocracy, checked the power of the khan. Decisions concerning the most important problems of tribal communal life were made by that body. When several tribes gathered for common incursions, their chiefs made decisions together and chose a single leader. This was the case with the expedition against the Byzantine town Walandar reported by Mas'udi as having taken place in a.H. 320 (= January 13 to December 31, 932),<sup>436</sup> which most likely took place however in 934.<sup>437</sup> When the khan disregarded the interests of the tribe, the tribe sometimes disregarded his commands. For example, in 1103, the majority of the Cumans disagreed with the passivity of khan Urusoba towards the Rus', and appointed Altunopa chief of the tribal union. Urusoba still had to take part in the disastrous campaign against the Rus'.<sup>438</sup> Most Pechenegs also opposed their chiefs' decisions to kill the prison-

<sup>433</sup> *DAI*, I, pp. 166–167. According to Aboulféda's (see above, n. 25) (II, 1, p. 293) statement, the rank of khan was hereditary with the Pechenegs.

<sup>434</sup> Fedorov, Fedorov, *Ранние тюрки* (see above, n. 294), pp. 236–239.

<sup>435</sup> According to Akhinzhanov (*Кипчаки* [see above, n. 179], p. 139) the hereditary succession to power in Sharukan's family had been established before Konchak, the succession being Osen-Sharukan-Konchak-Iurii.

<sup>436</sup> Maçoudi, *Les Prairies* (see above, n. 33), II, pp. 61–62; idem, *Le Livre* (see above, n. 162), pp. 244–245; Al-Mas'ûdi (see above, n. 33), p. 103.

<sup>437</sup> Theophanes continuatus, *Chronographia*, in Theophanes continuatus, Ioannes Cameniata, Symeon Magister, Georgius Monachus, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1838), pp. 422–423; Symeonis Magistri *Annales*, in ibidem, p. 746; Georgii Monachi *Vitae imperatorum recentiorum*, in ibidem, pp. 913–914; Skylitzes, p. 228. See also P. T. Antopoulou, "Byzantium, the Magyar raids and their consequences," *Byzantinoslavica* 54 (1993), no. 2, pp. 258–259.

<sup>438</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 184; *Nik.let.*, I, pp. 138–139. See also Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 195; eadem, "Половецкая земля" (see above, n. 428), p. 274; P. B. Golden, "Cumanica III: Urusoba," in *Aspects of Altaic Civilization*, III, *Proceedings of the Thirtieth Meeting of the Permanent International Altaistic Conference, Indiana University, Bloomington, Indiana, June 19–25, 1987*, ed. D. Sinor (Bloomington, Ind., 1990), pp. 33–35.

ers captured in battle against Byzantium, for they hoped they would obtain a good ransom for each one of them.<sup>439</sup>

Besides freemen, there were slaves in the Turkic society, but their number was small and their economic role unimportant. The slaves were actually prisoners captured during raids against the neighbouring peoples. Such prisoners were an important source of income, to the extent that they could be ransomed,<sup>440</sup> or sold into slavery in Sudak<sup>441</sup> or on other markets in Crimea or on the Volga. Some were kept as domestic servants. That in 1103, the princes of Kiev took a great number of slaves from the Cuman camps they had raided shows that there were slaves among the Cumans.<sup>442</sup> The Turkic populations may have compelled stronger prisoners to accompany them on their expeditions, as the Hungarians were known to do.<sup>443</sup>

When large territories were occupied, vassalage relations were established between the conquerors and the conquered. As the attacked tribes ran away to other regions, the conquering nomads demanded their return, as people were needed within the newly conquered territory. In a similar way, Cumans chose to attack the Rus' simply because they had refused to expel the Torki (= Uzes) and the Pechenegs.<sup>444</sup> One of the main accusations targeted at the Hungarian king by the Mongols, in order to offer a pretext for war—*casus belli*—was that he had offered shelter to Cuman refugees, whom the Mongols regarded as their “servants” (*servi*).<sup>445</sup>

Relationships of a different nature were established between the nomads and their neighbours with limited military power. More often than not, a tribute payment was imposed on those populations. Even the Byzantines paid annual stipends to the Turkic populations, in order to buy the peace. There is also evidence of Cumans forcing towns and fortresses in Crimea to pay tribute.<sup>446</sup> Before the arrival of the later

<sup>439</sup> Anne Comnène (see above, n. 18), II, p. 103.

<sup>440</sup> Psellos, II, p. 127; Skylitzes, p. 375; Kedrenos, II, p. 486.

<sup>441</sup> Tiesenhausen, I, p. 26 (Ibn el Asyr); *Extrait d'Ibn-Alathir*, in [Ch. F.] Defrémery, “Fragments de géographes” (see above, n. 360), p. 80.

<sup>442</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 185.

<sup>443</sup> Simon de Keza, p. 192.

<sup>444</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 229–230.

<sup>445</sup> H. Dörrie, “Drei Texte zur Geschichte der Ungarn und Mongolen,” *Nachrichten der Akademie der Wissenschaften in Göttingen, Philologisch-historische Klasse* (1956), no. 1, p. 176 (Iulianus).

<sup>446</sup> Rubruck, p. 171. See also A. A. Vasiliev, *The Goths in the Crimea* (Cambridge, Mass., 1936), pp. 136–139.

Turkic populations, the Khazars had forced several eastern Slavic tribes into paying tribute.<sup>447</sup> Later, the Mongols established an improved system of collecting periodical taxes, employing specialised officials and conducting the census of the subject population.<sup>448</sup>

The needcessity to protect the flocks against raids from other tribes, as well as the nomadic lifestyle in general may explain the existence of special military rules among the Turkic populations. Nomads rarely dismounted, especially when watching over their herds. Acquiring riding skills at an early age was therefore a key requirement. Nomadic armies consisted of horsemen, with no pedestrians. Sparingly equipped, but with several horses in tow, troops of nomads were highly mobile and capable of covering long distances in a relatively short time, which enabled them to take their enemies by surprise and to withdraw without serious losses in case of failure. Noticing that the plunder incursions could be great sources of wealth, the Turkic nomads raided periodically the territories of their sedentary neighbors. Simon of Keza showed a deep understanding of nomadic life when estimating that the sources of income for both Hungarians and Cumans were stockbreeding and raids.<sup>449</sup> Contemporary sources show how regular and devastating such raids could be.

Michael Psellos' idea that the Pechenegs fought chaotically, without any knowledge of military art,<sup>450</sup> is obviously unsubstantiated. Actually, such a remark shows Psellos' inability to understand a different warfare style. The Turkic populations, as well as the Mongols and some Iranian tribes, employed a decimal organization of their armies, that is to say military units consisted of 10, 100, 1,000 or 10,000 people.<sup>451</sup> The decimal system was maintained in the army of the Crimean Tatars until the second half of the second millennium.<sup>452</sup> When enemy forces

---

<sup>447</sup> *PVL*, I, pp. 16, 18, and 20.

<sup>448</sup> H. F. Schurmann, "Mongolian tributary practices of the thirteenth century," *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 19 (1956), pp. 304–389; Ch. J. Halperin, *Russia and the Golden Horde. The Mongol Impact on Medieval Russian History* (Bloomington, 1985), pp. 33–39, 77–79, and 84–85; D. Ostrowski, *Muscovy and the Mongols. Cross-cultural influences on the steppe frontier, 1304–1589* (Cambridge, 1998), pp. 36–45.

<sup>449</sup> Simon de Keza, p. 192.

<sup>450</sup> Psellos, II, p. 125.

<sup>451</sup> Vernadsky, "The Eurasian nomads" (see above, n. 65), p. 407 ff.; H. Göckenjan, "Zur Stammesstruktur und Heeresorganisation altaischer Völker," in *Europa Slavica—Europa Orientalis. Festschrift für Herbert Ludat zum 70. Geburtstag* (Berlin, 1980), pp. 51–86.

<sup>452</sup> L. J. D. Collins, "The military organization and tactics of the Crimean Tatars, 16th–17th centuries," in *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East*, eds. V. J. Parry

prevailed, the nomads pretended to withdraw, so that the enemies break formation and disband their troops. The nomads carried out long expeditions on carts, also used as camps, as already shown. They were less skilled in attacking fortresses, and they preferred to lay siege to them until the people inside either died of starvation or surrendered. However, the nomads sometimes initiated daring attacks, such as the Cuman raid on Kiev in 1096,<sup>453</sup> or that against Adrianople in 1050, when the Pechenegs filled the trenches of the fortress with stones and branches.<sup>454</sup> The nomads failed before the walls of the famous city of Thrace, but they succeeded when attacking the timber forts of the Tivertsians between the Răut and the Dniester rivers.

The nomads avoided battles in narrow places unsuitable for their light cavalry charges. Referring to the Tatars, who generally had the same manner of fighting as the Turkic populations, some late sources estimated that they “do not love narrow places and mountains and fire arms,”<sup>455</sup> and that they were afraid of crossing forests.<sup>456</sup>

The most typical weapon for the nomads was the bow with arrows, and contemporary sources insist on the nomads being excellent archers.<sup>457</sup> In fact, most narrative sources mention that the only weapons that Turkic horsemen employed were arrows. By contrast, spears, sabres and axes are rarely mentioned.<sup>458</sup> However, burial assemblages

---

and M. E. Yapp (London, 1975), p. 258. See also Giles Fletcher, “Of the Russe Commonwealth,” in *Rude and Barbarous Kingdom. Russia in the Accounts of Sixteenth-Century English Voyagers*, eds. L. E. Berry and R. O. Crummey (Madison, Milwaukee–London, 1968), p. 196.

<sup>453</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 151; *Nik. let.*, I, p. 125.

<sup>454</sup> Skylitzes, p. 470; Jean Skylitzès, *Empereurs* (see above, n. 415), p. 388; Kedrenos, II, p. 601.

<sup>455</sup> N. Chiparissa, *Cronicul*, in *Cronicarii greci care au scris despre români în epoca fanariotă*, ed. C. Erbicăanu (Bucharest, 1888), p. 84.

<sup>456</sup> *Călători*, III, p. 528 (D. Galán).

<sup>457</sup> Matthieu d'Édesse (see above, n. 132), p. 200; Matthew of Edessa (see above, n. 132), p. 155; Péthachia (see above, n. 271), p. 12; *FHDR*, III, pp. 340–341 (Choniates, *Cuvântări și scrisori*).

<sup>458</sup> For the Pechenegs, see *Epistola Brunonis* (see above, n. 408), p. 225; Psellos, II, pp. 125–126; Attaliates (see above, n. 130), p. 30; Anne Comnène (see above, n. 18), II, pp. 97, 99, and 101. For the Cumans, see Choniates (see above, n. 143), p. 124; Thomas Tusci *Gesta imperatorum et pontificum*, ed. E. Ehrenfeuchter, in *MGH, SS, XXII*, ed. G. H. Pertz (1872), p. 526; *Chronicon Colmariense, 1218–1303*, in *Fontes rerum Germanicarum*, ed. J. F. Boehmer, II (Stuttgart, 1845), p. 86; Robert de Clari (see above, n. 226), p. 51; *Crusaders as Conquerors. The Chronicle of Morea*, ed. H. E. Lurier (New York–London, 1964), p. 98; *Versione italiana inedita della cronaca di Morea*, in Ch. Hopf (ed.), *Chroniques gréco-romanes inédites ou peu connues* (Berlin, 1873), p. 420; *CPict*, pp. 56, 176.

attributed to nomadic warriors have proved to contain helmets and coats of mail.<sup>459</sup>

The society of the Turkic nomads was highly militarized, with all able adults being animal breeders and warriors at the same time. The transhumance of a group of pastoralists meant the movement of a group of soldiers, always ready to protect their families, flocks and wealth, and at the same time to plunder anyone who could have happened to be in their way. Such an aggressive behavior was a real calamity for the neighboring sedentary communities. The dreaded and much hated military force of the Pechenegs, Uzes, and Cumans was nonetheless highly appreciated by European and Asian rulers, who often established alliances with the nomads, asking for their assistance in expeditions to Rus', Byzantium, Hungary, Georgia and the Second Bulgarian Tsardom.

### *Religious Life*

The Romanian population living in the lands east of the Carpathian Mountains was almost entirely Christian. Both archaeological discoveries and the ecclesiastical terminology of Latin origin reveal the antiquity of Christianity in the region north of the Danubian River.<sup>460</sup> Various objects of cult, as well as artefacts with Christian symbols, have been found on numerous sites in the Carpathian-Danube region.<sup>461</sup> As neither

<sup>459</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 22–36; A. O. Dobroliubskii, *Кочевники Северо-Западного Причерноморья в эпоху средневековья* (Kiev, 1986), pp. 23–46; V. A. Ivanov, V. A. Kriger, *Курганы кыпчакского времени на Южном Урале (XII–XIV вв.)* (Moscow, 1988), pp. 7–14 and 25–41; W. Świętosławski, *Uzbrojenie koczowniców Wielkiego Stepu w czasach ekspansji mongolów (XII–XIV w.)* (Acta Archaeologica Lodziensia, 40) (Łódź, 1996), pp. 21–27; idem, *Arms and Armour of the Nomads of the Great Steppe in the Times of the Mongol Expansion (12th–14th Centuries)* (Łódź, 1999), pp. 29–39; G. N. Garustovich, V. A. Ivanov, *Огузы и печенеги в евразийских степях* (Ufa, 2001), p. 66 ff.

<sup>460</sup> C. C. Giurescu, D. C. Giurescu, *Istoria românilor*, 1 (Bucharest, 1975), pp. 142–144; M. Păcurariu, *Istoria Bisericii ortodoxe române*, 1 (Bucharest, 1980), p. 51 ff.; P. Ș. Năsturel, “Le christianisme roumain à l’époque des invasions barbares,” *BBR* 11 (15), SN (1984), pp. 217–266; E. Popescu, *Christianitas Daco-Romana* (Bucharest, 1994), *passim*; L. Trofin, *O istorie a creștinismului la nordul Dunării de Jos până în secolul al XIII-lea* (Bucharest, 2007), pp. 71–98.

<sup>461</sup> I. Barnea, *Arta creștină în România*, 2, *Secolele VII–XIII* (Bucharest, 1981); G. Coman, “Mărturiile arheologice privind creștinismul în Moldova secolelor VI–XII,” *Danubius* 5 (1971), pp. 75–83; N. Gudea, I. Ghiurco, *Din istoria creștinismului la români. Mărturiile arheologice* (Oradea, 1988); Teodor, *Creștinismul* (see above, n. 339), pp. 82–98 and 160–175; E.-M. Constantinescu, *Memoria pământului dintre Carpați și Dunăre. Nord-*

the Slavs nor other migratory tribes were converted to Christianity, it is natural to acknowledge that all those objects belonged to a Romanised population, the only Christians in the area.

Because of the informal character of Christianity in Dacia and the spread of vulgar Latin, some words in classical Latin were given a different meaning. Following the settlement of both Slavs and Bulgars in the northern Balkans, and the subsequent dismantling of the church organization in the area, most terms pertaining to that organization were forgotten. Only terms referring to the most important objects of cult have been preserved.<sup>462</sup> By contrast, following the conversion of Bulgaria in the late ninth century and the adoption by Romanians of the Slavonic liturgy, numerous terms of South Slavic origin were adopted, such as *amin* (= amen), *apostol* (= apostle), *arhanghel* (= archangel), *a se căi* (= to repent), *călugar* (= monk), *chilie* (= cell), *clopot* (= bell), *colac* (= ritual round bread), *colindă* (= Christmas carol), *colivă* (= koliva, boiled wheat with honey and nuts, which is distributed at funerals in memory of the deceased), *cristelniță* (= baptismal font), *dascăl* (= psalm reader), *diacon* (= deacon), *diavol* (= devil), *duh* (= soul, spirit), *duhovnic* (= father confessor), *egumen* (= father superior of a monastery), *greșeală* (= mistake, blemish, sin), *heruvim* (= cherub), *iad* (= hell), *icoană* (= icon), *iconostas* (= iconostasis), *ispită* (= temptation), *liturghie* (= liturgy), *milă* (= pity), *mir* (= unction, chrism, holy oil), *a se pocăi* (= to penance), *pomană* (= alms, charity, funeral feast), *popă* (= pope, parson), *post* (= fasting), *praznic* (= funeral repast, wake), *rai* (= paradise), *Rusalii* (= Whitsuntide), *schit* (= hermitage, small and secluded convent), *serafim* (= seraph), *sfeșnic* (= candlestick), *sfânt* (= saint), *a se smeri* (= to humble oneself), *smirnă* (= myrrh), *stareț* (= abbot, superior), *taină* (= mystery, sacraments), and *troiță* (= roadside crucifix). Some of those words are undoubtedly of Greek origin, but they entered Romanian through South Slavic.<sup>463</sup> Others, such as *colindă* (= Christmas carol), *Rusalii* (Whitsuntide), and *troian* (= snow drift) were borrowed by the Slavs from the Latin-speaking population of Dacia or

---

*estul Munteniei și sud-vestul Moldovei în veacurile IV–XI d.Hr.* (Buzău–Bucharest, 1999), pp. 116–130 and 246–260.

<sup>462</sup> Ivănescu, *Istoria* (see above, n. 1), pp. 92, 169–171, and 241.

<sup>463</sup> Ivănescu, *Istoria*, p. 421. See also Al. Rosetti, *Istoria limbii române*, III, 4th ed. (Bucharest, 1962), p. 61; Z. Wittoch, “L’image de la culture chrétienne et de la mythologie des Slaves, conservée dans le lexique de la langue roumaine,” in *Das heidnische und christliche Slaventum. Acta II Congressus internationalis historiae Slavicæ Salisburgo-Ratisbonensis anno 1967 celebrati* (Wiesbaden, 1969), pp. 158–164; Mihăescu, *La romanité* (see above, n. 276), p. 331.



Moesia, and then re-adopted by speakers of Romanian, with a different meaning.<sup>464</sup> Lexical borrowings from other areas took place at the same time as the ones mentioned above.

The Slavic liturgy and the Christian vocabulary borrowed by speakers of Romanian from the South Slavic language are dated by most specialists to the tenth century.<sup>465</sup> However, there are reasons to believe that, far from being complete in the tenth century, the process was had just started at that time.<sup>466</sup>

The understanding of the ways in which Christianity survived within local communities of the Carpathian-Danube region in the course of the early Middle Ages is not possible without the analysis of burial assemblages dated between the fifth and the thirteenth century. The traditional interpretation maintained that during the last half of the first millennium most local communities practiced cremation, and that the number of inhumations began to increase only at the end of that millennium.<sup>467</sup> By that time, inhumation had been long adopted by Christian communities in the northern Mediterranean and in Western Europe. The problem, therefore, is to explain why was cremation adopted by the population living north of the Danube River. The change from cremation to inhumation took place in the ninth and tenth centuries, with both types of burial coexisting in some cemeteries. Then during the tenth and eleventh centuries, cremation or mixed cemeteries disappeared and only inhumation was practised. It is the task of future studies to refine this chronology and to explain the specific changes in burial style in comparison with similar developments in neighbouring

<sup>464</sup> Ivănescu, *Istoria*, p. 384.

<sup>465</sup> D. Onciul, "Originile Principatelor Române," in idem, *Scieri istorice*, I, ed. A. Sacerdoțeanu (Bucharest, 1968), pp. 588–590 with n. 24; Xenopol, *Istoria românilor*, I (see above, n. 14), pp. 342–350; S. Reli, *Istoria vieții bisericești a românilor*, I (Cernăuți, 1942), p. 136; R. Theodorescu, *Bizanț, Balcani, Occident la începuturile culturii medievale românești (secolele X–XIV)* (Bucharest, 1974), pp. 125–126; M. Ruffini, *Aspetti della cultura religiosa ortodossa romana medievale (Secoli XIV–XVIII)* (Rome, 1980), pp. 8–9.

<sup>466</sup> K. Zach, *Orthodoxe Kirche und rumänisches Volksbewusstsein im 15. bis 18. Jahrhundert* (Wiesbaden, 1977), pp. 30–31; M. Șesan, "Organizația bisericească veche carpatică," *Mitropolia Ardealului* 4 (1959), nos. 5–6, pp. 365–366.

<sup>467</sup> Fiedler, *Studien*, 1, 2 (Bonn, 1992) (see above, n. 70), *passim*; Tentiuc, *Populația* (see above, n. 209), pp. 153–192; A. Madgearu, *Continuitate și discontinuitate culturală la Dunărea de Jos în secolele VII–VIII* (Bucharest, 1997), pp. 120–129; C. Luca, D. Măndescu, *Rituri și ritualuri funerare în spațiul extracarpatic în secolele VIII–X* (Brăila, 2001), pp. 9–88; S. Musteață, *Populația spațiului pruto-mistean în secolele VIII–IX* (Chișinău, 2005), pp. 89–106; L. Trofin, *Romanitate și creștinism la Dunărea de Jos în secolele IV–VIII* (Bucharest, 2005), pp. 197–225; E. Corbu, *Sudul României în evul mediu timpuriu (secolele VIII–XI). Repere arheologice* (Brăila, 2006), pp. 46–68.

areas. The data so far available strongly suggests that such developments took place at the same time within a very large area of eastern and south-eastern Europe, after the last major successes of the Byzantine missions in those regions.

Although inhumation was generally adopted by all European and near-eastern Christian communities after the Church was granted freedom in the early fourth century, it is not altogether impossible that, in remote and isolated regions, Christianity incorporated a number of pre-Christian practices.<sup>468</sup> In the Carpathian-Danube area, there are many cases of cremations, which could have belonged to a Christian population. Such is the cross-shaped grave pit found in the cemetery I in Bratei (Sibiu county), dated to the fourth or fifth centuries; the urn cremation with glass phylacterion placed in a little silver box, found in Sărata Monteoru (Buzău county) (Romania); the urn cremation with an urn with a cross-shaped potter mark on the bottom from the seventh- to eighth-century cemetery II in Bratei.<sup>469</sup> Even more compelling is the case of a cremation urn found in Preslav, which contained a Byzantine reliquary cross. The burial was part of a small mixed cemetery on the northwestern side of the palace of the tenth-century rulers of Bulgaria. The cemetery included four inhumations and two cremations dated to the second half of the eleventh century. There can be no doubt that all those grave were of Christians.<sup>470</sup>

Isolated cremations are known from practiced in Merovingian Gaul, but it is not altogether clear if cremation was practised there by the few remaining pagans or, occasionally by (newly converted) Christians.<sup>471</sup> A prohibition against the cremation of the dead was imposed on the Saxons by Charlemagne at the Paderborn council in 785,<sup>472</sup> an indication

---

<sup>468</sup> V. Spinei, "Observații privind ritul incinerării în regiunile carpato-dunărene în a doua jumătate a mileniului I d.Hr.," in Arhimandrit Roman Braga, *Pe drumul credinței* (River Junction, Mi., 1995), pp. 82–100; idem, "Pratiques funéraires dans l'espace carpato-danubien dans la seconde moitié du Ier millénaire ap. J.-C.," in *Aspects of Spiritual Life in South East Europe from Prehistory to the Middle Ages*, eds. V. Cojocaru and V. Spinei (Iași, 2004), pp. 259–301.

<sup>469</sup> Zaharia, *Populația* (see above, n. 373), pp. 32, 98–99 and figs. 14/2a = 26/7.

<sup>470</sup> T. Totev, "Проучвания в гробищата на Преслав през 1963 и 1964 г.," *Известия на Народния Музей-Шумен* 5 (1972), p. 43.

<sup>471</sup> É. Salin, "Les survivances de l'incinération en Gaule mérovingienne," in *Mélanges d'histoire du Moyen Age dédiés à la mémoire de Louis Halphen* (Paris, 1951), pp. 636–640; idem, *La civilisation mérovingienne d'après les sépultures, les textes et le laboratoire*, II, *Les sépulture* (Paris, 1952), p. 1 ff.

<sup>472</sup> Ch.-J. Héfélicé, *Histoire des conciles d'après les documents originaux*, V, trans. [O.] Delarc (Paris, 1870), p. 53.

that even after the forceful conversion to Christianity, cremation was still practised. The archaeological evidence also shows that cremation persisted for many decades after the conversion of the Rus' to Christianity under Prince Vladimir (St Vladimir).<sup>473</sup> Neither the Saxon, nor the Rus' case can be relevant to the discussion of cremation in the Carpathian-Dniester region, because in both cases cremation may be interpreted as a lingering tradition of pre-Christian times.

The political troubles in the region brought a considerable delay to the organization of church structures among Romanians in the lands north of the Danube River. This explains why the Romanian clergy was for a long while under the jurisdiction of either Bulgarian or Galician bishops and metropolitans. Indeed, in Moldavia, Byzantine encolpia (Fig. 21/1) coexisted with specimens produced in Rus' (Figs. 9/12; 21/2) between the eleventh and the thirteenth century. During the rule of the Asen dynasty over the Second Bulgarian Tsardom, close contacts were maintained with the centers of Orthodox Christianity in the Balkans, where most of the liturgical literature originated. Such contacts also existed with the Kievan and Galician churches, which provided books of Orthodox cult as well. There are signs that the Holy Scripture and various Slavonic and Greek religious writings did not only circulate, but were also transcribed or translated in the Carpathian-Danube region. Such works had a great contribution to enriching the Christian vocabulary and to the development of Christian morality.<sup>474</sup> The oldest and most reliable proof that a church hierarchy existed among Romanians in the region of the Carpathian Bend is the papal letter of 1234 mentioning Romanian "pseudo-bishops". As for the so-called metropolitan church of Keltzinia, which is said to have had canonical jurisdiction over the region outside the Carpathian Mountains,<sup>475</sup> no evidence exists that that see may be located anywhere in the Romanian lands.

After the foundation of a Bulgarian Church in *ca.* 870, its head was elevated to the rank of archbishop, subsequently proclaimed patriarch in 918. The authority of the Bulgarian Church extended over the lands

<sup>473</sup> V. V. Sedov, *Восточные славяне в VI–XIII вв.* (Moscow, 1982), *passim*.

<sup>474</sup> N. Vornicescu, *Primele scrieri patristice în literatura noastră, sec. IV–XVI* (Craiova, 1984), pp. 98–122. See also V. V. Muntean, *Bizanțul și românii. Cercetare comparativă privind organizarea mănăstirilor* (Iași, 2005), pp. 192–195.

<sup>475</sup> Reli, *Istoria* (see above, n. 465), pp. 172–186; M. Șesan, "Mitropolia Celținiei și importanța sa," in *De la Dunăre la Mare. Mărturii istorice și monumente de artă creștină*, 2nd ed. (Galați, 1979), pp. 146–148.

to the north of the Danube River. Following the Byzantine conquest of Bulgaria, the patriarchate was abolished and an archbishopric created under the jurisdiction of the Patriarch of Constantinople, with suffragan sees in which Greek was used as liturgical language along with Old Church Slavonic.<sup>476</sup> During the second half of the eleventh century, an episcopal see was set up in Axiopolis in the immediate vicinity of the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains.<sup>477</sup> The success of the Vlach and Bulgarian rebellion leading to the rise of the Second Bulgarian Tsardom naturally led to the restoration of the Bulgarian archbishopric in Târnovo, which became patriarchate in 1235, following its temporary recognition of papal primacy. The influence of the Bulgarian church in the lands north of the Danube Delta collided with that of Kievan Rus' church, which had been organized in the aftermath of the conversion to Christianity in 988. The expansion to the west of the Kievan church was enhanced by the creation of an episcopal see of Galych in the mid-twelfth century (first mentioned in 1157).<sup>478</sup>

Faced with ideological pressure both from the pagan nomads and from Catholic proselytism, the church in the Carpathian-Dniester region backed the local political forces, thus contributing to the strong connection between ethnic identity and religious affiliation among Romanians.

\* \* \*

---

<sup>476</sup> A. P. Vlasto, *The Entry of the Slavs into Christendom* (Cambridge, 1970), p. 155 ff.; P. Georgiev, "L'Église bulgare à la fin de X<sup>e</sup> et au début de XI<sup>e</sup> siècle," in *Das Christentum in Bulgarien und auf der übrigen Balkanhalbinsel in des Spätantike und im frühen Mittelalter*, eds. V. Gjuzelev and R. Pillinger (Miscellanea Bulgarica, 5) (Vienna, 1987), pp. 241–246; P. Diaconu, "Despre organizarea ecleziastică a regiunii Dunării de Jos (ultima treime a secolului X—secolul XII)," *Studii teologice*, 2nd Ser., 42 (1990), no. 1, pp. 103–120; idem, "Sur l'organisation ecclésiastique dans la région du Bas-Danube (dernier tiers du X<sup>e</sup> siècle–XII<sup>e</sup> siècle)," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, II, eds. E. Popescu, O. Iliescu and T. Teoteoi (Bucharest, 1991), pp. 73–89; J. Kłoczowski, "La 'nouvelle chretienté' au XII<sup>e</sup> siècle: de la Scandinavie aux Balkans," in *Histoire du christianisme des origines à nos jours*, V, *Apogée de la papauté et expansion de la chrétienté (1054–1274)*, ed. A. Vauchez ([Paris,] 1993), pp. 657–663; S. Pirivatrić, "Between the East and the West. The Bulgarian Church in the time of Samuil (cca. 971–1018). Facts and interpretations," in *Средновековна християнска Европа: Изток и Запад. Ценности, традиции, обичаи / Medieval Christian Europe: East and West. Tradition, Values, Communications*, eds. V. Gjuzelev, A. Miltenova ([Sofia,] 2002), pp. 499–508.

<sup>477</sup> E. Popescu, "Știri noi despre istoria Dobrogei în secolul al XI-lea: Episcopia de Axiopolis," in *Monumente istorice și izvoare creștine*, ed. A. Nica (Galați, 1987), pp. 125–147; V. Iorgulescu, *Le sud-est européen entre Byzance et Occident aux X<sup>e</sup>–XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles. Le cas des Roumains* (Iași, 2005), pp. 66–68.

<sup>478</sup> *Let. Voskr.*, p. 66.

According to some early medieval sources, the nomads had no religion whatsoever.<sup>479</sup> Such claims were of course based on the idea that only the world religions deserved to be regarded as such. Other authors preferred to call the Turkic nomads *pagan*.<sup>480</sup> In fact, according to such accounts, the nomads worshiped natural elements of both uranic and chthonian nature: the heavenly bodies, the earth, the waters. The most important god was Tängri, the ruler of the cosmic and terrestrial order. His name meant “god” or “sky.”<sup>481</sup> Shamanic practices involving a complex hierarchy of spirits was also widely spread. Such practices were based on the idea that in order to protect the community and its herds, the shaman engages in battle against evil spirits. The shaman was also expected to bring luck to hunters, and to guide the dead and the living persons’ souls. The shaman in fact combined the attributes of a theologian, a magician and a physician. Religious ceremonies involved worshipping holy places and the celestial bodies.<sup>482</sup> Michael

<sup>479</sup> Ibn Fadlan (see above, n. 162), p. 20; Johannis Euchaitorum metropolitae *Quae in codice*, p. 144; Al-’Umari (see above, n. 167), p. 138. See also L. S. Chekin, “The godless Ishmaelites: the image of the steppe in eleventh-thirteenth-century Rus’,” *Russian History* 19 (1992), nos. 1–4, pp. 9–28.

<sup>480</sup> Ya’kubi (see above, n. 30), p. 113; *Epistola Brunonis* (see above, n. 408), p. 224; Michel le Syrien, III (see above, n. 58), pp. 155, 207; *PVL*, I, pp. 112, 148, and 150; *Ip.let-2*, pp. 156, 217, and 220; *Nik.let.*, I, pp. 94, 125, etc.; *Постниковский, Пискаревский, Московский и Бельский летописцы*, in *PSRL*, 34, eds. V. I. Buganov, V. I. Koretskii (Moscow, 1978), p. 83 (*Пискаревский летописец*); *Устюжские и Вологодские летописи XVI–XVIII вв.*, in *PSRL*, 37 (Leningrad, 1982), pp. 29 (*Устюжская летопись*, *Список Маицевича*), 69 (*Устюжская летопись*, *Архангелогородский летописец*), 164 (*Вологодские летописи*); *Gesta principum Polonorum / The Deeds of the Princes of the Poles*, trans. and eds. P. W. Knoll and F. Schaer (Budapest–New York, 2003), pp. 154–155; Jacobus de Vitriaco, Tusculanus episcopus, *Sermones vulgares Tusculani episcopi*, in *Analecta novissima spicilegii Solesmensis, Altera continuatio*, II, *Tusculana*, ed. Johannes Baptista cardinalis Pitra (Tusculum, 1888), p. 405; Heinrich *Chronicon Livoniae / Heinrichs Livländische Chronik*, p. 186; *Appendix*, in Fratris Gerardi de Fracheto *Vitae fratrum Ordinis Praedicatorum*, ed. B. M. Reichert (*Monumenta Ordinis Fratrum Praedicatorum Historica*, I) (Romae–Stuttgartiae, 1897), pp. 306–307 (Svipert); Stephanus de Salaniaco et Bernardus Guidonis, *De quatuor in quibus deus Praedicatorum ordinem insignivit*, ed. Th. Kaeppli (*Monumenta Ordinis Fratrum Praedicatorum Historica*, XXII) (Romae ad S. Sabinae, 1949), pp. 26–27; S. Tugwell, “Notes on the life of St Dominic,” *Archivum Fratrum Praedicatorum* 68 (1998), pp. 88–90 (Svipert), 93 (Dietrich of Apolda), 95 and 96 (Bernard Gui); Roger Bacon, *The Opus Majus*, I, ed. J. H. Bridges (Oxford, 1897), p. 360; Hermanni Altahensis *Annales*, in *Fontes rerum Germanicarum*, II, p. 504; Ioannis de Vitino *Brevis narratio de regibus Hungariae*, in *Analecta monumentorum Hungariae historicorum litterariorum maximum inedita*, ed. F. Toldy, I (Pesthini, 1862), p. 79.

<sup>481</sup> Motahhar ben Tāhir el-Maqqdisi (see above, n. 185), I, ed. Cl. Huart (Paris, 1901), p. 57.

<sup>482</sup> Al-Bēcri (see above, n. 162), p. 15; *Orient. Ber.*, p. 222 (al-Bakrī); Aboulféda (see above, n. 25), II, 1, p. 291. See also Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, pp. 205–207; B. E. Kumeckov,

Psellos' claim that the Pechenegs believed that "death is the end of any existence"<sup>483</sup> is contradicted both by narrative sources and by the archaeological evidence, which show that Pecheneg burial customs implied a belief in the afterlife.

During the first centuries of the second millennium, the competition Christianity and Islam continued in the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas. Much like in the Near East and in the Iberian Peninsula at that same time, Christianity was on the offensive, and that not only because of the political crisis in the Caliphate, but also because of Rus', Hungarian, and Byzantine missions. If one believes al-Bakri on such matters, then it would seem that all Pechenegs had converted to Islam.<sup>484</sup> In fact, much like other nomads in the east-European steppe lands, the Pechenegs were not very receptive to outside religious influences, a fact confirmed by the continuation of their burial customs well after the rise of the Golden Horde. A stronger influence on the Turkic nomads could be exercised by outside religious systems only when they were hired as a military force of auxiliary troops, when taking refuge in other countries, or for specific political reasons. The thirty people or so, whom Bishop Bruno is said to have converted during five months of preaching the word of God among the Pechenegs bespeaks the indifference of the nomads towards Christianity.<sup>485</sup> On the other hand, it appears that Cumans were much more willing to adopt the form of Christianity expanding from the kingdom of Hungary into the lands outside the Carpathian Mountains. A special bishopric was created for

---

*Государство кимаков IX–XI вв. по арабским источникам* (Alma-Ata, 1972), pp. 109–113; E. Tryjarski, "Pieczyngowie" (see above, n. 275), pp. 583–593; idem, "Les religions des Petchénègues," in *Traditions religieuses et para-religieuses des peuples altaïques* (Paris, 1972), pp. 139–148; *Shamanism in Siberia*, eds. V. Dioszegi and M. Hoppál (Budapest, 1978); N. A. Alekseev, *Ранние формы религии тюркоязычных народов Сибири* (Novosibirsk, 1980); M. Eliade, *A History of Religious Ideas*, 3, *From Muhammad to the Age of Reforms*, trans. A. Hildebeitel and D. Apostolos-Cappadona (Chicago–London, 1985), pp. 1–22; *Shamanism in Eurasia*, ed. M. Hoppál, I, II (Göttingen, 1984); J.-P. Roux, *La religion des Turcs et des Mongols* (Paris, 1984); idem, "La religion des peuples de la steppe," in *Popoli delle steppe: Unni, Avari, Ungari* (Settimane di studio del Centro Italiano di Studi sull'Alto Medioevo, XXXV), II (Spoleto, 1988), pp. 513–532; H. Güngör, "The religion of ancient Turks," in *The Turks*, I, *Early Ages* (see above, n. 412), pp. 777–783; Spinei, *Great Migrations*, I, pp. 154–161, 249–256; II, pp. 350–362; V. Veit, "Schamanismus in der Zeit Čingis Chaans," in *Чингис Хаан хийгээд тууний өв. Монголчуудын дэлхийн их гурэн / Čingis Chaan und seine Erbe. Das Weltreich der Mongolen*, ed. U. B. Barkmann (Ulaanbaatar, 2007), pp. 329–341.

<sup>483</sup> Psellos, II, p. 126.

<sup>484</sup> Al-Bécri, p. 15; *Orient. Ber.*, pp. 222–223.

<sup>485</sup> *Epistola Brunonis*, pp. 223–228.

them in that region with the support of both Hungary and the Holy See. Numerous Cumans in the service of the rulers of Georgia are also known to have converted in the course of the twelfth century to Christianity.<sup>486</sup> Pockets of Cuman Christianity, to which they had been converted by the Rus', the Byzantines, the Hungarians, or the Georgians, survived in the Eurasian steppes long after the Mongol conquest.<sup>487</sup>

Turkic religious beliefs included many various cosmological accounts of the creation of the world, the birth and division of tribes, or the directions of expansion. The myths about Oghuz Khan, the hero who gave his name to the Oghuz, were widely known. Oghuz Khan and his army were believed to have been guided in their expeditions by a miraculous wolf.<sup>488</sup> This story appears in the chronicle of Michael the Syrian, but Oghuz Khan is replaced with the Seljuq Turks and the wolf with an animal resembling a dog.<sup>489</sup> Both accounts appear to be variations of a widely spread myth about animals of divine origin guiding human groups to their own homelands or heroic exploits. Variations of that myth were known among Huns, Hungarians, Romanians, and Lithuanians.<sup>490</sup>

Little is known about the religious practices of the Turkic nomads, except what archaeology has revealed in terms of burial customs. The deceased were often buried in pre-existing barrows, sometimes on river promontories. Newly built barrows appear to have been a privilege of the tribal chiefs. Alberic (Aubry) de Trois Fontaines gives a description of the funeral of a Turkic leader, Ionas, a Cuman "king" who had been an ally of the Latin Empire and who died in 1241 in Constan-

---

<sup>486</sup> *Histoire de la Géorgie depuis l'Antiquité jusqu'au XIX siècle*, I, trans. [M. F.] Brousset (St. Petersburg, 1849), p. 363 (Wakhtang); *Life of David, King of Kings*, in *The Georgian Chronicle. The Period of Giorgi Lasha*, ed. S. Qaukhchishvili, trans. K. Vivian (Amsterdam, 1991), p. 20; *The History of David, King of Kings*, in *Rewriting Caucasian History. The Medieval Armenian Adaptation of the Georgian Chronicles*, ed. R. W. Thomson (Oxford, 1996), pp. 327–328.

<sup>487</sup> Rubruck, p. 217; Tiesenhansen, pp. 279 and 306; Ibn Batoutah, II (see above, n. 48), p. 357. See also I. Vásáry, "Orthodox Christian Qumans and Tatars of the Crimea in the 13th–14th centuries," *Central Asiatic Journal* 32 (1988), pp. 260–271 (reprint in idem, *Turks, Tatars and Russians in the 13th–16th Centuries* [Variorum Collected Studies Series] [Aldershot–Burlington, 2007], no. XVI); P. B. Golden, "Religion among the Qipchaqs of Medieval Eurasia," *Central Asiatic Journal* 42 (1998), no. 2, pp. 180–237.

<sup>488</sup> R. Nour, *Oghouz-namé* (Alexandria, 1928), pp. 52–53.

<sup>489</sup> Michel le Syrien, III (see above, n. 58), p. 153.

<sup>490</sup> M. Eliade, *De Zalmoxis à Gengis-Khan* (Paris, 1970), pp. 135–138; G. Györfly, "Erfundene Stammesgründer," in *Fälschungen im Mittelalter. Internationaler Kongress der Monumenta Germaniae Historica, München, 16.–19. September 1986*, I (= *MGH, Schriften*, 33, 1) (Hannover, 1988), pp. 443–446.

tinople. The ceremony included the killing of eight Cuman warriors, who—the chronicler claimed—sacrificed themselves voluntarily, as well as the slaughter of 26 horses. A large barrow was then erected on top of the grave.<sup>491</sup> Another description of the funeral of a Cuman chief appears in Joinville's chronicle. The Cuman leader is said to have been placed on a throne inside a large pit, and his best warrior and his favourite horse being buried alive next to him. The grave pit was then covered with planks, and then a "mountain" of stones and earth was raised on it.<sup>492</sup>

Human and horse sacrifices on the occasion of a leader's were also known to the Mongols.<sup>493</sup> In fact, the practice is already attested by Herodotus for the Scythians, and his description matches much later accounts pertaining to the medieval nomads.<sup>494</sup> William of Rubruck also confirms that barrows were erected on top of Cuman graves. Kumys and meat were ritually deposited in the grave pit, while parts of the horse gear were hung on poles.<sup>495</sup> The custom of severing the head and the legs of a sacrificed horse and depositing them together with the harness in the grave pit was widely spread among nomads of central Asia up to the 1800s.<sup>496</sup> The same Franciscan emissary also noted that the belonging of the dead were placed in the grave pit as well, and that huts for the guards were built next to the tombs of the rich. Despite the threat of harsh penalties, tombs were frequently robbed.

<sup>491</sup> *Chronica Albrici monachii Trium Fontium*, ed. P. Scheffer-Boichorst, in *MGH, SS*, XXIII, ed. G. H. Pertz (1874), p. 950.

<sup>492</sup> Joinville, *Histoire de Saint Louis*, in *Historiens* (see above, n. 226), p. 312; idem, *Vie de Saint Louis*, trans. and ed. J. Monfrin (Paris, 1998), pp. 246–247.

<sup>493</sup> Guiragos (see above, n. 149), p. 250; Marco Polo, *Il Milione* (see above, n. 190), p. 61. See also D. DeWeese, *Islamization and Native Religion on the Golden Horde. Baba Tükles and Conversion to Islam in Historical and Epic Tradition* (University Park, Pennsylvania, 1994), pp. 262–266; G. Lane, *Daily Life in Mongol Empire* (Westport, Connecticut, 2006), pp. 185–187.

<sup>494</sup> Herodotus, II (see above, n. 241), pp. 268–273. See also E. H. Minns, *Scythians and Greeks* (Cambridge, 1913), pp. 87–91 and 95; F. Thordarson, "The Scythian funeral customs. Some notes on Herodotus IV, 71–75," in *Hommages et opera minora*, XII, *A Green Leaf. Papers in Honour of Professor Jes P. Asmussen* (Acta Iranica 28) (Leiden, 1988), pp. 539–547; O. Gundogdyev, "On one peculiarity of funeral ceremony of Scythes and Turks," *Central Asia Cultural Values* 1 (2002), pp. 29–31.

<sup>495</sup> Rubruck, p. 186; Guillaume de Rubrouck, *Voyage dans l'Empire mongol (1253–1255)*, trans. and eds. C. and R. Kappler (Paris, 1985), p. 104; *The Mission of Friar William of Rubruck. His Journey to the Court of the Great Khan Möngke, 1253–1255*, trans. P. Jackson, eds. P. Jackson and D. Morgan (London, 1990), p. 95.

<sup>496</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 173; O. Belli, "The Turkish tradition of building kurgans in the prehistoric and Middle Ages," in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages* (see above, n. 412), pp. 974–986.



The destruction of many burial assemblages was mainly due to grave robbers, either Turkic nomads or their neighbours. The Flemish traveller also knew that on top of the barrow, Cumans placed anthropomorphic stone statues facing east and holding cups in their hands.<sup>497</sup>

Such accounts remind one of the description of Oghuz burial customs in Ibn Fadlan's travelogue. When a man died, the survivors dug a pit as large as a house, in which they laid the deceased holding in his hand a wooden cup filled with a drink, as well as his belt, bow and money. The grave pit was then and, "a kind of clay cupola" (that is, a burial mound) was built on top. Following that, the dead man's horses were killed, the number of horses sacrificed being an indication of his personal wealth. Thus, sometimes as many as 100 or 200 horses were slaughtered at funerals. Ibn Fadlan must have witnessed the funeral of a very wealthy man, for the poor received a very different treatment in death. Those dying in battle were treated as heroes. Wooden statues were erected on their tombs, in keeping with the number of the people they had killed.<sup>498</sup> Chinese sources mention a different practice among Turkic populations of central Asia: next to a warrior's tomb, several statues would be erected, representing the slaughtered enemies,<sup>499</sup> probably because under the assumption that the victims would be the warrior's servants in the other world. This account contradicts Nizami's report, according to which the Qipchaq knelt before the statues,<sup>500</sup> as a sign of respect due to brave ancestors, not to former enemies.

The archaeological evidence confirms in detail the the information from the narrative sources. Stone statues erected as as funerary steles are known for many Turkic populations of the Eurasian steppe lands.<sup>501</sup>

<sup>497</sup> Rubruck, p. 186.

<sup>498</sup> Ibn Fadlan (see above, n. 162), p. 27; R. P. Blake and R. N. Frye, "Notes on the Risala of Ibn-Fadlan," *Byzantina Meabyzantina* 1 (1949), no. 2, pp. 17–18; M. Canard, "La relation du voyage d'Ibn Fadlan chez les Bulgares de la Volga," *Annales de l'Institut d'Études Orientales*, Alger, 16 (1958), pp. 75–76.

<sup>499</sup> Barthold, *Histoire* (see above, n. 429), p. 14; V. D. Kubarev and D. Tsevcendorj, "Ancient Turkic memorials in the Altai," *Archaeology, Ethnology and Anthropology of Eurasia* 1 (9) (2002), pp. 87–88.

<sup>500</sup> Nizami, *Пять поэм. Перевод с Фарси* (Moscow, 1968), p. 657. See also Kumekov, *Государство*, pp. 111–112; G. A. Fedorov-Davydov, *Искусство кочевников и Золотой Орды* (Moscow, 1976), p. 92.

<sup>501</sup> L. A. Evtiukhova, "Каменные изваяния Южной Сибири и Монголии," *МИА*, 24 (Moscow, 1952), pp. 71–120; L. R. Kuzlasov, "О назначении древнетюркских каменных изваяний, изображающих людей," *СА* (1964), no. 2, pp. 27–39; I. A. Sher, *Каменные изваяния Семиречья* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1966); A. A. Charikov, "Новая серия каменных статуй на Семиречья," in *Средневековые древности евразийских*

The study of the Turkic sculptures in Siberia, along with observations of barrows of southern Ukraine, have established that stone statues were actually not placed on tombs, but next to them, occasionally on older barrows, which may have functioned as altars. Recent excavations have revealed four types of such earth and stone altars, which have been classified in accordance with their construction.<sup>502</sup> Investigations undertaken in the basin of the Lower Don during the last few decades have identified several cases in which anthropomorphic representations placed in altars were carved not in stone, but in wood.<sup>503</sup> The number of wooden statues may actually have been much greater than what is presently known, but, as they were made of perishable material, they did not survive.

### *Burial Assemblages*

The burial assemblages so far discovered, which can be attributed to the Romanian population, consist of a few cemeteries and a number of isolated graves, a clear indication of insufficient research.

As already mentioned, cremation was favored throughout the early Middle Ages, up to the tenth century, when it was gradually replaced by inhumation. The transition from cremation to inhumation is best

---

*степей*, ed. S. A. Pletneva (Moscow, 1980), pp. 113–136; *Стени Евразии в эпоху средневековья*, ed. S. A. Pletneva (Moscow, 1981), *passim*; E. Tryjarski, *Bestattungssitten türkischer Völker auf dem Hintergrund ihrer Glaubensvorstellungen*, trans. C.-S. v. Schwerin (Warsaw, 2001), pp. 294–305; Kubarev and Tseveendorj, “Ancient Turkic memorials,” pp. 76–95; O. Belli, “Stone statues and balbals in the Turkic world,” *Tüba-Ar* 6 (2003), pp. 85–116; idem, *Kirgizistan’da taş balbal ve insan biçimli heykeller / Stone balbals and statues in human form in Kirghizistan* (Istanbul, 2003), pp. 51–103 and 124–135; L. N. Ermolenko, *Средневековые каменные изваяния Казахских степей (типология, семантика в аспекте военной идеологии и традиционного мировоззрения)* (Novosibirsk, 2004), pp. 5–47; F. Bosi, “Sulla statuaria antropomorfa nell’Eurasia Settentrionale. Dalle «Pietre dei cervi» ai balbal,” *Ocnus. Quaderni della Scuola di Specializzazione in Archeologia* 13 (2005), pp. 89–101.

<sup>502</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 207; M. L. Shvetsov, “Половецкие святилища,” *СА* (1979), no. 1, pp. 199–209; A. M. Dosymbaeva, “Мемориальные памятники тюрков жетгысу по материалам святилища Мерке,” *Хабарлары известия. Серия Общественных наук* 1 (224) (2000), pp. 64–83; E. I. Narozhnyi, “О половецких изваяниях и святилищах XIII–XIV вв. Северного Кавказа и Дона,” in *Стени Европы в эпоху средневековья*, 3, *Половецко-золотоордынское время*, gen. ed. A. V. Evglevskii (Donetsk, 2003), pp. 245–274.

<sup>503</sup> S. V. Gurkin, “Святилища половецкого времени с деревянными изваяниями из раскопок Волго-Донской археологической экспедиции ЛОИА АН СССР,” *Донская археология* 1 (1998), pp. 29–37.

illustrated by the tenth- to eleventh-century, biritual cemetery excavated in Brănești (Orhei county) (Republic of Moldova). Of all 98 graves found there, there were 95 inhumations and only three cremations. The latter produced only small amounts of cremated remains placed in hand- (grave 80) or wheel-made (graves 79 and 81) urns buried at no more than 0.35 meters below the present-day ground surface. Only grave 81 produced grave goods, namely fragments of two glass bracelets and of spindle-whorls.

All inhumations in Brănești had a west-east grave orientation, with slight variations to the north or to the south perhaps depending upon the position of the sun in season of the year in which burial had taken place. The human remains were deposited at 0.15 to 1.10 m below the present-day ground surface, but most graves are no deeper than 0.60 to 0.90 m. In some graves skeletons were found in supine, in others in crouched position on either the left (grave 37) or the right side (grave 17). The vast majority (76) were in supine position with arms either stretched along the body (nine cases), or bent with hands placed on the abdomen (51 cases) or the chest (16 cases). In 17 cases, the graves had been previously destroyed, which prevented any observation of the exact position of the hands. Almost half of the total number of graves (44) had grave goods, which were found more with female (23) than with male burials (7). Grave goods included knives, arrowheads, belt buckles, hooks, flint steels, iron daggers, earrings, bracelets, rings, buttons, silver, bronze and copper pendants, stone spindle whorls and stone beads, multicoloured glass beads, horn or bone knives and rings, clay spindle whorls and pottery. While dress accessories appear mainly in female, knives and pottery were found only in male graves.

Different iron (knives, arrowheads, belt buckles) and glass artifacts (beads), as well as pottery very similar to that in burial assemblages, are known as stray finds from the site.<sup>504</sup> The use of forensic analysis for identifying the population buried in the cemetery as Slavs must be regarded with extreme suspicion. If racial characteristics are to be given any weight at all in establishing the ethnic affiliation, it must be noted

---

<sup>504</sup> G. B. Fedorov, "Работа Прутско-Днестровской экспедиции в 1963 г.," *КС* 113 (1968), pp. 92–93; Fedorov, Chebotarenko, *Pamiatniki*, pp. 105–108; I. G. Hâncu, "К вопросу о соотношении восточно-славянской и балкано-дунайской культур лесостепной полосы Молдавии (X–XIV вв.)," in *Труды историко-краеведческого музея МССР, II* (Kishinev, 1969), pp. 108–109; G. B. Fedorov, G. F. Chebotarenko, M. S. Velikanova, *Бранеитский могильник X–XI вв.* (Kishinev, 1984).

that very similar anthropological features characterize the populations of many medieval Romanian cemeteries as well. Moreover, such cemeteries produced numerous analogies for the grave goods found in Brănești.

Most barrows with cremation burials found in Alcedar (Șoldănești county)<sup>505</sup> and Rudi (Soroca county) (Republic of Moldova),<sup>506</sup> which have been attributed to an east-Slavic population, coincided in time with the Brănești cemetery, for they have been dated to the ninth and tenth century. The Alcedar and Rudi barrows are the only monuments of their kind so far known from the region between the Răut and the Dniester rivers.

Two other large cemeteries have been excavated and studied in Hansca (Ialoveni county) (Republic of Moldova), on two different sites, at Căprăria and at Limbari. The Căprăria cemetery produced 75 graves, 60 of them with a west-east grave orientation and skeletons in supine position. Only eight graves had crouched skeletons, while another seven had no skeletons at all. The position of the arms also varied, with 23 cases of arms stretched along the body; four of one arm along the body and the other on the pelvis; eight of both hands were placed on the pelvis; six of one hand on the chest and the other on the pelvis; and 14 cases of both hands on the chest. For five more graves, no exact position of the arms could be established. Burials with crouched skeletons had rectangular (6) or oval (2) grave pits. Rectangular pits had a west-east (5) or north-south (1) grave orientation, while oval pits had a west-east (1) or south-north orientation (1). Oval pits dug in a bell-shaped form, with a larger opening at the bottom than at the top, are also typical for burials without any skeletons. Three such burials produced instead fragments of animal bones (pig, small horned cattle), with an entire skeleton of a calf found in a fourth burial. With just one exception, burials with skeletons in supine position were no deeper than 0.90 m from the present-day ground level. Some grave pits with crouched skeletons reached a depth of 1.10 m. Only grave pits with no human remains were dug deeper, between 1.20 and 1.90 m from the ground level.

The anthropological analysis of the human remains shows a high rate of infant mortality: there were 22 children and teenagers buried in

---

<sup>505</sup> G. B. Fedorov, "Работы Прутско-Днестровской экспедиции в 1960–1961 гг.," *КС* 99 (1964), pp. 87–88; idem, "Работа Прутско-Днестровской экспедиции в 1963 г.," *КС* 113 (1968), pp. 90–91; Fedorov, Chebotarenko, *Pamiatniki*, pp. 101–103.

<sup>506</sup> V. S. Beilekchi, in *AO 1980 G* (1981), p. 387.

Căprăria for no more than 51 of adults, a child for every two adults. Men died at an average age of 45.6, females at 35. Only 22 graves, less than a third of all excavated burials, produced grave goods: buttons, appliques, buckles, earrings, rings, knives, flintstones, pottery (Fig. 10/9–23), all of which have been dated between the tenth and the twelfth century.<sup>507</sup>

It is interesting to note that most burials with crouched skeletons clustered in the northern part of the Căprăria cemetery, while burials with oval pits and those without any human remains have been found primarily in the north-eastern area. This strongly suggests the existence of a minority, separated in death from the rest of the community, perhaps on ethnic grounds. However, the fact that members of that minority were still buried within one and the same cemetery that the community as a whole used for burying the dead is an indication that, if ethnically or religiously different, the “foreigners” were still regarded as members of the community.

The Limbari cemetery produced 108 burials, of which the vast majority (99) have a west-east grave orientation. Seven burials had a north-south, and only two a south-north orientation. Much like in Căprăria, there is a great variation in the position of arms and hands in graves with skeletons in supine position. In graves with a west-east orientation skeletons were found either with arms stretched along the body, or with hands placed on the abdomen and on the chest. In burials with a north-south or south-north grave orientation, skeletons had arms stretched along the body. Sometimes (grave 24), one arm was stretched along the body, while the hand of the other was placed on the abdomen; there are also cases in which one hand was on the chest, the other on the abdomen. Burials with a west-east orientation were dug no deeper than 1.20 m below the present-day ground level, while those with a north-south or south-north orientation were found at a depth of no more than 0.85 m. In four graves, placed at opposite points on the fringes of the cemetery, complete or fragmentary skeletons of domestic animals—one sheep, one pig, and two horses—were found. Graves with a north-south or south-north orientation were interspersed among those with a west-east orientation, without any visible segregation. The anthropological analysis has revealed Mongoloid features for several skeletons in graves with a north-south orientation. Moreover,

---

<sup>507</sup> I. G. Hăncu, *Кэпрэрия—памятник культуры X–XII вв.* (Kishinev, 1973).

some of the skulls found in such graves show clear signs of trepanation. Of all 108 burials in the Limbari cemetery, only 26 produced grave goods. Most graves with a north-south orientation (5 out of 7) had grave goods (an axe, three knives, one flint-steel, two stirrups, two iron links, four buckles—all of iron—and several perforated animal vertebrae), but no goods have been found in graves with a south-north orientation. In graves with a west-east orientation, the most common goods found were wheel-made pots, spindle whorls, copper earrings, bronze spherical buttons, iron knives, copper-alloy and iron buckles, and silver appliquéés.

The study of the few artifacts found in Limbari indicates that the cemetery must have operated between the eleventh and the thirteenth century.<sup>508</sup> However, burials with a north-south grave orientation appear to be later than the other burials, perhaps indicating a second phase of occupation on the site. At any rate, the differences in ritual and grave goods noted for the two cemeteries excavated in Hansca point to groups of foreigners living side by side with the native population.

Besides large cemeteries, small groups of several graves have been found in Calfa (Anenii Noi county) (6 graves),<sup>509</sup> Lucășeuca (Orhei county) (3 graves),<sup>510</sup> Molești (Ialoveni county) (8 graves),<sup>511</sup> all in the Republic of Moldova, as well as in Arsura (Vaslui county) (11 graves),<sup>512</sup> Pâhnești (Vaslui county) (3 graves)<sup>513</sup> and Tomești (Iași county)<sup>514</sup> in Romania. Graves with different orientation are known from Calfa and Lucășeuca, a detail which may signal either the presence of “foreigners” within those respective communities, or the lack of standardized inhumation practices in the aftermath of the abandonment of cremation. In Arsura and Pâhnești, only graves with a west-east orientation

<sup>508</sup> Idem, *Лимбарь—средневековый могильник XII–XIV веков в Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1970); Chebotarenko, *Население* (see above, n. 100), pp. 18–22.

<sup>509</sup> Chebotarenko, *Калфа* (see above, n. 87), pp. 73–75.

<sup>510</sup> I. G. Hâncu, *Поселения XI–XIV веков в Оргеевских кодрах Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969), pp. 12, 17, and 18.

<sup>511</sup> I. Tentiuc, “Aspects of funeral rite and ritual in the Prut-Dniester region—end of first millenium, beginning of second millenium (The Molești-Ialoveni necropolis),” in *Aspects of Spiritual Life*, pp. 323–327; idem, “Despre ritul și ritualul funerar medieval timpuriu din spațiul pruto-nistrin (Necropola de la Molești-Ialoveni),” *Tyragetia*, SN, 1 (16) (2007), no. 1, pp. 335–342.

<sup>512</sup> D. Gh. Teodor, “Contribuții la cunoașterea culturii Dridu pe teritoriul Moldovei,” *SCIV* 19 (1968), no. 2, pp. 237–238; idem, *Teritoriul*, pp. 107–108.

<sup>513</sup> Spinci, “Considerații” (see above, n. 110), p. 175.

<sup>514</sup> Information Dr. Dorin Mihai.

have been found, which may be regarded as Christian burials. Burials in Arsura produced earrings, rings and buttons (Fig. 10/1–8), that in Tomești buttons. Some features of the medieval burial customs may have survived until recent times, as revealed by ethnographic studies.<sup>515</sup>

\* \* \*

Burial assemblages are almost the only archaeological remains pertaining to the presence of the nomads in the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains. Some 2,000 burials are so far known for the entire steppe corridor between the Prut and the Volga rivers.<sup>516</sup> The archaeological study of Turkic burial customs plays a key role in the understanding of Turkic beliefs and spiritual life. On the other hand, burial assemblages provide key information about demography, fashions, and occupations.

Most of Turkic burial assemblages in the Carpathian-Dniester area were found in isolation, often no more than four or five graves dug into one and the same barrow. In some cases, those graves may not even be of the same date.

Up to now graves have been discovered in the following localities: Alexandrovca (8 graves) (Florești county) (MR = Republic of Moldova), Alexeevca-Svetlâi (8–?) (UTAG = the Gagauz Autonomous Territorial Unit) (MR), Balabanu (16) (Taraclia county) (MR), Banca (2) (Vaslui county) (R = Romania), Baștanovca (2) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U = Odessa region, Ukraine), Bădragii Vechi (9) (Edineț county) (MR), Bălăbănești (4–?) (Criuleni county) (MR), Belolesie (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Berești (2) (Galați county) (R), Bârlad-“Dealul Țuguieța,” Bârlad-“Moara lui Chicoș,” Bârlad-“Parc” (Vaslui county) (R), Bolgrad (3)

<sup>515</sup> T. T. Burada, “Datinele poporului român la înmormântări,” in idem, *Opere*, III, *Folclor și etnografie*, ed. V. Cosma (Bucharest, 1978), pp. 20–70; S. F. Marian, *Înmormântarea la români* (Bucharest, 1892); A. Lambrior, *Studii de lingvistică și folclorică*, ed. I. Nuță (Iași, 1976), pp. 172–190; Vlăduțiu, *Etnografia* (see above, n. 160), pp. 406–414; A. Fochi, *Datini și erezuri populare de la sfârșitul secolului al XIX-lea. Răspunsurile la chestionarul lui Nicolae Densușianu* (Bucharest, 1976), pp. 159–166.

<sup>516</sup> S. A. Pletneva, “Кочевники восточноевропейских степей в X–XIII вв.,” in *Стену Евразии* (see above, n. 501), p. 217. See also A. Atavine, “Les Petchénégues et les Torks des steppes russes d’après les données de l’archéologie funéraire,” in *De l’Âge du fer au haute Moyen Âge. Archéologie funéraire, princes et élites guerrières*, eds. X. Delestre, M. Kazanski, P. Périn (= *Mémoires publiés par l’Association française d’Archéologie mérovingienne* 15) (*sine loco*, 2006), p. 352 (where only 1100 “nomad” burials of nine-thirteenth centuries were recorded in European Russia).

(Bolgrad district) (O-U), Borisăuca (= Borisovka) Tatarbunar district (O-U), Braniște (?) (Râșcani county) (MR), Brăviceni (17-?) (Orhei county) (MR), Budachi (= Primorskoe) (Bilhorod-Dnistrovs'kyi district) (O-U), Burlănești (3-?) (Edineț county) (MR), Calanciac (Ismail district) (O-U), Camenca (2) (Ismail district) (O-U), Camenca-“Ocnîța” (8-?) (Ismail district) (O-U), Cazaclia (22) (UTAG) (MR), Căplani (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Căușeni (9) (Căușeni county) (MR), Chircăiești (13) (Căușeni county) (MR), Chirileni (5) (Ungheni county) (MR), Chislița (Ismail district) (O-U), Cîauș (Reni district) (O-U), Cimișeni (2) (Criuleni county) (MR), Ciocâlteni (15-?) (Orhei county) (MR), Cârnațeni (4) (Căușeni county) (MR), Cocicovatoe (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Codrul Nou (2) (Telenești county) (MR), Copanca (Căușeni county) (MR), Copceac (2) (UTAG) (RM), Corjeuți (2-?) (Briceni county) (MR), Corjova (2) (Criuleni county) (MR), Corpaci (3) (Edineț county) (MR), Costești (5) (Râșcani county) (MR), Cotiujeni (3-?) (Șoldănești county) (MR), Cuconeștii Vechi (Edineț county) (MR), Divizia (5) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Doina (Cahul county) (MR), Dubăsarii Vechi (Criuleni county) (MR), Etulia (4) (UTAG) (MR), Fălești (Fălești county) (MR), Feștelița (6-?) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Fridensfeld (= Mirnopol) (3-?) (Sărata district) (O-U), Frumușica (Florești county) (MR), Galați-“Seromgal” (2-?) (Galați county) (R), Găvănoasa (9-?) (Cahul county) (MR), Gorodnoe (Gradeșca) (6) (Reni district) (O-U), Grădești (7-?) (Reni district) (O-U), Grădiște (Cimișlia county) (MR), Grivița (4) (Galați county) (R), Grivița (Vaslui county) (R), Grozești (Iași county) (R), Gura Bâcului (11) (Anenii Noi county) (MR), Hagimus (7) (Căușeni county) (MR), Hajilar (10) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Hancăuți (2) (Edineț county) (MR), Holboca (2) (Iași county) (R), Holmskoe (Arciz district) (O-U), Iablona (3) (Glodeni county) (MR), Ivanovca (3) (Florești county) (MR), Joltâi Iar (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Kalcheva (Kal'chevo) (4) (Bolgrad district) (O-U), Liești (Galați county) (R), Liman (7-?) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Limanskoe-“Fricăței” (4) (Reni district) (O-U), Manta (3) (Cahul county) (MR), Matca (Galați county) (R), Mărculești (Florești county) (MR), Medveja (Briceni county) (MR), Mereni (2-?) (Anenii Noi county) (MR), Măndrești (Telenești county) (MR), Moscu (Galați county) (R), Nagornoe (Reni district) (O-U), Novokamenka (2) (Ismail district) (O-U), Ogorodnoe (3) (Bolgrad district) (O-U), Olănești (2) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Opaci (4) (Căușeni county) (MR), Orlovca (2-?) (Reni district) (O-U), Palanca (8) (Drochia county) (MR), Pavlovca (4) (Arciz district) (O-U), Petrești (6) (Ungheni county) (MR), Pârteștii de Jos (?) (Suceava



county) (R), Plavni (9) (Reni district) (O-U), Pogonești (Vaslui county) (R), Pomezani (2-?) (Chilia district) (O-U), Popeasca (2-?) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Primorskoe (Chilia district) (O-U), Probota (Iași county) (R), Purcari (5) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Răscăieții Noi (3-?) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Roma (4) (Botoșani county) (R), Roșcani (3) (Anenii Noi county) (MR), Rumeanțev (7-?) (Cahul county) (MR), Săiți (3) (Căușeni county) (MR), Sărata (10-?) (Sărata district) (O-U), Sărăteni (2-?) (Hâncești county) (MR), Seliște (3) (Orhei county) (MR), Sevirova (4) (Florești county) (MR), Slobozia (2-?) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Speia (2-?) (Anenii Noi county) (MR), Ștefan-Vodă (3-?) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Strumoc (3) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Suvorovo (Ismail district) (O-U), Svetlâi (8-?) (UTAG) (MR), Șabalat (= Sadovoe) (Bilhorod-Dnistrovs'kyi district) (O-U), Shevcenkovo (Pomazani) (Chilia district) (O-U), Talmază (7-?) (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Taraclia (30) (Taraclia county) (RM), Tețcani (2) (Briceni county) (MR), Tochile-Răducani (2-?) (Leova county) (MR), Todireni (2) (Botoșani county) (R), Tômăi (?) (UTAG) (MR), Trapovca (4) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Tudora (Ștefan-Vodă county) (MR), Tuzla (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Umbrărești (Galați county) (R), Ursoaia (8) (Căușeni county) (MR), Vadul lui Isac (3) (Cahul county) (MR), Vasilevca (3) (Bolgrad district) (O-U), Vinogradovca-“Curci” (2) (Bolgrad district) (O-U), Vișnevoe (2) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Zărnești (3) (Cahul county) (MR) and Zânelor, Stația- (3) (Chilia district) (O-U). Up to 30 nomadic graves are known to have been found in the Tatarbunar district (O-U) alone, but nothing is known about the exact location of the finds.

Besides isolated graves, several barrows and mixed cemeteries in south-eastern Moldavia have been attributed to the Turkic populations: Cocicivatoe / Kochikovatoe (Vișnevoe) (44 graves) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U), Draculea (Mirnoe) (149) (Chilia district) (O-U), Hansca (9) (Ialoveni county) (MR), Mirnoe (40) (Chilia district) (O-U), Nerușai (11) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U) and Novoselița (8) (Tatarbunar district) (O-U).<sup>517</sup> Unfortunately, very little has been satisfactorily published in order to allow an assessment and a comparison with the data from

<sup>517</sup> On details concerning the graves, see the bibliography in V. Spinei, *Realități etnice și politice în Moldova Meridională în secolele X–XIII. Români și turanici* (Iași, 1985), pp. 110–119; idem, “Populațiile nomade turce în regiunile românești în secolele X–XIV: aprecieri sintetice,” *Suceava. Anuarul Muzeului Județean* 13–14 (1986–1987), pp. 126–127; idem, “Pecenegii la nordul Dunării de Jos în secolele X–XI,” in *D. Prodan. Puterea modelului*, eds. N. Bocșan, N. Edroiu, L. Maior, A. Răduțiu, P. Teodor (Cluj-Napoca, 1995), pp. 34–36; Dobroliubskii, *Кочевники Северо-Западного Причерноморья* (see

isolated graves. It appears that at least some cemeteries include burial assemblages of different dates and, possibly, ethnic background. In certain cases, it is impossible to distinguish between Turkic and Bugeac Tatar burial assemblages.

The analysis of tenth- to fourteenth-century burial assemblages attributed to Turkic nomads allows for some general conclusions. Thus far 478 isolated graves have been identified in the Carpathian-Dniester area; they are scattered in 124 different localities (Fig. 4). The ethnic attributions proposed for more than half of them are acceptable, although there is no possibility of cross-examination. Most graves have been discovered by systematic excavations, and about 20 of them accidentally, without specialist supervision. Another 16 graves have been found prior to World War I, at time when the methodology of archaeological investigation was not fully developed. The recorded data from those assemblages, as well as others is incomplete and often defective; the grave goods themselves, when not destroyed or lost, have hardly been published completely. In conclusion, despite a relative large number of burial assemblages from the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains, their study is not without problems. The situation is even worse in the case of cemeteries, which makes it impossible to use the information so far available before the proper publication of what has already been excavated.

Most isolated burials in Moldavia are in barrows, with just ten known so far without burial mounds (less than 2 percent). The situation is somewhat different in the Romanian Plain, where a higher number of burials without mounds are known. Very few of the barrows in the region outside the Carpathian Mountains have actually been built by the medieval nomads (Balabanu, Ivanovca). The Turkic populations commonly used the prehistoric barrows built by bearers of the Usatovo, Yamnaia, Pit-Grave, and Srubny cultures, and by Scythians or Sarmatians. The great number of prehistoric barrows scattered in the Bugeac and along the main rivers saved the Pechenegs, Uzès and Cumans the effort to build burial mounds of their own.

Barrows in the Carpathian-Dniester region are often mentioned in medieval sources, in the works of the Moldavian chroniclers and in the accounts of foreign travellers to or through Moldavia. In 1636 a

---

above, n. 459), *passim*; Garustovich, Ivanov, *Огызьт* (see above, n. 459), pp. 199–209; Postică, *Civilizația* (see above, n. 110), pp. 140–144 and 448–460.

Polish messenger noticed that, in Moldavia, “on the hills one can see lots of mounds, which are the signs of wars waged by many peoples.”<sup>518</sup> Noting the great number of burial mounds in the steppes between the Don and the Danube, a region across which he traveled in 1837, Anatole de Demidoff insisted upon the need to record them all.<sup>519</sup> Unfortunately, his appeal remained unanswered so far, for both the Romanian Plain and the steppe lands in present-day Ukraine, despite the continued scholarly interest in, and occasional recording of barrows at a microregional level. Such efforts have been made for southern Bessarabia,<sup>520</sup> the Tutova Hills,<sup>521</sup> a portion of the Bârlad valley,<sup>522</sup> as well as for the entire Vaslui<sup>523</sup> and Galați counties.<sup>524</sup> Along the Bârlad, between Vaslui and Ghidigeni (about 60 km), no less than 133 mounds have been discovered.<sup>525</sup> The survey of the Galați county produced 430 mounds.<sup>526</sup> Systematic excavations took place for only a few of those barrows. During World War and the last years of Russian occupation in Bessarabia, no less than 1,079 tumuli have been recorded. Their distribution is as follows: 96 in the former region (*uezd*) of Hotin, 119 in Soroca, 242 in Bălți, 56 in Orhei, 36 in Chișinău, 138 in Bender, 257 in Akkerman and 136 in Ismail.<sup>527</sup> On the territory of the present-day Republic of Moldova, some 5,000 mounds have been so far recorded, many of them clustered in the steppe region.<sup>528</sup>

<sup>518</sup> *Călători*, V, p. 116 (Solia lui Krasinski).

<sup>519</sup> A. de Demidoff, *Voyage dans la Russie Méridionale et la Crimée par la Hongrie, la Valachie et la Moldavie exécuté en 1837* (Paris, 1841), pp. 467–468.

<sup>520</sup> G. Olofson, “Примечательнейшие курганы Бессарабской области,” *ЖОО* 2 (1850), p. 550 ff.; D. Samokvasov, *Могилы Русской земли* (Moscow, 1908), pp. 20–22 and 130–132; P. Constantinescu-Iași, *Basarabia arheologică și artistică* (Chișinău, 1933), pp. 13–16; Dobroliubskii, *Кочевники Северо-Западного Причерноморья*, *passim*.

<sup>521</sup> P. Poghirc, *Satul în Colinele Tutovei* (Bucharest, 1972), pp. 97–99.

<sup>522</sup> V. Varlaam, “Complexele funerare tumulare de pe cursul mijlociu al râului Bârlad,” *Carpica* 11 (1979), pp. 217–230.

<sup>523</sup> Coman, *Statornicie*, p. 391 and *passim*.

<sup>524</sup> M. Brudiu, *Lumea de sub tumulii din sudul Moldovei. De la indo-europeni la turanicii târzii* (Bucharest, 2003).

<sup>525</sup> Varlaam, “Complexele funerare tumulare,” pp. 217 and 221–229.

<sup>526</sup> Brudiu, *Lumea de sub tumulii din sudul Moldovei*, pp. 11 and 93–137.

<sup>527</sup> I. Eberhardt, *Памятники старины и археологическія находки въ Бессарабіи* (Kishinev, 1916), pp. 5–6 and 13–25.

<sup>528</sup> I. Hâncu, “Movile funerare de pe teritoriul Republicii Moldova și semnificația lor istorică,” in *Symposia professorum. Seria Istorie. Materialele Sesiunii științifice din 4–5 mai 2001* (Universitatea Liberă Internațională din Moldova) (Chișinău, 2001), pp. 15–16. See also idem, *Vetre strămoșești din Republica Moldova. Materiale arheologice informativ-didactice* (Chișinău, 2003), *passim*.

It is no accident that the largest concentration of barrows appears in the lowlands with only a few mounds known from the hilly, densely forested region. From the Greek geographer Daniel Philippide<sup>529</sup> and the Romanian archaeologist Grigore Tocilescu,<sup>530</sup> many scholars have addressed the question of why were burial mounds built in the first place. However, only recently have archaeological excavations (already recommended in 1853 by a French traveller)<sup>531</sup> clarified the function, chronology and origin of the burial mounds in the steppe. Besides barrows of Dacian or medieval origin, the vast majority of the burial mounds turned out to be phenomena associated with nomadic populations from the Eurasian steppes, from the Neolithic to the end of the Migration period. Unlike single-grave barrows built before and during the Great Migration, medieval mounds erected on top of graves of warriors were in fact collective burials or had only a commemorative purpose.<sup>532</sup>

Most grave attributed to Turkic populations are between 0.5 and 2.5 m deep. Sometimes the walls of the grave pit were completely covered in wooden planks, as if it were a burial chamber, but most of times, the grave was simply covered with wooden planks. The Turkic nomads in Lower Danube region did not practise cremation and all known graves attributed to them are in fact inhumations (Figs. 23; 26/19; 27/1; 35/1, 2, 7; 39/1; 40/1–3, 10; 41/1–3, 9, 10; 42/1–4, 12; 43; 44/1, 2, 11; 45/1, 2; 46/1, 13, 17, 21; 49/17–20). This is in direct contradiction to Abu'l-Fida's claim that the Pechenegs cremated their dead.<sup>533</sup> Cremation is mentioned in relation to central Asian Turkic populations by various

---

<sup>529</sup> N. Bănescu, "Viața și opera lui Daniel (Dimitrie) Philippide," *Anuarul Institutului de Istorie Națională* 2 (1923), pp. 167–168.

<sup>530</sup> Gr. Tocilescu, *Dacia înainte de romani* (Bucharest, 1880), pp. 140–145.

<sup>531</sup> Boucher de Perthes, *Voyage à Constantinople*, trans. I. Conca, *AD* 4 (1923), no. 2, pp. 188–189.

<sup>532</sup> Gr. Ureche, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 239), p. 95; Miron Costin, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei* (see above, n. 249), p. 46; *Cronica Ghiculeștilor. Istoria Moldovei între anii 1695–1754*, eds. N. Camariano and A. Camariano-Cioran (Bucharest, 1965), pp. 208–211, 277, and 408–409; I. Neculce, *Opere. Letopisețul Țării Moldovei și o samă de cuvinte*, ed. G. Ștrempel (Bucharest, 1982), pp. 663–664; *Călători*, V, p. 154 (Solia lui W. Miaskowski); Chiparissa, *Cronicul* (see above, n. 455), p. 70. See also M. Ignat, "Contribuții la cunoașterea movilelor funerare militare din evul mediu," *Suceava. Anuarul Muzeului Județean* 8 (1981), pp. 101–109.

<sup>533</sup> Aboulféda (see above, n. 25), II, 1, p. 292.

other authors.<sup>534</sup> Cremations appear in medieval China as well, and were particularly favoured in the world of the steppes.<sup>535</sup>

Even if the vast majority of the human remains has so far not been properly analyzed, it appears that most of them are of adult individuals. That only few graves of children are known raises the question of who exactly was entitled to a burial under a mound. About three quarters of all known graves have a west-east orientation (with slight variations to the north or to the south), the remaining graves being divided between east-west (with slight variations to the north or to the south) or north-south (with variations to the west or to the east) grave orientations. Very few graves have a south-north orientation. The deceased were buried in supine position, with arms stretched along the body, sometimes slightly folded, with hands on the pelvis. Only one case is known (Zârnești) of a burial face down. Equally rare are double burials (Grădiște, Hagimus, and Seliște—Fig. 23/3). That a female and a male have been buried together—in the grave at Grădiște—is in itself no evidence of human sacrifice,<sup>536</sup> but perhaps of a concomitant death of a couple.

In about fifty percent of isolated graves attributed to the Turkic populations the human skeleton was accompanied by the severed body parts of a horse: the skull and the lower extremities of all four legs (Figs. 23/1, 4; 41/1, 10; 42/12; 44/2; 46/13; 49/17, 19, 20). There seems to be no doubt that the body parts operated as *pars pro toto*, the meat of the sacrificed animal being most likely consumed by participants at the funeral. Only a few graves contained complete horse skeletons (Fig. 23/2). The Arab traveller Ibn Fadlan noted that the Oghuz tribes along the Volga River, after slaughtering horses, ate their meat, and hung on poles the head, the hooves, the skin, and the tail.<sup>537</sup>

Most common among grave goods found in assemblages attributed to the Turkic nomads are dress accessories (earrings, lock-rings, buckles, bronze bell pendants, fragments of clothes, glass beads, appliqués,

---

<sup>534</sup> J.-P. Roux, *La mort chez les peuples altaïques anciens et médiévaux d'après les documents écrits* (Paris, 1963), pp. 142–143; I. Ecsedy, “Ancient Turk (T’u-chüeh) burial customs,” *AOH* 38 (1984), no. 3, pp. 263–287; L. Jisl, “The Orkhon Türks and problems of the archaeology of the Second Eastern Türk Kaghanate,” *Annals of the Náprstek Museum Praha* 18 (1997), pp. 53–55; Tryjarski, *Bestattungssitten* (see above, n. 501), pp. 180–184.

<sup>535</sup> J. Jaworski, “Quelques remarques sur les coutumes funéraires turques d’après les sources chinoises,” *Rocznik orientalistyczny* 4 (1926), pp. 255–266; P. Ebrey, “Cremation in Sung China,” *The American Historical Review* 95 (1990), no. 2, p. 406 ff.

<sup>536</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 193.

<sup>537</sup> Ibn Fadlan (see above, n. 162), p. 27.

bracelets and bladed pendants) and artifacts deposited ritually in the grave pit (weapons, horse gear, coins, arrowheads, knives and daggers, bone and antler bow reinforcement plates, sabres, remains of bags, spearheads, coat of mail fragments, bridle bits, stirrups, flint steels with or without flint stones, scissors, copper-alloy kettles, pottery, wooden bucket metal hoops) (Figs. 22–42, 44–56).

The image of the nomad Turkic populations at the Lower Danube becomes more detailed if burial assemblages attributed to them from the Romanian Plain (Wallachia) and from Dobrudja are also taken into consideration. Such assemblages have so far been found in Wallachia in Adâncata<sup>538</sup> (Ialomița county), Bucharest-“Lacul Tei” (“Tei Lake”) (?)<sup>539</sup> (București municipality), Buzău (?)<sup>540</sup> (Buzău county), Cireșanu<sup>541</sup> (Prahova county), Ciulnița (2 graves)<sup>542</sup> (Ialomița county), Curcani<sup>543</sup> (Călărași county), Dridu-“Snagov”<sup>544</sup> (Ialomița county), Însurăței (?)<sup>545</sup> (Brăila county), Jilava<sup>546</sup> (Ilfov district), Lișcoteanca (3 graves)<sup>547</sup> (Brăila

<sup>538</sup> G. Simion, E. Rența, V. Șt. Nițulescu, “Tumulul de la Adâncata—jud. Ialomița,” *Ialomița. Studii și cercetări de arheologie, istorie, etnografie și muzeologie*, Slobozia 4 (2003–2004), pp. 95–98, 102–105, and 112–114 with figs. 4/2; 5; 6.

<sup>539</sup> S. Morintz, D. V. Rosetti, “Din cele mai vechi timpuri pînă la formarea Bucureștilor,” in *Bucureștii de odinioară în lumina săpăturilor arheologice*, ed. I. Ionașcu (Bucharest, 1959), p. 34.

<sup>540</sup> Gr. Tocilescu, *Istoria românilor*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1900), p. 101.

<sup>541</sup> A. Ioniță, “Morminte de călăreți la nordul Dunării de Jos în sec. X–XIII,” in *Prinos lui Petre Diaconu la 80 de ani*, eds. I. Cîndea, V. Sîrbu, M. Neagu (Brăila, 2004), p. 470; idem, *Spațiul dintre Carpații Meridionali și Dunărea Inferioară în secolele XI–XIII* (Bucharest, 2005), p. 55.

<sup>542</sup> S. Marinescu-Bîlcu, E. Rența, Gh. Matei, “Les recherches archéologiques de sauvetage de Ciulnitza, le département de Ialomitza (1994–1997). Le tumulus I,” in *Pratiques funéraires dans l’Europe des XIII–IV<sup>e</sup> s. av. J.-C. Actes du III<sup>e</sup> Colloque International d’Archéologie Funéraire organisé à Tulcea, 15–20 septembre 1997*, ed. V. Lungu (Tulcea, 2000), pp. 149 and 153 with fig. 9/3; A.-C. Bălțeanu, “L’étude anthropologique des squelettes humains découverts au tell I de Ciulnitza (Slobozia),” in *ibidem*, pp. 167–168.

<sup>543</sup> M. Sâmpetru and D. Șerbănescu, “Mormîntul de călăreț nomad descoperit la Curcani,” *SCIV* 22 (1971), no. 3, pp. 443–455.

<sup>544</sup> G. Hălcescu, “Un mormint peceneg descoperit la Dridu-Snagov, jud. Ialomița.” Report presented on March 25, 1983 at the Annual session of archaeological reports in Ploiești.

<sup>545</sup> S. Pandrea, V. Sîrbu, M. Mirea, D. Moise, M. Neagu, “Însurăței, jud. Brăila,” in *Cronica cercetărilor arheologice. Campania 1997*, p. 36; Ioniță, “Morminte de călăreți,” p. 471; idem, *Spațiul*, pp. 55, 134.

<sup>546</sup> D. V. Rosetti, “Siedlungen der Kaiserzeit und der Völkerwanderungszeit bei Bukarest,” *Germania* 18 (1934), no. 3, p. 209; Morintz, Rosetti, “Din cele mai vechi timpuri,” p. 34.

<sup>547</sup> N. Harțuche, F. Anastasiu, “Morminte de călăreți nomazi descoperite în județul Brăila,” *Istros*, Brăila, 1 (1980), pp. 266–274; N. Harțuche, “Raport asupra săpăturilor

county), Movilița<sup>548</sup> (Ialomița county), Oltenița (2 graves)<sup>549</sup> (Călărași county), Poiana<sup>550</sup> (?) (Gorj county), Râmnicelu<sup>551</sup> (Brăila county), Știubei<sup>552</sup> (Buzău county), Tangâru<sup>553</sup> (now in Stoenеști) (Giurgiu county), Ulmeni (2 graves)<sup>554</sup> (Buzău county), Vitănești (2 graves)<sup>555</sup> (Teleorman county), and Ziduri<sup>556</sup> (Buzău county) in Wallachia. From Dobruđja, burial assemblages attributed to the Turkic nomads have been found in Dinogetia-Garvăn<sup>557</sup> (Tulcea county) and Histria<sup>558</sup> (= Istria) (Constanța county). There are 25 graves so far known (four of them with uncertain provenance: Bucharest, Buzău, Însurăței and Poiana) from 19 different sites in Romanian Plain. This makes a total number of 503 graves from 143 sites in the region outside the Carpathian Mountains. To these, one can add several others discovered south of the Danube, in Dobruđja (Fig. 4).

With many of those graves still unpublished and others incompletely published, it is difficult to draw clear-cut chronological and ethnic distinctions within the entire corpus. To be sure, the date and ethnic attribution for a considerable number of finds attributed to the medieval nomads of the southern regions of eastern Europe remains controversial. No solution will be found without a serious attempt to re-consider all the

---

arheologice de la Lișcoteanca, jud. Brăila,” *MCA*, Tulcea, 14 (1980), p. 177 and figs. 28–30.

<sup>548</sup> Gh. Diaconu and P. Diaconu, “Un mormint de călăreț nomad din secolele XI–XII descoperit la Movilița,” *SCIV* 18 (1967), no. 1, pp. 135–140.

<sup>549</sup> S. Morintz and B. Ionescu, “Cercetări arheologice în împrejurimile orașului Oltenița (1958–1967),” *SCIV* 19 (1968), no. 1, p. 101; M. Sâmpetru, “Înmormintări pecenege din Câmpia Dunării,” *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 3, p. 454.

<sup>550</sup> Ioniță, “Morminte de călăreți,” p. 474.

<sup>551</sup> Harțuche, Anastasiu, “Morminte de călăreți nomazi,” pp. 263–266.

<sup>552</sup> E.-M. Constantinescu, “Morminte de călăreți nomazi de la cumpăna mileniilor descoperite în județul Buzău,” *Mousaios* 4 (1994), no. 1, pp. 168–169.

<sup>553</sup> D. Berciu, “Săpăturile arheologice de la Tangâru,” *MCA* 5 (1959), p. 152. See also C. Maximilian and N. Haas, “Notă asupra materialului osos dintr-un mormint din epoca feudală timpurie descoperit la Tangâru,” *ibidem*, pp. 155–161.

<sup>554</sup> Constantinescu, “Morminte de călăreți nomazi,” pp. 165–177; *idem*, *Memoria pământului* (see above, n. 461), pp. 234, 236.

<sup>555</sup> V. Leahu and G. Trohani, “Două morminte de călăreți nomazi din Cîmpia Teleormanului,” *SCIVA* 29 (1978), no. 4, pp. 529–539; *idem*, “Săpăturile arheologice de la Vitănești, jud. Teleorman,” *Cercetări arheologice* 3 (1979), pp. 127–141.

<sup>556</sup> Constantinescu, “Morminte de călăreți nomazi,” p. 168.

<sup>557</sup> E. Comșa, “Cimitirul,” in Ștefan, Barnea, Comșa, Comșa, *Dinogetia* (see above, n. 387), pp. 370–371.

<sup>558</sup> Al. Suceveanu, “Un mormint din secolul XI e.n. la Histria,” *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 3, pp. 495–502.

archaeological evidence known so far, which pertains to the Pechenegs, the Uzes, the Cumans, the Berendei, and the Brodniks.

The ethnic attribution of the burial assemblages from the Carpathian-Dniester area depends upon the possibility to date accurately both the ritual practices and the burial assemblage. On the basis of certain artifact categories, the dating of which will need to be re-evaluated at a more advanced stage of research, it is possible to draw some distinctions between isolated graves so far known from the area. The earliest appears to be the Grozești assemblage, with its stirrups and bridle bits<sup>559</sup> (Fig. 30/7, 10) most typical for the 900s, which could then justify its interpretation as Pecheneg burial. The same is true for Bucharest-“Lacul Tei.” The assemblages from Berești<sup>560</sup> (Fig. 28/10), Palanca<sup>561</sup> (Fig. 51/7) and Todireni<sup>562</sup> (Fig. 28/11, 13) produced bladed pendants, which are common in the tenth and eleventh century, an indication that those burials may be either Pecheneg or Uzes.<sup>563</sup> Such pendants were also discovered in a Turkic grave in Histria,<sup>564</sup> in eleventh- to twelfth-century layers in Dinogetia-Garvăn,<sup>565</sup> Păcuiul lui Soare<sup>566</sup> and Nufăru,<sup>567</sup> as well as in settlements of Dridu culture excavated in Bucharest-Străulești<sup>568</sup>

<sup>559</sup> V. Spinei, “Contribuții la istoria spațiului est-carpatic din secolul al XI-lea până la invazia mongolă din 1241,” *MA* 6–8 (1974–1976), p. 149 and fig. 18.

<sup>560</sup> Idem, “Antichitățile nomazilor turanici din Moldova în primul sfert al mileniului al II-lea,” *SCIVA* 25 (1974), no. 3, pp. 394 and 396 with fig. 2/3.

<sup>561</sup> V. D. Gukin, S. I. Kurchatov, “Позднекочевническое погребение у села Паланка,” *Археологические вести* 4 (1995), pp. 143–145; idem [V. Gukin, S. Kurchatov], “Un mormânt al nomazilor târzii din apropierea s. Palanca (Drochia),” *Revista arheologică* 2 (1998), pp. 136–139.

<sup>562</sup> V. Spinei, “Découvertes de l'époque tardive des migrations à Todireni (dép. de Botoșani),” *Dacia*, NS, 17 (1973), pp. 278–281 with figs. 1/3, 4; 2/3, 4; idem, “Antichitățile nomazilor turanici din Moldova,” pp. 400 and 402 with fig. 9/2, 4.

<sup>563</sup> Idem, “Découvertes,” pp. 282–290; Garustovich, Ivanov, *Огузы* (see above, n. 459), pp. 88–89; V. Iotov, “О материальной культуре печенегов к югу от Дуная — листовидные ажурные амулеты XI в.,” *Stratum plus* (2000), no. 5, pp. 209–212; S. Riabtseva, “О листовидных-украшениях, подвесках, копоушках и решмах,” *Revista arheologică*, SN, 1 (2005), no. 1, pp. 350–358.

<sup>564</sup> Suceveanu, “Un mormânt,” pp. 497–498 and fig. 3/1, 2.

<sup>565</sup> I. Barnea, “Podoabe întrebuințate de locuitorii de la Bisericița-Garvăn. Podoabe de metal,” in Ștefan, Barnea, Comșa, Comșa, *Dinogetia* (see above, n. 387), p. 282 and fig. 168/10–15.

<sup>566</sup> P. Diaconu, “Două pandantive foliforme de bronz de la Păcuiul lui Soare,” *Cultură și civilizație la Dunărea de Jos*, Călărași, 3–4 (1987), pp. 113–114 and pl. LXXIX, 1–2.

<sup>567</sup> L. Dumitriu, *Der mittelalterliche Schmuck des Unteren Donaugebietes im 11.–15. Jahrhundert*, trans. R. Harhoiu (Bucharest, 2001), p. 112 and pl. 15/9.

<sup>568</sup> M. Constantiniu, P. I. Panait, “Șantierul Băncasa-Străulești. Cercetările din sectorul Măicănești (1964–1966),” *București. Materiale de istorie și muzeografie* 6 (1968), p. 67 with fig. 10/1.



and Brăhășești (Galați county).<sup>569</sup> Similar bladed pendants were also found in north-eastern Bulgaria, at Silistra,<sup>570</sup> Pliska,<sup>571</sup> Dolishte, Varna, Skala, and Vălnari.<sup>572</sup>

A larger group of horseman graves (Bârlad-“Dealul Țuguieța” and “Moara lui Chicoș”, Cârnațeni, Copanca, Fridensfeld, Grădiște, Grivița, Matca, Opaci, Pavlovca, Plavni, Sarata, Tuzla, Umbrărești and Stația Zânelor, as well as Curcani, Dridu-“Snagov,” Jilava, Lișcoteanca, Râmnicelu, Tangâru and Vitănești) are characterized by bridle bits with rigid mouth-pieces (Figs. 32/9; 33/12; 36/12; 50/21; 54/15; 55/4; 56/7). Some have wrongly attributed to those bridle bits the value of ethnic badges and as a consequence interpreted the graves in question as either Pecheneg<sup>573</sup> or Cuman.<sup>574</sup> Because most snaffle-bits with rigid mouth-pieces are dated before the late eleventh century (only rarely can such bits be found in twelfth-century assemblages), there is of course a greater likelihood that the graves in question are indeed Pecheneg, although no certainty exists in this respect. The fact that most assemblages with rigid-bar snaffles were associated with skeletons with a west-east orientation accompanied by horse body parts does not contradict the idea of Pecheneg burials, for such elements of ritual seem to be specific to the Pechenegs. Finally, lyre-shaped buckles dated between the tenth and the thirteenth century, such as discovered in Ogorodnoe, Opaci, Pavlovca and Taraclia (Figs. 33/1; 44/6; 44/6; 45/7; 46/15; 50/18), confirms an early dating for the rigid-bar snaffles and, by implication, the assemblages in which they have been found.

Since graves with a east-west orientation do not appear west of the Dnieper at the time of the Pecheneg migration (such graves are known

<sup>569</sup> Spinci, “Découvertes,” p. 283 with figs. 1/2 and 2/2.

<sup>570</sup> G. Atanasov, “Средновековни амулети от Силистра,” *Известия на Народния Музей Варна* 22 (37) (1986), pp. 79–81.

<sup>571</sup> V. Iotov, “Листовидни ажурни амулети от XI в.,” in *Плиска-Преслав*, 8 (Shumen, 2000), p. 242 and figs. 2/6, 11, 12; 3/4, 6, 11, 12; idem, “О материальной культуре” (see above, n. 563), p. 210 and figs. 1/2, 12, 13, 16; Spinci, *Great Migrations*, I, pp. 200, 207; fig. 42/4.

<sup>572</sup> Iotov, “Листовидни ажурни амулети,” pp. 242–246 and figs. 1–3; idem, “О материальной культуре,” pp. 210–211.

<sup>573</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, pp. 155–156; eadem, *Древности черных клобуков (ASAI, E 1–19)* (Moscow, 1973), pp. 15–17; Sâmpetru, “Inmormintări pecenege” (see above, n. 549), pp. 446–460; idem, “La région du Bas-Danube au X<sup>e</sup> siècle de notre ère,” *Dacia*, NS, 18 (1974), pp. 257–259 and 263; Garustovich, Ivanov, *Огузы* (see above, n. 459), pp. 85–86.

<sup>574</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 18–19, 105, and 115; Diaconu, *Coutans*, pp. 14–21.

in the steppe lands north of the Black Sea only after the arrival of the Cumans),<sup>575</sup> such graves found in Căușeni, Cărnățeni, Copanca, Corjova, Hâncăuți, Holboca, Roma, Săiți, Sărata, Tudora and Ursoaia may be interpreted as Cuman. This may also be true for Todireni, where two whole horse skeletons have been discovered. The burial of entire horses together with the human remains is viewed by some as a typically Cuman custom.<sup>576</sup> But no possibility exists to establish whether the horse skeletons found in Fridensfeld, Moscu and Sărata were complete. In my opinion, Moscu is a Cuman or at least Cuman-age burial. Among the grave goods from that assemblage is a helmet most typical for twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Suvorovo, an assemblage which produced late twelfth-century Byzantine coins (Fig. 38/1, 2, 5–8) must also be interpreted as a Cuman burial. However, given the frequent mentions of Brodniks in the region to the east from the Carpathian Mountains, many late twelfth- or early thirteenth-century assemblages may also be attributed to them. There is currently no way to distinguish between Cuman and Brodnik burials.

Many written sources mention the presence of Cuman enclaves within the Mongol Empire, and that is confirmed by archaeology. A large number of nomadic Turkic burials cluster on the left bank of the Dniester, in the region of Tiraspol, and they are all dated after *ca.* 1250. Their dating is based on no less than 33 Mongol coins (12 complete and 21 fragments) struck for the khans Tölä Buga (1287–1291), Toqtaï (1291–1312) and Özbäg (1312–1342).<sup>577</sup> To the same period, after the Mongol invasion, have been dated a number of isolated graves discovered in Frumușica,<sup>578</sup> Fridensfeld, Șabalat,<sup>579</sup> Camenca, Chislița, Cîauș, Covicovatoe, Corjova, Grădești, Holmskoe, Iablona,

<sup>575</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 173; eadem, *Древности черных клубуков*, pp. 20–23; Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 143–147.

<sup>576</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 173; eadem, *Древности черных клубуков*, p. 22; Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 142 and 145.

<sup>577</sup> V. I. Goshkevich, “Погребения датированные джучидскими монетами из раскопок И. Я. Стемпковского,” *Вісник Одеської Комісії Краєзнавства при Українській Академії Наук* 4–5, *Секція археологічна*, Odessa (1930), pp. 104–111; A. O. Dobroliubskii, “Древности средневековых кочевников в Нижнем Поднестровье (материалы раскопок И. Я. Стемпковского),” in *Курганы в зонах новостроек Молдавии*, eds. I. I. Artemenko (gen. ed.), I. A. Borziac, V. A. Dergacev, E. V. Iarovoi, S. M. Agul’nikov (Kishinev, 1984), pp. 153–174.

<sup>578</sup> V. I. Grosu, “Погребение у с. Фрумушика,” in *AIM (1974–1976 gg.)* (1981), pp. 163–164.

<sup>579</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, p. 263.

Limanskoe-“Fricăței,” Novokamenka, Plavni, Răscăieții Noi, Sărata, Trapovca and Tudora, as well as of the cemeteries excavated in Draculea (Mirnoe), Hansca and Nerușai.<sup>580</sup>

The burial assemblages in Novokamenka and Trapovca have analogies among assemblages attributed to the Black Caps on the River Ros',<sup>581</sup> which suggests a movement of those tribes to the regions of the Danube and the mouth of the Dniester, perhaps as a result of the changes imposed by the Mongols in Desht-i Qipchaq. Fridensfeld and Plavni (where, among other things, single-bar bridle bits were found) are however not of the same date. Equally uncertain is the dating of the Cocicovatoe and Limanskoe-“Fricăței” assemblages, both of which contain elements otherwise typical for Pecheneg burials. Of a certain Mongol age are however the Pârteștii de Jos assemblage with a Nogai coin, and possibly three burials found in Seliște, with oval stirrups, a round mirror, and small mounts inscribed with Arabic (Figs. 23/3, 5, 6; 37).

When plotting on a map the burial assemblages found in the region outside the Carpathian Mountains, a number of features become readily visible. First, such assemblages appear in the lowlands and along major rivers (Fig. 4). More than 75 percent of all known assemblages cluster in the Bugeac and the steppe lands on both sides of the Lower Dniester. Relatively large numbers of burials are also found in the Middle Prut, as well as the Middle and Lower Bârlad region, with more isolated graves along the Răut, Chineja, and Cogâlnic rivers. It appears therefore that most burials of Turkic nomads cluster in southern Moldavia.

Second, those burials are always next to sources of water, either rivers or lakes. Copanca, Corjova, Dubăsarii Vechi, Gura Bâcului, Olănești, Purcari, Răscăieții Noi, Speia and Tudora are all on the Dniester. Șabalat (= Sadovoe) on the Dniester liman; Căușeni, Chircăești, Cârnațeni, Opaci and Ursoaia are on the Botna; Roșcani on the Bâc; Brăviceni, Ciocâltani, Mărculești and Seliște on the Răut; Alexandrovca, Frumușica, Ivanovca and Sevirova on the Căinar; Măndrești

<sup>580</sup> A. O. Dobroliubskii, “Этнический состав кочевого населения Северо-Западного Причерноморья в золотоордынское время,” in *Памятники римского и средневекового времени Северо-Западного Причерноморья* (Kiev, 1982), pp. 28–39.

<sup>581</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 32 and 39; A. O. Dobroliubskii, L. V. Subbotin, “Погребение средневекового кочевника у села Траповка,” in *Памятники римского и средневекового времени*, pp. 169–173.

on the Ciulucul Mijlociu, a tributary of the Răut; Belolesie, Fridensfeld (= Mirnopol), Săiți and Sărata are on the Sărata; Grădiște and Pavlovca on the Cogâlnic; Baștanovca and Strumoc on the Nerușai; Novokamenka and Ogorodnoe on the Caltabugul Mare; Taraclia on the Lunga; Tomai on the Lunguța, a tributary of the Lunga; Balabanu on the Ialpuș; Alexeevca-Svetlâi on the Ialpuș; Kalcheva and Vasilevca on the Tașbunar creek; Etulia on the Cahul, next to the point where it empties into Lake Cahul; Găvănoasa is also on the Cahul; Budachi (= Primorskoe) is on the shore of Lake Budachi, Tuzla on the shore of Lake Burnas; Borisăuca, Primorskoe and Trapovca are on the shores of the Sasicu Mare Lake; Chislița and Suvorovo are next to the Catlabug Lake; Stația Zânelor next to the Chitai Lake; Bolgrad, Cazaclia, Ciauș, Plavni and Vinogradovca-“Curci” are all on the shores of Lake Ialpuș; Manta by Lake Manta; Limanskoe-“Fricăței” and Nagornoe are next to Lake Cahul; Bădragii Vechi, Braniște, Corpaci, Costești, Cuconeștii Vechi, Hăncăuți, Probota, Vadul lui Isac, and Zărnești are on the Prut; Corjeuți on the Lopatnic, a tributary of the Prut; Grozești and Todireni are on the Jijia; Holboca on the Bahlui; Băneasa, Berești and Moscu on the Chineja; Banca, Bârlad-“Moara lui Chicoș” and “Parc,” Grivița-Vaslui, Liești and Umbrărești on the Bârlad; Pogonești on the Tutova, next to its confluence with the Bârlad; and Pârteștii de Jos on the Soloneț, a tributary of the Suceava River.

All burials of Turkic nomads in the Romanian Plain are also located in close proximity to bodies of water: Buzău and Râmnicelu on the Buzău river, Lișcoteanca on the Călmățui river, Dridu-“Snagov” on the Ialomița, Movilița between the springs of the Comana creek (a tributary of the Ialomița river) and the Colceag river (a tributary of the Mostiștea river), Curcani and Oltenița on the Argeș river, Bucharest on the shore of Lake Tei and next to the Colentina river, Jilava on the Sabar, Știubei on the Râmnicu Sărat river, Tangâru on the Câlneștea river, Ulmeni on the Sărata creek (a tributary of the Prahova river), and Vitănești on the Glavacioc.

The distribution of burial assemblages suggests that the main centres of the nomads were the in the Bugeac steppe and along the Lower Dniester river. From there the nomads moved close to the Danube and lakes to the north of the Black Sea to spend the winter. In summer, when the vegetation of the Bugeac was parched by the sun, they would move north with their herds, along the Dniester, the Prut and the Bârlad rivers, as well as along some of their tributaries. The Prut and the

Dniester connected the Bugeac to the Romanian Plain, on one hand, and to the Bălți Highlands and the plain of the Middle Prut, on the other hand. The eccentric position of the Pârteștii de Jos barrow (the only such barrow located to the west from the river Siret) raises further doubts about certain finds traditionally presented as representative for the Turkic nomads. However, Pârteștii de Jos does not change much the general picture made possible by the analysis of burial assemblages attributed to the Turkic nomads and discovered in the Carpathian-Dniester area. True, such assemblages appear in the highlands only along the middle courses of the rivers emptying into the Danube or the Black Sea. However, with the exception of the Pârteștii de Jos barrow, no such assemblages are known from the valley of the Siret river or from the region between the Siret and the Carpathian Mountains. Similarly, in Wallachia burial mounds of the Turkic nomads appear only in the lowlands, with no known assemblage in the sub-Carpathian hills. The conclusion seems to be that the Turkic nomads consistently avoided the densely forested highlands, even when getting very close to them by following the major rivers upstreams. Their favoring the lowlands has of course an economic explanation, given that the steppe lands rich in grass were better suited for the pastoral economy of the Turkic tribes.

The distribution of burial mounds attributed to the Turkic nomads overlaps that of the prehistoric barrows of the Yamnaia, Pit-Grave and Srubny cultures, as well as to that of Sarmatian graves. This is a natural consequence of the very similar mode of life and economic systems in use in all those societies. Bronze-Age and Sarmatian barrows are equally restricted to the southern lowlands and to river valleys crossing the highlands of central and northern Moldavia. Like the Turkic burial mounds, they rarely appear in the region to the west from the Siret and Olt rivers, except of course the finds from the Hungarian Plain.<sup>582</sup> Judging by the large cemeteries discovered in the Bălți Highlands and the valley of the Middle Prut, the impact of the Sarmatians onto that region was far greater than that of the Pechenegs, Uzes and Cumans.

---

<sup>582</sup> V. A. Dergachev, *Памятники эпохи бронзы (АКМ, 3) (1973)*, pp. 10–53; S. Morintz, *Contribuții arheologice la istoria tracilor timpurii, I* (Bucharest, 1978), pp. 86–100; Gh. Bichir, “Les Sarmates au Bas-Danube,” *Dacia*, NS, 21 (1977), pp. 167–197; V. I. Grosu, *Хронология памятников сарматской культуры Днестровско-Прутского междуречья* (Kishinev, 1990); V. Bărcă, *Istorie și civilizație. Sarmatii în spațiul est-carpatic (sec. I a. Chr.—începutul sec. II p. Chr.)* (Cluj-Napoca, 2006), pp. 37 and 273–376.

Another important feature of the distribution of burial assemblages attributed to the Turkic populations of the Carpathian-Dniester region is the small number of graves per site. This is also true for the Romanian Plain. The Turkic nomads in the region of the Lower Danube do not seem to have been too numerous and they apparently did not remain for too long in any particular place.

### *Art*

The number of artifacts that may be considered works of art, which were produced in Romanian communities of southern Moldavia is limited, which is no measure of their spiritual achievements. The difficulties of daily life under the threat of nomadic attacks and the imposition of tribute payments, the delayed urbanization and state organization, the long interruption of contacts with Byzantium—the main cultural center in the south-eastern Europe—all that was a serious obstacle in the development of artistic life of a superior level. Wilhelm Dilthey once wrote in regards to the Middle Ages: “Man has not yet overcome his historical condition in his personal and historical self-interpretation; he clings to what has been given to him, and the geographic and historical horizon of that given condition limits him” (*Der Mensch hat sich noch nicht in persönlicher und geschichtlicher Selbstbesinnung über seine historische Lage erhoben. Er haftet am Gegebenen, und dessen geographischer und historischer Horizont schränkt ihn ein*).<sup>583</sup> This remark could certainly apply to the Romanian territory between the tenth and the thirteenth centuries. The rural communities in the lands to the east of the Carpathian Mountains had no means to elevate impressive buildings of public use. Their churches were made of wood and were most likely single-roomed. They were not very different from more recent parish churches made of wood in which the few members of the local community could all fit.

The only glimpse into native aesthetic preoccupations that we can have is through the so-called “minor arts”: dress accessories and ornaments on objects of daily use. The first category includes glass beads, as well as mounts, pendants, earrings, rings, bracelets made of copper, bronze, or silver by pressing, casting, hammering, wire-work, inlaying and overlaying techniques (Figs. 9/1–4, 6; 10). The artifacts in question

---

<sup>583</sup> W. Dilthey, *Das Erlebnis und die Dichtung*, 7th ed. (Leipzig–Berlin, 1921), p. 2.

are known from other areas of southern, central and eastern Europe, and they reflect the general taste of that period. The second category includes bone, horn, metal and clay artifacts, decorated especially with geometrical ornaments.

All the wheel-made pottery was decorated. Jars of a fine, grey-yellowish fabric were decorated with ornaments polished prior to firing, which consisted of horizontal parallel stripes, or net-like combinations. Pots of the brick-red fabric were decorated with horizontal or wavy combing, either isolated or in parallel bands, sometimes associated with dimples, notches and imprints (Figs. 11–13; 15–19; 20/3–10). On the bottom of pots and bowls, there were various geometrical signs imprinted in relief (usually crosses or concentric circles) (Figs. 12/11, 12; 14). Images of animals are sometimes found, such as on a handmade, ninth- to tenth-century pot from the settlement site in Gara Banca (Vaslui county)<sup>584</sup> (Fig. 22/1), or on two eleventh- to twelfth-century clay kettles from Răducăneni (Iași county).<sup>585</sup>

It is very likely that both buildings and artifacts made of wood, which was in abundance in Moldavia, were also decorated. Romanian woodcarvers of more recent times were known for their skills and their incorporation of ancient traditions and motifs. They were employed for the decoration of the house, the gates, fences, as well as a vast array of household and personal objects, in which aesthetic value was harmoniously combined with practicality. No such works of art survive from ancient times, and the same is true about textiles. By contrast, some stone carvings are known from Delești (Fig. 22/3) and Gara Banca, both in the Vaslui county (Fig. 22/2). In both cases, an effort seems to have been made to represent schematically a human face in gritstone. While the human figure from Delești, which was found together with pottery dated between the sixth and the eleventh century, cannot therefore be dated with any degree of precision,<sup>586</sup> the Gara Banca sculpture was found in a ninth- to tenth-century sunken-floored building.<sup>587</sup>

Was writing used in the lands east of the Carpathian Mountains? While no firm evidence has so far been discovered, it is likely that

<sup>584</sup> Maxim-Alaiba, “Considerații” (see above, n. 74), pp. 254 and 257 with fig. 3/3.

<sup>585</sup> D. Gh. Teodor, “Cîteva observații în legătură cu căldările de lut descoperite la Răducăneni (r. Huși, reg. Iași),” *SCIV* 14 (1963), no. 1, p. 201 and fig. 3.

<sup>586</sup> Coman, *Statornicie*, p. 108 and fig. 160.

<sup>587</sup> Maxim-Alaiba, “Considerații,” p. 257 and fig. 5.

religious books were in use in the region, much like in neighboring Bulgaria or in the Rus' principalities. Some religious books may have been rewritten, but we do not know if this was done by the Romanians, Bulgarians, Greeks or Russians. Those able to read them must have indeed been just a few, and all of them clergymen. Much of what has been so far offered as alleged evidence for the use of writing in medieval southern Moldavia is truly unconvincing. This is particularly the case of the letter *M* written with red paint on a ninth- to tenth-century amphora-shaped pot from Calfa (Anenii Noi county).<sup>588</sup>

Even less is known about folklore. Ethnographic studies have revealed a number of archaic beliefs and rituals surviving into more recent times. Some of them may well pre-date the adoption of Christianity, or may be adaptation of essentially non-Christian traditions associated ancient agrarian rituals or to mythological themes. Far from removing them, Christianity incorporated that tradition, while giving it a new meaning.<sup>589</sup>

\* \* \*

The repertoire of surviving works of art produced by the nomads is quite limited, and consists of artifacts made of metal, bone, and antler (Figs. 24–42, 44–56) retrieved from graves, and of stone statues (*каменные бабы*) (Figs. 57–59). The latter are connected probably only to the Cumans. Metal artifacts were made by casting, hammering, wirework, and engraving. The bone and antler artifacts, especially those decorating sword hilts and quivers, were covered in engraved geometrical or occasionally animal-like.

The stone statues, the purpose of which has been discussed above, are realistic depictions of the anatomy and dress of the nomadic population. They depict both men (Figs. 57; 58) and women (Fig. 59), and include interesting details about hair-dress, garments, jewels and other features. The origin of such carvings goes back to similar works

<sup>588</sup> Chebotarenko, *Калфа* (see above, n. 87), p. 56 and fig. 23/5.

<sup>589</sup> Eliade, *De Zalmoxis* (see above, n. 490); O. Buhociu, *Die rumänische Volkskultur und ihre Mythologie* (Wiesbaden, 1974); M. Brătulescu, *Colinda românească* (Bucharest, 1981); E. Agrigoroaici, *Țara neuitatelor constelații* (Iași, 1981); R. Vulcănescu, *Mitologie română* (Bucharest, 1985); Popescu, *Tradiții* (see above, n. 262); Pop, *Obiceiuri* (see above, n. 262); N. Zugravu, *Geneza creștinismului popular al românilor* (Bucharest, 1997), pp. 479–525; I. Tentiuc, A. Hâncu-Tentiuc, “Unele opinii și controverse privind relația dintre creștinismul popular și ritul și ritualurile funerare medievale timpurii în Europa Centrală și de Sud-Est,” *Tyragetia*, SN, 1 (16) (2007), no. 2, pp. 17–30.



attributed to the Turkic populations of central Asia, who, in their turn, are said to have learned the trade from older Iranian peoples.

A stone statue was discovered before World War I at Nădușita (now Gribova) (Drochia county) (Republic of Moldova) (Fig. 56/19). It was 0.91 m high, 0.55 m wide at the bottom, with a maximum diameter of 1.47 m. The statue is a bust without arms of a male with a moustache, a little beard and Mongoloid eyes. That the statue was found next to a burial mound has led to the conclusion that it must have been initially placed on top of the barrow.<sup>590</sup>

The Nădușita (Gribova) statue has good analogies among similar monuments in central Asia dated between the sixth and the eighth century.<sup>591</sup> By contrast, no analogies are known among statues in the region north of the Black Sea, which could be dated to the beginning of the second millennium. The latter are much taller, with subjects often represented in a seated position with medallions and bead necklaces around the neck and a vase in the hands placed on the abdomens. However, among later statues, there are a few examples of much simpler execution reminding one of the Nădușita (Gribova) specimen.<sup>592</sup>

More than 1,000 statues so far known from the steppe lands north of the Black Sea (Figs. 57–59) have features exactly matching the descriptions of the medieval travelers. Such statues were called in the 700s *balbal* by the Turkic populations,<sup>593</sup> and later *kamennye baby* (каменные бабы) (= stone old women) by the Russians, *baba* meaning *father* or *ancestor* in Turkic languages.<sup>594</sup> The German traveller Martin Grüneweg, who passed through Dobruđja in 1582, knew the meaning of *father* in

<sup>590</sup> A. I. Selenginskii, “О поездке въ с. Надушиту Сорокскаго у., Вессарабской губ.,” *ЖОО* 29 (1911), pp. 122–124; E. A. Rikman, *Художественные сокровища древней Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969), pp. 56–57; E. V. Iarovoï, *Раскрывая тайны курганов* (Kishinev, 1992), pp. 52–54.

<sup>591</sup> Sher, *Каменные изваяния* (see above, n. 501), *passim*; Belli, *Kirgizistan'da taş balbal* (see above, n. 501), *passim*.

<sup>592</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevnikî*, fig. 27/5 (type IIIb); Pletneva, *Древности черных клобуков* (see above, n. 573), fig. 33/VI (type VI); M. L. Shvetsov, “Половецкие святилища” (see above, n. 502), p. 205; fig. 6/2.

<sup>593</sup> V. Thomsen, “Altürkische Inschriften aus der Mongolei in Übersetzung und mit Einleitung,” *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, NF, 3 (78) (1924), pp. 147 and 158. See also pp. 132, 138, 139; T. Tekin, *Les inscriptions de l'Orkhon. Kül Tighine, Bilghé Qaghan, Touyouqouq* (Istanbul, 1995), pp. 42–45, 67, 69, and 79.

<sup>594</sup> Barthold, *Histoire* (see above, n. 429), p. 14; Roux, *La mort chez les peuples altaïques* (see above, n. 534), pp. 186–188. On the *balbal*, see also W. Kotwicz, “Contribution à l'histoire de l'Asie Centrale,” *Rocznik orientalistyczny* 15 (1939–1949), pp. 190–193; G. Clauson, *An Etymological Dictionary of Pre-Thirteenth-Century Turkish* (Oxford, 1972), p. 333; B. Öhrig, *Bestattungsriten alttürkischer Aristokratie im Lichte der Inschriften* (Munich,

the place name *Baba*: “das deutet Vatter.”<sup>595</sup> The greatest number of statues may be found in the region between the middle course of the Dnieper and the Northern Donets, as well as to the north-east from the Sea of Azov. Statues appear in much smaller numbers in other parts of the Donets basin, in the steppe lands to the north from the Caucasus Mountains, in Crimea, and between the rivers Don and Volga.<sup>596</sup> Besides the stone statue from Nădușita (Gribova), only two other specimens are known from the region to the west from the Dniester River. Both of them have been found in Endzhe (now Tzarev Brod, Shumen county, Bulgaria),<sup>597</sup> and have for a long time been wrongly attributed to the Bulgars.<sup>598</sup>

As a matter of fact, numerous elements of the cultural traditions of the later Turkic populations were in fact borrowed from those of previous nomads ruling over the Eurasian steppe lands, without however reaching the level of artistry displayed on Scythian, Sarmatian, Khazar, Avar, and Hungarian metalwork. From that point of view, one

---

1988), pp. 195–206; Ermolenko, *Средневековые каменные изваяния* (see above, n. 501), pp. 48–50; Bosi, “Sulla statuaria antropomorfa” (see above, n. 501), pp. 96–101.

<sup>595</sup> M. Jovov (ed.), “Пътеписът на Мартин Грюневег като исторически извор за Българските земи (1582) / Martin Grünewegs Tagebuch als Geschichtsquelle über die bulgarischen Gebieten (1582),” *Годишник на Софийския Университет. Исторически Факултет* 67 (1973–1974) [1977], p. 125.

<sup>596</sup> A. S. Uvarov, “Сведения о каменныхъ бабахъ,” in *Труды Первого археологического съезда въ Москве 1869*, II, ed. A. S. Uvarov (Moscow, 1871), pp. 501–520; J. Castagné, “Étude historique et comparative des statues babas des steppes kirghizes et de Russie en général,” *Bulletins et mémoires de la Société d’Anthropologie de Paris* 1, VIe Sér. (1910), pp. 375–407; N. Veselovskii, “Современное состояние вопроса о ‘Каменныхъ бабахъ’ или ‘Балбалахъ,’” *ЖОО* 32 (1915), pp. 408–444; Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, pp. 166–193; Pletneva, *Древности черныхъ клобуков*, p. 16; Pritsak, “Polovcians” (see above, n. 16), pp. 348–367; L. S. Geras’kova, *Скульптура середньовічних кочовиків степів Східної Європи* (Kiev, 1991), pp. 10–20; cadem, “Новое в изучении монументальной скульптуры кочевников средневековья,” *Stratum plus* (1999), no. 5, pp. 408–430; N. I. Navrotskii, “Половецкие каменные изваяния Армавирского краеведческого музея,” *Историко-археологический альманах, Армавир-Moscow*, 1 (1995), pp. 157–164.

<sup>597</sup> R. Rashev, “Прабългарски ли са ‘каменните баби’ от Ендже,” *Музей и паметници на културата* 12 (1971), no. 1, pp. 17–20; idem, “Късни номади в Плисковското поле,” in *Преслав*, III, ed. T. Totev (Varna, 1983), pp. 246–247 and fig. 1.

<sup>598</sup> G. Fehér, *A bolgár-török műveltség emlékei és magyar őstörténeti vonatkozásaik / Les monuments de la culture protobulgare et leurs relations hongroises* (Budapest, 1931), pp. 86–102; N. Mavrodinov, *Старобългарското изкуство. Изкуството на Първото българско царство* (Sofia, 1959), pp. 67–68. See also S. Michailov, “Les figurations dites ‘Kamennye baby’ et leur survivance tardive dans le culte funéraire chez les Bulgares,” *Bulgarian Historical Review* 17 (1988), no. 4, pp. 55–68 (where a distinction between *kamennye baby* and *babal* is proposed).

cannot speak of any new developments in the art of the steppe during the tenth to the thirteenth century, but, on the contrary, of some degenerescence. The military and political power did not always have a cultural counterpart.

Elements of writing, of limited use, may have also developed in the southern parts of eastern Europe. As it is known, there are examples of a paleo-Turkic language recorded as early as the eighth century in the Orkhonic inscriptions from the region south of the Baikal Lake. It is in those inscriptions that mention is made, among other things, of the Oghuz<sup>599</sup> and the Toquz-Oghuz (“Nine-Tribe Grouping of Oghuz”).<sup>600</sup>

Judging by the literature preserved from Turkic groups related to the nomads of the steppes north of the Black and Caspian seas, most prominent of which is *Oghuzname*, epics must have also been created in Turkic communities between the Danube and the Ural, without any one of them being anything else but an example of oral literature. There is also evidence of the love Turkic populations had for music. An Arab author even claims that the Pechenegs used bugles instead of kettle-drums.<sup>601</sup> At the court of Alp Arslan (1063–1072), a ruler of the Oghuz belonging to the Seljuq branch, there were skilled musicians who accompanied themselves with instruments for their performances.<sup>602</sup> Even though their songs may not have been as mesmerizing as the “Polovtsian dances” from Borodin’s *Prince Igor*, the Cumans were certainly fond of music. Rus’ chroniclers mention Polovtsian / Cuman musicians, and the *Codex Comanicus* contains terms indicating that profession and some instruments. Finally, there is even a stone statue of a man holding a string instrument in his hands.<sup>603</sup> Moreover, the grave goods found in a Cuman male burial from Kirovo (Kerson

<sup>599</sup> Thomsen, “Altürkische Inschriften,” pp. 150, 155–157, and 163; Tekin, *Les inscriptions*, pp. 44–47, 50–51, 68–71, 74–75, 84–87, and 94–95; S. E. Malov, *Памятники древнетюркской письменности Монголии и Киргизии* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1959), pp. 10, 21, 22, 39, 42, and 43.

<sup>600</sup> Thomsen, “Altürkische Inschriften,” pp. 140, 144, 147, 154, 157, 163–165, and 169–170; Tekin, *Les inscriptions*, pp. 34–35, 42–43, 50–51, 62–67, 74–75, and 84–85; Malov, *Памятники*, pp. 20–22, 29, 39, and 40.

<sup>601</sup> Al-Bēcri (see above, n. 162), p. 15; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 222. See also A. P. Martinez (trans.), *Gardīzi* (see above, n. 43), p. 152; *Orient.Ber.*, p. 165.

<sup>602</sup> *The History of the Seljuq Turks. From The Jāmi’ al-Tawārīkh, an Ilkhanid Adaption of the Saljūq-nāma of Ṣahīr al-Dīn Nīshāpūrī*, trans. K. A. Luther, ed. C. E. Bosworth (Richmond, Surrey, 2001), p. 51.

<sup>603</sup> Pletneva, *Pechenegi*, p. 212.

region, Ukraine) included, besides a bow and arrows, a pear-shaped, komuz-like string instrument.<sup>604</sup>

As a general consideration, it appears that neither the nomadic lifestyle, nor the can-oriented and patriarchal traditions of nomadic society encouraged remarkable artistic achievements.

---

<sup>604</sup> G. L. Evdokimov, “«...Sing ihm doch polovzische Lieder» (Nestor Chronik),” in *Gold der Steppe. Archäologie der Ukraine*, eds. R. Rolle, M. Müller-Wille and K. Schietzel, in collab. with P. P. Toločko and V. Ju. Murzin (Schleswig, 1991), pp. 281–283.



## CHAPTER FOUR

### CONTACTS AND INTERACTIONS BETWEEN ROMANIANS AND TURKIC NOMADS

The medieval ethnic and political structures in the Lower Danube area have attracted the attention of many specialists during the last few decades. Nonetheless, many aspects have remained unclarified or controversial. Unfortunately, certain conclusions have been coloured by nationalistic concerns and, although obviously biased, have spread widely. Consequently, replies to the point are necessary. Such things have been discussed elsewhere, but it is worth re-iterating the terms of the discussion, since, as Goethe put it, “it is necessary that truth be repeated again and again, because the error is advocated and propagated again and again, not only by one or another, but by very many people” (*Und denn, man muss das Wahre immer wiederholen, weil auch der Irrtum um uns her immer wieder gepredigt wird, und zwar nicht von einzelnen, sondern von der Masse*).<sup>1</sup>

As a consequence of the fact that tribes of pastoralists from the Eurasian steppe lands took over the region north of the Danube Delta, the local population came into direct and lasting contact with the Turkic nomads. Such contacts lasted several centuries. The Turkic communities that came to control the east-Carpathian area were heterogeneous, and consisted mainly of Pecheneg and Cuman tribes, although the Uzes, the Brodniks, and perhaps the Berendei must also be taken into consideration.

The first Pecheneg incursion into the Lower Danube region, which is known from the sources, took place in 896, when the Pechenges drove away the Hungarians from Atelkuzu / Etelkuzu. Their occupation of the Bugeac and the Bărăgan appears to have been gradual, and they were followed by the Uzes, the Cumans and the Brodniks. The great Mongol invasion of 1236–1242 interrupted the independent development of the Turkic tribes in the region north of the Black and Caspian seas. Those who were not killed or did not flee to neighboring countries

---

<sup>1</sup> *Goethes Gespräche mit Eckermann*, ed. F. Deibel (Leipzig, *sine anno*), p. 430.

had to accept the hegemony of the Golden Horde. As they were in close proximity to regions that could offer shelter, most Turkic nomads from the lowlands by the Danube departed. They were quickly replaced by others, a phenomenon clearly confirmed by archaeology.

Following the Mongol take-over in eastern Europe, there is an obvious increase in the number of burial assemblages attributed to the nomads between the Volga and the Dniester. Some have explained this increase in terms of populations movements along the river Ros, especially of the Black Caps (*черные клобуки*). Their migration must have taken place with the accord or even at the initiative of the Golden Horde rulers. A few burial assemblages in the Bugeac (Novokamenka and Trapovca), which have analogies on the Ros, may also be attributed to such movements of populations. The available archaeological evidence strongly suggests that the Turkic nomads who lived between the Danube and the Dniester in the aftermath of the Mongol invasion, were newcomers to the region.<sup>2</sup> It is even possible that some of the Cumans who fled in 1282 from Hungary to the regions controlled by the Mongols<sup>3</sup> chose to settle temporarily in the steppe lands north of the Danube.

There is therefore sufficient evidence to advance the idea that in the Bugeac, much like in the rest of Desht-i Qipchaq, a Turkic-Mongol symbiosis was on its way during the second half of the thirteenth century. In fact, artifacts of nomadic origin have been found in the fourteenth-century occupation layer at Orheiul Vechi (now Trebujeni, Orhei county, Republic of Moldova), a town founded by the rulers of the Golden Horde.<sup>4</sup> The Mongols maintained their positions of power in south-eastern Moldavia until *ca.* 1370,<sup>5</sup> and it is likely that the Turkic nomads under the rule of the Horde (i.e., without any independence of their own) remained in the Bugeac until that date. However, Robert

<sup>2</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, p. 152; A. O. Dobroliubskii, "Этнический состав кочевого населения Северо-Западного Причерноморья в золотоордынское время," in *Памятники римского и средневекового времени в Северо-Западном Причерноморье* (Kiev, 1982), pp. 30–34; *idem*, "Черные клобуки в Поднестровье и Побужье," in *Древности степного Причерноморья и Крыма*, I, eds. G. N. Toshchev, G. I. Shakhrov, G. I. Shapovalov (Zaporozh'e, 1990), pp. 153–159.

<sup>3</sup> *Chronici Hungarici composito saeculi XIV*, ed. A. Domanovszki, in *SRH*, I, pp. 471–472; *Chronicon Posoniense*, ed. A. Domanovszki, in *SRH*, II, p. 44; *CPict*, pp. 97–98 and 221; *Chronicon Hungarorum Posoniense Maius (Chronica Regni Hungariae)*, in *Analecta monumentorum Hungariae historicorum literariorum maximam inedita*, ed. F. Toldy (Pesthini, 1862), p. 56.

<sup>4</sup> E. N. Abyzova, P. P. Bârnea, "Исследования в Старом Орхее в 1979–1980 гг.," in *AIM v 1979–1980 gg* (1983), p. 55.

<sup>5</sup> Spinci, *Moldova*, pp. 326–327.

Roesler's idea of Cumans, either still pagan or converted to Islam, remaining in Moldavia until 1410<sup>6</sup> is not supported by any historical source, but has uncritically been adopted by other historians as well.<sup>7</sup>

The available evidence thus shows that the political status of the Turkic nomads in southern Moldavia changed at least between *ca.* 900 and *ca.* 1350. Regardless of such changes, the newcomers were always in direct contact to the Romanians, since they occupied the lowlands previously inhabited by them. The Turkic-Romanian contacts withered after 1241–1242, most likely because the Mongols eliminated any political independence of the Turkic nomads. An examination of the areas occupied by the two communities may illuminate the details of the problem. Most scholars dealing with the presence of the nomads in the east-Carpathian region have attempted to delineate their area of direct control along a west-east, invisible boundary. Many still believe that the nomads ruled everything all the way to the Trotuș,<sup>8</sup> Oituz and Bârlad rivers,<sup>9</sup> to Hârlău,<sup>10</sup> or even Bucovina, and that they took their herds to the Carpathian Mountains during the summer.<sup>11</sup>

However, the distribution of burial assemblages that can be associated with the presence of the Turkic populations shows a clear concentration of the nomadic population in the lowlands of southern Moldavia. When moving northwards into central and northern Moldavia, they did so only seasonally and along the major rivers in the region, the Dniester, the Prut, and their tributaries: the Răut, the Botna, the Jijia, etc. (Fig. 4). Given that among burial assemblages in northern and central Moldavia, which could be attributed to the Turkic nomads, the majority appear to be Cuman (Corjova, Hâncăuți, Holboca, Ivanovca,

<sup>6</sup> R. Roesler, *Romänische Studien. Untersuchungen zur älteren Geschichte Romäniens* (Leipzig, 1871), p. 334.

<sup>7</sup> G. Kuun, *Codex Cumanicus bibliothecae ad templum divi Marci Venetiarum* (Budapest, 1880), p. LXXXVI; J. Marquart, "Über das Volkstum der Komanen," in W. Bang and J. Marquart, "Osttürkische Dialektstudien," *Abhandlungen der Königl. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Philologisch-Historische Klasse*, NF, 13 (1914), no. 1, p. 33; S. Balić, "Der Islam im mittelalterlichen Ungarn," *Südost-Forschungen* 23 (1964), pp. 23 and 33.

<sup>8</sup> C. S. Mironescu, "Hotarul între Moldova și Muntenia," *Anuar de geografie și antropogeografie* 2 (1910–1911), p. 93.

<sup>9</sup> A. Sacerdoțeanu, "Guillaume de Rubrouck et les Roumains au milieu du XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle," *Mélanges de l'École roumaine en France* 2 (1929), p. 239.

<sup>10</sup> C. C. Giurescu, *Tîrguri sau orașe și cetăți moldovene din secolul al X-lea pînă la mijlocul secolului al XVI-lea* (Bucharest, 1967), p. 32.

<sup>11</sup> D. Rassovsky, "Половцы, III. Пределы 'Поля Половецкаго'," *SK* 10 (1938), p. 160.



Frumușica, Pârteștii de Jos, and Seliște), it is likely that their expansion into the region took place especially before the Mongol invasion.

Unlike the nomads, who preferred the lowlands and the everglades rich in grass, the settlements of the Romanian population may be found everywhere in the landscape of Moldavia, with the only exception of the mountain tops (Figs. 2–3). The latter was visited only periodically by shepherds and hunters. The old idea that Romanians were a mountain population, when not motivated by nationalistic views, may have been based on the undeniable fact that the Balkan Vlachs are indeed a mountain population. Moreover, several ancient historians regarded the Dacians as mountaineers. L. Annaeus Florus even claimed that the Dacians clung to the mountains (*Daci montibus inhaerent*).<sup>12</sup> In reality, as archaeology has meanwhile demonstrated, Florus' claim is just as exclusive as the above-mentioned opinion concerning Romanians. The densely forested highlands, especially the mountains, with a landscape, climate, and flora considerably different from those of the lowlands, were ill-suited for animal husbandry, especially for raising horses. The landscape of the highlands of the eastern Carpathians is therefore unfriendly to nomadic horsemen, who instead preferred the lowlands and the everglades.

The zone of contact between natives and nomads did not remain the same over the 350 years of Turkic presence in the steppe lands north of the Danube Delta. The Pecheneg communities established between the late ninth and the late eleventh century in the Bugeac and the Bărăgan do not seem to have been too numerous, and, as a consequence, native settlements continued to exist in that region.<sup>13</sup> Romanians began to withdraw from the low- into the forested highlands only when the number of nomads in the Lower Danube region began to increase. By the mid-eleventh century, most settlements of the Dridu culture in the lowlands had been abandoned. The majority of the population in the contact zone between low- and highlands, and even in some hilly regions of southern Moldavia, had moved out completely by the late twelfth century. Such radical changes in the demographic structure of

<sup>12</sup> *FHDR*, I, pp. 524–525 (Florus).

<sup>13</sup> I. Nestor, "Formarea poporului român," in *Istoria poporului român*, ed. A. Oțetea (Bucharest, 1970), p. 111; Diaconu, *Petchénègues*, pp. 22–24; M. Sâmpetru, "Le région du Bas-Danube au X<sup>e</sup> siècle de notre ère," *Dacia*, NS, 18 (1974), pp. 254–262; E. Corbu, *Sudul României în evul mediu timpuriu (secolele VIII–XI). Repere arheologice* (Brăila, 2006), pp. 10–45 and 122–212.

the region were caused primarily by the incursions of the nomads, who in turn looked for an expansion of their pasture lands. The migration of the Pechenegs, the Cumans and the other Turkic groups created a climate of uncertainty for farmers and their families, who preferred to move away from the lands now controlled by the nomads.

\* \* \*

The peculiar aspects of the Romanian-Turkic contacts are best illustrated by medieval place names and onomastics, as well as by old Turkic loans in Romanian. For decades, studies dedicated to this problem were based only on a number of acceptable, yet imprecise observations, a situation which Nicolae Iorga aptly defined as “new plaster over old walls” (*tencuială nouă peste ziduri vechi*).<sup>14</sup>

Ever since the nineteenth century, scholars have associated various ethnic names of Turkic origin with personal or place names in Romania, Russia, Ukraine, Hungary, Bulgaria, Serbia, Croatia, and Poland. The east-Carpathian area figures prominently among the regions with a significant number of place names of Turkic origin. Most of them appear to be of Cuman: *Coman*, *Comănel*, *Comănești*,<sup>15</sup> and the like. The *Uz* and the *Oituz*,<sup>16</sup> both tributaries of the Trotuș river, as well as the *Huzun*,<sup>17</sup> a tributary of the Prut, have been associated with Uzes. Similarly, the name of the village *Berindești* has been associated with the Berendei,<sup>18</sup> that of the villae *Borodniceni* with the Brodniks,<sup>19</sup> and

<sup>14</sup> N. Iorga, *Cugetări*, ed. B. Theodorescu (Bucharest, *sine anno*), p. 260.

<sup>15</sup> I. Gherghel, “Cercetări privitoare la istoria comanilor, II,” *Revista Tinerimea română*, SN, 3 (1899), p. 390; O. Densușianu, *Histoire de la langue roumaine. I—Les origines; II—Le seizième siècle*, ed. V. Rusu (Bucharest, 1997), p. 355; G. Poboran, “Cumanii-Comani,” *Arhivele Olteniei* 2 (1923), no. 5, p. 17; N. Drăganu, *Românii în veacurile IX—XIV pe baza toponimiei și a onomasticii* (Bucharest, 1933), p. 530; I. Iordan, *Toponimia românească* (Bucharest, 1963), pp. 269–270; H. F. Wendt, *Die türkische Elemente im Rumänischen* (Berlin, 1960), p. 172; L. Keller, “*Qıpçaq, kuman, kun*. Megjegyzések a polovecek őnelvezéséhez,” in *Nomád népvándorlások, magyar honfoglalás*, eds S. Felföldi, B. Sinkovics (Budapest, 2001), p. 143.

<sup>16</sup> A. D. Xenopol, *Une énigme historique. Les Roumains au Moyen Age* (Paris, 1885), p. 149; C. Necșulescu, “Năvălirea uzilor prin Țările Române în Imperiul bizantin,” *RIR* 9 (1939), p. 204; L. Rásonyi, *Hidak a Dunán. A régi török népek a Dunánál* (Budapest, 1981), pp. 93 and 99; M. A. Ekrem, *Din istoria turcilor dobrogeni* (Bucharest, 1994), p. 17.

<sup>17</sup> I. Conca and I. Donat, “Contribution à l’étude de la toponymie patchénégue-comane de la Plaine Roumaine du Bas-Danube,” in *Contributions onomastiques publiées à l’occasion du VIe Congrès international des sciences onomastiques à Munich du 24 au 28 août 1958*, eds I. Iordan, E. Petrovici, M. Sala (Bucharest, 1958), p. 158 with n. 1.

<sup>18</sup> L. Rásonyi Nagy, “Der Volksname Берендей,” *SK* 6 (1933), p. 219.

<sup>19</sup> M. Costăchescu, *Documente moldovenesti de la Ștefan cel Mare* (Iași, 1933), p. 96.

the place name *Picegani*, near Bârlad, with the Pechenegs.<sup>20</sup> Primarily because of a general tendency among historians to exaggerate the role of the Pechenegs in the political and military developments of the Romanian lands outside the Carpathian Mountains, numerous place names have been associated with them, which actually are not of Pecheneg origin.<sup>21</sup> Some have meanwhile raised doubts about any possible relation between the names of the two rivers, Uz and Oituz, and the Uzes.<sup>22</sup> Equally doubtful are by now the associations between *Borodniceni* and the Brodniks, *Picegani* and the Pechenegs, as well as *Huzun* and the Uzes.

By contrast, of an authentically Turkic origin is *Berindești*, the name of a deserted village on the right bank of the river Siret, near Heci (Lespezi commune, Iași county), which is first mentioned in the written sources in 1453.<sup>23</sup> Equally Turkic is the are the names of *Berindeești*, a deserted village at the mouth of Costâna (Suceava county), on the right bank of the river Suceava, first recorded in 1507;<sup>24</sup> *Berindeești* (*Berendiești*, *Berindești*), another deserted village on the Siret, near Săbăoani (Neamț county), first recorded in 1597;<sup>25</sup> *Berindiești*, a deserted village on the

<sup>20</sup> Al. Papadopol Calimach, *Notiță istorică despre Bârlad* (Bârlad, 1889), p. 15; C. C. Giurescu, "O nouă sinteză a trecutului nostru," *RIR* I (1931), p. 378.

<sup>21</sup> G. Lükö, "Havaselve és Moldva népei a X–XII. századbán," *Ethnographia népélet* 46 (1935), nos. 1–4, p. 92, also lists *Bășeni* and *Beșinești*, two place names in northern and central Moldavia, as deriving from the Hungarian word for Pecheneg, *besenyő* (*Bessi*, *Bissenii* in Latin). However, both place names have a very different, if less illustrious, origin and nothing to do with the Pechenegs.

<sup>22</sup> Al. Philippide, *Originea românilor*, I (Iași, 1923), p. 728; Drăganu, *Românii*, p. 510 with n. 1; I. Pătruț, *Nume de persoane și nume de locuri românești* (Bucharest, 1984), pp. 27–28.

<sup>23</sup> *DRH,A*, II, no. 33. See also no. 48; *Moldova în epoca feudalismului / Молдавия в эпоху феодализма*, II, eds. D. M. Dragnev, A. N. Nichitici, L. I. Svetlichnaia, P. V. Sovetov, co-ord. L. V. Cherepnin (Kishinev, 1978), no. 42.

<sup>24</sup> T. Bălan, *Documente bucovinene*, VI (Bucharest, 1942), pp. 235–236, 251–252, and 282; VII, *1464–1740*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2005), nos. 3, 9, pp. 4–7 and 23–27; *DIR,A*, v. XVI, I, pp. 63 and 327; *Din tezaurul documentar sucevean. Catalog de documente 1393–1849*, eds. V. Gh. Miron, M. Șt. Ceașu, G. Irimescu, S. Irimescu (Bucharest, 1983), nos. 103 and 1092; Al. Vitencu, *Documente moldovenești din Bucovina* (offprint from *Anuarul LIV al "Liceului Real Ortodox" din Cernăuți*) (Cernăuți, 1929), pp. 10–11; *Tezaurul toponimic al României. Moldova*, I, *Repertoriul istoric al unităților administrativ-teritoriale, 1772–1988*, 1, *Unități simple (Localități și moșii)*, A-O, ed. D. Moldovanu (Iași, 1991), p. 76; *Tezaurul toponimic al României. Moldova*, I, 4: D. Moldovanu, *Toponimia Moldovei în cartografia europeană veche (cca 1395–1789)* (Iași, 2005), p. 24.

<sup>25</sup> *Călători*, IV, p. 42 (B. Quirini); Gh. Ghibănescu, *Surete și izvoade* (Iași), II (1907), pp. 364–370; V (1908), p. 241; XXI (1929), pp. 155–163; *DRH,A*, XXII, no. 132; *DIR,A*, v. XVII, II, pp. 40–42, 154, 192–193, and 247–248; III, pp. 52 and 78; IV, pp. 2, 4, 23, 269–270, 331, and 501; V, pp. 40 and 95; *Catalogul documentelor moldovenești din Arhiva Istorică Centrală a Statului*, II, eds. M. Regleanu, I. Gheorghian, V. Vasilescu,

Vaslui, near Miclești (Vaslui county), first mentioned in 1618;<sup>26</sup> *Berindești*, an estate and subsequently (in the 1800s) a village, the territory of which is now incorporated into Gâșteni (Răcăciuni commune, Bacău county);<sup>27</sup> *Coman* (*Comana*), a place name in Bodești, near Tătăruși (Iași county), mentioned in 1398 and 1404;<sup>28</sup> *Coman* (Sănduleni commune, Bacău county), a village on the Turlui, on the left of the river Tazlău, which is mentioned in charters dated to 1409;<sup>29</sup> *Comanul*, a hill in Tescani (Berești-Tazlău commune, Bacău county), in the Tazlău valley; *Comanul*, a mountain peak next to Schitu Frumoasa (Balceni commune, Bacău county), on the Coman creek;<sup>30</sup> *Comanul*, a hamlet included in Arbore (Suceava county), first mentioned in the nineteenth century;<sup>31</sup> *Comăna* (*Comana*, *Comănești*), an estate and hamlet, attested in 1676, situated on the Jeravăț creek, near the village of Lungești (Galați county);<sup>32</sup> *Comănauți*, a deserted village on the Crasna, a left-bank tributary of the Siret, near Bătrânești (Icușești commune, Neamț county), mentioned in 1404;<sup>33</sup> *Comănești* (*Comăniel*), a village on the Rebricea, a tributary of the Bârlad, recorded in 1497, deserted in the 1700s;<sup>34</sup> *Comănești* (Cavadinești

---

and D. Duca (Bucharest, 1959), nos. 20, 63, 623, 759, and 978; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 76; *Tezaurul toponimic al României. Moldova*, I, 3, *Toponimia Moldovei în documente scrise în limbi străine (exclusiv slavona), 1332–1850*, eds. M. Ciubotaru, V. Cojocaru, G. Istrate, co-ord. Moldovanu (Iași, 2004), p. 14; L. Pilat, *Comunități tăcute. Satele din parohia Săbăoani (secolele XVII–XVIII)* (Bacău, 2002), pp. 50–60.

<sup>26</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVII, IV, pp. 232, 498; *DRH,A*, XXI, no. 331; XXIV, nos. 202, 203, 259; XXV, nos. 328, 418, 419; *Documente privitoare la istoria orașului Iași*, I, *Acte interne (1408–1660)*, eds. I. Caproșu and P. Zahariuc (Iași, 1999), no. 232, pp. 309–310.

<sup>27</sup> *Tezaurul*, I, 1 (see above, n. 24), p. 76.

<sup>28</sup> *DRH,A*, I, nos. 6, 19.

<sup>29</sup> *DRH,A*, I, no. 24; II, no. 104; *DIR,A*, v. XVI, I, pp. 502–503; Ghibănescu, *Surete*, II (see above, n. 25), pp. 326–331; *Suceava. File de istorie. Documente privitoare la istoria orașului, 1388–1918*, I, eds. V. Gh. Miron, M.-Șt. Ceaușu, I. Caproșu, G. Irimescu (Bucharest, 1989), no. 54; *Colecția de documente de la Filiala Arhivelor Statului, județul Bacău, 1400–1864. Catalog*, ed. D. Zaharia (Bucharest, 1986), nos. 1476 and 1659; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 266; C. Stoica, *Dicționarul istoric al localităților trotușene* (Onești, 1998), pp. 92–93; idem (C. Gh. Stoica), *Valea Trotușului. Enciclopedie* (Onești, 2006), pp. 169–170.

<sup>30</sup> Gh. I. Lahovari, C. I. Brătianu, Gr. G. Tocilescu, *Marele dicționar geografic al României*, II (Bucharest, 1899), pp. 572–573; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 266; Stoica, *Dicționarul istoric*, p. 93; idem, *Valea Trotușului*, p. 170.

<sup>31</sup> *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 766.

<sup>32</sup> I. Antonovici, *Documente bărlădene*, IV (Bârlad, 1924), p. 116; *Catalog de documente din Arhivele Statului Iași*, I, *Moldova, 1398–1595*, ed. V. Isac (Bucharest, 1989), no. 332; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 767.

<sup>33</sup> *DRH,A*, I, no. 18.

<sup>34</sup> *DRH,A*, III, no. 221; XVIII, nos. 65, 66; *DIR,A*, v. XVI, I, p. 414; T. G. Bulat, *Documentele mănăstirii Văratec* (Chișinău, 1939), pp. 2–3, 38–39, 120–121, 124–127, 133–134, 145–146, 153, and 177–182; *Din tezaurul arhivistic vasluian. Catalog de documente*

commune, Galați county), a village on the Horincea, first recorded in 1459;<sup>35</sup> *Comănești*, a deserted village in the former county (*ținut*) of Vaslui, recorded for the first time in 1546;<sup>36</sup> *Comănești*, a deserted village near Bolșun (Ungheni county, Republic of Moldova), on the Lăpușna, at the mouth of Lăpușnița, mentioned in a document of 1598;<sup>37</sup> *Comănești* (Botoșana commune, Suceava county), a village situated on the Hotari, a tributary of the river Soloneț, frequently mentioned beginning with 1601;<sup>38</sup> *Comănești*, a village that merged with Suharău in 1968 (Botoșani county)—on the Bașeu—first mentioned in 1613;<sup>39</sup> *Comănești* (Bacău

---

(1399–1877), eds. Gr. Găneț, C.-I. Gârneață (Bucharest, 1986), no. 151; N. Gr. Ciubotaru, “Un sat dispărut: Comănești pe Rebricea,” *AIIA* 19 (1982), pp. 539–540; M. Ciubotaru, “Toponimia bazinului hidrografic Rebricea (jud. Iași—jud. Vaslui). Oiconimele. Perspectivă istorică (II),” *AIIA* 29 (1992), pp. 431–432; idem, *Comuna Vulturești, I, Studiu de istorie socială. Onomastică* (Iași, 2003), pp. 95–100; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 268.

<sup>35</sup> *DRH.A*, II, no. 87; XXIV, no. 39; *DIR.A*, v. XVI, I, pp. 428–429; V, pp. 216–217; *Cronica liuzilor pe 1803*, ed. Th. Codrescu, in *Uricarul*, VII (Iași, 1886), p. 335; *Condica Abețedară*, in *Uricarul*, VIII (Iași, 1886), p. 62; C. N. Tomescu, “Știri catagrafice din Biserica Moldovei în 1809,” *Arhivele Basarabiei* 3 (1931), no. 1, p. 196; G. Crăciun, “Sate răzășești în Moldova la mijlocul secolului al XIX-lea,” *CS*, SN, 12–13 (1981–1982), pp. 590–591; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 268.

<sup>36</sup> *DIR.A*, v. XVI, I, p. 510; III, pp. 251, 381–382. According to N. Gr. Ciubotaru, “Un sat dispărut,” p. 540, the village is now Țigănești on Sărata rivulet, near Ferești (Vaslui county).

<sup>37</sup> *DIR.A*, v. XVI, IV, pp. 205–206; Gh. Ghibănescu, *Surete și izvoade*, VIII (Iași, 1914), pp. 233–239.

<sup>38</sup> *DIR.A*, v. XVII, I, pp. 11–12; IV, p. 9; T. Bălan, *Documente bucovinene*, II (Cernăuți, 1934), pp. 106 and 161; IV (Cernăuți, 1938), p. 213; V (Cernăuți, 1939), p. 129; VII, 1464–1740, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2005), nos. 42, 69, pp. 83–84 and 119; IX (1800–1899), ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2006), nos. 4, 49, pp. 4 and 57–58; *DRH.A*, XVIII, no. 114; XXIV, no. 115; *Catalogul documentelor moldovenești*, II (see above, n. 25), no. 163; *Din tezaurul documentar* (see above, n. 24), nos. 466, 802, 1103, and 1178; N. Grămadă, *Toponimia minoră a Bucovinei*, I, ed. I. Popescu-Sireteanu (Rădăuți, 1996), pp. 233–234; I. Dan, *Toponimie și continuitate în Moldova de Nord* (Iași, 1980), p. 70; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 267; I, 3, p. 35; I, 4, p. 57; *Domeniul mănăstirilor din Bucovina în secolele XIV–XVIII. Inventar de documente*, eds. M.-Șt. Ceaușu, M. Chelcu (Iași, 2007), pp. 206–208; nos. 67 G, 68 A-L.

<sup>39</sup> *DIR.A*, v. XVII, III, p. 135; IV, p. 352; V, p. 91; *DRH.A*, XXVI, no. 357; N. Iorga, *Studii și documente cu privire la istoria românilor*, XXI, *Documente interne* (Bucharest, 1911), pp. 189 and 192; *Din tezaurul documentar*, no. 925; T. Bălan, *Familia Onciul. Studiu și documente* (Cernăuți, 1927), pp. 87–88; idem, *Documente bucovinene, VIII (1741–1799)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2006), no. 29, p. 29; *Documente privitoare la istoria orașului Iași, V, Acte interne (1741–1755)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2001), no. 490, p. 283; *Documente privitoare la istoria Țării Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea, 1751–1774. Cărți domnești și zațise (Moldova în epoca feudalismului, IX)*, eds. L. Svetlicinâi, D. Dragnev, E. Bociarov, co-ord. D. Dragnev (Chișinău, 2004), no. 144, p. 169; *Cronica liuzilor pe 1803* (see above, n. 35), p. 300; *Condica Abețedară* (see above, n. 35), p. 58; Crăciun, “Sate răzășești,” pp. 532–533; *Tezaurul*, I, 4 (see above, n. 24), p. 57.

county), a town that developed out of a village in the Trotuș valley;<sup>40</sup> *Comăneștilor* (*Seliște*), at the mouth of the Cneaja (Chineja), near Viile (Fârțânești commune, Galați county), recorded in a document of 1448.<sup>41</sup> The name of the village *Comărești* (now Komariivtsi, Storojinet district, Cernăuți / Chernivtsi region, Ukraine), which is located on the Upper Siret river and was first recorded in the charters in 1607<sup>42</sup> is not the alteration by means rhotacism of the name *Comănești*, as initially believed, but a different name derived from the Ukrainian word for mosquito, *komar*.

Of Turkic origin are also such river names as *Berendîș* (a tributary of the Siret, near Tămășeni); *Coman* (a right-bank, mountain tributary of the Tazlău, originating from the Goșman Mountains); *Comanac* (a tributary of the Miletin); *Coman* (a tributary of the Bistrița); and *Uz* (a right-hand tributary of the Trotuș).<sup>43</sup>

---

<sup>40</sup> A. Veress, *Documente privitoare la istoria Ardealului, Moldovei și Țării Românești*, VII, *Acte și scrisori (1602–1606)* (Bucharest, 1934), no. 248, p. 287 (Kományfalva); *DRH,A*, XXIII, no. 446; XXV, no. 114; XXVI, no. 534; *Călători*, VIII, p. 89 (A. Giorgini); IX, pp. 189–190 (I. C. Weiss); *Condica lui Constantin Mavrocordat*, II, ed. C. Istrati (Iași, 1986), nos. 6–9, 11, pp. 8–11; I. Neculce, *Opere. Letopisețul Țării Moldovei și o samă de cuvinte*, ed. G. Ștrempel (Bucharest, 1982), pp. 634, 760, 781, and 790–793; idem, *Cronica copiată de Ioasaf Luca*, eds. Z. and P. Mihail (Chișinău, 1993), pp. 209, 255, 264, 267, and 268; *Recensământul populației Moldovei din anii 1772–1773 și 1774*, ed. P. G. Dmitriev (*Moldova în epoca feudalismului*, VII, 2) (Kishinev, 1975), p. 317; *Colecția de documente de la Arhivele Statului Bacău (1424–1848)*, eds. D. Zaharia, E. Chiriacescu, and C. Cărămidaru (Bucharest, 1976), no. 924; *Documente privitoare la istoria orașului Iași*, VII, *Acte interne (1771–1780)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2005), nos. 221, 266, pp. 240 and 333; *Condica Abețedară*, p. 60; Tomescu, “Știri catagrafice,” p. 179; C. Istrati, “Condica visteriei Moldovei din anul 1816,” *AIIA*, Supl. I (1979), p. 26; C. A. Stoide, I. Caproșu, *Relațiile economice ale Brașovului cu Moldova de la începutul secolului al XVIII-lea până la 1850* (Chișinău, 1992), pp. 16–18, 24, and 75; N. Stoicescu, *Repertoriul bibliografic al localităților și monumentelor medievale din Moldova* (Bucharest, 1974), p. 202; *Tezaurul*, I, 1, p. 267; I, 3, p. 35; I, 4, p. 57; Stoica, *Dicționarul istoric*, pp. 93–95; idem, *Valea Trotușului* (see above, n. 29), pp. 170–172.

<sup>41</sup> *DRH,A*, I, no. 280.

<sup>42</sup> *Catalogul documentelor moldovenesti din Direcția Arhivelor Centrale*, Supl. I, eds. M. Soveja, M. Regleanu, D. Tincușcu, M. Ciucă, G. Birceanu (Bucharest, 1975), nos. 237, 676, 679, and 788; *Din tezaurul documentar*, nos. 1453 and 1528; *DRH,A*, XXIV, no. 368; XXV, no. 227; XXVI, no. 48; Bălan, *Familia Onciul* (see above, n. 39), pp. 54, 132, 142, 146, 154, and 187; idem, *Documente bucovinene*, VII, no. 117, p. 180; VIII, nos. 21, 120, 172, pp. 19, 115–117, and 156; IX, nos. 14, 46, pp. 15 and 54; *Călători*, X, 2, p. 816 (B. Hacquet); N. Grămadă, “Vechile peceti sătești bucovinene, 1783–1900,” *Codrul Cosminului* 10 (1936–1939), p. 247; idem, *Toponimia minoră*, I, p. 235; Em. Grigorovitz, *Dicționarul geografic al Bucovinei* (Bucharest, 1908), pp. 70–71.

<sup>43</sup> Lahovari, Brătianu, Tocilescu, *Marele dicționar* (see above, n. 30), I (1898), p. 376; II (1899), pp. 572 and 574.

A great number of fifteenth-seventeenth-century village and estate names in Wallachia (Țara Românească, Muntenia) derive from the ethnic names Berendei and Cumans: *Berindei* (*Berindeni*) (Olt county), *Berindeiasca* (near Bucharest), *Berindești* (*Berendești*, *Berindeasca*, *Berindiești*) (Argeș county), *Berindești* (*Berendești*, *Berendeasa*) (Buzău county), *Comana* (Giurgiu county), *Comanca* (the former Romanati district, now within the Olt county), *Comanca* (Vâlcea county), *Comani* (Dolj county), *Comani* (Mehedinți county), *Comani* (*Comanca*) (Olt county), *Comăneasa* (Olt county), *Comănești* (Brăila county), *Comănești* (Gorj county), *Comănești* (the former Vlașca district), *Comănești* (Mehedinți county), and *Comănița* (*Comăniți*) (Olt county).<sup>44</sup> Some of those villages were deserted in the early modern period, when other names of the same category were recorded and survived as such.<sup>45</sup>

There are place names in the Romanian Plain which recall the ethnic name of the Pechenegs, but such names appear significantly later in written documents: the *Peceneaga* forest (Brăila county), the *Picineagul* mountain (the former Muscel district), the *Peceneaga* village (Teleorman county).<sup>46</sup> etc. In all probability, the name of the river *Peceneaga* (a tributary of the Slănic, which in turn flows into the Buzău river) is older. The first written record of the creek *Peceneaga* in north-eastern Wallachia appears to be from 1632.<sup>47</sup> Place and river names such as these have matches across the Danube, in Dobruđja: *Peceneaga* (Tulcea county) and *Pecineaga* (Constanța county). A Russian map of 1835 indicates two creeks near Peceneaga in Tulcea county: *P. стар. печеняга* (*Peceneaga Veche*) and *P. нов. печеняга* (*Peceneaga Nouă*).<sup>48</sup>

<sup>44</sup> *DRH, B*, I–VIII, XI, XXI–XXV, XXXI–XXXVII, *passim*; *DIR, B*, v. XIII–XVI, *Indicele numelor de locuri*, eds. I. Donat, S. Caracaș, Gh. Cioran, N. Ghinea, M. Kandel, Gr. Popescu, and Th. Rădulescu (Bucharest, 1956), pp. 11 and 36; *DIR, B*, v. XVII (1601–1625), *Indicele numelor de locuri*, eds. I. Donat, S. Caracaș, N. Ghinea, and M. Kandel (Bucharest, 1960), pp. 24–25 and 44; *Catalogul documentelor Țării Românești, 1369–1600. Secția istorică de la Arhivele Statului din București*, ed. I.-R. Mircea (Bucharest, 1947); *Catalogul documentelor Țării Românești din Arhivele Statului*, II, 1601–1620, eds. M. Soveja, D. Duca-Tinculescu, R. Dragomir (Bucharest, 1974); III, 1621–1632, eds. D. Duca-Tinculescu, M.-D. Ciucă (Bucharest, 1978); IV, 1633–1639 (Bucharest, 1981); V, 1640–1644 (Bucharest, 1985), eds. M.-D. Ciucă, D. Duca-Tinculescu, S. Vătafu-Găitan; VI, 1645–1649, eds. M.-D. Ciucă, S. Vătafu-Găitan (Bucharest, 1993), *passim*.

<sup>45</sup> Diaconu, *Cumans*, p. 26.

<sup>46</sup> Densusianu, *Histoire de la langue roumaine* (see above, n. 15), p. 351; Șt. Ștefănescu, *Istoria medie a României*, I, *Principatele Române. Originea și afirmarea lor* (Bucharest, 1991), p. 56.

<sup>47</sup> *DRH, B*, XXIII, no. 314.

<sup>48</sup> C. C. Giurescu, *Știri despre populația românească a Dobrogei în hărți medievale și moderne* [Constanța, *sine anno*], p. 19.

The name of the Cumans also appears in place names in the eastern and central Balkans, as well as in Dobruđja: *Comana* (Constanța county); *Kumanič*, *Kumanite* (*Kumaniiti*), *Kumanitza*, *Kumantzi*, *Kumaritza*, *Kumanova Čuka*, *Kumanovči*, etc. (all in Bulgaria); *Koman* / *Kuman*, *Kumanić*, *Kumaničevo*, *Kumanich*, *Kumanovo* (in Macedonia).<sup>49</sup> In addition, in northern Albania, on the Drin, there is a village named *Komani* / *Koman*, and, as early as the first half of the fourteenth century, near the city of Priština (Kosovo), two villages with quasi-identical names, *Komanovo* and *Kumanovo*, were recorded in documents.<sup>50</sup> Similar names may be found in east-Slavic territories: *Koman*, *Komanov* and *Komańcza* in Galicia; *Komanevo* in the regions Vitebsk and Vologda; *Komanitza* and *Komanov* in the vicinity of Minsk; *Komanowa* near Tiraspol; *Kuman'* in the Chernihiv (Chernigov) region; *Kumanishnaia* in the Tver region; *Kumanovka* near Kiev; *Kumanov*, *Kumanovskaia Iuridika* (*Kumanóvoka*) and *Kumanovtzy* (*Kumanovce*) in Podolia. There is also a village called *Kumoniū* (*Kumantzy*, *Kumancie*) in the vicinity of Vilnius (Lithuania), and another one, *Komanica* (*Komanitza*), in the Mikhalovce region of Slovakia.<sup>51</sup>

By contrast with Moldavia and Wallachia, only a few place names derived from the name of the Cumans are known from Transylvania. On the left bank of the Olt river, east of Făgăraș, two villages, *Comana de Jos* (*Kiemană*, *Komanfalva*, *Kománya*, *Alsó Komana*) and *Comana de Sus* (*Kieman*, *Felső Komana*), appear frequently in written sources of the fifteenth to seventeenth century.<sup>52</sup> They still exist today. The village *Comandău* (Covasna county), which probably dates from the earlier modern period,

<sup>49</sup> St. Mladenov, "Печенежи и узи-кумани въ българската история," *Българска историческа библиотека*, 4 (1931), no. 1, p. 130; Diaconu, *Coutans*, pp. 26–27; V. Stoianov, *Bulgaro-Turcica*, 3–4, *История на изучаването на Codex Cumanicus*. Неславянска, кумано-печенежка антропонимика в българските земи през XV век (Sofia, 2000), pp. 188–189.

<sup>50</sup> Stoianov, *Bulgaro-Turcica*, 3–4, *История*, p. 188.

<sup>51</sup> *Russisches Geographisches Namenbuch*, begründet von Max Vasmer, IV, co-ord. H. Bräuer, eds. I. Coper, I. Doerfer, J. Prinz, G. V. Schulz, and R. Siegmann (Wiesbaden, 1969), pp. 337 and 675.

<sup>52</sup> *Urkundenbuch zur Geschichte der Deutschen in Siebenbürgen*, VI, ed. G. Gündisch, in collab. with H. Gündisch, G. Nussbächer, K. G. Gündisch (Bucharest, 1981), no. 3766, p. 433; Veress, *Documente* (see above, n. 40), III, *Acte și scrisori (1585–1592)* (Bucharest, 1931), no. 101, p. 162; V (1596–1599) (Bucharest, 1932), no. 176, p. 259; VI (1600–1601) (Bucharest, 1933), no. 358, pp. 377–378; *Urbariile Țării Făgărașului*, I, 1601–1650, eds. D. Prodan, L. Ursuțiu and M. Ursuțiu (Bucharest, 1970), pp. 109, 110, 121, 122, 195, 256, 267, 276, etc.; II, 1651–1680, ed. D. Prodan (Bucharest, 1976), pp. 88, 89, 191, 192, 284, 286, 287, etc.; A. Lukács, "Un document inedit din 1582 privind boierii români din Țara Făgărașului," in *Timpul Istoriei*, I, *Memorie și patrimoniu / Le temps de l'Histoire*, I, *Memoire et patrimoine. In honorem emeritae Ligiae Bărzu*, eds. M. Ciho, V. Nistor,



is located farther to the east. The name of *Comănești* (Brașov county) is even newer, as it replaced in the twentieth the old name, Homorod-Chemenfalău.<sup>53</sup> In Crișana, to the west from the Apuseni Mountains, the village *Comănești* (Arad county) appears in documents in the 1400s as *Komanyfalva*.<sup>54</sup> A village with the name of *Comanfalva*<sup>55</sup> and another called *Kunfalva*<sup>56</sup> were also mentioned in the fourteenth century as being in Banat, where there were also two creeks called *Komanpathak*.<sup>57</sup>

All those examples show that place names recalling the name of the Cumans appear within a vast area inhabited by Romanians, as well as by other neighboring nations. It is quite obvious that such place names are not restricted to the area previously inhabited by Cumans, nor do they appear exclusively within the regions they often raided, but instead appear in parts of the Europe to which they never went.

On the basis of names of rivers ending in *-ui* (meaning *river* or *valley*) which appear in great numbers in Siberia and central Asia, Gustav Weigand first put forward the idea that the names of the left-bank tributaries of the Danube ending in *-ui* (*Bahlui, Covurlui, Derehlui / Derlui, Suhului, Teshui, Turlui, Urlui, Vaslui, Văsu*) are of Turkic origin.<sup>58</sup> The theory of the German philologist was embraced by almost everyone,<sup>59</sup>

---

and D. Zaharia (Bucharest, 1997), pp. 246–251; C. Suciū, *Dicționar istoric al localităților din Transilvania*, I (Bucharest, 1966), pp. 162–163.

<sup>53</sup> Suciū, *Dicționar*, I, p. 163.

<sup>54</sup> D. Csánki, *Magyarország történelmi földrajza a Hunyadiak korában*, I (Budapest, 1890), p. 736.

<sup>55</sup> *Oklevelek Temesvármegye és Temesvárváros történetéhez*, I, 1183–1430, ed. F. Pesty (*Temesvármegye és Temesvárváros története*, ed. T. Ortway, IV) (Pozsony, 1896), no. 67, p. 109; no. 68, p. 110; *DRH,C*, XIII, no. 403. See also S. Oța, “Domenii ale pecenegilor și cumanilor în Banatul istoric,” *Studii de istorie a Banatului* 26–27 (2002–2003), p. 232.

<sup>56</sup> D. Teicu, *Banatul montan în evul mediu* (Timișoara, 1998), p. 343.

<sup>57</sup> *DRH,C*, XIII, no. 376. See also Oța, “Domenii ale pecenegilor și cumanilor,” p. 235; idem, “Populații nomade de stepă din Banat (secolele XI–XIV), I. Pecenegii și cumani,” in *Prinos lui Petre Diaconu la 80 de ani*, eds. I. Căndea, V. Sirbu, M. Neagu (Brăila, 2004), pp. 501, 503, 508, 519, 520.

<sup>58</sup> G. Weigand, “Ursprung der südkarpatischen Flussnamen in Rumänien,” 26–29. *Jahresbericht des Institut für rumänische Sprache zu Leipzig* (1921), pp. 96–98.

<sup>59</sup> Al. Philippide, *Originea românilor*, II (Iași, 1927), pp. 372–373 and 375; T. Hotnog, *Câteva nume toponime românești de origine cumană* (offprint from *Anuarul Liceului Național din Iași*, 1932–1933), pp. 1–10; Iorga, *Histoire*, III, p. 42; idem, “Revelații toponimice pentru istoria neștiută a românilor, I, Teleormanul,” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 23 (1940–1941), p. 334; P. P. Panaitescu, *Interpretări românești* (Bucharest, 1947), p. 62; D. Krandjalov, “Les noms Cahul et Cogalnic ne dérivent pas d’*Ὀγγλος*,” *Byzantinoslavica* 9 (1947), no. 1, pp. 198–201; I. Iordan, “Sprachgeographisches aus dem Gebiete der rumänischen Toponomastik,” in *Contributions onomastiques* (see above, n. 17), pp. 28–29; I. Conea, “Toponimia. Aspectele ei geografice,” in *Monografia geografică a Republicii Populare Române*, I, *Geografia fizică*, ed. I. P. Gherasimov et al. (Bucharest, 1960), p. 89; Giurescu,

after an initial hesitancy. Ion Conea and Ion Donat have studied river names in the Romanian Plain with remarkable results. They identified 47 names of rivers ending in *-ui* and *-lui*, some of them repeated for different rivers: *Călmățui* for eight different rivers, *Teșlui* for four, *Băldălui* and *Urlui* for three.<sup>60</sup> Unlike the distribution of nomadic burial assemblages, which do not occur to the west from the Olt river, river names of Turkic origin appear in great numbers in southern Oltenia, where there is even a “Ford of the Cumans”—*Vadul Cumanilor* (*Коуманскыи Брод*), recorded in documents in 1385 and in subsequent years.<sup>61</sup> Judging from such evidence, as well as from historical sources pertaining to Turkic incursions to the west from the Romanian Plain, the possibility of nomadic burial assemblages being discovered on the right bank of the Olt River must not be excluded.

In the Carpathian-Dniester region, names ending *-ui* commonly apply to rivulets and creeks: the *Bahlui*, a tributary of the Jijia; three creeks called *Călmățui*, all within the Călmățui Plain, in the former Ismail county, and in the region to the east from the Middle Prut Plain, north of Leova; the *Copcu*, in the former Ismail county; the river and the lake *Covurlui*, in the Covurlui Plain; the lake *Cuhurlui* (also called *Covurlui* or *Cugurlui*), at the southern end of Lake Ialpuș; the *Der(eh)lui*, a tributary of the Prut, at Ostrița; the *Perlui*, a tributary of the Ciuluc; the *Suhu(r)lui*, with two tributaries, *Suhurluiul cu Apă* and *Suhurluiul Sec*, in the Covurlui Plain; the *Turlui*, a tributary of the Tazlău; and the *Vashui*, a tributary of the Bârlad, etc.

Some of those names also apply to villages established nearby: *Bahlui* (Cotnari commune, Iași county); *Călmățui* (Grivița commune, Galați county); *Călmățui* (Hâncești district); *Călmățui*, or *Copcu* (a deserted village situated in the former Ismail county); *Turlui* (a deserted village in the former Bacău county); *Vashui* (Vaslui county), and many others.<sup>62</sup>

---

*Tîrguri* (see above, n. 10), pp. 31–32; C. C. Giurescu, D. C. Giurescu, *Istoria românilor*, I (Bucharest, 1975), p. 198; A. Eremia, *Nume de localități. Studiu de toponimie moldovenească* (Chișinău, 1970), pp. 41–42; Al. Graur, *Nume de locuri* (Bucharest, 1972), p. 103; I. Donat, “The Romanians south of the Carpathians and the migratory peoples in the tenth–thirteenth centuries,” in *Relations*, pp. 292–293; Diaconu, *Coumans*, pp. 31–33; G. Ivănescu, *Istoria limbii române* (Iași, 1980), p. 437.

<sup>60</sup> Conea and Donat, “Contribution” (see above, n. 17), pp. 143–152.

<sup>61</sup> *DRH, B*, I, nos. 7, 8, 14, 16, 22, 53, etc.

<sup>62</sup> I. Bogdan, *Documentele lui Ștefan cel Mare*, I, II (Bucharest, 1913); M. Costăchescu, *Documentele moldovenești înainte de Ștefan cel Mare* (Iași), I (1931); II (1932); idem, *Documente moldovenești de la Ștefan cel Mare* (Iași, 1933); idem, *Documentele moldovenești de la Bogdan voevod (1504–1517)* (Bucharest, 1940); idem, *Documentele moldovenești de la Ștefăniță voevod*

It is interesting to note that at Valea Zăbalei, a village in the Vrancea region, the term *bahlui* was recorded with the meaning of “a deep place in the water”. It is possible that the river name *Bahlui* was formed on the basis of metathesis.<sup>63</sup> There are also other place names ending in *-ui*: *Acui*, a village in the Cahul county; *Acui*, a lost village near Căinari, in the former Tighina county; *Bahlui*, a hill near Belcești (Iași county); *Bului*, a hill near Bășăști (Pârjol commune, Bacău county); *Ciuhui*, a hill near Măstăcani (Galați county); *Cupecui*, a village in the former Lăpușna county, etc.

Besides the names mentioned above, several philologists and historians have assigned an old Turkic origin to other place names in the Carpathian-Dniester region: *Tocsăbeni*,<sup>64</sup> *Bârlad*, *Tecuci*, *Galați*, *Fălciu*, *Berheci*, *Pereschiv*, *Corhană*,<sup>65</sup> *Bugeac*, *Copciac*, *Tabac*, *Borceac*, *Tuzla*, *Atachi*, *Chișlia* (*Mare* and *Mică*), *Cunduc*, *Iagorlăc*, *Tighina*, *Hotin*, *Chișinău*,<sup>66</sup> *Dere-neu*, *Sucmezeu*, *Urmezeu*, *Tazlău*, *Tarcău*, *Sinacău*, *Orhei*, *Ordășei*, *Vînderei*, *Ichel*, *Căinari*, *Ciucur*, *Tuzora*, *Tonguz(eni)*, *Cuhurești*, *Alcedar*, *Ciuluc*, *Teban*, *Țăpurdeii*, *Sobari*,<sup>67</sup> *Delea*, *Cula*, *Turla* (= Dniester), *Caltabuga*, *Cahul*, *Sagala*,

---

(1517–1527) (Iași, 1943); *DRH,A*, I–III, VI, XVIII, XIX, XXI–XXVII; *DIR,A*, v. XVI, I–IV; v. XVII, I–V; *Documente din Basarabia*, eds. V. Puiu, C. Tomescu, Șt. Berchet, Șt. Ciobanu (Chișinău, 1928); *Moldova în epoca feudalismului / Молдавия в эпоху феодализма*, I—eds. P. G. Dmitriev, D. M. Dragnev, E. M. Russev, P. V. Sovetov, red. L. V. Cherepnin (Kishinev, 1961); II—eds. D. M. Dragnev, A. N. Nichitici, L. I. Svetlichnaia, P. V. Sovetov, red. L. V. Cherepnin (Kishinev, 1978); III—eds. D. M. Dragnev, A. N. Nichitici, L. I. Svetlichnaia, P. V. Sovetov, red. V. P. Pashuto (Kishinev, 1982); IV (Kishinev, 1986); V (Kishinev, 1987); VI (Chișinău, 1992)—eds. D. M. Dragnev, A. N. Nichitici, L. I. Svetlichnaia, P. V. Sovetov, red. P. V. Sovetov; VIII—gen. ed. D. Dragnev, eds. L. Svetlicini, D. Dragnev, E. Bociarov (Chișinău, 1998); *Din tezaurul documentar* (see above, n. 24); P. Mihail, *Documente și zapise moldovenesti de la Constantinopol (1607–1806)* (Iași, 1948); Lahovari, Brătianu, Tocilescu, *Marele dicționar* (see above, n. 30), I (1898); II (1988); III (1900); IV (1901); V (1902); Z. Arbore, *Dicționarul geografic al Basarabiei* (Bucharest, 1904); A. V. Boldur, *Istoria Basarabiei. Contribuții la studiul istoriei românilor*, I (Chișinău, 1937), pp. 89–90; Eremia, *Nume de localități*, pp. 41–43; V. Nicu, *Localitățile Moldovei în documente și cărți vechi. Îndreptar bibliografic*, I, II (Chișinău, 1991); *passim*.

<sup>63</sup> Al. Obreja, “Asupra hidronimelor Bahlui și Jijia,” *ASUI*, Sect. II, c. *Geografie* 18 (1972), pp. 41–42.

<sup>64</sup> N. Iorga, “Imperiul cumanilor și domnia lui Băsarabă. Un capitol din colaborația româno-barbară în evul mediu,” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 8 (1927–28), p. 99 (reprint in idem, *Studii asupra evului mediu românesc*, ed. Ș. Papacostea (Bucharest, 1984), pp. 67–71); I. Chirtoagă, *Din istoria Moldovei de Sud-Est până în anii '30 ai sec. al XIX-lea* (Chișinău, 1999), p. 44.

<sup>65</sup> Philippide, *Originea*, II (see above, n. 59), pp. 362–376.

<sup>66</sup> Boldur, *Istoria Basarabiei*, pp. 86–95.

<sup>67</sup> N. Raevskii, “Toponime de origine iranică și turcică,” *Limba și literatura moldovenească*, Chișinău, 7 (1964), no. 1, pp. 59–60.

*Ialpuș*,<sup>68</sup> *Bâc*,<sup>69</sup> *Jijia*,<sup>70</sup> *Delacău*, and *Tiligul*.<sup>71</sup> According to Ion V. Dron, place names such as *Alcedar*, *Tazlău*, *Tighina*, *Tonguz(eni)*, *Tuzora*, and river names such as *Caltabuga*, *Căinari*, *Ciuluc*, *Cogîlnic* and *Cula* in Bessarabia, all of which appear in sources between the fifteenth and the seventh century, must have appeared only after the great Mongol invasion of 1241–1242.<sup>72</sup> The same author believes that the names *Ciuhur*, *Hagidar*, and *Kunduk*, which appear in Bessarabia, are also Old Turkic.<sup>73</sup> But his arguments are not very convincing when attempting to derive from the language of the Geto-Dacians *Turla*,<sup>74</sup> the Turkic name for the river Dniester (Rom. *Nîstru*), which appears as early as the tenth century in the work of Constantine Porphyrogenitus and was then recorded in Ottoman sources throughout the Late Middle Ages and the early modern period.

It is worth mentioning that for many of the above-mentioned place (e.g., *Alcedar*, *Atachi*, *Chișinău*, *Orhei*, *Hotin*, *Tighina*, *Țăpurdei*, or *Vînderei*) and river names (*Bârlad*, *Jijia*, *Tarcău*, *Tazlău*) the connection with the Pechenegs, the Cumans, the Tatars, or the Ottoman Turks remains uncertain. For example, the name *Tocsăbeni* derives from a personal name, *Tocsăbă* (*Toxabă*), just as the name of the village *Talabă* (in the former Fălciu county) is in fact a personal name. For all villages with names thought to be of Turkic origin, one needs to verify whether any settlement existed there at the time the Pechenegs and the Cumans ruled over the steppe lands. Judging from the available evidence, it appears that no traces of settlements dated to the beginning of the second millennium have been found in any of the localities with names of supposedly Turkic origin. It is therefore possible that such names are in fact no older than the Tatar occupation of the Bugeac.

<sup>68</sup> Eremia, *Nume de localități* (see above, n. 59), pp. 43–44.

<sup>69</sup> Idem, *Географические названия рассказывают*, 2nd ed. (Kishinev, 1990), pp. 120–121.

<sup>70</sup> M. Lozbă, “Sensul și originea unor vechi toponime dacoromâne,” *AȘUI*, SN, Sect. III, e. *Linguistică* 24 (1977), pp. 101–102. According to another opinion both *Jijia* and *Bârlad* are of Slavic origin. See D. Moldovanu, “Hidronime românești de origine slavă,” *Anuar de lingvistică și istorie literară*, Iași, 31 (1986–1987), A, pp. 291–301 and 308–312.

<sup>71</sup> Chirtoagă, *Din istoria Moldovei* (see above, n. 64), pp. 44–45.

<sup>72</sup> I. V. Dron, *Гагаузские географические названия (Территория Пруто-Днестровского междуречья)* (Kishinev, 1992), p. 7.

<sup>73</sup> Idem, “Hidronimie românească (Basarabia și Transnistria),” *Tyragetia* 9 (1999), pp. 137–138, 142, and 144.

<sup>74</sup> Idem, “Turla—denumire străveche daco-getică a Nistrului,” *Tyragetia* 6–7 (1998), pp. 111–113; idem, “Hidronimie românească,” pp. 142–144.

As the Turkic tribes were nomadic, their contribution to the place names of region in which they lived must have been limited. However, the same is not true about river names. In the steppe lands of both Eurasia steppes and the region outside the Carpathian Mountains there are many river names of Turkic origin. Such rivers may have well had Romanian names as well. In certain cases, no native names existed, perhaps because such bodies of water were not sufficiently important to the locals to employ more than a generic name, such as *pârâu* (creek), *râu* (river), *vale* (valley) and *gârlă* (brook), as it is still the case today. By contrast, river names, even of small creeks and rivulets, were very important for groups involved in a seasonal migration within a certain area, for they served for orientation within the steppe lands otherwise devoid of any permanent markers in the landscape. Sorting out place names clearly associated with Turkic nomads leads to some important conclusions. River and place names ending in *-ui* cluster in southern Moldavia, the region in which the nomads moved along river valleys from the grazing fields next to the sea to the rich pasture land in the north. This is also the region with the largest number of burial assemblages, which can be safely attributed to the Turkic nomads.<sup>75</sup> The same situation may be noted in the Romanian Plain, where most river names ending in *-ui* (*-lui*) appear in the lowlands. Moreover, most place names derived from Turkic appellatives are to be found in southern Moldavia.

The name of the village Berindeești, near Săbăoani (Neamț county), was first recorded in 1597. Archaeological excavations in the area unearthed houses dated to the fourteenth and fifteenth century.<sup>76</sup> No earlier occupation phase has been identified, which could be dated to the centuries during which the Turkic nomads ruled the steppe lands. Similarly, field surveys in Comănești (Bacău county)<sup>77</sup> and Comănești (Galați county)<sup>78</sup> produced diagnostic material from several historical periods, but not dated between the tenth and the thirteenth century.

<sup>75</sup> V. Spinci, "Relations of the local population of Moldavia with the nomad Turanian tribes in the 10th–13th centuries," in *Relations*, pp. 274–275.

<sup>76</sup> D. Hordilă, "Traian, jud. Neamț," in *Cronica cercetărilor arheologice. Campania 1997. A XXXII-a Sesiune națională de rapoarte arheologice, Călărași, 20–24 mai 1998* [Bucharest, 1998], pp. 81–82; eadem, "Câteva considerații de ordin arheologic privind populația catolică din zona Romanului în secolele XIV–XIX," *Buletin istoric* (Episcopia Romano-Catolică Iași) 1 (2000), pp. 70–74.

<sup>77</sup> Zaharia etc., *Așezări*, p. 362; Stoica, *Valea Troțușului* (see above, n. 29), p. 170.

<sup>78</sup> Zaharia etc., *Așezări*, p. 362; Stoica, *Valea Troțușului*, p. 170.

The conclusion seems inescapable: all those villages were in fact established at a much later time, without any participation of the Turkic tribes, which, at that particular time, must have long disappeared from the region.

At a close examination, place and river names derived from the names of the Cumans, the Berindei and the Uzes appear primarily in the highlands. Two thirds of them in fact appear in the region between the Carpathians and the Siret, where no traces of the presence of Turkic nomads have so far been found. Moreover, the number of such place names decreases as one moves from the west to the east. In Wallachia, such place names appear both in high- and lowlands. The distribution of river and place names obviously has no relationship to the territories once ruled by the nomads, from whose names they are supposedly derived. Similarly, place names derived from the name of the Pechenegs appear in parts of Ukraine and Russia, where no Turkic tribes have ever lived.<sup>79</sup>

In reality, most place names such as *Comănești* or *Berindeești* do not derive directly from ethnic names, but from personal names such as *Coman* and *Berindei*, which were quite common in the Romanian lands both in the Middle Ages and later. A few examples can clarify the point. The village *Coman* on the Turlui, which is first attested under Alexander the Good (Alexandru cel Bun) (prince of Moldavia between 1400–1432) appears as *Selișteea lui Coman*<sup>80</sup> in the subsequent decades, a clear indication that at the origin of the village name is in fact the personal name of the founder. *Comănești* on the Bașeu river also derives from a personal name, Coman, the son of Galiș, to whom prince Alexander the Good granted land on the Bașeu in 1412 to set up a village.<sup>81</sup> *Comănești* on the Rebricea derives from Comănel (Comănia), a personal name recorded in 1497<sup>82</sup> and 1546,<sup>83</sup> while the name of the estate and hamlet *Comana*, located on the Jeravăț, recalls that of a certain Coman, who is mentioned in a document of 1495.<sup>84</sup>

<sup>79</sup> D. Rassovsky, "Печенеги, торки и берендеи на Руси и въ Угрии," *СК 6* (1933), pp. 50–63; A. M. Shcherbak, "Знаки на керамике и кирпичах из Саркела-Велой Вежи," *МЛ*, 75 (Moscow-Leningrad, 1959), p. 375.

<sup>80</sup> *DRH, A*, II, no. 104; VI, no. 398; *DIR, A*, v. XVI, I, p. 502.

<sup>81</sup> *DRH, A*, I, no. 33.

<sup>82</sup> *DRH, A*, III, no. 221.

<sup>83</sup> *DIR, A*, v. XVI, I, p. 414.

<sup>84</sup> *DRH, A*, III, no. 165.

Taking into consideration the fact that most place names said to be of Turkic origin end in *-ești*, the conclusion can be that the people who named all those villages (*Namengeber*) were Romanians. In at least a number of cases, the names appear to represent Transylvanian influences, whereas others may have come from personal names of Cuman origin designating members of native communities who were not ethnic Cumans. The influence of the Turkic nomads on the Romanian vocabulary thus appears as much more indirect than the initial analysis of place names would have predicted.

\* \* \*

Many medieval and modern Romanian names have been regarded by various historians as of Turkic origin: *Aslan, Azgîr, Balaban, Balyk, Bilik, Bolsun, Borçul, Buçuk, Buga / Buka, Buldur, Buzdugan, Çakan, Çomak, Çolpan, Çortan, Çura, Dorman, Kâraça, Kaltabuka, Kazan, Korman, Kuman / Koman, Paiandur, Şuşman, Tâmrâtaş, Tivan, Toksoba, Ulan, Urdobaş, Utmeş* (László Rásonyi-Nagy),<sup>85</sup> *Bäsärabă, Odobă, Talabă, Tâncabă, Toxabă* (Nicolae Iorga),<sup>86</sup> *Aga, Basarab, Berindei, Coman, Iarcân, Talabă, Toxabă, Turcul* (Petre P. Panaitescu),<sup>87</sup> *Asan, Aslan, Baba, Balaban, Basarab, Baş, Buga, Bulat, Borcea, Borza, Buzdugan, Cazan, Colgeag, Dârman, Duşman, Olan, Posoba, Selte, Taban, Togan* (N. A. Constantinescu),<sup>88</sup> *Udobă, Vuiuşa, Hardaluşa, Scorpan, Şerban* (Constantin Cihodaru),<sup>89</sup> *Burciul / Borcea, Itul, Cioban, Carabaş, Cantemir* (Maria Lăzărescu-Zobian),<sup>90</sup> *Agăş, Borcea, Burluc, Buzgan, Chertan, Coteanu, Toacxem, Zehan* (Petre Diaconu).<sup>91</sup> Unfortunately, it is not clear what specific criteria have been used for the selection of those, and no other personal names as of Turkic origin. With no

<sup>85</sup> L. Rásonyi-Nagy, "Valacho-turcica," in *Aus den Forschungsarbeiten der Mitglieder des Ungarischen Instituts und des Collegium Hungaricum in Berlin dem Andenken Robert Graggers gewidmet* (Berlin–Leipzig, 1927), pp. 68–96.

<sup>86</sup> N. Iorga, *La place des Roumains dans l'histoire universelle*, I (Bucharest, 1935), p. 167.

<sup>87</sup> Panaitescu, *Interpretări* (see above, n. 59), p. 61.

<sup>88</sup> N. A. Constantinescu, *Dicţionar onomastic românesc* (Bucharest, 1963), p. XLVI.

<sup>89</sup> C. Cihodaru, "Consideraţii în legătură cu populaţia Moldovei din perioada premergătoare invaziei tătarilor (1241)," *Studii şi cercetări ştiinţifice, Istorie*, Iaşi, 14 (1963), no. 2, p. 244.

<sup>90</sup> M. Lăzărescu-Zobian, "Cumania as the name of thirteenth-century Moldavia and eastern Wallachia: some aspects of Kipchak-Rumanian relations," in *Turks, Hungarians and Kipchaks. A Festschrift in Honor of Tibor Halasi-Kun* (= *Journal of Turkish Studies* 8, 1984), pp. 268–269.

<sup>91</sup> P. Diaconu, "Despre unele antroponime de origine cumană," *Analele Brăilei*, SN, 2 (1996), no. 2, pp. 569–571.

specialists in Turkology expressing any opinion about those lists, the origin of the names therein remains uncertain. Conversely, attempts to eliminate from the list of names of an undoubtedly Turkic origin such names as *Berindei* are simply wrong.<sup>92</sup> Names ending in *-aba*, with the meaning of “ancestor, grandfather, grandmother, father, mother, paternal uncle, paternal aunt, elder brother, elder sister, or midwife” in modern Turkic languages,<sup>93</sup> have a good chance to be Pecheneg or Cuman, much like those derived from ethnic names.

This is certainly the case for *Coman* and *Berindei*, which appear with some consistency in Moldavian charters of the fourteenth and fifteenth century. A *stolnic* (seneschal) called *Berindei* (*Berendei*) appears several times as an important dignitary under Prince Iliăș, between 1435 and 1442.<sup>94</sup> Among Stephen the Great’s rivals during the first years of his reign (1457–1504), there was a certain *Berendey*,<sup>95</sup> whom some historians have wrongly identified as the previous voivode named Petru Aron.<sup>96</sup> Others have rightly pointed out that Berendey and Petru Aron must have been two different persons.<sup>97</sup> The name *Berindei* also appears in Wallachia, as early as 1389. The first to be recorded was the name

<sup>92</sup> Pătruț, *Nume de persoane* (see above, n. 22), pp. 16–18.

<sup>93</sup> G. Clauson, *En Etymological Dictionary of Pre-Thirteenth-Century Turkish* (Oxford, 1972), p. 5. See also O. Densusianu, “Originea Basarabilor,” *Grai și suflet* 4 (1929), no. 1, p. 148; Iorga, *La place des Roumains* (see above, n. 86), I, p. 167.

<sup>94</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, 2, p. 860 ff.; *DRH,A*, I, nos. 142–145, 152, 156, 159, 161–164, 168, 173, etc.; *Moldova în epoca feudalismului / Молдавия в эпоху феодализма*, II (see above, n. 23), nos. 19, 24–26.

<sup>95</sup> *Codicis epistolaris saeculi decimi quinti*, II, ed. J. Szujski (*Monumenta mediæ ævi historica res gestas Poloniae illustrantia*, II) (Cracow, 1876), p. 241; Joannis Dlugossii seu Longini *Historiae Polonicae libri XII*, V, ed. A. Przezdziecki, in idem, *Opera omnia*, XIV (Cracow, 1878), p. 495; *Rocznik Chotelskiego*, ed. A. Bielowski, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, III (Lwów, 1878), p. 214; Axinte Uricariul, *Cronica paralelă a Țării Românești și a Moldovei*, I, ed. G. Ștrempel (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 57–58; *Cronica Moldovei de la Cracovia. Secolul XIII–începutul secolului XVII. Textul înedit al unui autor polon anonim*, ed. C. Rezachevici (Bucharest, 2006), pp. 106 and 141.

<sup>96</sup> V. Pârvan, “Relațiile lui Ștefan cel Mare cu Ungaria,” in idem, *Studii de istorie medievală și modernă*, ed. L. Nastasă (Bucharest, 1990), pp. 132 with n. 18, 143 with n. 103, and 149; I. Minca, *Informațiile românești ale cronicii lui Ian Dlugosz* (Iași, 1926), pp. 46–47; M. Costăchescu, *Arderea Țîrgului Floci și a Ialomîței în 1470* (Iași, 1935), pp. 16–18 with n. 2.

<sup>97</sup> I. Ursu, *Ștefan cel Mare* (Bucharest, 1925), pp. 44 and 56; A. V. Boldur, *Ștefan cel Mare, voievod al Moldovei (1457–1504). Studiu de istorie socială și politică*, 2nd ed., eds. C. Chelcu and M. Chelcu (Iași, 2004), p. 158; Șt. S. Gorovei, M. M. Székely, *Princeps omni laude maior. O istorie a lui Ștefan cel Mare* (Putna, 2005), p. 69; P. Ș. Năsturel, “Qui sons les ‘Togtocomans’?,” in *Enjeux politiques, économiques et militaires en mer Noire (XIV<sup>e</sup>–XXI<sup>e</sup> siècles). Études à la mémoire de Mihail Guboglu*, eds. F. Bilici, I. Căndea, A. Popescu (Brăila, 2007), p. 107.



of a Wallachian *stolnic*.<sup>98</sup> In 1432, one Dragomir, the son of *Berindei*, who may have himself been a *stolnic*, is mentioned as a member of the princely council.<sup>99</sup>

In Moldavia, the first *Coman* appears in a charter of 1398: he was a boyar from Bucovina.<sup>100</sup> The name appears more frequently in fifteenth-century charters. In 1412 *Coman*, the son of Galiş, was granted land previously not inhabited in order to set up a village on the river Başeu.<sup>101</sup> In 1428, two Gypsy (Roma) slaves, both named *Coman*, together with their respective camps are mentioned among the assets of the Bistriţa Monastery.<sup>102</sup> Another Gypsy slave named *Comanna* and his camp (possibly the same as that of 1428) appears in the list of that same monastery's properties.<sup>103</sup> A third Gypsy slave named *Coman* and his camp appears in a grant of 1434 for the Moldoviţa Monastery, which was then confirmed in 1454 and, again, in 1458.<sup>104</sup> A boyar named *Coman* appears in 1435 and 1438 as a member of the princely council,<sup>105</sup> while in 1462 *Seliştea lui Coman* ("Coman's Camp") is mentioned in the Bacău county.<sup>106</sup> More Gypsy camps, including that of Comancea, were granted in 1487 by Stephen the Great (Ştefan cel Mare) to the Bistriţa Monastery.<sup>107</sup> In the same year, the camp of one Gypsy slave named *Danciul*, son of *Coman*, is mentioned among the properties of the of the Neamţ Monastery.<sup>108</sup> Stephen the Great also granted a village on the Jerăvăţ River in 1495 to the sons of *Coman*.<sup>109</sup> Half of all persons named *Coman*, who are mentioned in fourteenth- to fifteenth-century Moldavian charters, appear to have been boyars, while the other half includes only Gypsy slaves.

Given the chronology of the Gypsy migration to the Byzantine Empire,<sup>110</sup> a Roma presence in the Romanian lands must have taken

<sup>98</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 11.

<sup>99</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 73.

<sup>100</sup> *DRH,A*, I, no. 6. See also no. 19.

<sup>101</sup> *DRH,A*, I, no. 33.

<sup>102</sup> *DRH,A*, I, no. 75.

<sup>103</sup> *DRH,A*, II, no. 107.

<sup>104</sup> *DRH,A*, I, no. 132; II, nos. 40, 74.

<sup>105</sup> *DRH,A*, I, nos. 138, 181.

<sup>106</sup> *DRH,A*, II, no. 104.

<sup>107</sup> *DRH,A*, III, no. 17.

<sup>108</sup> *DRH,A*, III, no. 18.

<sup>109</sup> *DRH,A*, III, no. 165.

<sup>110</sup> G. C. Soulis, "The Gypsies in the Byzantine Empire and the Balkans in the Late Middle Ages," *Dumbarton Oaks Papers* 15 (1961), pp. 143–165; I. Rochow, K.-P. Matschke,

place long time after the Cumans had completely lost their hegemony in the steppe lands to the Mongols and had entered a long process of ethnic assimilation. In other words, there can be no doubt that the Roma did not get learn about the personal name *Coman* from the Cumans, but from the Romanians or, possibly, from other ethnic groups in the Balkans.

*Coman* and *Berendei* appear much more frequently in charters of the sixteenth and seventeenth century: *Berendeae* in 1569,<sup>111</sup> *Berendeai* in 1584;<sup>112</sup> *Berindei* in 1598,<sup>113</sup> as well as between 1601 and 1628;<sup>114</sup> *Coman* in 1507,<sup>115</sup> 1570,<sup>116</sup> 1577,<sup>117</sup> 1588,<sup>118</sup> 1617,<sup>119</sup> 1628,<sup>120</sup> 1638,<sup>121</sup> 1648,<sup>122</sup> 1673,<sup>123</sup> 1677,<sup>124</sup> between 1681 and 1693,<sup>125</sup> in 1685,<sup>126</sup> and 1686;<sup>127</sup> *Comana* in 1548,<sup>128</sup> *Coman Basinschi* in 1605;<sup>129</sup> *Coman Băicescul* in 1617;<sup>130</sup> *Coman Berchez* in 1619;<sup>131</sup> *Coman Margelat* in 1598;<sup>132</sup> *Ioniță Comănaci* in 1695;<sup>133</sup> *Comănel* in 1546;<sup>134</sup> and *Comănescu* in 1699.<sup>135</sup> Judging from the

---

„Neues zu den Zigeunern im byzantinischen Reich um die Wende vom 13. zum 14. Jahrhundert.“ *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 41 (1991), pp. 241–254.

<sup>111</sup> *DRH,A*, VI, no. 410.

<sup>112</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, III, pp. 240–241.

<sup>113</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, IV, p. 208.

<sup>114</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVII, I, pp. 9, 122; IV, p. 498; V, p. 292.

<sup>115</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, I, p. 67.

<sup>116</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, II, p. 215; Ghibănescu, *Surete*, II (see above, n. 25), pp. 349–350; *DRH,A*, VI, no. 433.

<sup>117</sup> Gh. Ghibănescu, *Surete și izvoade*, XVIII (Iași, 1927), p. 165.

<sup>118</sup> *Catalog de documente din Arhivele Statului Iași, Moldova*, I, no. 1347.

<sup>119</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVII, IV, p. 102.

<sup>120</sup> *DRH,A*, XIX, no. 340.

<sup>121</sup> *DRH,A*, XXIV, no. 393.

<sup>122</sup> *Catalogul documentelor moldovenesti*, II (see above, n. 25), no. 203.

<sup>123</sup> *Suceava. File de istorie* (see above, n. 29), I, no. 199.

<sup>124</sup> C. Solomon and C. A. Stoide, *Documente tecucene, I, Sec. XVII–XIX* (Bârlad, 1938), p. 32.

<sup>125</sup> *Catalogul documentelor moldovenesti din Direcția Arhivelor Centrale*, IV, eds. M. Regleanu, D. Duca Tinculescu, V. Vasilescu, C. Negulescu (Bucharest, 1970), nos. 575, 792, 934 and 1539.

<sup>126</sup> *Ibidem*, no. 896; *Documente privitoare la istoria orașului Iași*, II, *Acte interne (1661–1690)*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași, 2000), nos. 569 and 613.

<sup>127</sup> *Catalogul documentelor moldovenesti*, IV, no. 969.

<sup>128</sup> *DRH,A*, VI, no. 34.

<sup>129</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVII, I, p. 222.

<sup>130</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, IV, p. 111.

<sup>131</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, IV, pp. 352–353; Ghibănescu, *Surete*, XXII, p. 138.

<sup>132</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, IV, p. 205; Ghibănescu, *Surete*, VIII, pp. 233–239.

<sup>133</sup> *Catalogul documentelor moldovenesti*, IV, no. 1758.

<sup>134</sup> *DIR,A*, v. XVI, I, p. 414.

<sup>135</sup> Ghibănescu, *Surete*, VIII, pp. 159–160.

data of the 1772–1773 and 1774 census in Moldavia, the name *Coman* was more popular in the region between the Carpathian Mountains and the Prut, but not in use between the Prut and the Dniester rivers. More often than not, it was employed as first, not family name.<sup>136</sup>

In Wallachia, the name first appears in the early 1400s. An undated charter of Prince Mircea the Elder (Mircea cel Bătrân) between 1400 and 1403 mentions two brothers named *Coman* and Nanul, who were the sons of Batea.<sup>137</sup> That *Coman* is probably the same person as the one mentioned in a document of 1418.<sup>138</sup> Another *Coman* appears in 1441, during Vlad Dracul's reign.<sup>139</sup> Two *Comans*, a boyar and a scribe, are mentioned in a charter of Vladislav II dated to 1456.<sup>140</sup> Another boyar named *Coman Kure* appears in a diploma of 1460.<sup>141</sup> A certain *Coman Făgărășanul* is mentioned as master of the village Sălătruc in 1488,<sup>142</sup> 1501,<sup>143</sup> and 1539.<sup>144</sup> Only one Gypsy named *Coman* appears in Wallachia in 1492 in a charter of Vlad the Monk (*Vlad Călugărul*).<sup>145</sup> Much like in Moldavia, the name is much more frequently used in the 1500s and 1600s.<sup>146</sup> The feminine version, *Comana*, is also attested, in Wallachia in 1509<sup>147</sup> and 1519,<sup>148</sup> and in Moldavia in 1548.<sup>149</sup>

<sup>136</sup> *Recensământul* (see above, n. 40) (*Moldova în epoca feudalismului*, VII, 1), pp. 445, 483, 484, 542, 549–551, 571, 580, 592, 598; *ibidem* (*Moldova în epoca feudalismului*, VII, 2), pp. 77, 308, 320, 327, 333, 345, 349, 351, 353, and 355.

<sup>137</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 21.

<sup>138</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 41.

<sup>139</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 93; *DRH,D*, I, no. 264.

<sup>140</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 112.

<sup>141</sup> I. Bogdan, *Documentele privitoare la relațiile Țării Românești cu Brașovul și cu Țara Ungurească în sec. XV și XVI*, I, 1413–1508 (Bucharest, 1905), p. 326; *Urkundenbuch*, VI (see above, n. 52), no. 3206.

<sup>142</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 212.

<sup>143</sup> *DRH,B*, II, no. 5.

<sup>144</sup> *DRH,B*, IV, no. 71.

<sup>145</sup> *DRH,B*, I, no. 230.

<sup>146</sup> *534 documente istorice slavo-române din Țara Românească și Moldova privitoare la legăturile cu Ardealul. 1346–1603*, ed. Gr. G. Tocilescu (Bucharest, 1931), *passim*; *DRH,B*, II–VIII, XI, XXI–XXV, XXXI–XXXVII, *passim*; *Catalogul documentelor Țării Românești, 1369–1600* (1947); *Catalogul documentelor Țării Românești*, II (1974); III (1978); IV (1981); V (1985); VI (1993) (see above, n. 44), *passim*; I. Bogdan, *Documente și regeste privitoare la relațiile Țării Românești cu Brașovul și Ungaria în secolul XV și XVI* (Bucharest, 1902), pp. 225 and 261.

<sup>147</sup> *DRH,B*, II, no. 63.

<sup>148</sup> *DRH,B*, II, no. 182. For the subsequent period, see *DRH,B*, V; VII; XXI; XXII, XXXII, XXXIV–XXXVI, *passim*.

<sup>149</sup> *DIR,A*, v.XVI, I, p. 575.

Today, the name *Coman* is particularly popular in the Vrancea region, both as a family and as a first name. Its most frequent use is in a group of villages, such as Budești, Ciorăști, Făurei, Gologanu, Gugești, Jarișteea, Lacul Baban, Martinești, Mândrești, Obilești, Odo-basca, Pătești, Răstoaca, Risipiți, Slobozia, Suraia, Terchești, Urechești and Vânători, all of which are in eastern and south-eastern Vrancea. Several other Turkic-sounding names occur in that same region, but in more limited numbers: *Bărăgan*, *Berendel*, *Berindei*, *Bornaz*, *Carabă*, *Caracaș*, *Caraman*, *Gorgan*, *Hamza*, *Hasan*, *Hurmuz*, etc.<sup>150</sup> Such regional distribution is most likely not an accident.

The name *Coman* was also common in medieval Transylvania. It is not always possible to establish whether that name referred to Romanians or to other ethnic groups, for after the conquest of Transylvania, the Hungarian kings introduced measures to encourage the colonization of large numbers of people. However, there are a few cases in which the name *Koman* applied to Romanians, mentioned as such in the Hațeg Land (*Țara Hațegului*) in 1404<sup>151</sup> and 1418,<sup>152</sup> in southern and south-eastern Transylvania in 1453,<sup>153</sup> 1482,<sup>154</sup> between 1482 and 1496,<sup>155</sup> as well as in 1586 (*Koman Cherchel*, a name derived from the Romanian word for earring, *cercel*),<sup>156</sup> and in Maramureș in the sixteenth to eighteenth century.<sup>157</sup> Persons having that name belonged to various social groups, from priests (1453, 1482–1496) and knezes (1424) to serfs (1586). In all those cases, *Koman* was used as a first name. The family name *Koman* appears in the 1500s: *Ioan Koman de Tartaria*, is mentioned in 1574,<sup>158</sup> and *Christof Koman* in a report of 1598.<sup>159</sup>

By 1600, the name was very popular in the Făgăraș Land (*Țara Făgărașului*), which, for many centuries, had been a fief of the Wallachian

<sup>150</sup> I. Conca, *Vrancea. Geografie istorică, toponimie și terminologie geografică*, eds. L. Badea, D. I. Oancea, N. Stoicescu (Bucharest, 1993), pp. 70–82.

<sup>151</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, 2, p. 434. See also R. Popa, *La începuturile evului mediu românesc. Țara Hațegului* (Bucharest, 1988), p. 108.

<sup>152</sup> D. Csánki, *Magyarország történelmi földrajza a Hunyadiak korában*, V (Budapest, 1913), p. 156.

<sup>153</sup> *DRH,D*, I, no. 321.

<sup>154</sup> Bogdan, *Documentele privitoare la relațiile Țării Românești* (see above, n. 141), no. CLIV, p. 187.

<sup>155</sup> *Ibidem*, no. CLXXIII, p. 208.

<sup>156</sup> Veress, *Documente* (see above, n. 40), III, no. 32, pp. 70 and 72.

<sup>157</sup> I. Mihályi de Apșa, *Diplome maramureșene din secolul XIV și XV* (Sighet, 1900), pp. 370, 486 and 639.

<sup>158</sup> Veress, *Documente*, II (1573–1584) (Bucharest, 1930), no. 22, p. 23.

<sup>159</sup> Veress, *Documente*, V, no. 128, pp. 204–205.

princes, and was confirmed as such by kings of Hungary. Făgăraș is in southern Transylvania, a region in which the majority of the population was Romanian. Cadasters for that region (*Urbarien*) recorded hundreds of people named *Koman*, in almost every village of the region.<sup>160</sup> Most of them had that as first, only a few as family name. An identical situation was recorded around the city of Brașov.<sup>161</sup> Along the valley of the river Olt (*Țara Oltului*), both *Coman* and its derivatives were recorded between the sixteenth and the twentieth centuries: *Comănaș*, *Comănel*, *Comănescu*, *Comănică*, *Comănici*, *Comăniță*, etc.<sup>162</sup> Situated in that region are also the villages *Comana de Jos* and *Comana de Sus*<sup>163</sup> (Brașov county). During the modern age, *Coman* also appeared in the region of eastern Transylvania, which was inhabited primarily by Szeklers. As such, it is believed to be a name, which the Szeklers borrowed from assimilated Romanians.<sup>164</sup> The name *Berindei(i)* was recorded more seldom west of the eastern Carpathians: in 1587 in Maramureș,<sup>165</sup> and in the 1600s in Făgăraș Land,<sup>166</sup> etc.

Unlike the Romanians, Hungarians in both Transylvania and Hungary employed the Hungarian word for Cuman (*Kun*) as a name. Beginning with the fourteenth century, that name appears frequently occurred in written sources.<sup>167</sup> Hungarians have also used that as a family name,

<sup>160</sup> *Urbariile* (see above, n. 52), I, pp. 126, 128, 184, 196, 199, 202–204, 207–214, 216–230, 232–241, 244, 246–249, 271–278, 281–283, 300–304, 306–308, etc.; II, pp. 88, 193, 194, 196, 200, 201, 203–207, 286, 288, 289, etc.

<sup>161</sup> *Catalogul documentelor românești din Arhivele Statului de la Orașul Stalin*, I, 1521–1799, eds. C. A. Stoide, M. Runceanu, C. Mușlea, D. Limona, I. Danciu, V. Vinițchi, E. Barna, and V. Stanciu (Bucharest, 1955), *passim*.

<sup>162</sup> *Catalogul documentelor românești din Arhivele Statului Brașov*, II (1800–1825), eds. C. A. Stoide, M. Runceanu, D. Limona, C. Mușlea, I. Danciu, V. Stanciu, Șt. Suciuc (Bucharest, 1975), *passim*; *Urbariile*, I, II (see above, n. 52), *passim*; Șt. Pașca, *Nume de persoane și nume de animale în Țara Oltului* (Bucharest, 1936), p. 213.

<sup>163</sup> A. Lukács, *Țara Făgărașului în evul mediu (Secolele XIII–XVI)* (Bucharest, 1999), pp. 60–62; D. N. Busuioc-von Hasselbach, *Țara Făgărașului în secolul al XIII-lea. Mănăstirea cisterciană Cârța* (Cluj–Napoca, 2000), I, pp. 200, 230, 277; II, p. 74. See also, footnote 52.

<sup>164</sup> I. I. Russu, *Românii și secuii*, ed. I. Oprea (Bucharest, 1990), pp. 60, 209, 223, and 231; idem, *Les Roumains et les Sicules*, ed. I. Oprea, trans. A. R. Tomoiagă (Cluj–Napoca, 1998), pp. 69, 71, 273, and 300.

<sup>165</sup> Mihályi de Apșa, *Diplome*, p. 563.

<sup>166</sup> *Urbariile*, I, pp. 225, 434, and 792.

<sup>167</sup> *Šigmondkori oklevéltár*, I (1387–1399), ed. E. Mályusz (Budapest, 1951), pp. 1, 72, 83, 199, 254, 364, 512, 599, 659, and 668; III (1411–1412), eds. E. Mályusz and I. Borsa (Budapest, 1993), *passim*; *DRH.C.*, XII, nos. 89, 341; XIII, nos. 373, 475; Mihályi de Apșa, *Diplome*, pp. 189, 222, 535.

and especially as a nickname: *Petrus dictus de Kwn*, near Oradea (1362);<sup>168</sup> *Johannes dictus Cwn / Kwn*, in Galoşpetreu, near Satu Mare (1364 and 1365);<sup>169</sup> *Franciscus dictus Kwn de Kak*, near Satu Mare (1382);<sup>170</sup> *Nicolaus dictus Kwn de Bechke* (Beckska), in the former Nógrád county (1389);<sup>171</sup> or *Lucas dictus Kwn de Rosal* (Rozsály), in Maramureş (1391 and 1392).<sup>172</sup> A rather bizarre example is also *Kunchmannus* [Cumanus?] *dictus Tataar* (or *Thatar*), which appears in 1330 and, again, in 1331 in Szepesi, Abaujvár county, in the northern region of the Hungarian Kingdom.<sup>173</sup> After the defeat at Mohács (1526) and the occupation of a good part of Hungary by the Ottoman Turks, the family name *Kwn / Kwn* appears less frequently in certain regions,<sup>174</sup> a phenomenon interpreted as signaling the last phase in the process of assimilation of the Cumans in the Pannonian Plain.

While the Cumans were present in Hungarian Kingdom as mercenaries, some of their leaders were called by determinative names, which were meant to indicate their ethnic origin. For instance, *Menk Comans* and *Arbuş Cumans* were mentioned in documents of 1279<sup>175</sup> and 1289, respectively.<sup>176</sup> Such names could eventually turn into patronyms.

No clear understanding of the significance of Romanian personal names derived from those of Turkic tribes is possible without taking into account the distribution of such names in the neighbouring countries. Most revealing in this respect is the distribution in the Balkans, especially in the western regions of the peninsula, for which there is better evidence. Within that region, which during the Middle Ages was divided between different polities with often unstable boundaries, the name *Coman* (and its many variants) was employed by different ethnic groups. Among them were also the Vlachs in Serbia. Among

<sup>168</sup> *DRH,C*, XII, no. 89.

<sup>169</sup> *DRH,C*, XII, no. 341; XIII, no. 373.

<sup>170</sup> *Documenta historiam Valachorum in Hungaria illustrantia usque ad annum 1400 p. Christum*, curante E. Lukinich et adiuvante L. Gáldi, eds. A. Fekete Nagy and L. Makkai (Budapest, 1941), no. 268.

<sup>171</sup> *Ibidem*, no. 327.

<sup>172</sup> Mihályi de Apşa, *Diplome*, p. 189; *Documenta historiam Valachorum*, nos. 375, 376, 377.

<sup>173</sup> Gy. Györffy, *Az Árpád-kori Magyarország történeti földrajza*, I (Budapest, 1966), p. 146.

<sup>174</sup> T. Halasi-Kun, "Ottoman data on Lesser Cumania: Keçkemmet nahiyesi—varoş-i halaş—kariye-i ksökut," *AEMA* 4 (1984), p. 96.

<sup>175</sup> *Urkundenbuch zur Geschichte der Deutschen in Siebenbürgen*, I, eds. F. Zimmermann and C. Werner (Hermannstadt, 1892), no. 193.

<sup>176</sup> *Ibidem*, no. 229.

the 200 Vlachs (*Власи*) mentioned in a donation of king Stephen the First-Crowned (*Prvovenčani*) (1217–1227/8) for the Žiča Monastery, later confirmed by prince Radoslav, there were three persons named *Kuman* (*Кумань*).<sup>177</sup> A donation charter of the Serbian king Stephen Uroš II Milutin (1282–1321) for the Hilandar Monastery dated to ca. 1300 a certain *Kumanicz* (*Куманиць*) appears, whose name appears to be a diminutive of *Kuman*.<sup>178</sup>

*Cuman* was also popular in thirteenth- to fifteenth-century Dalmatia: *Cumanus*, a priest and notary of Spalato (Split), mentioned in 1232, 1234, 1235, 1237, 1238, and 1243;<sup>179</sup> *Dubroqualis Cumanus* of Ragusa (Dubrovnik), mentioned in 1278, 1281, 1282, and 1301;<sup>180</sup> *Cumanus*, a priest of Spalato, mentioned in 1308;<sup>181</sup> and *Chumanin* of Novo Brdo mentioned in 1436 and at some point after 1440.<sup>182</sup> Since no colonization and no migration of Cumans to Dalmatia is known to have taken place, such names bear no implications for the ethnic origin of the persons to whom they applied.

Near Cattaro (Kotor), a certain *Scime de Comana* appears in 1326<sup>183</sup> and another named *Milloslaus de Comana* in 1332.<sup>184</sup> The village of *Comana*, near Cattaro, is mentioned in a document of 1330.<sup>185</sup> Not far from the Croatian town Čazma (Chasma), to the east from Zagreb,

<sup>177</sup> *Árpádkori új okmánytár*, ed. G. Wenzel, I, 1001–1235 (Pest, 1860), no. 222 (151 d), pp. 363–364 and 369; Hurmuzaki, I, 2, p. 775. See also S. Dragomir, *Vlahii din nordul Peninsulei Balcanice în evul mediu* (Bucharest, 1959), pp. 17–19.

<sup>178</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, 2, p. 797.

<sup>179</sup> *Codex diplomaticus regni Croatiae, Dalmatiae et Slavoniae*, ed. T. Smičiklas, III (Zagreb, 1905), nos. 317, 321, 341, 352, and 380; IV (Zagreb, 1906), nos. 19, 27, 45, 109, 175, 183, and 236.

<sup>180</sup> *Monumenta historica archivi Ragusini*, 3rd Ser., 1, *Acta cancellariae et notariae annorum 1278–1301*, ed. G. Čremošnik (Belgrade, 1932), nos. 136, 138, 207, 212, 452, and 473; *Monumenta historica Ragusina*, I, *Notae et acta cancellariae Ragusinae*, I, *Notae et acta notarii Thomasini de Saverio, 1278–1282*, ed. G. Čremošnik (Zagreb, 1951), nos. 1 and 615. A Dalmatian chronicler writing in the second half of the fifteenth century mentions a cave near Ragusa, which was called *Cumano*. See Giovanni di Marino Gondola (probably), *Croniche ulteriori di Ragusa*, in *Monumenta spectantia historiam Slavorum meridionalium*, XXV, *Scriptores*, II, ed. S. Nodilo (Zagreb, 1893), p. 353.

<sup>181</sup> *Codex diplomaticus*, VIII (Zagreb, 1910), no. 157.

<sup>182</sup> M. Dinić, *Из Дубровачког архива*, I (Belgrade, 1957), pp. 53 and 70.

<sup>183</sup> *Kotorski spomenici. Prva knjiga kotorskih notara od god. 1326–1335*, ed. A. Mayer (Zagreb, 1951), no. 156.

<sup>184</sup> *Kotorski spomenici. Druga knjiga kotorskih notara god. 1329, 1332–1337*, ed. A. Mayer (Zagreb, 1981), no. 77.

<sup>185</sup> *Kotorski spomenici. Prva knjiga*, no. 549.

there was a so-called “road of the Cumans” (*via dicta Kumanorum*),<sup>186</sup> which probably connected Hungary to Dalmatia.

South of Dalmatia, on the Albanian shore of the Adriatic Sea, which was in the centre of the economic and political interests of Venice, the anthroponym *Cuman* was also recorded in medieval documents. A contract of 1243 mentions the merchant *Kūr* [kyr] *Cumanus de Succotrino* from Dyrrachion (Durazzo / Durrës).<sup>187</sup> This is most likely the same person as a certain *Cumanus Scudrin*, mentioned in 1248, and his name derives from that of Scutari (Shkodra).<sup>188</sup> Several documents of 1417 mention *Georgius* (*Giorgi, Zorzi Cumanj* (*Comannj*)) of Belaj,<sup>189</sup> *Stefano Cuman* of Egci<sup>190</sup> and *Giergi* [George] *Cumanj* of Buzëzezi.<sup>191</sup> Personal names of supposedly Cuman region have been recorded in several parts of Albania.<sup>192</sup>

In the Byzantium *Kómanos* was usually used as a first name, much like *Vláchos*, *Búlgaros* and *Rosos* (the last one being also known as family names).<sup>193</sup> Between the twelfth and the fourteenth centuries the name *Κόμανος* was repeatedly recorded in documents of several monasteries at Mount Athos. Those names begin to appear shortly after the earliest Cuman incursions into the Balkans. The first attestation is inserted in a *praktikon* of January 6612 (= 1104) issued by John Comnenus, emperor Alexius I's nephew, lists among the *paroikoi* of Saint Barbara belonging to the Iviron Monastery, a certain *George Komanos* (Γε(ώ)ρ(γ)ιος ὁ Κόμανος),<sup>194</sup> probably as a nickname. Similarly, *John Komanos* (Ἰωάννης ὁ Κόμανος), is mentioned in 1304 as *paroikos* of the Lavra Monastery of Gomatu,<sup>195</sup> while *Michael Komanos* and *John Komanos* were a *paroikos*

<sup>186</sup> *Codex diplomaticus*, VIII, no. 424.

<sup>187</sup> *Codex diplomaticus*, IV, no. 169.

<sup>188</sup> *Ibidem*, no. 298; A. Ducellier, *La façade maritime de l'Albanie au Moyen Age. Durazzo et Valona du XI<sup>e</sup> au XV<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Thessalonike, 1981), pp. 192–193 and 223 with n. 205.

<sup>189</sup> *Acta Albaniae Veneta saeculorum XIV et XV*, II, 8, ed. J. Valentin (Munich, 1970), nos. 2106, 2158/60, and 2158/62.

<sup>190</sup> *Ibidem*, no. 2107/26.

<sup>191</sup> *Ibidem*, no. 2158/67.

<sup>192</sup> I. Schütz, “Les contacts médiévaux albano-comans reflétés par l’onomastique de Kosovo,” *AOH* 40 (1986), nos. 2–3, pp. 293–300.

<sup>193</sup> P. Malingoudis, “«Die Bulgaren im Byzantinischen Reich». Kritische Bemerkungen,” *Balkan Studies* 22 (1981), no. 2, pp. 256–257.

<sup>194</sup> *Actes d'Iviron*, II, *Du milieu du XI<sup>e</sup> siècle à 1204, Texte*, eds. J. Lefort, N. Oikonomidès, D. Papachryssanthou, in collab. with V. Kravari and H. Métrévéli (*AA*, XVI) (Paris, 1990), no. 52, p. 243.

<sup>195</sup> *Actes de Lavra*, II, *De 1204 à 1328, Texte*, eds. P. Lemerle, A. Guillou, N. Svoronos, D. Papachryssanthou (*AA*, VIII) (Paris, 1977), no. 99, p. 146.



and son-in-law of *paroikos*, respectively, working the land of the Lavra (1321).<sup>196</sup>

After 1300, *Komanos* appeared as a Christian first name in the Chalcidice (Khalkidike) Peninsula and in the neighbouring regions to the north. The archives at Mount Athos contain many documents mentioning locals in the theme Thessalonike (1290–1310),<sup>197</sup> in the *katepanikion* Hierissos (ca. 1300),<sup>198</sup> in the village Laimin (two inhabitants) (ca. 1300),<sup>199</sup> in Palaiokastron (1320),<sup>200</sup> all called Κόμανος. A certain *Komanos Tzankáres*, also from Laimin, appears in documents of 1318<sup>201</sup> and 1321.<sup>202</sup> A diminutive form of the name, *John Komanitzes* was recorded in 1316 for a *paroikos* of the Iviron Monastery at Radolivos.<sup>203</sup> The name had also feminine variants, *Komana* and *Komanka*. The former—Κομάννα—is attested in 1318<sup>204</sup> and 1320<sup>205</sup> at Melintziane, an estate of the Iviron Monastery, and in 1338 at Stomion, an estate of the Xenophon Monastery.<sup>206</sup> A woman named Κομάννα lived in 1320 on the estate of the Iviron Monastery at Palaiokastron.<sup>207</sup>

Most people with names derived from that of the Cumans, who are mentioned in documents preserved in the archives at Holy Mount, turned out to be *paroikoi*, a very large social category made up of dependent peasants with hereditary properties.<sup>208</sup> However, in Byzantium, the name *Komanos* applied to members of other social categories as well. That the name was sufficiently common by 1200 results from the

<sup>196</sup> Ibidem, no. 109, pp. 245 and 264.

<sup>197</sup> *Actes de Xéropotamou, Texte*, ed. J. Bompaire (AA, III) (Paris, 1964), no. 18 A, p. 143.

<sup>198</sup> *Actes de Lavra*, II, no. 91, p. 114.

<sup>199</sup> *Actes d'Esphigménou, Texte*, ed. J. Lefort (AA, VI) (Paris, 1973), no. 8, p. 69.

<sup>200</sup> *Actes d'Iviron, III, De 1204 à 1328, Texte*, eds. J. Lefort, N. Oikonomidès, D. Papachryssanthou, V. Kravari, in collab. with H. Métrévéli (AA, XVIII) (Paris, 1994), no. 77, p. 245.

<sup>201</sup> *Actes d'Esphigménou*, no. 14, p. 106.

<sup>202</sup> Ibidem, no. 15, p. 114; no. 16, p. 122.

<sup>203</sup> *Actes d'Iviron, III*, no. 74, p. 195.

<sup>204</sup> Ibidem, no. 75, p. 216.

<sup>205</sup> Ibidem, no. 79, p. 262.

<sup>206</sup> *Actes de Xénophon, Texte*, ed. D. Papachryssanthou (AA, XV) (Paris, 1986), no. 25, p. 189.

<sup>207</sup> *Actes d'Iviron, III*, no. 77, p. 247.

<sup>208</sup> G. Ostrogorskij, *Quelques problèmes d'histoire de la paysannerie byzantine* (Brussels, 1956), pp. 41–74; A. E. Laiou-Thomadakis, *Peasant Society in the Late Byzantine Empire. A Social and Demographic Study* (Princeton, New Jersey, 1977), p. 142 ff.; J. Karayannopoulos, "Ein Problem der spätbyzantinischen Agrargeschichte," *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 30 (1981), pp. 214–216.

fact that a Crusade French chronicler referred to Theodore Comnenus as *Todore le Commanos*.<sup>209</sup> Under the Palaeologan emperors, compound names ending in *-poulos* are attested, which referred to ethnicity (e.g., *Vlachopoulos* or *Armenopoulos*).<sup>210</sup> No such compound names are known to have made use of *Komanos*. This is a further confirmation of the fact that that name and its variants was not in fact an indication of the ethnicity of the person to which it applied, but at the most, of one of that person's distant ancestors.

The documents at Mount Athos contain many references to place names deriving from the ethnic name of the Cumans, but none can apparently be located in the Chalcidice Peninsula. A village named *Komanovo* was among those granted by tsar Stephen Uroš III Dečanski (1321–1331) to the Hilandar Monastery in 1327.<sup>211</sup> It may well be the same as the modern town of Kumanovo, to the north-east from Skopje. A place named Κουμανόβεζ, which appears in the agreement concluded between the Hilandar Monastery and Novo Selo in 1621.<sup>212</sup> A charter of despot Jovan Dragaš and his brother Constantine, dated between 1372 and 1375, confirmed previous land grants to the Monastery of Saint Panteleemôn, which included a village named *Kumaničevo*.<sup>213</sup> This is in fact the village by that same name still in existence on the right bank of the river Vardar, not far from Kavadarci. The Cumans, who were settled in the theme of Moglena may have well contributed to the proliferation of such personal and place names in Macedonia. Those Turks are in fact specifically mentioned in 1181 and 1184, in relation to disputes with the monks of the Lavra.<sup>214</sup>

Similar names must have been in existence in other parts of the Balkans as well, but only little information exists about them. That the vast majority of such names appears in Chalcidice and on the Adriatic

<sup>209</sup> *L'estoire de Eracles empereur et de la conqueste de la terre d'Outremer*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens occidentaux*, II (Paris, 1859), pp. 291–292.

<sup>210</sup> Laiou-Thomadakis, *Peasant Society*, pp. 130–131.

<sup>211</sup> *Стари српски хрисову и акти, биографије, летописи, типници, поменици, записи и др.*, ed. L. Stojanović, in *Споменик Српска Краљевска Академија*, III (Belgrade, 1890), p. 25.

<sup>212</sup> V. Mošin, in A. Sovre, *Supplementa ad acta graeca Chilandarū* (Ljubljana, 1948), no. XIII, p. 44.

<sup>213</sup> *Actes de Saint-Pantéléemôn*, eds. P. Lemerle, G. Dagron, S. Ćirković (*AA*, XII) (Paris, 1982), no. 6, p. 170.

<sup>214</sup> *Actes de Lavra, I, Des origines à 1204, Texte*, eds. P. Lemerle, A. Guillou, N. Svoronos, in collab. with D. Papachryssanthou (*AA*, V) (Paris, 1970), no. 65, pp. 334–341; no. 66, pp. 341–345.

coast, in Dalmatia and Albania, is simply an indication of source survival in the Venitian archives and in those at Mount Athos, and not a mirror of the demographic reality in the whole of the Balkan Peninsula.

From the Balkans, the name *Coman* spread to the islands in the Aegean Sea and even to the eastern Mediterranean, where it appears between the fourteenth and the fifteenth century. A document written in 1341 at Candia—the most important centre of Crete, occupied by the Venetians after the Fourth Crusade—, mentions a certain *Ser Iohanes Caucho dictus Cumano*.<sup>215</sup> In this case *Cumano* appears to have been a nickname, much like in the case of *Sanser Zorzi Chumano* known to have been a Genoese merchant active in Constantinople in 1437 and 1438.<sup>216</sup> A dependent peasant mentioned in 1415 in an inventory of church property on Lemnos was also called *Komanos*.<sup>217</sup> That church belonged to the Great Lavra at Mount Athos. The Ottoman census of 1474 recorded many similar family and nicknames in several villages of Euboea (Negroponte), four years after they had conquered the island. Among the inhabitants listed in the registers (*defter*), the following names may be mentioned: *Yani Komano* of Ahladeri, *Nikola Komano* of Kambiya, *Yorgi Cumana* of Mazaros and *Yani Komano* of Yidez.<sup>218</sup> The origin of those family names is not difficult to establish. By contrast, the association with the name of the Cumans of such names as *Nikola Kamanic* and *Yani Kamanic* from the village of Limni, and *Kiriako Komeno* from Yalotra<sup>219</sup> remains uncertain. A document written on May 16, 1299, in Famagosta, in Cyprus, that is, in a place quite far from the continental part of south-eastern Europe, mentions a certain *Michael Comanus*, as a witness to an agreement between Catalan merchants and navigators.<sup>220</sup>

The presence of the name *Komanos* in Lemnos should not surprise, given that in the third decade of the fourteenth century a detachment

<sup>215</sup> *Duca di Candia. Quaternus consiliorum (1340–1350)*, ed. P. R. Vidulich (Venice, 1976), no. 8, p. 8.

<sup>216</sup> *Il libro dei conti di Giacomo Badoer (Constantinopoli 1436–1440)*, eds. U. Dorini and T. Bertelè (Rome, 1956), pp. 135, 145, 192, 197, 201, 287, 350, 396, 506, 634, and 635.

<sup>217</sup> *Actes de Lavra, III, De 1329 à 1500, Texte*, eds. P. Lemerle, A. Guillou, N. Svoronos, D. Papachryssanthou (AA, X) (Paris, 1979), no. 164, p. 168.

<sup>218</sup> E. Balta, *L'Eubée à la fin du XV<sup>e</sup> siècle. Économie et population. Les registres de l'année 1474* (Athens, 1989), pp. 267 and 271–273.

<sup>219</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 287 and 306.

<sup>220</sup> M. Balard, *Notai genovesi in Oltremare. Atti rogati a Cipro da Lamberto di Sambuceto (11 ottobre 1296–23 giugno 1299)* (Genoa, 1983), no. 149.

of Cumans had been moved there, as well as on two other islands of the Aegean Sea at the order of emperor Andronicus II Palaeologus (1282–1328).<sup>221</sup> The use of the nickname *Cumano* in Candia in 1341 may be explained in terms of the presence on the island of Crete of slaves of Cuman origin (*de genere Cumm[an]orum / Cu[ma]nnurum / Cumanorum*), with such names as *Bersaba*, *Beigoba*, *Cuise*, *Vida*, *Margarita*.<sup>222</sup> No significant group of Cumans is known to have moved either to Euboea (Negroponte), or to Crete, for after 1204 both islands were under Venitian control. However, there can be no doubt that the names in question derive from that of the Cumans, whose fame has no spread all over the eastern Mediterranean. But the place name *Comana* in Tuscany cannot derive from the name of the Cumans, given that that place name is first attested in the early ninth century.<sup>223</sup> The same is true about the names attested on the eastern Adriatic coast. A migration of a large group of Cumans to Cyprus is also out of question, although it is not impossible that slaves of Cuman origin were brought on to the markets in Famagosta and other places on the island. In fact a black (?) slave of Cuman origin was sold in August 1301 in Famagosta. His name was *Tarabuga*.<sup>224</sup>

While personal names derived from the ethnic name of the Pechenegs and the Uzes are rare in the Romanian lands outside the Carpathian Mountains, they were relatively more frequent in the Kingdom of Hungary (including Transylvania),<sup>225</sup> as well as in the western

---

<sup>221</sup> Ioannis Cantacuzeni *Historiarum libri IV*, ed. L. Schopen, I (Bonn, 1828), p. 259. See also J. Haldon, "Lemnos, monastic holdings and the Byzantine state: ca. 1261–1453," in *Continuity and Change in Late Byzantine and Early Ottoman Society*, eds. A. Bryer and H. Lowry (Birmingham–Washington, D.C., 1986), p. 178; P. Topping, "Latins on Lemnos before and after 1453," in *ibidem*, p. 217 ff.

<sup>222</sup> *Benvenuto de Brixano, notaio in Candia, 1301–1302*, ed. R. Morozzo della Rocca (Venice, 1950), pp. 97, 98, and 130.

<sup>223</sup> G. Gasca Queirazza, C. Marcato, G. B. Pellegrini, G. Petrarco Sicardi, A. Rossebastiano, *Dizionario di toponomastica. Storia e significato dei nomi geografici italiani* (Turin, 1990), p. 223.

<sup>224</sup> R. Pavoni, *Notai genovesi in Oltremare. Atti rogati a Cipro da Lamberto di Sambuceto (6 luglio–27 ottobre 1301)* (Genoa, 1982), no. 58.

<sup>225</sup> For personal names associated with Pechenegs, see Hurmuzaki, I, 2, pp. 51, 54, 55, 57, 255, and 258; *DRH,C*, XI, nos. 201 and 283; XII, nos. 16, 17, 24, 25, 29, 66–68, 164, 220, 231, and 296; *Documenta historiam Valachorum* (see above, n. 170), nos. 100, 103, 126, and 140; *Urkundenbuch* (see above, n. 175), IV, ed. G. Gündisch (Hermannstadt, 1937), nos. 2166 and 2167. For names associated with the Uzes, see *DIR,C*, v. XI, XII și XIII, I, pp. 43, 91, and 117.

Balkans.<sup>226</sup> Neither their frequency, nor their distribution can match that of names derived from the ethnic name of the Cumans. There is some evidence to support the idea that in Hungary and in the Balkans, *Cuman* / *Koman* / *Komanus* was initially a nickname, which then turned into a family, and only later into a first name. The adoption of such names by the population north of the Lower Danube and from the Balkans is undoubtedly due to direct contact with the Cumans. Such names were still used long after the assimilation of the Cumans into the local population. While living side by side with the locals, individual Cumans were identified by nicknames pointing to their ethnic identity or background. Gradually, such names became patronymics for some of their descendants. However, it would be a gross mistake to assume that in all known cases, *Cuman* or its variants applied only to persons of Cuman origin, since it is clear that non-Cumans were also called by that name. Natives may have called persons of Cuman origin by a nickname referring to the ethnic background, but it is equally possible that the nomads themselves applied such names to their own fellow tribesmen. The name of a chieftain of a group of Pechenegs during the second half of the eleventh century was *Kazar*.<sup>227</sup> *Berendi* of the Torki (Uzes) tribe is mentioned in 1097.<sup>228</sup> Two Polovtsyan (Cuman) chieftains mentioned in 1096 and 1103 were called *Kunui*<sup>229</sup> and *Komana*, respectively.<sup>230</sup> *Tatar* was the commander of the Cuman detachment hired by the Hungarian king Stephen II (1116–1131).<sup>231</sup> *Uzas* was a “Sarmatian”

<sup>226</sup> For place names associated with the Pechenegs, see *Codex diplomaticus* (see above, n. 178), III, no. 69; IV, nos. 189, 353, 399, 400, 472, 518, and 559; VII (Zagreb, 1909), no. 32; *Monumenta historica Ragusina* (see above, n. 180), I, nos. 1, 2, 9, 10, 12, 67, 69, 77, 137, 143, 165, 216, 234, 266, 272, 275, 346, 427, 466, 528, 529, 549, etc; *Ibidem*, II, *Notae et acta notarum Thomasini de Sauere, 1282–1284. Diversa cancellariae I (1282–1284). Testamenta (1282–1284)*, ed. J. Lučić (Zagreb, 1984), nos. 28, 39, 144, 368, 401, 405, 427, 441, etc; *Monumenta spectantia historiam Slavorum meridionalium*, XXIX, *Monumenta Ragusina, Libri reformationum*, V, ed. J. Gelcich (Zagreb, 1897), pp. 34, 35, 81, 123, 128, 152, 153, and 178; *Monumenta historica archivi Ragusini*, 3rd Ser., 1 (see above, n. 180), nos. 2, 12, 115, 164, 200, 291, 309, 399, and 403. For names associated with the Uzes, see *Monumenta historica Ragusina*, I, nos. 44, 243, and 360.

<sup>227</sup> *Chronici Hungarici* (see above, n. 3), p. 371; *CPict*, pp. 58, 178; *Chronicon Henrici de Mügeln germanice conscriptum*, ed. E. Travník, in *SRH*, II, p. 179.

<sup>228</sup> *PVL*, I, p. 173.

<sup>229</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 170.

<sup>230</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 184; *Let. Vöskr.*, p. 20; Joannis Dlugossii seu Longini *Historiae Polonicae libri XII*, I, in *idem, Opera omnia* (see above, n. 95), X (Cracow, 1873), p. 447.

<sup>231</sup> *Chronici Hungarici*, p. 444; *CPict*, pp. 87, 210.

mercenary in the late eleventh-century Byzantine army.<sup>232</sup> *Uzuz* (*Vzur* / *Uzur*) was one of the chieftains of the Cumans settled in Hungary in the thirteenth century.<sup>233</sup> A governor of Alep was called *Cuman*,<sup>234</sup> and the son of the early twelfth-century Turkoman Arslan-Tash was called *Captchac* (*Kafđjak*).<sup>235</sup> The name of a late twelfth-century Seljuq emir is *Izz ed-Din Hasan ben Ya'kub ben Kifđjak*,<sup>236</sup> while another in the service of the Mamluk sultan in 1298 was named *Mubâriz-eddin-Azlia-ben-Kuman*.<sup>237</sup> The name of another Egyptian emir, the governor of Shaubec, Hama, and Alep, and the viceroy of Damascus in ca. 1300 was *Saif ad-Din Kiptchak al Mansuri* (*Qipchaq al-Mansûrî*).<sup>238</sup> The governor of the Mamluk sultan in Syria in 1340–1341 was called *Qifğaq*.<sup>239</sup> *Qipchaq* was also the name of the son of the Mongol prince Kadan, himself a son of the great khan Ögödüi.<sup>240</sup> *Qipchaq* was also the great emir of Melik-Temür

<sup>232</sup> Anne Comnène, *Alexiade*, II, ed. B. Leib (Paris, 1943), pp. 31, 97, 120–121, 141, and 204.

<sup>233</sup> *Monumenta Ecclesiae Strigoniensis*, ed. F. Knauz, II (Strigonii, 1882), p. 134; Hurmuzaki, I, pp. 426–429.

<sup>234</sup> Ibn-Alatyr, *Extrait de la chronique intitulée Kamel-Attevarykh*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, I (Paris, 1872), pp. 378–379.

<sup>235</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 437–438; Ibn el-Athîr, *Histoire des Atabecs de Mosul*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, II, 2 (Paris, 1876), pp. 77 and 102.

<sup>236</sup> Abou Chamah, *Le livre des deux Jardins. Histoire des deux règnes, celui de Nour ed-Din et celui de Salah ed-Din*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, IV (Paris, 1898), p. 393.

<sup>237</sup> Taki-Eddin-Ahmed-Makrizi, *Histoire des sultans mamlouks de l'Égypte*, trans. [M. É.] Quatremère, II, 2 (Paris, 1845), p. 65.

<sup>238</sup> Moufazzal ibn Abil-Fazail, *Histoire des sultans mamlouks*, trans. E. Blochet, in *Patrologia Orientalis*, XIV, 3, eds. R. Graffin, F. Nau (Paris, 1920), pp. 597–598, 602, 609, and 625–626 ff.; XX, 1 (Paris, 1929), pp. 168, 176, and 194; Abou'l Fida, *Autobiographie, extraite de sa Chronique*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, I, pp. 173–174; Al-Jazari, *La chronique (années 689–698 H.)*, ed. J. Sauvaget (Bibliothèque de l'École des Hautes Études, 294) (Paris, 1949), pp. 43, 50, 67, 75, and 77–79; *The Memoirs of a Syrian Prince. Abu'-Fida' Sultan of Hamah (672–732/1273–1331)*, ed. P. M. Holt (Wiesbaden, 1983), pp. 26–28, 30, 36, 39, 41–44, 49–51, and 54–55; *Early Mamluk Syrian Historiography. Al-Yūnīnī's, Djayl Mir'at al-zamān*, I, ed. Li Guo (Leiden–Boston–Cologne, 1998), pp. 99, 107–113, 117, 118, 121, 122, etc.

<sup>239</sup> Šams ad-Din aš-Šuġa'i, *Tarih al-Malik an-Našir Muhammad b. Qalawun aš-Šalīhi wa-auladīhi*, II, ed. B. Schäfer (Wiesbaden, 1985), p. 157.

<sup>240</sup> Rashid al-Din, *The Successors of Genghis Khan*, ed. J. A. Boyle (New York–London, 1971), pp. 28, 140, and 151–153; Rashiduddin Fazlullah's *Jami'u't-tawarikh: Compendium of Chronicles. A History of the Mongols*, trans. and ed. W. M. Thackston (Harvard [Cambridge, Mass.], I (1998), p. 237; II (1999), pp. 310, 370, and 377; III (1999), pp. 520 and 522.

and the son of Kökechü.<sup>241</sup> Finally the name of a mid-fourteenth-century Mamluk emir was *Baibuga Tatar*.<sup>242</sup>

As mentioned above, the earliest Romanian attestations of the personal names *Coman* and *Berindei* applied to either boyars or Gypsy slaves. The adoption of those names by Romanians must have been made according to a fashion of the time. In documents of the fourteenth–fifteenth centuries *Coman* was used as a first name. In only one case (1438) did the name appear together with a family name, *Şalov* (from the Romanian word for pike perch, *şalău*), which was probably a nickname. The use of family names was still rare before 1600 for boyars and almost unknown for commoners. That *Coman* was used in Moldavia as a first, not family name is quite clear in such cases as *Coman Margelat* (a name mentioned in a diploma of 1598), *Coman Basinschi* (1605), *Coman Băcescu* (1617), or *Coman Berchez* (1619). The same is true for the instances of that name in fifteenth- and sixteenth-century Wallachian charters: *Coman Kure* (1460), *Coman Făgărăşanul* (1488, 1501, and 1539), or *Coman Creţu* (1505). A document dated between 1400 and 1403 gives the names of the two sons of a certain Batea, *Coman* and *Nanul*. Another, dated to 1441, mentions the sons of one Stoica, *Şerban*, *Coman* and Michael (*Mihai*). In more recent times, *Coman* has been used among Romanians almost exclusively as a family name. That the name appears to have applied to Gypsies in the fifteenth century indicates that the name was so common as to have had no ethnic connotation whatsoever. Indeed, much like other Europeans, Romanians often adopted the ethnic names of their neighbors as personal names. For example, relatively common names in Moldavia were such names as *Armeanu*, *Bulgaru*, *Frâncu*, *Greco*, *Leahu*, *Lipovanu*, *Neamţu*, *Rusnac*, *Rusu*, *Sas*, *Sârbu*, *Tătaru*, *Turcu*, *Țigan*, and *Ungureanu*.<sup>243</sup> All such names were undoubtedly used initially as nicknames, and later turned into family names. Unlike *Coman*, they were rarely used as first names. But *Coman* was not the only ethnic name of a nomadic group, which Romanians used as first name. Mid-fourteenth-century royal Hungarian diplomas mention *Tatar* as one of the many sons of Giula of Giuleşti (Maramureş). His other brothers all had common Romanian names such as

<sup>241</sup> Rashid al-Din, *Successors*, p. 113.

<sup>242</sup> Şams ad-Din aş-Şuġa'i, pp. 287 and 308.

<sup>243</sup> *DIRA*, v. XIV–XVII (1384–1625). *Indicele numelor de persoane*, red. Al. I. Gontă, ed. I. Caproşu (Bucharest, 1995); *Catalogul documentelor moldovenesti* (see above, n. 25, 42, and 125), I (1957); II (1959); III (1969); IV (1970); Supl. I (1975), *passim*.

*Dragoș, Ștefan, Dragomir, Costea* and *Miroslav*.<sup>244</sup> *Tatar* was also used as a first name by the early fifteenth-century inhabitants of Giulești.<sup>245</sup> In fourteenth-century Transylvania, the name never appears as a family, only as a nickname.<sup>246</sup> This is clearly the case of *Johannes Tatar*, the envoy of king Sigismund I to Vlad I, prince of Wallachia, in 1396.<sup>247</sup> It is clear from such examples that *Tatar* was in no way an indication of Mongol ethnic identity. In fact, like *Coman*, *Tatar* was not a name attached to any particular ethnic group. This is also true for John (*Ioan*) *Turcul*, the envoy of Stephen the Great to the court of the Polish king Casimir IV (1444–1492).<sup>248</sup> At a time of increasing hostility between the Moldavia and the Ottomans, prince Stephen's envoy to a Christian king could not obviously have been a Turk.

In conclusion, *Coman* was never used in the oldest charters and diplomas in Moldavia, Wallachia, and Transylvania in an ethnic sense. That the name was used by Romanians was not so much a result of the assimilation of Cumans, as it was an indirect indication of the Cuman influence in the Romanians lands outside the Carpathian Mountains. It is even possible that some of those individuals with such names as *Berindei* and *Coman* may have come to Moldavia from Maramureș and Transylvania, where the names were in use among Romanians.<sup>249</sup> It is possible also that the Romanian names in Transylvania were influenced by the onomastic practice in Hungary, specifically by the use of ethnic names derived from those of the Turkic groups (Kabars, Pechenegs, Uzes, Berendei, Cumans) who had settled in Arpadian state over the first two centuries of that kingdom's existence. In fact, more personal and place names are of Turkic origin in Hungary than in any of the neighboring regions.<sup>250</sup>

<sup>244</sup> Mihályi de Apșa, *Diplome* (see above, n. 157), pp. 27 and 33; *DRH,C*, X, no. 344; XI, no. 489.

<sup>245</sup> Mihályi de Apșa, *Diplome*, pp. 264–265.

<sup>246</sup> A. Theiner, *Vetera monumenta Slavorum meridionalium historiam illustrantia*, I (Rome, 1863), p. 145; *DRH,C*, X, nos. 150 and 335; XI, nos. 53, 58, 80, and 241; XIII, no. 485.

<sup>247</sup> *Urkundenbuch* (see above, n. 175), III, eds. F. Zimmermann, C. Werner and G. Müller (Hermannstadt, 1902), no. 1379, pp. 165–166.

<sup>248</sup> *Исторические связи народов СССР и Румынии в XV-начале XVIII в. Документы и материалы*, I, 1408–1632, eds. Ia. S. Grosul, A. C. Oțetea, A. A. Novoselski, L. V. Cherepnin (Moscow, 1965), p. 63.

<sup>249</sup> Mihályi de Apșa, *Diplome*, pp. 370, 486, 563, and 639; Drăganu, *Români* (see above, n. 15), pp. 529–530.

<sup>250</sup> Rassovsky, “Печенегы, торки и берендеи” (see above, n. 79), 1933, pp. 24–26; Gy. Györfly, “Besenyök és magyarok,” *Kőrösi Csoma-Archivum*, I. Ergänzungsband (1939),



An equally large number personal names of Turkic origin were in existence in Bulgaria, as evidenced by fifteenth-century Ottoman tax rolls. Several hundreds of names of Turkic, Iranian, or Arabic origin have been found among the non-Slavic, non-Greek, and non-Christian names of thousands of tax-payers from the Bulgarian lands. Given that the earliest tax-rolls post-date by just a few decades the Ottoman conquest of the north-eastern area of the Balkan Peninsula, one cannot explain this phenomenon as a mere influence of Ottoman Turkish onomastics, although such an influence have been surmised for the later evidence. Most fifteenth-century personal names of Turkic origin must therefore be of Pecheneg and Cuman-Qipchaq origin, although for some of them a possible Proto-Bulgar origin cannot be excluded either.<sup>251</sup>

From among the numerous names of Bulgarian taxpayers, which are certainly of Turkic origin, the following are worth mentioning: *Asen, Baio, Bako, Bakhadyr, Bakl'o, Balaban, Balik, Balin, Balul, Balush, Balvan, Barak, Barso, Borcho, Boil, Buchak, Chakãr, Derman (Durman), Dogan, Dushman, Gogul, Iarul, Kabal, Kara, Karabash, Karadzha, Karaman, Khali, Khamza, Kitan, Koian, Kosha, Kragui, Kuman* (with the variants *Kumanin, Kumano*), *Kunbek (Kune, Kuni, Kuno), Kurd, (Kurt, Kurte), Malak, Negoï, Sari, Shishman, Tarla, Tatul, Tugrul, Turkhan, Ugrin*, etc.<sup>252</sup> The most common of all is *Kuman*, which appears 69 times in the Ottoman rolls. In addition, the variants *Kumanin* and *Kumano* appear four and three times, respectively.<sup>253</sup> Some of the names of Turkic origin derive from Turkic words for animals: *Barak* (dog), *Karadzha* (roe), *Koch* (ram), *Koyan* (hare), *Kurt* (wolf), *Malak* (buffalo), *Balaban, Chakãr, Dogan*, and *Kragui* (all meaning hawk or falcon).<sup>254</sup>

Theoretically, one should not exclude completely the possibility that the Ottoman Turks introduced ancient Turkic names to the Balkans. During the first fifty years of Ottoman occupation of Bulgaria, such names could have well been adopted by at least one or perhaps even two generations. However, it is more likely that the Turkic names mentioned above originated from the nomads in the steppe lands north of the Black and Caspian seas, especially from the Pechenegs, the Uzes,

---

no. 3, pp. 397–500; H. Göckenjan, *Hilfswölker und Grenzwachter im mittelalterlichen Ungarn* (Wiesbaden, 1972), pp. 235–239.

<sup>251</sup> Stoianov, *Bulgaro-Turcica*, 3–4, *История* (see above, n. 49), pp. 179–183.

<sup>252</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 184–297.

<sup>253</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 190.

<sup>254</sup> *Ibidem*, p. 299.

and especially the Cumans. In this respect, it is important to mention that historians have not reached an agreement as to the origin of the name of the Vlach dynasty of the Second Bulgarian Tsardom, *Asen / Asan*. Some believe it to be of Romanian<sup>255</sup> or Cuman,<sup>256</sup> others of Proto-Bulgar origin.<sup>257</sup>

\* \* \*

As a result of the lasting contacts between natives and nomad, many common words were adopted by speakers of Romanian from the Turkic idioms spoken by Pechenegs and Cumans. However, distinguishing those words from much later Tatar or Ottoman Turkish loans is very difficult, because little evidence exists of what the Romanian language looked like between the ninth and the thirteenth century. In addition, neither Pecheneg, nor Cuman are preserved, and the existence in *Codex Comanicus* of words matching others attested in Romanian is no proof that the latter are Cuman loans.

Attempts by Lazăr Şăineanu and Heinz F. Wendt to establish a chronology of Turkic loans into Romanian are not very convincing, and have been rejected even by most scholars, even those without any expertise in Turkology. Among lexemes of Cuman origin, Şăineanu

---

<sup>255</sup> C. R. v. Höfler, "Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiete der slavischen Geschichte, I, Die Walachen als Begründer des zweiten bulgarischen Reiches, der Asaniden, 1186–1257," *Sitzungsberichte der Philosophisch-Historische Classe der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften* 95 (1879), nos. 1–4, pp. 233–237 and 244; A. Hilckman, "Die Aromunen. Ein romanisches Volk im Herzen des Balkans," *Europa Ethnica* 25 (1968), no. 3, pp. 105–106; A. J. B. Wace and M. S. Thompson, *The Nomads of Balkans. An Account of Life and Customs Among the Vlachs of Northern Pindus* (London–New York, 1972), pp. 259–261; T. J. Winnifrith, *The Vlachs: The History of a Balkan People* (New York, 1987), pp. 113 and 116–117; Curta, *Southeastern Europe*, pp. 317, 357–365, and 434.

<sup>256</sup> Ph. Malingoudis, "Die Nachrichten des Niketas Choniates über die Entstehung des Zweiten Bulgarischen Staates," *Byzantina* 10 (1980), pp. 83–88; L. Rásonyi, "Turcs non-islamisés en Occident (Petchénègues, Ouzes et Qiptschaqs et leurs rapports avec les Hongrois)," in *History of the Turkic Peoples in the Pre-Islamic Period / Histoire des Peuples Turcs à l'Époque Pré-Islamique*, ed. H. R. Roemer, with the assist. of W.-E. Scharlipp (Berlin, 2000), p. 315; I. Vásáry, "Origins and possible Cuman affiliations of the Asen dynasty," *Archivum Ottomanicum* 13 (1993–1994), pp. 335–345 (reprint in idem, *Turks, Tatars and Russians in the 13th–16th Centuries* [Variorum Collected Studies Series] [Aldershot–Burlington, 2007], no. II); idem, *Cumans and Tatars. Oriental Military in the Pre-Ottoman Balkans, 1185–1365* (Cambridge, 2005), pp. 38–42; V. Stoyanov, "Kumans in Bulgarian history (eleventh–fourteenth centuries)," in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik (Ankara, 2002), pp. 682–683.

<sup>257</sup> S. Dimitrov, "A contribution to the study of the Bulgarian medieval Turkic language heritage," *Études balkaniques* 36 (2000), no. 4, p. 147.

listed *beci* (cellar), *dușman* (enemy), *olat* (land), and *toi* (climax).<sup>258</sup> In spite of Alexandru Philippide's critique of the criteria, which Lazăr Șăineanu had used to analyze those words,<sup>259</sup> most scholars continued to take them as pre-Ottoman Turkic loans.<sup>260</sup> Others have the following to the list of words of Pecheneg-Cuman origin: *bărăgan* (vast plain), *curgan* (hillock),<sup>261</sup> *odaie* (room), *cioban* (shepherd),<sup>262</sup> *gorgan* (hillock),<sup>263</sup> *buzdugan* (mace), *butuc* (log), *bălăban* (falcon), *medean* (square), *scrum* (ashes), *cinel* (riddle-me-ree),<sup>264</sup> *zăgan* (falcon), *sorliță* (falcon), *oium / uium* (tithe),<sup>265</sup> *bir* (tribute),<sup>266</sup> and others.

Heinz F. Wendt, on the other hand, went even farther when separating Pecheneg from Cumans, and both from Cuman-Tatar loans. In his opinion, the following Romanian words may be regarded as of Pecheneg origin: *boier* (boyard), *bunduc / bondoc* (chunk), *buzdugan* (mace), *caia* (horse shoe nail), *cioltor / șoltar* (a blanket used under the saddle), *colibă* (hut), *duium* (host), *dușman* (enemy), *foță* (kind of peasant's skirt) and *schingi* (torture). He also listed the following words as of Cuman origin: *agă* (agha), *bir* (tribute), *buzdugan* (mace), *caravană* (caravan), *casap*

<sup>258</sup> L. Șăineanu, *Influența orientală asupra limbii și culturii române*, I (Bucharest, 1900), pp. XVI–XVII. See also pp. XVIII–XIX, with a list of other words, such as *fanar*, *habar*, *maidan*, *taman*, or *sarai*.

<sup>259</sup> Philippide, *Originea*, II (see above, n. 59), p. 359.

<sup>260</sup> Boldur, *Istoria Basarabiei* (see above, n. 62), p. 86; S. Pușcariu, *Limba română*, I, *Privire generală*, ed. I. Dan (Bucharest, 1976), p. 314; idem, *Die rumänische Sprache*, trans. H. Kuen (Bucharest, 1997), p. 403; Iordan, "Sprachgeographisches" (see above, n. 59), p. 23; Șt. Pascu, "Condițiile istorice de dezvoltare a feudalismului timpuriu în secolele XI–XIII," in *Ist.Rom.*, II, p. 71; Ivănescu, *Istoria* (see above, n. 59), p. 437; I. Coteanu, M. Sala, *Etimologia și limba română* (Bucharest, 1987), p. 143; M. Sala, *De la latină la română* (Bucharest, 1998), p. 96.

<sup>261</sup> Iorga, *Histoire*, III, p. 41. On *Bărăgan* as a Turanian toponym, see C. Jireček, "Einige Bemerkungen über die Überreste der Petschenegen und Kumanen, sowie über die Völkerschaften der sogenannten Gagauzi und Surguči im heutigen Bulgarien," *Sitzungsberichte der königl. böhmischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, Classe für Philosophie, Geschichte und Philologie* (1889), p. 11; Gh. Popescu-Ciocănel, "Influența orientală în toponimia românească," *BSRG* 31 (1910), no. 2, pp. 31–33.

<sup>262</sup> C. C. Giurescu, "Împrumuturi cumane în limba română: *odaie* și *cioban*," *Studii și cercetări lingvistice* 12 (1961), no. 2, pp. 205–214; idem, *Formarea poporului român* (Craiova, 1973), p. 135; A. Pandrea, *Pecenegii și cumanii din Țara Loviștei* (Aalborg, 1994), p. 29.

<sup>263</sup> G. Mihăilă, *Dicționar al limbii române vechi (sfârșitul sec. X—începutul sec. XVI)* (Bucharest, 1974), pp. 105 and 208.

<sup>264</sup> Ivănescu, *Istoria*, p. 437.

<sup>265</sup> Diaconu, *Coumans*, pp. 23–24.

<sup>266</sup> N. Beldiceanu and I. Beldiceanu-Steinherr, "Notes sur le *bir*, les esclaves Tatars et quelques charges dans les Pays roumains," in *Raiyyet Rüsümü. Essays presented to Halil İnalçik on his Seventieth Birthday by his Colleagues and Students (= Journal of Turkish Studies* 10, 1986), pp. 8–10.

(butcher), *ceaun* (cast-iron kettle), *chişleac* (curds), *cioban* (shepherd), *ciorbă* (sour soup, borsch), *cislă* (chatter), *cârmăzuiu* (crimson), *cobuz* (shepherd's pipe), *cobză* (traditional string instrument), *cucă* (cap with ostrich feathers), *culă / hulă* (vault, fortified house), *dovleac* (pumpkin), *dughiană* (shop), *duium* (host), *dulamă* (homespun coat, cloth mantle), *dulap* (cupboard), *durbac* (wine press handle), *ecpaia* (stuff of a high official), *fanar* (lantern), *harbuz* (water melon), *iliş* (wheat tax), *irmezea* (pollard), *işlic* (fur cap), *leafă* (wages), *lefeziu* (hireling), *mahramă / maramă* (very thin raw silk), *maramă* (headkerchief), *maidan* (waste ground), *mascară* (buffoon), *naht* (cash), *odaie* (room), *paşă / başă* (pasha-basha), *pazmangiu*, *pil* (whip), *saca* (water cask), *sacnăsiu* (small waiting room), *said* (tacked seam), *siric* (oar), *sârmă* (wire), *sucman* (homespun peasant coat), *suliman* (rouge), *surlă* (fife), *şabacă* (embroidery), *şandrama* (shed), *talan* (anthrax), *tarabă* (counter, market stall), *tălmaci* (interpreter), *tărâm* (realm), *teanc* (heap), *teas* (tray), *toi* (climax), *a se tolăni* (to lie down), *tolbă* (quiver), *topuz* (bludgeon), *torbă* (purse), *tulbent* (bride veil), *vătaf*, *vătăşel* (bailiff), and *zarzără* (apricot).<sup>267</sup>

Recently, the problem of the ancient Turkic loans in Romanian as an indication of the language contact between Romanians and the Turkic nomads has been thoroughly studied by Alexander Coman.<sup>268</sup> According to Coman, more than 250 words in Romanian have clear correspondents in the language of the Cumans: *bacşiş* (tip), *bairam* (carousal), *bălăban* (falcon), *baltag* (battle-axe), *beci* (cellar), *boia* (dye), *bostan* (pumpkin), *butuc* (log), *cadână* (woman), *catifea* (velvet), *catâr* (mule), *cazan* (boiler, copper), *călimară* (ink-pot), *cerşetor* (beggar), *chibrit* (match), *chihlimbar* (amber), *chirpici* (adobe), *ciob* (potsherd), *conac* (manor), *dugheană* (booth), *duşman* (enemy), *fildes* (ivory), *ghiol* (salt lake), *guzgan* (rat), *hamal* (porter), *hambar* (barn), *han* (khan), *haraci* (tribute), *horă* (round dance), *iaz* (pond), *iurtă* (yurt), *lac* (lake), *lămâie* (lemon), *liman* (liman), *magiun* (jam), *mahala* (suburb), *maidan* (wasteland), *maimuţă* (monkey), *murdar* (dirty), *năut* (chick peas), *ovăz* (oats), *scrum* (ashes), *spanac* (spinach), *sufragerie* (dining-room), *sultan* (sultan), *tălmaci* (interpreter), *târânăcop* (pick-axe), *toiag* (staff), *tutun* (tobacco), and others.<sup>269</sup> However, it appears that many such words on Alexander Coman's list are neither Turkic, nor Turkish.

<sup>267</sup> Wendt, *Die türkische Elemente* (see above, n. 15), pp. 164–168. See also G. R. Solta, *Einführung in die Balkanlinguistik mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Substrats und des Balkanlateinischen* (Darmstadt, 1980), pp. 177–178, who regards the following words as of Pecheneg or Cuman origin: *boier*, *duşman*, *colibă*, *tălmaci*, *bir*, *dulap*, *tulipan*, *calfă*, *olac*.

<sup>268</sup> A. Coman, *Rumänen, Kumanen, Osmanen. Zur Geschichte und Sprachgeschichte Südosteuropas vom IX.–XX. Jhd.* (Fulda–Hermannstadt, 1998).

<sup>269</sup> *Ibidem*, pp. 536–541, 552–558.

For instance, *cireș* (cherry-tree), *cânepă* (hemp), and *purice* (flea) have all a demonstrable Latin origin, as they derive from *cerasius*, *cannabis*, and *pulicem*, respectively.<sup>270</sup> Other words on Coman's "Turkic" lists are also demonstrably Greek or Slavic loans.

Moreover, the idea of separating lexical elements of Pecheneg, Cuman, and Cuman-Tartar origin respectively, and of distinguishing all of them from Turkish-Ottoman loans must be treated with extreme suspicion. It is unlikely, for example, that language contact with the Turkic nomads may have been responsible for such loans as *buzdugan* (mace) and *caia* (horseshoe nail), as the archaeological evidence clearly shows that the nomads rarely used maces in battle and never shod their horses. In fact, there is only one mace head in a late thirteenth- or early fourteenth-century burial assemblage found in a barrow in Bălăbani (Cahul county, Republic of Moldova), a gold- and silver-plated artifact decorated with Arabic script elements (Fig. 25/9). This is a unique piece for the entire east and south-east European area, and most probably originated in the Near East.<sup>271</sup> As for such words as *bostan* (pumpkin), *doivleac* (pumpkin), *lămâie* (lemon), *spanac* (spinach) and *zarzără* (apricot), whatever their origin, they were certainly not borrowed by speakers of Romanian from communities of nomads with little, if any experience in horticulture and arboriculture.

If one adopts the principles of the *Wörter und Sachen* (words-and-things) approach to language contact, it is unlikely that Romanians would have borrowed words referring to trade, administration, furniture, fabrics and spiritual life from the Pechenegs or the Cumans. The same thing can be said about such terms as *bir* (tribute), which appears in Romanian, but also in Bulgarian and Serbian,<sup>272</sup> a word most likely derived from the Turkish verb *bérmek* / *vérmek* (to give).<sup>273</sup> True, the Bulgarians, as well as the Romanians in the lands outside the Carpathian Mountains may have well paid tribute to the Turkic nomads for quite some time. But the same cannot be true for the Serbs, who were subject only to the Ottoman rule. It seems illogical to assume that Romanians north

<sup>270</sup> Ibidem, pp. 537–538, 540.

<sup>271</sup> E. Sava, "Necropola tumulară Bălăbani—II," *AM* 19 (1996), pp. 192, 203, and 204; figs. 7/1 and 8.

<sup>272</sup> F. Miklosich, *Die türkischen Elemente in der südost- und osteuropäischen Sprachen* (Vienna, 1888), p. 87; A. Grannes, K. R. Hauge, H. Süleymanoğlu, *A Dictionary of Turkisms in Bulgarian* (Oslo, 2002), p. 32.

<sup>273</sup> Beldiceanu and Beldiceanu-Steinherr, "Notes sur le *bir*" (see above, n. 266), pp. 9–10.

of the Danube adopted the word *bir* (= tribute) from the Pechenegs and the Cumans, while Serbs, with whom the Romanians had many linguistic affinities, had it from the Ottomans.<sup>274</sup> A number of other terms of Turkic origin, which appear in both Romanian and South Slavic languages may have equally been borrowed from Ottoman Turkish, and not from the Turkic languages spoken by the nomads north of the Black Sea. In reality, there are still many unsolved problems regarding the language contact between speakers of Romanian and of pre-Ottoman Turkic languages.

It is perhaps worth mentioning in this context that terms in Romanian said to be of Pecheneg or Cuman origin rarely have corresponding matches in Hungarian. According to Géza Bárczi, Hungarian words that appear to have been adopted from Pecheneg and Cuman mercenaries in the royal army include the following: *bicsak* (penknife, corresponding to Romanian *brîșcă*, *briceag*), *buzogány* (mace), *csákány* (hack, pickaxe; corresponding Romanian *ciocan* ‘hammer’), *csökönyös* (restive), *csődör* (stallion), *csósz* (field-watchman), *kalauz* (conductor, guide; corresponding Romanian *călăuză* ‘guide’, Turkish *kylavuz* ‘guide’, Neo-Greek *kalouzis* ‘guide’), *kalóz* (helmsman), *kobak* (skull; corresponding Romanian *coboacă* ‘skull’ or *coboc* ‘goblet’, as well as Ukrainian *kobok* ‘goblet’), *koboz* (sound; Romanian *cobuz* ‘traditional string instrument’), *ködmön* (leather jacket), *komondor* (a breed of dogs), and possibly *balta* (axe; corresponding Romanian *baltag* ‘battle-axe’). Equally Turkic are the ethnic names *bese-nyő* (Pecheneg), *kun* (Cuman), and probably *örmény* (Armenian).<sup>275</sup> Lajos Tamás even believes that the Romanian word *călăuză* was adopted as a consequence of contact not with Turkic idioms spoken by Pechenegs, Oghuz, or Cumans, but with Hungarian.<sup>276</sup>

Language contact implies a two-way street model of transmission, in which Romanian words were also borrowed by speakers of Turkic idioms. Some proper names recorded in *Codex Comanicus* have therefore been given a Romanian origin.<sup>277</sup> Although the possibility of some

<sup>274</sup> V. Spinci, “Aspecte controversate ale contactelor românilor cu turanii în secolele X–XIII,” *AM* 19 (1996), pp. 272–273.

<sup>275</sup> G. Bárczi, *Geschichte der ungarischen Sprache*, trans. A. Friedrich (Innsbruck, 2001), pp. 157–158.

<sup>276</sup> L. Tamás, *Etymologisch-historisches Wörterbuch der ungarischen Elemente im Rumänischen (unter Berücksichtigung der Mundartwörter)* (London–The Hague–Paris [Budapest], 1967), p. 174.

<sup>277</sup> W. Tomaszek, *Zur Kunde der Hämus-Halbinsel* (Vienna, 1882), p. 51; Iorga, *Histoire*, III, p. 74.

Romanian influence on Turkic idioms cannot of course be discounted, the evidence presented so far for that case is not very convincing.

\* \* \*

Contacts between Turkic nomads and Romanians during the long period of the former's control of the Carpathian-Dniester region were not restricted to language. Most significant for cultural contacts seem to have been the typical features of the Turkic way of life, from horsemanship, to pastoralism and warlike nomadism. Given the emphasis the nomads placed on pastoralism, ensuring grazing grounds and water was a vital problem for them. This is in fact the explanation for the westward movement of the nomads of the Eurasian steppes, during which they occupied the lands of the sedentary agriculturists in the Bugeac and the Bărăgan. Removing the agricultural communities from that region was a long-drawn process. The farmers' life and activities must have been disturbed by the cyclic migrations of the nomads towards summer pasture lands. A substantial presence of the nomads in the area depended upon weather and vegetation. However, even without a massive occupation of the area, the frequent raids of the nomads against native settlements must have procured supplements for their subsistence economy and, at the same time, disturbed even more the life of the local population.

The traditional interpretation of the relations between natives and nomads maintained that the latter were a semi-parasitical society, unable to survive without food taken from sedentary communities, which they coerced into accepting all sorts of exactions. However, such an interpretation is contradicted by contemporary testimonies, which indicate that the nomads produced their own food. A semi-parasitical existence is actually inconceivable, since the Turkic nomads often lived at a considerable distance from farming communities. Raids on such communities were meant to procure a surplus, either of goods or of slaves. True, the nomads may have indeed imposed the payment of a tribute on the local population. Written sources often mention plundering expedition, as well as violence as means of extracting dues. By contrast, enslavement is rarely mentioned and seems to have been a much later in the development of nomad society. Romanians had to put up with plundering expeditions and enslavement. They must have therefore intermittently affected by the movements of various Turkic groups.

In order to understand the directions and consequences of the migration of the Turkic nomads, it is necessary to correlate the chronology of the settlements of the Dridu and Răducăneni cultures with that of burial assemblages attributed to the nomads. In many cases, both settlements and “nomadic” burial assemblages were found on one and the same site. For example, both Dridu settlements and burial assemblages attributed to the Turkic nomads have been found in Banca, Bârlad, Costești, Etulia, Gura Bâcului, Ogorodnoe, Olănești, Purcari, Strumoc, Suvorovo, Tudora and Umbrărești in southern Moldavia,<sup>278</sup> as well as Bucharest-Lacul Tei,” Jilava, Curcani, Oltenița, Lișcoteanca and Râmnicelu in eastern Wallachia.<sup>279</sup> In addition, Răducăneni settlements have been found in Banca, Băneasa and Bârlad.<sup>280</sup> Of all those cases, only in Curcani was a burial assemblage attributed to a nomadic horseman found in a pit dug through the occupation layer of a Dridu settlement, an observation which has led to the conclusion that the settlement was earlier than the grave.<sup>281</sup> At Cărnățeni, fragments of clay kettles found in the burial mound suggest that the grave co-existed with a Răducăneni settlements.<sup>282</sup> Almost all other burial assemblages have been assigned the same dates as those applying to Dridu and Răducăneni settlements, but no relative chronology could be established. Although the possibility cannot be excluded that in certain cases burial assemblages and settlements coincided in time, the evidence suggests that more than not burials post-dated settlements.

<sup>278</sup> G. F. Chebotarenko, “Материалы к археологической карте памятников VIII–X вв. южной части Пруто-Днестровского междуречья,” in *DPM*, pp. 216–218, 224, and 228–229; idem, “Поселение Этулия VI,” in *AIM (1972 g)* (1974), pp. 173–182; Coman, *Statormicie*, pp. 56 and 71.

<sup>279</sup> D. V. Rosetti, “Siedlungen der Kaiserzeit und der Völkerwanderungszeit bei Bukarest,” *Germania* 18 (1934), no. 3, pp. 209–210; S. Morintz and B. Ionescu, “Cercetări arheologice în împrejurimile orașului Oltenița (1958–1967),” *SCIV* 19 (1968), no. 1, pp. 96 and 103; N. Hartuche, “Preliminarii la repertoriul arheologic al județului Brăila,” *Istros* 1 (1980), pp. 325 and 328–329.

<sup>280</sup> V. Spinei, “Considerații cu privire la populația locală din zona centrală și meridională a Moldovei în secolele XI–XII,” *CI*, SN, 12–13 (1981–1982), pp. 176–179.

<sup>281</sup> M. Sâmpetru and D. Șerbănescu, “Mormîntul de călăreț nomad descoperit la Curcani,” *SCIV* 22 (1971), no. 3, p. 443.

<sup>282</sup> T. I. Demchenko, G. F. Chebotarenko, “Погребения кочевников в курганах нижнего Поднестровья,” in *Средневековые памятники Днестровско-Прутского междуречья*, eds. P. P. Bârnea (gen. ed.), G. F. Chebotarenko, A. A. Nudel'man, N. P. Tel'nov, E. N. Abyzova (Kishinev, 1988), p. 96.



The most important aspect of the relations between Romanians and Turkic nomads appears to have political. The nomads had a considerably negative influence on local society, and were primarily responsible for the delayed formation of local political entities. The principality led by Gelou in central Transylvania was attacked by Pechenegs at the time Gelou had to deal also with the Hungarian incursions from Pannonia. As the Turkic nomads appear to have been quite a threat for the region to the east of the Carpathian Mountains, the destruction in that region must have been that much greater. There is no indication of any attempt to organize a resistance, for whatever military capacity the Romanians may have had, it was hopeless in the face of the much greater military prowess of the steppe horsemen, who had managed to keep all the neighbouring states at bay. The Hungarians, who had been defeated by the Pechenegs, were capable of spreading terror in Germany, Italy and even in France during the first half of the tenth century. In their turn, the Pechenegs, the Uzes and the Cumans wrought havoc in Russia, Byzantium, Hungary, and Bulgaria. Because of the incursions of the nomads, the southern frontiers of the Rus' principalities shifted many miles to the north, while Byzantium lost for many years the control over the northern Balkan provinces.

Ninth- to eleventh-century settlements in the region outside the Carpathian Mountains cluster in the lowlands and in the hills (Fig. 2).<sup>283</sup> By contrast, the villages in Moldavia attested in the earliest charters of the late fourteenth and early fifteenth century (722 in total) have a very different distribution: there almost no such settlements in the Bugeac, the Bălți Plain, south of the Cogâlnic Plateau, and in the Covurlui Plain; in addition, fewer villages existed in Bessarabia than in the region between the Prut River and the Carpathian Mountains.<sup>284</sup> Judging by

---

<sup>283</sup> Fedorov, Chebotarenko, *Pamiatniki; Spinei, Moldova*, pp. 83–91 and figs. 2 and 5; Șt. Olteanu, *Societatea românească la cumpănă de milenii (secolele VIII–XI)* (Bucharest, 1983), pp. 24–25 (map) and 223–227; A. T. Smilenko, A. A. Kozlovskii, “Средневековые поселения в приморской части Днестро-Дунайского междуречья,” in *Днестро-Дунайские междуречье в I-начале II тыс. н.э.* (Kiev, 1987), pp. 67–83; Gh. Postică, *Civilizația medievală timpurie din spațiul pruto-nistrean (secolele V–XIII)* (Bucharest, 2007), pp. 100–108, 125–127, 325–326, 344, 348, 350, 380–383 (maps 6–9), and 404–405 (maps 30–31).

<sup>284</sup> P. P. Bârnea, “Карта сельских поселений Молдавии XV века,” *PGM* 1, 1966, pp. 112–119. See also L. L. Polevoi, *Очерки исторической географии Молдавии XIII–XV вв.* (Kishinev, 1979), pp. 18–27; S. Tabuncic, “Satele din răsăritul Țării Moldovei din secolele XIV–XV în lumina izvoarelor diplomatice interne,” *Revista de Istorie a Moldovei* (1998), nos. 3–4 (35–36), pp. 62–95; idem, “Habitatul rural din

the data from the census of 1772–1774 and from other sources,<sup>285</sup> the settlement pattern did not change much between *ca.* 1400 and *ca.* 1800. By contrast, there is a distinct difference between the fourteenth- to fifteenth- and the ninth- to eleventh-century settlement patterns. Between *ca.* 1000 and *ca.* 1400, the lowlands of southern Moldavia witnessed a complete demographic collapse, which could be more precisely dated to the twelfth and thirteenth century. No surprise, therefore, that the blank spots on the map of fourteenth- to fifteenth-century villages in Moldavia are precisely those, which had no forest cover, i.e., no natural protection for the human habitat. Moreover, the lowlands and hilly areas of Moldavia, otherwise famous for their chernozem soils, have also the grazing fields richest in grass, which was of course sought after by nomadic pastoralists.

Contacts between Romanians and nomads were not restricted to the displacement of the former, but also involved exactions in the form of tribute payments. Besides the demographic losses, the local society was also seriously affected economically. The native population forced to move out from the lowlands had to put up with the limited resources of the hilly and mountain regions to which it fled and which, though offering protection in densely forested areas, were nevertheless not as good for agriculture. With the lowlands north of the Danube and the Black Sea now occupied by nomads, the transhumant practices of the local pastoralists were interrupted. Also interrupted were the traditional trade and cultural relations with the Byzantine Empire. The economic stagnation caused by nomads had profound effects on the development of the local society and seem to have contributed to a delay of the social stratification. Any attempts at building stable polities were most likely nipped in the bud by the neighboring nomads, who regarded them as potential threats.

The Turkic nomads had a strong impact first and foremost upon the lowlands of southern Moldavia, as well as on the valleys of the Dniester and Prut rivers and on those of their major tributaries (Fig. 4). Moving northwards along those valleys, the nomads brought under their control the hilly regions of the eastern half of the Carpathian-Dniester region. The only protection against them was offered in the

---

răsăritul Țării Moldovei în secolele XIV–XVI, oglindit în izvoarele arheologice,” in *Civilizația medievală și modernă în Moldova. In honorem Demir Dragnev*, ed. L. Zabolotnâi (Chișinău, 2006), pp. 34–47.

<sup>285</sup> P. G. Dmitriev, *Народонаселение Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1973), p. 39 ff.

densely forested areas of the hilly and mountain regions of northern and western Moldavia, which the nomads had no desire to control.

Much like other mountain ranges of Europe (Alps, Pyrenees, Balkans, Caucasus), the Carpathian Mountains may have offered protection during foreign invasions, thus preventing the extermination or assimilation of the local population. By contrast, the lowlands offered no protection and no possibility to organize a military resistance. Indeed, most peoples inhabiting the lowlands exclusively (from Scythians and Sarmatians, to Huns, Avars, Khazars, Pechenegs, Uzes, and Cumans) were vulnerable to attacks by stronger neighbors.

The contrast between the lowlands in southern Moldavia and the hilly or mountainous regions in northern-central Moldavia is underlined also by the linguistic difference between the sub-dialects of Romanian spoken in those two regions, especially from a phonetical and lexical point of view. While the northern-central sub-dialect shows strong similarities with that of Transylvania, the one in southern Moldavia is closer to the sub-dialect of Wallachia.<sup>286</sup> This may be the indirect result of the late migrations of the Turkic nomads, which had led to drastic demographic changes within the region inhabited primarily by Romanians.

Nicolae Iorga believed that the relations between Romanians and nomads were of cooperation, a phenomenon which, according to him, strengthened the local elite and encouraged the creation of the political entities in the region between the Carpathian Mountains, the Black Sea, and the Danube River.<sup>287</sup> Iorga's interpretation was most likely influenced by developments in the Balkans, where the natives co-operated with the Pechenegs, thus effectively escaping the control of the Byzantine administration for a few decades at the end of the eleventh century. Similarly, the Cumans appear to have had a significant role in the creation of the Second Bulgarian Tsardom under the Asenid dynasty. By the same token, the during the second half of the thirteenth century, Bulgarian tsars were members of the Terter dynasty of Cuman origin. Local rulers in fourteenth-century Dobrudja—Balica

<sup>286</sup> Ivănescu, *Istoria* (see above, n. 59), pp. 460–462.

<sup>287</sup> Iorga, "Imperiul cumanilor" (see above, n. 64), pp. 97–103; idem, *Histoire*, III, pp. 34–44 and 68–74. For a correction of Iorga's views on this matter, see Șt. Ștefănescu, "Începuturile statelor românești în viziunea lui Nicolae Iorga," *RI*s 24 (1971), no. 4, pp. 673–681; H. H. Stahl, *Studii de sociologie istorică* (Bucharest, 1972), pp. 54–55; Ș. Papacostea, "Nicolae Iorga și evul mediu românesc," in Iorga, *Studii asupra evului mediu românesc* (see above, n. 64), pp. 418–420.

(Balyk-<sup>2</sup>) and Dobrotich—were also of Turkic origin. Iorga's interpretation found support in the putative Turkic origin of *Basarab(a)*, the name of the first voivode of independent Wallachia. Following Iorga, many historians therefore assumed that the leading dynasty of Wallachia was of Cuman origin.<sup>288</sup> However, as in the case of the earliest recorded Hungarian chieftains (Arpad, Almos, Zoltan), whose names are clearly Turkic, the name *Basarab* is no indication that the voivode with that name was a Cuman. *Basarab* was a fairly common name among Romanians of medieval Transylvania and Wallachia. It also appears in place names often associated with high-altitude mountains,<sup>289</sup> regions which the Turkic nomads rarely, if ever, visited. Even if the ancestors of Basarab “the Founder” were of Turkic origin, he certainly regarded himself as a member of the Romanian political elite of Wallachia. This is substantiated by the fact that after the great Mongol invasion of 1236–1242, Turkic groups north of the Lower Danube had completely lost their political independence.

Without excluding the possibility that some Cumans may have been assimilated into the ruling class of the local society, it is important to note in this respect that, judging by the existing evidence, the number of boyars of undoubtedly Turkic origin is very small. It is therefore difficult to accept the idea that the Turkic nomads may have had a significant role in the rise of the medieval Romanian states and in their internal political development. Boyars serving at the Moldavian or Wallachian courts, who had names of Turkic origin, appear only occasionally in documents. Names of Turkic origin are also found in the lower strata of society. Among those named *Coman* during the

---

<sup>288</sup> L. Rásonyi, “Contributions à l'histoire des premières cristallisations d'État des Roumains. L'origine des Basaraba,” *AECO* 1 (1935), nos. 1–4, pp. 243–253; idem, *Tarihte Türklük* (Ankara, 1971), pp. 150–151; idem, *Hidak a Dunán* (see above, n. 16), pp. 141–142. See also A. Veress, “Originea stemelor Țărilor Române,” *RIR* 1 (1931), no. 2, p. 230; Gy. Györfy, “Adatok a románok XIII. századi történetéhez és a román állam kezdetéhez (II),” *Történelmi szemle* 7 (1964), nos. 3–4, pp. 543–544; L. Krástev, “Une hypothèse concernant l'origine du voïévode valaque Jean Basarab (env. 1324–1352),” *Études balkaniques* 36 (2000), no. 4, pp. 108–116; Vásáry, *Cumans and Tatars* (see above, n. 256), pp. 151–155; N. Djuvara, *Thocomerius—Negru Vodă, un voivod de origine cumână la începuturile Țării Românești*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 2007), pp. 160–166.

<sup>289</sup> Drăganu, *Românii* (see above, n. 15), pp. 520–527. It is quite possible that the name of *Martinus Basababa*, a merchant of Durazzo mentioned in a document of 1249, was also a distorted version of *Basaraba*. See Ducellier, *La façade maritime* (see above, n. 188), p. 193. The name *Basarab* appears in Slovakia. See Y. Blaškovič (Kumanoglu), “Çekoslovakya topraklarında eski türklerin izleri,” in *Reşid Rahmeti Arat için* (Ankara, 1966), p. 349.

fourteenth and fifteenth century, almost half were Gypsy slaves. This is of course no mirror of social reality, for many more boyars, especially those serving at the princely court, were mentioned in the documents than commoners or Gypsy slaves. If personal names were an indication of ethnic background—an otherwise questionable assumption—then it appears that most Cumans were slaves, not boyars. It is also very unlikely that the names of Tatar slaves appearing in fifteenth-century documents referred to persons who were not only of Tatar, but also of Cuman origin.<sup>290</sup>

Comparisons between the co-existence of natives and nomads in the region outside the Carpathian Mountains with the situation in the neighboring areas have proved to be irrelevant. In Bulgaria, Hungary, Rus', and Georgia, the relations between natives and nomads were often strengthened by dynastic alliances, and seem to have been perceived by both sides as mutually profitable.<sup>291</sup> Marrying into the Cuman aristocracy seems to have been a relatively common practice in Rus'<sup>292</sup> and Bulgaria.<sup>293</sup> That to the author of an apocryphal chronicle written in eastern Bulgaria during the second half of the twelfth century,<sup>294</sup> Bulgarians and Cumans were alike simply reflects the significance of the Turkic involvement in the political developments in the Balkans, as well as the existence of close ties between the Cuman and the Bulgarian aristocracies.<sup>295</sup>

In principle, it is of course possible that similar relations of cooperation existed between Romanians and Turkic nomads, but they certainly were not as extended as in the Bulgarian or Rus' case. In the early

---

<sup>290</sup> B. P. Hasdeu, "Cetatea Neamțul," in idem, *Studii de lingvistică și filologie*, 1, ed. G. Brâncuș (Bucharest, 1988), pp. 143–144; Al. I. Gonta, *Satul în Moldova medievală. Instituțiile* (Bucharest, 1986), p. 312; Beldiceanu and Beldiceanu-Steinherr, "Notes sur le *bir*" (see above, n. 266), pp. 12–14.

<sup>291</sup> P. B. Golden, "Nomads and their sedentary neighbors in pre-Činggisid Eurasia," *AEMA* 7 (1987–1991), pp. 72–73.

<sup>292</sup> V. V. Trepavlov, "Eastern influences: The Turkic nobility in medieval Russia," *Coexistence* 32 (1995), pp. 9–16; S. V. Gurkin, "К вопросу о русско-половецких матримониальных связях," *Донская археология* 2 (1999), pp. 40–50; P. P. Tolochko, *Кочевые народы степей и Киевская Русь* (Kiev, 1999), pp. 146, 149, 152, and 154.

<sup>293</sup> P. Diaconu, "Cumanii și originea familiei lui Dobrotiță," *Revista istorică* 5 (1994), nos. 3–4, pp. 283–288; I. A. Biliarsky, "The despots of mediaeval Bulgaria," *Byzantinobulgarica* 9 (1995), pp. 150–151.

<sup>294</sup> *Сказаніе Исаіе пророка како възнесенъ дыть аггеломъ до 3-го невесы*, ed. L. Stojanović, in *Споменик Српска Краљевска Академија*, III (Belgrade, 1890), pp. 190–193.

<sup>295</sup> S. Dimitrov, "The Bulgarian apocryphal chronicle and Bulgarian ethnic history," *Études balkaniques* 29 (1993), no. 4, p. 97 ff.

eleventh century, Romanians (*Blökumenn*) are known to have fought side by side with Pechenegs against Iaroslav the Wise, the prince of Kiev. No evidence exists of a similar military cooperation between Romanians and Cumans, if one leaves aside the possibility that Lazarus, the chieftain mentioned in the context of the Byzantine expedition against the Cumans north of the Danube was in fact a Romanian. However, there is plenty of evidence for the military assistance the Cumans offered to the Asenid rebels and, later, rulers of the Second Bulgarian Empire. It is also possible to imagine cooperation between Romanians and newly converted Cumans in the Cuman Bishopric.

Prior to the Mongol invasion, at a time when the Turkic nomads controlled the steppe corridor north of the Black and Caspian seas, and no Romanian polities are known to have been created in their vicinity, Romanians were forced into political submission. The nomadic aristocracy must therefore have not regarded any alliance with the local natives as particularly profitable. Conversely, when the Cumans and other Turkic groups submitted to the Golden Horde, the emerging Romanian elites could not have gained much from any form of political cooperation with them. Moreover, it is unlikely that the Mongols would have tolerated any special arrangements between subject populations, which were not controlled from Sarai.

True, contacts between Romanians and Turkic nomads were not limited to violence and exaction of tribute. They must have also involved mutual, advantageous and peaceful relations. Since both Romanians and nomads were engaged in trade with the neighboring polities, it was only natural for them to have also established exchange relations between them. That no artifacts of native, local origin have so far been found in burial assemblages attributed to the nomads is an indication not of the absence of such relations, but of the conservatism of burial customs. By contrast, artifacts produced by nomads have been found on local settlement sites: an iron snaffle-bit with a rigid-bar mouth-piece and movable rings in Simila (Vaslui county) (Fig. 7/1); a bronze bladed pendant in Brăhășești (Galați county); and an oval antler pendant with open-work decoration in Murgeni (Vaslui county) (Romania), etc. The bridle bit was found during excavations, the other artifacts were found during field survey signaling the existence on those respective sites of tenth- to eleventh-century settlements. A bronze pendant, very similar to that from Brăhășești, was discovered on a Dridu settlement site excavated in Bucharest (suburb of Străulești). The iron snaffle-bit and the antler pendant may be regarded as local replicas of nomadic artifacts,

but the bronze bladed pendants were without any doubt produced by the nomads. By contrast, arrow heads and other artifacts, which have initially been regarded as evidence of contact with the nomads,<sup>296</sup> are now interpreted as of local origin.

All in all, the number of artifacts of alleged Turkic origin found on local, Romanian settlement sites is thus small, and cannot be cited as evidence of either extensive or permanent contacts between natives and nomads. That nomads often preferred to raid local communities, when not exacting tribute from them, could not have encouraged peaceful exchange relations with the natives. The very existence within local communities of a surplus destined for exchange remains doubtful, given the subsistence character of the local economy.

One persistent stereotype among historians of eastern European countries is that the civilization of the sedentary populations was superior to that of the more primitive nomads. This may, to some extent, be true about Byzantium, Kievan Rus', and Bulgaria. However, it is difficult to find any similarity between the developments to those societies and that of the Romanian in the Carpathian-Danube area. Nor can it be assumed, on the other hand, that the society of the Turkic nomads in the steppe lands to the west from the Dnieper was identical to that of the nomads in central Asia or in the area between the Volga and the Dnieper rivers. Judging from the archaeological evidence of burial assemblages, tribal chieftains in the lands to the west from the Dnieper river were much poorer than their counterparts ruling to the east of that river: very few gold or silver artifacts, no Runic inscriptions, and only a very small number of stone statues. This contrast must have had a significant influence upon contacts between natives and nomads in the area north of the Danube Delta.

An important issue pertaining to the problem of the relations between nomads and natives is that of the sedentized Turkic groups which were later absorbed into the local population. There is no agreement among historians as to the nature and degree of that assimilation process.

As Friedrich Ratzel once noted, the abandonment of the nomadic way of life in favor of sedentarization was nowhere a spontaneous process or even one willingly initiated by nomads themselves (*Der Übergang vom Nomadismus zur Ansässigkeit ist nirgends, von wir ihn beobachten können,*

---

<sup>296</sup> Spinei, "Relations" (see above, n. 75), pp. 271–273.

*freiwillig*).<sup>297</sup> This is also true for the Turkic nomads of the steppe lands to the north from the Black and Caspian seas. As long as a tribal union maintained its autonomy and control over pasture lands sufficiently large for the survival of its members, there no incentive to switch to a different lifestyle. Even when groups of nomads were forced to abandon their lands in the steppe by stronger neighbors, they stubbornly clung to nomadism and opposed any attempts at sedentization. This is true for the Pechenegs who migrated to Byzantium and for the Cumans who went to Hungary, Byzantium and the Latin Empire. Nomadic groups were forced to accept a semi-sedentary and, later, sedentary form of life at the same time as their conversion to Christianity, only when they detached themselves completely from the world of the steppes and when under pressure from the states to which they had fled in the first place. In the western steppe lands of Eurasia, a shift to agriculture and a semi-nomadic lifestyle is known to have taken place only in a few cases, where at stake was the survival of impoverished small communities. It is important to note that all known cases post-date the Mongol invasion and its dramatic consequences for the deterioration of the economic well-being of certain nomadic communities in the steppe.

When considering the possibility of sedentization of Turkic nomads in the lands north of the Lower Danube, one must therefore take into account the obstinate rejection of any other forms of life than traditional nomadism. Up to 1200, no political force existed in the area, which could have forced them to abandon nomadism and adopt a sedentary mode of life. Nor the internal developments of the nomadic society leading to any such development. This changed suddenly during the second quarter of the thirteenth century, together with the Hungarian encroachment into the region outside the Carpathian Mountains and the concurrent dissolution of the Cuman tribal confederacies, The Cumans in the Cuman Bishopric who had accepted to convert to Christianity must have also been expected to adopt, at least in part, a sedentary form of life. The papal letters of 1228 mention that they had expressed a wish to build “towns and villages,”<sup>298</sup> in other words to abandon nomadism. Six years later, Pope Gregory IX reminded the

---

<sup>297</sup> F. Ratzel, *Anthropogeographie*, I, *Grundzüge der Anwendung der Erdkunde auf die Geschichte*, 4th ed. (Stuttgart, 1921), p. 104.

<sup>298</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, p. 111; *Acta Honorii III (1216–1227) et Gregorii IX (1227–1241) e registris Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegit* A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicum iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes, Series III, III*) (Vatican, 1950), pp. 208–209.



heir to the Hungarian throne of his promise to build a church for the Cumans,<sup>299</sup> a promise which the prince would only later fulfill, given that the Cumans had not in fact completely abandon a nomadic mode of life. Even if all Cumans would have been willing to give up nomadism, the Mongol invasion, a few years later, must have effectively prevented the completion of the process.

After the Mongol conquest of Desht-i Qipchaq, those Cumans who did flee away from the Mongols fell under their rule. No emigration from the lands under the control of the Golden Horde was tolerated by the khans, and fearing Mongol reprisals, their neighbors refused to accept any significant number of refugees from the Mongol territories.

In Hungary, archaeological excavations of Cuman cemeteries have well documented the gradual transition from paganism and nomadism to Christianity and sedentary life.<sup>300</sup> By contrast, there is no indication of such a shift in the region outside the Carpathian Mountains. The non-Christian features of burials excavated in Hansca, which have

<sup>299</sup> Hurmuzaki, I, p. 131; *Acta Honorii III*, pp. 283–284.

<sup>300</sup> A. Pálóczi-Horváth, “A felsőszentkirályi kun sírlelet,” *Cumania* 1, *Archaeologia* (1972), pp. 177–204; idem, “Situation des recherches archéologiques sur les Comans en Hongrie,” *AOH* 27 (1973), no. 2, pp. 201–209; idem, “Bericht über die Ausgrabung des mittelalterlichen Dorfes Szentkirály,” *Folia Archaeologica* 26, (1975), pp. 183–190; idem, “A Lászlófálván 1969–1974—ben végzett régészeti ásatások eredményei,” *Cumania* 4, *Archaeologia* (1976), pp. 275–309; idem, *Petchenegén, Kumanen, Jassen. Steppenvölker im mittelalterlichen Ungarn* (Budapest, 1989), pp. 111–120; idem, *Hagyományok, kapcsolatok és hatások a kunok régészeti kultúrájában* (Karcag, 1994); L. Selmeczi, “Angaben und Gesichtspunkte zur archäologischen Forschung nach den Kumanen im Komitat Szolnok,” *A Móra Ferenc Múzeum Évkönyve* (1971) [1974], no. 2, pp. 187–197; idem, “The settlement structure of the Cumanian settlers in the Nagykunság,” in *Hungaro-Turcica. Studies in honour of Julius Németh*, ed. G. Káldy-Nagy (Budapest, 1976), pp. 255–262; idem, *Régészeti—néprajzi tanulmányok a jászokról és a kunokról* (Debrecen, 1992), pp. 5–47 and 61–99.

For the Cuman integration in Hungary, see also Gy. Györffy, “A kunok feudalizálódása,” in *Tanulmányok a parasztság történetéhez Magyarországon a 14. században*, ed. Gy. Székely (Budapest, 1953), pp. 248–275; M. P. Murgulija, V. P. Shusharin, *Половцы, Грузия, Русь и Венгрия в XII–XIII веках* (Moscow, 1998), pp. 173–183; N. Berend, “How many medieval Europas? The ‘pagans’ in Hungary and regional diversity in Christendom,” in *The Medieval World*, eds. P. Linchan and J. L. Nelson (London–New York, 2001), pp. 77–92; eadem, “Cuman integration in Hungary,” in *Nomads in the Sedentary World*, eds. A. M. Khazanov and A. Wink (Richmond, Surrey, 2001), pp. 103–127; eadem, *At the Gate of Christendom. Jews, Muslims and “Pagans” in Medieval Hungary, c. 1000–c. 1300* (Cambridge, 2001), pp. 244–267; A. B. Malyshev, “Половцы в Венгрии и Золотая Орда во второй половине XIII в.,” in *Дешт-и-Кипчак и Золотая Орда в становлении культуры евразийских народов*, ed. D. M. Nasilov (Moscow, 2003), pp. 76–83.

been attributed to the nomads,<sup>301</sup> are more likely an indication of populations of eastern origin, which lived in close proximity to native communities and were on their way to complete sedentization. Judging by the existing evidence, therefore, the number of nomads who became sedentary among the Romanian communities was small. The settlement of Turks among the natives did not involve large groups, but, perhaps, only isolated families, whose assimilation took place within a relatively short time.

Despite more than four hundred years of co-habitation within the Carpathian-Dniester region, there was no real symbiosis between Romanians and Turkic nomads. Those two ethnic communities, so different from each other from an ethnic, religious and cultural point of view, as well as in regards to their way of life, economic system and socio-political organization, may have lived in relatively close quarters, but in fact did not intermingle very much. Given the violence of contact, the nomads had a certain negative influence upon the development of the Romanian society, but not on its structure. The alterity of the nomadic form of life made it impossible for the natives to adopt any sustainable models of social organization from their Turkic neighbors. Perhaps the conservatism of the Romanian society may also be responsible for the relative lack of influence of the nomads on the natives. If the Turkic nomads exercised any influence on the natives worth considering, it was not as artisans or artists, but as shepherds and warriors. This in fact explains why one of the only direct influences upon Romanians was a form of warfare dominated by light cavalry, an influence to which the Mongols, however, must have contributed as well.

The nomads were content with plundering and exacting tribute, without any attempt to alter the traditional organization of the natives, their occupations and social structure. They also seem to have tolerated the lifestyle and the religion of their subject people. To some extent, the nomads were ready to offer military protection to the natives, provided that the latter continued to produce goods to pay their tribute.<sup>302</sup>

The Romanian influence on the Turkic nomads was even less marked. This is also to be explained in terms of the conservatism of the nomadic society, as well as a consequence of the relative short period any one

---

<sup>301</sup> Fedorov-Davydov, *Kochevniki*, p. 263; G. F. Chebotarenko, *Население центральной части Днестровско-Прутского междуречья в X–XII вв.* (Kishinev, 1982), p. 56.

<sup>302</sup> Stahl, *Studii de sociologie istorică* (see above, n. 285), pp. 45–48.

of the Turkic groups spent in the steppes north of the Lower Danube before moving farther. From a Romanian point of view, contact with all those groups must have been the same, given that they all shared in the same mode of life. Though for many centuries, various groups of nomadic horsemen came to control the lowlands north of the river Danube, no symbiosis with the sedentary agricultural populations took place. Paradoxically, such a symbiosis did occur in regions, which the nomads did not control politically. At the western end of the Eurasian steppe corridor, the lowlands of the Lower Danube were not particularly favorable to nomadic pastoralists, who, when pushed by other steppe nomads, often took refuge in the Balkans or in the Pannonian Plain. There they found more or less favourable conditions, and there they turned sedentary and were eventually assimilated by natives by virtue of a true symbiosis. The lowlands outside the Carpathian Mountains were abandoned by defeated hordes as soon as new stronger nomads approached. The local communities were thus forced into a precarious mode of life, marked by lack of political stability and impoverishment, as a result of repeated invasions. Such circumstances could not possibly stimulate the intruders to join the Romanians in any way.

## SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY

### *Primary Sources*

#### A. *Written Sources*

- Aalto, P., Pekkanen, T., *Latin Sources on North-Eastern Eurasia*, I (Wiesbaden, 1975).
- Abou Chamah, *Le livre des deux Jardins. Histoire des deux règnes, celui de Nour ed-Dîn et celui de Salah ed-Dîn*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, IV (Paris, 1898).
- Aboulfêda, *Géographie*, II, 1, ed. T. J. Reinaud (Paris, 1848).
- Abou'l-Fedâ, *Annales*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, I (Paris, 1872).
- Abou'l Fida, *Autobiographie, extraite de sa Chronique*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, I (Paris, 1872).
- Abu'l-Fida' = *The Memoirs of a Syrian Prince. Abu'l-Fidâ', Sultan of Hamah (672–732/1273–1331)*, ed. P. M. Holt (Wiesbaden, 1983).
- Aboul-Ghâzi Bêhâdour Khan, *Histoire des Mongols et des Tatares*, II, ed. P. I. Desmaisons (St. Petersburg, 1874). See also: Абуль-Гази.
- Абуль-Гази, *История*, ed. G. Sablukov, in *Библиотека восточных историков*, co-ord. I. Berezin, III, 1 (Kazan, 1854). See also: Aboul-Ghâzi Bêhâdour Khan.
- Abraham Jakobsens *Bericht über die Slavenlande vom Jahre 973*, in *Widukinds Sächsische Geschichte*, trans. R. Schottin, 2nd ed. W. Wattenbach (Leipzig, 1891).
- Abramowski, W., "Die chinesischen Annalen des Môngke. Übersetzung des 3. Kapitels des Yüan-shih," *Zentralasiatische Studien* 13 (1979), pp. 7–71.
- Abu Hamid el Granadino, *Relación de viaje por tierras eurasiáticas*, ed. C. E. Dubler (Madrid, 1953).
- Abû'l-Faraj, Gregory. See: Gregory Abû'l-Faraj.
- Acta Albaniae Veneta saeculorum XIV et XV*, II, 8, ed. J. Valentin (Munich, 1970).
- Acta Clementis PP V (1303–1314) e regestis Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegerunt* F. M. Delorme et A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes*, Series III, VII/I) (Vatican, 1955).
- Acta Honorii III (1216–1227) et Gregorii IX (1227–1241) e regestis Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegit* A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes*, Series III, III) (Vatican, 1950).
- Acta Ioannis XXII (1317–1334) e regestis Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegit* A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes*, Series III, VII/II) (Vatican, 1952).
- Acta Romanorum pontificum ab Innocentio V ad Benedictum XI (1276–1304) e regestis Vaticanis aliisque fontibus collegerunt* F. M. Delorme et A. L. Tăutu (*Pontificia commissio ad redigendum codicem iuris canonici orientalis, Fontes*, Series III, V/II) (Vatican, 1954).
- Actes d'Esphignéou, Texte*, ed. J. Lefort (*AA*, VI) (Paris, 1973).
- Actes d'Ivroun*, II, *Du milieu du XI<sup>e</sup> siècle à 1204, Texte*, eds. J. Lefort, N. Oikonomidès, D. Papachryssanthou, in collab. with V. Kravari and H. Métrévéli (*AA*, XVI) (Paris, 1990); III, *De 1204 à 1328, Texte*, eds. J. Lefort, N. Oikonomidès, D. Papachryssanthou, V. Kravari, in collab. with H. Métrévéli (*AA*, XVIII) (Paris, 1994).
- Actes de Lavra*, I, *Des origines à 1204, Texte*, eds. P. Lemerle, A. Guillou, N. Svoronos, in collab. with D. Papachryssanthou (*AA*, V) (Paris, 1970); II, *De 1204 à 1328, Texte*, eds. P. Lemerle, A. Guillou, N. Svoronos, D. Papachryssanthou (*AA*, VIII) (Paris, 1977); III, *De 1329 à 1500, Texte*, eds. P. Lemerle, A. Guillou, N. Svoronos, D. Papachryssanthou (*AA*, X) (Paris, 1979).

- Actes de Saint-Pantéléemôn*, eds. P. Lemerle, G. Dagron, S. Ćirković (AA, XII) (Paris, 1982).
- Actes de Xénophon, Texte*, ed. D. Papachryssanthou (AA, XV) (Paris, 1986).
- Actes de Xéropotamou, Texte*, ed. J. Bompaire (AA, III) (Paris, 1964).
- Ademari Cabannensis *Chronicon*, ed. P. Bourgain (*Corpus Christianorum. Continuatio Mediaevalis*, CXXIX, Ademari Cabannensis *Opera omnia*, I) (Turnhout, 1999).
- Akropolites = Georgii Acropolitae *Annales*, in *PG*, CXL (1887).
- Alberic de Trois Fontaines = *Chronica Albrici monachii Trium Fontium*, ed. P. Scheffer-Boichorst, in *MGH,SS*, XXIII, ed. G. H. Pertz (1874), pp. 631–950.
- Albert de Bezano. See: Lazarov, I., Lungarova, P.
- Almagià, R., *Planisferi, carte nautiche e affini dal secolo XIV al XVII esistenti nella Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana* (= *Monumenta cartographica Vaticana*, I) (Vatican, 1944).
- Die altosmanischen anonymen Chroniken*, II, ed. Fr. Giese (*Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, XVII, 1) (Leipzig, 1925).
- Ammiani Marcellini *Rerum gestarum libri qui supersunt*, ed. W. Seyfarth, II (Leipzig, 1978).
- Ananias of Širak, *The Geography (Ašxarhac'oyc')*. *The Long and the Short Recensions*, ed. R. H. Hewsen (Wiesbaden, 1992).
- Annales Alamannici*, in *MGH,SS*, I, ed. G. H. Pertz (1826).
- Annales Altahenses Maiores*, in *MGH,SS*, XX, ed. G. H. Pertz (1868).
- Annales Colonienses maximi*, ed. K. Pertz, in *MGH,SS*, XVII, ed. G. H. Pertz (1861). See also: *Chronica regia Coloniensis*.
- Annales ex annalibus Iuwavensibus antiquis excerpti*, ed. H. Besslau, in *MGH,SS*, XXX, 2 (1926).
- Annales Fuldenses*, in *MGH,SS*, I, ed. G. H. Pertz (1826). See also: *The Annals of Fulda*.
- Annales Hildesheimenses*, in *MGH,SS*, III, ed. G. H. Pertz (1839).
- Annales Otakariani*, in *MGH,SS*, IX, ed. G. H. Pertz (1851).
- Annales Posenienses*, ed. E. Madzsar, in *SRH*, I.
- Annales Sangallenses Maiores*, in *MGH,SS*, I, ed. G. H. Pertz (1826).
- Annales Weingartenses*, in *MGH,SS*, I, ed. G. H. Pertz (1826).
- The Annals of Fulda*, trans. T. Reuter (Manchester and New York, 1972). See also: *Annales Fuldenses*.
- Anonymi Geographi *Descriptio Europae Orientalis* (IIR, II) (1934).
- Anonymi Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, ed. H. Hagenmeyer (Heidelberg, 1890).
- Anonymi Leobicensis *Chronicon*, in *Scriptores rerum Austriacarum*, I, ed. H. Pez (Lipsiae, 1721), col. 751–972.
- Anonymus = P. Magistri qui Anonymus dicitur, *Gesta Hungarorum*, eds. A. Jakubovich – D. Pais, in *SRH*, I. See also: *Die "Gesta Hungarorum" des anonymen Notars*.
- Anonymus = *Die "Gesta Hungarorum" des anonymen Notars*, ed. G. Silagi, with the collab. of L. Veszprémy (Sigmaringen, 1991).
- Ansbert (Der sogenannte). See: *Historia de expeditione Friderici imperatoris* (Der sogenannte Ansbert).
- Antonovici, I., *Documente bârlădene*, IV (Bârlad, 1924).
- Armenia and the Crusades*. See: Matthew of Edessa.
- Армянские источники о монголах извлечения из рукописей XIII–XIV вв.*, ed. A. G. Galstian (Moscow, 1962).
- Attaliates = Michaelis Attalioetae *Historia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1835).
- Axinte Uricariul = Acsintî Uricariul, *A doua domnie a lui Neculai Alecsandru Mavrocordat VV în Moldova*, in *Cronicele României sau letopisețele Moldaviei și Valahiei*, II, 2nd ed. M. Kogălniceanu (Bucharest 1872).
- Axinte Uricariul, *Cronica paralelă a Țării Românești și a Moldovei*, I, ed. G. Ștrempel (Bucharest, 1993). See also Acsintî Uricariul.

- Ayyubids, Mamlukes and Crusaders*. See: Ibn al-Furat.  
*The Baburnama. Memoirs of Babur, Prince and Emperor*, ed. W. M. Thackston (Washington, D.C.—New York—Oxford, 1996).
- Bacon, Francis = Francisci Baconi de Verulamio *Novum Organum. Pars Contemplativa* (Lipsiae, 1840).
- Bacon, Roger, *The Opus majus*, ed. J. H. Bridges, I (Oxford, 1897).
- Backmund, N., *Monasticon Praemonstratense*, III (Staubing, 1956).
- al-Bakri = *Extrait d'Abou-Obeid Al-Bécri*, in [Ch. F.] Defrémery, *Fragments de géographes et d'historiens arabes et persans inédits relatifs aux anciens peuples du Caucase et de la Russie Méridionale* (offprint from *Journal Asiatique*, 4th Ser., 13, 1848; 14, 1849) (Paris, 1849).
- al-Bakuvi = Abd ar-Rashid al-Bakuvi, *Китаб талхис ал-асар ва 'аджа'иб ал-малик ал-каххар* ("Сокращение [книги о] 'Памятникаха и чудеса царя могучело'"), ed. Z. M. Buniatov (Moscow, 1971).
- Balard, M. (ed.), *Gènes et l'Ostre-mer*, II, *Actes de Kilia du notaire Antonio di Ponzò (1360)* (Paris—The Hague—New York, 1980).
- (ed.), *Notai genovesi in Oltremare. Atti rogati a Cipro da Lamberto di Sambuceto (11 ottobre 1296–23 giugno 1299)* (Genoa, 1983).
- Balta, E., *L'Eubée à la fin du XV<sup>e</sup> siècle. Économie et population. Les registres de l'année 1474* (Athens, 1989).
- Bandini, Marco, *Codex Vizitarea generală a tuturor Bisericilor Catolice de rit roman din Provincia Moldova, 1646–1648*, ed. T. Diaconescu (Iași, 2006). See also: Urechia, V. A. (ed.).
- Bang, W., Rachmati, G. R., "Die Legende von Oguz Qagan," *Sitzungsberichte der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philos.-hist. Kl.* 25 (1932).
- Barbaro, Josaphat, *Viaggio alla Tana*, in *Барбаро и Контарини о России*, ed. E. Ch. Skrzhinska (Leningrad, 1971).
- Bar-Hebraeus. See: Gregorii Abulpharagii sive Bar-Hebraei *Chronicon Syriacum*.
- Bălan, T., *Documente bucovinene*, II (Cernăuți, 1934); IV (Cernăuți, 1938); V (Cernăuți, 1939); VI (Bucharest, 1942).
- , *Documente bucovinene*, ed. I. Caproșu (Iași), VII, 1464–1740 (2005); VIII (1741–1799) (2006); IX (1800–1899) (2006).
- al-Becri. See: al-Bakri.
- Bendefy, L., *Fontes authentici itinera (1235–1238) fr. Iuliani illustrantes*, in *AECO* 3 (1937), 1–4, pp. 1–51.
- Benedictus Polonus, *Relatio*, in *SF*, pp. 131–144.
- Benjamin of Tudela, *The Itinerary*, ed. M. N. Adler (London, 1907).
- Benjamin de Tudela, *Itinerario*, ed. L. Riber, *Boletín de la Real Academia Española* 35 (1956).
- Benjamin von Tudela, *Buch der Reisen (Sefār ha-massa'ot)*, I, *Text*, trans. R. P. Schmitz (Frankfurt am Main—Bern—New York—Paris, 1988).
- Bennett Durand, D., *The Vienna-Klosterneuburg Map Corpus of the Fifteenth Century* (Leiden, 1952).
- Benvenuto de Brixano, notaio in Candia, 1301–1302*, ed. R. Morozzo della Rocca (Venice, 1950).
- Bernard Gui (Bernardus Guidonis). See: Stephanus de Salaniaco et Bernardus Guidonis.
- Beševliev, V., "Les inscriptions protobulgares (Suite)," *Byzantion* 28 (1958) (*Mélanges Rodolphe Guiland*), pp. 255–323.
- , *Die protobulgarischen Inschriften* (Berlin, 1963).
- Bezviconi, Gh. G., *Călători ruși în Moldova și Muntenia* (Bucharest, 1947).
- Bielski, M., *Kronika* (Warsaw, 1764).
- Birdzhandi, *Аджа'иб ал-булдан*, in *Материалы по истории киргизов и Киргизии*, I, ed. V. A. Romodin (Moscow, 1973).
- Blake, R. P., Frye, R. N., "Notes on the Risala of Ibn-Fadlan," *Byzantina Meta-byzantina* 1 (1949), no. 2, pp. 7–37.

- Boga, L. T., *Documente basarabene, V, Hrisoave și cărți domnești (1507–1594)* (Chișinău, 1929); VII (1604–1653) (Chișinău, 1929).
- Bogdan, I., *Documente și regeste privitoare la relațiile Țării Românești cu Brașovul și Ungaria în secolul XV și XVI* (Bucharest, 1902).
- , *Documentele privitoare la relațiile Țării Românești cu Brașovul și cu Țara Ungurească în sec. XV și XVI, I, 1413–1508* (Bucharest, 1905).
- , *Documentele lui Ștefan cel Mare, I, II* (Bucharest, 1913).
- Boscovich, R. G., *Giornale di un viaggio da Constantinopoli in Polonia* (Bassano, 1784).
- Boucher de Perthes, *Voyage à Constantinople*, trans. I. Conca, *AD* 4 (1923), no. 2, pp. 179–203.
- Brockelmann, C., “Mahmud al-Kašghari über die Sprachen und die Stämme der Türken im 11. Jahrh.,” *Körösi Csoma-Archivum* 1 (1921), no. 1. See also: Mahmūd al-Kāšrārī.
- Bruno von Querfurt = *Epistola Brunonis ad Henricum regem*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, I, ed. A. Bielowski (Lwów, 1864).
- Brunonis *Vita S. Adalberti*, in *MGH, SS*, IV, ed. G. H. Pertz (1841).
- Bryennius, Nicephorus = Nicephori Bryennii *Commentarii*, ed. A. Meinecke (Bonn, 1836).
- Bulat, T. G., *Documentele mănăstirii Văratec* (Chișinău, 1939).
- Bullarium franciscanum Romanorum pontificum* (Rome), I (1759); II (1761); IV (1768); V (1898); VI (1902) (I–IV—ed. I. H. Sbaralea; V–VII—ed. C. Eubel).
- Bullarium franciscanum Romanorum pontificum. Epitome et supplementum quattuor voluminum priorum*, ed. C. Eubel (Ad Claras Aquas, 1908).
- Byzantine Monastic Foundation Documents. A Complete Translation of the Surviving Founder's Typika and Testaments*, 2, eds. J. Thomas and A. Constantinides Hero, with the assistance of G. Constable (Washington, D.C., 2000).
- Die Byzantiner und ihre Nachbarn*. See: Constantinus Porphyrogenitus.
- C. de Bridia Monachi, *Hystoria Tartarorum*, ed. A. Önnersfors (Berlin, 1967). See also: *Христианский мир и Великая Монгольская империя*.
- Caffari ejusque continuatorum *Annales Genuenses ab anno MC. ad annum usque MCCXCIII*, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, VI, ed. L. A. Muratorius (Mediolani, 1725).
- Calendarii Cracoviensis notae historicae ad annorum dierumque ordinem redactae*, ed. W. Bruchnalski, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, VI (Cracow, 1893).
- Camariano, N., “La Chronique de la Morée sur les combats de Jean Assen avec les Latins,” *Balkanica* 7 (1944), no. 2.
- Canard, M., “La relation du voyage d’Ibn Fadlān chez les Bulgares de la Volga,” *Annales de l’Institut d’Études Orientales*, Alger, 16 (1958), pp. 41–146.
- Canta, I., *Letopisețul Țerei Moldovei*, in *Cronicele României sau letopisețele Moldaviei și Valahiei*, 2nd ed. M. Kogălniceanu, III (Bucharest, 1874). See also: Pseudo-Enache Kogălniceanu, Ioan Canta, *Cronici moldovenești*.
- Cantacuzenus, John = Ioannis Cantacuzeni *Historiarum libri IV*, ed. L. Schopen, I (Bonn, 1828).
- Cantemir, D., *Descrierea Moldovei*, trans. Gh. Guțu, commentary N. Stoicescu (Bucharest, 1973).
- Catalog de documente din Arhivele Statului Iași, I, Moldova, 1398–1595*, ed. V. Isac (Bucharest, 1989).
- Catalogul documentelor moldovenești din Arhiva Istorică Centrală a Statului*, II, eds. M. Regleanu, I. Gheorghian, V. Vasilescu, and D. Duca (Bucharest, 1959).
- Catalogul documentelor moldovenești din Direcția Arhivelor Centrale*, IV, eds. M. Regleanu, D. Duca Tincușcu, V. Vasilescu, C. Negulescu (Bucharest, 1970).
- Catalogul documentelor moldovenești din Direcția Arhivelor Centrale*, Supl. I, eds. M. Soveja, M. Regleanu, D. Tincușcu, M. Ciucă, G. Birceanu (Bucharest, 1975).
- Catalogul documentelor românești din Arhivele Statului de la Orașul Stalin, I, 1521–1799*, eds. C. A. Stoide, M. Runceanu, C. Mușlea, D. Limona, I. Danciu, V. Vinițchi, E. Barna, and V. Stanciu (Bucharest, 1955).

- Catalogul documentelor românești din Arhivele Statului Brașov*, II (1800–1825), eds. C. A. Stoide, M. Runceanu, D. Limona, C. Mușlea, I. Danciu, V. Stanciu, Șt. Suci (Bucharest, 1975).
- Catalogul documentelor Țării Românești, 1369–1600. Secția istorică de la Arhivele Statului din București*, ed. I.-R. Mircă (Bucharest, 1947).
- Catalogul documentelor Țării Românești din Arhivele Statului* (Bucharest), II, 1601–1620, eds. M. Soveja, D. Duca-Tinculescu, R. Dragomir (1974); III, 1621–1632, eds. D. Duca-Tinculescu, M.-D. Ciucă (1978); IV, 1633–1639 (1981); V, 1640–1644, eds. M.-D. Ciucă, D. Duca-Tinculescu, S. Vătafu-Găitan (1985); VI, 1645–1649, eds. M.-D. Ciucă, S. Vătafu-Găitan (1993).
- Călători străini despre Țările Române* (Bucharest), I (1968)—ed. M. Holban; II (1970); III (1971); IV (1972); V (1973); VII (1980); VIII (1983); IX (1997); X, 1 (2000); X, 2 (2001)—eds. M. Holban, M. M. Alexandrescu-Dersca Bulgaru, P. Cernovodeanu; VI (1976)—eds. M. M. Alexandrescu-Dersca Bulgaru, M. A. Mehmet.
- Călători străini despre Țările Române în secolul al XIX-lea*, SN, I (1801–1821), eds. G. Filitti, B. Marinescu, Ș. Rădulescu-Zoner, M. Stroia, co-ord. P. Cernovodeanu (Bucharest, 2004).
- Cecaumenus. See: Kekaumenos.
- Cedrenos. See: Kedrenos.
- Chalkokondyles, Laonikos = Laonic Chalcocondil, *Expuneri istorice*, ed. V. Grecu (Bucharest, 1958). See also: Nicoloudis, N. [ed.], Laonikos Chalkokondyles.
- Chiparissa, N., *Cronicul*, in *Cronicarii greci care au scris despre români în epoca fanariotă*, ed. C. Erbicănu (Bucharest, 1888).
- Choniates, Nicetas = Nicetae Choniatae *Historia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1835).
- Choniates, Nicetas = Nicetae Choniatae *Orationes et epistulae*, ed. I. A. v. Dieten (Berolini et Novi Eboraci, 1972).
- Chronica regia Coloniensis (Annales maximi Colonienses) cum continuationibus in monasterio S. Pantaleonis scriptis aliisque historiae Coloniensis monumentis*, ed. G. Waitz (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis recusi* [18]) (Hannoverae, 1880). See also: *Annales Colonienses maximi*.
- Chronici Hungarici composito saeculi XIV*, ed. A. Domanovszki, in *SRH*, I.
- The Chronicle of Morea*. See: *Crusaders as conquerors*.
- Chronicon Budense*, ed. I. Podhradzky (Budae, 1838).
- Chronicon Claustro-Neoburgense ab anno aerae Christianae CCXVIII ad annum ejusdem MCCCXLVIII*, in *Scriptores rerum Austriacarum*, I, ed. H. Pez (Lipsiae, 1721), cols. 433–492.
- Chronicon Claustro-neoburgense*, in *Rerum Austriacarum Scriptores*, I, ed. A. Rauch (Vindobonae, 1793), pp. 1–126.
- Chronicon Colmariense, 1218–1303*, in *Fontes rerum Germanicarum*, ed. J. F. Boehmer, II (Stuttgart, 1845).
- Chronicon Dubnicense*, in *Historiae Hungaricae Fontes Domestici*, III, ed. M. Florianus (Quinque-Ecclesiis, 1884).
- Chronicon Henrici de Mügelu germanice conscriptum*, ed. E. Travnik, in *SRH*, II.
- Chronicon Hungarorum Posoniense Maius (Chronica Regni Hungariae)*, in *Analecta monumentorum Hungariae historicorum literariorum maximum inedita*, ed. F. Toldy (Pesthini, 1862).
- Chronicon Monacense*, ed. A. Domanovszky, in *SRH*, II.
- Chronicon monasterii Mellicensis*, in *Scriptores rerum Austriacarum*, I, ed. H. Pez (Lipsiae, 1721), cols. 162–288.
- Chronicon pictum Vindobonense (IIR, XI)* (1937).
- Chronicon Zagrabense cum textu Chronici Varadiensis collatum*, ed. E. Szentpétery, in *SRH*, I.
- Chronique de Morée (1204–1305)*, ed. J. Longnon (Paris, 1911).
- Cinnamus, John. See: Kinnamos, Ioannes.
- Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlan, 1403–1406*, trans. G. Le Strange (London, 1928).
- Clavijo, Roy Gonzales de, *Itinéraire de l'ambassade espagnole à Samarcande en 1403–1406*, ed. I. Sreznevski (St. Petersburg, 1881) (= idem, *The Spanish Embassy to Samarcand, 1403–1406* [Variorum Reprints], London, 1971).



- , *La route de Samarkand au temps de Tamerlan. Relation du voyage de l'ambassade de Castille à la cour de Timour Beg, 1403–1406*, ed. L. Kehren (Paris, 1990).
- Codex comanicus*. Sec: Drimba, V.
- Codex Cumanicus, Cod. Marc. Lat. DXLIX in Faksimile*, ed. K. Grønbech (Copenhagen, 1936). See also: Drimba, V., *Codex comanicus*.
- Codex diplomaticus Hungariae ecclesiasticus ac civilis*, ed. G. Fejér (Budae), III, 1 (1829); IX, 4 (1834).
- Codex diplomaticus regni Croatiae, Dalmatiae et Slavoniae* (Zagreb), ed. T. Smičiklas, III (1905); IV (1906); V (1907), VII (1909).
- Codex diplomaticus regni Poloniae et magni ducatus Litvaniae*, I, ed. M. Dogiel (Vilnae, 1758).
- Codicis epistolaris saeculi decimi quinti*, II, ed. J. Szujski (*Monumenta medi aevi historica res gestas Poloniae illustrantia*, II) (Cracow, 1876).
- Colecția de documente de la Arhivele Statului Bacău (1424–1848)*, eds. D. Zaharia, E. Chiriacescu, C. Cărămidaru (Bucharest, 1976).
- Colecția de documente de la Filiala Arhivelor Statului, județul Bacău, 1400–1864. Catalog*, ed. D. Zaharia (Bucharest, 1986).
- Comnena, Anna = Anne Comnène, *Alexiade*, ed. B. Leib (Paris), I (1937); II (1943), III (1945).
- Condica lui Constantin Mavrocordat*, II, ed. C. Istrati (Iași, 1986).
- Constantinus Porphyrogenitus, *De administrando imperio* [I], eds. G. Moravcsik – R. J. H. Jenkins (Washington, 1967); II, *Commentary*, ed. R. J. H. Jenkins (London, 1962).
- Constantinus Porphyrogenitus = *Die Byzantiner und ihre Nachbarn. Die De administrando imperio genannte Lehrschrift des Kaisers Konstantinos Porphyrogennetos für seinen Sohn Romanos*, trans. and eds. K. Belke and P. Soustal (Vienna, 1995).
- Constantinus Porphyrogenitus = Константин Багрянородный, *Об управлении империй*, eds. G. G. Litavrin, A. P. Novosel'tsev (Moscow, 1989).
- Continuatio Claustroneoburgensis VI*, in *MGH, SS, IX*, ed. G. H. Pertz (1851).
- Continuatio Vindobonensis*, in *MGH, SS, IX*, ed. G. H. Pertz (1851).
- Continuation de Guillaume de Tyr, de 1229 à 1261, dite du manuscrit de Rothelin*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens occidentaux*, II (Paris, 1859).
- Corpus of Byzantine Seals from Bulgaria*, 1, *Byzantine Seals with Geographical Names*, ed. I. Jordanov (Sofia, 2003).
- Costăchescu, M., *Documentele moldovenești înainte de Ștefan cel Mare* (Iași), I (1931); II (1932).
- , *Documentele moldovenești de la Bogdan voevod (1504–1517)* (Bucharest, 1940).
- , *Documentele moldovenești de la Ștefăniță voevod (1517–1527)* (Iași, 1943).
- Costin, Miron, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei de la Aron vodă încoace*, in idem, *Opere*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1958).
- Costin, Nicolae, *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei de la zidirea lumii pînă la 1601 și de la 1709 la 1711* (*Opere*, I), eds. C. A. Stoide and I. Lăzărescu (Iași, 1976).
- Cromer, Martin = Martini Cromeri *De origine et rebus gestis Polonorum libri XXX* (Basileae, 1554).
- Cronica anonimă a Țerei Moldovei*, trans. Al. Amiras, in *Cronicele României sau letopisețele Moldaviei și Vălahiei*, III, 2nd ed. M. Kogălniceanu (Bucharest 1874).
- Cronica Ghiculeștilor. Istoria Moldovei între anii 1695–1754*, eds. N. Camariano and A. Camariano-Cioran (Bucharest, 1965).
- Cronica Moldovei de la Cracovia. Secolul XIII-începutul secolului XVII. Textul inedit al unui autor polon anonim*, ed. C. Rezachevici (Bucharest, 2006).
- Cronica Monemvasiei* = *Τὸ περί τῆς κτίσεως τῆς Μονεμβασίας χρονικόν/Cronica Monemvasiei*, trans. M. Alexianu and R. Curcă (Iași, 2005).
- Cronici turcești privind Țările Române. Extrase* (Bucharest), I, eds. M. Guboglu and M. Mehmet (1966); II, ed. M. Guboglu (1974).
- Cronicile slavo-române din sec. XV–XVI, publicate de Ion Bogdan*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1959).

- Crusaders as Conquerors. The Chronicle of Morea*, ed. H. E. Lurier (New York–London, 1964).
- Csánki, D., *Magyarország történelmi földrajza a Hunyadiak korában*, I (Budapest, 1890).
- Curiose Beschreibung von der Moldau und Wallachey*, trans. S. Mehedinti, in *BSSR* 16 (1895), nos. 1–2, pp. 115–120.
- Dalché, P. G., “Une géographie provenant du milieu des marchands toscans (début XIV<sup>e</sup> siècle),” in *Società, istituzioni, spiritualità. Studi in onore di Cinzio Violante*, I (Spoleto, 1994), pp. 433–443.
- Dandolo (Dandolo), Andreas = Andreae Danduli *Chronicon Venetum*, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, XII, ed. L. A. Muratorius (Mediolani, 1728), pp. 13–416.
- Dandolo (Dandolo), Andreas = Andreae Danduli *Chronica per extensum descripta aa. 46–1280 d.C.*, ed. E. Pastorello, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, NE, XII (Bologna, 1938).
- Dinić, M., *Из Дубровачког архива*, I (Belgrade, 1957).
- Długosz, Jan = Joannis Dlugossi seu Longini *Historiae Polonicae libri XII*, ed. A. Przewdziecki (Cracow), I (= *Opera omnia*, X) (1873); III (= *Opera omnia*, XII) (1876); V (= *Opera omnia*, XIV) (1878).
- Długosz, Jan = Ioannis Dlugossii *Annales seu cronicae incliti regni Poloniae*, [I,] ed. I. Dabrowski (Warsow, 1964).
- Documenta Catholicorum Moldaviae, A. Documente românești, I. Fondul Episcopiei Romano-Catolice Iași*, 1 (1627–1750), eds. S. Văcaru and A. Despinescu (Iași, 2002).
- Documenta historiam Valachorum in Hungaria illustrantia usque ad annum 1400 p. Christum*, curante E. Lukinich et adiuvante L. Gáldi, eds. A. Fekete Nagy and L. Makkai (Budapest, 1941).
- Documenta Romaniae Historica* (Bucharest), *A. Moldova*, I (1975); XXI (1971); XXII (1974)—eds. C. Cihodaru, I. Caproșu, and L. Șimanschi; II (1976)—ed. L. Șimanschi, in collab. with G. Ignat and D. Agache; III (1980)—eds. C. Cihodaru, I. Caproșu, and N. Ciocan; VI (2008); XXVI (2003)—ed. I. Caproșu; XVIII (2006)—eds. I. Caproșu and V. Constantinov; XIX (1969)—ed. H. Chirca; XXIII (1996)—eds. L. Șimanschi, N. Ciocan, G. Ignat, and D. Agache; XXIV (1998)—eds. C. Cihodaru and I. Caproșu; XXV (2003)—eds. N. Ciocan, D. Agache, G. Ignat, and M. Chelcu; XXVII (2005)—eds. P. Zahariuc, C. Chelcu, M. Chelcu, S. Văcaru, N. Ciocan, D. Ciurea; *B. Țara Românească*, I (1966)—eds. P. P. Panaitescu and D. Mioc; II (1972); VI (1985); VII (1988)—eds. Șt. Ștefănescu and O. Diaconescu; III (1975); IV (1981)—eds. D. Mioc and collab.; V (1983)—eds. D. Mioc and M. Adam-Chiper; VIII (1996)—eds. D. Mioc and I. Constantinescu; XI (1975)—eds. D. Mioc, Șt. Ștefănescu, M. Adam, C. Bălan, M. Bălan, S. Caracaș, R. Cămărășescu, O. Diaconescu, C. Fotino; XXI (1965); XXII (1969); XXIII (1969)—ed. D. Mioc; XXIV (1974)—eds. D. Mioc, S. Caracaș, and C. Bălan (1974); XXV (1985)—eds. D. Mioc, M. Bălan, R. Cămărășescu, and C. Fotino; XXXI (2003); XXXV (2003)—eds. V. Barbu, C. Ghițulescu, A. Iancu, Gh. Lazăr, O. Rizescu; XXXII (2001)—eds. V. Barbu and Gh. Lazăr, in collab. with O. Rizescu; XXXIII (2006)—eds. Gh. Lazăr, C. Vintilă-Ghițulescu, A. Iancu; XXXIV (2002)—eds. V. Barbu, Gh. Lazăr, O. Rizescu; XXXVI (2006)—eds. O. Rizescu and M.-D. Ciucă; XXXVII (2006)—eds. V. Barbu, C. Bălan, F. M. Constantin; *C. Transilvania*, X (1977)—red. Șt. Pascu, eds. S. Belu, I. Dani, A. Răduțiu, V. Pervain, K. G. Gündisch; XI (1981)—red. Șt. Pascu, eds. I. Dani, A. Răduțiu, V. Pervain, K. G. Gündisch, S. Belu; XII (1985)—red. Șt. Pascu, eds. A. Răduțiu, V. Pervain, S. Belu, I. Dani, M. Wolf; XIII (1994)—eds. I. Dani, K. Gündisch, V. Pervain, A. Răduțiu, A. Rusu, S. Andea; *D. Relații între Țările Române*, I (1977)—eds. Șt. Pascu, C. Cihodaru, K. G. Gündisch, D. Mioc, V. Pervain.
- Documente din Basarabia*, eds. V. Puiu, C. Tomescu, Șt. Berechet, Șt. Ciobanu (Chișinău, 1928).
- 534 documente istorice slavo-române din Țara Românească și Moldova privitoare la legăturile cu Ardealul. 1346–1603*, ed. Gr. G. Tocilescu (Bucharest, 1931).

- Documente privind istoria României* (Bucharest), *A. Moldova, veacul XVI*, I (1953); II (1951); III (1951); IV (1952); *veacul XVII*, I (1952); II (1953); III (1954); IV (1956); V (1957); *C. Transilvania, veacul XI, XII și XIII*, I (1951).
- Documente privind istoria României, A, v. XIV–XVII (1384–1625). Indicele numelor de persoane*, red. Al. I. Gonța, ed. I. Caproșu (Bucharest, 1995).
- Documente privind istoria României, B, v. XIII–XVI, Indicele numelor de locuri*, eds. I. Donat, S. Caracaș, Gh. Cioran, N. Ghinea, M. Kandel, Gr. Popescu, and Th. Rădulescu (Bucharest, 1956).
- Documente privind istoria României, B, v. XVII (1601–1625), Indicele numelor de locuri*, eds. I. Donat, S. Caracaș, N. Ghinea, and M. Kandel (Bucharest, 1960).
- Documente privitoare la istoria orașului Iași* (Iași), I, *Acte interne (1408–1660)* (1999)—eds. I. Caproșu and P. Zahariuc; II (1661–1690) (2000); III (1691–1725) (2000); IV (1726–1740) (2001); V (1741–1755) (2001); VII (1771–1780) (2005); VIII (1781–1790) (2006)—ed. I. Caproșu.
- Documente privitoare la istoria Țării Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea, 1751–1774. Cărți domnești și zapise (Moldova în epoca feudalismului, IX)*, eds. L. Svetlicinâi, D. Dragnev, E. Bociarov, co-ord. D. Dragnev (Kishinev, 2004).
- Documente privitoare la istoria Țării Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea (1775–1786). Cărți domnești și zapise (Moldova în epoca feudalismului, X)*, eds. L. Svetlicinâi, D. Dragnev, E. Bociarov, co-ord. D. Dragnev (Kishinev, 2005).
- Документы на половецком языке XVI в. (Судебные акты Каменец-Подольской армянской общины)*, ed. and trans. T. I. Grunin, red. E. V. Sevortian (Moscow, 1967).
- Domeniul mănăstirilor din Bucovina în secolele XIV–XVIII. Inventar de documente*, eds. M.-Șt. Ceaușu, M. Chelcu (Iași, 2007).
- Dörrie, H., “Drei Texte zur Geschichte der Ungarn und Mongolen,” in *Nachrichten der Akademie der Wissenschaften in Göttingen, Philologisch-historische Klasse* (1956), no. 1, pp. 125–202.
- Drimba, V., *Codex comanicus* (Bucharest, 2000). See also: *Codex Cumanicus*.
- Dröper, S. (ed.), *Die Geschichte der Mongolen des Hethum von Korykos (1307) in der Rückübersetzung durch Jean le Long, Traitéz des estas et des conditions de quatorze royaumes de Aise (1351)* (Frankfurt am Main, 1998). See also: Hayton, Hethum von Korykos and Hetoum.
- Dubravius, Io., *Historia Boiémica* (Basileae, 1575).
- Duca di Candia. Quaternus consiliorum (1340–1350)*, ed. P. R. Vidulich (Venice, 1976).
- Ebendorfer, Thomas, *Cronica Austriae*, ed. A. Lhotsky, in *MGH, Scriptores rerum Germanicarum*, NS, XIII (Berlin–Zurich, 1967).
- Édrisi, *Géographie*, ed. A. Jaubert (*Recueil de voyages et de mémoires*) (Paris), I (1836); II (1840). See also: Konovalova, I. G. [ed. and trans.], *Ал-Идриси*.
- Egils saga einhenda ok Ásmundar berserkjabana*, in *Drei lygisogur*, ed. Å. Lagerholm (Halle/Saale, 1927).
- Эймундова сага*, trans. O. I. Senkovskii, in *Древнесеверныя саги и песни скальдовъ въ переводахъ русскихъ писателей*, ed. I. Glazunov (St. Petersburg, 1903), pp. 31–61. See also: *Eymundar Saga, Сага об Эймунде* and *Vikings in Russia. Yngvar's Saga and Eymund's Saga*.
- Emonis Chronicon*, ed. L. Weiland, in *MGH, SS*, XXIII, ed. G. H. Pertz (1874), pp. 465–523.
- Ермолинская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXIII (St. Petersburg, 1910).
- L'estoire de Eracles empereur et de la conquete de la terre d'Outremer*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens occidentaux*, II (Paris, 1859).
- Étienne Asolik de Tarôn, *Histoire universelle*, ed. Fr. Macler, II (Paris, 1917).
- Eudes de Deuil, *La Croisade de Louis VII, roi de France*, ed. H. Waquert (Paris, 1949). See also: Odo of Deuil.
- Eustathii metropolitae Thessalonicensis *Opuscula*, ed. T. L. F. Tafel (Frankfurt, 1832).

- Eymund's Saga*. See: *Vikings in Russia. Yngvar's Saga and Eymund's Saga*.  
*Eymundar Saga*, in *Antiquités russes d'après les monuments historiques des Islandais et des anciens Scandinaves*, II, ed. C. C. Rafn (Copenhagen, 1852), pp. 173–211. See also: *Эймундова сага*, *Сага об Эймунде* and *Vikings in Russia. Yngvar's Saga and Eymund's Saga*.  
*Fontes historiae Daco-Romanae* (Bucharest), I—eds. V. Iliescu, V. C. Popescu, Gh. Ștefan (1964); II—eds. H. Mihăescu, Gh. Ștefan, R. Hâncu, Vl. Iliescu, V. C. Popescu (1970); III—eds. Al. Elian and N.-Ș. Tanașoca (1975); IV—eds. H. Mihăescu, R. Lăzărescu, N.-Ș. Tanașoca, T. Teoteoi (1982).  
Frähn, C. M., *Ibn-Fosẓlan's und anderer araber Berichte über die Russen älterer Zeit* (St. Petersburg, 1823). See also: Ibn Fadlan's *Reisebericht*.  
al-Garnati = *Путешествие Абу Хамида ал-Гарнати в Восточную и Центральную Европу (1131–1153 гг.)*, eds. O. G. Bolshakov, A. L. Mongait (Moscow, 1971).  
*Die Geheime Geschichte der Mongolen*, ed. W. Heissig (Düsseldorf, 1981). See also *Histoire secrète des Mongols* and *The Secret History of the Mongols*.  
Gelzer, H., “Ungedruckte und wenig bekannte Bistümerverzeichnisse der orientalischen Kirche, I,” *BZ* 1 (1892).  
*Géographes grecs*, I, *Introduction générale*. Ps.-Scymnos: *Circuit de la Terre*, ed. and trans. D. Marcotte (Paris, 2000).  
*The Geography of Strabo*. See: Strabo, *The Geography*.  
George Acropolites. See: Acropolites = Georgii Acropolitae *Annales*.  
Georges Pachymères. See: Pachymères = Georges Pachymères.  
Georgii Monachi *Vitae imperatorum recentiorum*, in Teophanes continuatus, Ioannes Cameniata, Symeon Magister, Georgius Monachus, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1838).  
*The Georgian Chronicle. The Period of Giorgi Lasha*, ed. S. Qaukhchishvili, trans. K. Vivian (Amsterdam, 1991).  
Gerardus de Fracheto *Vita fratrum Ordinis Praedicatorum*, ed. B. M. Reichert (*Monumenta Ordinis Fratrum Praedicatorum Historica*, I) (Romae–Stuttgartiae, 1897).  
*Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum. The Deeds of the Franks and the other Pilgrims to Jerusalem*, ed. R. Hill (London–Edinburgh–Paris–Melbourne–Toronto–New York, 1962).  
*Die “Gesta Hungarorum” des anonymen Notars*. See: Anonymus.  
*Gesta principum Polonorum/The Deeds of the Princes of the Poles*, trans. and eds. P. W. Knoll and F. Schaer (Budapest–New York, 2003).  
Ghillebert de Lannoy, *Oeuvres*, ed. Ch. Potvin (Louvain, 1878).  
Ghibănescu, Gh., *Surete și izvoade* (Iași), II (1907); V (1908); VIII (1914); XVIII (1927); XXI (1929).  
Giovanni di Marino Gondola (probabilmente), *Croniche ulteriori di Ragusa*, in *Monumenta spectantia historiam Slavorum meridionalium*, XXV, *Scriptores*, II, ed. S. Nodilo (Zagreb, 1893).  
Giovanni di Pian di Carpine. See: Plano Carpini.  
Glycas, Michael = Michaelis Glycae *Annales*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1836).  
Göckenjan, H., Zimonyi, I., *Orientalische Berichte über die Völker Osteuropas und Zentralasiens im Mittelalter. Die Gayhāni-Tradition (Ibn Rusta, Gardāzī, Hudūd al-ʿĀlam, al-Bakrī und al-Marwazī)* (Wiesbaden, 2001).  
Golb, N., Pritsak, O., *Khazarian Hebrew Documents of the Tenth Century* (Ithaca–London, 1982).  
Golubovich, G., *Bibliotheca bio-bibliografica della Terra Santa e dell'Oriente Francese*, III (dal 1300 al 1332) (Quaracchi/Florence, 1919).  
Gombos, A. F., *Catalogus fontium historiae Hungaricae aeo ducum et regum ex stripe Arpad descendentium ab anno Christi DCCC usque ad annum MCCCCI* (Budapest), I, II (1937); III (1938).  
Gregoras, Nicephorus = Nicephori Gregorae *Byzantina historia*, ed. L. Schopen, I (Bonn, 1829).  
Gregorii Abulpharagii sive Bar-Hebraei *Chronicon Syriacum*, eds. P. I. Bruns and G. G. Kirsch (Lipsiae, 1789).

- Gregory Abū'l-Faraj, *The Chronography, 1225–1286*, ed. E. A. Wallis Budge (London, 1932).
- Grigor of Akanc', "History of the Nation of the Archers (the Mongols)," eds. R. P. Blake and R. N. Frye, *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 12 (1948), no. 2, pp. 269–399.
- Grigor'ev, A. P., "Grants of privileges in the edicts of Toqtamış and Timur-Qutlug," in *Between the Danube and the Caucasus*, ed. G. Kara (Budapest, 1987), pp. 85–104.
- Grünweg, Martin. Sec: Jonov, M. (ed.).
- Guboglu, M., "Campania lui Suleiman I Magnificul în Moldova (1538) într-o cronică turco-tătărească," in *Izvoare străine pentru istoria românilor*, ed. Șt. S. Gorovei (*Români în istoria universală*, III, 3) (Iași, 1988), pp. 1–20.
- Guillaume de Rubrouck, *Voyage dans l'Empire mongol (1253–1255)*, trans. and eds. C. and R. Kappler (Paris, 1985). See also: William of Rubruck.
- Guillelmus de Rubruc, *Itinerarium*, in *SF*, pp. 147–332.
- Guillelmus de Nangis sive Nangiacci *Chronicon*, in *Recueil des historiens des Gaules et de la France*, XX, eds. [F.] Daunou and [J.] Naudet (Paris, 1840).
- Guiragos, *Extrait*, in Éd. Dulaurier, "Les Mongols d'après les historiens arméniens," *Journal Asiatique*, 5th Ser., 11 (1858), nos. 2–3, pp. 197–255; nos. 4–5, pp. 426–508. See also: Kiracos de Gantzac.
- Густинская летопись, in *PSRL*, II (St. Petersburg, 1843).
- Густынская летопись, in *PSRL*, 40, eds. V. A. Kuchkin (gen.ed.), L. L. Murav'eva, A. M. Panchenko (St. Petersburg, 2003).
- Gužgani = Maulana, Minhaj-ud-Din, Abu-'Umar-i-'Usman [= Juzjani], *Tabakat-i-nasiri: A General History of the Muhammadan Dynasties of Asia, including Hindustan*, II, ed. H. G. Raverty (London, 1881).
- Györfly, Gy., "Adatok a románok XIII. századi történetéhez és a román állam kezdetéhez (I), (II)," *Történelmi szemle* 7 (1964), no. 1, pp. 1–25; nos. 3–4, pp. 537–568.
- Hammer, J. de, *Sur les origines russes. Extraits des manuscrits orientaux* (St. Petersburg, 1827).
- Hayton, *La flor des estoires de la terre d'Orient/Flos historiarum terre Orientis*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Documents arméniens*, II (Paris, 1906). See also: Hethum von Korykos, Hetoum and Dröper, S. (ed.).
- Hazai, G., "Les manuscrits, conservés à Sofia, des remaniements médiévaux de Marvazi et 'Aufi,'" *AOH* 7 (1957), nos. 2–3, pp. 159–197.
- Henric de (Heinrich von) Mügeln = *Chronicon Henrici de Mügeln germanice conscriptum*, ed. E. Travník, in *SRH*, II.
- Heinrici *Chronicon Livoniae*/Heinrichs *Livländische Chronik*, 2nd ed., recognoverunt L. Arbusov and A. Bauer (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis separatim editi*) (Hannover, 1955).
- Heinrici *Chronicon Lyconiae*, ed. W. Arndt (*Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum ex Monumentis Germaniae Historicis recudi fecit*) (Hannoverae, 1874).
- Hermann Altahensis *Annales*, in *Fontes rerum Germanicarum*, ed. J. F. Boehmer, II (Stuttgart, 1845).
- Herodotus, II, *Books III and IV*, trans. A. D. Godley (Cambridge, Mass.–London, 1982).
- Hethum von Korykos, *Geschichte der Mongolen*, trans. R. Senoner, ed. W. Baum (Klagenfurt–Vienna, 2003). See also: Hayton, Hetoum and Dröper, S. (ed.).
- Hetoum, *A Lytell Cronycle*. Richard Pynson's Translation (c 1520) of *La Fleur des histoires de la terre d'Orient* (c 1307), ed. G. Burger (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1988).
- Hincmari Remensis *Annales (Annales Bertiniani)*, in *MGH,SS*, I, ed. G. H. Pertz (1826).
- Histoire de la Géorgie depuis l'Antiquité jusqu'au XIX<sup>e</sup> siècle*, trans. [M.-F.] Brousset, I, *Histoire ancienne, jusqu'en 1469 de J.-C.* (St. Petersburg, 1849).
- Histoire secrète des Mongols. Chronique mongole du XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle*, trans. and eds. M.-D. Even and R. Pop (Paris, 1994). See also *Die Geheime Geschichte der Mongolen* and *The Secret History of the Mongols*.

- Historia de expeditione Friderici imperatoris* (Der sogenannte Ansbert), in *Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzuges Kaiser Friedrichs I*, ed. A. Chroust (Berlin, 1928).
- Historia Hieroso[li]mitana auctoris incerti*, in *Gesta Dei per Francos*, I, ed. I. Bongarsius (Hanoviae, 1611).
- Historia Russiae monumenta*, II, ed. A. J. Turgenev (Petropoli, 1842).
- The History of the Seljuq Turks. From The Jāmi' al-Tawārīkh, an Ilkhanid Adaption of the Saljūq-nāma of Ṣahīr al-Dīn Nīshāpūrī*, trans. K. A. Luther, ed. C. E. Bosworth (Richmond, Surrey, 2001).
- Hopf, Ch. (ed.), *Chroniques gréco-romanes inédites ou peu connues* (Berlin, 1873).
- Huc, É.-R., *Travels in Tartary*, ed. H. D'Ardenne de Tizac, trans. W. Hazlitt (New York-London, 1927).
- Hudūd al-'Alam. "The Regions of the World". A Persian Geography 372 a.H.—982 a.D.*, ed. V. Minorsky (London, 1937).
- Die Hunnen der vorchristlichen Zeit. Chinesische Urkunden zur Geschichte Asiens*, I, trans. and ed. J. J. M. Groot (Berlin and Leipzig, 1921).
- Hurmuzaki, E., *Documente privatoare la istoria românilor* (Bucharest), I (1887); II, 4 (1894)—ed. N. Densușianu; I, 2 (1890); II, 2 (1891); II, 3 (1892)—eds. N. Densușianu, E. Kalužniacki; I, supl. 1 (1886)—eds. Gr. G. Tocilescu, A. I. Odobescu; II, 1 (1891)—ed. I. Slavici.
- Iacobi a Vitriaco *Libri duo*. See: Jacques de Vitry = Iacobi a Vitriaco *Libri duo*.
- Iakubovskii, A., "Рассказ Ибн-ал-Биби о походе малоазийских турок на Судак, половцев и русских в начале XIII в.," *Византийский временник* 25 (1927), pp. 53–76.
- Iakut al-Khamavi, *Му'джам ал-булдан*, in *Материалы по истории Средней и Центральной Азии X–XIX вв.* (Tashkent, 1988).
- Ibn al-Athir = *Extrait d'Ibn-Alathir*, in [Ch. F.] Defrémery, *Fragments de géographes et d'historiens arabes et persans inédits relatifs aux anciens peuples du Caucase et de la Russie Méridionale* (offprint from *Journal Asiatique*, 4th Ser., 13, 1848; 14, 1849) (Paris, 1849).
- Ibn-Alatyr, *Extrait de la chronique intitulée Kamel-Altevarykh*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, I (Paris, 1872).
- Ibn el-Athīr, *Histoire des Atabecs de Mosul*, in *Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens orientaux*, II, 2 (Paris, 1876).
- Ibn Batoutah, *Voyages*, eds. C. Defrémery and B. R. Sanguinetti, II (Paris, 1949).
- Ibn Battuta, *The Travels, A.D. 1325–1354*, ed. H. A. R. Gibb, II (Cambridge, 1962).
- Ibn-Dasta [Ibn-Rusta], *Известия о хозарахъ, буртасахъ, болгарахъ, мадьярахъ, славянах и руссахъ*, ed. D. A. Khvolson (St. Petersburg, 1869).
- Ibn Fadlan's *Reisebericht*, ed. A. Z. V. Togan, in *Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 24 (1939), no. 3. See also: Frähn, C. M.
- Ibn al-Furat = *Ayyubids, Mamlukes and Crusaders. Selection from the Tarikh al-Duwal wa'l-Muluk of Ibn al-Furat*, 2, eds. U. and M. C. Lyons (Cambridge, 1971).
- Ibn Hauqal, *Configuration de la Terre (Kitab surat al-ard)*, II, eds. J. H. Kramers and G. Wiet (Beyrouth-Paris, 1964).
- Ibn Khaldūn, *Discours sur l'histoire universelle. Al-Muqaddīma*, trans. V. Monteil, 2nd ed., I (Paris, 1978).
- , *The Muqaddīmah. An Introduction to History*, I, ed. F. Rosenthal (New York, 1958).
- Ibn Khordādhbeh = Abu'l-Kāsim Obaidallah ibn Abdallah Ibn Khordādhbeh, *Kitāb al-masālik wa'l-mamālik*, ed. J. de Goeje (Lugduni-Batavorum, 1889).
- Ibn-Rusta. See: Ibn-Dasta [Ibn-Rusta].
- Ibn al-Wardy = *Extrait de l'ouvrage de Sérâdj-u'd-dīn 'Omar (...)* Ibn-ul-Wardy, in F.-B. Charmoy, *Relation de Mas'oudi et d'autres auteurs musulmans sur les anciens Slaves* (in *Mémoires de l'Académie impériale des sciences de St.-Petersbourg, VIe série, Sciences politiques, histoire et philologie*, 2, 1834, pp. 297–408), in *Die Erforschung arabischer Quellen zur mittelalterlichen Geschichte der Slaven und Volgabulgaren*, ed. H. Haarmann (Hamburg, 1976).
- Idrisi. See: Edrisi, *Géographie* and Konovalova, I. G. [ed. and trans.], *Ал-Идриси*.

- Ingigian, Hugas, *Paşalicul din Ozu (I)*, in H. Dj. Siruni, "Dobrogea și Basarabia descrise de geografi armeni," *Ani* 1 (1936), no. 4, pp. 64–69.
- Les invasions mongoles en Orient*. See: al-Madâ'inî.
- Ioannis Euchaitorum metropolitae *Quae in codice Vaticano graeco 676 supersunt*, J. Bollig descripsit, P. de Lagarde edidit (Gottingae, 1882).
- Ioannis Stauracii *Oratio laudatoria de Sancti Myroblytae Demetrii miraculis*, in *Fontes Graeci Historiae Bulgaricae*, X, ed. M. Vojnov, V. Tâpkova-Zaimova, L. Jončev (*FHB*, XXII) (1980).
- Ἰωάννου Σταυρακίου λόγος εἰς τὰ θαύματα τοῦ Ἁγίου Δημητρίου, ed. I. Iverites, *Μακεδονικά* (1940), pp. 324–376. See also: Ioannis Stauracii *Oratio*.
- Ioannis de Vtino *Brevis narratio de regibus Hungariae*, in *Analecta monumentorum Hungariae historicorum literariorum maximum inedita*, ed. F. Toldy, I (Pesthini, 1862).
- Iohannes de Plano Carpini. See: Plano Carpini.
- Iohannis Euchaitorum metropolitae *Quae in codice Vaticano graeco 676 supersunt*, I. Bollig descripsit, P. de Lagarde edidit (Gottingae, 1882).
- Iordanes, *Getica (IIR, XIV)* (1939).
- Iorga, N., *Acte și fragmente cu privire la istoria românilor*, I (Bucharest, 1895).
- , *Studii și documente cu privire la istoria românilor*, XXI, *Documente interne* (Bucharest, 1911).
- Ипатьевская летопись*, in *PSRL*, II (St. Petersburg, 1843).
- Ипатьевская летопись*, in *PSRL*, II, ed. A. A. Shakhmatov (St. Petersburg, 1908).
- Al-Istakhri, *Китаб масалик ал-мамалик*, in *Материалы по истории киргизов и Киргизии*, I, ed. V. A. Romodin (Moscow, 1973).
- Исторические связи народов СССР и Румынии в XV-начале XVIII в. Документы и материалы*, I, 1408–1632, eds. Ia. S. Grosul, A. C. Oțetea, A. A. Novoselski, L. V. Cherepnin (Moscow, 1965).
- Das Itinerarium peregrinorum*, ed. H. E. Mayer, in *MGH,SS*, 18 (Stuttgart, 1962).
- Jacques de Vitry = Iacobi a Vitriaco *Libri duo, quorum prior Orientalis sive Hierosolymitanae, alter Occidentalis historiae nomine inscribitur* (Duaci, 1597).
- Jacques de Vitry, *Histoire orientale*, trans. M.-G. Grossel (Paris, 2005). See also: Iacobi a Vitriaco *Libri duo* and Jacobus de Vitriaco.
- , *Historia Orientalis*, ed. C. Buridant (Paris, 1986).
- Jacobus de Vitriaco, Tusculanus episcopus, *Sermones vulgares Tusculani episcopi*, in *Analecta novissima spicilegii Solesmensis, Altera continuatio*, II, *Tusculana*, ed. Johannes Baptista cardinalis Pitra (Tusculum, 1888).
- Jahn, K., *Die Geschichte der Oguzen des Rašid ad-Din* (Vienna, 1969).
- Al-Jazari, *La chronique (années 689–698 H.)*, ed. J. Sauvaget (Bibliothèque de l'École des Hautes Études, 294) (Paris, 1949).
- Jehan de Wavrin. See: Wavrin, Jehan de.
- Joannes de Marignoli, *Chronicon*, in *Monumenta historica Boemiae*, II, ed. G. Dobner (Prague, 1768).
- Johannis Iperii abbatis *Chronicon Sythiense S. Bertini*, in E. Martene and U. Durand, *Thesaurus novus anecdotorum*, III (Lutetiae Parisiorum, 1717).
- John Cantacuzenus. See: Cantacuzenus, John = Ioannis Cantacuzeni *Historiarum libri IV*.
- John of Marignolli. See: Joannes de Marignoli.
- John of Plano Carpini. See: Plano Carpini.
- John of Sultthanyeh/Sultāniyya. See: Kern, A.
- John of Ypres/Jean Le Long d'Ypres/Iohannes Longus. See: Johannis Iperii abbatis *Chronicon Sythiense S. Bertini*.
- John (János) of Thurocz. See: Thurocz, Johannes de.
- John Zonaras. See: Zonaras, Joannes.
- Joinville, *Histoire de Saint Louis*, in *Historiens et chroniqueurs du Moyen Age*, eds. A. Pauphilet, Ed. Pognon (Paris, 1952).
- , *Vie de Saint Louis*, trans. and ed. J. Monfrin (Paris, 1998).

- Јонов, М. (ed.), “Пътетписът на Мартин Грюневег като исторически извор за Българските земи (1582)/Martin Grünewegs Tagebuch als Geschichtsquelle über die bulgarischen Gebieten (1582),” *Годишник на Софийския Университет. Исторически Факултет* 67 (1973/1974) [1977].
- Josaphat Barbaro. See Barbaro, Josaphat.
- Josephus Gorionides, eds. M. L. v. Ameringen, G. I. Polak (Amsterdam, 1868).
- Juvaini, *The History of the World-Conqueror*, I, ed. J. A. Boyle (Manchester, 1959).
- Juzjani. See: Gužgani = Maulana.
- Kalendarz Krakowsky*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, II, ed. A. Bielowski (Lwów, 1872).
- Karadža, C. I., “Delegații din țara noastră la conciliul din Constanța (în Baden) în anul 1415,” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 7 (1927), pp. 59–91 and pls. I–IX.
- Kedrenos = Georgii Cedreni *Compendium historiarum*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn), I (1838); II (1839).
- Keakaumenos = *Советы и рассказы Кекаумена/Сесаумени Consilia et narrationes*, ed. G. G. Litavrin (Moscow, 1972).
- Kern, A., *Der „Libellus de notitia orbis” Johannes’ III. (De Galonifontibus) O. P. Erzbischofs von Sulzhanyeh*, in *Archivum Fratrum Praedicatorum* 8 (1938).
- Холмогорская летопись*, in *PSRL*, 33, ed. K. N. Serbin (Leningrad, 1977).
- Хождение инока Зосимы*, ed. Kh. M. Loparev, in *Православный Палестинский сборникъ* 8 (1889), no. 3.
- Хроника Литовская и Жмойтская*, in *PSRL*, 32, ed. N. N. Ulashchik (Moscow, 1975).
- Христианский мир и “Великая Монгольская империя”. Материалы францисканской миссии 1245 года [“История Тартар” брата Ц. де Бридиа]*, eds. and trans. S. V. Aksenov and A. G. Iurchenko (SPb, 2002). See also: C. de Bridia Monachi.
- Kinnamos, Ioannes = Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome rerum ab Ioanne et Alexio Comnenis gestarum*, ed. A. Meineke (Bonn, 1836). See also: Kinnamos, Jean/John.
- Kinnamos, Jean, *Chronique*, trans. J. Rosenblum (Paris, 1972).
- Kinnamos, John, *Deeds of John and Manuel Comnenus*, ed. Ch. M. Brand (New York, 1976). See also: Ioannis Cinnami *Epitome rerum ab Ioanne et Alexio Comnenis gestarum*.
- Kiracos de Gantzac, *Histoire d’Arménie*, in *Deux historiens arméniens*, trans. [M.-F.] Brosset, I (St. Petersburg, 1870). See also: Guiragos.
- Kogălniceanu, Enaki, *Letopiseșul Țerei Moldovei*, in *Cronicele României sau letopiseșele Moldaviei și Valahiei*, 2nd ed. M. Kogălniceanu, III (Bucharest, 1874). See also: Pseudo-Enache Kogălniceanu, Ioan Canta.
- Konovalova, I. G. [ed. and trans.], *Ал-Идриси о странах и народах Восточной Европы* (Moscow, 2006). See also: Édrisi, *Géographie*.
- Kotorski spomenici. Prva knjiga kotorskih notara od god. 1326–1335*, ed. A. Mayer (Zagreb, 1951).
- Kotorski spomenici. Druga knjiga kotorskih notara god. 1329, 1332–1337*, ed. A. Mayer (Zagreb, 1981).
- Kurtze Beschreibung von denen moldauischen Ländern*, in N. Iorga, “O nouă descriere a Moldovei în secolul al XVIII-lea de un suedez,” *Revista istorică* 16 (1930), nos. 1–2, pp. 1–28; nos. 4–5, pp. 86–102.
- Kuun, G., *Codex Cumanicus bibliothecae ad templum divi Marci Venetiarum* (Budapest, 1880).
- La Roncière, M. de and Mollat du Jourdin, M., *Les portulans. Cartes marines du XIII<sup>e</sup> au XVII<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Fribourg/Suisse, 1984).
- Лаврентіевская летопись*, in *PSRL*, I (St. Petersburg, 1846).
- Lazarov, I., Lungarova, P., “Хрониката на Алберт де Безано за третия и четвъртия кръстоносен поход и преминаването им през българските земи,” in *Studia protobulgarica et mediaevalia europensia. В честна професор Веселин Бешевлиев* (Veliko Tărnovo, 1993).
- Legendae S. Stephani regis*, ed. E. Bartonick, in *SRH*, II.



- Leonis Diaconi Caloënsis *Historiae*, ed. C. V. Hase (Bonn, 1828).  
 Leonis Grammatici *Chronographia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1842).  
 Летописец Переяславля Суздальского (Летописец русских царей), in *PSRL*, 41, eds. S. N. Kisterev, V. M. Kloss, L. A. Timoshina, I. A. Tikhoniuk, red. V. I. Buganov (gen.red.), S. N. Kisterev, I. A. Tikhoniuk (Moscow, 1995).  
 Летописный сборникъ, именуемый Патриаршею или Никоновскою летописью [I,] in *PSRL*, IX (St. Petersburg, 1862); [II,] in *PSRL*, X (St. Petersburg, 1885).  
 Летописный сборникъ именуемый Тверскою летописью, in *PSRL*, XV (St. Petersburg, 1863).  
 Летописный свод 1497 г., in *PSRL*, 28 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1963).  
 Летописный свод 1518 г. (Уваровская летопись), in *PSRL*, 28 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1963).  
 Летопись по Уваровскому списку, in *PSRL*, XXV (Moscow–Leningrad, 1949).  
 Летопись по Воскресенскому списку, in *PSRL*, VII (St. Petersburg, 1856).  
 Leunclavius = Joannes Leunclavius, *Glycanorum Annalium continuatio*, in *PG*, CLVIII (1866).  
*Il libro dei conti di Giacomo Badoer (Constantinopoli 1436–1440)*, eds. U. Dorini and T. Bertelè (Rome, 1956).  
 Liudprand, *Antapodosis*, in *Quellen zur Geschichte der sächsischen Kaiserzeit (Ausgewählte Quellen zur Deutschen Geschichte des Mittelalters, VIII)*, eds. A. Bauer and R. Rau (Darmstadt, 1977).  
 Liudprand of Cremona, *The Embassy of Constantinople and Other Writings*, trans. F. A. Wright, ed. J. J. Norwich (London–Rutland, Vermont, 1993) (*Antapodosis. Tit-for-Tat*).  
 Maçoudî, *Le livre de l'avertissement et de la revision*, ed. B. Carra de Vaux (Paris, 1896).  
 —, *Les Prairies d'or*, eds. C. Barbier de Meynard and P. de Courteille (Paris), I (1861), II (1863). See also: Mas'ûdî.  
 al-Madâ'inî = *Les invasions mongoles en Orient vues par un savant médiéval arabe Ibn Abî l-Hadîd al-Madâ'inî (1190–1258 J.C.). Extrait du Sharh Nahj al-balâgha*, ed. M. Djebli (Paris, 1995).  
*Magnum Chronicon, in quo cumprimis Belgicae res et familiae diligenter explicantur*, in *Rerum Germanicarum veteres iam primum publicati scriptores VI*, ed. I. Pistorius, III (Ratisbonae, 1726).  
 Mahmûd al-Kāšrārî, *Compendium of the Turkic Dialects (Dīvān Luyât at-Turk)*, ed. R. Dankoff, in collab. with J. Kelley, I (Harvard, 1982). See also: Brockelmann, C. and Makhmud Kashgari.  
 Majeska, G. P., *Russian Travelers to Constantinople in the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries* (Washington, D.C., 1984).  
 Makhmud Kashgari, *Дивану лугат ат-тюрк*, in *Материалы по истории Средней и Центральной Азии X–XIX вв.* (Tashkent, 1988). See also: Brockelmann, C. and Mahmûd al-Kāšrārî.  
 Al-Makin ibn al-'Amid, *Chronique des Ayyoubides (602–658/1205–6–1259–60)*, eds. A.-M. Eddé and F. Micheau (Paris, 1994).  
 Makrizi, *Histoire d'Égypte*, trans. E. Blochet (offprint from *Revue de l'Orient latin*, VI, VIII–XI) (Paris, 1908). See also: al-Maqrizi.  
 Malov, S. E., *Памятники древнетюркской письменности Монголии и Киргизии* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1959).  
 Mandeville's *Travels*, ed. M. Letts, I, II (Nendeln, Liechtenstein, 1967).  
 al-Maqdisî = Motahhar ben Tâhir el-Maqdisî, *Le Livre de la Création et de l'Histoire*, attribué a Abou-Zéïd Ahmed ben Sahl el-Balkhî, ed. Cl. Huart (Paris), I (1901); IV (1907).  
 al-Maqrizi = Taki-Eddin-Ahmed Makrizi, *Histoire des sultans mamlouks de l'Égypte*, trans. [É. M.] Quatremère (Paris), I, [1] (1837); II, 2 (1845). See also: Makrizi.  
 Marco Polo. See: Polo, Marco.  
 Marignoli, John of. See: Joannes de Marignoli.

- Marinus Sanutus (Marino Sanudo). See: Sanutus dictus Torsellus, Marinus.
- Martinez, P., (trans.), *Gardizi's two chapters on the Turks*, in *AEMA*, 2 (1982), pp. 109–217.
- al-Marwazi = Sharaf al-Zaman Tahir Marvazi, *On China, the Turks and India*, ed. V. Minorsky (London, 1942).
- Al-Mas'ūdi, *Bis zu den Grenzen der Erde. Auszüge aus dem "Buch der Goldwäschen,"* ed. G. Rotter (Tübingen-Basel, 1978). See also: Maçoudi.
- Материалы по истории казахских ханств XV–XVIII веков*, eds. S. K. Ibragimov, N. N. Mingulov, K. A. Pishulina, V. P. Iudin (Alma-Ata, 1969).
- Материалы по истории киргизов и Киргизии*, I, ed. V. A. Romodin (Moscow, 1973).
- Matthaei Parisiensis *Chronica majora*, ed. H. R. Luard, IV (London, 1877).
- Matthew of Edessa = *Armenia and the Crusades. Tenth to Twelfth Centuries. The Chronicle of Matthew of Edessa*, ed. A. E. Dostourian (Lanham–New York–London, 1993). See also: Matthieu d'Édesse.
- Matthieu d'Édesse, *Chronique*, ed. Ed. Dulaurier (Paris, 1858).
- Maulana, Minhaj-ud-Din, Abu-'Umar-i-'Usman [= Juzjani]. See Gużgani = Maulana.
- Mauricius, *Arta militară*, ed. H. Mihăescu (Bucharest, 1970).
- Mălinaş, I. M., *Regeste și registre de la Constantinopol și Roma, din prima jumătate a secolului al XIII-lea, privitoare la primatul Vasile I și la împăratul Ioniță Caloian, din Târnovo* (Oradea, 2000).
- The Memoirs of a Syrian Prince*. See Abu'l-Fida = *The Memoirs of a Syrian Prince Abu'l-Fida', Sultan of Hamah*.
- Meng-Ta pei-lu und Hei-Ta shih-lieh. Chinesische Gesandtenberichte über die frühen Mongolen 1221 und 1237*, Nach Vorarbeiten von E. Haenisch und Yao Ts'ung-wu, trans. P. Olbricht and E. Pinks (Wiesbaden, 1980).
- Merverrudi = Makhammad Ibn Mansur Merverrudi, *Тарих-и Мубарак-шах*, in *Материалы по истории Средней и Центральной Азии X–XIX вв.* (Tashkent, 1988).
- Metellus von Tegernsee, *Expediitio Ierosolimitana*, ed. P. C. Jacobsen (Stuttgart, 1982).
- Michael Attaliates. See: Attaliates.
- Michael Glycas. See: Glycas.
- Michaelis Rhetoris *Oratio ad Manuelem imperatorem*, in *Fontes rerum Byzantinarum*, 1–2, *Rhetorum saeculi XII. Orationes politicae*, ed. W. Regel (Petropoli, 1917; reprint Leipzig, 1982), pp. 131–152.
- Michel le Grand, *Chronique*. Version arménienne du prêtre Ischôk, trans. V. Langlois (Venice, 1868). See also: Michel le Syrien.
- Michel Psellos. See: Psellos, Michel.
- Michel le Syrien, *Chronique*, III, ed. J. B. Chabot (Paris, 1905). See also: Michel le Grand.
- Mihail, P., *Documente și zapise moldovenești de la Constantinopol (1607–1806)* (Iași, 1948).
- Mihályi de Apşa, I., *Diplome maramureșene din secolul XIV și XV* (Sighet, 1900).
- Milescu Spătarul, Nicolaie, *Jurnal de călătorii în China*, ed. C. Bărbulescu (Bucharest, 1956).
- Miracula Sancti Adalberti martiris*, in *MGH, SS*, IV, ed. G. H. Pertz (1841).
- Miracula S. Georgii*, ed. J. B. Aufhauser (Lipsiae, 1913).
- The Mission of Friar William of Rubruck*. See: William of Rubruck.
- Могилевская хроника Т. Р. Сурты и Ю. Трубницкого*, in *PSRL*, 35, ed. N. N. Ulashchik (Moscow, 1980).
- Moïse de Corène, *Géographie d'après Ptolémée*, ed. A. Soukry (Venice, 1881).
- Moldova în epoca feudalismului/Молдавия в эпоху феодализма* (Kishinev/Chişinău) I—eds. P. G. Dmitriev, D. M. Dragnev, E. M. Russev, P. V. Sovetov, red. L. V. Cherepnin (1961); II, eds. D. M. Dragnev, A. N. Nichitici, L. I. Svetlichnaia, P. V. Sovetov, coord. L. V. Cherepnin (1978); III—eds. D. M. Dragnev, A. N. Nichitici, L. I. Svetlichnaia, P. V. Sovetov, red. V. P. Pashuto (1982); IV (1986); V (1987); VI (1992)—eds.

- D. M. Dragnev, A. N. Nichitici, L. I. Svetlichnaia, P. V. Sovetov, red. P. V. Sovetov; VIII—gen. ed. D. Dragnev, eds. L. Svetliciniî, D. Dragnev, E. Bociarov (1998).  
 Monachus, Robertus. See: Robertus Monachus.  
*Monumenta Ecclesiae Strigoniensis*, ed. F. Knauz, II (Strigonii, 1882).  
*Monumenta historica archivi Ragusini*, 3rd Ser., 1, *Acta cancellariae et notariae annorum 1278–1301*, ed. G. Čremošnik (Belgrade, 1932).  
*Monumenta historica Ragusina*, I, *Notae et acta cancellariae Ragusinae*, I, *Notae et acta notarîi Thomasini de Saverò, 1278–1282*, ed. G. Čremošnik (Zagreb, 1951).  
*Monumenta historica Ragusina*, II, *Notae et acta notarîi Thomasini de Saverò, 1282–1284. Diversa cancellariae I (1282–1284). Testamenta (1282–1284)*, ed. J. Lučić (Zagreb, 1984).  
*Monumenta spectantia historiam Slavorum meridionalium*, XXIX, *Monumenta Ragusina, Libri reformationum*, V, ed. J. Gelcich (Zagreb, 1897).  
 Moravcsik, G., “Sagen und Legenden über Kaiser Basileios I,” *Dumbarton Oaks Papers* 15 (1961), pp. 61–126.  
 Moufazzal ibn Abil-Fazaîl, *Histoire des sultans mamlouks*, ed. and trans. E. Blochet, in *Patrologia Orientalis* (Paris), XIV, 3, eds. R. Graffin, F. Nau (1920), pp. 375–672; XX, 1 (1929), pp. 3–267.  
 Muste, N. (attributed to), *Letopisețul Țerei Moldovei*, in *Cronicele României sau letopisețele Moldaviei și Valahiei*, 2nd ed. M. Kogălniceanu, III (Bucharest, 1874).  
 Al-Nadim, *The Fihrist. A Tenth-Century Survey of Muslim Culture*, ed. B. Dodge, I (New York–London, 1970).  
 Năstase, A., “O hartă a Moldovei din secolul XVIII,” *Natura, Seria geografie-geologie* 15 (1963), no. 5, pp. 36–38.  
 Neculce, I., *Cronica copiată de Ioasaf Luca*, eds. Z. and P. Mihail (Chișinău, 1993).  
 ———, *Opere. Letopisețul Țării Moldovei și o samă de cuvinte*, ed. G. Ștrempel (Bucharest, 1982).  
*Die Nestorchronik. Die altrussische Chronik, zugeschrieben dem Mönch des Kiever Höhlenklosters Nestor, in der Redaktion des Abtes Sil’vestr aus dem Jahre 1116, rekonstruiert nach den Handschriften Lavrent’evskaja, Radziwilevskaja, Akademičeskaja, Troickaja, Ipačevskaja und Chlebnikovskaja*, ed. and trans. L. Müller (Munich, 2001). See also: *Повесть временных лет*.  
*Das Nibelungenlied nach der Handschrift C*, ed. U. Hennig (Tübingen, 1977).  
*Das Nibelungenlied, mittelhochdeutsch/neuhochdeutsch*, eds. D. Buschinger and W. Spiewok (Amiens, 1991).  
 Nicephorus Bryennius. See: Bryennius, Nicephorus.  
 Nicholas I, Patriarch of Constantinople, *Letters*, eds. R. J. H. Jenkins and L. G. Westerink (Washington, D.C., 1973).  
 Nicolai Constantinopolitani archiepiscopi *Epistolae*, in *PG*, CXI (1863).  
 Nicoloudis, N. [ed.], Laonikos Chalkokondyles, *A Translation and Commentary of the “Demonstrations of Histories” (Books I–III)* (Athens, 1996). See also: Chalkokondyles, Laonikos = Laonic Chalcocondil.  
 Nikephoros, Patriarch of Constantinople, *Short History*, ed. C. Mango (Washington, D.C., 1990).  
 Nizami, *Пять поэм. Перевод с фарси* (Moscow, 1968).  
 Nordenskiöld, A. E., *Facsimile-Atlas to the Early History of Cartography* (Stockholm, 1889).  
 ———, *Periplus, an Essay on the Early History of Charts and Sailing-Directions* (New York, 1897).  
 Nour, R., *Oughouz-Namé. Épopée turque* (Alexandria, 1928).  
*Новгородская четвертая летопись*, in *PSRL*, IV (St. Petersburg, 1848).  
*Новгородская четвертая летопись. Списокъ Н. К. Никольскаго*, in *PSRL*, IV, 1, 3 (Leningrad, 1929).  
*Новгородская летопись по списку П. П. Дубровского*, in *PSRL*, XLIII, ed. A. Koshelev (Moscow, 2004).  
*Новгородская первая летопись старшего и младшего изводов*, ed. A. A. Nasonov (Moscow–Leningrad, 1950).

- Odo of Deuil, *De profectone Ludovici VII in Orientem*, ed. V. Gingerick Berry (New York, 1948). See also: Eudes de Deuil.
- Odoric of Pordenone = *Die Reise des Seligen Odorich von Pordenone nach Indien und China (1314/18–1330)*, ed. F. Reichert (Heidelberg, 1987).
- Odoric of Pordenone = *Relatio* Fr. Odorici (Odoricus de Portu Naonis), in *SF*, I, pp. 381–497.
- Oklevelek Temesvármegye és Temesvárváros történetéhez*, I, 1183–1430, ed. F. Pesty (*Temesvármegye és Temesvárváros története*, ed. T. Ortway, IV) (Pozsony, 1896).
- Orderici Vitalis *Historiae ecclesiasticae libri XIII*, in *Patrologiae cursus completus, Patrologiae latinae*, ed. J.-P. Migne, CLXXXVIII (Paris, 1890).
- Orientalische Berichte*. See: Göckenjan, H. and Zimonyi, I.
- Otto of Freising and his continuator, Rahewin, *The Deeds of Frederick Barbarossa*, trans. and ed. C. C. Mierow, with the collab. of R. Emery (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1994).
- Otonis episcopi Frisingensis et Rahewini *Gesta Frederici seu rectius cronica*, ed. F.-J. Schmale (Darmstadt, 1965).
- P. Magistri qui Anonymus dicitur. See: Anonymus = P. Magistri qui Anonymus dicitur.
- Pachymeres, Georgios = Georges Pachymérés, *Relations historiques*, III, ed. A. Failler (Paris, 1999).
- Pachymeres, Georgios = Georgii Pachymeris *De Michaelae et Andronico Paleologis libri tredecim*, ed. Im. Bekker, II (Bonn, 1835).
- Paltrami seu Vatzonis, consulis Viennensis, *Chronicon Austriacum*, in *Scriptores rerum Austriacarum*, I, ed. H. Pez (Lipsiae, 1721), col. 703–738.
- Panaiteescu, P. P., *Călători poloni în Țările Române* (Bucharest, 1930).
- Paschalis de Victoria, *Epistola*, in *SF*, I, pp. 499–506.
- Paulinus von Venedig, *Bruchstücke aus der Weltchronik*, 1, ed. W. Holtzmann (*Texte zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters*, ed. F. Schneider, 3) (Rome, 1927).
- Pavoni, R., *Notai genovesi in Oltremare. Atti rogati a Cipro da Lamberto di Sambuceto (6 luglio–27 ottobre 1301)* (Genoa, 1982).
- Pegolotti, F. Balducci, *La pratica della mercatura*, ed. A. Evans (Cambridge, Mass., 1936).
- Pethachia = *Tour du monde ou voyages du rabbin Péthachia de Ratisbonne dans le douzième siècle*, ed. E. Carmoly (Paris, 1831).
- Petrus Tudebodus, *Historia de Hierosolymitano itinere*, eds. J. H. Hill and L. L. Hill (Paris, 1977).
- Plano Carpini, John of = Giovanni di Pian di Carpine, *Storia dei Mongoli*, eds. P. Daffinà, C. Leonardi, M. C. Lungarotti, E. Menestrò, L. Petech (Spoleto, 1989).
- Plano Carpini, John of = Jean de Plan Carpin, *Histoire des Mongols*, trans. and eds. D. J. Becquet and L. Hambis (Paris, 1965).
- Plano Carpini, John of = Iohannes de Plano Carpini, *Ystoria Mongalorum*, in *SF*, pp. 1–130.
- Plano Carpini, John of = Johannes von Plano Carpini, *Kunde von den Mongolen, 1245–1247*, ed. F. Schmieder (Sigmaringen, 1997).
- Polo, Marco, *La description du monde*, ed. L. Hambis (Paris, 1955).
- , *Il Milione*, 2nd ed. D. Olivieri (Bari, 1928).
- Popa-Lisseanu, G., *Brodnicii* (II, XII) (1938).
- Повесть временных лет*, I, ed. D. S. Likhachev, red. V. P. Adrianova-Peretts; II, *Приложение*, ed. D. S. Likhachev (Moscow–Leningrad, 1950). See also: *Die Nestorchronik*.
- Постниковский, Пискаревский, Московский и Бельский летописцы*, in *PSRL*, 34, eds. V. I. Buganov, V. I. Koretskii (Moscow, 1978).
- Pratene k dejinám Vel'kej Moravy*, ed. P. Ratkoš (Bratislava, 1968).
- Продолжение Лаврентьевской летописи*, in *PSRL*, I (St. Petersburg, 1846).
- Psellos, Michael = Michaelis Pselli *Orationes panegyricae*, ed. G. T. Dennis (Stuttgartardiae et Lipsiae, 1994).

- Psellos, Michael = Michaelis Pselli *Scripta minora*, I, *Orationes et dissertationes*, eds. E. Kurtz and F. Drexel (Milan, 1936).
- Psellos, Michael = Michel Psellos, *Chronographie ou Histoire d'un siècle de Byzance (976–1077)*, ed. É. Renauld (Paris), I, 1926; II, 1928.
- Pseudo-Enache Kogălniceanu, Ioan Canta, *Cronici moldovenesti*, eds. A. Ilieș and I. Zmeu (Bucharest, 1987). See also: Kogălniceanu, Enaki.
- Ps[eudo]-Scymnos. See: *Géographes grecs*, I, *Introduction générale*. Ps.-Scymnos. *Псковская первая летопись*, in *PSRL*, IV (St. Petersburg, 1848).
- Путешествие* Абу Хамида ал-Гарнати. See: al-Garnati = *Путешествие* Абу Хамида ал-Гарнати.
- Qazwîny = Hamd-Allah Mustawfi of Qazwin, *The Geographical Part of the Nuzhat-al-Qulub*, trans. G. Le Strange (Leiden-London, 1919).
- Qazwîny = *Extraits du traité de géographie de Zakaria Qazwîny, intitulé Curiosités des pays et renseignements sur leur habitants*, in F.-B. Charmoy, *Relation de Mas'oudi et d'autres auteurs musulmans sur les anciens Slaves* (in *Mémoires de l'Académie impériale des sciences de St.-Petersbourg*, VIe série, *Sciences politiques, histoire et philologie*, 2, 1834, pp. 297–408), in *Die Erforschung arabischer Quellen zur mittelalterlichen Geschichte der Slaven und Völgabulgaren*, ed. H. Haarmann (Hamburg, 1976).
- Rachid-Eddin, "Extraits de l'Histoire des Mongols écrite en persan," in *Journal Asiatique* 9 (1832), pp. 512–538. See also: Rashid-ad-din, Rashid al-Din, Rashiduddin Fazlullah.
- Radloff, W., *Das Kudatku Bilik des Jusuf Chass-Hadschib aus Bâlasagun*, I (St. Petersburg, 1891).
- Rashid-ad-din, *Сборник летописей*, I, 1, trans. L. A. Khetagurov, ed. A. A. Semenov (Moscow-Leningrad, 1952).
- Rashid al-Din, *The Successors of Genghis Khan*, ed. J. A. Boyle (New York-London, 1971).
- Rashiduddin Fazlullah's *Jamî'u't-tawarikh: Compendium of Chronicles. A History of the Mongols*, trans. and ed. W. M. Thackston (Harvard [Cambridge, Mass.]), I (1998); II, III (1999). See also: Rachid-Eddin, Rashid-ad-din, Rashid al-Din.
- Raymond d'Aguilers, *Le "Liber,"* eds. J. H. Hill and L. L. Hill (Paris, 1969).
- Raynald, O., *Annales ecclesiastici ab anno MCXCVIII. ubi desinit cardinalis Baronius*, ed. J. D. Mansi, II (Lucae, 1747).
- Recensămîntul populației Moldovei din anii 1772–1773 și 1774*, ed. P. G. Dmitriev (*Moldova în epoca feudalismului*, VII, 1, 2) (Kishinev, 1975).
- Recueil des historiens des Croisades. Historiens occidentaux*, III (Paris, 1866); IV (Paris, 1879).
- Recueil des historiens des Gaules et de la France*, XVIII (Paris, 1822).
- Reginonis *Chronicon*, in *MGH,SS*, I (1826).
- Die Register Innocenz' III*, 2, 2. *Pontifikatsjahr, 1199/1200*, eds. O. Hegeneder, W. Maleczek, and A. A. Strnad (Rome-Vienna, 1979); 5, 5. *Pontifikatsjahr, 1202/1203*, eds. O. Hegeneder, with the collab. of C. Egger, K. Rudolf, and A. Sommerlechner (Vienna, 1993).
- Reicherstorffer, Georg = Georgii a Reichersdorff, Transilvani, *Chorographia Moldaviae, recognita et emendata*, in *Scriptores rerum Hungaric[arum]*, ed. J. G. Schwandtner, III (Vindobonae, 1768).
- Reva, Petrus de, *De monarchia et sacra corona regni Hungariae*, in *Scriptores rerum Hungaric[arum]*, ed. I. G. Schwandtner, II (Vindobonae, 1746).
- Rewriting Caucasian History: The Medieval Armenian Adaptation of the Georgian Chronicles*, ed. R. W. Thomson (Oxford, 1996).
- Rhetoris anonymi Oratio ad Ioannem Commenum imperatorem*, in *Fontes rerum Byzantinorum*, 2, ed. W. Regel (Petropoli, 1917).
- Ricardi de Gerboredo, *De capta et direpta a Latinis Constantinopoli*, in *Exwie Sacrae Constantinopolitanae*, I (Genovae, 1877).

- Robert de Clari, *La conquête de Constantinople*, in *Historiens et chroniqueurs du Moyen Age*, eds. A. Pauphilet, Ed. Pognon (Paris, 1952).
- Roberti canonici S. Mariani Altissiodorensis *Chronicon*, ed. O. Holder-Egger, in *MGH, SS*, XXVI (1882).
- Robertus Monachus, *Historia Hierosolimitana*, in *Itinera Hierosolymitana Crucesignatorum (saec. XII–XIII)*, I, ed. S. de Sandoli (Jerusalem, 1978).
- Rocznik Chotelskiego*, ed. A. Bielowski, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, III (Lwów, 1878).
- Rocznik kapituły Krakowskiej*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, SN, V, *Annales Cracovienses priores cum calendario*, ed. S. Kozłowska-Budka (Warsaw, 1978).
- Rogerii *Carmen miserabile*/Rogerius, *Cântecul de jale (IIR, V)* (1935).
- Рогожский летописецъ*, in *PSRL*, XV, 1 (Petrograd, 1922).
- Români de la sud de Dunăre. Documente*, eds. S. Brezeanu, Gh. Zbucnea (Bucharest, 1997).
- Rubruck. See: Guillaume de Rubrouck/Guillelmus de Rubruc, William of Rubruck. *Sächsische Weltchronik*, ed. L. Weiland, in *MGH, Deutsche Chroniken und andere Geschichtsbücher des Mittelalters*, II, 1 (Hannover, 1876).
- Сага об Эймунде*, in E. A. Rydzewskaia, *Древняя Русь и Скандинавия IX–XIV вв.* (Moscow, 1978), pp. 89–104. See also: *Eymundar Saga, Эймундова сага* and *Vikings in Russia. Yngvar's Saga and Eymund's Saga*.
- Saga Óláfs konungs hins Helga. Den store saga om Olav den Hellige*, eds. O. A. Johnsen and J. Helgason, I (Oslo, 1941).
- Salimbene de Adam, *Cronica*, ed. G. Scalia, I (Bari, 1966).
- Šams ad-Din aš-Šuġa'ī, *Tarih al-Malik an-Našir Muhammad b. Qalawun aš-Šalihi wa-auladihi*, II, ed. B. Schäfer (Wiesbaden, 1985).
- Santarem, *Atlas, composé de mappemondes, de portulans, et de cartes hydrographiques et historiques, depuis le VIe jusqu'au XVIIe siècle pour la plupart inédites, devant servir de preuves à l'histoire de la cosmographie et de la cartographie pendant le Moyen Age et a celle des progrès de la géographie* (Paris, 1842–53).
- Sanudo, Marino = Marinus Sanutus dictus Torsellus, *Liber secretorum fidelium crucis super Terrae Sanctae recuperatione et conseruatione*, in *Gesta Dei per Francos*, II, ed. I. Bongarsius (Hanoviae, 1611).
- Сборник материалов относящихся к истории Золотой Орды*, I, ed. V. Tiesenhausen (St. Petersburg, 1884); II, ed. V. G. Tiesenhausen, red. A. A. Romaskevich and S. L. Volin (Moscow–Leningrad, 1941).
- Schütz, E., “Armeno-Kipchak texts from Lvov (A.D. 1618),” *AOH* 15 (1962), nos. 1–3, pp. 291–309.
- , “An Armeno-Kipchak document of 1640 from Lvov and its background in Armenia and in the diaspora,” in *Between the Danube and the Caucasus*, ed. G. Kara (Budapest, 1987), pp. 247–330.
- , “Armeno-kiptschakische Ehekontrakte und Testamente aus dem XVI. Jahrhundert,” in idem, *Armeno-Turcica. Selected Studies* (Bloomington, Indiana, 1998), no. VI, pp. 265–300.
- Scriptor incertus, *Historia de Leone Bardae Armenii filio*, in Leonis Grammatici *Chronographia*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1842).
- The Secret History of the Mongols. A Mongolian Epic Chronicle of the Thirteenth Century*, trans. and ed. I. de Rachewiltz, I (Leiden–Boston, 2004). See also: *Die Geheime Geschichte der Mongolen* and *Histoire secrète des Mongols*.
- Seibt, W., Zarnitz, M. L., *Das byzantinische Bleisiegel als Kunstwerk. Katalog zur Ausstellung* (Vienna, 1997).
- Shcherbak, A. M., *Огуз-наме. Мухаббат-наме. Памятники древнеуйгурской и староузбекской письменности* (Moscow, 1959).
- Shems ed-Din Abou-'Abdallah Moh'ammed de Damas, *Manuel de la cosmographie du Moyen Âge traduit de l'arabe “Nokhbet ed-dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr wal-bah'k”* ed. A. F. Mehren (Copenhague–Paris–Leipzig, 1974).

- Симеоновская летопись, in *PSRL*, XVIII (St. Petersburg, 1913).
- Simon de Saint-Quentin, *Histoire des Tartares*, ed. J. Richard (Paris, 1965).
- Simonis de Keza *Gesta Hungarorum*, ed. A. Domanovszky, in *SRH*, I.
- Сказаніе Исаіе пророка како възнесенъ дысть аггеломъ до 3-го невесы, ed. L. Stojanović, in *Споменик Српска Краљевска Академија*, III (Belgrade, 1890).
- Сказания еврейскихъ писателей о хазарахъ и хазарскомъ царстве, ed. A. Ia. Garkavi (St. Petersburg, 1874).
- Skutariotes = Theodori Scutariotae *Compendium chronicum*/Теодор Скутариот, *Обзорна хроника*, in *FHB*, XV, *Fontes Graeci historiae Bulgaricae*, VIII, edidit M. Vojnov, curantibus M. Vojnov, V. Tapkova-Zaimova, L. Joncev (Serdicae, 1972).
- Skylitzes, Ioannes = Ioannis Scylitzae *Synopsis historiarum*, ed. I. Thurn (Berolini et Novi Eboraci, 1973).
- Skylitzes, Ioannes [Skylitzes continuatus] = *Excerpta ex breviario historico* Ioannis Scylitzae Curopalatae, in *Kedrenos*, II, pp. 638–744.
- Skylitzès, Jean, *Empereurs de Constantinople*, trad. B. Flusin, red. J.-C. Cheynet (Paris, 2003).
- Славяно-молдавские летописи XV–XVI вв., ed. F. A. Grecul, co-ord. V. I. Buganov (Moscow, 1976).
- Snorri Sturluson. See: Sturluson, Snorri.
- Софійскія летописи, in *PSRL*, V (St. Petersburg, 1851).
- Solomon, C. and Stoide, C. A., *Documente tecucene*, I, *Sec. XVII–XIX* (Bârlad, 1938).
- Somogyi, J. v., “Ein arabischer Bericht über die Tataren im ‘Ta’rih al Islam’ von ad-Dahabi,” *Der Islam* 24 (1937), pp. 105–130.
- Советы и рассказы Кекавмена. See: Кекауменос = *Советы и рассказы Кекавмена/Cecaumeni Consilia et narrationes*.
- Spinei, V. and Spinei, M., “Însemnările cu caracter istorico-etnografic asupra Principatelor române ale contelui de Langeron,” *Patrimoniul*, Chişinău (1992), no. 2, pp. 3–46.
- Spuler, B., *Geschichte der Mongolen nach östlichen und europäischen Zeugnissen des 13. und 14. Jahrhunderts* (Zurich–Stuttgart, 1968).
- Стари српски хрисову и акти, биографије, летописи, типичи, поменици, записи и др., ed. L. Stojanović, in *Споменик Српска Краљевска Академија*, III (Belgrade, 1890).
- Stephanus de Salaniaco et Bernardus Guidonis, *De quatuor in quibus deus Praedicatorum ordinem insignivit*, ed. Th. Kaeppli (*Monumenta Ordinis Fratrum Praedicatorum Historica*, XXII) (Romae ad S. Sabinae, 1949).
- Stevenson, E. L., *Facsimiles of Portulan Charts belonging to the Hispanic Society of America* (New York, 1916).
- Strabo = *The Geography of Strabo*, III, ed. and trans. H. L. Jones (Cambridge, Mass.–London, 1967).
- Sturluson = Snorri Sturluson, *Heimskringla. Noregs konunga sogur*, ed. F. Jónsson (Oslo, 1966).
- Sturluson = Snorri Sturluson, *Heimskringla*, ed. B. Adalbjarnarson, III (Reykjavik, 1951).
- Sturluson = Snorri Sturluson, *Heimskringla*, eds. B. S. Kristjánsson, B. Halldórsson, J. Torfason, Ö. Thorsson, II (Reykjavik, 1991).
- Suceava. *File de istorie. Documente privitoare la istoria oraşului, 1388–1918*, I, eds. V. Gh. Miron, M.-Şt. Ceauşu, I. Caproşu, G. Irimescu (Bucharest, 1989).
- Suidae Lexicon*, ed. A. Adler, II (Lipsiae, 1931).
- Symeonis Magistri *Annales*, in Teophanes continuatus, Ioannes Cameniata, Symeon Magister, Georgius Monachus, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1838).
- Synaxarium Ecclesiae Constantinopolitanae*, ed. H. Delehaye, in *Prophylaeum ad Acta Sanctorum novembris* [63] (Brussels, 1902).
- Szántai, L., *Atlas Hungaricus. Magyarország nyomtatott térképei 1528–1850, Hungary in printed maps 1528–1850*, I, II (Budapest, 1996).

- Tacitus = P. Cornelius Tacitus, *Despre originea și țara germanilor*, trans. T. A. Naum, in idem, *Opere*, I (Bucharest, 1958).
- Tekin, T., *Les inscriptions de l'Orkhon. Kul Tighine, Bilghé Qaghan, Tounyouqouq* (Istanbul, 1995).
- Din tezaurul arhivistic vasluian. Catalog de documente (1399–1877)*, eds. Gr. Găneț, C.-I. Gârneață (Bucharest, 1986).
- Din tezaurul documentar sucevean. Catalog de documente 1393–1849*, eds. V. Gh. Miron, M. Șt. Ceașu, G. Irimescu, S. Irimescu (Bucharest, 1983).
- Theiner, A., *Vetera monumenta historica Hungariam sacram illustrantia*, I (Rome, 1859).
- , *Vetera monumenta Slavorum meridionalium historiam illustrantia*, I (Rome, 1863).
- Theophanes, *The Chronicle*. An English translation of *anni mundi 6095–6305* (A.D. 602–813), by H. Turledove (Philadelphia, 1982).
- Theophanes continuatus, *Chronographia*, in Theophanes continuatus, Ioannes Cameniata, Symeon Magister, Georgius Monachus, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1838).
- Theophylacti Simocatae *Historiarum libri octo*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1834).
- Thietmari *Chronicon*, ed. V. Cl. Ioh. M. Lappenberg, in *MGH,SS*, III (1839).
- Thietmari *Chronicon*, in *Monumenta Poloniae Historica*, I, ed. A. Bielowski (Lwów, 1864).
- Tholomeus von Lucca, *Die Annalen in doppelter Fassung*, ed. B. Schmeidler, in *MGH, Scriptores rerum Germanicarum*, NS, VIII (Berlin, 1930; reprint Munich, 1984).
- Thomas Tusi *Gesta imperatorum et pontificum*, ed. E. Ehrenfeuchter, in *MGH,SS*, XXII (1872).
- Thomsen, V., “Altürkische Inschriften aus der Mongolei in Übersetzung und mit Einleitung,” *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, NF, 3 (78) (1924), pp. 121–175.
- Three Byzantine Military Treatises*, ed. G. T. Dennis (Washington, D.C., 1985).
- Thurocz, John of = Johannes de Thurocz, *Chronica Hungarorum*, I, *Textus*, eds. E. Galántai and J. Kristó (Budapest, 1985).
- Tiesenhausen/Tizengausen, V. [G.]. See: *Сборник материалов относящихся к истории Золотой Орды*.
- Типографская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXIV (Petrograd, 1921).
- Tour du monde ou voyages du rabbin Péthachia de Ratisbonne*. See: Pethachia.
- The Travels of an Alchemist. The Journey of the Taoist Ch'ang-ch'un from China to the Hindukush at the Summons of Chingiz Khan Recorded by his Disciple Li Chih-ch'ang*, trans. A. Waley (London, 1931; reprint Westport, Connecticut, 1976).
- Троицкая летопись*, in *PSRL*, I (St. Petersburg, 1846).
- Троицкая летопись*, ed. M. D. Priselkov (Moscow–Leningrad, 1950).
- Tryjarski, E., *Dictionnaire arméno-kiptchak d'après trois manuscrits des collections viennoises* (Warsaw), I, 1 (1968); I, 2 (1968); I, 3 (1969); I, 4 (1972).
- Tudebodus, Petrus. See: Petrus Tudebodus.
- al-'Umari = *Das mongolische Weltreich*. Al-'Umari's *Darstellung der mongolischen Reiche in seinem Werk Masalik al-abşar fi mamalik al-amsar*, ed. K. Lech (Wiesbaden, 1968).
- Urbariile Țării Făgărașului*, I, 1601–1650, eds. D. Prodan, L. Ursuțiu, and M. Ursuțiu (Bucharest, 1970); II, 1651–1680, ed. D. Prodan (Bucharest, 1976).
- Ureche, Gr., *Letopisețul Țării Moldovei*, ed. P. P. Panaitescu (Bucharest, 1955).
- Urechia, V. A., (ed.), *Codex Bandinus. Memoriu asupra scrierii lui Bandinus de la 1646*, in *AARMSI*, Ser. II, 16 (1893–1894). See also: Bandini, Marco.
- Uricariul, Axinte. See: Acsinti Uricariul and Axinte Uricariul.
- Urkunden zur älteren Handels- und Staatsgeschichte der Republik Venedig mit besonderer Beziehung auf Byzanz und die Levante*, II, eds. T. L. Fr. Tafel and G. M. Thomas (*Fontes rerum Austriacarum/Oesterreichische Geschichts-Quellen*, 2nd Ser., *Diplomataria et acta*, XIII, 2) (Vienna, 1856).
- Urkundenbuch zur Geschichte der Deutschen in Siebenbürgen*, I, eds. F. Zimmermann and C. Werner (Hermannstadt, 1892); III, eds. F. Zimmermann, C. Werner and G. Müller (Hermannstadt, 1902); IV, ed. G. Gündisch (Hermannstadt, 1937); VI,



- ed. G. Gündisch, in collab. with H. Gündisch, G. Nussbächer, K. G. Gündisch (Bucharest, 1981).
- Vásáry, S. <I.>, "Armeno-Kipchak parts from the Kamenets chronicle," *AOH* 22 (1969), no. 2, pp. 139–189.
- Verantio (Verancsics) = Ant[onius] Verantius, *De situ Transylvaniae, Moldaviae, & Transalpiniae, Fragmentum. Farrago indigesta*, in *Scriptores rerum Hungaricarum minores*, II, ed. M. G. Kovachich (Budae, 1798).
- Veress, A., *Documente privitoare la istoria Ardealului, Moldovei și Țării Românești* (Bucharest), III, *Acte și scrisori (1585–1592)* (1931); V (1596–1599) (1932); VI (1600–1601) (1933); VII (1602–1606) (1934).
- Vikings in Russia. Yngvar's Saga and Eymund's Saga*, trans. H. Pallson and P. Edwards (Edinburgh, 1989).
- Villani, Giovanni, *Historie fiorentine*, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, ed. L. A. Muratorius, XIII (Mediolani, 1728).
- , *Cronica*, in *Croniche di Giovanni, Matteo e Filippo Villani*, I, ed. A. Racheli (Trieste, 1857).
- , *Nuova cronica*, ed. G. Porta (Parma), I (1990); II (1991).
- Villehardouin, *La conquête de Constantinople*, in *Historiens et chroniqueurs du Moyen Age*, eds. A. Pauphilet, Ed. Pognon (Paris, 1952).
- Vincent of Beauvais. See: Vincentius Bellocensis.
- Vincentius Bellocensis, *Speculum historiale (Bibliotheca mundi seu Speculi maioris, IV)* (Duaci, 1624; reprint Graz, 1965).
- Vita Meletii*, in *FHB*, XXII (1980).
- Vita Theodorici abbatis Andaginensis*, ed. W. Wattenbach, in *MGH, SS*, XII (1856).
- Вологодско-Пермская летопись*, in *PSRL*, XXVI (Moscow–Leningrad, 1959).
- Waddingus Hibernus, L., *Annales Minorum seu trium ordinum a S. Francisco institutorum*, VII (1323–1346), 3rd ed. J. M. Fonseca ab Ebora (Ad Clara Aquas/Quaracchi, 1932).
- Wavrin, Jehan de, *Anciennes croniques d'Engleterre*, II, ed. [E.] Dupont (Paris, 1859).
- Das mongolische Weltreich*. See: al-'Umari.
- Wenzel, G. (ed.), *Árpádkori új okmánytár*, I, 1001–1235 (Pest, 1860).
- Willermo Tyrensi archiepiscopo, *Historia rerum in partibus Transmarinis gestarum a tempore successorum Mahumeth usque ad annum Domini MCLXXXIV*, in *Gesta Dei per Francos*, I, ed. I. Bongarsius (Hanoviae, 1611). See also: William Archbishop of Tyre.
- William of Rubruck = *The Mission of Friar William of Rubruck. His Journey to the Court of the Great Khan Möngke, 1253–1255*, trans. P. Jackson, eds. P. Jackson and D. Morgan (London, 1990). See also: Guillaume de Rubrouck/Guillaume de Rubruc.
- William Archbishop of Tyre, *A History of Deeds Done Beyond the Sea*, I, eds. E. A. Babcock and A. C. Krey (Saint Paul, Minn., 1943).
- Yahya-ibn-Sa'ïd d'Antioche, *Histoire*, eds. I. Kratchkovsky and A. Vasiliev, in *Patrologia orientalis* (Paris), XVIII (1924); XXIII (1932).
- Ya'kubi, *Les Pays*, ed. G. Wiet (Cairo, 1937).
- al-Yūnīnī = *Early Mamluk Syrian Historiography*. Al-Yūnīnī's, *Djāyī Mir'āt al-zamān*, I, ed. Li Guo (Leiden–Boston–Cologne, 1998).
- Zimmermann, H., *Der Deutsche Orden im Burzenland. Eine diplomatische Untersuchung* (Cologne–Weimar–Vienna, 2000).
- Zonaras, Ioannes = Ioannis Zonarae *Epitomae historiarum libri XVIII*, III, *Libri XIII–XVIII*, ed. Th. Büttner-Wobst (Bonn, 1897).
- Zonaras, Ioannes = Ioannis Zonarae *Lexicon*, ed. I. A. Tittman, I (Lipsiae, 1808).
- Zonaras, Ioannes = Joannis Zonarae *Annales*, in *PG*, CXXXV (1887).
- Zosimi *Historiae*, ed. Im. Bekker (Bonn, 1837).
- Zosimus, *Historia nova. The Decline of Rome*, trans. J. J. Buchanan and H. T. Davis (San Antonio, Texas, 1967).
- Žsigmondkori oklevéltár*, I (1387–1399), ed. E. Mályusz (Budapest, 1951); III (1411–1412), eds. E. Mályusz and I. Borsa (Budapest, 1993).

B. *Archaeological Sources*

- Abâzov, E., Clocico, E., "Tumulul I din necropola tumulară Chirileni," *Tyragetia* 4–5 (1997), pp. 95–108.
- , "Necropola tumulară de lângă satul Chirileni," *Tyragetia* 8 (1999), pp. 29–50.
- Antoniu, S., Obreja, C., "Studiul antropologic al scheletelor medievale de la Hudum-Botoșani din secolele XIII–XV," *AM* 10 (1985), pp. 89–96.
- The Archaeology of the Steppes. Methods and Strategies*, ed. B. Genito (Napoli, 1994).
- Artamonov, M. I., "Саркел-Белая Вежа," *МИА*, 62 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1958), pp. 7–84.
- Atanasov, G., "Средневековни амулети от Силистра," *Известия на Народния Музей Варна* 22 (37) (1986), pp. 79–81.
- Atavine, A., "Les Petchénègues et les Torks des steppes russes d'après les données de l'archéologie funéraire," in *De l'Âge du fer au haute Moyen Âge. Archéologie funéraire, princes et élites guerrières*, eds. X. Delestre, M. Kazanski, P. Périn (= *Mémoires publiés par l'Association française d'Archéologie mérovingienne* 15) (*sine loco*, 2006), pp. 351–355.
- Bálint, C., *A nagszentmiklósi kincs. Régészeti tanulmányok* (Budapest, 2004).
- Barnea, I., "Предварительные сведения о каменных памятниках Басараби (Обл. Добруджа)," *Dacia*, NS, 6 (1962), pp. 293–316.
- Bărcă, V., *Istorie și civilizație. Sarmataii în spațiul est-carpatic (sec. I a. Chr.—începutul sec. II p. Chr.)* (Cluj-Napoca, 2006).
- Bejenaru, L., "Date arheozoologice privind unele tipuri de animale domestice existente în evul mediu pe teritoriul României," *Arheologia Medievală* 3 (2000), pp. 253–262.
- , *Arheozoologia spațiului românesc medieval* (Iași, 2003).
- , *Arheozoologia Moldovei medievale* (Iași, 2006).
- Beranová, M., "Die Archäologie über die Pflanzenproduktion bei den Hunnen, Awaren und Protobulgaren," *Památky archeologické* 76 (1986), pp. 81–103.
- Berciu, D., "Săpăturile arheologice de la Tangîru," *MCA* 5 (1959), pp. 143–154.
- Berezovets, D. T., "Поселения улочей на р. Тясмине," *МИА*, 108 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1963), pp. 145–208.
- Bichir, Gh., "Les Sarmates au Bas-Danube," *Dacia*, NS, 21 (1977), pp. 167–197.
- Bondar, R. D., Bulatovich, S. A., "К находкам византийских монет в Орловке," in *Северное Причерноморье* (Kiev, 1984), pp. 145–148.
- Botezatu, D., Cantemir, P., Miu, G., "Observații antropologice asupra materialului osteologic uman de la Trifești (jud. Iași), datînd din perioada feudală timpurie (secolele XIII–XIV e.n.)," *AM* 11 (1987), pp. 247–259.
- Botezatu, D., Ștefănescu, Gh., "Contribuții la studiul antropologic al populației feudale timpurii din Moldova din sec. XIII e.n.," *Studii și cercetări de antropologie* 7 (1970), no. 1, pp. 13–18.
- Brudiu, M., "Cercetări periegetice în sudul Moldovei," *MCA* 9 (1970), pp. 511–528.
- , "Cercetări arheologice de la Vinători (jud. Galați)," *MCA* (1983), pp. 407–413.
- , *Lumea de sub tumulii din sudul Moldovei. De la indo-europeni la turancii târzii* (Bucharest, 2003).
- Bucureștii de odinioară în lumina săpăturilor arheologice*, ed. I. Ionașcu (Bucharest, 1959).
- Buzdugan, C., Alexoae, I., "Săpături arheologice într-un tumul din comuna Roma (județul Botoșani)," *Hierasus* 7–8 (1988), pp. 105–115.
- Canache, A., Curta, F., "Depozite de unelte și arme medievale timpurii de pe teritoriul României," *Mousaios* 4 (1994), no. 1, pp. 179–221.
- Charikov, A. A., "Новая серия каменных статуэток из Семиречья," in *Средневековые древности евразийских степей*, ed. S. A. Pletneva (Moscow, 1980), pp. 113–136.
- Chebotarenko, G. F., "Материалы к археологической карте памятников VIII–X вв. южной части Пруто-Днестровского междуречья," in *ДРМ*, pp. 211–229.
- , *Калфа-городище VIII–X вв. на Днестре* (Kishinev, 1973).
- , "Поселение Этулия VI," in *АИМ (1972 г.)* (1974), pp. 173–182.

- , *Население центральной части Днестровско-Прутского междуречья в X–XII вв.* (Kishinev, 1982).
- Chebotarenko, G. F., Iarovoi, E. V., Tel'nov, N. P., *Курганы Буджакской степи* (Kishinev, 1989).
- Chebotarenko, G. F., Shcherbakova, T. A., “Раскопки поселения у с. Эгулия,” in *AIM (1973 g)* (1974), pp. 140–155.
- Chebotarenko, G. F., Tel'nov, N. P., “Исследования южнославянской экспедиции в 1979 г.,” in *AIM v 1979–1980 gg* (1983), pp. 88–102.
- Chernysh, E. K., Cherniakov, I. T., “Археологические разведки в Подунавье,” *КС* 99 (1964), pp. 89–96.
- Chetraru, N. A., “Археологические исследования в Кагульском районе в 1958 г.,” in *DPM*, pp. 35–54.
- Chirica, V., Tanasachi, M., *Repertoriul arheologic al județului Iași* (Iași), I (1984); II (1985).
- Chirkov, A. Iu., “Новые данные о поздних кочевниках Среднего Попрутья,” in *Археологические исследования молодых учёных Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1990), pp. 158–168.
- Coman, G., “Mărturii arheologice privind creștinismul în Moldova secolelor VI–XII,” *Danubius* 5 (1971), pp. 75–83.
- , *Statornicie, continuitate. Repertoriul arheologic al județului Vaslui* (Bucharest, 1980).
- Comșa, E., “Betrachtungen über den Pflanzenanbau während der Jungsteinzeit auf dem Gebiet Rumäniens,” *Beiträge zur Ur- und Frühgeschichte* 1 (1981), pp. 111–127.
- Comșa, M., “Die Forschungen von Slon und ihre Bedeutung für das Studium der Entwicklung der Feudalbeziehungen südlich der Karpaten,” in *Siedlung, Burg und Stadt. Studien zu ihren Anfängen*, eds. K.-H. Otto and J. Herrmann (Berlin, 1969), pp. 232–238.
- , “Inscripții ‘runice’ din secolele IX–X descoperite la Slon-Prahova (Notă preliminară),” *Cercetări arheologice* 11 (1998–2000), no. 2, pp. 615–622.
- Comșa, M. and Bichir, Gh., “Date preliminare cu privire la necropola de la Păuleasa,” *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 2, pp. 317–320.
- Constantinescu, E.-M., “Morminte de călăreți nomazi de la cumpăna mileniilor descoperite în județul Buzău,” *Mousaios* 4 (1994), no. 1, pp. 165–177.
- Constantiniu, M., Panait, P. I., “Șantierul Băncasa-Străulești. Cercetările din sectorul Măicănești (1964–1966),” *București. Materiale de istorie și muzeografie* 6 (1968), pp. 43–82.
- Damian, O., “Considérations sur la citadelle en brique de Slon-Prahova,” *Studia Antiqua et Archaeologica* 9 (2003), pp. 483–496.
- Demchenko, T. I., Chebotarenko, G. F., “Погребения кочевников в курганах нижнего Поднестровья,” in *Средневековые памятники Днестровско-Прутского междуречья*, eds. P. P. Bârnea (gen. ed.), G. F. Chebotarenko, A. A. Nudel'man, N. P. Tel'nov, E. N. Abyzova (Kishinev, 1988), pp. 95–105.
- Diaconu, P., “Două pandantive foliforme de bronz de la Păciuil lui Soare,” *Cultură și civilizație la Dunărea de Jos, Călărași*, 3–4 (1987), pp. 113–114.
- Diaconu, Gh. and Diaconu, P., “Un mormint de călăreț nomad din secolele XI–XII descoperit la Movilița,” *SCIV* 18 (1967), no. 1, pp. 135–140.
- Dobroliubskii, A. O., “Древности средневековых кочевников в Нижнем Поднестровье (материалы раскопок И. Я. Стремповского),” in *Курганы в зонах новостроек Молдавии*, eds. I. I. Artemenko (gen. ed.), I. A. Borziac, V. A. Dergacev, E. V. Iarovoi, S. M. Agul'nikov (Kishinev, 1984), pp. 153–174.
- , *Кочевники на юго-западе СССР в X–XVIII веках* (Автор. дисс. на соиск. учен. ст. докт. ист. наук) (Moscow, 1988).
- Dobroliubskii, A. O., Stoliarik, O. S., “Византийські монети у кочівницькому похованні XII ст. у Дністро-Дунайському межиріччі,” *Археологія* 43 (1983), pp. 71–75.

- Dobroliubskii, A. O., Subbotin, L. V., "Погребение средневекового кочевника у села Траповка," in *Памятники римского и средневекового времени в Северо-Западного Причерноморье* (Kiev, 1982), pp. 168–173.
- Dobroliubskii, A. O., Subbotin, L. V., Segeda, S. P., "Золотоордынское погребение у Дуная (К истории кочевого населения Северо-Западного Причерноморье в XIV в.)," in *Днестро-Дунайское междуречье в I-начале II тыс. н.э.* (Kiev, 1987), pp. 84–93.
- , "Погребальные памятники Бужакской орды," in *Средневековые памятники Днестровско-Прутского междуречья*, eds. P. P. Bârnea (gen.ed.), G. F. Chebotarenko, A. A. Nudel'man, N. P. Tel'nov, E. N. Abyzova (Kishinev, 1988), pp. 131–144.
- Dosymbaeva, A. M., "Мемориальные памятники тюрок жетысу по материалам святилища Мерке," *Хабарлары известия. Серия Общественных наук* 1 (224) (2000), pp. 64–83.
- Dragotă, A., *Aspecte de multiculturalitate spirituală. Rit și ritual funerar în Transilvania și Europa Centrală și de Sud-Est (Secolele IX–XI)* (Alba Iulia, 2006).
- Dubrovskii, D. V., "Жертвенный конь в погребальном обряде кочевников улуса Джучи," in *Тюркологический сборник, 2001, Золотая Орда и ее наследие*, eds. S. G. Kliashtornyĭ (gen. ed.), V. V. Trepavlov, D. M. Iskhakov (Moscow, 2002), pp. 198–211.
- Dumitriu, L., *Der mittelalterliche Schmuck des Unteren Donaugebietes im 11.–15. Jahrhundert*, trans. R. Harhoiu (Bucharest, 2001).
- Eberhardt, I., *Памятники старины и археологическія находки въ Бессарабіи* (Kishinev, 1916).
- Ermolenko, L. N., *Средневековые каменные изваяния Казахских степей (типология, семантика в аспекте военной идеологии и традиционного мировоззрения)* (Novosibirsk, 2004).
- Evtiukhova, L. A., "Каменные изваяния Южной Сибири и Монголии," *МИА*, 24 (Moscow, 1952), pp. 71–120.
- Fedorov, G. V., "Работы Прутско-Днестровской экспедиции в 1960–1961 гг.," *КС* 99 (1964), pp. 77–88.
- , "Работа Прутско-Днестровской экспедиции в 1963 г.," *КС* 113 (1968), pp. 85–93.
- Fedorov, G. V., Chebotarenko, G. F., *Памятники древних славян (VI–XIII вв.)* (АКМ, 6) (1974).
- Fedorov, G. V., Chebotarenko, G. F., Velikanova, M. S., *Бранештский могильник X–XI вв.* (Kishinev, 1984).
- Fetisov, A., Galkova, I., "The 'Rurikid sign' from the B3 Church at Basarabi-Murfatlar," *Apulum* 44 (2007), pp. 299–314.
- Fomin, A. V., Kovács, L., *The Tenth Century Máramaros County ("Huszt") Dirham Hoard* (Budapest, 1987).
- Geras'kova, L. S., *Скульптура середньовічних кочовиків степів Східної Європи* (Kiev, 1991).
- , "Новое в изучении монументальной скульптуры кочевников средневековья," *Stratum plus* (1999), no. 5, pp. 408–430.
- Goshkevich, V. I., "Погребения датированные джучидскими монетами из раскопок И. Я. Стемпковского," *Вісник Одеської Комісії Краєзнавства при Українській Академії Наук* 4–5, *Секція археологічна*, Odessa (1930), pp. 104–111.
- Gostar, N., "Săpăturile și sondajele de la Șendreni-Barboși (r. Galați)," *МСА* 8 (1962), pp. 505–511.
- Grosu, V. I., "Погребение у с. Фрумушика," in *АИМ (1974–1976 гг)* (1981), pp. 159–164.
- , *Хронология памятников сарматской культуры Днестровско-Прутского междуречья* (Kishinev, 1990).

- Gukin, V. D., Kurchatov, S. I., "Позднекочевническое погребение у села Паланка," *Археологические вести* 4 (1995), pp. 143–145.
- Gukin, V., Kurceatov, S., "Un mormânt al nomazilor târzii din apropierea s. Palanca (Drochia)," *Revista arheologică* 2 (1998), pp. 136–139.
- Gurkin, S. V., "Святилища половецкого времени с деревянными изваяниями из раскопок Волго-Донской археологической экспедиции ЛОИА АН СССР," *Донская археология* 1 (1998), pp. 29–37.
- Hahecu, V., Gukin, V., "Rezultatele investigațiilor unor complexe tumulare din r-ul Florești, Republica Moldova," in *Vestigii arheologice din Moldova* (Chișinău, 1997), pp. 188–210.
- Haimovici, S., "Studii materialului paleofaunistic din așezarea datînd din secolele X–XI e.n. de la Bârlălești (jud. Vaslui)," *Acta Moldaviae Meridionalis* 5–6 (1983–1984), pp. 205–212.
- Hartuche, N., "Raport asupra săpăturilor arheologice de la Lișcoteanca, jud. Brăila," *MCA, Tulcea* (1980), pp. 67–85.
- , "Preliminarii la repertoriul arheologic al județului Brăila," *Istros* 1 (1980), pp. 281–354.
- Hartuche, N., Anastasiu, F., "Morminte de călăreți nomazi descoperite în județul Brăila," *Istros* 1 (1980), pp. 263–280.
- Hatházi, G., "Az Árpád-kori magyar hadszervezet nomád elemcinek kérdéséhez. A besenyők," *Hadtörténelmi közlemények* 103 (1990), no. 2, pp. 22–60.
- Havliuk, P. I., "Древньоруські городища на Південному Бузі," in *Слов'яно-руські старожитності* (Kiev, 1969), pp. 156–174.
- Hâncu, I. G., *Поселения XI–XIV веков в Оргеевских кодрах Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969).
- , *Лимбарь—средневековый могильник XII–XIV веков в Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1970).
- , "Археологические исследования на поселении Лимбарь-Кэпрэрия X–XII вв. в 1968–1969 гг.," in *AIM v 1968–1969 gg* (1972), pp. 159–183.
- , "Результаты археологических раскопок селища X–XIV вв. у с. Ханска в 1970–1971 гг.," in *AIM v 1970–1971 gg* (1973), pp. 177–198.
- , *Кэпрэрия—памятник культуры X–XII вв.* (Kishinev, 1973).
- , "Раскопки на поселении X–XIV вв. у села Ханска," in *AIM (1972 g.)* (1974), pp. 159–172.
- , "Раскопки на селище Ханска X–XIV вв.," in *AIM (1973 g.)* (1974), pp. 175–188.
- , "Жилища на территории Молдавии в X–XVII вв.," in *Древнее жилище народов Восточной Европы* (Moscow, 1975), pp. 89–98.
- Hâncu, I., "Movable funerare de pe teritoriul Republicii Moldova și semnificația lor istorică," in *Symposia professorum. Seria Istorie. Materialele Sesiunii științifice din 4–5 mai 2001* (Universitatea Liberă Internațională din Moldova) (Chișinău, 2001), pp. 15–16.
- , *Vetre strămoșești din Republica Moldova. Materiale arheologice informativ-didactice* (Chișinău, 2003).
- Hordilă, D., "Cîteva considerații de ordin arheologic privind populația catolică din zona Romanului în secolele XIV–XIX," *Buletin istoric* (Episcopia Romano-Catolică Iași), 1 (2000), pp. 70–74.
- Ianushevich, Z. V., *Культурные растения Юго-Запада СССР по палеоботаническим исследованиям* (Kishinev, 1976).
- Iarovoî, E. V., *Курганы энеолита—эпохи бронзы Нижнего Поднестровья* (Kishinev, 1990).
- , *Раскрывшая тайны курганов* (Chișinău, 1992).
- Iiescu, O., "Insemnări privitoare la descoperiri monetare," *SCN* 1 (1957), pp. 461–466.
- Ioniță, A., "Morminte de călăreți la nordul Dunării de Jos în sec. X–XIII," in *Prinos lui Petre Diaconu la 80 de ani*, eds. I. Cîndea, V. Sîrbu, M. Neagu (Brăila, 2004), pp. 461–488.

- Iotov, V., "О материальной культуре печенегов к юго от Дуная—листовидные ажурные амулеты XI в.," *Stratus plus* (2000), no. 5, pp. 209–212.
- , "Листовидни ажурни амулети от XI в.," in *Плиска-Преслав*, 8 (Shumen, 2000).
- Ivanov, V. A., Kriger, V. A., *Курганы кыпчакского времени на Южном Урале (XII–XIV вв.)* (Moscow, 1988).
- Jansson, S. B. F., Wessén, E., *Gotlands runinskrifter*, I (Stockholm, 1962).
- Die Keramik der Saltovo-Majaki Kultur und ihrer Varianten*, ed. C. Bálint (Varia Archaeologica Hungarica, III) (Budapest, 1990).
- Korzukhina, G. F., *Русские клады IX–XIII вв.* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1954).
- Kovács, L., "A Máramaros megyei ('huszti') dirhemkincsről," in *Honfoglalás és Árpád-kor* (Ungvár, 1997), pp. 234–244.
- Kozlov, V. I., "Охранные работы на поселении VIII-начала X в. у с. Шабо," in *Северное Причерноморье (Материалы по археологии)* (Kiev, 1984), pp. 138–144.
- , "Към въпроса за хронологията на паметниците от североизточната провинция на Първото българско царство (върху материал от разкопките на селищата в степта на междуречието Дунав-Днестър)," in *Българите в Северното Причерноморие*, V (Veliko Tărnovo, 1996), pp. 109–125.
- , "Богатое—поселение Первого болгарского царства на левобережье Дуная," *Добруджа* 14–16 (1997–1999), pp. 98–130.
- Kozlov, V. I., Maliukovich, A. E., Subbotin, L. V., "Раскопки поселения IX–X вв. Сафьяны близ Дуная," in *Старожитности степового Причорномор'я і Криму* (Zaporizhzhia, 2001), pp. 227–239.
- Kravchenko, A. A., "Поселение IX–X вв. н.э. у села Сафьяны," *МАСП* 7 (1971), pp. 71–77.
- Kropotkin, V. V., "Новые находки сасанидских и куфических монет в Восточной Европе," *Нумизматика и Эпиграфика* 9 (1971), pp. 76–97.
- Kubarev, V. D. and Tseveendorj, D., "Ancient Turkic memorials in the Altai," *Archaeology, Ethnology and Anthropology of Eurasia* 1 (9) (2002), pp. 76–95.
- Kyzlasov, I., "Руническая эпиграфика древних болгар," *Татар археологиясе*, Kazan (2000), nos. 1–2 (6–7), pp. 5–18.
- Kyzlasov, L. R., "О назначении древнетюркских каменных изваяний, изображающих людей," *СА* (1964), no. 2, pp. 27–39.
- Leahu, V., Trohani, G., "Două morminte de călăreți nomazi din Cîmpia Telcormanului," *SCIVA* 29 (1978), no. 4, pp. 529–539.
- , "Săpăturile arheologice de la Vitănești, jud. Telcorman," *Cercetări arheologice* 3 (1979), pp. 127–141.
- Liljegren, J. G., *Run-urkunder* (Stockholm, 1833).
- Luca, C., Măndescu, D., *Rituri și ritualuri funerare în spațiul extracarpatic în secolele VIII–X* (Brăila, 2001).
- Marinescu-Bîlcu, S., Rența, E., Matei, Gh., "Les recherches archéologiques de sauvetage de Ciulnitza, le département de Ialomitza (1994–1997). Le tumulus I," in *Pratiques funéraires dans l'Europe des XIII<sup>e</sup>–IV<sup>e</sup> s. av. J.-C. Actes du III<sup>e</sup> Colloque International d'Archéologie Funéraire organisé à Tulcea, 15–20 septembre 1997*, ed. V. Lungu (Tulcea, 2000), pp. 149–165.
- Matei, Gh., "Platonești, jud. Ialomița," in *Cronica cercetărilor arheologice. Campania 1997. A XXXII-a Sesiune națională de rapoarte arheologice, Călărași, 20–24 mai 1998* [Bucharest, 1998], pp. 57–58.
- Matei, Gh., Coman, R., "Platonești, jud. Ialomița," in *Cronica cercetărilor arheologice. Campania 1998. A XXXIII-a Sesiune națională de rapoarte arheologice, Vaslui, 30 iunie–4 iulie 1999* [Bucharest, 1999], pp. 86–87.
- Matei, M. D., Emândi, E. I., *Habitatul medieval rural din Valea Moldovei și din bazinul Șomuzului Mare (secolele XI–XVII)* (Bucharest, 1982).

- Maxim-Alaiba, R., "Două morminte turanice tîrzii de la Banca," *AM* 11 (1987), pp. 235–240.
- , "Considerații preliminare cu privire la viața spirituală a locuitorilor așezării de la Gara Banca-Vaslui din secolele IX–X," *AM* 12 (1988), pp. 253–261.
- Maximilian, C., Haas, N., "Notă asupra materialului osos dintr-un mormînt din epoca feudală timpurie descoperit la Tangîru," *MCA* 5 (1959), pp. 155–161.
- Mănucu-Adameșteanu, Gh., "Noi descoperiri arheologice la Isaccea," *SCIVA* 38 (1987), no. 3, pp. 285–292.
- Meliukova, A. I., "Курган усаговкого типа у села Тудорово," *КС* 88 (1962), pp. 74–82.
- Mesterházy, K., "Honfoglalás kori k erami nk keleti kapsolatai," *Folia archaeologica* 26 (1975), pp. 99–117.
- Mikhailina, L., *Слов'яни VIII–X ст. між Дніпром і Карпатами* (Kiev, 2007).
- Mitrea, B., "Oboli ungurești din prima jumătate a secolului al XII-lea descoperiți în Muntenia," *SCN* 4 (1968), pp. 409–412.
- , "La n cropole birituelle de Sultana. R sultats et probl mes," *Dacia*, NS, 32 (1988), pp. 91–139.
- , "Das Gr berfeld aus dem VIII. Jahrhundert von Izvoru, jud. Giurgiu (I)," *Dacia*, NS, 33 (1989), nos. 1–2, pp. 145–219.
- Mitrea, I., "Așezarea prefeudală de la Oncești (jud. Bac u)," *Carpica* 4 (1971), pp. 271–286.
- , "Cercet ri arheologice privind secolele IV–XI  n județul Vrancea," *Studii și comunic ri*, Focșani, 1 (1978), pp. 53–59.
- Miu, G., Simalcsik, R., "Necropola feudal-timpurie de la Hudum (județul Botoșani). Studiu antropologic," *Academia Rom nă. Memoriile Secțiunilor Științifice*, Ser. IV, 26 (2003), pp. 207–220.
- Miu, G., Simalcsik, R., Stupu, M., "La n cropole f odale de Hudum (d partement de Botoșani), XIII<sup>e</sup>–XIV<sup>e</sup> si cles. Analyse d mographique," *Annuaire Roumain d'Anthropologie* 40 (2003), pp. 3–9.
- Morintz, S. and Ionescu, B., "Cercet ri arheologice  n  mprejurimile orașului Oltenița (1958–1967)," *SCIV* 19 (1968), no. 1, pp. 95–128.
- Narozhnyi, E. I., "О половецких изваяниях и святилищах XIII–XIV вв. Северного Кавказа и Дона," in *Степи Европы в эпоху средневековья*, 3, *Половецко-золотоордынское время*, gen.ed. A. V. Evglevskii (Donetsk, 2003), pp. 245–274.
- Navrotskii, N. I., "Половецкие каменные изваяния Армавировского краеведческого музея," in *Историко-археологический альманах*, 1 (Armagir–Moscow, 1995), pp. 157–164.
- [Nestor, I. et al.,] "Șantierul Valea Jijiei," *SCIV* 3 (1952), pp. 19–119.
- Nicolae, E., "Un dirhem din secolul al X-lea descoperit la Iacobeni, com. Vl deni, jud. Iași," in *Simposion de numismatică dedicat  mplinirii a patru secole de la prima Unire a rom nilor sub Mihai Voievod Viteazul, Chișin u, 28–30 mai 2000*, gen. ed. E. Nicolae (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 95–96.
- Nudel'man, A. A., *Топография кладов и находок единичных монет (АКМ)*, 8 (1976).
- Oboldueva, T. G., "Курган эпохи бронзы на р. Когильник," *Izv. K shinev* 5 (25) (1955), pp. 31–49.
- Olofson, G., "Примечательнейшие курганы Бессарабской области," *ՀՊՕ* 2 (1850).
- Otreshchenko, V., Rassamakin, Ia., "Гробницы царей находятся в Геррах," *Знание-сила* (1982), no. 6, pp. 16–19.
- Otreshchenko, V. V., Rassamakin, Iu. Ia., "Половецкий комплекс Чингульського кургану," *Археологія* 53 (1986), pp. 14–36.
- P l czi-Horv th, A., "A fels szentkir lyi kun s rlet," *Cumania* 1, *Archaeologia* (1972), pp. 177–204.

- , “A kunok megtelepedése Magyarországon,” *Archaeologiai értesítő* 101 (1974), no. 2, pp. 244–259.
- , “Bericht über die Ausgrabung des mittelalterlichen Dorfes Szentkirály,” *Folia Archaeologica* 26 (1975), pp. 183–190.
- , “A Lászlófalván 1969–1974-ben végzett régészeti ásatások eredményei,” *Cumania* 4, *Archaeologia* (1976), pp. 275–309.
- Paragină, A., “Un nou depozit de arme și unelte din feudalismul timpuriu descoperit pe teritoriul județului Vrancea,” *Studii și comunicări*, Focșani, 2 (1979), pp. 41–44.
- , “Piese din secolele XI–XIV descoperite în zona de curbură a Carpaților,” *Mousaios* 4 (1994), no. 1, pp. 223–228.
- Păunescu, Al., Șadurschi, P., Chirica, V., *Repertoriul arheologic al județului Botoșani*, I, II (Bucharest, 1976).
- Petrescu-Dîmbovița, M. et al., “Șantierul Hlincea-Iași,” *SCIV* 4 (1953), nos. 1–2, pp. 312–334.
- , “Șantierul arheologic Hlincea-Iași,” *SCIV* 5 (1954), nos. 1–2, pp. 233–255.
- , “Șantierul arheologic Hlincea-Iași,” *SCIV* 6 (1955), nos. 3–4, pp. 687–712.
- Petrescu-Dîmbovița, M., Teodor, D. Gh., *Sisteme de fortificații medievale timpurii la est de Carpați. Așezarea de la Fundu Herței (jud. Botoșani)* (Iași, 1987).
- Petrescu-Dîmbovița, M., Teodor, D. Gh. and Spinei, V., “Les principaux résultats des fouilles archéologiques de Fundu Herței (Roumanie, départ. de Botoșani),” *Archeologia Polski* 16 (1971), pp. 363–383.
- Petrescu-Dîmbovița, M., Zaharia, Em., “Sondajul arheologic de la Dănești,” *MCA* 8 (1962), pp. 47–63.
- Pinter, Z. K., Dragotă, A., Țiplic, I. M., *Piese de podoabă și vestimentație la grupurile etnice din Transilvania (sec. VII–XII)* (Alba Iulia, 2006).
- Pletneva, S. A., “Средневековая керамика Таманского городища,” in *Керамика и стекло древней Тмутаракани*, gen.ed. B. A. Rybakov (Moscow, 1963).
- , *Древности черных клубуков (ASAI, E 1–19)* (Moscow, 1973).
- , *Половецкие каменные изваяние (ASAI, E 4–2)* (Moscow, 1974).
- , “Кочевники восточноевропейских степей в X–XIII вв.,” in *Степи Евразии в эпоху средневековья*, ed. S. A. Pletneva (Moscow, 1981), pp. 213–223.
- , *Печенеги и гузы на Нижнем Дону (по материалом кочевнического могильника у Саркела-Белой Вежи)* (Moscow, 1990).
- Popov, A., *Крепости и укрепительни съоръжения в крѣнската средновековна област* (Sofia, 1982).
- Popovici, I., Adam, M., Udrescu, M. St., “Contribution anthropologique au problème du peuplement de la Plaine Roumaine du Moyen Âge,” in *Populație și societate*, IV, ed. Șt. Pascu (Cluj-Napoca, 1980), pp. 210–214.
- Postică, G. I., “Раскопки поселения Лимбарь-Кэпрэрия,” in *AO 1981 G* (1983), pp. 400–401.
- , “Археологические исследования на средневековом поселении Ханска,” in *AIM v 1981 g* (1985), pp. 162–167.
- , *Românii din codrii Moldovei în evul mediu timpuriu (Studiu arheologic pe baza ceramicii din așezarea Hansca)* (Chișinău, 1994).
- Postică, Gh., Hâncu, I., Tentiu, I., “Așezarea din secolele IX–XI de la Giurgiu-lești și unele considerații privind situările medievale timpurii din zona lacurilor dunărene,” in *Studia in honorem Ion Năculiță. Omagiu cu prilejul împlinirii a 60 de ani*, eds. T. Arnăuț, A. Zănoici, S. Matveev (Chișinău, 1999), pp. 280–298.
- Postică, Gh., Sava, E., Agulnikov, S., “Morminte ale nomazilor turanici medievali din tumuli de lângă localitățile Taraclia și Cazaclia,” *MA* 20 (1995), pp. 141–171.
- Rafalovici, I. A., Lăpușnian, V. L., “Работы Ревутской археологической экспедиции,” in *AIM (1972 g)* (1974), pp. 110–148.
- Rappoport, P. A., “Горьда Болховской земли,” *КС* 57 (1955), pp. 52–59.



- Rashev, R., "Прабългарски ли са 'каменните баби' от Ендже," *Музей и паметници на културата* 12 (1971), no. 1, pp. 17–20.
- , *Старобългарски укрепления на Долния Дунав (VII–XI в.)* (Varna, 1982).
- , "Късни номади в Плисковското поле," in *Преслав*, 3, ed. T. Totev (Varna, 1983), pp. 242–252.
- Riabtseva, S., "О листовидных-украшениях, подвесках, копоушках и решмах," *Revista arheologică*, SN, 1 (2005), no. 1, pp. 350–358.
- Riabtseva, S., Rabinovich, R., "К вопросу о роли венгерского фактора в Карпато-Днестровских землях в IX–X вв.," *Revista arheologică*, SN, 3 (2007), nos. 1–2, pp. 195–230.
- Rikman, E. A., *Художественные сокровища древней Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969).
- Rosetti, D. V., "Siedlungen der Kaiserzeit und der Völkerwanderungszeit bei Bukarest," *Germania* 18 (1934), no. 3, pp. 206–213.
- Rusanova, I. P., Timoshchuk, B. A., *Древнерусское Поднепровье* (Uzhgorod, 1981).
- Samokvasov, D., *Могилы Русской земли* (Moscow, 1908).
- Sava, E., "Necropola tumulară Bălăbani—II," *AM* 19 (1996), pp. 191–220.
- Sâmpetru, M., "Inmormintări pecenege din Câmpia Dunării," *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 3, pp. 443–468.
- Sâmpetru, M., Șerbănescu, D., "Mormîntul de călăreț nomad descoperit la Curcani," *SCIV* 22 (1971), no. 3, pp. 443–455.
- Scorpan, C., "L'ensemble archéologique féodal de Bîta Doamnei," *Dacia*, NS, 9 (1965), pp. 441–454.
- Selenginski, A. I., "О поездке въ с. Надушиту Сорокского у., Вессарабской губ.," *ЗОО* 29 (1911), pp. 122–124.
- Selmeçzi, L., "Angaben und Gesichtspunkte zur archäologischen Forschung nach den Kumanen im Komitat Szolnok," *A Móra Ferenc Múzeum évkönyve* (1971), no. 2 [1974], pp. 187–197.
- , "The Settlement Structure of the Cumanian Settlers in the Nagyunság," in *Hungaro-Turcica. Studies in honour of Julius Németh*, ed. G. Káldy-Nagy (Budapest, 1976), pp. 255–262.
- , *Régészeti—néprajzi tanulmányok a jászokról és a kunokról* (Debrecen, 1992).
- Shcherbak, A. M., "Знаки на керамике и кирпичах из Саркела-Белой Вежи," *МИА*, 75 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1959), pp. 362–389 and 25 pl.
- Sher, I. A., *Каменные изваяния Семиречья* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1966).
- Shmaglii, M. M., Cherniakov, I. T., "Археологічні ровідки 1964 р. в Пониuzzi Дунаю," *Археологія* 19 (1965), pp. 215–221.
- Shvetsov, M. L., "Половецкие святилища," *СА* (1979), 1, pp. 199–209.
- Simion, G., Reșța, E., Nițulescu, V. Șt., "Tumulul de la Adâncata—jud. Ialomița," *Ialomița. Studii și cercetări de arheologie, istorie, etnografie și muzeologie*, Slobozia, 4 (2003–2004), pp. 95–114.
- Smilenko, A. T., *Слов'яни та їх сусиди в степовому Подніпров'ї (II–XIII ст.)* (Kiev, 1975).
- , "Раскопки поселения Суворово I," in *АО 1981 G* (1983), p. 320.
- Smilenko, A. T., Kozlov, V. I., "Славянское поселение конца I тысячелетия н.э. у с. Шабо на Днестровском лимане," in *Археологические исследования средневековых памятников в Днестровско-Прутском междуречье*, eds. P. P. Bârnea (gen.ed.), E. N. Abyzova, V. I. Grosu, N. P. Tel'nov, T. A. Shcherbakova (Kishinev, 1985), pp. 119–136.
- Smilenko, A. T., Kozlovskii, A. A., "Поселения у сел Шабо и Богатое Одесской области," in *Днестро-Дунайское междуречье в I-начале II тыс. н.э.* (Kiev, 1987), pp. 98–121.
- , "Средневековые поселения в приморской части Днестро-Дунайского междуречья," in *Днестро-Дунайские междуречье в I-начале II тыс. н.э.* (Kiev, 1987), pp. 67–83.

- Spinci, V., "Săpăturile de salvare de la Oltenești," *Carpathica* 5 (1972), pp. 133–141.
- , "Découvertes de l'étape tardive des migrations à Todireni (dép. de Botoșani)," *Dacia*, NS, 17 (1973), pp. 277–292.
- , "Antichitățile nomazilor turanici din Moldova în primul sfert al mileniului al II-lea," *SCIVA* 25 (1974), no. 3, pp. 389–415.
- , "Monede bizantine din spațiul est-carpatic," *SCN* 8 (1984), pp. 77–83.
- Spinci, V. and Monah, D., "Așezarea prefeudală de la Brășăuți," *MA* 2 (1970), pp. 371–387.
- Staňa, Č., "Mährische Burgwälle im 9. Jahrhundert," in *Die Bayern und ihre Nachbarn*, 2, eds. H. Freisinger and F. Daim (Vienna, 1987), pp. 157–205.
- Stanc, S. M., *Relațiile omului cu lumea animală. Arheozoologia secolelor IV–X d.Hr. pentru zonele extracarpătice de est și de sud ale României* (Iași, 2006).
- Stanko, V. N., "Детское захоронение кочевника в XI в. возле с. Тузлы," *Записки Одесского археологического общества* 1 (34) (1960), pp. 281–284.
- Štěpánek, M., *Openná sídliště 8.-12. století ve střední Evropě* (Prague, 1965).
- Stoliarik, E. S., *Очерки монетного обращения Северо-Западного Причерноморья в позднеримское и византийское время (конец III–начало XIII в.)* (Kiev, 1992).
- Stoliarik, E., *Essays on Monetary Circulation in the North-Western Black Sea Region in the Late Roman and Byzantine Periods. Late 3rd Century–Early 13th Century A.D.* (Odessa, 1993).
- Subotin, L. V., "Охоронні дослідження кургану в м. Болград," in *Археологія Південного Заходу України* (Kiev, 1992), pp. 67–72.
- Subotin, L. V., Sapozhnikov, I. V., Subbotin, A. V., "Курганный могильник Дивизия II в междуречье Хаджидера и Алкалии," *Stratum plus* (2001–2002), no. 2, pp. 563–581.
- Suceveanu, Al., "Un mormint din secolul XI e.n. la Histria," *SCIV* 24 (1973), no. 3, pp. 495–502.
- Ștefan, Gh., Barnea, I., Comșa, M., Comșa, E., *Dinogetia, I. Așezarea feudală timpurie de la Bisericiuța-Garvăn* (Bucharest, 1967).
- Takács, M., *Die arpadenzeitlichen Tonkessel im Karpatenbecken* (Varia Archaeologica Hungarica) (Budapest, 1986).
- Teľ'nov, N. P., "Восточнославянские древности Днестровско-Прутского междуречья VIII–X вв.," *Stratum plus* (2001–2002), no. 5, pp. 142–263.
- Tentiuc, I. S., "Исследование поселений у с. Дурлешты," in *AO 1986 G* (1988), pp. 432–433.
- , "Cercetări arheologice în așezarea medievală Durlești-Valca Babei," *AM* 17 (1994), pp. 253–269.
- Tentiuc, I., "Despre ritul și ritualul funerar medieval timpuriu din spațiul pruto-nistrrian (Necropola de la Molești-Ialoveni)," *Tyragetia*, SN, 1 [16] (2007), no. 1, pp. 335–342.
- Tentiuc, I., Popa, A., "Unele considerații privind lăcașele rupestre din Moldova de Est în secolele IV–XIII," *Mousaios* 5 (1999), pp. 33–51.
- Teodor, D. Gh., "Săpăturile arheologice de la Răducăneni," *MCA* 8 (1962), pp. 723–731.
- , "Cîteva observații în legătură cu căldările de lut descoperite la Răducăneni (r. Huși, reg. Iași)," *SCIV* 14 (1963), no. 1, pp. 197–205.
- , "Descoperirile arheologice de la Șendreni-Galați," *Danubius* 1 (1967), pp. 129–135.
- , "Contribuții la cunoașterea culturii Dridu pe teritoriul Moldovei," *SCIV* 19 (1968), no. 2, pp. 227–278.
- , "Descoperiri arheologice în Moldova referitoare la agricultura din secolele VI–XI e.n.," *Terra nostra* 3 (1973), pp. 223–232.
- , "Les établissements fortifiés des régions est-carpatiques de la Roumanie aux VIII–XI<sup>e</sup> siècles de notre ère," *Slovenská archeológia* 26 (1978), no. 1, pp. 69–77.
- , "Tezaurul de la Răducăneni-Iași," *SCIVA* 31 (1980), no. 3, pp. 403–423.

- , *Continuitatea populației autohtone la est de Carpați. Așezările din secolele VI–XI e.n. de la Dodești-Vaslui* (Iași, 1984).
- , “Așezarea feudală timpurie de la Epureni-Vaslui,” *AM* 11 (1987), pp. 141–167.
- , *Descoperiri arheologice și numismatice la est de Carpați în secolele V–XI d.H. (Contribuții la continuitatea daco-romană și veche românească)*, ed. D. Popovici (Bucharest, 1996 [1997]).
- , “Depozitul de unelte și arme medievale timpurii de la Gârbovăț, jud. Galați,” *MA* 23 (2004), pp. 395–406.
- Teodor, D. Gh., Buzdugan, C., and Mitrea, I., “Descoperirile arheologice de la Oituz (județul Bacău),” *Carpathica* 2 (1969), pp. 309–324.
- Timoshchuk, B. O., *Пивнична Буковина—земля слов’янська* (Uzhgorod, 1969).
- Totev, T., “Проучвания в гроби аге на Преслав през 1963 и 1964 г.,” *Известия на Народния Музей-Шумен* 5 (1972).
- Uslar, R. v., *Studien zu frühgeschichtlichen Befestigungen zwischen Nordsee und Alpen* (Cologne–Graz, 1964).
- Uvarov, A. S., “Сведения о каменных бабахъ,” in *Труды Перваго археологического съезда въ Москве 1869*, II, ed. A. S. Uvarov (Moscow, 1871), pp. 501–520.
- Varlaam, V., “Complexele funerare tumulare de pe cursul mijlociu al râului Bârlad,” *Carpathica* 11 (1979), pp. 217–230.
- Velikanova, M. S., *Палеоантропология Прутско-Днестровского междуречья* (Moscow, 1975).
- Vinokur, I. S., Gorishnii, P. A., *Бакота. Столица давньоруського Пониззя* (Kamenets–Podolsk, 1994).
- Vinokur, I. S., Zhurko, O. I., Megci, V. P., Iakubovskii, V. I., “Дослідження літописного Губина у 2003 р.,” in *Археологічні відкриття в Україні 2002–2003 рр.* (Київ, 2004), pp. 83–86.
- Vlaskin, M. V., Garmashov, A. I., Dodec, Z. V., Naumenko, S. A., *Погребения знати золотоордынского времени в междуречье Дона и Сала* (Материалы по изучению историко-культурного наследия Северного Кавказа, VI) (Moscow, 2006), pp. 11–73.
- Zaharia, E., *Populația românească din Transilvania în secolele VII–VIII (Cimitirul nr. 2 de la Bratej)* (Bucharest, 1977).
- Zaharia, N., Petrescu-Dîmbovița, M. and Zaharia, Em., *Așezări din Moldova. De la paleolitic până în secolul al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1970).
- Zaharia, Em. and Zaharia, N., “Sondajul de salvare din necropola de la Probotă (r. și reg. Iași),” *MCA* 8 (1962), pp. 599–608.
- Zelenskiĭ, Y. V., “Половцы на Кубани,” *Древности Кубани*, Krasnodar, 10 (1998), pp. 15–20.

#### Secondary Literature

- Achim, V., “Despre vechimea și originea Banatului de Severin,” *Revista istorică*, NS, 5 (1994), nos. 3–4, pp. 233–247.
- , “La Coumanie de l’espace extra-carpatique à l’époque de la domination hongroise, 1227–1241,” *RRH* 45 (2006), nos. 1–4, pp. 3–25.
- Adriányi, G., “Zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ritterordens in Siebenbürgen,” *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 3 (1971), pp. 9–22.
- Afanas’ev, G. E., *Донские аланы. Социальные структуры алано-ассо-буртасского населения бассейна Среднего Дона* (Moscow, 1993).
- Agadzhanov, S. G., *Die Oguzen Mittelasien im 9. bis 10. Jahrhundert*, trans. R. Schletzer, in *Turkmenenforschung*, 7 (Hamburg, sine anno), pp. 7–28.
- Agadzhanov, S. G., *Очерки истории огузов и туркмен Средней Азии IX–XIII вв.* (Ashkhabad, 1969).

- , *Государство сельджукидов и Средняя Азия в XI–XII вв.* (Moscow, 1991).
- Ahrweiler, H., “Les relations entre les Byzantins et les Russes au IX<sup>e</sup> siècle,” in eadem, *Byzance: les pays et les territoires* (Variorum Reprints) (London, 1976), no. VII, pp. 44–70.
- Akhinzhanov, S. M., *Кипчаки в истории средневекового Казахстана* (Alma-Ata, 1995).
- Alekseev, N. A., *Ранние формы религии тюркоязычных народов Сибири* (Novosibirsk, 1980).
- Alexandre, P., *Le climat en Europe au Moyen Age* (Paris, 1987).
- Alexandrescu-Dersca, M. M., “Economia agrară a Țării Românești și Moldovei descrisă de călători (secolele XV–XVII),” *RI* 21 (1968), no. 5, pp. 843–864.
- Allsen, Th. T., “Prelude to the Western Campaigns: Mongol Military Operations in the Volga-Ural Region, 1217–1237,” *AEMA* 3 (1983), pp. 5–24.
- , *Conquest and Culture in Mongol Eurasia* (Cambridge, 2001).
- Altaner, B., *Die Dominikanermissionen des 13. Jahrhunderts. Forschungen zur Geschichte der kirchlichen Unionen und der Mohammedaner- und Heidenmission des Mittelalters* (Habelschwerdt/Schles., 1924).
- Alzati, C., “La coscienza etnico-religiosa romana in età umanistica, tra echi di romanità e modelli ecclesiastici bizantino-slavi,” *Byzantinische Forschungen* 17 (1991), pp. 85–104.
- Ando, S., *Timuridische Emire nach dem Mu'izz al-ansāb. Untersuchungen zur Stammesaristokratie Zentralasiens im 14. und 15. Jahrhundert* (Berlin, 1992).
- Andrescu, Șt., “Note despre Cetatea Albă,” *SMIM* 18 (2000), pp. 57–77.
- Andrews, P. A., *Nomad Tent Types in the Middle East, I, Framed Tents*, 1 (Wiesbaden, 1997).
- , *Felt Tents and Pavilions. The Nomadic Tradition and its Interaction with Princely Tentage*, I (London, 1999).
- Andronic, M., *Teritoriul nord-est-carpatic în a doua jumătate a primului mileniu creștin* (Suceava, 2005).
- Angelov, D., *Die Entstehung des bulgarischen Volkes* (Berlin, 1980).
- Angold, M., *A Byzantine Government in Exile. Government and Society under the Laskarids of Nicaea (1204–1261)* (London, 1975).
- Antonovici, N. I., “Codrii și numele de Prut și Argeș în continuitatea românilor din sud-estul Carpaților,” *BSRRG* 56 (1937), pp. 272–290.
- Arbman, H., *The Vikings*, trans. A. Binns (New York, 1961).
- Arbore, Z., *Dictionarul geografic al Basarabiei* (Bucharest, 1904).
- Arends, M. and Bein, D. “Katholische Ungarn in der Moldau. Eine Minderheit im historischen Kontext einer ethnisch und konfessionell gemischten Region,” *Saeculum* 54 (2003), no. 2, pp. 213–267.
- Aristov, N., *О земле половецкой* (Kiev, 1877).
- Armbruster, A., *La romanité des Roumains. Histoire d'une idée* (Bucharest, 1977).
- , “Nachspiel zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens im Burzenland,” *RRH* 18 (1979), no. 2, pp. 277–287.
- , *Dacoromano-Saxonica. Cronicari români despre sași. Români în cronică săsească* (Bucharest, 1980).
- , *Der Donau-Karpatenraum in den mittel- und westeuropäischen Quellen des 10.–16. Jahrhundert* (Cologne–Vienna, 1990).
- Arne, T. J., *La Suède et l'Orient* (Uppsala, 1914).
- Artamonov, M. I., *История хазар* (Leningrad, 1962).
- Arvinte, V., *Die Rumänen. Ursprung, Volks- und Landesnahmen* (Tübingen, 1980).
- , *Studii de istorie a limbii române* (Iași, 2006).
- Atwood, C. P., *Encyclopedia of Mongolia and the Mongol Empire* (New York, 2004).
- Auner, C., “Episcopia Milcovici,” *Revista catolică* 1 (1912), no. 4, pp. 533–551.
- Babel, A., *La Bessarabie. Étude historique, ethnographique et économique* (Paris, 1926).

- Babitz, J., "Friedrich Ratzel et Paul Vidal de la Blanche. Deux tendances de la géographie humaine moderne," in *La naissance de la géographie humaine. Friedrich Ratzel et Paul Vidal de la Blanche. Colloque de la Commission d'Histoire de la Pensée Géographique tenu au cours de la Conférence Régionale Européenne de l'UGI à Budapest le 8-9 août 1971* (Budapest, 1974), pp. 1-23.
- Babkine, A., "La culture matérielle des Qipçaqs d'après les sources de l'époque," *Études Slaves et Est-Européennes* 18 (1973), pp. 96-104.
- Backer, L. de, *L'Extrême Orient au Moyen-Age* (Paris, 1877).
- Bádenas, P., "L'intégration des Turcs dans la société Byzantine (XI<sup>e</sup>-XII<sup>e</sup> siècles). Echecs d'un processus de coexistence," in *Byzantine Asia Minor (6th-12th Cent.)* (Athens, 1998), pp. 179-188.
- Baker, R., "On the origin of the Moldavian Csángos," *The Slavonic and East European Review* 75 (1997), no. 4, pp. 658-680.
- Bakó, G., "Contribuții la problema originii ceangailor," *SAI* 4 (1962), pp. 37-44.
- , "The Relations of the principality of the Banat with the Hungarians and the Petchenegs in the tenth century," in *Relations*, pp. 241-248.
- Balabanov, P., Boiadzhiev, S., Tuleshkov, N., *Крепостно строителство по българските земи* (Sofia, 2000).
- Balić, S., "Der Islam im mittelalterlichen Ungarn," *Südost-Forschungen* 23 (1964), pp. 19-35.
- Bálint, C., "Einige Fragen des Dirhem-Verkehrs in Europa," in *ActaArchHung* 33 (1981), nos. 1-4, pp. 105-131.
- , *Die Archäologie der Steppe. Steppenvölker zwischen Volga und Donau vom 6. bis zum 10. Jahrhundert*, ed. F. Daim (Vienna-Cologne, 1989).
- Balivet, M., *Romanie byzantine et pays de Rûm turc. Histoire d'un espace d'imbrication gréco-turque* (Istanbul, 1994).
- Bárczi, G., *Geschichte der ungarischen Sprache*, trans. A. Friedrich (Innsbruck, 2001).
- Barnea, I., "Byzance, Kiev et l'Orient sur le Bas-Danube du X<sup>e</sup> au XII<sup>e</sup> siècle," in *Nouvelles études d'histoire* (Bucharest, 1955), pp. 169-180.
- , "Monumentele de artă creștină descoperite pe teritoriul Republicii Populare Române," *Studii teologice*, II<sup>nd</sup> Ser., 17 (1965), nos. 3-4, pp. 133-181.
- , *Arta creștină în România*, 2, *Secolele VII-XIII* (Bucharest, 1981).
- Barnea, I., Ștefănescu, Șt., *Bizantini, români și bulgari la Dunărea de Jos (Din istoria Dobrogei, III)* (Bucharest, 1971).
- Bartha, A., *Hungarian Society in the 9th and 10th Centuries* (Budapest, 1975).
- Barthold, V. V., *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, III (Leiden, 1962). See also: Barthold, W.
- Barthold, W., *Histoire des Turcs d'Asie Centrale* (Paris, 1945).
- , *Turkestan down to the Mongol Invasion*, 3rd ed. (London, 1968).
- Barthold, W., Golden, P. B., "Khazar," in *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, NE, IV, eds. E. v. Donzel, B. Lewis, Ch. Pellat, C. E. Bosworth (Leiden, 1978), pp. 1172-1181.
- Bartusis, M. C., *The Late Byzantine Army. Arms and Society, 1204-1453* (Philadelphia, 1992).
- Baskakov, N. A., *Тюркские языки* (Moscow, 1960).
- , "Микроэтнонимы узов (огузов)—черных клобуков в русских летописях," *АОН* 36 (1982), nos. 1-3, pp. 39-46.
- , "Этнонимы и антропонимы печенегов в исторических источниках," in *Studia turcologica memoriae Alexii Bombaci dicata*, eds. A. Gallotta, U. Marazzi (Napoli, 1982), pp. 11-22.
- Batty, R., *Rome and the Nomads. The Pontic-Danubian Realm in Antiquity* (Oxford, 2007).
- Băican, V., *Geografia Moldovei reflectată în documentele cartografice din secolul al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1996).
- Bălan, T., *Din istoricul Cămpulungului Moldovenesc* (Bucharest, 1960).
- Българи и хазари през ранното средновековие*, ed. Ts. Stepanov (Sofia, 2003).
- Bănescu, N., "Dobrogea bizantină," *Analele Dobrogei* 19 (1938), no. 2, pp. 52-59.

- , *Bizanțul și romanitatea de la Dunărea de Jos* (Bucharest, 1938).
- , *Un problème d'histoire médiévale. Création et caractère du second Empire bulgare (1185)* (Bucharest, 1943).
- , *Vechiul stat bulgar și Țările Române* (offprint from *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 29) (Bucharest, 1947).
- , *Istoria Imperiului Bizantin, II [Imperiul Bizantin clasic] (610–1081)*, ed. T. Teoteoi (Bucharest, 2003).
- Bârlea, O., *Die Konzile des 13.–15. Jahrhunderts und die ökumenische Frage* (Wiesbaden, 1989).
- Bârzu, L., *Der Fortbestand der Rumänen im ehemaligen Dazien* (Bucharest, 1981).
- Beilis, V. M., “Народы Восточной Европы в кратком описании Мутаххара ал-Макдиси (X в.),” in *Восточные источники по истории народов Юго-Восточной и Центральной Европы, II*, red. A. S. Tveritina (Moscow, 1969), pp. 304–311.
- Belaiev, N. T., “Eymundar Saga and Icelandic research in Russia,” *Saga-Book of the Viking Society* 11 (1928–1936), pp. 93–99.
- Beldiceanu, N., “Sunt valahii amintiți în Oguzname?,” *BBR* 12 (16) (1985), pp. 287–292.
- Beldiceanu, N., Beldiceanu-Steinherr, I., “Notes sur le *bir*, les esclaves Tatars et quelques charges dans les Pays roumains,” in *Raiyyet Rüstümü. Essays presented to Halil Inalcik on his Seventeenth Birthday by his Colleagues and Students (= Journal of Turkish Studies* 10, 1986), pp. 7–14.
- Belli, O., “The Turkish tradition of building kurgans in the Prehistoric and Middle Ages,” in *The Turks, 1, Early Ages*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik (Ankara, 2002), pp. 974–986.
- , “Stone statues and balbals in Turkic world,” *Tüba-Ar* 6 (2003), pp. 85–116.
- , *Kırgızistan'da taş balbal ve insan biçimli heykeller/Stone Balbals and Statues in Human Form in Kirghizistan* (Istanbul, 2003).
- Belopol'skii [Bielopole], A., *СССР на фоне прошлого России. Очерк русской истории в новом освещении* (Washington, D.C., 1973).
- Berend, N., “How many medieval Europas? The ‘pagans’ in Hungary and regional diversity in Christendom,” in *The Medieval World*, eds. P. Linehan and J. L. Nelson (London–New York, 2001), pp. 77–92.
- , “Cuman integration in Hungary,” in *Nomads in the Sedentary World*, eds. A. M. Khazanov and A. Wink (Richmond, Surrey, 2001), pp. 103–127.
- , *At the Gate of Christendom. Jews, Muslims and “Pagans” in Medieval Hungary, c. 1000–c. 1300* (Cambridge, 2001).
- Berg, L. S., *Die geographischen Zonen der Sowjetunion, II* (Leipzig, 1959).
- Bernshtein-Kogan, S. V., “Путь из Варяг в Греки,” *Вопросы географии* 20 (1950), pp. 239–270.
- Beševliev, V., *Die protobulgarische Periode der bulgarischen Geschichte* (Amsterdam, 1981).
- Бессарабия. Военно-географический справочник* (Moscow, 1940).
- Bibikov, M. V., “Византийские хроники и локализация половецко-византийской войны 1148 г.,” in *Летописи и хроники 1976 г.* (Moscow, 1976), pp. 17–22.
- , “Источниковедческие проблемы изучения кочевников в Нижнем Подунавье в XII веке,” *RRH* 19 (1980), no. 1, pp. 47–52.
- , “Сведение Ипатьевской летописи о печенегах и торках в свете данных византийских источников XII в.,” in *Летописи и хроники 1980 г.* (Moscow, 1981), pp. 55–68.
- , *Византийские источники по истории Древней Руси и Кавказа* (St. Petersburg, 1999).
- , “Византийские источники,” in *Древняя Русь в свете зарубежных источников*, ed. E. A. Mel'nikova, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 2003), pp. 69–168.
- , *Vizantinorossica. Свод византийских свидетельств о Руси, I* (Moscow, 2004).
- Bica, I., *Thema Paristrion (Paradounavon) în istoriografia bizantină și română* (Pitești, 2003).

- Bidian, I.-I., "Hărățile medievale despre țările române păstrate la Biblioteca Institutului român din Freiburg-Germania," *BBR*, SN, 8 (12) (1980/81), pp. 353–366.
- Biliarsky, I. A., "The despots of mediaeval Bulgaria," *Byzantinobulgarica* 9 (1995).
- Binder, P., "Drumurile și plaiurile Carpaților Orientali," *SAI* 20 (1972), pp. 66–74.
- Biskup, M., Labuda, G., *Die Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens in Preussen. Wirtschaft—Gesellschaft—Staat—Ideologie*, trans. J. Heyde and U. Kodur (Osnabrück, 2000).
- Bârnea, P. P., "Карта сельских поселений Молдавии XV века," *PGM* 1 (1966), pp. 112–119.
- Blöndal, S., *The Varangians of Byzantium*, ed. B. S. Benedikz (Cambridge, 1978).
- Boba, I., *Nomads, Northmen and Slavs. Eastern Europe in the Ninth Century* (The Hague, 1967).
- , "Vlachs in the history of Central Europe. A 'Problemstellung'," in *Kélet és Nyugat között. Történeti tanulmányok Kristó Gyula tiszteletére*, ed. L. Koszta (Szeged, 1995), pp. 95–102.
- Bocănețu, Al., "Terminologia agrară în limba română," *Codrul Cosminului* 2–3 (1925–1926), pp. 119–274.
- Bochmann, K., *Limba română. Istorie, variante, conflicte. O privire din afară*, eds. V. Dumbravă and I. Șarov (Chișinău, 2004).
- Bodor, G., "Egy krónikás adat helyes értelmezése," *Magyar nyelv* 72 (1976), no. 3, pp. 268–271.
- Bogdan, D. P., "Despre bolohoveni cu prilejul unui studiu al ucraineanului Andrijașev," *Arhiva românească* 5 (1940), pp. 272–274.
- Bogdan, H., *Les chevaliers Teutoniques. Vérités et légendes* (Paris, 1995).
- Bogdan, I., *Scrieri alese*, ed. G. Mihăilă (Bucharest, 1968).
- Bogyay, Th. v., *Grundzüge der Geschichte Ungarns*, 3rd ed. (Darmstadt, 1977).
- Boldur, A. V., *Istoria Basarabiei. Contribuții la studiul istoriei românilor*, I (Chișinău, 1937).
- , "The enigma of the Ulichy-Tivertsy people," *Balkan Studies* 9 (1968), no. 1, pp. 55–90.
- , *La Grande Thrace*, I (Madrid, 1980).
- , "Teritoriul Moldovei față de principatele Kiev și Halici," *AM* 12 (1988), pp. 225–232.
- Bolșacov-Ghimpu, Al. A., *Cronica Țării Moldovei pînă la întemeiere* (Bucharest, 1979).
- Bóna, I., "Daciatól Erdőelvéig A népvándorlás kora Erdélyben (271–896)," in *Erdély története*, co-ord. B. Köpeczi, I, ed. L. Makkai, A. Mócsy (Budapest, 1986), pp. 107–234.
- Bonev, Č., "L'Église orthodoxe dans les territoires carpato-danubiens et la politique pontificale pendant la première moitié du XIII<sup>e</sup> s.," *Études balkaniques* 22 (1986), no. 4, pp. 101–108.
- Bonfante, G., *Studi Romeni* (Rome, 1973).
- Bosi, F., "Sulla statuaria antropomorfa nell'Eurasia Settentrionale. Dalle 'Pietre dei cervi' ai balbal," *Ocnus. Quaderni della Scuola di Specializzazione in Archeologia* 13 (2005), pp. 89–101.
- Bowlus, Ch. R., *Franks, Moravians, and Magyars. The Struggle for the Middle Danube, 788–907* (Philadelphia, 1995).
- Božilov, I. A., "Към въпроса за византийското господство на Долия Дунав в края на X век," *Studia Balcanica* 2 (1970), pp. 75–96.
- , "Les Petchénègues dans l'histoire des terres du Bas-Danube," *Études balkaniques* (1971), no. 3, pp. 170–175.
- , "България и печенезите (896–1018 г.)," *Исторически преглед* 29 (1973), no. 2, pp. 37–62.
- Božilov, I., Dimitrov, H., "About the historical geography of the northern Black Sea coast," *Bulgarian Historical Review* 13 (1985), no. 4, pp. 50–68.
- Brand, Ch. M., *Byzantium Confronts the West, 1180–1204* (Cambridge, Mass., 1968).

- Brather, S., "Frühmittelalterliche Dirham-Schatz- und -Einzelfunde im südlichen Ostseeraum. Die Anfänge der Gewichtsgeldwirtschaft bei den Westslawen," in *Archäologie als Sozialgeschichte. Studien zu Siedlung, Wirtschaft und Gesellschaft im frühgeschichtlichen Mitteleuropa. Festschrift für Heiko Steuer zum 60. Geburtstag*, eds. S. Brather, C. Bücker and M. Hoepfer (Rahden/Westf., 1999), pp. 179–197.
- , *Archäologie der westlichen Slawen. Siedlungen, Wirtschaft und Gesellschaft im früh- und hochmittelalterlichen Ostmitteleuropa* (Berlin–New York, 2001).
- Braudel, F., *La Méditerranée et le monde méditerranéen à l'époque de Philippe II* (Paris, 1949).
- , *Civilisation matérielle et capitalisme (XV<sup>e</sup>–XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle)*, I (Paris, 1967).
- Braund, D., "The movement of Scythian nomads nuancing 'otherness'," *Journal of Mediterranean Studies* 10 (2000), nos. 1–2, pp. 21–30.
- Brătianu, G. I., *Recherches sur le commerce génois dans la mer Noire au XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Paris, 1929).
- Brătianu, Gh. I., "'Bulgaria de dincolo de Dunăre' în izvoarele bizantine," in *Omăgiu lui Ioan Lupăș la împlinirea vârstei de 60 de ani* (Bucharest, 1943), pp. 127–132.
- , "Roman și Vlachata în tradiția istorică a descălecatului Moldovei," *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 27 (1944–1945), pp. 35–55.
- , "În jurul întemeierii statelor românești," *Ethos*, Paris, 2 (1975), pp. 8–67.
- , *Tradiția istorică despre întemeierea statelor românești*, ed. V. Râpeanu (Bucharest, 1980).
- , *Marea Neagră. De la origini pînă la cucerirea turcească*, 2nd ed. V. Spinei, trans. M. Spinei (Iași, 1999).
- Brâncuș, Gr., *Vocabularul autohton al limbii române* (Bucharest, 1983).
- Brentjes, B., "Nomadenwanderungen und Klimaschwankungen," *Central Asiatic Journal* 30 (1986), nos. 1–2, pp. 7–21.
- Bretschneider, E., *Mediaeval Researches from Eastern Asiatic Sources*, I, II (London, 1910).
- Brezeanu, S., "'Romani' și 'Blachi' la Anonymus. Istorie și ideologie politică," *RI*s 34 (1981), no. 7, pp. 1313–1340.
- , "'La Bulgarie d'au-delà de l'Ister' à la lumière des sources écrites médiévales," *Études balkaniques* (1984), no. 4, pp. 121–135.
- , *Romanitatea orientală în Evul Mediu de la cetățenii romani la nașterea medievală* (Bucharest, 1999).
- Brook, K. A., *The Jews of Khazaria* (Lanham–Boulder–New York–Toronto–Oxford, 2004).
- Browning, R., *Byzantium and Bulgaria* (London, 1975).
- , "A new source on Byzantine-Hungarian relations in the twelfth century," in idem, *Studies on Byzantine History, Literature and Education* (Variorum Reprints) (London, 1977), no. IV, pp. 173–214.
- Brun, F. K., *Черноморье. Сборникъ исследований по исторической географіи Южной Россіи*, I (Odessa, 1879).
- Brunhes, J. and Vallaux, C., *La géographie de l'histoire* (Paris, 1921).
- Bubenok, O. B., *Ясы и бродники в Восточной Европы (VI—начало XIII вв.)* (Kiev, 1997).
- Buhociu, O., *Die rumänische Volkskultur und ihre Mythologie* (Wiesbaden, 1974).
- Buko, A., *The Archaeology of Early Medieval Poland. Discoveries—Hypotheses—Interpretations* (Leiden–Boston, 2008).
- Буковина її минуле и сучасне*, eds. D. Klitkovs'kij, T. Brindzan, A. Žukovs'kij (Paris–Philadelphia–Detroit, 1956).
- Bunea, A., *Încercare de istoria românilor pînă la 1382* (Bucharest, 1912).
- Burada, T. T., "Datinele poporului român la înmormîntări," in idem, *Opere*, III, *Folclor și etnografie*, ed. V. Cosma (Bucharest, 1978), pp. 20–70.
- Busetto, R., "Giovanni Tzimisce e Svjatoslav di Kiev. Le operazioni militari bizantine nei Balcani (969–971)," *Acta Musei Napocensis* 33 (1996), no. 2, pp. 9–32.



- Busuioc-von Hasselbach, D. N., *Țara Făgărașului în secolul al XIII-lea. Mănăstirea cisterciană Cârța*, I, II (Cluj-Napoca, 2000).
- Butură, V., *Etnografia poporului român. Cultura materială* (Cluj-Napoca, 1978).
- Cahen, C., "Ghuzz," in *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, NE, II, eds. B. Lewis, Ch. Pellat, J. Schacht (Leiden-London, 1965), pp. 1106-1110.
- , *La Turquie pré-ottomane* (Istanbul-Paris, 1988).
- , *The Formation of Turkey. The Seljukid Sultanate of Rum: Eleventh to Fourteenth Century*, trans. and ed. P. M. Holt (Harlow, 2001).
- The Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia*, ed. D. Sinor (Cambridge, 1990).
- The Cambridge History of Iran*, 5, *The Saljuq and Mongol Periods*, ed. J. A. Boyle (Cambridge, 1968).
- Cancel, P., "Păstoritul la poporul roman," *Convorbiri literare* 47 (1913), no. 9, pp. 851-875.
- Sankova-Petkova, G., "Първата война между България и Византия при цар Симеон и възстановяването на българската търговия с Цариград," *Известия на Института за История* 20 (1968), pp. 167-200.
- Sankova-Petkova, G., *България при Асеневици* (Sofia, 1978).
- Carile, A., *Per una storia dell'Impero Latino di Constantinopoli (1204-1261)*, 2nd ed. (Bologna, 1978).
- Castagné, J., "Étude historique et comparative des statues babas des steppes kirghizes et de Russie en général," *Bulletins et mémoires de la Société d'Anthropologie de Paris* 1, VIe Sér. (1910), pp. 375-407.
- Cavo, C. di, *L'arrivo degli Ungheresi in Europa e la conquista della patria* (Spoleto, 1995).
- Cândea, I., *Brăila. Origini și evoluție până la jumătatea secolului al XVI-lea* (Brăila, 1995).
- Cernovodeanu, P., Binder, P., *Cavalerii Apocalipsului. Calamitățile naturale din trecutul României (până la 1800)* (Bucharest, 1993).
- Chalandon, F., [*Les Comnène*, I.] *Essai sur le règne d'Alexis Ier Comnène (1081-1118)* (Paris, 1900).
- , [*Les Comnène*, II.] *Jean II Comnène et Manuel I Comnène* (Paris, 1912).
- Chekin, L. S., "The godless Ishmaelites: The image of the steppe in eleventh-thirteenth-century Rus'," *Russian History* 19 (1992), nos. 1-4, pp. 9-28.
- Cherepnin, L. V., "Монголо-татары на Руси XIII в.," in *Татаро-монголы в Азии и Европе*, ed. S. L. Tikhvinskii, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 1977), pp. 186-209.
- Chirnoaga, P., *Istoria Daciei și continuitatea daco-romană* (Madrid, 1971).
- Chirtoagă, I., *Din istoria Moldovei de Sud-Est până în anul '30 ai sec. al XIX-lea* (Kishinev, 1999).
- Chisholm, M., *Research in Human Geography* (London, 1971).
- Cihodaru, C., "Contribuții la cunoașterea obștii țărănești în Moldova," *Studii și cercetări științifice, Istorie*, Iași, 7 (1956), no. 1, pp. 1-34.
- , "Considerații în legătură cu populația Moldovei din perioada premergătoare invaziei tătarilor (1241)," *Studii și cercetări științifice, Istorie*, Iași, 14 (1963), no. 2, pp. 215-248.
- , "Informații despre pecenegi din opera lui Constantin Porphyrogenetos," *AȘUI*, Sect. III, a. *Istorie* 20 (1974), no. 1, pp. 17-30.
- , "Observații cu privire la procesul de formare și de consolidare a statului feudal Moldova în sec. XI-XIV (I)," *AIA* 16 (1979), pp. 169-186.
- Ciobotea, D., "Circulația monetară în Oltenia în preajma constituirii statului feudal independent Țara Românească (sec. X-XIV)," *Arhivele Olteniei*, SN, 2 (1983), pp. 74-86.
- Ciociltan, V., "Wilhelm von Rubruks Angaben über Rumänen und Baschkiren im Lichte der orientalischen Quellen," *Südost-Forschungen* 42 (1983), pp. 113-122.
- , "Observații referitoare la românii din cronică Notarului Anonim al regelui Bela," *RI*s 40 (1987), no. 5, pp. 445-453.
- , *Mongolii și Marea Neagră în secolele XIII-XIV. Contribuția Cinghizhanizilor la transformarea bazinului pontic în placă turnantă a comerțului euro-asiatic* (Bucharest, 1998).
- Cioranescu, A., *La tradition historique et l'origine des Roumains* (Bucharest, 1942).

- Ciorănescu, G., *Bessarabia, Disputed Land between East and West* (Munich, 1985).
- Ciubotaru, I. H., *Catolicii din Moldova. Universul culturii populare*, I, *Arhitectura tradițională. Textilele de interior. Portul popular de sărbătoare* (Iași, 1998).
- Ciubotaru, M., "Toponimia bazinului hidrografic Rebricea (jud. Iași—jud. Vaslui). Oiconimele. Perspectivă istorică (II)," *AIIA* 29 (1992), pp. 419–451.
- Ciubotaru, N. Gr., "Un sat dispărut: Comănești pe Rebricea," *AIIA* 19 (1982), pp. 539–540.
- Claude, D., *Der Handel im westlichen Mittelmeer während des Frühmittelalters (Untersuchungen zur Handel und Verkehr der vor- und frühgeschichtlichen Zeit in Mittel- und Nordeuropa, II)* (Göttingen, 1985).
- Clauson, G., "The diffusion of writing in the Altaic world," in *Aspects of Altaic Civilization*, ed. D. Sinor (Westport, Connecticut, 1963), pp. 139–144.
- , "The origin of the Turkish 'runic' alphabet," *Acta Orientalia ediderunt Societates Orientales Danica Norvegica Svecica* 32 (1970), pp. 51–76.
- , *An Etymological Dictionary of Pre-Thirteenth-Century Turkish* (Oxford, 1972).
- , *Studies in Turkic and Mongolic Linguistics*, 2nd ed. (London–New York, 2002).
- Collins, L. J. D., "The military organization and tactics of the Crimean Tatars, 16th–17th centuries," in *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East*, eds. V. J. Parry and M. E. Yapp (London, 1975).
- Columbeanu, S., *Cnezate și voievodate românești* (Bucharest, 1973).
- Coman, A., *Rumänen, Kumanen, Osmanen. Zur Geschichte und Sprachgeschichte Südosteuropas vom IX.–XX. Jhd.* (Fulda–Hermannstadt, 1998).
- Comșa, M., "Die bulgarische Herrschaft nördlich der Donau während des IX. und X. Jh. im Lichte der archäologischen Forschungen," *Dacia*, NS, 4 (1960), pp. 395–422.
- , "Un knézat roumain des X<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècles à Slon-Prahova," *Dacia*, NS, 22 (1978), pp. 303–317.
- Condurachi, E., Barnea, I., Diaconu, P., "Nouvelles recherches sur le Limes byzantin du Bas-Danube aux X<sup>e</sup>–XI<sup>e</sup> siècles," in *Thirteenth International Congress of Byzantine Studies* (Oxford, 1966) (offprint).
- Conca, I., *Vrancea. Geografie istorică, toponimie și terminologie geografică*, eds. L. Badea, D. I. Oancea, N. Stoicescu (Bucharest, 1993).
- Conca, I., Donat, I., "Contribution à l'étude de la toponymie pechénègue-comane de la Plaine Roumaine du Bas-Danube," in *Contributions onomastiques publiées à l'occasion du VI<sup>e</sup> Congrès international des sciences onomastiques à Munich du 24 au 28 août 1958*, eds. I. Jordan, E. Petrovici, M. Sala (Bucharest, 1958), pp. 139–169.
- Constantinescu, E.-M., *Memoria pământului dintre Carpați și Dunăre. Nord-estul Munteniei și sud-vestul Moldovei în veacurile IV–XI d.Hr.* (Buzău–Bucharest, 1999).
- Constantinescu, N. A., *Dicționar onomastic românesc* (Bucharest, 1963).
- Constantinescu-Mircești, C., *Vrancea arhaică. Evoluția și problemele ei* (Bucharest, 1985).
- Conte, F., *Les Slaves. Aux origines des civilisations d'Europe centrale et orientale (VI<sup>e</sup>–XIII<sup>e</sup> siècles)* (Paris, 1986).
- Contributions roumaines à l'étude de la Mer Noire*, ed. M. Semencescu (Bucharest, 1966).
- Cook, R., "Russian history, Icelandic story, and Byzantine strategy in Eymundar páttir Hringssonar," *Viator* 17 (1986), pp. 65–89.
- Corbu, E., *Sudul României în evul mediu timpuriu (secolele VIII–XI). Repere arheologice* (Brăila, 2006).
- Costăchel, V., Panaiteșcu, P. P., Cazacu, A., *Viața feudală în Țara Românească și Moldova (sec. XIV–XVII)* (Bucharest, 1957).
- Coșa, A., "Problema originii catolicilor din Moldova," *Carpica* 31 (2002), pp. 79–106.
- Coteanu, I., Sala, M., *Etimologia și limba română* (Bucharest, 1987).
- Couchaux, D., *Habitats nomades* (Paris, 1980).
- Curta, F., "Blacksmiths, warriors, and tournaments of value: dating and interpreting early medieval hoards of iron implements in Eastern Europe," *Ephemeris Napocensis* 7 (1997), pp. 211–268.

- , *Southeastern Europe in the Middle Ages, 500–1250* (Cambridge, 2006).
- Custurea, G., *Circulația monedei bizantine în Dobrogea (secolele IX–XI)* (Constanța, 2000).
- Dachkevitch, Ya. R., “Who are Armeno-Kipchaks? (On the ethnical substrate of the Armenian colonies in the Ukraine),” *Revue des études arméniennes*, NS, 16 (1982), pp. 357–416.
- Daim, F., “Avars and Avar archaeology. An introduction,” in *Regna and Gentes. The Relationship between Late Antique and Early Medieval Peoples and Kingdoms in the Transformation of the Roman World*, eds. H.-W. Goetz, J. Jarnut, and W. Pohl, with the collab. of S. Kaschke (Leiden–Boston, 2003), pp. 463–570.
- Далекое прошлое Молдавии*, eds. N. A. Chetragu, V. I. Marchevici, L. L. Polevoi (gen. ed.), G. D. Smirnov (Kishinev, 1969).
- Dall’Aglia, F., “The Bulgarian siege of Thessaloniki in 1207: between history and hagiography,” *Eurasian Studies* 1 (2002), no. 2, pp. 263–282.
- Dashkevich, V. P., “К истории торговых связей Древней Руси,” *КС* 138 (1973), pp. 93–103.
- David, M., *Considerațiuni geopolitice asupra statului român* (offprint from *Învățătorul român contemporan și destinul neamului nostru*) (Iași, 1939).
- Davidson, H. R. E., *The Viking Road to Byzantium* (London, 1976).
- Давня історія України*, 3, gen. ed. P. P. Tolochko (Kiev, 2000).
- Decsei, A., “Asupra unui pasagiu din geograful persan Gardīzī (a. 1050),” in *Frațiiilor Alexandru și Ion I. Lăpedatu la împlinirea vârstei de 60 de ani* (Bucharest, 1936), pp. 877–902.
- , “Românii din veacul al IX-lea pînă în al XIII-lea în lumina izvoarelor armenesti,” in idem, *Relații româno-orientale*, ed. M. Popa (Bucharest, 1978), pp. 15–117.
- Decsei, A., Ciocîltan, V., “La mention des Roumains (Walah) chez Al-Maqdisi,” in *Romano-arabica*, I (Bucharest, 1974), pp. 49–54.
- Deletant, D., “Ethno-history or mytho-history? The case of chronicler Anonymus,” in idem, *Studies in Romanian History* (Bucharest, 1991), pp. 332–351.
- Demidoff, A. de, *Voyage dans la Russie Méridionale et la Crimée par la Hongrie, la Valachie et la Moldavie exécuté en 1837* (Paris, 1841).
- Densusianu, O., *Histoire de la langue roumaine. I—Les origines; II—Le seizième siècle*, ed. V. Rusu (Bucharest, 1997).
- DeWeese, D., *Islamization and Native Religion on the Golden Horde. Baba Tükles and Conversion to Islam in Historical and Epic Tradition* (University Park, Pennsylvania, 1994).
- Diaconescu, E., “Călători străini în Țările române—Guillebert de Lannoy,” *Lucrările Societății geografice “Dimitrie Cantemir”* 3 (1941), pp. 221–235.
- Diaconu, P., *Les Petchénègues au Bas-Danube* (Bucharest, 1970).
- , “Istoria Dobrogei în unele lucrări străine recente (I),” *RI*s 29 (1976), no. 6, pp. 935–941.
- , *Les Coumans au Bas-Danube aux XI<sup>e</sup> et XII<sup>e</sup> siècles* (Bucharest, 1978).
- , “À propos de l’invasion cuman de 1148,” in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, I, eds. E. Stănescu and N. Ș. Tanașoca (Bucharest, 1979), pp. 19–27.
- , “La Dobroudja et Byzance à l’époque de la genèse du peuple roumain (VII<sup>e</sup>–X<sup>e</sup> siècles),” *Pontica* 14 (1981), pp. 217–220.
- , “Cîmpia Dunării și Bizanțul în sec. X (note preliminare),” *Istros* 5 (1987), pp. 217–220.
- , “Sur l’organisation ecclésiastique dans la région du Bas-Danube (dernier tiers du X<sup>e</sup> siècle–XII<sup>e</sup> siècle),” in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, II, eds. E. Popescu, O. Iliescu and T. Teoteoi (Bucharest, 1991), pp. 73–89.
- , “Cumanii și originea familiei lui Dobrotiță,” *Revista istorică*, NS, 5 (1994), no. 3–4, pp. 283–288.
- , “Despre unele antroponime de origine cumană,” *Analele Brăilei*, SN, 2 (1996), no. 2, pp. 569–571.
- Dienes, I., *Die Ungarn um die Zeit der Landnahme* (Budapest, 1972).

- Dieter, K., "Zur Glaubwürdigkeit der Anna Komnena, 1. Der Petschenegenkrieg 1084–1091," *BZ* 3 (1894), pp. 386–390.
- Dimitrov, V., *България в средновековната морска картография XIV–XVII век* (Sofia, 1984).
- Dimitrov, D., *Прабългарите по Северното и Западното Черноморие* (Varna, 1987).
- Dimitrov, S., "The Bulgarian apocryphal chronicle and Bulgarian ethnic history," *Études balkaniques* 29 (1993), no. 4, pp. 97–109.
- , "A contribution to the study of the Bulgarian medieval Turkic language heritage," *Études balkaniques* 36 (2000), no. 4, pp. 144–148.
- Dimnik, M., *The Dynasty of Chernigov: 1054–1146* (Toronto, 1994).
- , *The Dynasty of Chernigov, 1146–1246* (Cambridge, 2003).
- Djuvara, N., *Thocomerius—Negru Vodă, un voivod de origine cumână la începuturile Țării Românești*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 2007).
- Dmitriev, P. G., *Народонаселение Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1973).
- Dobroliubskii, A. O., "Этнический состав кочевого населения Северо-Западного Причерноморья в золотоордынское время," in *Памятники римского и средневекового времени в Северо-Западном Причерноморье* (Kiev, 1982), pp. 28–39.
- , *Кочевники Северо-Западного Причерноморья в эпоху средневековья* (Kiev, 1986).
- , "Черные клобуки в Поднестровье и Побужье," in *Древности степного Причерноморья и Крыма*, I, eds. G. N. Toshchev, G. I. Shakhrov, G. I. Shapovalov (Zaporozh'e, 1990), pp. 153–159.
- Doerfer, G., *Türkische und mongolische Elemente im Neupersischen*, II (Wiesbaden, 1965).
- D'Ohsson, C., *Histoire des Mongols depuis Tchinguiz-Khan jusqu'à Timour Bey ou Tamerlan*, I (Amsterdam, 1852).
- Dokuchaev, V. V., *Наши степи прежде и теперь* (Moscow, 1953).
- Donat, I., "La vie pastorale chez les Roumains et ses problèmes," *Dacoromania. Jahrbuch für östliche Latinität*, Freiburg–Munich, 1 (1973), pp. 78–103.
- , "The Romanians south of the Carpathians and the migratory peoples in the tenth-thirteenth centuries," in *Relations*, pp. 277–298.
- Dragnev, D. M., Sovetov, P. V., "Основные этапы развития и разложения общины в Молдавии (до начала XIX в.)," in *Славяно-волошские связи*, ed. N. A. Mokhov (Kishinev, 1978), pp. 64–114.
- Dragomir, S., *Vlahii din nordul Peninsulei Balcanice în evul mediu* (Bucharest, 1959).
- Drăganu, N., *Românii în veacurile IX–XIV pe baza toponimiei și a onomasticeii* (Bucharest, 1933).
- Drimba, V., "Miscellanea Cumanica (I–IV)," *Revue Roumaine de Linguistique* 15 (1970), no. 5, pp. 455–459; 15 (1970), no. 6, pp. 579–584; 16 (1971), no. 4, pp. 275–286; 17 (1972), no. 1, pp. 3–21.
- , *Syntaxe comane* (Bucharest–Leiden, 1973).
- Dron, I. V., *Гагаузские географические названия (Территория Пруто-Днестровского междуречья)* (Chișinău, 1992).
- , "Hidronimie românească (Basarabia și Transnistria)," *Tyragetia* 9 (1999), pp. 127–148.
- Drüll, D., *Der Codex Cumanicus: Entstehung und Bedeutung* (Stuttgart, 1979).
- Ducellier, A., *La façade maritime de l'Albanie au Moyen Age. Durazzo et Valona du XI<sup>e</sup> au XV<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Thessalonike, 1981).
- Duczko, W., *Viking Rus. Studies on the Presence of Scandinavians in Eastern Europe* (Leiden–Boston, 2004).
- Duda, H. W., *Die Seltshukengeschichte des Ibn Bibi* (Copenhagen, 1959).
- Duččev, I., *Проучвания върху българското средновековие* (Sofia, 1945).
- Dunlop, D. M., *The History of the Jewish Khazars* (New York, 1967).
- Dunăre, N., "Typologie des traditionellen Hirtenlebens in karpato-balkanischen Raum," *Zeitschrift für Balkanologie* 11 (1975), no. 2, pp. 5–39.

- , *Civilizație tradițională românească în Curbura Carpatică Nordică* (Bucharest, 1984).
- , “Types traditionnels de vie pastorale dans les régions carpatiques de pâturages et de fénaisons (Roumanie, Ukraine, Pologne, Tchécoslovaquie, Hongrie),” in *Acte du Colloque International “L’élevage et la vie pastorale dans les montagnes de l’Europe au moyen âge et à l’époque moderne”* (Clermont-Ferrand, 1984), pp. 55–68.
- Dvoichenko-Markov, D., “The Russian Primary Chronicle and the Vlachs of Eastern Europe,” *Byzantion* 49 (1979), pp. 175–187.
- Dvornik, Fr., *Les légendes de Constantin et de Méthode vues de Byzance*, 2nd ed. (Hattiesburg, Mississippi, 1969).
- Ecology and Empire. Nomads in the Cultural Evolution of the Old World* (Proceedings of the Soviet-American Academic Symposia in Conjunction with the Museum Exhibition *Nomads: Masters of the Eurasian Steppe*, 1), ed. G. Scaman (Los Angeles, 1989).
- Ecsedy, I., “Nomads in history and historical research,” *AOH* 35 (1981), nos. 2–3, pp. 201–227.
- , “Ancient Turk (T’u-chüeh) burial customs,” *AOH* 38 (1984), no. 3, pp. 263–287.
- Edroiu, N., “Despre apariția plugului în țările române,” *Terra nostra* 2 (1971), pp. 109–113.
- Eggers, M., “Beiträge zur Stammesbildung und Landnahme der Ungarn, 1, Die ungarische Stammesbildung,” *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 23 (1997), pp. 1–63.
- , “Baiern, Pannonien und die Magyaren,” in *Baiern—Ungarn. Tausend Jahren*, eds. H. W. Wurster, M. Treml and R. Loibl (Passau–Regensburg, 2001), pp. 65–76.
- Eisner, J., *Rukovet slovačské archeologie* (Prague, 1966).
- Ekrem, M. A., “O mențiune inedită despre românii din secolul al IX-lea în *Oguz-name*—cea mai veche cronică turcă,” *SCIVA* 31 (1980), no. 2, pp. 287–294.
- , *Din istoria turcilor dobrogeni* (Bucharest, 1994).
- , “Mențiuni despre români în izvoare turcești preotomane și otomane (secolele IX–XV),” *Analele Universității Creștine “Dimitrie Cantemir,” Seria Istorie* 2 (1998), pp. 61–70.
- Eliade, M., *De Zalmoxis à Gengis-Khan* (Paris, 1970).
- , *A History of Religious Ideas*, 3, *From Muhammad to the Age of Reforms*, trans. A. Hiltebeitel and D. Apostolos-Cappadona (Chicago–London, 1985).
- Enciclopedia geografică a României*, ed. G. Posea (Bucharest, 1982).
- Enciclopedia sovietică moldovenească*, 8, *R.S.S. Moldovenească* (Kishinev, 1981).
- Erdélyi, I., “Les relations hungaro-khazares,” *Studia et acta orientalia* 4 (1962), pp. 39–44.
- Eremia, A., *Nume de localități. Studiu de toponimie moldovenească* (Chișinău, 1970).
- , *Географические названия рассказывают*, 2nd ed. (Kishinev, 1990).
- Etnografia continentelor*, II, 2, eds. S. P. Tolstov, M. G. Levin, and N. N. Chebokarov (Bucharest, 1961).
- Etnografia Văii Bistriței. Zona Bicaz*, gen. ed. R. Vuia (Piatra Neamț, 1973).
- Être nomade aujourd’hui* (Neuchâtel, 1979).
- Evdokimov, G. L., “‘...Sing ihm doch polovzische Lieder’ (Nestor Chronik),” in *Gold der Steppe. Archäologie der Ukraine*, eds. R. Rolle, M. Müller-Wille and K. Schietzel, in collab. with P. P. Toločko and V. Ju. Murzin (Schleswig, 1991), pp. 281–283.
- The Expansion of Orthodox Europe. Byzantium, the Balkans and Russia*, ed. J. Shepard [Variorum] (Aldershot–Burlington, 2007).
- Febvre, L., *La Terre et l’évolution humaine. Introduction géographique à l’histoire* (Paris, 1938).
- Fedorov, G. B., “Тенезис и развитие феодализма у древнерусского населения Днестровско-Прутского междуречья в IX–XII вв. (по археологическим данным),” in *Юго-Восточная Европа в эпоху феодализма*, eds. V. D. Koroliuk and P. V. Sovetov (Kishinev, 1973), pp. 42–52.
- , “Древнерусская культура Поднестровья (X–XII вв.),” in *Древняя культура Молдавии*, eds. V. S. Zelenciuc (gen. ed.), A. I. Meliukova, I. G. Hâncu (Kishinev, 1974), pp. 109–126.

- Fedorov, Ia. A., Fedorov, G. S., *Ранние тюрки на Северном Кавказе* (Moscow, 1978).
- Fedorov-Davydov, G. A., *Кочевники Восточной Европы под властью золотоордынских ханов* (Moscow, 1966).
- , *Die Goldene Horde und ihre Vorhänger* (Leipzig, 1972).
- , *Искусство кочевников и Золотой Орды* (Moscow, 1976).
- Fehér, G., *A bolgár-török műveltség emlékei és magyar őstörténeti vonatkozásaik/Les monuments de la culture protobulgare et leurs relations hongroises* (Budapest, 1931).
- Ferentz, I., *Cumanii și episcopiile lor* (Blaj [1931]).
- , *Începuturile Bisericii Catolice din Moldova*, ed. E. Ferentz (Iași, 2004).
- Fiedler, U., *Studien zu Gräberfeldern des 6. bis 9. Jahrhunderts an der unteren Donau*, 1, 2 (Bonn, 1992).
- , “Bulgars in the Lower Danube region. A survey of the archaeological evidence and of the state of the current research,” in *The Other Europe in the Middle Ages. Avars, Bulgars, Khazars, and Cumans*, ed. F. Curta (Leiden–Boston, 2008), pp. 151–236.
- Filipescu, C., Giurgea, E. N., *Basarabia. Considerații generale agricole, economice și statistice* (Chișinău, 1919).
- Fin, J. V. A., Jr., *The Early Medieval Balkans. A Critical Survey from the Sixth to the Late Twelfth Century* (Ann Arbor, 1983).
- Flörova, V. Je., *Граффити Хазарии* (Moscow, 1997).
- Fochi, A., *Datini și erezuri populare de la sfârșitul secolului al XIX-lea. Răspunsurile la chestionarul lui Nicolae Densușianu* (Bucharest, 1976).
- Fodor, I., *Die grosse Wanderung der Ungarn von Ural nach Pannonien* (Budapest, 1982).
- , “Zur Problematik der Ankunft der Ungarn im Karpatenbecken und ihrer Fortlaufenden Besiedlung,” in *Interaktionen des mitteleuropäischen Slaven und andere Ethnika im 6.-10. Jahrhundert. Symposium Nové Vozokany 3.-7. Oktober, 1983* (Nitra, 1984), pp. 97–104.
- , “Die Bulgaren in den ungarischen Ländern während der Ansiedlungsperiode der Ungarn,” *Mitteilungen des Bulgarischen Forschungsinstitutes in Österreich* 6 (1984), no. 2, pp. 47–54.
- Frances, E., “Les relations russo-byzantines au XII<sup>e</sup> siècle et la domination de Galicie au Bas-Danube,” *Byzantinoslavica* 20 (1959), no. 1, pp. 50–62.
- Frank, A. J., “Historical legends of the Volga-Ural Muslims concerning Alexander the Great, the city of Yelabuga, and Bāchmān Khān,” in *Figures mythiques des mondes musulmans. Revue des mondes musulmans et de la Méditerranée, Série Histoire* 89–90 (2000), pp. 101–104.
- Gabain, A. v., “Die Sprache des Codex Cumanicus,” in *Philologiae Turcicae fundamenta*, I, eds. J. Deny, K. Gronbech, H. Scheel, Z. V. Togan (Wiesbaden, 1959), pp. 46–73.
- Galben, A. I.,  *Din “obiceitul pământului” al Moldovei feudale (sec. XVIII—prima jumătate a sec. XIX)* (Chișinău, 1986).
- , *Из истории феодального право Молдовы XVIII—начала XIX в. (турецко-фанариотский период)* (Kishinev, 1998).
- Gamber, O., “Der Goldschatz von Nagyszentmiklós im Wiener Kunsthistorischen Museum,” *Jahrbuch des Kunsthistorischen Museums Wien* 2 (2001), pp. 73–84.
- Garustovich, G. N., Ivanov, V. A., *Огузы и печенеги в евразийских степях* (Ufa, 2001).
- Gautier, P., “L’édit d’Alexis Ier Comnène sur la réforme du clergé,” *Revue des études byzantines* 31 (1973), pp. 165–201.
- Gazdaru, D., “Los latinos de Oriente en monumentos literarios e históricos de la Edad Media,” *Romanica*, La Plata, 2 (1969), pp. 43–75.
- Gemil, T., “Țara Românească de pe țărmul mării,” *Magazin istoric* 15 (1981), no. 6, pp. 16–18.
- Geografia României*, I, *Geografia fizică*, co-ord. L. Badea, P. Gâstescu, V. Velcea (Bucharest, 1983).
- Georgescu, V. Al., *Bizanțul și instituțiile românești pînă la mijlocul secolului al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1980).

- Georgescu, V., *Istoria românilor de la origini pînă în zilele noastre*, 2nd ed. (Los Angeles, 1989).
- Georgiev, P., "L'Église bulgare à la fin de X<sup>e</sup> et au début de XI<sup>e</sup> siècle," in *Das Christentum in Bulgarien und auf der übrigen Balkanhalbinsel in des Spätantike und im frühen Mittelalter*, eds. V. Gjuzelev and R. Pillinger (Miscellanea Bulgarica, 5) (Vienna, 1987), pp. 241–246.
- , "Новое направление в чтении рунических текстов клада из Надь-сент-Миклоша," *Byzantinoslavica* 62 (2004), pp. 289–298.
- Geras'kova, L. S., "Культура середньовічних кочівників," in *Історія української культури*, 1, *Історія культури давнього населення України*, eds. P. P. Tolochko (gen. ed.), D. N. Kozak, R. S. Orlov, S. V. Smirnov, V. V. Otroshchenko, S. D. Krizhits'kii, S. S. Bessonova, R. V. Terpilovs'kii (Kiev, 2001), pp. 989–1035.
- Die Geschichte Ungarns*, gen. ed. E. Pamlényi (Budapest, 1971).
- Gherghel, I., *Zur Geschichte Siebenbürgens* (Vienna, 1891).
- , "Cercetări privitoare la istoria comanilor," *Revista Tinerimea română*, NS, 2 (1899), pp. 263–269; 3 (1899), pp. 387–392; 5 (1900), pp. 114–118.
- Giesler, J., *Der Ostalpenraum vom 8. bis 11. Jahrhundert. Studien zu archäologischen und schriftlichen Zeugnissen*, 2, *Historische Interpretation* (Rahden/Westf., 1997).
- Giurescu, C. C., *Istoria românilor*, I, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1935).
- , "Imprumuturi cumane în limba română: *odaie* și *cioban*," *Studii și cercetări lingvistice* 12 (1961), no. 2, pp. 205–214.
- , *Istoria pescuitului și a pisciculturii în România*, I (Bucharest, 1964).
- , *Tîrguri sau orașe și cetăți moldovene din secolul al X-lea pînă la mijlocul secolului al XVI-lea* (Bucharest, 1967).
- , *Formarea poporului român* (Craiova, 1973).
- , *Istoria pădurii românești din cele mai vechi timpuri și pînă astăzi*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1976).
- , "Români în mileniul migrațiilor. Considerații asupra unor aspecte," in *Discursuri de recepție [Academia Română]*, VII (1974–1976), ed. D. N. Rusu (Bucharest, 2005), pp. 145–161.
- Giurescu, C. C., Giurescu, D. C., *Istoria românilor*, 1 (Bucharest, 1975).
- Glassl, H., "Der Deutsche Orden im Burzenland und in Kumanien (1211–1225)," *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 3 (1971), pp. 23–49.
- Glazyrina, G. V., Dzhakson, N., Mel'nikova, E. A., "Скандинавские источники," in *Древняя Русь в свете зарубежных источников*, ed. E. A. Mel'nikova, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 2003), pp. 408–563.
- Göbl, R., Róna-Tas, A., *Die Inschriften des Schatzes von Nagy-Szentmiklós. Eine paläographische Dokumentation* (Vienna, 1995).
- Göckenjan, H., *Hilfsvölker und Grenzwächter im mittelalterlichen Ungarn* (Wiesbaden, 1972).
- , "Zur Stammesstruktur und Heeresorganisation altaischer Völker," in *Europa Slavica—Europa Orientalis. Festschrift für Herbert Ludat zum 70. Geburtstag* (Berlin, 1980), pp. 51–86.
- Goehrke, C., "Geographische Grundlagen der russischen Geschichte," *Jahrbücher für Geschichte Osteuropas*, NF, 18 (1970), no. 2, pp. 161–204.
- , *Frühzeit des Ostslaventums*, Darmstadt, 1992.
- Goia, I. A., "A methodology for the study of Romanian shepherding," *Transylvanian Review* 10 (2001), no. 1, pp. 24–35.
- Golden, P. B., "The migrations of the Oğuz," *Archivum Ottomanicum* 4 (1972), pp. 45–84.
- , *Khazar Studies*, I, II (Budapest, 1980).
- , "Imperial ideology and the sources of political unity amongst the Pre-Çinggisid nomads of Western Eurasia," *AEMA* 2 (1982), pp. 37–76.

- , “The Turkic people and Caucasia,” in *Transcaucasia. Nationalism and Social Change. Essays in the History of Armenia, Azerbaijan and Georgia*, ed. R. G. Suny (Ann Arbor, 1983), pp. 45–67.
- , “Cumanica I: The Qipčaq in Georgia,” *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 45–87.
- , “Cumanica II: The Ölberli: The fortunes and misfortunes of an Inner Asian nomadic clan,” *AEMA* 6 (1986), pp. 5–29.
- , “The peoples of the south Russian steppes,” in *The Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia*, ed. D. Sinor (Cambridge, 1990), pp. 256–284.
- , “Cumanica III: Urusoba,” in *Aspects of Altaic Civilization, III, Proceedings of the Thirtieth Meeting of the Permanent International Altaistic Conference, Indiana University, Bloomington, Indiana, June 19–25, 1987*, ed. D. Sinor (Bloomington, Ind., 1990), pp. 33–46.
- , “Nomads and their sedentary neighbors in Pre-Činggisid Eurasia,” *AEMA* 7 (1987–1991), pp. 41–81.
- , “Aspects of the nomadic factor in the economic development of Kievan Rus’,” in *Ukrainian Economic History. Interpretive Essays*, ed. I. S. Koropeckyj (Cambridge, Mass., 1991), pp. 58–101.
- , “The Qipčaq of medieval Eurasia: An example of stateless adaptation in the steppes,” in *Rulers from the Steppe. State Formation on the Eurasian Periphery*, eds. G. Seaman and D. Marks (Los Angeles, 1991), pp. 132–157.
- , *An Introduction to the History of the Turkic Peoples. Ethnogenesis and State-Formation in Medieval and Early Modern Eurasia and the Middle East* (Wiesbaden, 1992).
- , “The Codex Cumanicus,” in *Central Asiatic Monuments*, ed. H. B. Paksoy (Istanbul, 1992), pp. 33–63.
- , “The Černii Klobouci,” in *Symbolae Turcologicae. Studies in Honour of Lars Johanson On his Sixtieth Birthday 8 March 1996*, eds. A. Berta, B. Brendemoen, and C. Schönig (Uppsala, 1996), pp. 97–107.
- , “Cumanica IV: The tribes of the Cuman-Qipčaq,” *AEMA* 9 (1995–1997), pp. 99–122.
- , “Religion among the Qipčaq of medieval Eurasia,” *Central Asiatic Journal* 42 (1998), no. 2, pp. 180–237.
- , *Nomads and their Neighbours in the Russian Steppe: Turks, Khazars and Qipchaqs* (Variorum Collected Studies Series) (Aldershot–Burlington, 2003).
- Golubovskii, P., *Печенеги, торки и половцы до нашествия татаръ* (Kiev, 1884).
- , *Половцы въ Венгрии* (Kiev, 1889).
- Gonța, Al. I., *Satul în Moldova medievală. Instituțiile* (Bucharest, 1986).
- , *Legăturile economice dintre Moldova și Transilvania în secolele XIII–XVII*, ed. I. Caproșu (Bucharest, 1989).
- , *Relațiile românilor cu slavii de răsărit pînă la 1812* (Chișinău, 1993).
- Gorskii, A. A., “Русско-византийские отношения при Владимире Мономахе и русское летописание,” *Исторические записки* 115 (1987), pp. 308–328.
- Grannes, A., Hauge, K. R., Süleymanoğlu, H., *A Dictionary of Turkisms in Bulgarian* (Oslo, 2002).
- Graur, Al., *Nume de locuri* (Bucharest, 1972).
- Grămadă, N., *Toponimia minoră a Bucovinei*, I, ed. I. Popescu-Sireteanu (Rădăuți, 1996).
- Greco, A. [Panaitescu, P. P.], “Bulgaria la nordul Dunării în veacurile al IX–X-lea,” *Studii și cercetări de istorie medie* 1 (1950), pp. 223–236.
- Grekov, B. D., Iakubovskii, A. Iu., *Золотая Орда и ее падение* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1950).
- Grigoraș, N., *Instituții feudale din Moldova, I. Organizarea de stat pînă la mijlocul sec. al XVIII-lea* (Bucharest, 1971).
- , “Românii la est de Carpați și organizarea lor pînă la întemeierea statului românesc al Moldovei,” *CI*, SN, 8 (1977), pp. 267–285.



- Grigorovitz, Em., *Dictionarul geografic al Bucovinei* (Bucharest, 1908).
- Gritsak, P., *Галицько-Волинська держава* (New York, 1958).
- Grot, K. I., *Моравия и мадьяры съ половины IX до начала X века* (Записки Историко-Филологического Факультета Императорского С.-Петербургского Университета, IX) (St. Petersburg, 1881).
- Grousset, R., *L'empire des steppes. Attila. Gengis-Khan. Tamerlan*, 4th ed. (Paris, 1982).
- Grushevskii, M., *Исторія України-Руси*, III (Lwów, 1905).
- Gudea, N., Ghiurco, I., *Dim istoria creștinismului la români. Mărturie arheologică* (Oradea, 1988).
- Gumilev, L. N., "New date of the history of the Khazars," *ActaArchHung* 19 (1967), nos. 1–2, pp. 61–103.
- , "Роль климатических колебаний в истории народов степной зоны Евразии," *История СССР* (1967), no. 1, pp. 53–66.
- , "A kazárok utódaí," *Történelmi szemle* 11 (1968), nos. 1–2, pp. 11–18.
- Gunda, B., "Ursprung der Moldau-Ungarn," in *Forschungen über Siebenbürgen und seine Nachbarn. Festschrift für Attila T. Szabó und Zsigmond Jakó*, I, eds. K. Benda, Th. v. Bogayay, H. Glassl, Z. K. Lengyel (Munich, 1987), pp. 267–285.
- Gundogdyev, O., "On one peculiarity of funeral ceremony of Scythes and Turks," *Central Asia Cultural Values* 1 (2002), pp. 29–31.
- Güngör, H., "The Religion of Ancient Turks," in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik (Ankara, 2002), pp. 777–797.
- Gurkin, S. V., "К вопросу о русско-половецких матримониальных связях," *Донская археология* 2 (1999), pp. 40–50.
- Gyárfás, I., *A jász-kunok története*, II (Kecskemét, 1873).
- Gyóni, M., "Zur Frage der rumänischen Staatsbildungen im XI. Jahrhundert in Paris-trion (Archaisierende Volksnamen und ethnische Wirklichkeit in der 'Alexias' von Anna Komnene)," *AECO* 9–10 (1943–44), pp. 83–188.
- , "Les Volochs des Annales primitives de Kiev," *Études slaves et roumaines* 2 (1949), no. 1, pp. 56–92.
- Györfly, Gy., "Besenyők és magyarok," *Kőrösi Csoma-Archivum*, I. Ergänzungsband (1939), no. 3, pp. 397–500.
- , *Kronikáink és a magyar őstörténet* (Budapest, 1948).
- , "A kun és komán népnév eredetének kérdéséhez," *Antiquitas Hungarica* 2 (1948), nos. 1–2, pp. 158–176.
- , "A kunok feudalizálódása," in *Tanulmányok a parasztság történetéhez Magyarországon a 14. században*, ed. Gy. Székely (Budapest, 1953), pp. 248–275.
- , *Tanulmányok a magyar állam eredetéről* (Budapest, 1959).
- , "Monuments du lexique pechénègue," *AOH* 18 (1965), nos. 1–2, pp. 73–81.
- , "Formation d'États au IX<sup>e</sup> siècle suivant les 'Gesta Hungarorum' du Notaire Anonyme," in *Nouvelles études historiques*, I (Budapest, 1965), pp. 27–45.
- , *Az Árpád-kori Magyarország történeti földrajza*, I (Budapest, 1966).
- , "Sur la question de l'établissement des Petchénègues en Europe," *AOH* 25 (1972), nos. 1–3, pp. 283–292.
- , "Время составления Анонимом 'Деяний венгров' и степень достоверности этого сочинения," in *Летописи и хроники. Сборник статей 1973 г.* (Moscow, 1974), pp. 115–127.
- , "Honfoglalás, megtelepedés és kalandozások," in *Magyar őstörténeti tanulmányok*, eds. A. Bartha, K. Czeglédy, A. Róna-Tas (Budapest, 1977), pp. 123–156.
- , "Erfindene Stammesgründer," in *Fälschungen im Mittelalter. Internationaler Kongress der Monumenta Germaniae Historica, München, 16.–19. September 1986*, I (= *MGH, Schriften*, 33, 1) (Hannover, 1988), pp. 443–450.
- , *A magyarság keleti elemei* (Budapest, 1990).
- Halasi-Kun, T., "Ottoman data on Lesser Cumania: keçkemet nahiyesi—varoş-i halaş—kariye-i kökut," *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 92–98.

- Halperin, Ch. J., *Russia and the Golden Horde. The Mongol Impact on Medieval Russian History* (Bloomington, 1985).
- , “The Kipchak connection: the Ilkhans, the Mamluks and Ayn Jalut,” *Bulletin of School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London* 62 (2000), no. 2, pp. 229–245.
- Hanak, W. K., “The infamous Svjatoslav. Master of duplicity in war and peace?,” in *Peace and War in Byzantium. Essays in Honor of George T. Dennis, S.J.*, eds. T. S. Miller and J. Nesbitt (Washington, D.C., 1995), pp. 138–151.
- Handbuch der Geschichte Russlands*, eds. M. Hellmann, K. Zernack, G. Schramm, I *Bis 1613. Von der Kiever Reichsbildung bis zum Moskauer Zartum*, ed. M. Hellmann, 1 (Stuttgart, 1981).
- Härtel, H.-J., Schönfeld, R., *Bulgarien: vom Mittelalter bis zur Gegenwart* (Munich, 1998).
- Hasdeu, B. P., *Studii de lingvistică și filologie*, 1, ed. G. Brâncuș (Bucharest, 1988).
- Haslund, H., *Tents in Mongolia (yabonah). Adventures and experiences among the nomads of Central Asia* (New York, 1934).
- Heers, J., *Chute et mort de Constantinople (1204–1453)* (Paris, 2007).
- Héfélé, Ch.-J., *Histoire des conciles d'après les documents originaux*, V, trans. [O.] Delarc (Paris, 1870).
- Hegel, G. W. Fr., *Vorlesungen über die Philosophie der Geschichte*, 3rd ed. K. Hegel (Berlin, 1848).
- Heissig, W., *Die Mongolen*, 2nd ed. (Munich–Nördlingen, 1978).
- Heitmann, K., *Das Rumänenbild im deutschen Sprachraum, 1775–1918. Eine imagologische Studie* (Cologne–Vienna, 1985).
- Heller, K., *Die Normannen in Osteuropa* (Giessen, 1993).
- Henning, J., *Südosteuropa zwischen Antike und Mittelalter. Archäologische Beiträge zur Landwirtschaft des 1. Jahrtausends u. Z.* (Berlin, 1987).
- Hensel, W., *Die Slaven im frühen Mittelalter* (Berlin, 1965).
- Herrmann, J., “Slawen und Wikinger in der Frühgeschichte der Ostseevölker,” in *Wikinger und Slawen. Zur Frühgeschichte der Ostseevölker*, gen. ed. J. Herrmann (Berlin, 1982), pp. 9–148.
- Herseni, T., *Probleme de sociologie pastorală* (Bucharest, 1941).
- , *Sociologie. Teoria generală a vieții sociale* (Bucharest, 1982).
- Hilckman, A., “Die Aromunen. Ein romanisches Volk im Herzen des Balkans,” *Europa Ethnica* 25 (1968), no. 3, pp. 98–114.
- Hillerdal, Ch., “Vikings, Rus, Varangians. The ‘Varangian problem’ in view of ethnicity in archaeology,” *Current Swedish Archaeology* 14 (2006), pp. 87–107.
- Histoire du christianisme des origines à nos jours*, V, *Apogée de la papauté et expansion de la chrétienté (1054–1274)*, ed. A. Vauchez (*sine loco*, 1993).
- Hâncu, I. G., “К вопросу о соотношении восточно-славянской и балкано-дунайской культур лесостепной полосы Молдавии (X–XIV вв.),” in *Труды историко-краеведческого музея МССР, II* (Kishinev, 1969), pp. 106–120.
- , “К вопросу расселении тиверцев и уличей в Поднестровье,” in *IVESV*, pp. 159–175.
- , *Cine sînt strămoșii moldovenilor?* (Chișinău, 1990).
- , “Triburile tiverților și ulicilor în spațiul carpato-nistran,” in *Spațiul nord-est-carpatic în mileniul întunecat*, ed. V. Spinei (Iași, 1997), pp. 125–132.
- Höfler, C. R. v., “Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiete der slavischen Geschichte, I, Die Walachen als Begründer des zweiten bulgarischen Reiches, der Asaniden, 1186–1257,” *Sitzungsberichte der Philosophisch-Historische Classe der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften* 95 (1879), nos. 1–4, pp. 229–245.
- Holban, M., *Din cronica relațiilor româno-ungare în secolele XIII–XIV* (Bucharest, 1981).
- Holban, Th., “Contribuții la problema originii și localizării bolohovenilor,” *RI*s 21 (1968), no. 1, pp. 21–27.
- , “Jus Valachicum in Polonia,” *Studii și cercetări istorice*, Iași, 18 (1943), pp. 326–333.
- Hóman, B., *Geschichte des ungarischen Mittelalters*, I (Berlin, 1940).

- Horbatsch, O., "Ukrainische Ortsnamen rumänischer Herkunft," *Beiträge zur Namenforschung*, NF, 6 (1971), no. 4, pp. 357–377.
- Horedt, K., *Contribuții la istoria Transilvaniei în secolele IV–XIII* (Bucharest, 1958).
- , "Blökumanaland și Blakumen," *AM* 6 (1969), pp. 179–185.
- , "Interpretări arheologice (V)," *SCIVA* 25 (1974), no. 4, pp. 555–560.
- Horodysky, J. Z., *Byzantium and Rus' Relations During the Reign of the Comneni Dynasty*. A thesis submitted to the Graduate School (New Brunswick, New Jersey, 1982).
- Hotnog, T., *Câteva nume topice românești de origine cumană* (offprint from *Anuarul Liceului Național din Iași*, 1932–1933), pp. 1–10.
- Houtsma, M. Th., "Die Ghuzenstämme," *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 2 (1888), pp. 219–226.
- Hruševskij, M. Sec: Grushevskii, M.
- Humphrey, C., Sneath, D., *The End of Nomadism? Society, State and the Environment in Inner Asia* (Durham, 1999).
- Howard-Johnston, J., "Byzantium, Bulgaria and the peoples of Ukraine in the 890s," *Матеріалы по археології, історії і етнографії Таврії* 7 (2000), pp. 342–356.
- Hurdubețiu, I., *Die Deutschen über die Herkunft der Rumänen* (Bucharest, 1977).
- Iambor, P., *Așezări fortificate din Transilvania (secolele IX–XIII)*, ed. T. Sălăgean (Cluj–Napoca, 2005).
- Ignat, M., "Contribuții la cunoașterea movilelor funerare militare din evul mediu," *Suceava. Anuarul Muzeului Județean* 8 (1981), pp. 101–109.
- Iliescu, P.-M., "Spår av vikingatid i Rumänien," in *Bysans och Norden. Acta för Nordiska forskarkursen i bysantinsk konstvetenskap 1986*, ed. E. Piltz (Uppsala, 1989), pp. 191–202.
- Ioannisian, O., "Об одном эпизоде византийско-венгеро-галицких отношений во второй половине XII в.," in *Галицько-Волинська держава: передумови виникнення, історія, культура, традиції*, eds. Iu. Babik, V. Ivanovskii, Z. Matchak (Lviv, 1993), pp. 68–70.
- Ionescu-Sachelarie, D., "Despre viața păstorească și agricolă din trecutul nostru," *Cercetări și studii geografice*, 2nd Ser., 1 (1937–1938), pp. 141–158.
- Ioniță, A., *Spațiul dintre Carpații Meridionali și Dunărea Inferioară în secolele XI–XIII* (Bucharest, 2005).
- Ioniță, I., "Les Carpates pendant la préhistoire et la protohistoire: une barrière entre l'Occident et l'Orient de l'Europe?," in *Famille, violence et christianisation au Moyen Âge. Mélanges offerts à Michel Rouche*, eds. M. Aurell and Th. Deswarte (Paris, 2005), pp. 283–298.
- Iordache, Gh., *Ocupații tradiționale pe teritoriul României* (Craiova), I (1985); II (1986).
- Iordan, I., *Toponimia românească* (Bucharest, 1963).
- , "Sprachgeographisches aus dem Gebiete der rumänischen Toponomastik," in *Contributions onomastiques publiées à l'occasion du VIe Congrès international des sciences onomastiques à Munich du 24 au 28 août 1958*, eds. I. Iordan, E. Petrovici, M. Sala (Bucharest, 1958), pp. 7–32.
- Iorga, N., *Histoire des Roumains et de la romanité orientale*, II, III (Bucharest, 1937).
- , *Studii istorice asupra Chiliei și Cetății Albe* (Bucharest, 1899).
- , "Imperiul cumanilor și domnia lui Bășărabă. Un capitol din colaborația româno-barbară în evul mediu," *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 8 (1927–28), pp. 97–103.
- , *La place des Roumains dans l'histoire universelle*, I (Bucharest, 1935).
- , *Istoria românilor prin călătorii*, ed. A. Angelescu (Bucharest, 1981).
- Iorgulescu, V., *Le sud-est européen entre Byzance et Occident aux X<sup>e</sup>–XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles. Le cas des Roumains* (Iași, 2005).
- Iosipescu, S., "La colonia delli Romani Negri che dicono Valacchi'. La romanité des Roumains dans la conscience européenne du XIV<sup>e</sup> siècle," *RRH* 18 (1979), no. 4, pp. 673–685.

- Istoria României* (Bucharest), I, eds. C. Daicoviciu, E. Condurachi, I. Nestor, Gh. Ștefan, M. D. Matei (1960); II, eds. A. Oțetea, M. Berza, B. T. Cămpina, Șt. Pascu, Șt. Ștefănescu (1962).
- Istoria românilor*, I, *Moștenirea timpurilor îndepărtate*, gen. eds. M. Petrescu-Dimbovița, Al. Vulpe (Bucharest, 2001); III, *Genezele românilor*, gen. eds. Șt. Pascu, R. Theodorescu (Bucharest, 2001).
- Istoria RSS Moldovenesti*, I, eds. V. L. Ianin (gen. ed.), V. A. Dergacev, V. M. Masson, L. L. Polevoi, I. P. Rusanova, P. V. Sovetov (Chișinău, 1988).
- Istoria Transilvaniei, I (până la 1541)*, eds. I.-A. Pop, Th. Năgler (Cluj-Napoca, 2003).
- История на българите, I, От древността до края на XVI век*, ed. G. Bakalov (Sofia, 2003).
- История Молдавской ССР, I*, gen. ed. L. V. Cherepnin (Kishinev, 1965).
- История татар с древнейших времен, I, Народы степной Евразии в древности*, gen.ed. S. Kliashornyi (Kazan, 2002).
- История Украинской ССР, I*, eds. A. K. Kasimenko (co-ord.), V. A. Diadichenko, F. E. Los', F. P. Shevchenko, F. A. Iastrebov (Kiev, 1953).
- История Византии*, co-ord. S. D. Skazkin, 2, ed. A. P. Kazhdan (Moscow, 1967).
- Юго-Восточная Европа в средние века, I*, eds. I. G. Budak, Ia. S. Grosul (gen. ed.), V. D. Koroliuk, L. L. Polevoi, P. V. Sovetov (Kishinev, 1972).
- Ivănescu, G., *Istoria limbii române* (Iași, 1980).
- Jackson, P., *The Mongols and the West, 1221–1410* (Harlow, 2005).
- Jagchid, S., Hyer, P., *Mongolia's Culture and Society* (Boulder, Col.–Folkestone, 1979).
- Jahn, K., "Zu Rašid al-Dīn's 'Geschichte der Oгуzen und Türken'" *Journal of Asian History* 1 (1967), no. 1, pp. 45–63.
- Jansson, I., "Warfare, trade or colonisation? Some general remarks on the eastern expansion of the Scandinavians in the Viking period," in *The Rural Viking in Russia and Sweden*, ed. P. Hansson (Örebro, 1997), pp. 9–64.
- , "Situationen i Norden och Östeuropa för 1000 år sedan—en arkeologs synpunkter på frågan om östkristna inflytanden under missionstiden," in *Från Byzans till Norden. Östliga kyrkoinflenser under vikingatid och tidig medeltid*, ed. H. Janson (Malmö, 2005), pp. 37–95.
- Jansson, S. B. F., *Runes in Sweden*, trans. P. Foote (Gidlunds, 1987).
- Jawor, G., "Zasięg i charakter osadnictwa wołoskiego na Rusi Czerwonej w XIV–XVI wieku," in *Галицько-Волинська держава: передумови виникнення, історія, культура, традиції*, eds. Iu. Babik, V. Ivanov'skii, Z. Matchak (Lviv, 1993), pp. 123–125.
- , *Osada prawa wołoskiego i ich mieszkańcy na Rusi Czerwonej w późnym średniowieczu* (Lublin, 2000).
- Jaworski, J., "Quelques remarques sur les coutumes funéraires turques d'après les sources chinoises," *Rocznik orientalistyczny* 4 (1926), pp. 255–266.
- Jireček, C., "Einige Bemerkungen über die Überreste der Petschenegen und Kumanen, sowie über die Völkerschaften der sogenannten Gagauzi und Surguči im heutigen Bulgarien," *Sitzungsberichte der königl. böhmischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, Classe für Philosophie, Geschichte und Philologie* (1889), pp. 3–30.
- Jisl, L., "The Orkhon Türks and problems of the archaeology of the Second Eastern Türk Kaganate," *Annals of the Náprstek Museum Praha* 18 (1997).
- Jones, G., *A History of the Vikings*, 2nd ed. (Oxford–New York, 1984).
- Jordanov, I., "Болгария и Византия на Нижнем Дунае в конце X века (по данным сфрагистики)," *Balkanica Posnaniensia. Acta et studia* 4 (1989), pp. 79–86.
- , "Sceau d'archonte de Patcinakía du XI<sup>e</sup> siècle," *Études balkaniques* 28 (1992), no. 2, pp. 79–82.
- , "Печати на Йоан Кеген, магистър и архонт на Печенегия 1050–1051," *Нумизматика и сфрагистика* 5 (1998), no. 1, pp. 96–101.

- Jurewicz, O., "Aus der Geschichte der Beziehungen zwischen Byzanz und Russland in der zweite Hälfte des 12. Jahrhunderts," in *Byzantinistische Beiträge*, ed. J. Irmscher (Berlin, 1964), pp. 333–357.
- , *Andronikos I. Komnenos* (Amsterdam, 1970).
- Jurkowski, M., "Z hydronimii Karpat polskich," *Acta Archaeologica Carpathica* 11 (1970), no. 2, pp. 313–318.
- Kadlec, K., *Introduction à l'étude comparative de l'histoire du droit public des peuples slaves* (Paris, 1933).
- Kafesoğlu, I., "Seljuks," in *A History of Seljuks. Ibrahim Kafesoğlu's Interpretation and the Resulting Controversy*, ed. G. Leiser (Carbondale–Edwardsville, 1988).
- Kaplan, M., *Les hommes et la terre à Byzance du VI<sup>e</sup> au XI<sup>e</sup> siècle. Propriété et exploitation du sol* (Paris, 1992).
- Karamzin, M., *Histoire de l'Empire de Russie*, II (Paris, 1819).
- Kargalov, V. V., *Внешнеполитические факторы развития феодальной Руси* (Moscow, 1967).
- Karsanov, A. N., "Об одном известии Ипатьевской летописи," in *Аланы: история и культура*, III (Vladikavkaz, 1995).
- Kashtanov, S. M., *Из истории русского средневекового источника. Акты X–XVI вв.* (Moscow, 1996).
- Každan, A. P., "Once more about the 'alleged' Russo-Byzantine treaty (ca. 1047) and the Pecheneg crossing of the Danube," *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 26 (1977), pp. 65–77.
- Kazhdan, A. P., "Some little-known or misinterpreted evidence about Kievan Rus' in twelfth-century Greek sources," *Harvard Ukrainian Studies* 7 (1983) (= *Okeanos. Essays Presented to Ihor Ševčenko on his Sixtieth Birthday by his Colleagues and Students*, eds. C. Mango and O. Pritsak), pp. 344–358.
- Keenan, E. L., "Turkic lexical elements in the *Igor Tale* and the *Žadonščina*," *The Slavonic and East European Review* 80 (2002), no. 3, pp. 479–482.
- , *Josef Dobrovský and the Origins of the Igor' Tale* (Cambridge, Mass., 2003).
- Keller, L., "Őjűcaq, kuman, kun. Megjegyzések a polovecek önelnevezéséhez," in *Nomád népvándorlások, magyar honfoglalás*, eds. S. Felföldi, B. Sinkovics (Budapest, 2001), pp. 138–147.
- Kellner, M. G., *Die Ungarneinfälle im Bild der Quellen bis 1150. Von der "Gens detestanda" zur "Gens ad fidem Christi conversa"* (Munich, 1997).
- Khazanov, A. M., *Nomads and the Outside World*, trans. J. Crookenden (Cambridge, 1984).
- Khazanov, A., "Ecological limitations of nomadism in the Eurasian steppes and their social and cultural implications," *Asian and African Studies* 24 (1990), pp. 1–15.
- Хазары/Khazars (Евреи и славяне/Jews and Slavs*, 16), eds. V. Petrukhin, W. Moskovich, A. Fedorchuk, A. Kulik, D. Shapira (Moscow–Jerusalem, 2005).
- Киев и западные земли Руси в IX–XIII вв.* (Minsk, 1982).
- Klein, K. K., *Saxonica Septemcastrensia* (Marburg, 1971).
- Kliashtrnyi, S. G., Sultanov, T. I., *Государства и народы Евразийских степей. Древность и средневековье*, 2nd ed. (St. Petersburg, 2004).
- Княз'кii, I. O., "О половецких епископиях в Карпато-Дунайских землях (Сообщение)," in *Социально-экономическая и политическая история Юго-Восточной Европы (до середины XIX в.)*, ed. V. D. Koroliuk (Kishinev, 1980), pp. 244–251.
- , *Русь и степь* (Moscow, 1996).
- , *Славяне, волохи и кочевники Днестровско-Карпатских земель (конец IX—сер. XIII вв.)* (Kolomna, 1997).
- Koca, S., "The state tradition and organization among ancient Turks," in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik (Ankara, 2002), pp. 693–713.

- Koder, J., *To Βυζάντιο ως χώρος. Εισαγωγή στην Ιστορική Γεωγραφία της Ανατολικής Μεσογείου στη Βυζαντινή Εποχή*, trans. D. X. Stathakóπουλος (Thessalonike, 2005).
- Kogălniceanu, C., *Istoria românilor*, I (Iași, 1903).
- , *Istoria veche a românilor* (Bucharest, 1938).
- Konovalova, I. G., *Восточная Европа с сочинении ал-Идриси* (Moscow, 1999).
- Konovalova, I. G., Perkhavko, V. V., *Древняя Русь и Нижнее Подунавье* (Moscow, 2000).
- Kordé, Z., “Kabars, Sicules et Petchenègues. Les Hongrois et les auxiliaires militaires (IX<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècle),” in *Les Hongrois et l’Europe: conquête et intégration*, ed. S. Csernus and K. Korompay (Paris–Szeged, 1999), pp. 231–239.
- Korobeinikov, D., “A broken mirror: the Kipçak world in the thirteenth century,” in *The Other Europe in the Middle Ages. Avars, Bulgars, Khazars, and Cumans*, ed. F. Curta (Leiden–Boston, 2008), pp. 379–412.
- Koroliuk, V. D., *Волохи и славяне русской летописи* (Kishinev, 1971).
- , “Славяне, влахи, рымляне и римские пастухи венгерского ‘Анонима,’” in *IYESV*, pp. 139–159.
- Kossányi, B., “Az úzok és kománok történetéhez a XI–XII. században,” *Századok* 57–58 (1923–1924), pp. 519–537.
- Kosztolnyik, Z. J., *From Coloman the Learned to Béla III (1095–1196). Hungarian Domestic Policies and Their Impact upon Foreign Affairs* (East European Monographs, CCXX) (Boulder–New York, 1987).
- Kotliar, M. F., “Русь на Дунаї,” *Український історичний журнал* (1966), no. 9, pp. 12–22.
- , “Хто такі бродники,” *Український історичний журнал* (1969), no. 5 (98), pp. 95–101.
- Kotliar, N. F., “Стратегия обороны галицкими и волынскими князьями государственных рубежей в XII в.,” *Византийский временник* 65 (90) (2006), pp. 73–93.
- Kozlovsk’ii, A. A., *Историко-культурний розвиток Південного Подніпров’я в IX–XIV ст.* (Kiev, 1992).
- Krandjalov, D., “Les noms Cahul et Cogalnic ne dérivent pas d’Ὀγγλος,” *Byzantino-slavica* 9 (1947), no. 1, pp. 192–202.
- Krandjalov, D., “Rumänische Einflüsse in der slawischen Hirtenterminologie und Toponomastik in den Karpaten,” *Zeitschrift für Slavistik* 10 (1965), no. 3, pp. 354–366.
- Kravchuk, I. P., “Лесные ресурсы Молдавии, их динамика, состояние, использование,” *PGM* 9 (1974), pp. 97–106.
- Krăstev, L., “Une hypothèse concernant l’origine du voïévode valaque Jean Basarab (env. 1324–1352),” *Études balkaniques* 36 (2000), no. 4, pp. 108–116.
- Kristó, Gy., “Rómaiak és vlachok Nyesztornál és Anonymusnál,” *Századok* 112 (1978), pp. 623–661.
- , “К вопросу о болгарском владычестве на Альфельде в IX в.,” *Доклади, 6, Българските земи в древността. България през средновековието* (Sofia, 1987), pp. 265–272.
- , *Hungarian History in the Ninth Century* (Szeged, 1996).
- , *Magyarország története, 895–1301* (Budapest, 1998).
- Krumova, T., “Pecheneg chieftains in the Byzantine administration in the theme of Paristrion in the eleventh century,” *Annual of Medieval Studies at CEU* 11 (2005), pp. 205–221.
- Kshibekov, D., *Кочевое общество: генезис, развитие, упадок* (Alma–Ata, 1984).
- Kudriashov, K. V., *Половецкая степь* (Moscow, 1948).
- Kudrnač, J., “Cîteva date noi despre agricultura la slavi,” *AM* 1 (1961), pp. 225–243.
- Kühn, H.-J., *Die byzantinische Armee im 10. und 11. Jahrhundert. Studien zur Organisation der Tagmata* (Vienna, 1991).

- Kuhn, W., "Ritterorden als Grenzhüter des Abendlandes gegen das östliche Heidentum," *Ostdeutsche Wissenschaft* 6 (1959), pp. 16–22.
- Kumekov, B. E., *Государство кимаков IX–XI вв. по арабским источникам* (Alma-Ata, 1972).
- Kunstmann, H., "Woher die Huzulen ihren Namen haben," *Die Welt der Slaven* 31 (NF, 10) (1986), pp. 317–323.
- Kurat, A. N., *Peçeneg tarihi* (Istanbul, 1937).
- Kuun, G., *Relationum Hungarorum cum Oriente gentibusque orientalis originis. Historia antiquissima*, I (Claudiopoli, 1893).
- Kuz'mina, E. E., Livshits, V. A., "Еще раз о происхождении юрты," in *Прошлое Средней Азии (Археология, нумизматика, эпиграфика и этнография)*, ed. V. A. Ranov (Dushanbe, 1987), pp. 243–250.
- Kuchanov, E. I., *Кочевые государства от гуннов до маньчжуров* (Moscow, 1997).
- Kyzlasov, I. L., "Особенности тюркской рунологии," in *Центральная Азия. Источники, история, культура* (Moscow, 2005), pp. 427–449.
- Lachr, G., *Die Anfänge des russischen Reiches* (offprint from *Historische Studien*, 189) (Berlin, 1930).
- Lahovari, Gh. I., Brătianu, C. I., Tocilescu Gr. G., *Marele dicționar geografic al României* (Bucharest), I (1898); II (1899); III (1900); IV (1901); V (1902).
- Laiou-Thomadakis, A. E., *Peasant Society in the Late Byzantine Empire. A Social and Demographic Study* (Princeton, New Jersey, 1977).
- Lamb, H. H., *Climate, History and the Modern World* (London–New York, 1982).
- Lambrior, A., *Studii de lingvistică și folcloristică*, ed. I. Nuță (Iași, 1976).
- Lane, G., *Daily Life in Mongol Empire* (Westport, Connecticut, 2006).
- Langó, P., "Archaeological research on the conquering Hungarians: A review," in *Research on the Prehistory of the Hungarians: A Review*, ed. B. G. Mende (Varia Archaeologica Hungarica, XVIII) (Budapest, 2005), pp. 175–340.
- Larsson, M. G., *Vikingar i Osterled* (Stockholm, 1999).
- Laszlovszky, J., Soós, Z., "Historical monuments of the Teutonic Order in Transylvania," in *The Crusades and the Military Orders Expanding the Frontiers of Medieval Latin Christianity*, eds. Z. Hunyadi and J. Laszlovszky (Budapest, 2001), pp. 319–336.
- Lăzărescu, E. C., "Notă despre documentele Țării Birsei și cavalerii teutoni," *Țara Birsei* 6 (1934), no. 4, pp. 336–356.
- , "Din nou despre vlahii din cronica lui Skylitzes," *BBR* 7 (11) (1979), pp. 357–368.
- Lăzărescu, D. A., *Imaginaea României prin călători, I, 1716–1789* (Bucharest, 1985).
- Lăzărescu-Zobian, M., "Cumania as the name of thirteenth century Moldavia and Eastern Wallachia: some aspects of Kipchak-Rumanian relations," in *Turks, Hungarians and Kipchaks. A Festschrift in Honor of Tibor Halasi-Kun* (= *Journal of Turkish Studies* 8, 1984), pp. 265–272.
- Lebedev, G. S., "Путь из Варяг в Греки как фактор урбанизации Древней Руси, Скандинавии и Византии," in *Славянский средневековый город*, ed. V. V. Sedov (*Труды VI Международного Конгресса славянской археологии*, 2) (Moscow, 1997), pp. 197–209.
- , "Путь из Варяг в Греки как объект археолого-навигационного исследования," *Slavia Antiqua* 38 (1997), pp. 151–167.
- Lebedynsky, I., *Les Nomades. Les peuples nomades de la steppe des origines aux invasions mongoles IX<sup>e</sup> siècle av. J.-C.–XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle apr. J.-C.* (Paris, 2003).
- Lefort, J., "Rhétorique et politique: Trois discours de Jean Mauropous en 1047," *Travaux et mémoires* 6 (1976), pp. 265–303.
- Le Goff, J., *La civilisation de l'Occident médiéval* (Paris, 1967).
- Lelewel, J., *Géographie du Moyen Age*, I (Breslau, 1852).
- Lepși, I., "Lacurile din sudul Basarabiei," *BMNZN* 4 (1932), pp. 110–227.
- Le Roy Ladurie, E., "Le climat des XI<sup>e</sup> et XVI<sup>e</sup> siècles: séries comparées," *Annales. Économie. Sociétés. Civilisations* 20 (1965), no. 5, pp. 899–922.

- , *Histoire du climat depuis l'an mil* (Paris, 1967).
- Levchenko, M. V., *Очерки по истории русско-византийских отношений* (Moscow, 1956).
- Lilie, R.-J., *Byzanz und die Kreuzzüge* (Stuttgart, 2004).
- Lindner, R. P., "What was a nomadic tribe?," *Comparative Studies in Society and History* 24 (1982), pp. 689–711.
- Litavrin, G. G., "Влахи византийских источников X–XIII вв.," in *IVESV*, pp. 91–138.
- Litavrin, G. G., Kazhdan, A. P., Udaltsova, Z. V., "Отношения Древней Руси и Византий в XI-первой половине XIII в.," in *Thirteenth International Congress of Byzantine Studies* (Oxford, 1966) (offprint).
- Lock, P., *The Routledge Companion to the Crusades* (London and New York, 2006).
- Logan, F. D., *The Vikings in History*, 3rd ed. (New York, 2005).
- Lozovan, E., "Byzance et la romanité scythique," *Revue des études roumaines* 5–6 (1960), pp. 218–246.
- Lukács, A., *Țara Făgărașului în evul mediu (Secolele XIII–XVI)* (Bucharest, 1999).
- Luciw, J., *Sviatoslav the Conqueror: Creator of a Great Kyivian Rus' Empire* (State College, PA, 1986).
- Ludwig, D., *Struktur und Gesellschaft des Chazaren-Reiches im Licht der schriftlichen Quellen* (Münster/Westf., 1982).
- Lukasik, S., *Pologne et Roumanie* (Cracow, 1938).
- Lüko, G., "Havaselve és Moldva népei a X–XII. században," *Ethnographia népélet* 46 (1935), nos. 1–4, pp. 90–105.
- Macartney, C. A., "The Petchenegs," *The Slavonic (and East European) Review* 8 (1929–30), pp. 342–355.
- , *The Magyars in the Ninth Century* (Cambridge, 1930).
- , *Studies on Early Hungarian and Pontic History* (Variorum Collected Studies Series), eds. L. Czigány and L. Péter (Aldershot–Brookfield–Singapore–Sidney, 1999).
- Macrea, D., *Probleme de lingvistică română* (Bucharest, 1961).
- , *Studii de lingvistică română* (Bucharest, 1970).
- Madgearu, A., *Continuitate și discontinuitate culturală la Dunărea de Jos în secolele VII–VIII* (Bucharest, 1997).
- , "The restauration of the Byzantine rule on the Danube," *RESEE* 37, nos. 1–2–38, nos. 1–2 (1999–2000), pp. 5–23.
- , *România în opera Notarului Anonim* (Cluj–Napoca, 2001).
- , "Salt trade and warfare: The rise of the Romanian-Slavic military organization in early medieval Transylvania," in *East Central and Eastern Europe in the Early Middle Ages*, ed. F. Curta (Ann Arbor, 2005), pp. 103–120.
- Maenchen-Helfen, O. J., *The World of the Huns. Studies in Their History and Culture*, ed. M. Knight (Berkeley–Los Angeles–London, 1973).
- Magocsi, P. R., *Galicia: A Historical Survey and Bibliographic Guide* (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1983).
- , *A History of Ukraine* (Toronto–Buffalo–London, 1996).
- , *Historical Atlas of East Central Europe* (Seattle and London, 1998).
- Magomedov, M. G., *Образование хазарского каганата. По материалам археологических исследований и письменным данным* (Moscow, 1983).
- Makk, F., *A tizenkettedik század története* ([Budapest,] 2000).
- Makkai, L., "Erdély a középkori Magyar Királyságbam (896–1526)," in *Erdély története*, co-ord. B. Köpeczi, I, ed. L. Makkai, A. Mócsy (Budapest, 1986), pp. 235–408.
- Malamut, E., "L'image byzantine des Petchénègues," *BZ* 88 (1995), no. 1, pp. 105–147.
- , *Alexis Ier Comnène* (Paris, 2007).
- Maleon, B.-P., *Clerul de mir din Moldova secolelor XIV–XVI* (Iași, 2007).
- Malingoudis, Ph., "Die Nachrichten des Niketas Choniates über die Entstehung des Zweiten Bulgarischen Staates," *Byzantina* 10 (1980), pp. 51–147.



- Malyshev, V., "Половцы в Венгрии и Золотая Орда во второй половине XIII в.," in *Дешт-и-Кипчак и Золотая Орда в становлении культуры евразийских народов*, ed. D. M. Nasilov (Moscow, 2003), pp. 76–83.
- Manz, B. F., *The Rise and Rule of Tamerlan* (Cambridge, 1989).
- Marian, S. F., *Înmormântarea la români* (Bucharest, 1892).
- Marquart, J., *Osteuropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge* (Leipzig, 1903).
- , "Über das Volkstum der Komanen," in W. Bang and J. Marquart, "Osttürkische Dialektstudien," *Abhandlungen der Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Philologisch-Historische Klasse*, NF, 13 (1914), no. 1, pp. 25–238.
- Martin, J., *Treasure of the Land of Darkness. The Fur Trade and its Significance for Medieval Russia* (Cambridge, 1986).
- Martini, F., "Der Deutsche Ritterorden und seine Kolonisten im Burzenland," *Ungarn-Jahrbuch* 10 (1979), pp. 41–57.
- Martonne, Emm. de, *La Valachie. Essai de monographie géographique* (Paris, 1902).
- , *Europe centrale (Géographie universelle)*, co-ord. P. Vidal de la Blanche and L. Gallois, IV, 2) (Paris, 1931)
- Matei, Șt., Iambor, P., "Observații privind așezările fortificate din Transilvania în perioada feudalismului timpuriu," *Acta Musei Napocensis* 17 (1980), pp. 507–516.
- Matei, M. D., *Geneză și evoluție urbană în Moldova și Țara Românească până în secolul al XVII-lea* (Iași, 1997).
- Mathieu, M., "Les faux Diogènes," *Byzantion* 22 (1952), pp. 133–148.
- Mavrodin, V. V., *Образование древнерусского государства* (Leningrad, 1945).
- Mavrodina, R. M., *Киевская Русь и кочевники (печенег, торки, половцы)* (Leningrad, 1983).
- Mavrodinov, N., *Старобългарското изкуство. Изкуството на Първото българско царство* (Sofia, 1959).
- Mănucu-Adameșteanu, Gh., *Istoria Dobrogei în perioada 969–1204. Contribuții arheologice și numismatice* (Bucharest, 2001).
- , "Les invasions de Petchénègues au Bas Danube," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, IV, eds. E. Popescu and T. Teoteoi (Iași, 2001), pp. 87–112.
- , "Din nou despre atacul cumanilor din anul 1095 și încetarea locuirii de la Păciul lui Soare," in *Simposion de numismatică dedicat împlinirii a patru secole de la prima Unire a românilor sub Mihai Voievod Viteazul, Chișinău, 28–30 mai 2000*, gen. ed. E. Nicolae (Bucharest, 2001), pp. 109–120.
- Mărculeț, V., *Imperiul Bizantin la Dunărea de Jos în secolele X–XII. Spațiul carpato-balcanic și politica vest-pontică a Imperiului Bizantin* (Țârgu Mureș, 2005).
- , *Stăpânirea bizantină la Dunărea de Jos în secolele X–XII. Aspecte din istoria Themei Mesopotamia Apusului, a Strategatului de Dristra-Dorostolon și a Themei Paristrion-Paradunavon* (Mediaș, 2005).
- McGrath, S., "The battles of Dorostolon (971). Rhetoric and reality," in *Peace and War in Byzantium. Essays in Honor of George T. Dennis, S.J.*, eds. T. S. Miller and J. Nesbitt (Washington, D.C., 1995), pp. 152–164.
- Mehedinți, S., "Die rumänische Steppe. Eine anthropogeographische Skizze," in *Zu Friedrich Ratzels Gedächtnis. Geplant als Festschrift zum 60. Geburtstag nun als Grabspende dargebracht* (Leipzig, 1904), pp. 249–255.
- , "Deliormanul—o verigă între Carpați și Țărnul Mării Negre," *AD* 19 (1938), no. 2, pp. 226–239.
- , *Opere complete*, I, 1–2 (Bucharest, 1943).
- , *Le pays et le peuple roumain* (Bucharest, 1944).
- , *Opere alese*, ed. V. Mihăilescu (Bucharest, 1967).
- Mehedinți, S., Vâlsan, G., *România* (Bucharest, 1933).
- Menges, K. H., "Etymological notes on some Păcănäg names," *Byzantion* 17 (1944–1945), pp. 256–280.
- , *The Turkic Languages and Peoples. An Introduction to Turkic Studies* (Wiesbaden, 1968).

- Michailov, S., "Les figurations dites 'Kamennye baby' et leur survivance tardive dans le culte funéraire chez les Bulgares," *Bulgarian Historical Review* 17 (1988), no. 4, pp. 55–68.
- Mihăescu, H., *La romanité dans le sud-est de l'Europe* (Bucharest, 1993).
- Mihăilă, G., *Dicționar al limbii române vechi (sfârșitul sec. X–începutul sec. XVI)* (Bucharest, 1974).
- , "Les plus anciennes attestations des mots roumains autochtones (X<sup>e</sup> siècle—1520)," *Thraco-Dacica* 17 (1996), nos. 1–2, pp. 23–71.
- Mihăilescu, V., "Trebuie să recunoaștem trei tipuri de sat: satul adunat (sau concentrat), satul răsfirat și satul risipit?," *BSRRG* 45 (1926), pp. 106–110.
- , "O hartă a principalelor tipuri de așezări rurale din România," *BSRRG* 46 (1927), pp. 62–75.
- , *România. Geografie fizică* (Bucharest, 1936).
- , *Geografia fizică a României* (Bucharest, 1969).
- Mikecs, L., "Ursprung und Schicksal der Tschango-Ungarn," *Ungarische Jahrbücher* 23 (1943), pp. 247–280.
- Mikhailova, I. V., "Древняя Русь и Степь," in *Россия и степной мир Евразии*, ed. Iu. V. Krivosheev (St. Petersburg, 2006), pp. 7–128.
- Miklosich, F., *Die türkischen Elemente in der südost- und osteuropäischen Sprachen* (Vienna, 1888).
- Miller, W., "The rise and fall of the first Bulgarian Empire," in *The Cambridge Medieval History, IV, The Eastern Roman Empire (717–1453)* (Cambridge, 1936), pp. 230–245.
- Minorsky, V., *A History of Sharvan and Darband in the 10th–11th Centuries* (Cambridge, 1958).
- Mironescu, C. S., "Hotarul între Moldova și Muntenia," *Anuar de geografie și antropogeografie* 2 (1910–1911), pp. 87–123.
- Mitrea, I., "Regiunea centrală a Moldovei dintre Carpați și Siret în secolele VI–IX e.n.," *Carpica* 12 (1980), pp. 55–190.
- Mladenov, St., "Печенежи и узи-кумани в българската история," *Българска историческа библиотека* 4 (1931), no. 1, pp. 115–136.
- Mladjov, I., "Trans-Danubian Bulgaria: reality and fiction," *Byzantine Studies*, NS, 3 (1998), pp. 85–128.
- Moga, I., *Părerii istorice unguerești privitoare la românii din Transilvania medievală* (Sibiu, 1941).
- , *Les Roumains de Transylvanie au Moyen Âge* (Sibiu, 1944).
- Mogilianskii, N. K., *Материалы для географии и статистики Бессарабия* (Kishinev, 1913).
- Moisescu, Gh. I., *Catolicismul în Moldova până la sfârșitul veacului XIV* (Bucharest, 1942).
- Moldovanu, D. See *Tezaurul toponimic al României*.
- Mollova, M., "Nouveaux côtés dévoilés du *Codex Cumanicus*," *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 83 (1993), pp. 117–148.
- Monografia geografică a Republicii Populare Române, I, Geografia fizică*, ed. I. P. Gherasimov et al. (Bucharest, 1960).
- Morariu, T., Bogdan, A., Mihail, M., "High-zone settlements in the Romanian Carpathians," *Revue Roumaine de Géologie, Géophysique et Géographie, Serie de géographie* 12 (1968), nos. 1–2, pp. 155–161.
- Moravcsik, G., *Byzantinoturcica, I, Die byzantinischen Quellen der Geschichte der Türkvölker, II, Sprachreste der Türkvölker in der byzantinischen Quellen*; 2nd ed. (Berlin, 1958).
- Motogna, V., *Articole și documente. Contribuții la istoria românilor din v. XIII–XVI* (Cluj, 1923).
- Muntean, V. V., "Les relations byzantino-roumaines au Moyen-Age. Nouvelles précisions," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines, IV*, eds. E. Popescu and T. Teoteoi (Iași, 2001), pp. 167–180.
- , *Bizanțul și românii. Cercetare comparativă privind organizarea mănăștirilor* (Iași, 2005).

- Murgulia, N.-M. P., "The Byzantine Empire and centripetal tendencies in Rus in the 12th century," in *Actes du XV<sup>e</sup> Congrès international d'études byzantines, Athènes—septembre 1976*, IV, *Histoire, Communications* (Athens, 1980), pp. 259–267.
- Murguliia, M. P., Shusharin, V. P., *Половцы, Грузия, Русь и Венгрия в XII–XIII веках* (Moscow, 1998).
- Musteață, S., *Populația spațiului pruto-nistean în secolele VIII–IX* (Chișinău, 2005).
- , "Răspândirea monedei islamice timpurii la nordul Dunării de Jos în secolele VIII–X," in *Monedă și comerț în sud-estul Europei/Coin and Commerce in the South-East of Europe*, gen. ed. C. Munteanu (Sibiu, 2007), pp. 165–182.
- Mutafchiev, P., *История на българския народ (681–1323)*, ed. V. Gjuzev (Sofia, 1986).
- Mys'kov, E. P., "Рассказ о Бачмане," *Нижневолжский археологический вестник* 3 (2000), pp. 238–239.
- Nadezhdin, N., "О местоположении древняго города Пересечена, принадлежавшаго народу угличамъ," *ՀՊՕ* 1 (1844), pp. 235–256.
- Nägler, Th., "Zum Gebrauch des Ausdrucks 'terra deserta' in cinigen Urkunden des 12.–13. Jahrhunderts," *Studii și comunicări, Arheologie-istorie (Muzeul Brukenthal)* 18 (1974), pp. 51–60.
- , *Die Ansiedlung der Siebenbürger Sachsen* (Bucharest, 1979).
- Nagrodzka-Majchrzyk, T., *Geneza miast u dawnych ludów tureckich (VII–XII w.)* (Wrocław–Warsaw–Cracow–Gdańsk, 1978).
- , *Czarni Klobucz* (Warsaw, 1985).
- , "Les Torks-Ogouzes en Russie de Moyen-Âge," in *IX. Türk Tarih Kongresi, Ankara: 21–25 Eylül 1981, Kongreye Sunulan Bildiriler*, II (Ankara, 1988), pp. 596–599.
- Nazmi, A., *Commercial Relations between Arabs and Slavs (9th–11th Centuries)* (Warsaw, 1998).
- Năstase, Gh. I., "Industria sării marine din Bugeac," *BSRRG* 59 (1942), pp. 266–272.
- Năsturel, P. Ș., "Valaques, Coumans et Byzantins sous le règne de Manuel Comnène," *Byzantina* 1 (1969), pp. 167–186.
- , "À propos du Tenou Ormon (Teleorman) de Kinnamos," in *Geographica Byzantina*, ed. H. Ahrweiler (Paris, 1981), pp. 81–91.
- , "Le christianisme roumain à l'époque des invasions barbares," *BBR* 11 (15, SN) (1984), pp. 217–266.
- , "Mais où donc localiser Vicina?," *Byzantinische Forschungen* 12 (1987), pp. 159–164.
- , "Axiopolis sous les Comnènes. Une relecture de Kinnamos (III 3)," in *Prinos lui Petre Diaconu la 80 de ani*, eds. I. Căndea, V. Sîrbu, M. Neagu (Brăila, 2004), pp. 521–534.
- , "Qui sont les 'Togtocomans?'," in *Enjeux politiques, économiques et militaires en mer Noire (XIV<sup>e</sup>–XXI<sup>e</sup> siècles). Études à la mémoire de Mihail Guboglu*, eds. F. Bilici, I. Căndea, A. Popescu (Brăila, 2007), pp. 105–107.
- Neamțu, V., "Exploatarea peștelui în Moldova în secolul al XV-lea," *Studii și cercetări științifice, Istorie*, Iași, 6 (1955), nos. 1–2, pp. 29–49.
- , *La technique de la production céréalière en Valachie et en Moldavie jusqu'au XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Bucharest, 1975).
- Neçulescu, C., "Ipoteza formațiunilor politice române la Dunăre în sec. XI," *RIR* 7 (1937), nos. 1–2, pp. 122–151.
- , "Năvălirea uzilor prin Țările Române în Imperiul bizantin," *RIR* 9 (1939), pp. 185–206.
- Németh, J., "Die petschenegischen Stammesnamen," *Ungarische Jahrbücher* 10 (1930), p. 27–34.
- , *Die Inschriften des Schatzes von Nagy-Szent-Miklós* (Budapest, 1932).
- , *La question de l'origine des Sicules* (offprint from *AECO* 6, 1940, nos. 1–4) (Budapest, 1941).

- Nestor, I., "Formarea poporului român," in *Istoria poporului român*, ed. A. Oțetea (Bucharest, 1970), pp. 91–113.
- Nicol, D. M., *The Last Centuries of Byzantium, 1261–1453*, 2nd ed. (Cambridge, 1993).
- Nicu, V., *Localitățile Moldovei în documente și cărți vechi. Îndreptar bibliografic*, I, II (Chișinău, 1991).
- Niederle, L., *Manuel de l'antiquité slave*, I, *L'histoire* (Paris, 1923).
- Nikiforov, M. A., "К вопросу о характере русско-византийских отношений при императоре Никифоре II Фоке," *Материалы по археологии, истории и этнографии Таврии* 10 (2003), pp. 441–451.
- Nistor, I. I., *Problema ucrainiană în lumina istoriei* (Cernăuți, 1934).
- Nomaden und ihre Umwelt im Wandel*, ed. E. Baum (Witzenhausen, 1989).
- The Nomadic Alternative. Modes and Models of Interaction in the African-Asian Deserts and Steppes*, ed. W. Weissleder (The Hague–Paris, 1979).
- Nomadismus als Entwicklungsproblem* (Bielefeld, 1969).
- Noonan, T. S., "Why dirhams first reached Russia: the role of Arab-Khazar relations in the development of the earliest Islamic trade with Eastern Europe," *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 151–282.
- , "Khazaria as an intermediary between Islam and Eastern Europe in the second half of the ninth century: the numismatic perspective," *AEMA* 5 (1985), pp. 179–204.
- , "Rus', Pechenegs, and Polovtsy: Economic interaction along the steppe frontier in the Pre-Mongol era," *Russian History* 19 (1992), nos. 1–4, pp. 301–327.
- , "Viking-age dirham hoards from Eastern and Northern Europe," in *A Survey of Numismatic Research 1990–1995*, gen. eds. C. Morrisson, B. Kluge (Berlin, 1997), pp. 751–759.
- I Normanni e la loro espansione in Europa nell'Alto Medioevo* (Spoleto, 1969).
- Novosel'tsev, A. P., *Хазарское государство и его роль в истории Восточной Европы и Кавказа* (Moscow, 1990).
- Nudelman, A. A., *Очерки истории монетного обращения в Днестровско-Прутском регионе* (Kishinev, 1985).
- Oberländer-Târnoveanu, E., "Documente numismatice privind relațiile spațiului est-carpatic cu zona Gurilor Dunării în secolele XIII–XIV," *AIA* 22 (1985), no. 2, pp. 585–590.
- , "Numismatic and historical remarks on the Byzantine coin hoards from the 12th century at the Lower Danube," *RESEE* 30 (1992), nos. 1–2, pp. 41–60.
- , "Începuturile prezenței tătarilor în zona Gurilor Dunării în lumina documentelor numismatice," in *Originea tătarilor. Locul lor în România și în lumea turcă*, ed. T. Gemil (Bucharest, 1997), pp. 93–128.
- , "Les hyperpères de type Jean III Vatatzès—classification, chronologie et évolution du titre (à la lumière du trésor d'Uzun Bair, dép. de Tulcea)," in *Istro-Pontica. Muzeul tulcean la a 50-a aniversare, 1950–2000, Omagiu lui Simion Gavrilă la 45 de ani de activitate, 1955–2000*, eds. M. Iacob, E. Oberländer-Târnoveanu, F. Topoleanu (Tulcea, 2000), pp. 499–562.
- , "Societate, economic și politică—Populațiile de pe teritoriul Moldovei și lumea sud-est europeană în secolele IV–XIV în lumina descoperirilor monetare," *Suceava. Anuarul Muzeului Național al Bucovinei* 26–27–28 (1999–2000–2001), pp. 311–355.
- , "Moneda bizantină și de tip bizantin pe teritoriul de la sud de Carpați în secolele XII–XIII—o analiză critică a documentelor numismatice," *Mousaios* 7 (2001), pp. 337–391.
- Obreja, Al., "Asupra hidronimelor Bahlui și Jijia," *ASUI*, Sect. II, c. *Geografie* 18 (1972), pp. 41–45.
- Ohnsorge, W., *Abendland und Byzanz. Gesammelte Aufsätze zur Geschichte der byzantinisch-abendländischen Beziehungen und des Kaisertums* (Darmstadt, 1979).
- Öhrig, B., *Bestattungsriten alttürkischer Aristokratie im Lichte der Inschriften* (Munich, 1988).

- Oikonomidès, N. A., "Recherches sur l'histoire du Bas-Danube aux X<sup>e</sup>-XI<sup>e</sup> siècles: la Mésopotamie de l'Occident," *RESEE* 3 (1965), nos. 1-2, pp. 57-79.
- , "À propos de la première occupation byzantine de la Bulgarie (971-ca 986)," in *Ευφροσύνα. Mélanges offerts à Hélène Ahrweiler*, II (Paris, 1998), pp. 581-589.
- Olteanu, Șt., "Agricultura la est și la sud de Carpați în sec. IX-XIV (I)," *Muzeul Național* 1 (1974), pp. 35-55.
- , *Societatea românească la cumpănă de milenii (secolele VIII-XI)* (Bucharest, 1983).
- Olteanu, Șt., Cazacu, V., "Condițiile economice și social-politice ale dezvoltării științei și tehnicii medievale," in *Istoria gândirii și creației științifice și tehnice românești*, I, ed. Șt. Pascu (Bucharest, 1982), p. 265-340.
- Onciul, D., "Originile Principatelor Române," in idem, *Scrieri istorice*, I, ed. A. Sacerdoțeanu (Bucharest, 1968), pp. 560-715.
- , "Teoria lui Roesler," in idem, *Scrieri istorice*, I, ed. A. Sacerdoțeanu (Bucharest, 1968), pp. 131-260.
- Ortiz, R., *Manualetto rumeno* (Bucharest, 1936).
- Ostrogorskiĭ, G., *Quelques problèmes d'histoire de la paysannerie byzantine* (Brussels, 1956).
- , *Geschichte des byzantinischen Staates*, 3rd ed. (Munich, 1963).
- Ostrowski, D., *Muscovy and the Mongols. Cross-Cultural Influences on the Steppe Frontier, 1304-1589* (Cambridge, 1998).
- Oța, S., "Domenii ale pecenegilor și cumanilor în Banatul istoric," *Studii de istorie a Banatului* 26-27 (2002-2003), pp. 219-239.
- , "Populații nomade de stepă din Banat (secolele XI-XIV), I. Pecenegii și cumanii," in *Prinos lui Petre Diaconu la 80 de ani*, eds. I. Cândea, V. Sîrbu, M. Neagu (Brăila, 2004), pp. 489-520.
- Pálóczi-Horváth, A., "Situation des recherches archéologiques sur les Comans en Hongrie," *AOH* 27 (1973), no. 2, pp. 201-209.
- , *Besenyők, kunok, jászok* (Budapest, 1989).
- , *Petchenegen, Kumanen, Jassen. Steppenwölker im mittelalterlichen Ungarn* (Budapest, 1989).
- , *Hagyományok, kapcsolatok és hatások a kunok régészeti kultúrájában* (Karcag, 1994).
- Panaitescu, P. P., *Interpretări românești* (Bucharest, 1947).
- , *Obșteța țărănească în Țara Românească și Moldova. Orînduirea feudală* (Bucharest, 1964).
- , "Din nou despre Diploma birlădeană din 1134," *Romanoslavica* 13 (1966), pp. 85-91.
- , *Introducere în istoria culturii românești* (Bucharest, 1969).
- , See also: Grecu, A.
- Pandrea, A., *Pecenegii și cumanii din Țara Loviștei* (Aalborg, 1994).
- Panic, I., *Początki Węgier. Polityczne aspekty formowania się państwa i społeczeństwa węgierskiego w końcu IX i w pierwszej połowie X wieku* (Cieszyn, 1995).
- Papacostea, Ș., "Les Roumains et la conscience de leur romanité au moyen-âge," *RRH* 4 (1965), no. 1, pp. 15-24.
- , "Înfruntări politice și spirituale în sud-estul Europei: 1204-1241 (II)," *AII* 27 (1990), pp. 23-50.
- , *Românii în secolul al XIII-lea între cruciată și Imperiul mongol* (Bucharest, 1993).
- Papadopol Calimach, Al., *Notiță istorică despre Bârlad* (Bârlad, 1889).
- Paragină, A., *Habitatul medieval la Curbura exterioră a Carpaților în secolele X-XV* (Brăila, 2002).
- Parzinger, H., *Die frühen Völker Eurasiens. Vom Neolithikum bis zum Mittelalter* (Munich, 2006).
- Pascu, Șt., *Voievodatul Transilvaniei*, I (Cluj, 1971); II (Cluj-Napoca, 1979).
- , *A History of Transylvania*, trans. R. Ladd (Detroit, 1982).
- Pashuto, V. T., "Половецкое епископство," in *Ost und West in der Geschichte des Denkens und der kulturellen Beziehungen. Festschrift für Eduard Winter zum 70. Geburtstag*, eds. W. Steinitz, P. N. Berkov, B. Suchodolski, and J. Dolanský (Berlin, 1966), pp. 33-40.

- , *Внешняя политика Древней Руси* (Moscow, 1968).
- Paszkwicz, H., *The Origin of Russia* (New York, 1969).
- Pașca, Șt., *Nume de persoane și nume de animale în Țara Oltului* (Bucharest, 1936).
- Patlagean, É., *Un Moyen Âge grec. Byzance IX<sup>e</sup>–XV<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Paris, 2007).
- Pavlov, P., “По въпроса за заселванията на кумани в България през XIII в.,” *Доклади*, 6, *Българските земи в древността. България през средновековието* (Sofia, 1987), pp. 629–637.
- , “Средновековна България и куманите. Военнополитически отношения (1186–1241 г.),” *Трудове на Великотърновския Университет “Св. Св. Кирил и Методий,” Исторически Факултет* 27 (1989) [1992], no. 3, pp. 1–61.
- Păcurariu, M., *Istoria Bisericii ortodoxe române*, 1 (Bucharest, 1980).
- Pădurile României*, ed. C. Chiriță (Bucharest, 1981).
- Pătruș, I., *Nume de persoane și nume de locuri românești* (Bucharest, 1984).
- Peacock, A. C. S., “The Saljūq campaign against the Crimea and the expansionist policy of the early reign of ‘Alā’ al-Dīn Kayqubād,” *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 3rd Ser., 16 (2006), no. 2, pp. 133–149.
- Pelliot, P., “À propos des Coumans,” *Journal Asiatique*, Ser. 11, 15 (1920), no. 2, pp. 125–185.
- , *Notes sur l’histoire de la Horde d’Or* (Paris, 1949).
- Perkhavko, V. V., *Связи Древней Руси со славянскими странами* (История, 4) (Moscow, 1987).
- , “Russia’s trade with Byzantium’s Danubian provinces in the eleventh–twelfth centuries,” in *Acts XVIIIth International Congress of Byzantine Studies, Selected Papers: Main and Communications, Moscow, 1991*, II, eds. I. Ševčenko and G. G. Litavrin, corresponding ed. W. K. Hanak (Shepherdstown, WV, 1996), pp. 13–18.
- , “Князь Иван Берладник на Нижнем Дунае,” in *Восточная Европа в древности и средневековье. Политическая структура древнерусско государства* (Moscow, 1996), pp. 70–75.
- Perlbach, M., “Der Deutsche Orden in Siebenbürgen,” *Mitteilungen des Instituts für Österreichische Geschichtsforschung* 26 (1905), pp. 415–430.
- Perpillou, A. V., *Human Geography*, trans. E. D. Laborde (London, 1966).
- Petrașcu, N. N., Bezviconi, G. G., *Relațiile ruso-române* (Bucharest, 1945).
- Petrov, P., *Възстановяване на българската държава 1185–1197* (Sofia, 1985).
- Petrovici, E., *Studii de dialectologie și toponimie* (Bucharest, 1970).
- Petrukhin, V. Ia., *Начало этнокультурной истории Руси IX–XI веков* (Smolensk, 1995).
- Petrukhin, V., “Les villes (*gardar*) sur la ‘Voie des Varègues aux Grecs,’” in *Les centres proto-urbains russes entre Scandinavie, Byzance et Orient*, eds. M. Kazansky, A. Nercessian, and C. Zuckerman (Paris, 2000), pp. 357–364.
- Petrushevich, A. S., *Кто были Болоховские князья?* (offprint of *Слово*, 94–95) (Lwów, 1877).
- Pfeiffer, N., *Die ungarische Dominikanerordensprovinz von ihre Gründung 1221 bis zur Tatarenverwüstung 1241–1242* (Zurich, 1913).
- Philippide, Al., *Originea românilor* (Iași), I (1923); II (1927).
- Phillips, E. D., *Les nomades de la steppe*, trans. A. Zundel-Bernard (Paris–Bruxelles, 1966).
- Phillips, J., *The Fourth Crusade and the Sack of Constantinople* (London, 2004).
- Pič, J. L., Amlacher, A., “Die Dacischen Slaven und Csergeder Bulgaren,” *Sitzungsberichte der königl. böhmischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, Phil.-histor.-philolog. Classe* (1888), pp. 227–280.
- Pillon, M., “L’exode des ‘Sermésiens’ et les grandes migrations des Romains de Pannonie dans les Balkans durant le Haut Moyen Âge,” *Études balkaniques* (2002), no. 3, pp. 103–141.
- Pinna, M., “Il clima nell’alto medioevo. Conoscenze attuali e prospettive di ricerca,” in *L’ambiente vegetale nell’alto medioevo* (Settimane di Studio del Centro Italiano di Studi sull’Alto Medioevo, XXXVII) (Spoleto, 1990), pp. 431–451.

- Pintescu, F., "Presences de l'element viking dans l'espace de la romanité orientale en contexte méditerranéen," *Studia Antiqua et Archaeologica* 8 (2002), pp. 257–272.
- Pirivatrić, S., "Between the East and the West. The Bulgarian Church in the time of Samuil (cca. 971–1018). Facts and interpretations," in *Средновековна християнска Европа: Изток и Запад. Ценности, традиции, общуване/Medieval Christian Europe: East and West. Tradition, Values, Communications*, eds. V. Gjuzelev, A. Miltenova ([Sofia,] 2002), pp. 499–508.
- Pivovarov, S., *Християнські старожитності в межиріччі Верхнього Пруту та Середнього Дністра* (Chernivtsi, 2001).
- Pleșca, V., "Locuința medievală timpurie la est de Carpați," in *Studii de istorie veche și medievală. Omagiu Profesorului Gheorghe Postică*, eds. T. Arnăutu, O. Munteanu, S. Musteață (Chișinău, 2004), pp. 187–191.
- Pletneva, S. A., "Печенеги, торки и половцы в южнорусских степях," in *МИА*, 62 (Moscow–Leningrad, 1958), pp. 151–226.
- , *От кочевий к городам. Салтово-Маяцкая культура (МИА, 142)* (Moscow, 1967).
- , "Половецкая земля," in *Древнерусские княжества X–XIII вв.*, eds. L. G. Beskrovnyi (gen. ed.), V. A. Kuchkin, V. T. Pashuto (Moscow, 1975), pp. 260–300.
- , *Кочевники средневековья* (Moscow, 1982).
- , *Хазары*, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 1986). See also: Pletnjowa, S. A.
- , *Половцы* (Moscow, 1990).
- , *Очерки хазарской археологии*, ed. V. Ia. Petrukhin (Moscow–Jerusalem, 1999).
- , *Кочевники южнорусских степей в эпоху средневековья IV–XIII века. Усобное пособие* (Voronezh, 2003).
- , *Древнерусский город в кочевой степи (опыт историко-стратиграфического исследования)* (Simferopol, 2006).
- Pletnjowa, S. A., *Die Chasaren. Mittelalterliches Reich an Donau und Wolga*, trans. A. Häusler (Vienna, 1979).
- Poboran, G., "Cumanii-Comani," *Arhivele Olteniei* 2 (1923), no. 5, pp. 17–21.
- Poghirc, P., *Satul din Colinele Tutovei* (Bucharest, 1972).
- Pohl, W., *Die Avaren. Ein Steppenvolk in Mitteleuropa 567–822 n. Chr.* (Munich, 1988).
- Polevoi, L. L., *Очерки исторической географии Молдавии XIII–XV вв.* (Kishinev, 1979).
- , *Раннефеодальная Молдавия* (Kishinev, 1985).
- Polonska-Vasylenko, N., *Geschichte der Ukraine. Von den Anfängen bis 1923*, trans. R. Szuper (Munich, 1988).
- Pop, D., *Obiceiuri agrare în tradiția populară românească* (Cluj–Napoca, 1989).
- Pop, E., *Pădurile și destinul nostru național* (offprint from *Buletinul Comisiunii Monumentelor Naturii* 9, 1941, nos. 1–4) (Bucharest, 1942).
- Pop, I. A., "Statutul social-economic al cnezilor din Țările Române în secolele XIV–XV (I)," *AIIA* 25 (1988), no. 1, pp. 13–25.
- , *Instituții medievale românești. Adunările cneziale și nobiliare (boierești) din Transilvania în secolele XIV–XVI* (Cluj–Napoca, 1991).
- , *Românii și maghiarii în secolele IX–XIV. Geneza statului medieval în Transilvania* (Cluj–Napoca, 1996).
- , *Istoria Transilvaniei medievale de la etnogeneza românilor până la Mihai Viteazul* (Cluj–Napoca, 1997).
- Popa, R., *La începuturile evului mediu românesc. Țara Hațegului* (Bucharest, 1988).
- Popa-Lisseanu, G., *Continuitatea românilor în Dacia. Dovezi nouă* (offprint from *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 23, no. 9) (Bucharest, 1941).
- Popescu, Al., *Tradiții de muncă românești în obiceiuri, folclor, artă populară* (Bucharest, 1986).

- Popescu, E., “Știri noi despre istoria Dobrogei în secolul al XI-lea: Episcopia de Axiopolis,” in *Monumente istorice și izvoare creștine*, ed. A. Nica (Galați, 1987), pp. 125–147.
- , *Christianitas Daco-Romana* (Bucharest, 1994).
- Popescu-Spineni, M., *România în izvoare geografice și cartografice* (Bucharest, 1978).
- Popp, M. N., “Urme românești în viața pastorală a Carpaților polonezi,” *BSRRG* 54 (1935), pp. 210–223.
- Porucic, T., *Lacurile sărate din sudul Basarabiei* (Bucharest, 1924).
- Postică, Gh., “Evoluția așezărilor din spațiul pruto-nistrean în epoca migrațiilor (sec. V–XIII),” *Thraco-Dacica* 20 (1999), nos. 1–2, pp. 329–364.
- , “Agricultura medievală timpurie în spațiul Pruto-Nistrean,” in *Studia in honorem Ion Niculiță. Omagiu cu prilejul împlinirii a 60 de ani*, eds. T. Arnăuț, A. Zanoci, S. Matveev (Chișinău, 1999), pp. 268–279.
- , “Spațiul pruto-nistrean și vechile cnezate rusești în secolele X–XII,” in *Civilizația medievală și modernă în Moldova. In honorem Demir Dragnev*, ed. L. Zabolotnâi (Chișinău, 2006), p. 216–228.
- Postică, Gh., *Civilizația medievală timpurie din spațiul pruto-nistrean (secolele V–XIII)* (Bucharest, 2007).
- , “Obști sătești și formațiuni teritoriale românești din perioada medievală timpurie în spațiul pruto-nistrean,” *Destin românesc*, SN, 2 (13) (2007), nos. 1–2 (49–50), pp. 188–214.
- Pozsony, F., *Ceangăii din Moldova* (Cluj–Napoca, 2002).
- Praoveanu, I., *Etnografia poporului român* (Pitești–Brașov–Bucharest–Cluj–Napoca, 2001).
- Preda, C., “Circulația monedelor bizantine în regiunea carpato-dunăreană,” *SCIV* 23 (1972), no. 3, pp. 375–415.
- , “The Byzantine coins—an expression of the relations between the Empire and the populations north of the Danube in the 6th–13th centuries,” in *Relations*, pp. 219–233.
- Primov, B., “Crearea celui de-al doilea țarat bulgar și participarea vlahilor,” in *Relații româno-bulgare de-a lungul veacurilor (sec. XII–XIX). Studii*, I (Bucharest, 1971), pp. 9–56.
- Prinzang, G., *Die Bedeutung Bulgariens und Serbiens in den Jahren 1204–1219 im Zusammenhang mit der Entstehung und Entwicklung der byzantinischen Teilstaaten nach der Einnahme Konstantinopels infolge des 4. Kreuzzuges* (Munich, 1972).
- , “Demetrius-Kirche und Aseniden-Aufstand. Zur chronologischen Präzisierung der Frühphase des Aseniden-Aufstandes,” *Зборник радова Византолошког института* 38 (1999/2000), pp. 257–265.
- Pritsak, O., “The decline of the Empire of the Oghuz Yabghu,” *The Annals of the Ukrainian Academy of Arts and Sciences in the U.S.* 2 (1952), pp. 279–292.
- , “Das Kiptschakische,” in *Philologiae Turcicae fundamenta*, I, eds. J. Deny, K. Grønbech, H. Scheel, Z. V. Togan (Wiesbaden, 1959), pp. 74–87.
- , “Печеніги,” *Український історик* 7 (1970), nos. 1–3 (25–27), pp. 95–101.
- , “Половці,” *Український історик* 10 (1973), nos. 1–2 (37–38), pp. 112–118.
- , “The Pečenegs,” *AEMA* 1 (1975), pp. 4–29.
- , *Studies in Medieval Eurasian History* (Variorum Reprints) (London, 1981).
- , *The Origin of Rus’, I, Old Scandinavian Sources other than the Sagas* (Cambridge, Mass., 1981).
- , “The Polovcians and Rus’,” *AEMA* 2 (1982), pp. 321–380.
- Pușcariu, S., *Cercetări și studii*, ed. I. Dan (Bucharest, 1974).
- , *Die rumänische Sprache*, trans. H. Kuen (Bucharest, 1997).
- Rabinovich, R. A., “Призрачная Берладь. О достоверности одной фальсификации,” *Stratum plus* (1999), no. 5, pp. 357–378.
- , “Диржемы на территории Молдовы: культурно исторический контекст,” *Stratum plus* (1999), no. 6, pp. 263–275.



- , “Искушение ‘волошским орехом’ или Балканские волохи и русские волхвы,” *Stratum plus* (2000), no. 5, pp. 262–390.
- Raschellà, F. D., “Presenze scandinave nell’Europa orientale durante il medioevo,” *Medioevo e Rinascimento* 15/n.s. 12 (2001), pp. 1–17.
- Rásonyi-Nagy, L. See also: Rásonyi, L.
- , “Valacho-turcica,” in *Aus den Forschungsarbeiten der Mitglieder des Ungarischen Instituts und des Collegium Hungaricum in Berlin dem Andenken Robert Graggers gewidmet* (Berlin–Leipzig, 1927), pp. 68–96.
- Rásonyi, L., “Contributions à l’histoire des premières cristalisations d’État des Roumains. L’origine des Basaraba,” *AECO* 1 (1935), nos. 1–4, pp. 243–253.
- , *Tarihte Türklük* (Ankara, 1971).
- , “Bulaqs and Oguzs in mediaeval Transylvania,” *AOH* 33 (1979), no. 2, pp. 129–143.
- , *Hidak a Dunán. A régi török népek a Dunánál* (Budapest, 1981).
- , “Turcs Non-islamisés en Occident (Péchéncégues, Ouzes et Qjptschaqs et leurs rapports avec les Hongrois),” in *History of the Turkic Peoples in the Pre-Islamic Period/ Histoire des Peuples Turcs à l’Époque Pré-Islamique*, ed. H. R. Roemer, with the assist. of W.-E. Scharlipp (Berlin, 2000), pp. 303–331.
- Rassovsky, D., “Печенеги, торки и берендеи на Руси и въ Угрии,” *SK* 6 (1933), pp. 1–66.
- , “Половцы,” *SK* 7 (1935), pp. 245–262; 8 (1936), pp. 161–182; 9 (1937), pp. 71–85; 10 (1938), pp. 155–178; 11 (1940), pp. 95–128.
- , “Роль половцевъ въ войнахъ Асенеи съ Византійской и Латинской имперіями въ 1186–1207 годахъ,” *Списание на Българската Академия на Науките* (Sofia, 1939), pp. 203–211.
- Ratzel, F., *Anthropogeographie*, I, *Grundzüge der Anwendung der Erdkunde auf die Geschichte*, 4th ed. (Stuttgart, 1921); II, *Die geographische Verbreitung des Menschen*, 3rd ed. (Stuttgart, 1922).
- , *Politische Geographie*, 3rd ed. E. Oberhammer (Munich–Berlin, 1923).
- Rădulescu, N. A., *Vrancea. Geografie fizică și umană* (Bucharest, 1937).
- Răscăoala și statul Asăneștilor, ed. E. Stănescu (Bucharest, 1989).
- Râmneanțu, P., *Die Abstammung der Tschangos* (Sibiu, 1944).
- Relations between the Autochthonous Population and the Migratory Populations on the Territory of Romania*, eds. M. Constantinescu, Șt. Pascu, and P. Diaconu (Bucharest, 1975).
- Relații interetnice în Transilvania. Secolele VI–XIII*, eds. Z. K. Pinter, I. M. Țiplic, M. E. Țiplic (Bucharest, 2005).
- Reli, S., *Istoria vieții bisericești a românilor*, I (Cernăuți, 1942).
- Renzi, L., “Ancora sugli umanisti italiani e la lingua rumena,” *Romanische Forschungen* 112 (2000), no. 1, pp. 1–38.
- Richard, J., *La papauté et les missions d’Orient au Moyen Age (XIII–XV<sup>e</sup> siècles)* (Rome, 1977).
- Rikman, E. A., *Художественные сокровища древней Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969).
- Riley-Smith, J., *The First Crusaders, 1095–1131* (Cambridge, 1997).
- Rochow, I., Matschke, K.-P., “Neues zu den Zigeunern im byzantinischen Reich um die Wende vom 13. zum 14. Jahrhundert,” *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 41 (1991), pp. 241–254.
- Rodrigues, D. M. U., *Nômadas e sedentários na Ásia Central. Continuidade e descontinuidade no processo civilizatório* (Porto, 1999).
- Roesdahl, E., *The Vikings*, trans. S. M. Margeson and K. Williams (London–New York–Victoria–Toronto–Auckland, 1992).
- Roesler, R., *Romänische Studien. Untersuchungen zur älteren Geschichte Romäniens* (Leipzig, 1871).
- Roman, L., Vergatti, R. Șt., *Studii de demografie istorică românească* (Bucharest, 2002).
- Romania. Space, Society, Environment*, eds. D. Bălțeanu (co-ord.), L. Badea, M. Buza, Gh. Niculescu, C. Popescu, M. Dumitrașcu (Bucharest, 2006).

- Romashov, S. A., "The Pechenegs in Europe in the 9–10th centuries," *Rocznik Orientalistyczny* 52 (1999), no. 1, pp. 21–35.
- , "Историческая география Хазарского каганата (V–XIII вв.)," *АЕМА* 11 (2000–2001), pp. 219–338; 12 (2002–2003), pp. 81–221; 13 (2004), pp. 185–264; 14 (2005), pp. 107–196.
- Róna-Tas, A., "Turkic writing systems," in *The Turkic Languages*, eds. L. Johanson and É. Á. Csató (London and New York, 1998), pp. 126–137.
- , *Hungarian and Europe in the Early Middle Age. An Introduction to Early Hungarian History*, trans. N. Bodoczky (Budapest, 1999).
- , "The inscriptions of the Nagyszentmiklós treasure," in *The Gold of the Avars. The Nagyszentmiklós Treasure*, gen. ed. T. Kovács, ed. E. Garam (Budapest, 2002), pp. 120–129.
- , "Хазары и мадьяры," in *Хазары/Khazars (Евреи и славяне/Jews and Slavs, 16)*, eds. V. Petrukhin, W. Moskovich, A. Fedorchuk, A. Kulik, D. Shapira (Moscow–Jerusalem, 2005), pp. 111–124.
- Rosetti, Al., *Istoria limbii române*, III, 4th ed. (Bucharest, 1962).
- Rosetti, R., "Despre unguri și episcopii catolice din Moldova," *AARMSI*, Ser. II, 27 (1904–1905), pp. 247–322.
- , *Pământul, sătenii și stăpînii în Moldova, I, De la origini până la 1834* (Bucharest, 1907).
- Roșu, Al., *Geografia fizică a României*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1980).
- Rosu, Al., Ungureanu, I., *Geografia mediului înconjurător* (Bucharest, 1977).
- Roux, J.-P., *La mort chez les peuples altaïques anciens et médiévaux d'après les documents écrits* (Paris, 1963).
- , *La religion des Turcs et des Mongols* (Paris, 1984).
- , *Histoire des Turcs. Deux mille ans du Pacifique à la Méditerranée* (Paris, 1984).
- , "La religion des peuples de la steppe," in *Popoli delle steppe: Unni, Avari, Ungari* (Settimane di studio del Centro Italiano di Studi sull'Alto Medioevo, XXXV), II (Spoleto, 1988), pp. 513–532.
- Ruffini, M., *Aspetti della cultura religiosa ortodossa romana medievale (Secoli XIV–XVIII)* (Rome, 1980).
- Ruotsala, A., *Europeans and Mongols in the Middle of the Thirteenth Century. Encountering the Other* (Helsinki, 2001).
- Russev, N. D., "Славяне, болгары и болгарское государство," in N. Tel'nov, V. Stepanov, N. Russev, R. Rabinovich, *И... разошлись славяне по земле? Из истории Карпато-Днестровских земель VI–XIII вв.* (Kishinev, 2002), pp. 67–131.
- Russisches geographisches Namenbuch*, begründet von Max Vasmer, IV, co-ord. H. Bräuer, eds. I. Coper, I. Doerfer, J. Prinz, G. V. Schulz and R. Siegmann (Wiesbaden, 1969).
- Russu, I. I., *Etnogeneza românilor* (Bucharest, 1981).
- , *Les Roumains et les Sicules*, ed. I. Opreș, trans. A. R. Tomoiagă (Cluj–Napoca, 1998).
- Rusu, A. A., *Castelarea carpatică. Fortificații și cetăți din Transilvania și teritoriile învecinate (sec. XIII–XIV)* (Cluj–Napoca, 2005).
- Rusu, M., "Note asupra relațiilor culturale dintre slavi și populația romanică din Transilvania (sec. VI–X)," *Apulum* 9 (1971), pp. 713–730.
- , "Castrum, urbs, civitas (Cetăți și 'orașe' transilvănene din sec. IX–XIII)," *Acta Musei Napocensis* 8 (1971), pp. 197–203.
- Ruzé, A., *Ucrainiens et Roumains (XI–XX<sup>e</sup> siècle). Rivalités carpatho-pontiques* (Paris–Montréal, 1999).
- Rybakov, V. A., "Уличи," *КС* 35 (1950), pp. 3–17.
- , "Русские земли по карте Идриси 1154 года," *КС* 43 (1952), pp. 3–44.
- , "Древние русы," *СА* 17 (1953), pp. 23–104.
- , "Киевская Русь," in *История СССР с древнейших времен до наших дней*, Первая серия, I, eds. S. A. Pletneva, V. A. Rybakov (Moscow, 1966), pp. 476–572.

- Rydzewskaia, E. A., *Древняя Русь и Скандинавия IX–XIV вв.* (Moscow, 1978).
- Sacerdoțeanu, A., “Guillaume de Rubrouck et les Roumains au milieu du XIII<sup>e</sup> siècle,” *Mélanges de l’École Roumaine en France* (1929), no. 2, pp. 159–335.
- , *Considerații asupra istoriei românilor în evul mediu* (Bucharest, 1936).
- Šafařík, P. J., *Slovanské starožitnosti*, II (Prague, 1863).
- Sakharov, A. N., “The ‘diplomatic recognition’ of Ancient Rus (860 A.D.),” *Soviet Studies in History* 17 (1979), no. 4, pp. 36–98.
- , *Дипломатия Святослава*, 2nd ed. (Moscow, 1991).
- Sala, M., *De la latină la română* (Bucharest, 1998).
- Saramandu, N., *Romanitatea orientală* (Bucharest 2004).
- , “Romanitatea sud-dunăreană (pe baza surselor istorice),” in *Spațiul lingvistic și literar românesc din perspectiva integrării europene*, eds. D. Mănuță, O. Ichim, and F.-T. Olariu (Iași, 2004), pp. 337–346.
- Savvides, A. G. K., “Η τελευταία α Πατρινακική επίδομή στό Βυζάντιο (1122/23),” *Παρνασσός* 27 (1985), no. 3, pp. 493–503.
- , “Οί Κομάνοι (Κουμάνοι) καί τὸ Βυζάντιο, 11ος–13ος αἰ μ.Χ.,” *Byzantina* 13 (1985), no. 2, pp. 953–955.
- Sawer, P. H., *Kings and Vikings. Scandinavia and Europe AD 700–1100* (London–New York, 1982).
- Sălăgean, T., *Țara lui Gelou. Contribuții la istoria Transilvaniei de Nord în secolele IX–XI* (Cluj–Napoca, 2006).
- Sâmpetru, M., “La région du Bas-Danube au X<sup>e</sup> siècle de notre ère,” *Dacia*, NS, 18 (1974), pp. 239–264.
- Sburlan, D. A., Demetrescu, I. C., Haralamb, At., *Pădurea și omul* (Bucharest, 1942).
- Scheludko, D., “Rumänische Elemente im Ukrainischen,” *Balkan-Archiv* 2 (1926), pp. 113–146.
- Schlumberger, G., *L’Épopée byzantine a la fin du dixième siècle*, I (Paris, 1896).
- Schmieder, F., “The world of the *Codex Cumanicus*, the *Codex Cumanicus* in its world,” in *Il codice Cumanico e il suo mondo*, eds. F. Schmieder and P. Schreiner (Rome, 2005), pp. XIII–XXXI.
- , “Die Welt des *Codex Cumanicus*. Ausereuropäische Kontexte lateinisch-christlicher Sprachgrenzüberwindungen,” in *Grenze und Grenzüberschreitung im Mittelalter*, eds. U. Knefelkamp and K. Bosselmann-Cyran (Berlin, 2007), pp. 285–294.
- Schmitt, O., “Die Petschenegen auf dem Balkan von 1046 bis 1072,” in *Pontos Euxinos. Beiträge zur Archäologie und Geschichte des Antiken Schwarzmeer- und Balkanraumes (Manfred Oppermann zum 65. Geburtstag von Kollegen, Freunden und Schülern)*, eds. S. Conrad, R. Einicke, A. E. Furtwängler, H. Löhrl, A. Slawisch (Langenweissbach, 2006), pp. 473–490.
- Scholz, B., *Von der Chronistik zur modernen Geschichtswissenschaft. Die Warägerfrage in der russischen, deutschen und schwedischen Historiographie* (Wiesbaden, 2000).
- Schönig, C., “A new attempt to classify the Turkic languages (1), (2),” *Turkic Languages* 1 (1997), pp. 117–133, 262–277; 2 (1998), pp. 130–151.
- Schönwiese, Ch.-D., *Klimaänderungen. Daten, Analysen, Prognosen* (Heidelberg, 1995).
- Schramm, G., *Nordpontische Ströme* (Göttingen, 1973).
- , “Die Waräger: osteuropäische Schicksale einer nordgermanischen Gruppenbezeichnung,” *Die Welt der Slaven* 28 (NF, 7) (1983), pp. 38–67.
- , *Altrusslands Anfang. Historische Schlüsse aus Namen, Wörtern und Texten zum 9. und 10. Jahrhundert* (Freiburg im Breisgau, 2002).
- Schünemann, K., “Ungarische Hilfsvölker in der Literatur des deutschen Mittelalters,” *Ungarische Jahrbücher* 4 (1924), no. 1, pp. 99–115.
- Schütz, E., “Armeno-kiptschakisch und die Krim,” in *Hungaro-Turcica. Studies in Honour of Julius Németh*, ed. Gy. Káldy-Nagy (Budapest, 1976), pp. 185–205.
- Schütz, I., “Les contacts médiévaux albano-comans reflétés par l’onomastique de Kosovo,” *AOH* 40 (1986), nos. 2–3, pp. 293–300.
- Schütze, J., “Bemerkungen zur Berufung und Vertreibung des Deutschen Ordens durch Andreas II. von Ungarn,” *Siebenbürgisches Archiv* 8 (1971), pp. 277–283.

- Secolul al XIII-lea pe meleagurile locuite de către români, ed. A. A. Rusu (Cluj-Napoca, 2006).
- Sedov, V. V., *Восточные славяне в VI–XIII вв.* (Moscow, 1982).
- , *Славяне. Историко-археологическое исследование* (Moscow, 2002).
- Seibt, W., “Untersuchungen zur Vor- und Frühgeschichte der ‘bulgarischen’ Kometopulen,” *Handes Amsorya. Zeitschrift für Armänische Philologie* 89 (1975), nos. 1–3, pp. 65–100.
- Senga, T., “Some problems of Magyar-East Slavic relations in the ninth century,” *Uralica. Journal of the Uralic Society of Japan* 2 (1974), pp. 37–59.
- , “La situation géographique de la Grande-Moravie et les Hongrois conquérants,” *Jahrbücher für Geschichte Osteuropas*, NF, 30 (1982), no. 4, pp. 533–540.
- Serczyk, W. A., *Historia Ukrainy* (Wrocław-Warsaw-Cracow-Gdańsk, 1979).
- Sergheeraert, G. [Gerard, C.], *Syméon le Grand (893–927)* (Paris, 1960).
- Sevin, A., Bosworth, C. E., “The Seljuqs and the Khwarazm shahs,” in *History of Civilisations of Central Asia*, IV, 1, eds. M. S. Asimov and C. E. Bosworth (Paris, 1998), pp. 145–175.
- Shakhanova, N. Zh., “The yurt in the traditional worldview of Central Asian nomads,” in *Foundations of Empire. Archaeology and Art of the Eurasian Steppes*, ed. G. Seaman (Los Angeles, 1992), pp. 157–183.
- Shamanism in Eurasia*, ed. M. Hoppál, I, II (Göttingen, 1984).
- Shepard, J., “John Mauropous, Leo Tornicius and an alleged Russian army: the chronology of the Pecheneg crisis of 1048–1049,” *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen Byzantinistik* 24 (1975), pp. 61–89.
- , “Tzetzes’ letters to Leo at Dristra,” *Byzantinische Forschungen* 6 (1979), pp. 191–239.
- , “The Russian steppe-frontier and the Black Sea zone,” *Ἀρχαῖον πόντου* 35 (1979), pp. 218–237.
- , “Byzantium expanding, 944–1025,” in *The New Cambridge Medieval History*, III, c. 900–c. 1024, ed. T. Reuter (Cambridge, 1999), pp. 586–604.
- Sibiescu, V. Gh., “Episcopatul cuman de la Milcovia (1227 [1228]–1241),” in *Spiritualitate și istorie la întorsura Carpaților*, ed. A. Plămădeală, I (Buzău, 1983), pp. 284–320.
- Simek, R., *Die Wikinger* (Munich, 1998).
- Simionescu, I., *Țara noastră. Natură. Oameni. Muncă* (Bucharest, 1937).
- Simões de Paula, E., *O comércio varegue e o Grão-Principado de Kiev* (São Paulo, 1942).
- Simon, A., *În jurul Carpaților. Formele și realitățile genezei statale românești* (Cluj-Napoca, 2002).
- Sinor, D., “The outline of Hungarian prehistory,” *Cahiers d’Histoire Mondiale* 4 (1958), no. 3, pp. 513–540.
- , “On water-transport in Central Eurasia,” *Ural-Altäische Jahrbücher* 33 (1961), pp. 156–179.
- , *Introduction à l’étude de l’Eurasie Centrale* (Wiesbaden, 1963).
- , *Inner Asia and its Contacts with Medieval Europe* (Variorum Reprints) (London, 1977).
- Sîrcu, I., *Geografia fizică a Republicii Socialiste România* (Bucharest, 1971).
- Slastikhin, V. V., “Идрологические сведения древних авторов о Дунае, Пруте и Днестр (VII в. до н.э.–VI в. н.э.),” *PGM* 5 (1970), pp. 154–162.
- Smith, J. Masson, Jr., “Dietary decadence and dynastic decline in the Mongol Empire,” *Journal of Asian History* 34 (2000), no. 1, pp. 35–52.
- Sobolevskii, A. I., “Грамота кн. Иванка Берладника 1134 г.,” in *Труды восьмого археологического съезда в Москве 1890*, II (Moscow, 1895), pp. 173–174.
- Sokulskii, A. L., “К локализации летописного Олешья,” *SA* (1980), no. 1, pp. 64–73.
- Solomon, F., “Episcopia Cumaniei—Episcopia Milcovici. Două episoade din istoria relațiilor româno-maghiare,” in *Studii istorice româno-ungare*, ed. L. Nastasă (Iași, 1999), pp. 7–18.

- Solta, G. R., *Einführung in die Balkanlinguistik mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Substrats und des Balkanlateinischen* (Darmstadt, 1980).
- Someșan, L., "La transhumance des bergers transylvains dans les provinces roumaines," *Revue de Transylvanie* 1 (1935), no. 4, pp. 465–476.
- Sorlin, L., "Les traités de Byzance avec la Russie au X<sup>e</sup> siècle (I) (II)," *Cahiers de Monde Russe et Soviétique* 2 (1961), no. 3, pp. 313–360; no. 4, pp. 447–475.
- Sorre, M., *La fondements biologiques de la géographie humaine. Essai d'une écologie de l'homme* (Paris, 1971).
- Soulis, G. C., "The Gypsies in the Byzantine Empire and the Balkans in the late middle ages," *Dumbarton Oaks Papers* 15 (1961), pp. 143–165.
- Spinei, V., "Les relations de la Moldavie avec Byzance et la Russie au premier quart du II<sup>e</sup> millénaire à la lumière des sources archéologiques," *Dacia*, NS, 19 (1975), pp. 227–242.
- , "Aspekte der politischen Verhältnisse des Gebietes zwischen Donau und Schwarzem Meer zur Zeit der Mongolenherrschaft (XIII.–XIV. Jahrhundert)," *Dacoromania. Jahrbuch für östliche Latinität*, Freiburg–Munich, 3 (1975–1976), pp. 29–38.
- , "Considerații cu privire la populația locală din zona centrală și meridională a Moldovei în secolele XI–XII," *CI*, SN, 12–13 (1981–1982), pp. 173–203.
- , *Moldova în secolele XI–XIV* (Bucharest, 1982).
- , *Realități etnice și politice în Moldova Meridională în secolele X–XIII. Români și turanici* (Iași, 1985).
- , "Migrația ungarilor în spațiul carpato-dunărean și contactele lor cu românii în secolele IX–X," *AM* 13 (1990), pp. 103–148.
- , "La signification des ethnonymes des *Daces* et des *Gètes* dans les sources byzantines des X<sup>e</sup>–XV<sup>e</sup> siècles," in *Études byzantines et post-byzantines*, II, eds. E. Popescu, O. Iliescu, and T. Teoteoi (Bucharest, 1991), pp. 115–131.
- , "La genèse des villes du sud-est de la Moldavie et les rapports commerciaux des XIII<sup>e</sup>–XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles," *Balkan Studies* 35 (1994), no. 2, pp. 197–269.
- , "La genèse des villes médiévales de Moldavie," in *The Colloquia of the XIII International Congress of Prehistoric and Protohistoric Sciences, Forlì (Italia) 8–14 September 1996*, 14, *Archaeology and History of the Middle Ages*, eds. R. Francovich, G. P. Brogiolo, S. Gelichi, R. Hodges, H. Steuer (Forlì, 1996), pp. 55–70.
- , "Incipient forms of statal organisation with the Romanians East of the Carpathians," *Transylvanian Review* 5 (1996), no. 2, pp. 44–54.
- , "Les répercussions de la grande invasion mongole de 1241–1242 sur l'espace carpato-danubien reflétées surtout dans les oeuvres des chroniqueurs italiens," *Südost-Forschungen* 61/62 (2002/2003), pp. 1–47.
- , "Note sull'evoluzione della Moldavia prima di Stefano il Grande," *Annuario dell'Istituto Romeno di Cultura e Ricerca Umanistica di Venezia* 6–7 (2004–2005), nos. 6–7, pp. 13–48.
- , *Universa Valachica. Români în contextul politic internațional de la începutul mileniului al II-lea* (Chișinău, 2006).
- , *The Great Migrations in the East and South East of Europe from the Ninth to the Thirteenth Century*, I, *Hungarians, Pechenegs and Uzges*; II, *Cumans and Mongols*, 2nd ed., trans. D. Bădulescu (Amsterdam, 2006).
- Spuler, B., *Die Goldene Horde. Die Mongolen in Russland, 1223–1502*, 2nd ed. (Wiesbaden, 1965).
- Stahl, H. H., *Contribuții la studiul satelor devălmașe românești* (Bucharest), I (1958); II (1959); III (1965).
- , *Studii de sociologie istorică* (Bucharest, 1972).
- Stanc, S. M., *Relațiile omului cu lumea animală. Arheozoologia secolelor IV–X d.Hr. pentru zonele extracarpatiche de est și de sud ale României* (Iași, 2006).
- Stark, S., "Nomaden und Sesshafte in Mittel- und Zentralasien: Nomadische Adaptationsstrategien am Fallbeispiel der Alttürken," in *Grenzüberschreitungen. Formen des Kontakts zwischen Orient und Okzident im Altertum*, eds. M. Schuol, U. Hartmann,

- A. Luther (*Oriens et Occidens. Studien zu antiken Kulturkontakten und ihrem Nachleben*, ed. J. Wieschöfer, 3) (Stuttgart, 2002), pp. 363–404.
- Stănescu, E., “Byzantinovlachica, I: Les Vlaques à la fin du X<sup>e</sup> siècle—début du XI<sup>e</sup> siècle et la restauration de la domination byzantine dans la Péninsule Balkanique,” *RESEE* 6 (1968), no. 3, pp. 407–438.
- Steinhübel, J., “Velká Morava a Bulharsko o dobe Rastislava a Svätopluka,” in *Svätopluk 894–1994*, eds. R. Marsina, A. Ruttkay (Nitra, 1997), pp. 207–219.
- Stender-Petersen, A., *Varangica* (Aarhus, 1953).
- Stephenson, P., “Manuel I Comnenus, the Hungarian crown and the ‘feudal subjection’ of Hungary, 1162–1167,” *Byzantinoslavica* 57 (1996), no. 1, pp. 33–59.
- Stephenson, P., *Byzantium’s Balkan Frontier. A Political Study of the Northern Balkans, 900–1204* (Cambridge, 2000).
- Стени Евразии в эпоху средневековья, ed. S. A. Pletneva (Moscow, 1981).
- Stoenescu, Șt. M., “Date noi referitoare la clima R.P.R.,” *Probleme de geografie* 6 (1959), pp. 39–45.
- Stojanov, V., *Bulgaro-Turcica*, 3–4, *История на изучаването на Codex Cumanicus. Неславянска, кумано-печенежка антропонимика в българските земи през XV век* (Sofia, 2000).
- , “Codex Cumanicus: история изучения,” *Материалы по археологии, истории и этнографии Таврии* 10 (2003), pp. 481–505. See also: Stojanov, V. and Stoyanov, V.
- Stoica, C. Gh., *Valea Trotușului. Enciclopedie* (Onești, 2006).
- Stoicescu, N., *Repertoriul bibliografic al localităților și monumentelor medievale din Moldova* (Bucharest, 1974).
- , *Continuitatea românilor* (Bucharest, 1980).
- , *O falsă problemă istorică—discontinuitatea poporului român pe teritoriul strămoșesc* (Bucharest, 1993).
- Stojanow, V., “Der Codex Cumanicus in der Forschungsgeschichte,” in *Il codice Cumanico e il suo mondo*, eds. F. Schmieder and P. Schreiner (Rome, 2005), pp. 3–44.
- Stokes, A. D., “The Balkan campaigns of Svyatoslav Igorevich,” *The Slavonic and East European Review* 40 (1962), pp. 466–496.
- Stökl, G., *Die Entstehung der Kosakentums* (Munich, 1953).
- Stoyanov, V., “Kumans in Bulgarian history (Eleventh–fourteenth centuries),” in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik (Ankara, 2002), pp. 680–689.
- Suciu, C., *Dicționar istoric al localităților din Transilvania*, I (Bucharest, 1966).
- Sukharev, Iu. V., “Половцы,” *Московский журнал* 8 (2006), pp. 49–55.
- Świętosławski, W., *Uzbrojenie koczowników Wielkiego Stepu w czasach ekspansji mongolów (XII–XIV w.)* (*Acta Archaeologica Lodziensia*, 40) (Łódź, 1996).
- , *Arms and Armour of the Nomads of the Great Steppe in the Times of the Mongol Expansion (12th–14th Centuries)* (Łódź, 1999).
- Szalontai, C., “Kritische Bemerkungen zur Rolle der Bulgaren im 9. Jahrhundert in der Grossen Ungarischen Tiefebene und in Siebenbürgen,” *A Móra Ferenc Múzeum Évkönyve, Studia Archaeologica* 6 (2000), pp. 263–286.
- Șandru, I., “Rolul pasurilor și trecătorilor carpatice în mobilitatea populației,” *ASUI*, Sect. II, b. *Geologie-geografie* 20 (1974), pp. 83–92.
- Șăineanu, L., *Influența orientală asupra limbii și culturii române*, I (Bucharest, 1900).
- Șchiopul, I., *Contribuțiuni la istoria Transilvaniei în secolele XII și XIII* (Cluj, 1932).
- Șesan, M., “Organizația bisericească veche carpatică,” *Mitropolia Ardealului* 4 (1959), nos. 5–6, pp. 360–382.
- Ștefănescu, Șt., *Țara Românească de la Basarab I “Întemeietorul” pînă la Mihai Viteazul* (Bucharest, 1970).
- , “Începuturile statelor românești în viziunea lui Nicolae Iorga,” *RI*s 24 (1971), no. 4, pp. 673–681.
- , *Demografia, dimensiune a istoriei* (Timișoara, 1974).

- , *Istoria medie a României, I, Principatele Române. Originea și afirmarea lor* (Bucharest, 1991).
- , “Aspecte ale civilizației rurale românești în evul mediu. Factori afectivi și dinamici ai vieții sociale,” in *Studia historica et theologica. Omagiu Profesorului Emilian Popescu*, eds. C. C. Petolescu, T. Teotcoi, A. Gabor (Iași, 2003), pp. 617–623.
- Tabuncic, S., “Satele din răsăritul Țării Moldovei din secolele XIV–XV în lumina izvoarelor diplomatice interne,” *Revista de Istorie a Moldovei* (1998), nos. 3–4 (35–36), pp. 62–95.
- Tagliavini, C., *Le origini delle lingue neolatine. Introduzione alla filologia romanza* (Bologna, 1959).
- Tamás, L., *Etymologisch-historisches Wörterbuch der ungarischen Elemente im Rumänischen (unter Berücksichtigung der Mundartwörter)* (London–The Hague–Paris [Budapest], 1967).
- Tanașoca, N.-Ș., “De la Vlachie des Assénides au second Empire bulgare,” *RESEE* 19 (1981), no. 3, pp. 581–594.
- Tardy, L., *Sklavenhandel in der Tartarei. Die Frage der Mandscharen* (Szeged, 1983).
- Тăркoвa-Zaimoвa, V., “Poлята и административната организация на т. нар. ‘Отвъддунавска България’,” *Studia Balcanica* 2 (1970), pp. 63–73.
- , *Долни Дунав—гранична зона на византийския запад* (Sofia, 1976).
- Tekin, T., Ölmez, M., *Türk dilleri/Les langues turques* (Ankara, 1995).
- Tentiuc, I., *Populația din Moldova Centrală în secolele XI–XIII* (Iași, 1996).
- , “Some considerations regarding Byzantine influences in the East of the Carpathians in the 10th–13th centuries,” in *Exchange and Trade in Medieval Europe. Papers of the “Medieval Europe Brugge 1997” Conference*, 3, eds. G. De Boe and F. Verhaeghe (Zellik, 1997), pp. 15–22.
- Tentiuc, I., Hăncu-Tentiuc, A., “Unele opinii și controverse privind relația dintre creștinismul popular și ritul și ritualurile funerare medievale timpurii în Europa Centrală și de Sud-Est,” *Tyragetia, SN*, 1 [16] (2007), no. 2, pp. 17–30.
- Teodor, D. Gh., *Teritoriul est-carpatic în veacurile V–IX e.n.* (Iași, 1978).
- , *Romanitatea carpato-dunăreană și Bizanțul în veacurile V–XI e.n.* (Iași, 1981).
- , *Creștinismul la est de Carpați de la origini până în secolul al XIV-lea* (Iași, 1991).
- Teodorescu, Gh., *Mărturie geografice despre țările noastre de la Herodot până la Wilkinson (450 î.Hr.–1820)* (Buzău, 1942).
- Tereshchuk, K. I., “До питання про локалізацію Болохівської землі,” in *Дослідження з слав'яно руської археології*, eds. V. I. Dovzhenok (gen. ed.), V. D. Baran, V. I. Bidzilia, L. V. Vakulenko, M. P. Kuchera, O. M. Prikhodniuk (Kiev, 1976), pp. 164–175.
- Tezaurul toponimic al României. Moldova, I, Repertoriul istoric al unităților administrativ-teritoriale, 1772–1988*, 1, *Unități simple (Localități și moșii), A–O*, ed. D. Moldovanu (Iași, 1991).
- Tezaurul toponimic al României. Moldova, I, 3, Toponimia Moldovei în documente scrise în limbi străine (exclusiv slavona), 1332–1850*, eds. M. Ciubotaru, V. Cojocaru, G. Istrate, coord. D. Moldovanu (Iași, 2004).
- Tezaurul toponimic al României. Moldova, I, 4, D. Moldovanu, Toponimia Moldovei în cartografia europeană veche (cca 1395–1789)* (Iași, 2005).
- Theodorescu, R., “Byzance, Balkans, Occident dans la civilisation roumaine aux X<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècles,” *Cahiers de civilisation médiévale, X<sup>e</sup>–XII<sup>e</sup> siècles* 15 (1972), no. 4, pp. 259–282.
- , *Bizanț, Balcani, Occident la începuturile culturii medievale românești (secolele X–XIV)* (Bucharest, 1974).
- Thordarson, F., “The Scythian funeral customs. Some notes on Herodotus IV, 71–75,” in *Homnages et opera minora, XII, A Green Leaf. Papers in Honour of Professor Jes P. Asmussen* (Acta Iranica 28) (Leiden, 1988), pp. 539–547.
- Тikhomiroв, M. N., *Крестьянские и городские восстания на Руси XI–XIII вв.* (Moscow, 1955).
- , “Список русских городов дальних и ближних,” in *idem, Русское летописание* (Moscow, 1979).

- Timoshchuk, V. O., *Східні слов'яни VII–X ст.: полюддя, язичництво, початки держави* (Chernivtsi, 1999).
- Tocilescu, Gr., *Istoria românilor*, 2nd ed. (Bucharest, 1900).
- Toderaşcu, I., *Unitatea românească medievală* (Bucharest, 1988).
- Todt, K. P., “Kaiser Friedrich I. Barbarossa und Byzanz,” *Hellenika. Jahrbuch für die Freunde Griechenlands* (1993), pp. 132–172.
- Tofan, C., “Calamităţi naturale pe teritoriul Țării Moldovei din secolul al XV-lea până în prima jumătate a secolului al XIX-lea. Invazii ale lăcustelor,” *Carpathica* 29 (2000), pp. 155–170.
- Tolochko, P. P., “Киевская земля,” in *Древнерусские княжества X–XIII вв.*, eds. L. G. Beskrovnyi (gen. ed.), V. A. Kuchkin, V. T. Pashuto (Moscow, 1975), pp. 5–56.
- , *Кочевые народы степей и Киевская Русь* (Kiev, 1999).
- Topor, N., *Ani ploioşi şi secetoşi în Republica Populară Română* (Bucharest, 1963).
- Tolstov, S. P., “Тор ода гузов,” *Советская этнография* (1947), no. 3, pp. 52–102.
- , *По следам древнехорезмийской цивилизации* (Moscow–Leningrad, 1948).
- Tomaschek, W., *Zur Kunde der Hämus-Halbinsel* (Vienna, 1882).
- Tóth, S., “Kabarok (kavarok) a 9. századi magyar törzsszövetségben,” *Századok* 118 (1984), no. 1, pp. 92–113.
- Tóth, S. L., “Megjegyzések a Levadia-Etelköz problémához,” in *A Kárpát-medence és a steppe*, ed. A. Márton (Budapest, 2001), pp. 127–136.
- Tougher, S., *The Reign of Leo VI (886–912). Politics and People* (Leiden–New York–Cologne, 1997).
- Toynbee, A., *Constantin Porphyrogenitus and His World* (London, 1973).
- Treadgold, W., *The Byzantine Revival, 780–842* (Stanford, 1988).
- , *A History of the Byzantine State and Society* (Stanford, 1997).
- Trebici, V., *Demografia* (Bucharest, 1979).
- Trepavlov, V. V., “Eastern influences: The Turkic nobility in medieval Russia,” *Coexistence* 32 (1995), pp. 9–16.
- Trofin, L., *Romanitate şi creştinism la Dunărea de Jos în secolele IV–VIII* (Bucharest, 2005).
- , *O istorie a creştinismului la nordul Dunării de Jos până în secolul al XIII-lea* (Bucharest, 2007).
- Tryjarski, E., “Les religions des Petchénègues,” in *Traditions religieuses et para-religieuses des peuples altaïques* (Paris, 1972), pp. 139–148.
- , “Pieczyngowie,” in K. Dabrowski, T. Nagrodzka-Majchrzyk, E. Tryjarski, *Hunowie europejscy, Protobulgarzy, Chazarowie, Pieczyngowie* (Wrocław–Warsaw–Cracow–Gdańsk, 1975), pp. 479–625.
- , “Die armeno-kiptschakische Sprache und Literatur—ein Beispiel für kulturellen Synkretismus,” *Ural-Altäische Jahrbücher*, NF, 5 (1985), pp. 209–224.
- , *Bestattungssitten türkischer Völker auf dem Hintergrund ihrer Glaubensvorstellungen*, trans. C.-S. v. Schwerin (Warsaw, 2001).
- , “Runes and runelike scripts of Eurasian area,” *Archivum Ottomanicum* 20 (2002), pp. 5–80; 21 (2003), pp. 5–90.
- Tuathail, G. Ó., Dalby, S., “Introduction: Rethinking geopolitics: toward a critical geopolitics,” in *Rethinking Geopolitics*, eds. G. Ó. Tuathail and S. Dalby (London and New York, 1998), pp. 1–15.
- Tufescu, V., *România. Natură, om, economie* (Bucharest, 1974).
- Tufescu, V., Tufescu, M., *Ecologia şi activitatea umană* (Bucharest, 1981).
- Tugwell, S., “Notes on the life of St Dominic,” *Archivum Fratrum Praedicatorum* 68 (1998), pp. 5–117.
- Turan, O., “The ideal of world domination among the medieval Turks,” *Studia Islamica* 4 (1955), pp. 77–90.
- Turcuş, Ş., “Prima mărturie străină despre etnonimul român (1314),” *Cele Trei Crişuri*, IIIrd Ser., 1 (2000), nos. 7–9, pp. 1–14.
- , *Sfântul Scaun şi românii în secolul al XIII-lea* (Bucharest, 2001).



- Turri, E., *Gli uomini delle tende. I pastori nomadi tra ecologia e storia, tra deserto e bidonville* (Milano, 1983).
- Țeicu, D., *Banatul montan în evul mediu* (Timișoara, 1998).
- Țighiliiu, I., *Societate și mentalitate în Țara Românească și Moldova. Secolele XV–XVII* (Bucharest, 1998).
- Țiplic, I. M., “Cavalerii teutoni și fortificațiile lor din Țara Bârsei,” *Corviniana. Acta Musei Corviniensis* 6 (2000), no. 6, pp. 138–159.
- , *Fortificațiile medievale timpurii din Transilvania (secolele al X-lea–al XII-lea)* (Iași, 2007).
- Ujvári, I., *Geografia apelor României* (Bucharest, 1972).
- Ukraine. A Concise Encyclopaedia*, ed. V. Kubijovyč, I (Toronto, 1963).
- Uspenskii, F., *Образование второго Болгарскаго царства, приложение V* (Odessa, 1879).
- Váczy, P., “Etelköz—die frühere Heimat der Ungarn,” *Mitteilungen des Archäologischen Instituts der Ungarischen Akademie der Wissenschaften* 14 (1985), pp. 169–175.
- Vainshtein, S. I., “Problems of the history of the dwellings of the steppe nomads of Eurasia,” *Soviet Anthropology and Archeology* 18 (1979), no. 1, pp. 50–83.
- Vajay, S. de, *Der Eintritt des ungarischen Stämmebundes in die europäische Geschichte (862–933)* (Mainz, 1968).
- Varangian Problems* (Copenhagen–Munksgaard, 1970).
- Vásáry, I., “Orthodox Christian Qumans and Tatars of the Crimea in the 13th–14th centuries,” *Central Asiatic Journal* 32 (1988), pp. 260–271.
- , “Origins and possible Cuman affiliations of the Asen dynasty,” *Archivum Ottomanicum* 13 (1993–1994), pp. 335–345.
- , *Geschichte des frühen Innerasiens*, trans. T. Schäfer (Herne, 1999).
- , “Cuman warriors in the fight of Byzantium with the Latins,” *AOH* 57 (2004), no. 3, pp. 263–270.
- , *Cumans and Tatars. Oriental Military in the Pre-Ottoman Balkans, 1185–1365* (Cambridge, 2005).
- , *Turks, Tatars and Russians in the 13th–16th Centuries* (Variorum Collected Studies Series) (Aldershot–Burlington, 2007).
- Vasil'ev, D. D., “The Eurasian areal aspects of old Turkic written culture,” *AOH* 58 (2005), no. 4, pp. 323–330.
- Vasiliev, A. A., *Histoire de l'Empire byzantin*, trans. P. Brodin and A. Bourguina, I, II (Paris, 1932).
- , *The Goths in the Crimea* (Cambridge, Mass., 1936).
- Vasilievskii, V. G., “Византия и печенеги (1048–1094),” in idem, *Труды*, I (St. Petersburg, 1908), pp. 1–117.
- Vălsan, G., “Dunărea,” *BSRRG* 54 (1935), pp. 38–55.
- , *Opere alese*, ed. T. Morariu (Bucharest, 1971), pp. 535–560.
- Vârlan, C., “Locuințele și anexele gospodărești din sudul Basarabiei în secolele VIII–XI,” in *Studii de istorie medievală și premodernă. Omagiu profesorului Nicolae Edroiu, membru corespondent al Academiei Române*, ed. A. Andea (Cluj–Napoca, 2003), pp. 53–66.
- , “Câteva considerații privind cultura materială și spirituală din sudul Basarabiei în secolele VIII–XI,” in *Studii de istorie veche și medievală. Omagiu Profesorului Gheorghe Postică*, eds. T. Arnăutu, O. Munteanu, S. Musteață (Chișinău, 2004), pp. 192–203.
- Vékony, G., “Spätvölkerwanderungszeitliche Kerbschriften im Karpatenbecken,” *ActaArchHung* 39 (1987), nos. 3–4, pp. 211–233.
- Velter, A.-M., *Transilvania în secolele V–XII. Interpretări istorico-politice și economice pe baza descoperirilor monetare din bazinul Carpatic, secolele V–XII* (Bucharest, 2002).
- Veres, P., “Le rôle de facteurs écologiques et économiques dans la conquête du bassin des Carpathes par les Hongrois en 896,” in *Les questions fondamentales du peuplement du bassin des Carpathes du VIII<sup>e</sup> au X<sup>e</sup> siècle* (Budapest, 1972), pp. 213–230.
- , “Les antécédents de la conquête du pays par les Hongrois,” in *Les anciens Hongrois et les ethnies voisines à l'Est*, ed. I. Erdélyi (Budapest, 1977), pp. 283–308.

- , “A honfoglaló magyarok életmódjának vitatott kérdései,” in *Honfoglalás és néprajz*, eds. L. Kovács, A. Paládi-Kovács (Budapest, 1997), pp. 109–134.
- Veress, A., “Păstoritul ardelenilor în Moldova și Țara Românească (până la 1821),” *AARMSI*, Ser. III, 7 (1927), pp. 127–230.
- Verlinden, Ch., “Esclavage et ethnographie sur les bords de la mer Noire (XIII<sup>e</sup> et XIV<sup>e</sup> siècles),” in *Miscellanea historica in honorem Leonis van der Essen Univeritatis Catholicae in oppido Lovaniensi iam annos XXXV professoris*, I (Brussel–Paris, 1947), pp. 247–298.
- , *L’esclavage dans l’Europe médiévale*, II (Gent, 1977).
- Vernadskij, G., “Relations byzantino-russes au XII<sup>e</sup> siècle,” *Byzantion* 4 (1927–1928), pp. 269–276.
- Vernadskij, G., “The problem of the early Russian campaigns in the Black Sea area,” *The American Slavic and East European Review* 8 (1949), pp. 1–9.
- Vernadsky, G., Ferdinandy, M. de, *Studien zur ungarische Frühgeschichte, I. Lebedia/II. Álmos* (Munich, 1957).
- Vidal de la Blanche, P., *Principes de géographie humaine*, ed. Emm. de Martonne (Paris, 1922). *The Viking Heritage, a Dialogue between Cultures/Наследие варягов, диалог культур*, ed. I. Jansson (Moscow–Stockholm, 1996).
- Викинги и славяне. Ученые, политики, дипломаты о русско-скандинавских отношениях, eds. A. Hedman and A. Kirpichnikov (St. Petersburg, 1998).
- Viktorova, L. L., *Монголы. Происхождение народа и истоки культуры* (Moscow, 1980).
- Vladimirtsov, B., *Le régime social des Mongols. Le féodalisme nomade*, trans. M. Carsow (Paris, 1948).
- Vlasto, A. P., *The Entry of the Slavs into Christendom* (Cambridge, 1970).
- Vlăduțiu, I., *Etnografia românească* (Bucharest, 1973).
- Воинов, М., “Промяната в българо-византийските отношения при цар Симеон,” *Известия на Института за История* 18 (1967), p. 147–202.
- Voitovich, L., “Роман Мстиславич і утворення Галицько-Волинського князівства,” in *Галичина та Волинь у добу середньовіччя. До 800-річчя з дня народження Данила Галицького*, gen. ed. Ia. Isaevich (Lviv, 2001), pp. 13–30.
- Vornicescu, N., *Primele scrieri patristice în literatura noastră, sec. IV–XVI* (Craiova, 1984).
- Vörös, G., “Relics of the Pecheneg language in the works of Constantine,” in *The Turks*, 1, *Early Ages*, eds. H. Güzel, C. C. Oğuz, O. Karatay, chief of the ed. board Y. Halaçoğlu, ed. advisor H. Inalcik (Ankara, 2002), pp. 617–631.
- Восточная Европа в древности и средневековье*, ed. L. V. Cherepnin (Moscow, 1978).
- Vryonis, S., Jr., *The Decline of Medieval Hellenism in Asia Minor and the Process of Islamization from the Eleventh through the Fifteenth Century* (Berkeley–Los Angeles–London, 1971).
- Vuia, R., *Țipurile de păstorit la români* (Bucharest, 1964).
- , *Studii de etnografie și folclor*, I (Bucharest, 1975).
- Vulcănescu, R., *Mitologie română* (Bucharest, 1985).
- Wace, A. J. B., Thompson, M. S., *The Nomads of Balkans. An Account of Life and Customs among the Vlachs of Northern Pindus* (London–New York, 1972).
- Wagner, E., “Ungarn (Csangonen) in der Moldau und in der Bukowina im Spiegel neuerer rumänischer Quelleneditionen,” *Zeitschrift für Siebenbürgische Landeskunde* 3(74) (1980), no. 1, pp. 27–35.
- Walaschofsky, A., “Einflüsse des Hirtenleben auf die Entwicklung von Volk und Staat in Rumänien,” *Südostdeutsche Forschungen* 3 (1939), no. 4, pp. 810–822.
- Weiers, M., *Zweitausend Jahre Krieg und Drangsal und Tschinggis Khans Vermächtnis* (Wiesbaden, 2006).
- Weigand, G., “Ursprung der südkarpatischen Flussnamen in Rumänien,” 26–29. *Jahresbericht des Institut für rumänische Sprache zu Leipzig* (1921), pp. 70–103.
- Wendt, H. F., *Die türkische Elemente im Rumänischen* (Berlin, 1960).
- Werbart, B., “Khazars or ‘Saltovo-Majaki culture’? Prejudices about archaeology and ethnicity,” *Current Swedish Archaeology* 4 (1996), pp. 199–221.

- Wieser, K., "Zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens in Osteuropa in den ersten drei Jahrzehnten des 13. Jahrhunderts," *Österreichische Osthefte* 7 (1965), no. 1, pp. 12–21.
- Windisch, R., "Die frühesten Erwähnungen der Rumänen und ihrer Vorfahren in den antiken, byzantinischen, mittelalterlichen und neueren Quellen," *BBR* 8 (12), NS (1980/81), pp. 153–189.
- Winnifrith, T. J., *The Vlachs: The History of a Balkan People* (New York, 1987).
- Wittoch, Z., "L'image de la culture chrétienne et de la mythologie des Slaves, conservée dans le lexique de la langue roumaine," in *Das heidnische und christliche Slaventum. Acta II Congressus internationalis historiae Slavicae Salisburgo-Ratisbonensis anno 1967 celebrati* (Wiesbaden, 1969), pp. 158–164.
- Wolff, R. L., "The 'Second Bulgarian Empire'. Its origin and history to 1204," *Speculum* 24 (1949), no. 2, pp. 167–206.
- Wolfram, H., *History of the Goths*, trans. Th. J. Dunlap (Berkeley–Los Angeles–London, 1990).
- The World of the Khazars. New Perspectives. Selected Papers from the Jerusalem 1999 International Khazar Colloquium hosted by the Ben Zvi Institute*, eds. P. B. Golden, H. Ben-Shammai, and A. Róna-Tas (Leiden–Boston, 2007).
- Wozniak, F. E., "Byzantium, the Pechenegs and the Rus': the limitations of a great power's influence on its clients in the 10th century European steppe," *AEMA* 4 (1984), pp. 299–316.
- Wyrostek, L., *Ród Dragów-Sasów na Węgrzech i Rusi Halickiej* (Cracow, 1932).
- Xenopol, A. D., *Une énigme historique. Les Roumains au Moyen Age* (Paris, 1885).
- , *Istoria românilor din Dacia Traiană*, I, 4nd ed. V. Mihailescu-Bîrliiba (Bucharest, 1985).
- Zach, K., *Orthodoxe Kirche und rumänisches Volksbewusstsein im 15. bis 18. Jahrhundert* (Wiesbaden, 1977).
- Zachariadou, E. A., "Noms coumans à Trébizonde," *Revue des études byzantines* 53 (1995), pp. 285–288.
- Zajaczkowski, A., *Ze studiów nad zagadnieniem chazar skim* (Cracow, 1947).
- Zakhoder, B. N., *Каспийский свод сведений о Восточной Европе, II, Булгары, мадьяры, народа Севера, печенеги, русы, славяне* (Moscow, 1967).
- Zakythinos, D. A., *Byzantinische Geschichte, 324–1071* (Vienna–Cologne–Graz, 1979).
- Zervan, V., "Úloha Pečenehov v kríze euroázjskej stepi v 9. storočí na základe informácií Konštantína Porfyrogenneta," *Byzantinoslovaca* 1 (2006), pp. 161–174.
- Zhavoronkov, P. I., "Тюрки и Византии (XIII–середина XIV в.). Часть первая: Тюркская аристократия," *Византийский временник* 65 (90) (2006), pp. 163–177.
- Zimin, A. A., "When was the *Song of Prince Igor* written?," *Russian Studies in History* 45 (2006), no. 2 (*A. A. Zimin and the Controversy Over the Igor Tale*, eds. R. E. Martin and D. Ostrowski), pp. 13–34.
- Zimmermann, H., *Siebenbürgen und seine Hospites Teutonici: Vorträge und Forschungen zur südostdeutschen Geschichte. Festgabe zum 70. Geburtstag*, ed. K. Gündisch (Cologne–Weimar–Vienna, 1996).
- Zimonyi, I., *The Origins of the Volga Bulgars* (Szeged, 1990).
- , "A besenyők nyugatra vándorlásának okai," *Acta Universitatis Szegediensis de Attila József Nominatae. Acta Historica* 106 (1998), pp. 129–144.
- , *Muslimische Quellen über die Ungarn vor der Landnahme. Das ungarische Kapitel der Ġaiḥānī-Tradition*, trans. T. Schäfer (Herne, 2006).
- Zlatarski, V. N., *История на българската държава презь средите векове* (Sofia), I, 1 (1918); I, 2 (1927).
- Zuckerman, C., "On the date of the Khazars' conversion to Judaism and the chronology of the kings of the Rus Oleg and Igor," *Revue des études byzantines* 53 (1995), pp. 237–270.

- , “Les Hongrois au pays de Lebedia: une nouvelle puissance aux confins de Byzance et de la Khazarie ca 836–889,” in *Byzantium at War (9th–12th C.)* (Athens, 1997), pp. 51–73.
- , “Deux étapes de la formation de l’ancien État russe,” in *Les centres proto-urbains russes entre Scandinavie, Byzance et Orient*, eds. M. Kazanski, A. Nercessian, and C. Zuckerman (Paris, 2000), pp. 95–121.
- Zugravu, N., *Geneza creștinismului popular al românilor* (Bucharest, 1997).
- Żygulski Z. Jr., “The wagon laager,” *Fasciculi Archaeologiae Historicae*, Łódź, 7 (1994), pp. 15–20.



## SOURCES OF ILLUSTRATIONS

- Fig. 1. M. David, *Considerațiuni geopolitice asupra statului român* (offprint from *Învățătorul român contemporan și destinul neamului nostru*) (Iași, 1939), fig. 2.
- Fig. 2. Drawing by Victor Spinei and Romeo Ionescu.
- Fig. 3. Ibidem.
- Fig. 4. Ibidem.
- Fig. 5. V. Mihăilescu, "O hartă a principalelor tipuri de așezări rurale din România," *BSRRG* 46 (1927). Drawing by Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 6. Drawings by Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 7. Ibidem.
- Fig. 8. Drawings by Waltraud Delibaș.
- Fig. 9. 1–6—Gh. Postică, *Românii din codrii Moldovei în evul mediu timpuriu (Studiu arheologic pe baza ceramicii din așezarea Hansca)* (Chișinău, 1994), fig. 53; 7–11—V. I. Kozlov, "Богатое—поселение Первого болгарского царства на левобережье Дуная," *Добруджа* 14–16 (1997–1999), p. 126; fig. 19/10–14; 12—I. Tentiuc, A. Popa, "Unele considerații privind lăcașele rupestre din Moldova de Est în secolele IV–XIII," *Mousaios* 5 (1999), p. 51; fig. 3/9; 13—Moldavian Historical Museum in Iași. Drawing by Romeo Ionescu.
- Fig. 10. 1–8—Teodor, *Teritoriul*, pp. 197, 201; figs. 38/5, 6; 42/1–6; 9–23—I. G. Hâncu, *Кэпрэрия—памятник культуры X–XII вв.* (Kishinev, 1973), pp. 11–13, 18, 24, 25, 39; figs. 5; 6; 8; 14; 22; 23/1; 35.
- Fig. 11. Institute of Archaeology in Iași. Drawing by Aneta Corciova.
- Fig. 12. 1–3, 9—G. F. Chebotarenko, *Калфа-городище VIII–X вв. на Днестре* (Kishinev, 1973), pp. 92, 93, 97; figs. 9; 10/1; 11/1; 17/4; 4–8, 10–12—I. G. Hâncu, *Поселения XI–XIV веков в Оргеевских кодрах Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969), pp. 103–105; figs. 52; 53/3, 4; 54/1, 2. Drawings by Waltraud Delibaș.
- Fig. 13. Postică, *Românii*, fig. 23.
- Fig. 14. Ibidem, fig. 21.
- Fig. 15. Institute of Archaeology in Iași. Drawings by Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 16. 1, 3—Institute of Archaeology in Iași; 2, 4—Moldavian Historical Museum in Iași. Drawings by Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 17. Institute of Archaeology in Iași. Drawings by Waltraud Delibaș.

- Fig. 18. Ibidem.
- Fig. 19. Institute of Archaeology in Iași. Drawings by Aneta Corciova.
- Fig. 20. Ibidem.
- Fig. 21. 1—Historical Museum in Vaslui; 2—Historical Museum in Suceava. Drawings by Waltraud Delibaș.
- Fig. 22. R. Maxim-Alaiba, "Considerații preliminare cu privire la viața spirituală a locuitorilor așezării de la Gara Banca-Vaslui din secolele IX–X," *AM* 12 (1988), pp. 258, 260, figs. 3/1c; 5.
- Fig. 23. 1—Em. Zaharia and N. Zaharia, "Sondajul de salvare din necropola de la Probota (r. și reg. Iași)," *MCA* 8 (1962), p. 602; fig. 6; 2—A. O. Dobroliubskii, L. V. Subbotin, "Погребение средневекового кочевника у села Траповка," in *Памятники римского и средневекового времени в Северо-Западного Причерноморье* (Kiev, 1982), p. 171, fig. 1; 3, 5, 6—I. A. Rafalovici, V. L. Lăpușnian, "Работы Реутской археологической экспедиции," in *AIM* (1972 g.) (1974), p. 143; fig. 13; 4—N. A. Chetaru, "Археологические исследования в Кагульском районе в 1958 г.," in *DPM*, p. 50; fig. 7/1.
- Fig. 24. E. Sava, "Necropola tumulară Bălăbani—II," *AM* 19 (1996), pp. 206, 207, 213; figs. 10/1, 2, 4; 11/3; 17/3, 4, 12.
- Fig. 25. Ibidem, pp. 199, 200, 204, 207, 213, 218; figs. 3/6; 4/5, 11; 8; 11/10; 17/5, 6; 22/7–10.
- Fig. 26. R. Maxim-Alaiba, "Două morminte turanice târzii de la Banca," *AM* 11 (1987), p. 236; fig. 1.
- Fig. 27. A. Iu. Chirkov, "Новые данные о поздних кочевниках Среднего Попрутья," in *Археологические исследования молодых учёных Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1990), p. 162; fig. 4.
- Fig. 28. Drawings by Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 29. State Historical Museum of Russia, Moscow. Drawings by Victor Spinei and Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 30. Institute of Archaeology in Iași. Drawings by Waltraud Delibaș.
- Fig. 31. 1–11—[I. Nestor et al.,] "Șantierul Valea Jijiei," *SCIV* 3 (1952), p. 110, fig. 15; 12—Historical Museum in Vaslui—Drawing by Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 32. 1–2—Institute of Archaeology in Chișinău; 3–4—Moldavian Historical Museum in Iași; 5–9—Historical Museum in Bârlad. Drawings by Waltraud Delibaș.
- Fig. 33. State Historical Museum of Russia, Moscow. Drawings by Victor Spinei and Emilia Drumea.

- Fig. 34. 1–4, 8—State Historical Museum of Russia, Moscow; 5–7—Institute of Archaeology in Chişinău. Drawings by Victor Spinei and Emilia Drumea.
- Fig. 35. Chirkov, “Новые данные”, pp. 159–161, 164; figs. 1–3; 5.
- Fig. 36. Drawings by Waltraud Delibaş.
- Fig. 37. Rafalovici, Lăruşnian, “Работы Реутской археологической экспедиции,” pp. 144, 146; figs. 14, 15.
- Fig. 38. 1, 2, 5–8—A. O. Dobroliubskii, O. S. Stoliarik, “Візантійські монети у кочівницькому похованні XII ст. у Дністро-Дунайському межиріччі,” *Археологія* 43 (1983), p. 72; 3, 4, 9–13—V. N. Stanko, “Детское захоронение кочевника в XI в. возле с. Тузлы,” *Записки Одесского археологического общества* 1 (34) (1960), pp. 281–283; figs. 1; 4; 6.
- Fig. 39. E. Abâzov and E. Clocico, “Necropola tumulară de lângă satul Chirileni,” *Tyragetia* 8 (1999), p. 38; fig. 7.
- Fig. 40. G. F. Chebotarenko, E. V. Iarovoï, N. P. Tel’nov, *Курганы Буджакской степи* (Kishinev, 1989), p. 110; fig. 48.
- Fig. 41. Ibidem, pp. 70, 137; figs. 30/1–6; 60/1.
- Fig. 42. 1–8—Ibidem, p. 135; figs. 59/2–9; 9–14—T. I. Demchenko, G. F. Chebotarenko, “Погребения кочевников в курганах нижнего Поднестровья,” in *Средневековые памятники Днестровско-Прутского междуречья*, eds. P. P. Bârnea (gen. ed.), G. F. Chebotarenko, A. A. Nudel’man, N. P. Tel’nov, E. N. Abyzova (Kishinev, 1988), p. 97; fig. 2.
- Fig. 43. Gh. Postică, E. Sava, and S. Agulnikov, “Morminte ale nomazilor turanici medievali din tumuli de lângă localitățile Taraclia și Cazaclia,” *MA* 20 (1995), p. 144; fig. 2.
- Fig. 44. Ibidem, p. 148; fig. 4.
- Fig. 45. Ibidem, p. 158; fig. 5.
- Fig. 46. 1–4—E. V. Iarovoï, *Курганы энеолита—эпохи бронзы Нижнего Поднестровья* (Kishinev, 1990), p. 162; figs. 70/3; 5–12—E. Abâzov, E. Clocico, “Tumulul 1 din necropola tumulară Chirileni,” *Tyragetia* 4–5 (1997), p. 100, figs. 4/3, 4; 13–14, 21–23—L. V. Subbotin, I. V. Sapozhnikov, A. V. Subbotin, “Курганный могильник Дивизия II в междуречье Хаджидера и Алкалии,” *Stratum plus* (2001–2002), no. 2, pp. 565, 573; figs. 1/5–7; 6/5, 6; 15—Demchenko, Chebotarenko, “Погребения кочевников,” p. 99; fig. 4/7; 16–17—Chebotarenko, Iarovoï, Tel’nov, *Курганы Буджакской степи*, p. 105; figs. 46/1, 2, 5; 18–19—Postică, Sava, and Agulnikov, “Morminte ale nomazilor turanici,” p. 168; fig. 10.



- Fig. 47. V. Haheu, V. Gukin, "Rezultatele investigațiilor unor complexe tumulare din r-ul Florești, Republica Moldova," in *Vestigii arheologice din Moldova* (Chișinău, 1997), p. 192, fig. 4.
- Fig. 48. Ibidem, p. 191, 196, 202; figs. 3/5–8; 7/4, 11, 12; 10.
- Fig. 49. A. O. Dobroliubskii, *Кочевники Северо-Западного Причерноморья в эпоху средневековья* (Kiev, 1986), pp. 116, 117; pls. X, 1, 7–9, 11–19; XI, 1, 3–8.
- Fig. 50. Ibidem, pp. 114–115; pls. VIII, 2–9, 11–19; IX, 2, 3, 5–9.
- Fig. 51. 1–5—L. V. Subotin, "Охоронні дослідження кургану в м. Болград," in *Археологія Південного Заходу України* (Kiev, 1992), p. 71; figs. 2/2–6; 6–7—V. D. Gukin, S. I. Kurchatov, "Позднекочевническое погребение у села Паланка," *Археологические вестн* 4 (1995), p. 144; fig. 2; 8–9—Sava, "Necropola tumulară Bălăbani—II," p. 208; fig. 12/1, 4.
- Fig. 52. Sava, "Necropola tumulară Bălăbani—II," pp. 201, 206–208, 213; figs. 5/1; 10/3; 11/1, 2, 4; 12/9–11; 17/1, 2, 4, 7.
- Fig. 53. C. Buzdugan and I. Alexoaie, "Săpături arheologice într-un tumul din comuna Roma (județul Botoșani)," *Hieraxus* 7–8 (1988), p. 114; fig. 5.
- Fig. 54. M. Brudiu, *Lumea de sub tumulii din sudul Moldovei. De la indo-europeni la turanicii târzii* (Bucharest, 2003), pp. 192–193; figs. 37; 38/1–7.
- Fig. 55. Photo by Tudor Șamataru.
- Fig. 56. 1–3—A. I. Meliukova, "Курган усатовкого типа у села Тудорово," *КС* 88 (1962), fig. 25/3; 4–18—T. G. Oboldueva, "Курган эпохи бронзы на р. Когильник," *Izv.-Kishinev* 5 (25) (1955), pp. 45, 47; figs. 9, 10; 19—E. A. Rikman, *Художественные сокровища древней Молдавии* (Kishinev, 1969), p. 104, fig. 38.
- Fig. 57. Moldavian Historical Museum in Iași. Drawing by Romeo Ionescu.
- Fig. 58. S. A. Pletneva, "Кочевники восточноевропейских степей в X–XIII вв.," in *Степи Евразии в эпоху средневековья*, ed. S. A. Pletneva (Moscow, 1981), p. 265, fig. 88.
- Fig. 59. Ibidem, p. 266, fig. 89.
- Fig. 60. P. A. Andrews, "The tents of Timur. An examination of reports on the the quriltay at Samarqand, 1404," in *Arts of the Eurasian Steppelands*, ed. Ph. Denwood (London, 1978), p. 184; pls. 3/3, 5–7, 9, 10.

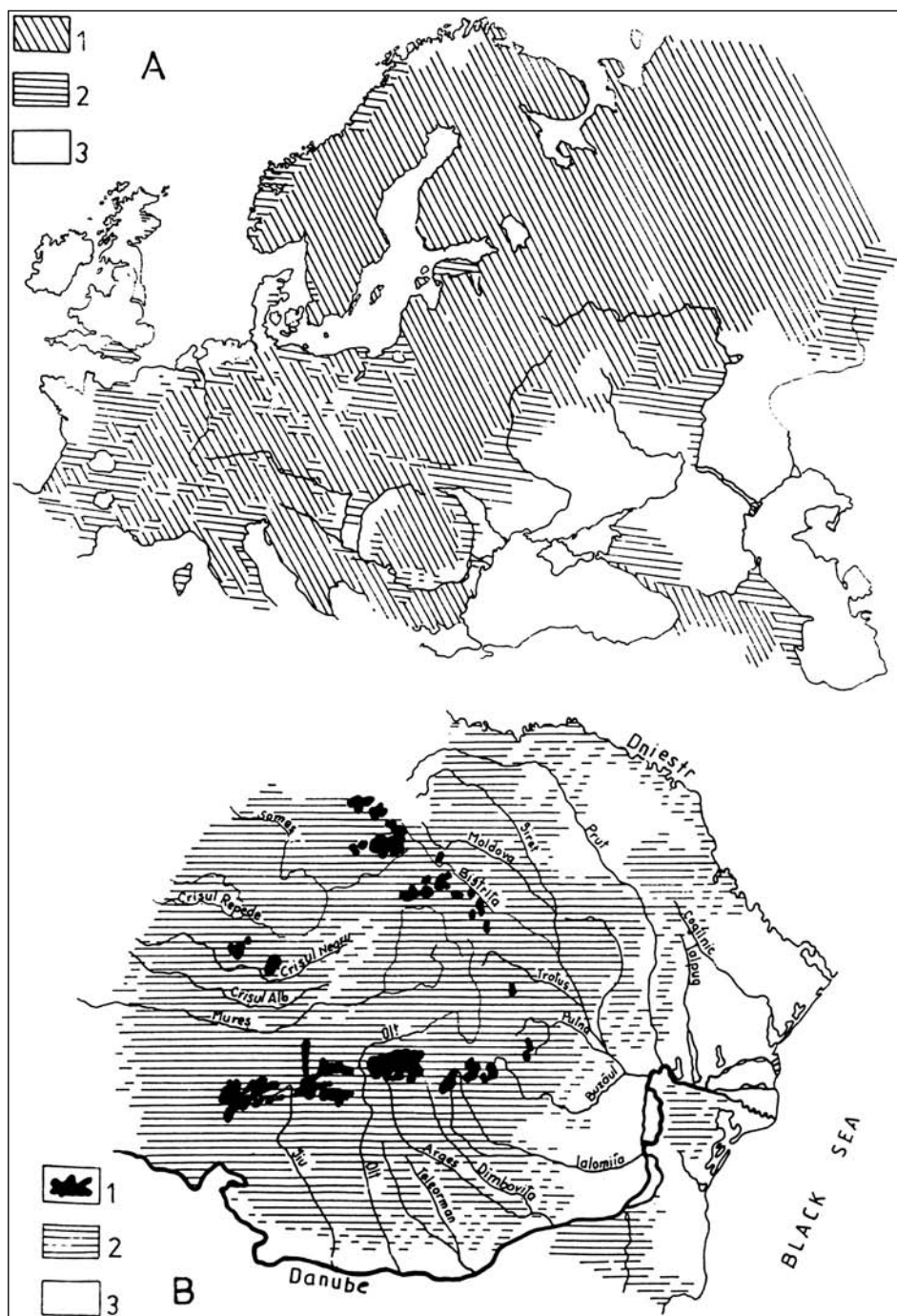


Fig. 1. A. Map of forest spreading in Europe in 1910, drawn up by I. Riedel. The timbered surface more than 20% (1), of 10–20% (2) and under 10% (3); B. Map of the probable forests in ancient Dacia and in the Middle Ages, drawn up according to the maps of soils, of vegetation and of the aridity index. 1—Alpine pastures; 2—Forests; 3—Grassy-steppe zones.

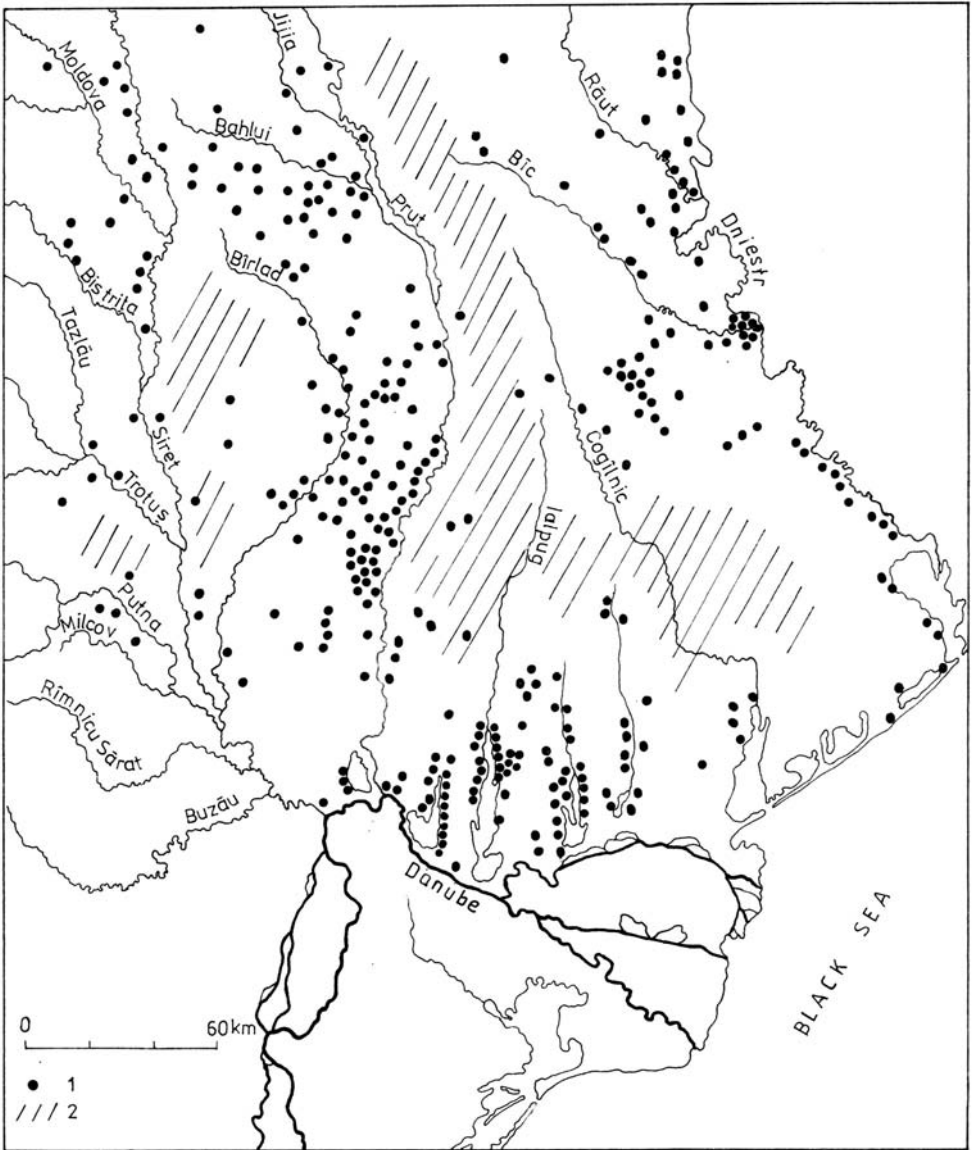


Fig. 2. Map of discoveries of local population settlements in the central and southern Moldavia of the ninth–eleventh centuries (Dridu culture). 1—Settlements; 2—Areas which have been only little investigated.

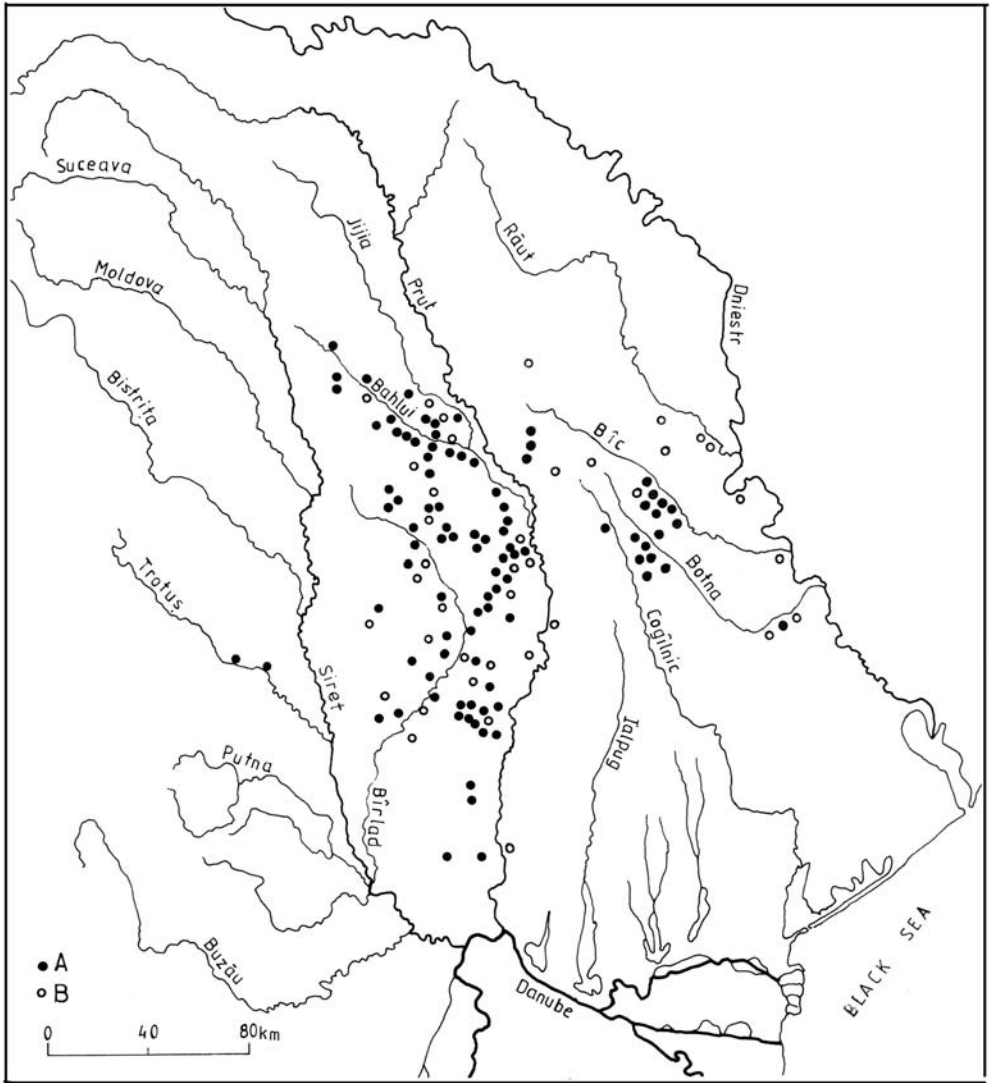


Fig. 3. Map of discoveries of local population settlements in the central and southern Moldavia of the eleventh-twelfth centuries (Rădăcăneni culture). A—Certain discoveries; B—Discoveries that are going to be confirmed.

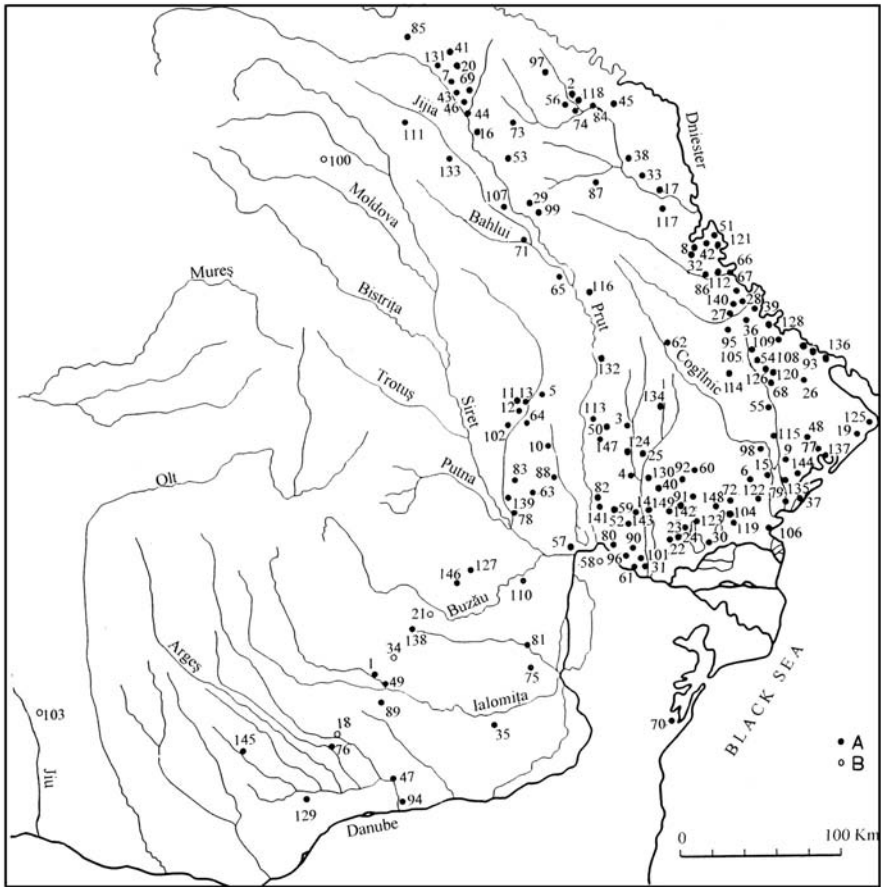


Fig. 4. Map of Turkic nomad-grave discoveries of the tenth–thirteenth centuries in the outer-Carpathian Romanian regions. A—Certain discoveries; B—Uncertain discoveries.

1, Adâncata; 2, Alexandrovca; 3, Alexeevca-Svetlâi; 4, Balabanu; 5, Banca; 6, Baștanovca; 7, Bădraği Vechi; 8, Bălăbănești; 9, Belolesic; 10, Berești; 11, Bărlad-“Dealul Țuguieța”; 12, Bărlad-“Moara lui Chicoș”; 13, Bărlad-“Parc”; 14, Bolgrad; 15, Borisăuca (= Borisovka); 16, Braniște; 17, Brăviceni; 18, Bucharest-“Lacul Tei”; 19, Budachi (= Primorskoc); 20, Burlănești; 21, Buzău; 22, Calanciac; 23, Camenca; 24, Camenca-“Oenița”; 25, Cazaclia; 26, Căplani; 27, Căușeni; 28, Chircăiești; 29, Chirileni; 30, Chislița; 31, Cîuș; 32, Cimișeni; 33, Ciocâlteni; 34, Cireșanu; 35, Ciulnița; 36, Cărnățeni; 37, Cociovatoe; 38, Codrul Nou; 39, Copanca; 40, Copcac; 41, Corjeuți; 42, Corjova; 43, Corpaci; 44, Costești; 45, Cotuijani; 46, Cuconeștii Vechi; 47, Curceni; 48, Divizia; 49, Dridu-“Snagov”; 50, Doina; 51, Dubăsarii Vechi; 52, Etulia; 53, Fălești; 54, Feștelița; 55, Fridensfeld (= Mirnopolc); 56, Frumușica; 57, Galați-“Seromgal”; 58, Garvân-Dinogetia; 59, Găvănoasa; 60, Gorodnec; 61, Grădești (Gradeșka); 62, Grădiște; 63, Grivița-Galați c.; 64, Grivița-Vaslui c.; 65, Grozești; 66, Gura Băcului; 67, Haĭimus; 68, Haĭilar; 69, Hancăuți; 70, Histria (= Istria); 71, Holboca; 72, Holmskoc; 73, Iablona; 74, Ivanovca; 75, Însurăței; 76, Jilava; 77, Joltâi Iar; 78, Liești; 79, Liman; 80, Limanskoc-“Fricăței”; 81, Lișcoteanca; 82, Manta; 83, Matca; 84, Mărculești; 85, Medveja; 86, Mereni; 87, Mândrești; 88, Moscu; 89, Movilița; 90, Nagornoc; 91, Novokamenka; 92, Ogorodnec; 93, Olănești; 94, Oltenița; 95, Opaci; 96, Orlovca; 97, Palanca; 98, Pavlovca; 99, Petrești; 100, Pârteștii de Jos; 101, Plavni; 102, Pogonești; 103, Poiana; 104, Pomezani; 105, Popeasca; 106, Primorskoc; 107, Probotă; 108, Purcari; 109, Răscăieții Noi; 110, Râmnicelcu; 111, Roma; 112, Roșcani; 113, Rumeanteș; 114, Săii; 115, Sărata; 116, Sărăteni; 117, Seliște; 118, Sevirova; 119, Shevcenkovo (Pomazani); 120, Slobozia; 121, Speia; 122, Strumoc; 123, Suvorovo; 124, Svetlâi; 125, Șabalat (= Sadvoc); 126, Ștefan-Vodă; 127, Ștîubei; 128, Talmază; 129, Tangâru (Stocnești); 130, Taraclia; 131, Tețcani; 132, Tochile-Răducani; 133, Todireni; 134, Tomai; 135, Trapovca; 136, Tudora; 137, Tuzla; 138, Ulmeni; 139, Umbrărești; 140, Ursoaia; 141, Vadul lui Isac; 142, Vasilevca; 143, Vinogradovca-“Curci”; 144, Vișnevoe; 145, Vițânești; 146, Ziduri; 147, Zărnești; 148, Zânelor, Stația; 149, Kalcheva (Kal'chevo).

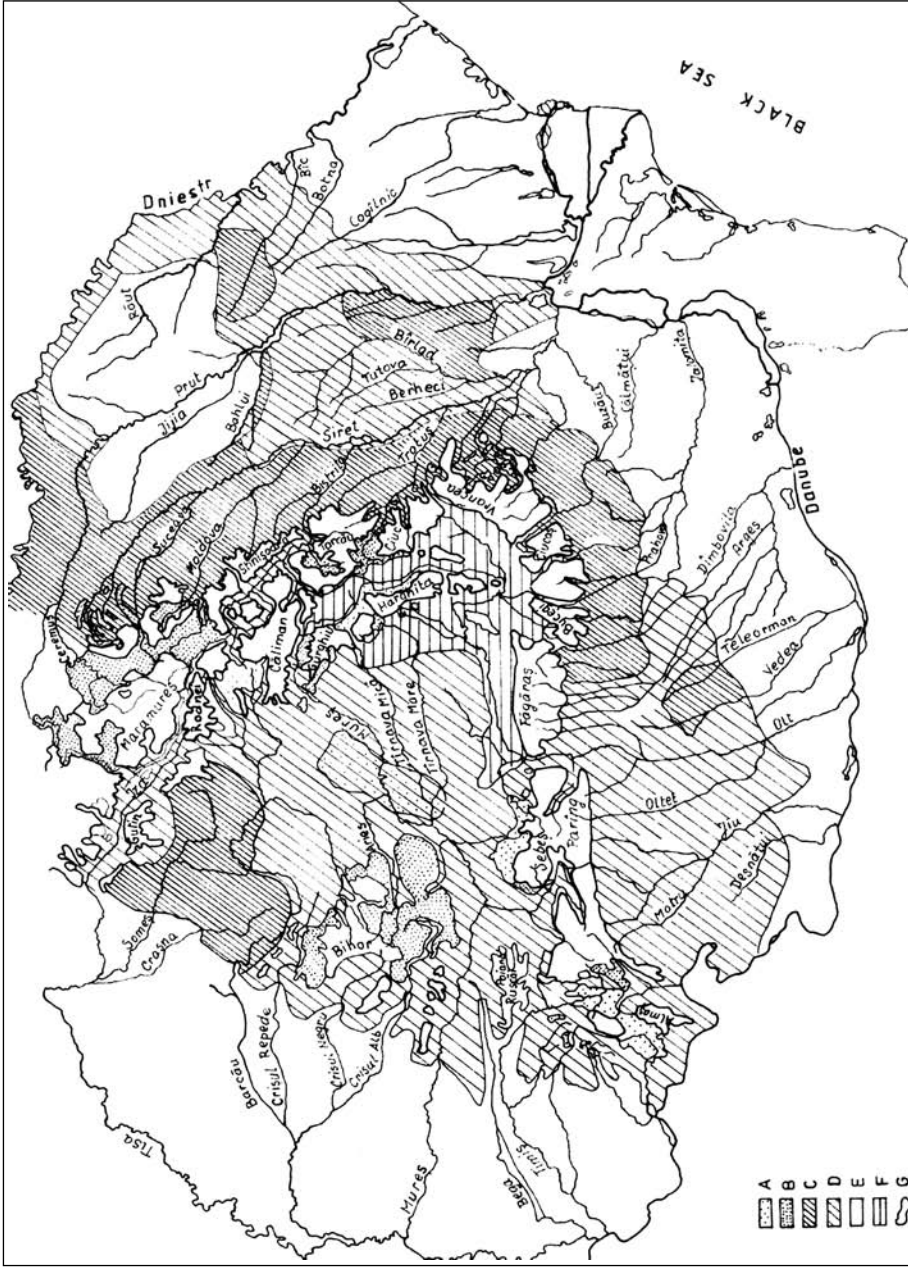


Fig. 5. Map of the main types of rural settlements of Romania. A—Pastoral dwellings; B—Scattered (or spread) villages; C—Dispersed villages; D—Villages with grouping tendency; E—Grouped type villages (associated with mansions, dwellings, farms); F—Compact villages (a variant of the grouped type); G—Groups of mountains (with or without sheepfolds).

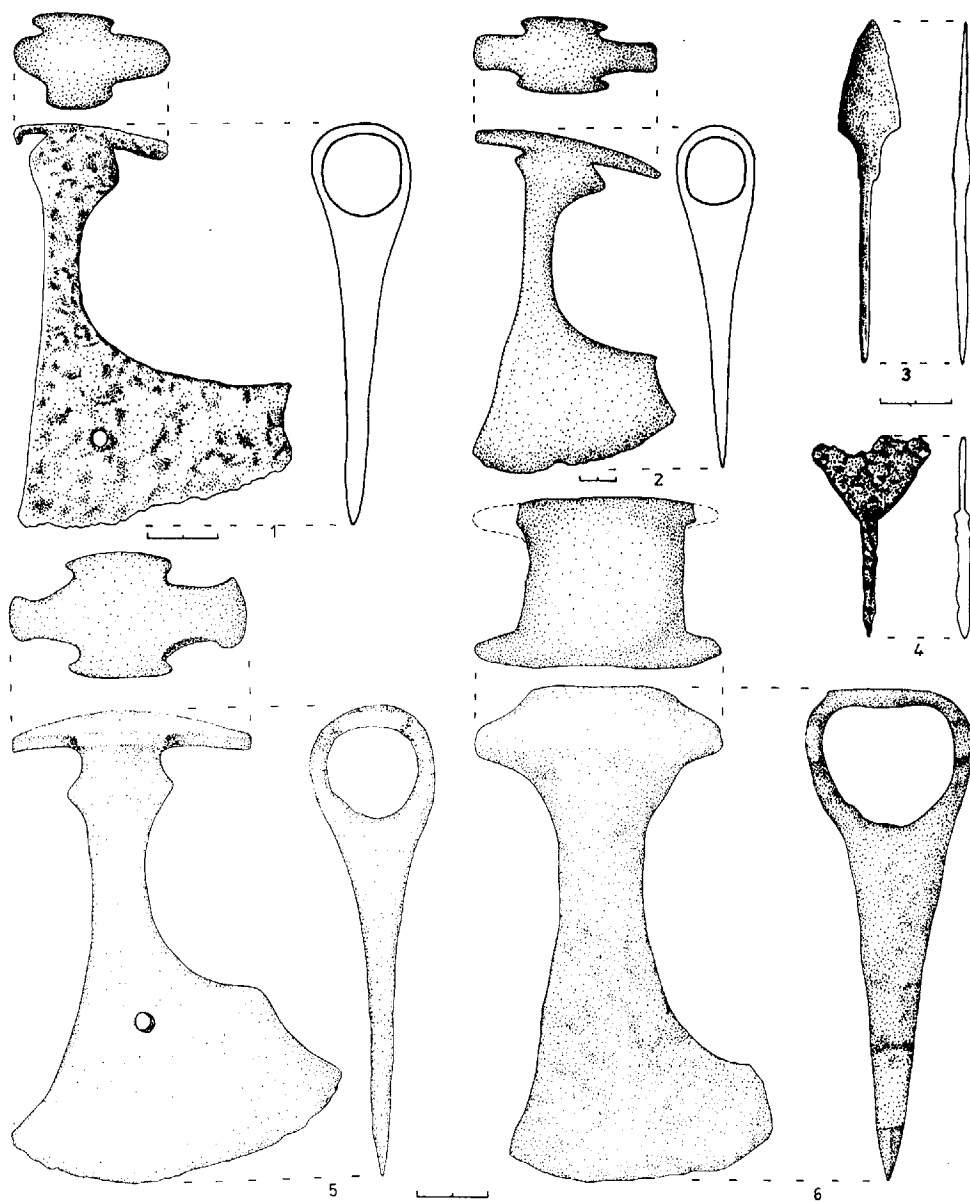


Fig. 6. Iron axes (1, 2, 5, 6) and arrowheads (3, 4) of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered at Fedești (1), Jariștea (2), Cîmpineanca (3), Hlincea-Iași (4), Silișteea Nouă (5) and Bârlălești (6).

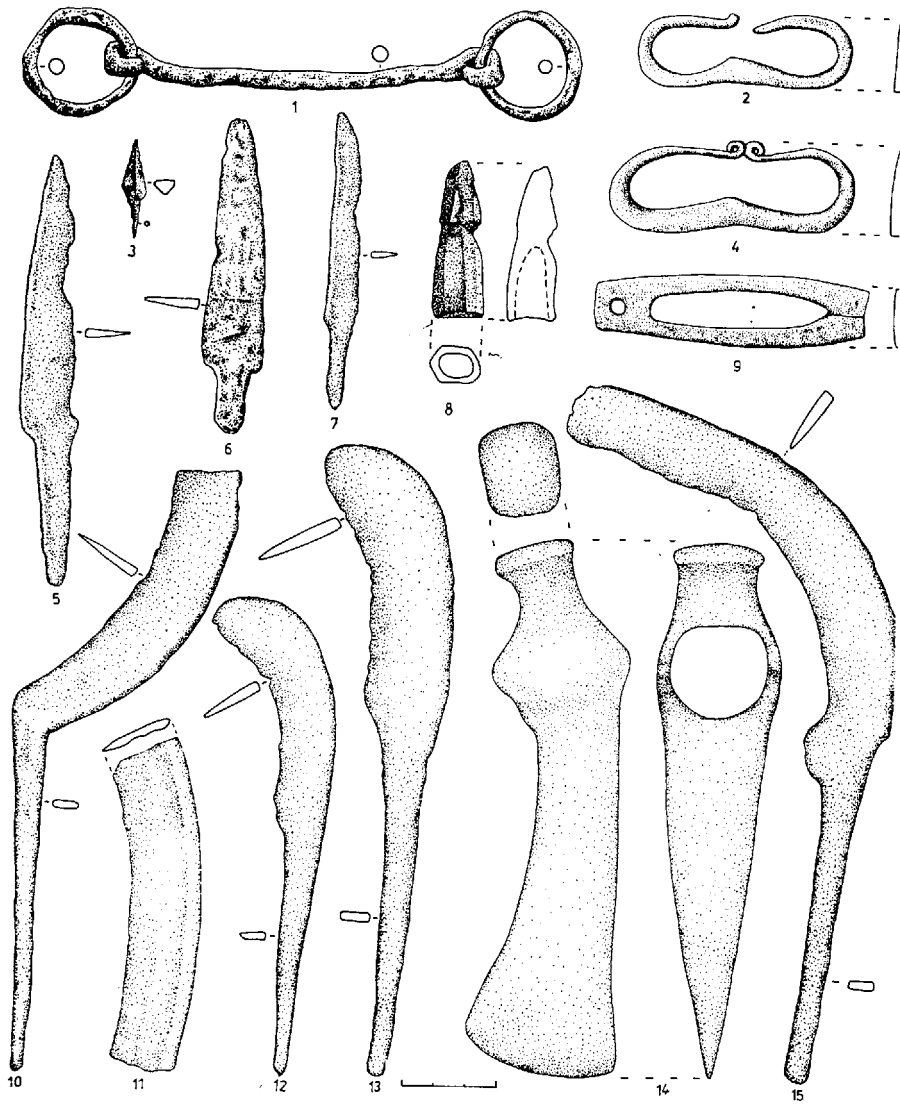


Fig. 7. Iron (1-7, 9-15) and horn (8) objects from the settlements of the tenth-eleventh centuries discovered at Simila (1), Murgeni (2, 4, 9), Hlincea-Iași (3, 8), Gârbovăț (5, 7, 11-15) and Bârlălești (6, 10).



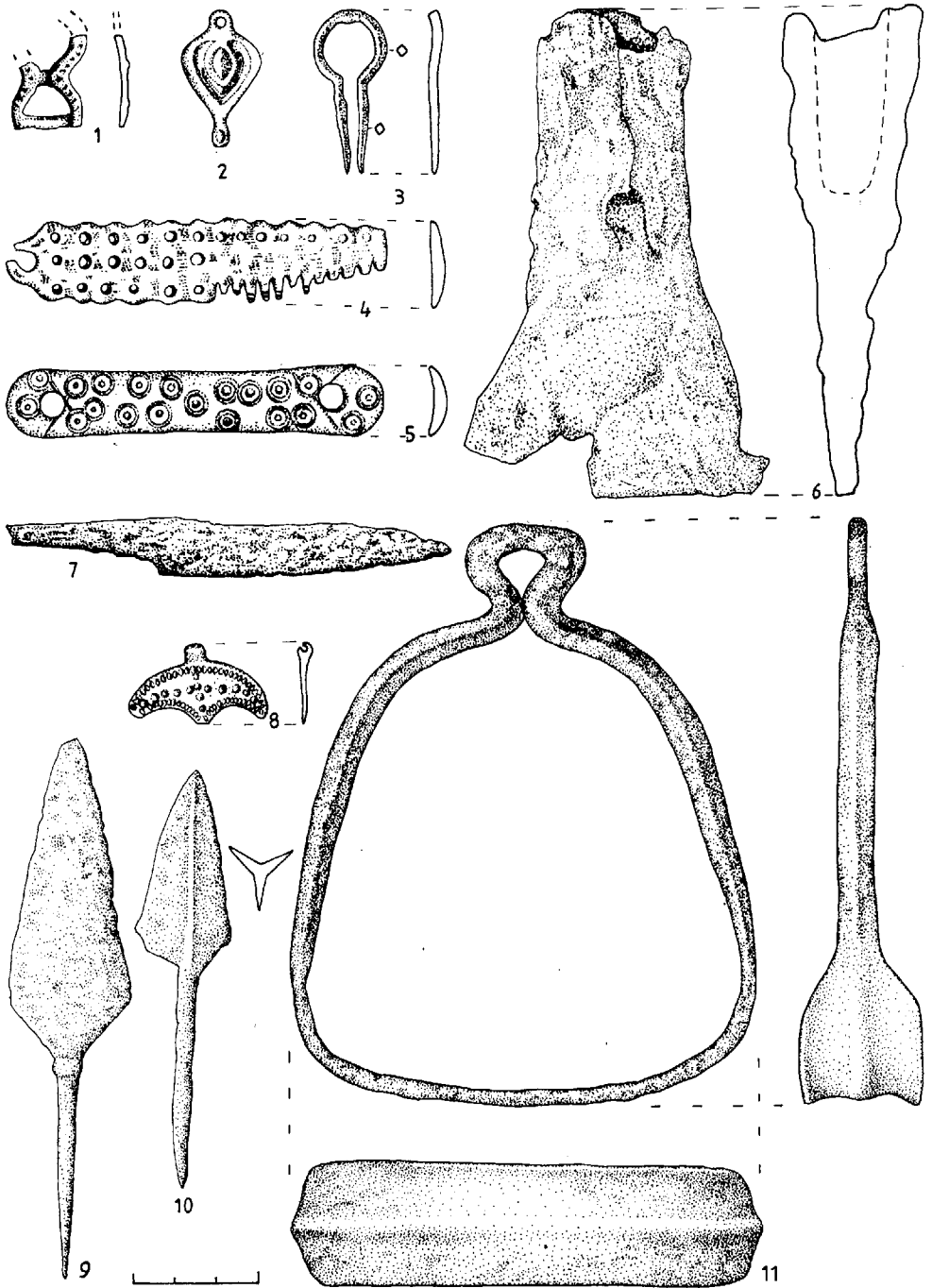


Fig. 8. Bronze (1, 2, 8), iron (3, 6, 7, 9–11) and horn (4, 5) objects of the ninth–twelfth centuries discovered at Ciortești (1), Dănești (2, 5), Băiceni (3, 4, 8), Umbrărești (6), Cămpineanca (7), Crucișoara (9), Roșcani (10) and Grumezoaia (11).

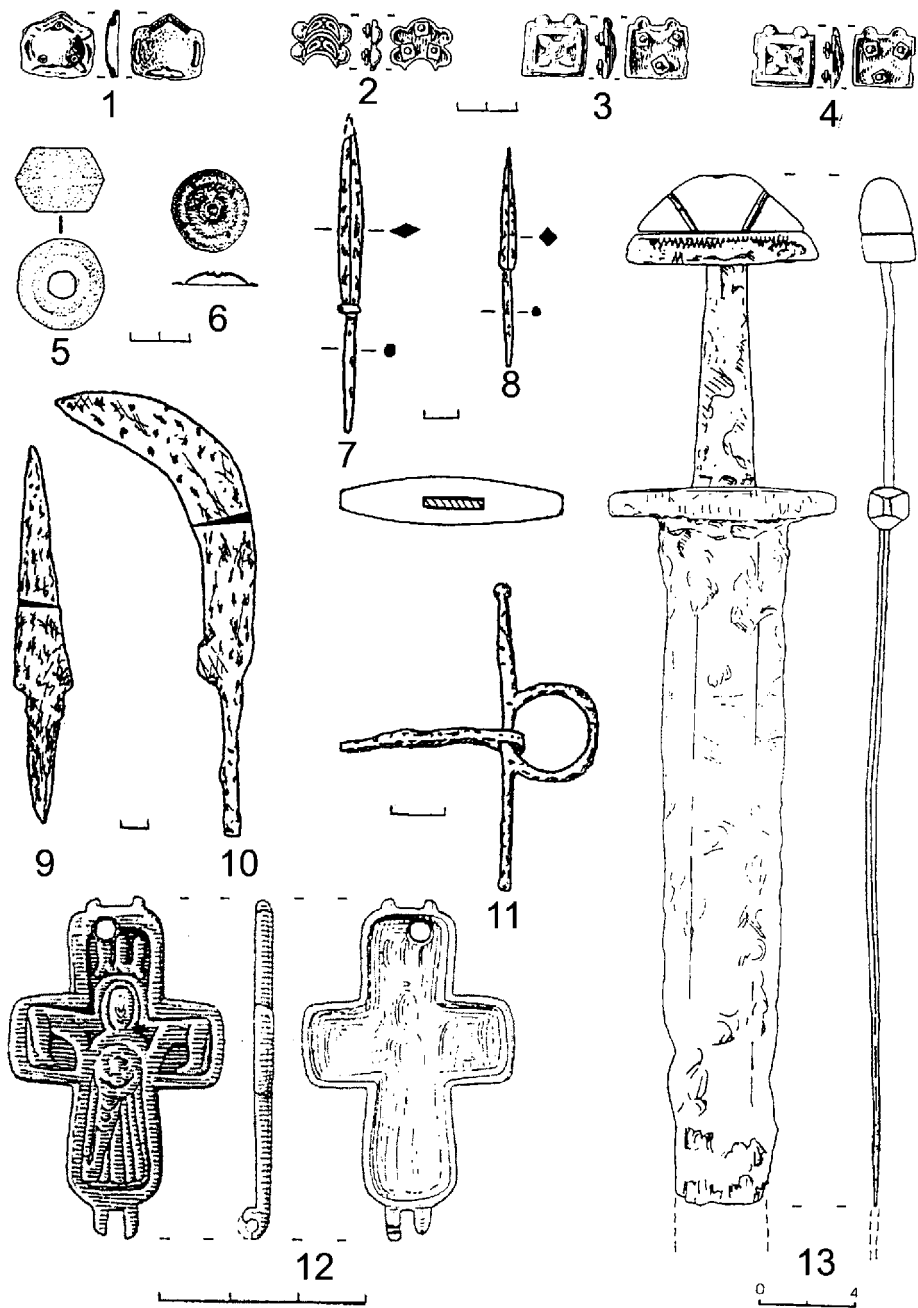


Fig. 9. Silver (1, 6) and bronze (2-4) brackets, bronze reliquary cross (12), stone spindle-whorl (5), iron arrowheads (7, 8), knife (9), snaffle-bit (11) and sword (13) of the ninth-eleventh centuries discovered at Hansca (1-6, 12), Bogatoe (7-11) and Pașcani (13).

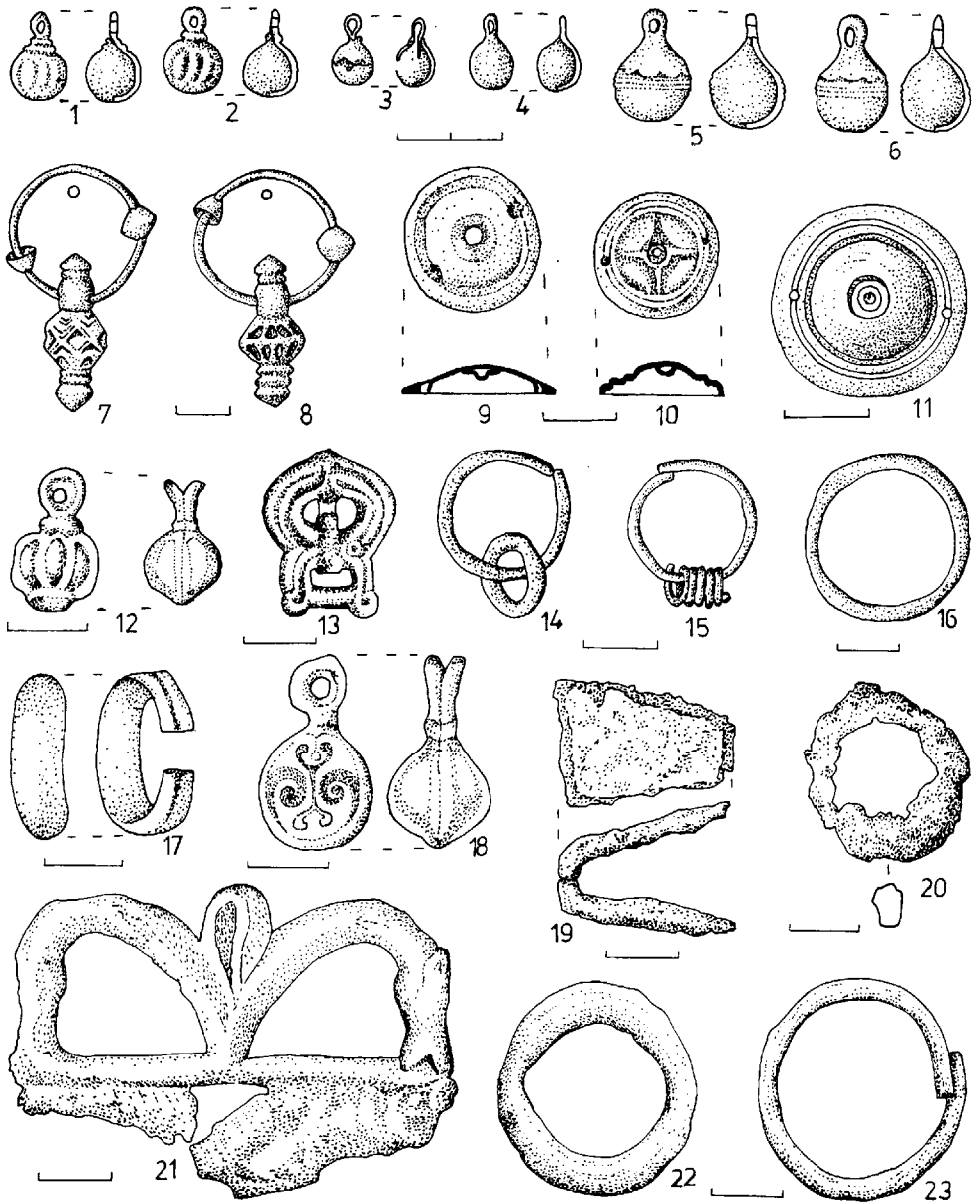


Fig. 10. Adornment objects and other metal pieces discovered in the tenth–twelfth centuries necropoleis at Arsură (1–8) and Hansca-“Căprăria” (9–23).

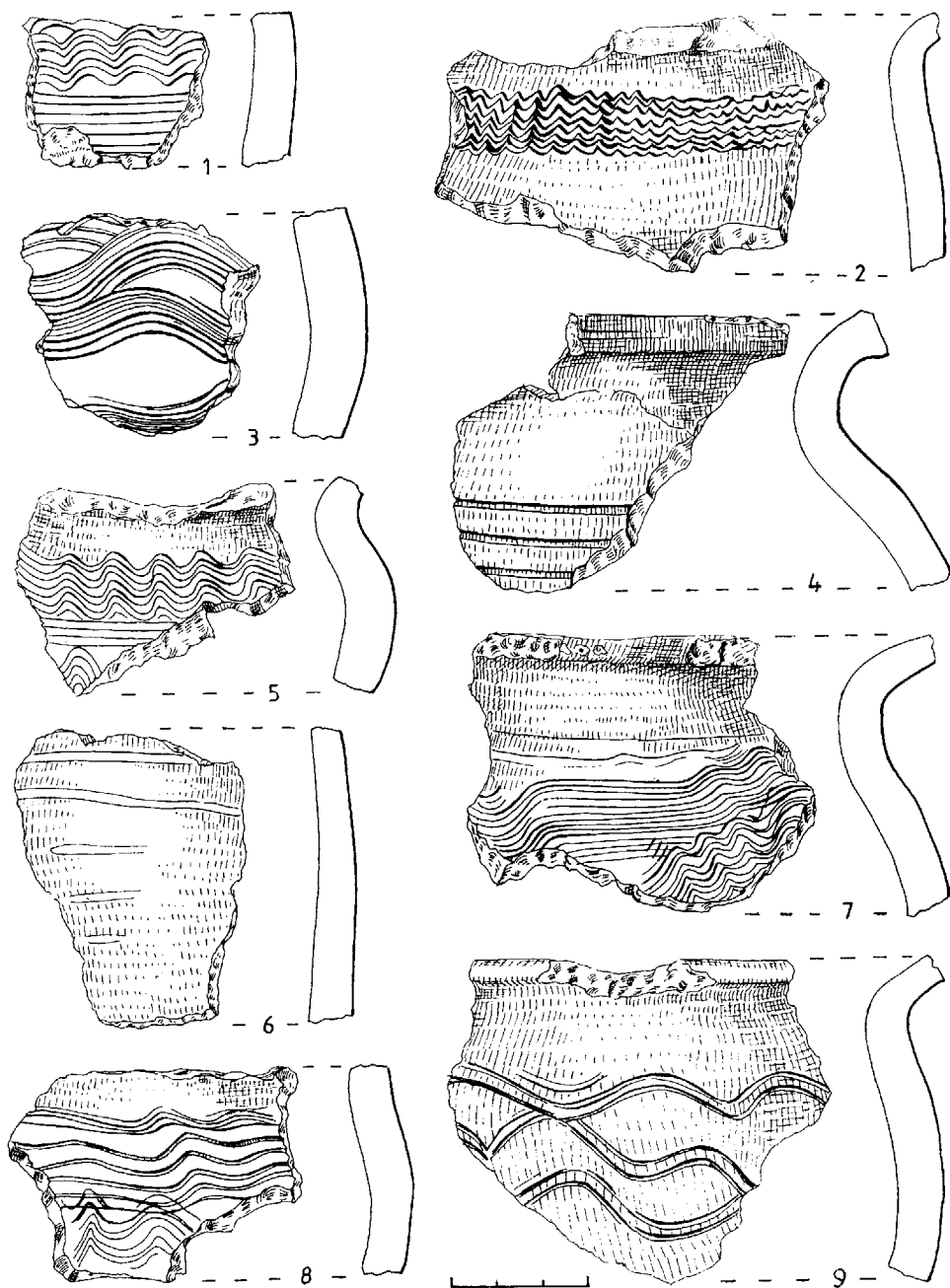


Fig. 11. Potsherds discovered in the ninth–tenth centuries settlement of Bârlad-“Prodana”.

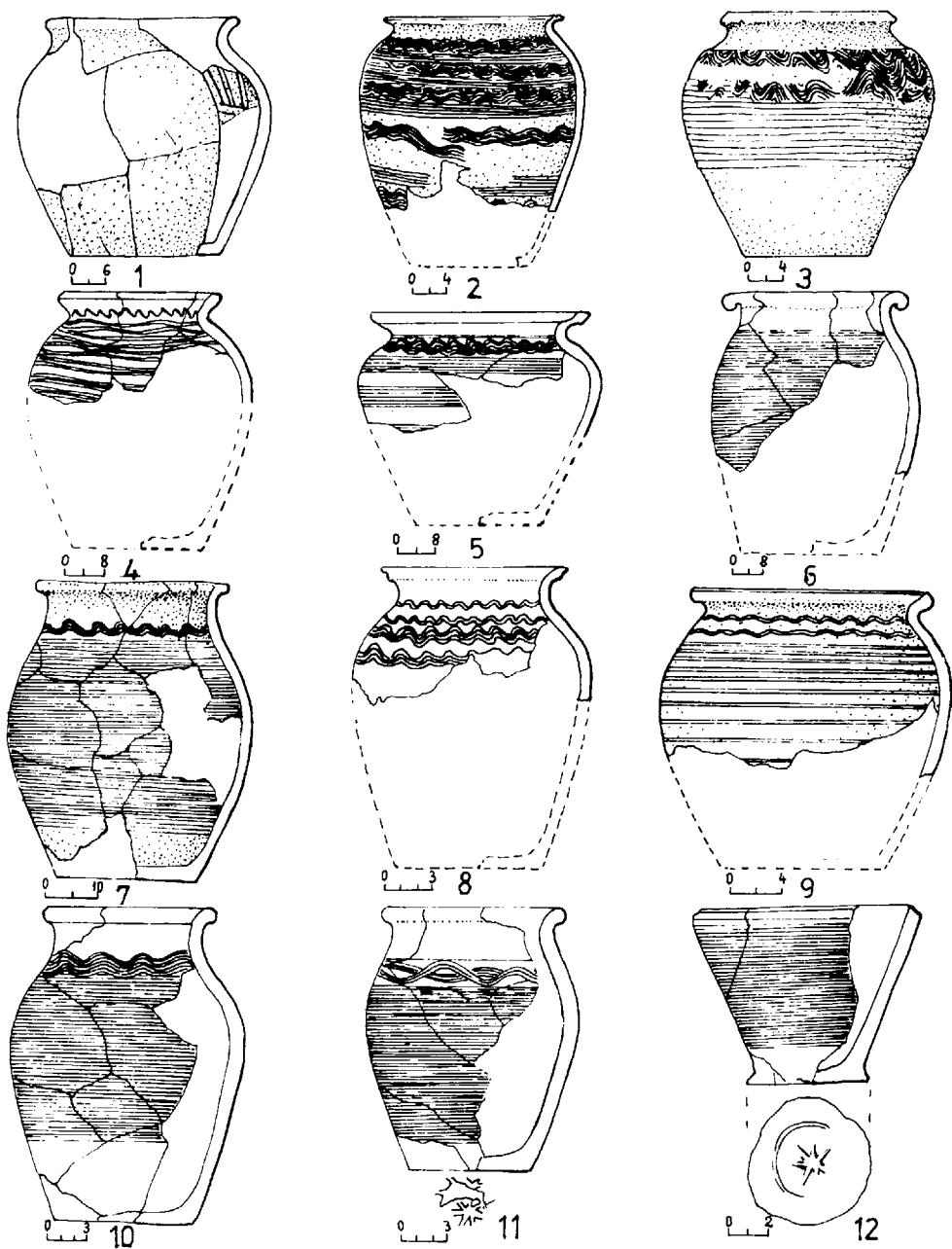


Fig. 12. Pottery of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered in the settlements of Calfa (1–3, 9) and Orhei-“Petruha” (4–8, 10–12).

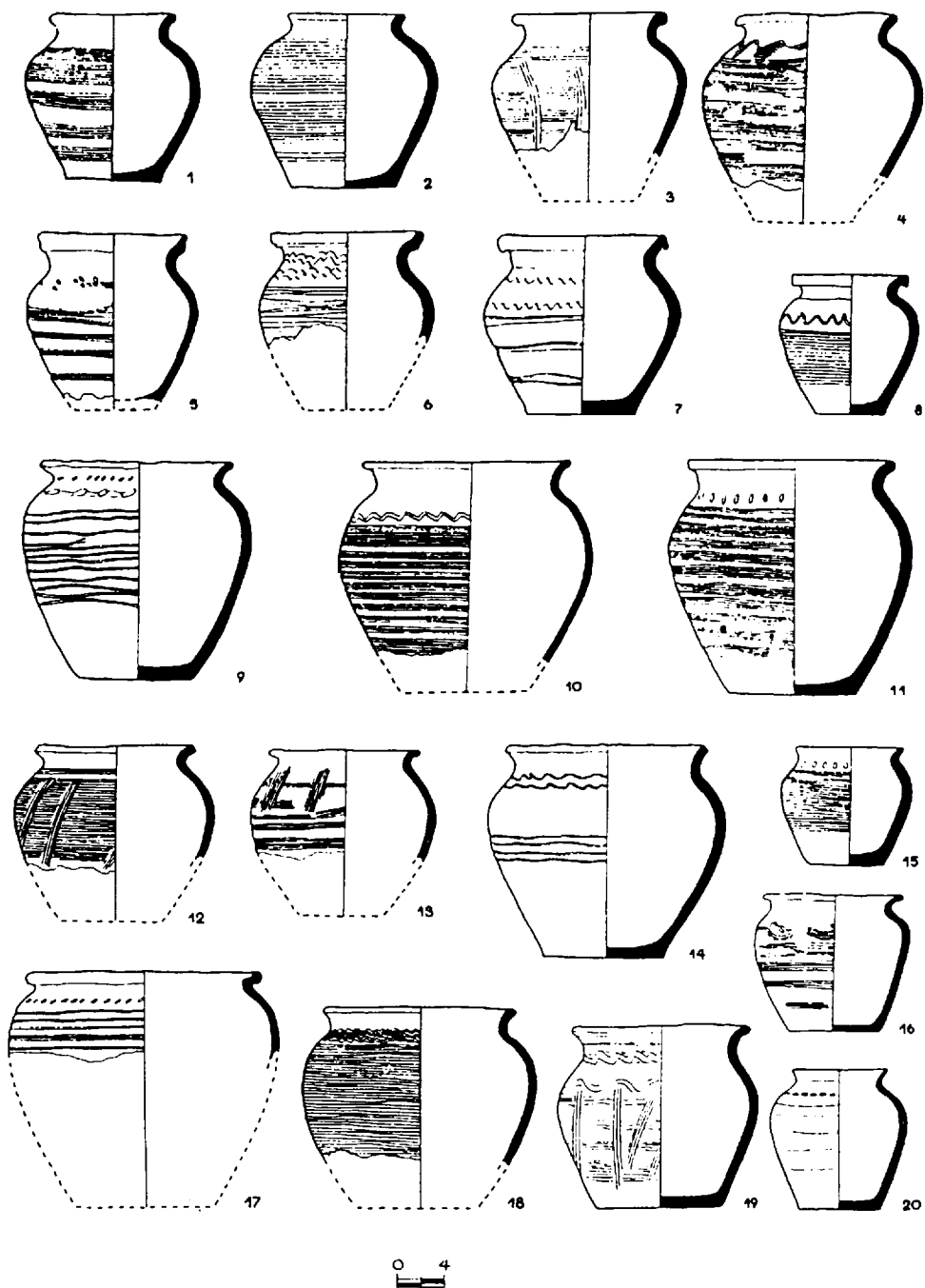


Fig. 13. Pottery of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered in the settlement of Hansca.

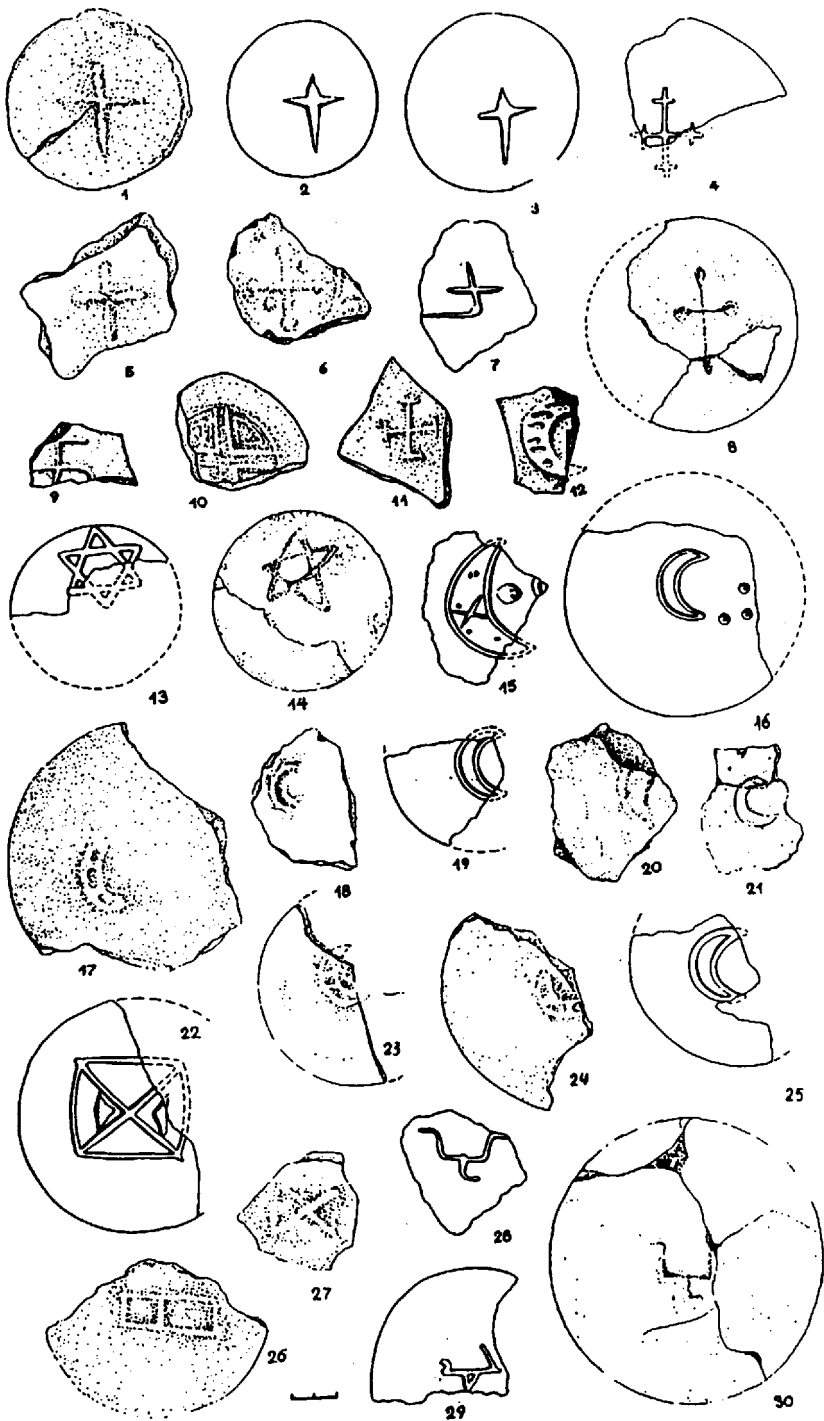


Fig. 14. Stamps on the bottom of the tenth–eleventh centuries pots discovered in the settlement of Hansca.

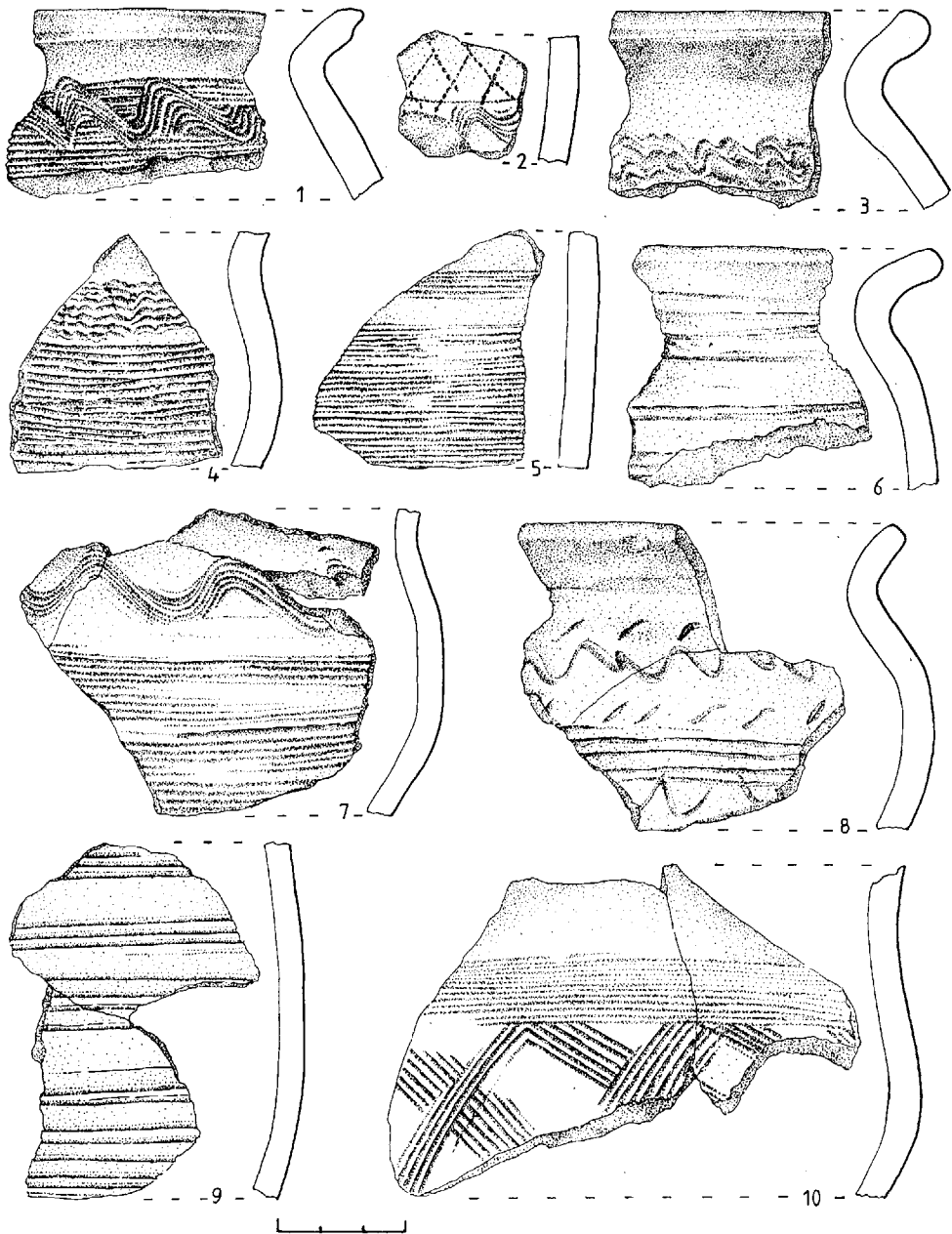


Fig. 15. Potsherds of the tenth–eleventh centuries discovered in the settlement of Bârlăești.



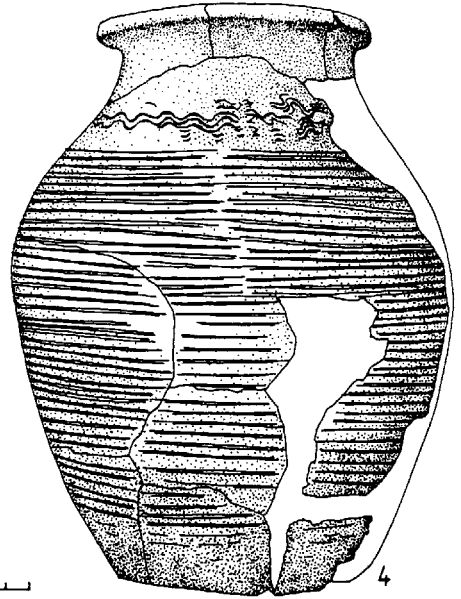
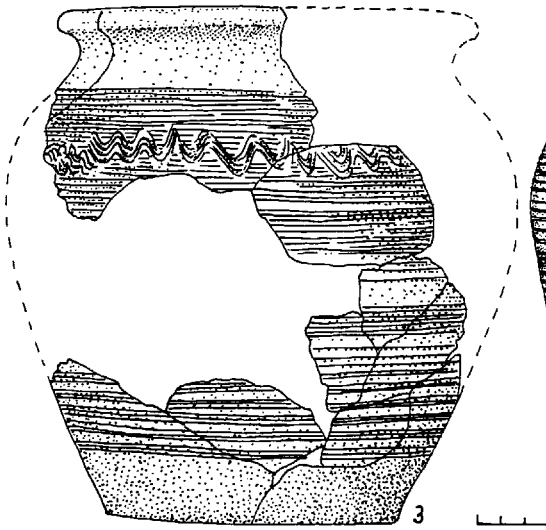
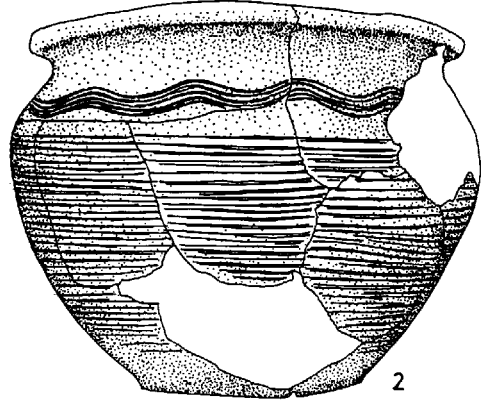
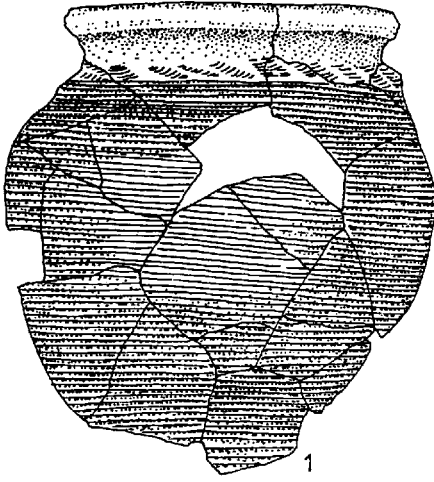


Fig. 16. Pottery of the tenth–eleventh centuries (1, 3) and eleventh–twelfth centuries (2, 4) discovered in the settlements of Bărlălești (1, 3) and Răducăneni (2, 4).

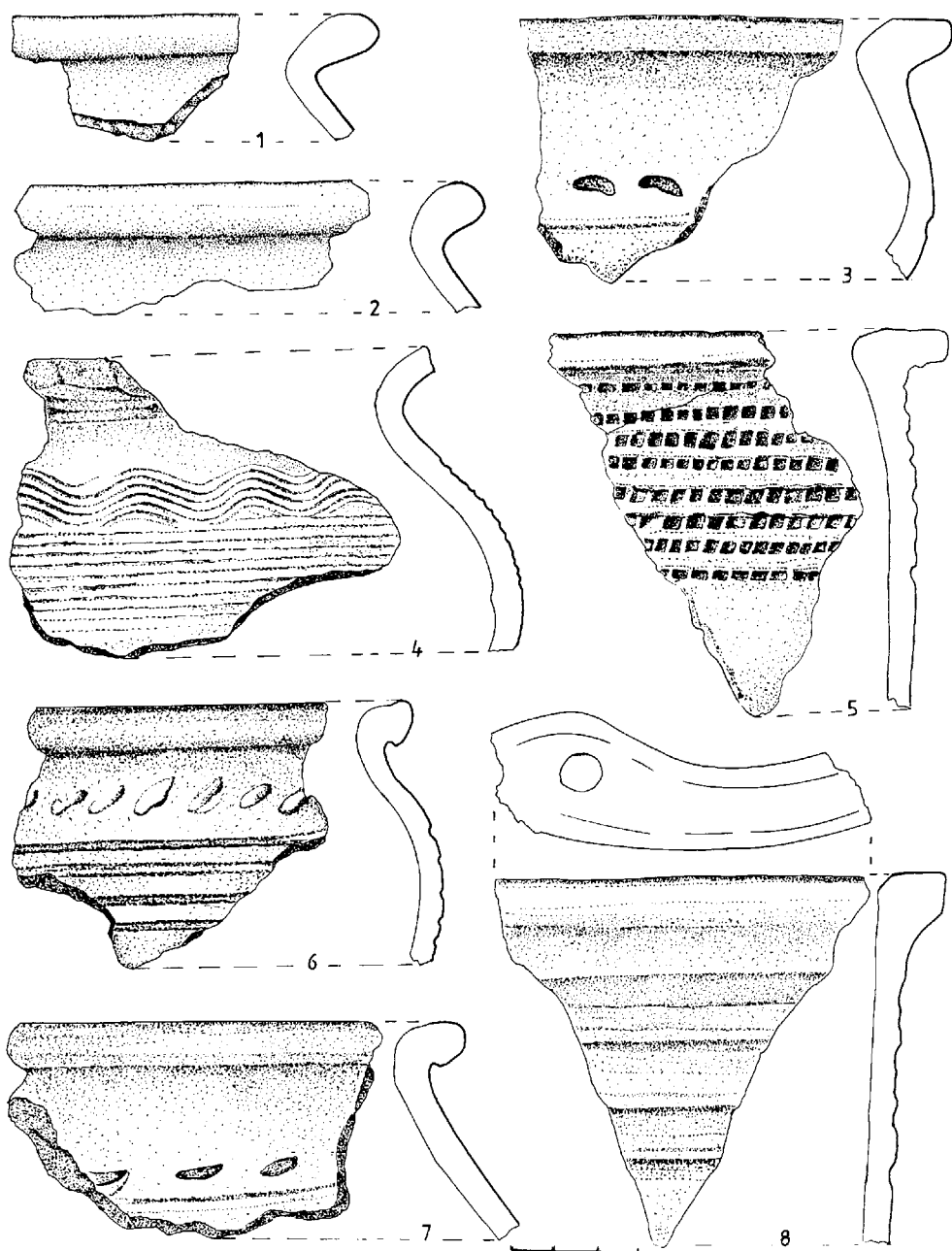


Fig. 17. Potsherds of the eleventh–twelfth centuries discovered in the settlements of Dănești (1, 2) and Răducăneni (3–8).

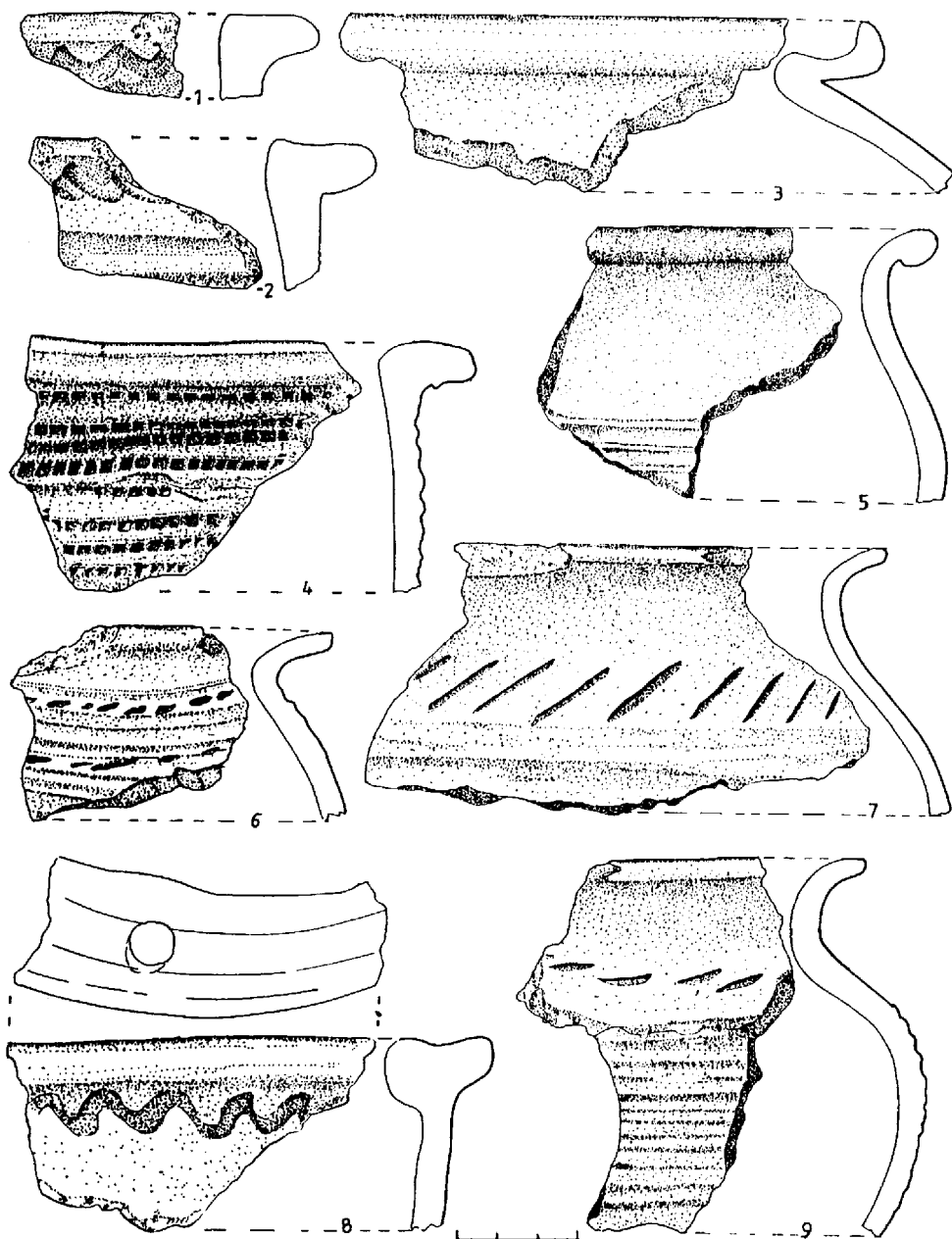


Fig. 18. Potsherds of the eleventh–twelfth centuries discovered in the settlements of Pâhnești (1, 2) and Răducăneni (3–9).

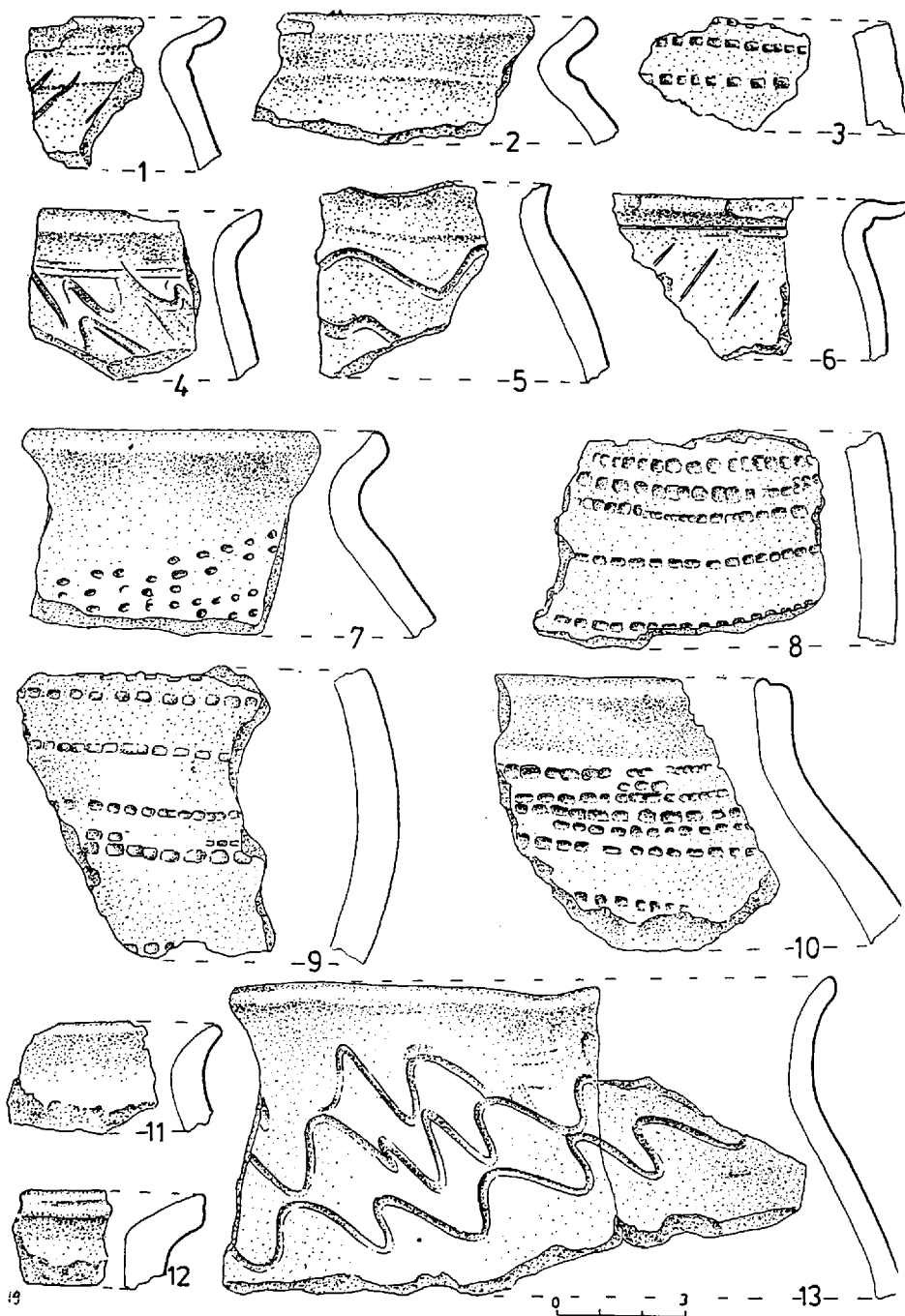


Fig. 19. Potsherds of the twelfth–thirteenth centuries discovered in the settlement of Iași-“Nicolina”.

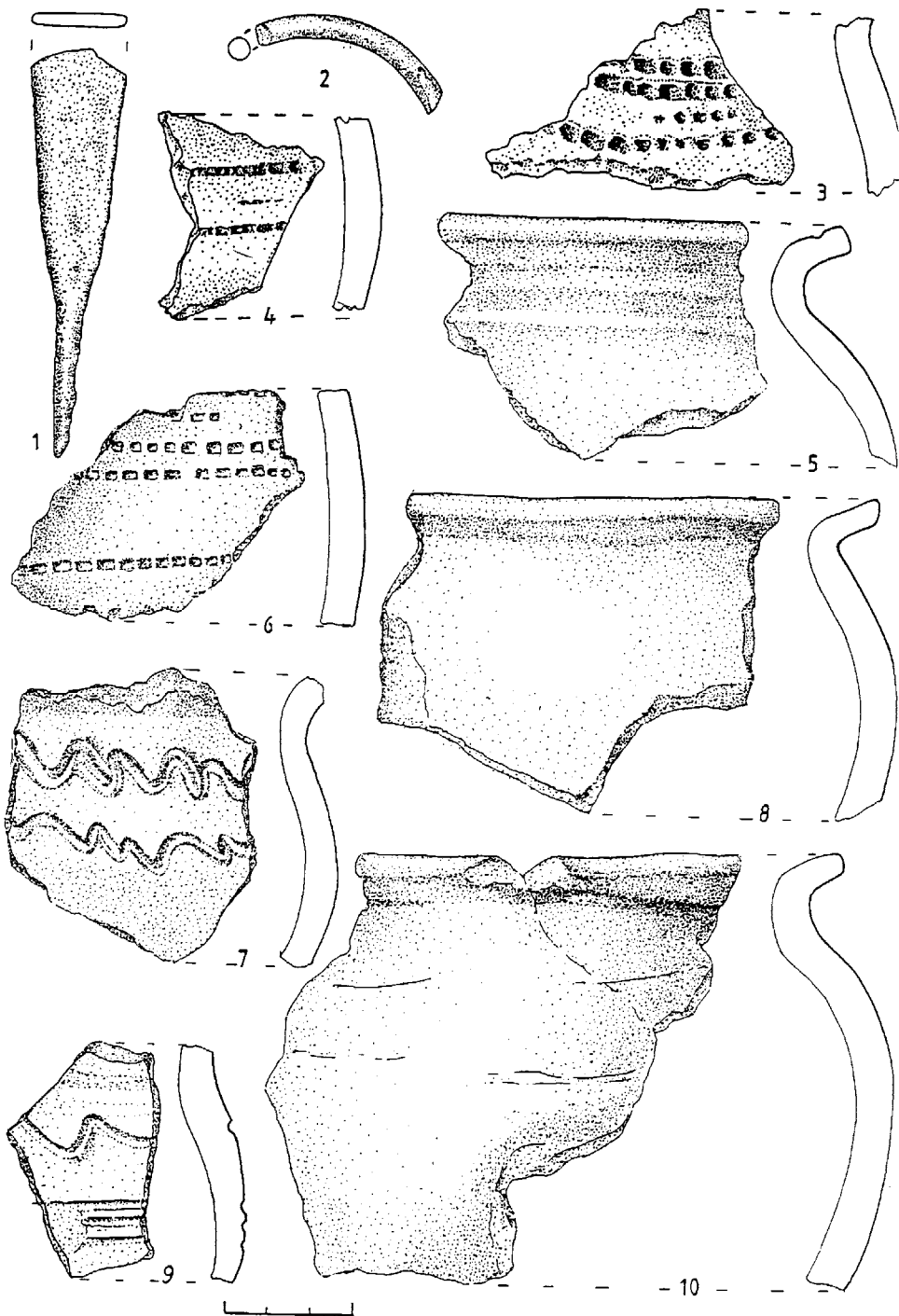


Fig. 20. Iron arrowhead (1), glass bracelet (2) and potsherds (3-10) from the twelfth-thirteenth centuries settlement of Iași-‘Nicolina’.

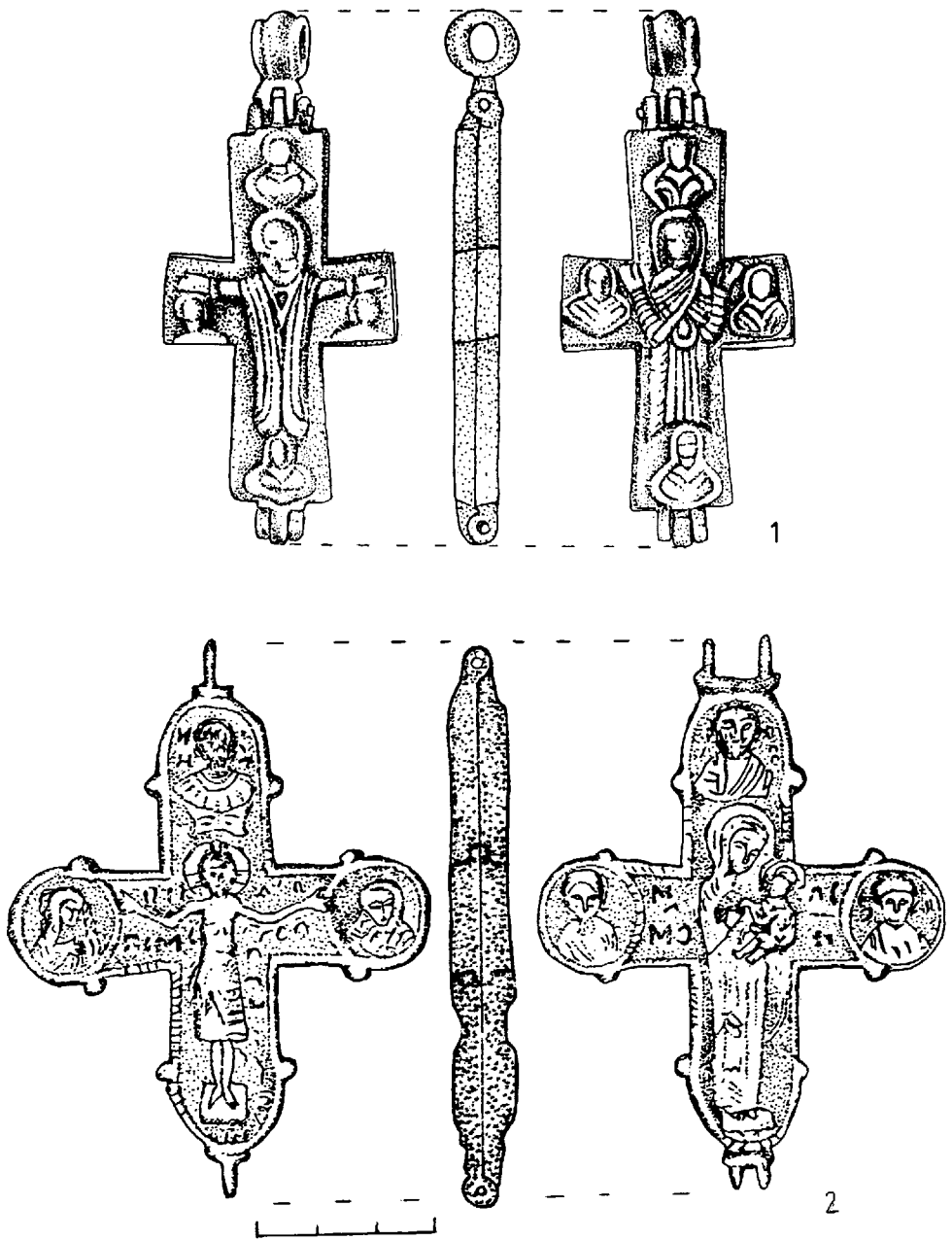


Fig. 21. Byzantine (1) and Russian (2) bronze double reliquary crosses of the tenth–eleventh (1) and twelfth–thirteenth (2) centuries from Șuletea (1) and from an unidentified place in the Suceava area (2).

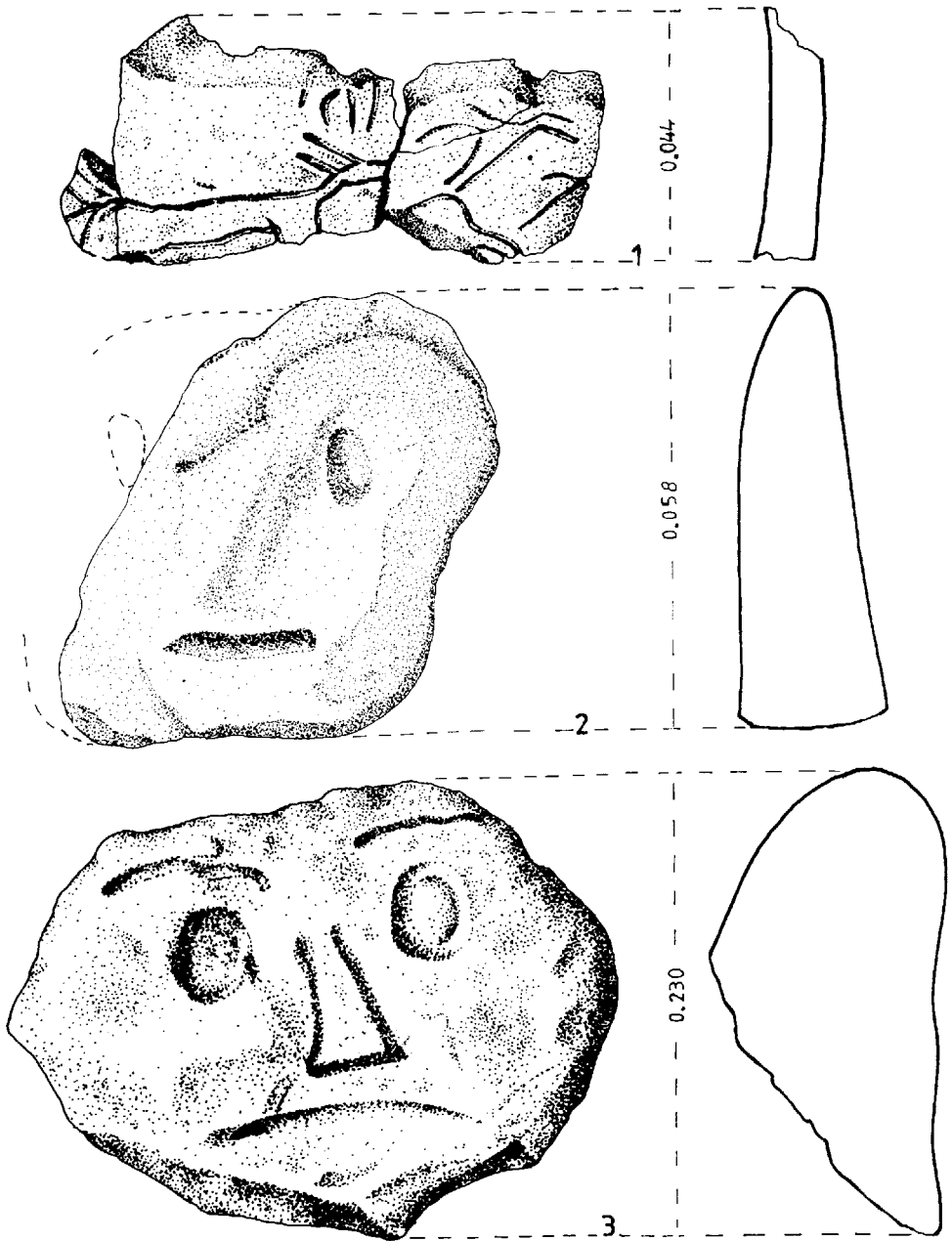


Fig. 22. Ceramic decorated with zoomorphic motifs (1) and human figures beings carved in gritstone (2, 3) of the ninth–tenth centuries discovered at Gara Banca (1, 2) and Delești (3).

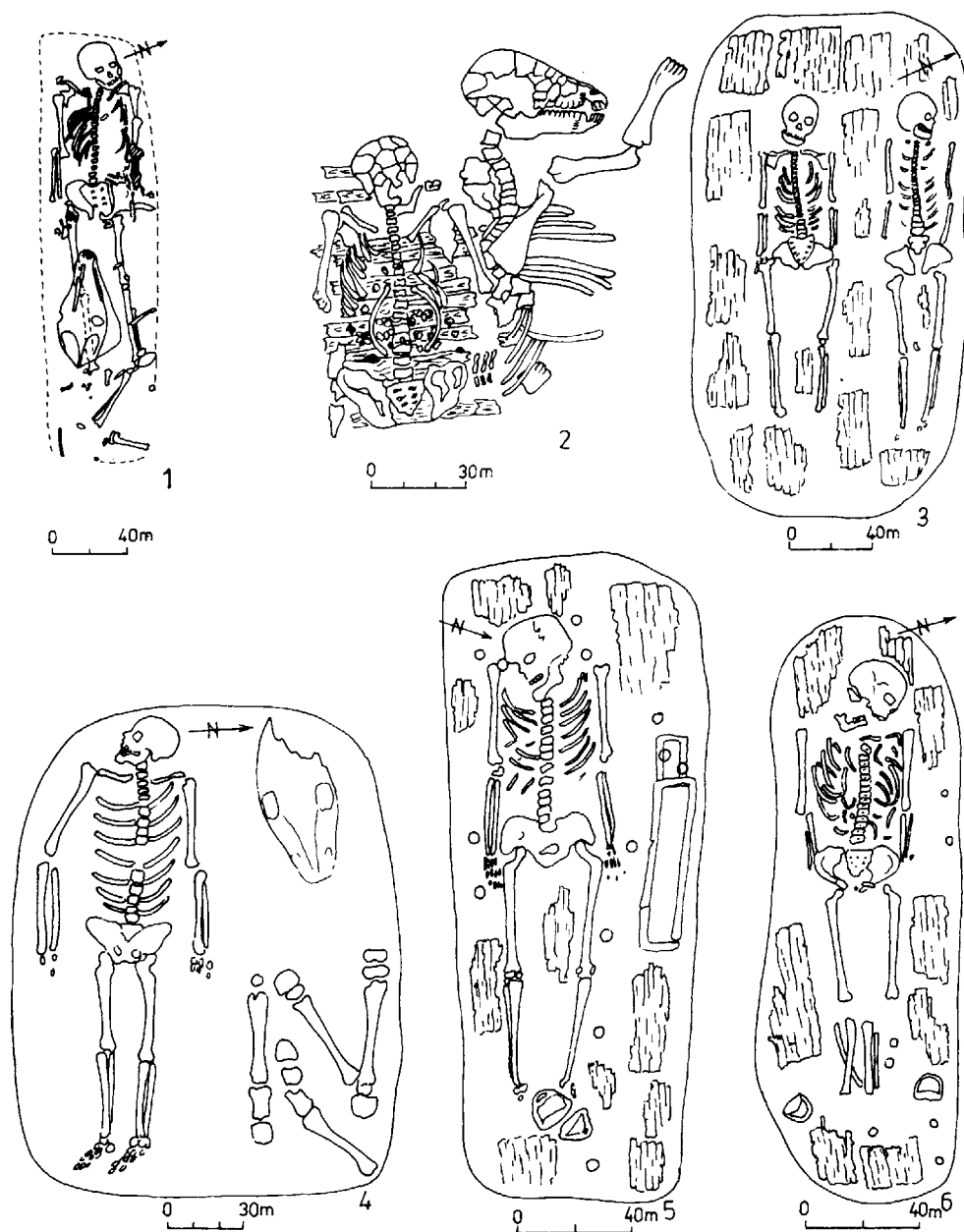


Fig. 23. Plan of the Turkic nomads' graves at Probota (1), Trapovca (2), Seliște (3, 5, 6) and Zărnești (4)



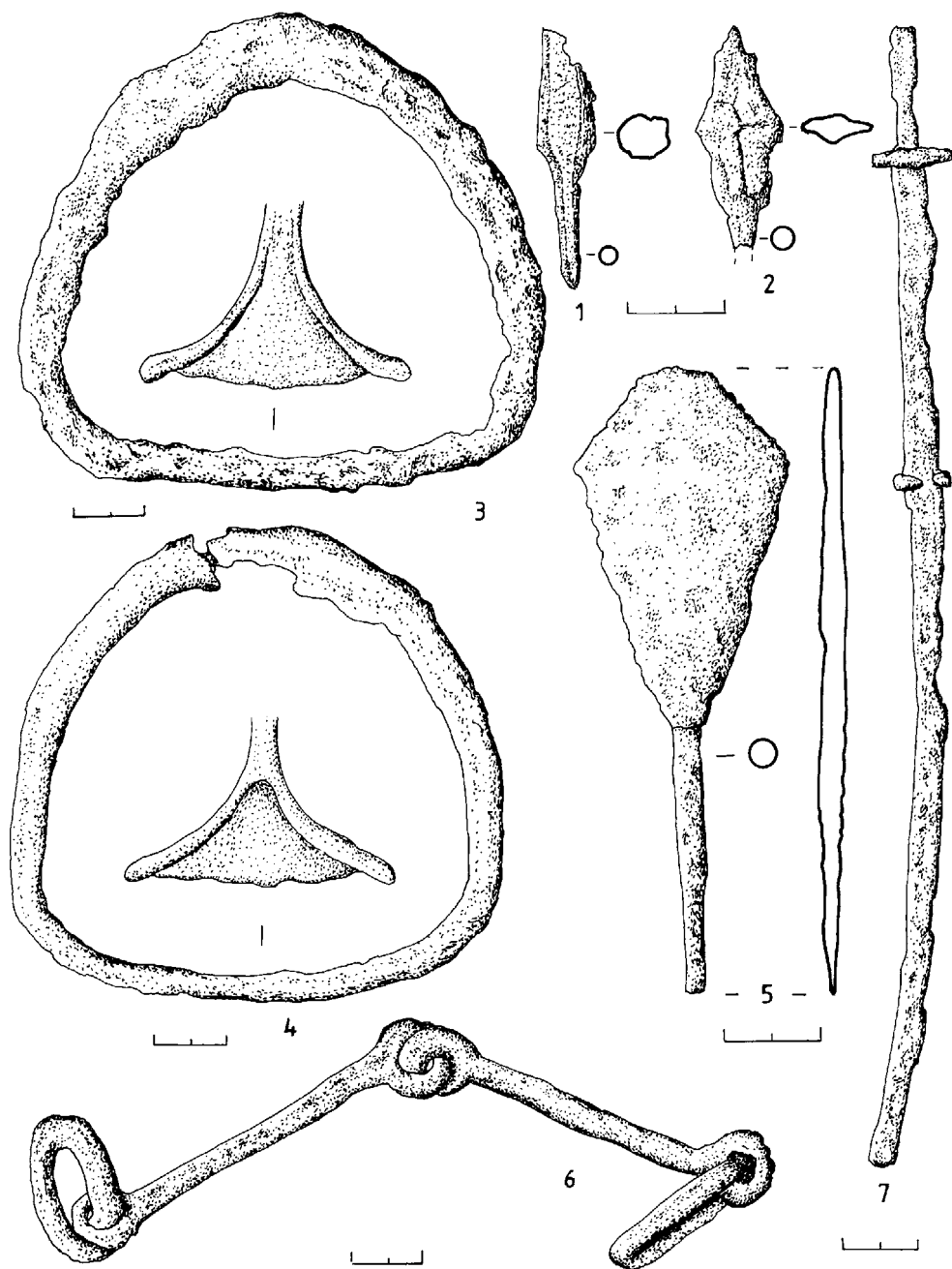


Fig. 24. Iron objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Balabanu.

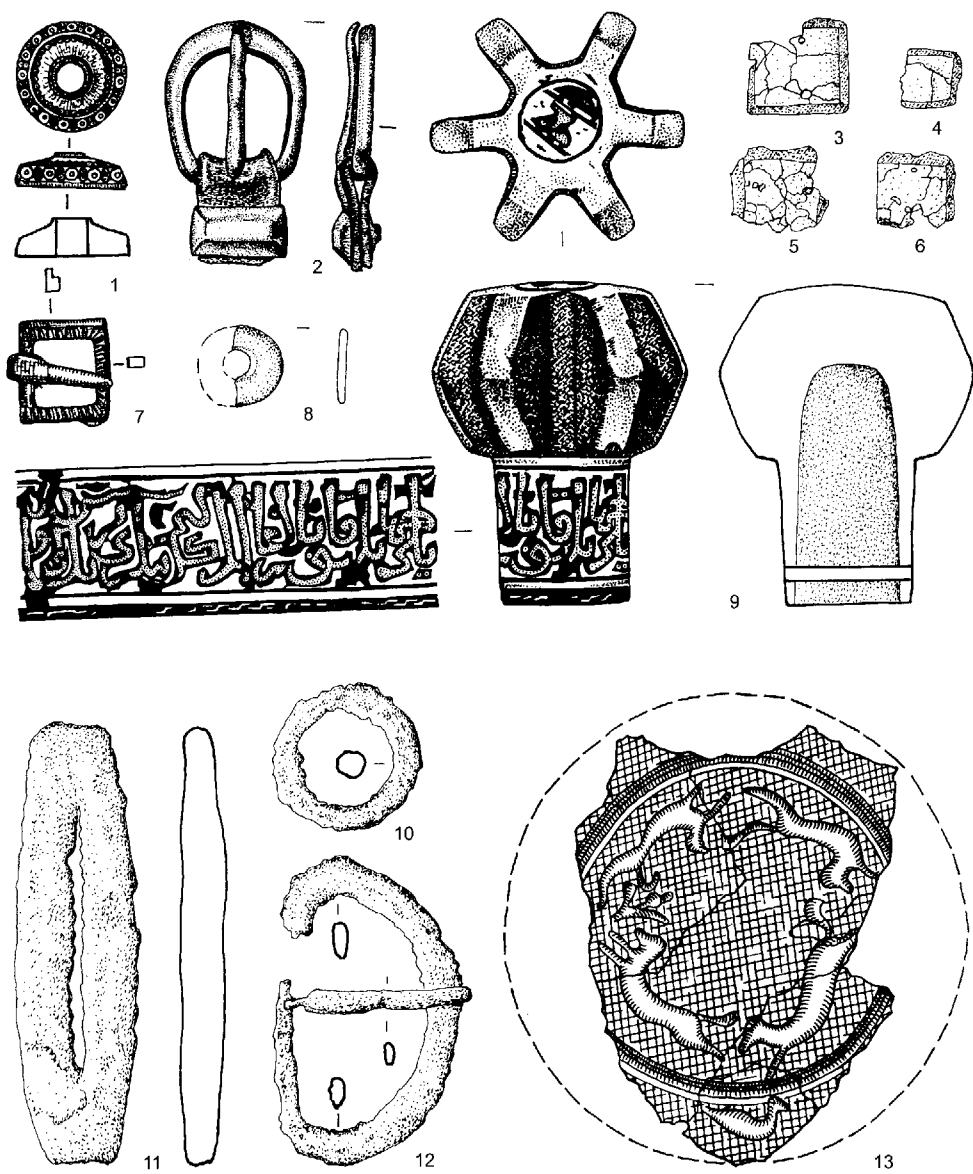


Fig. 25. Objects of horn (1), silver (2, 8) gold (3-6), bronze (7, 13), gilded and silvered iron (9) and iron (10-12) from the inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Balabanu.

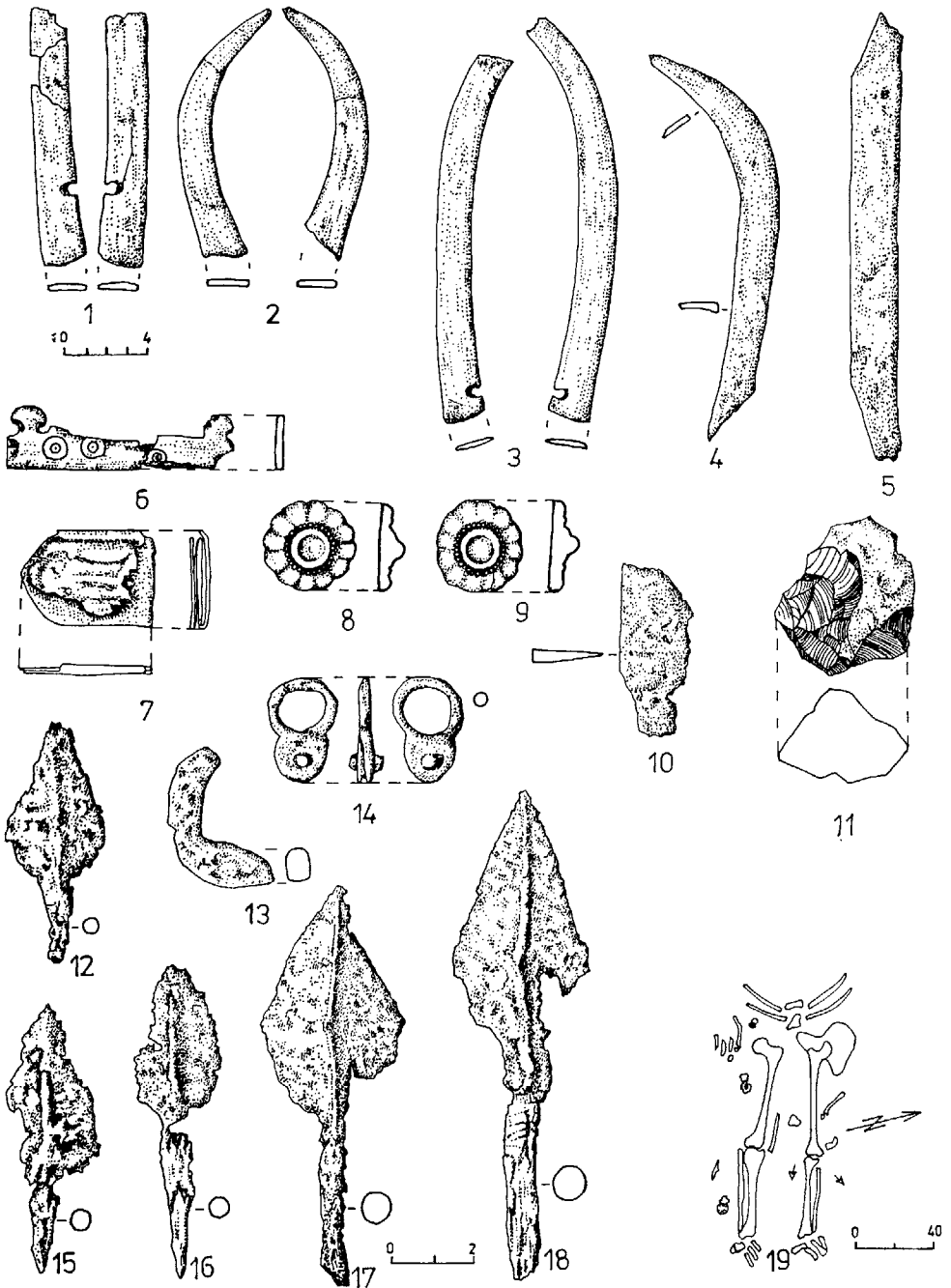


Fig. 26. Plan of a destroyed grave (19) and the funerary inventory (1-18) of the Turkic nomads' graves at Banca.

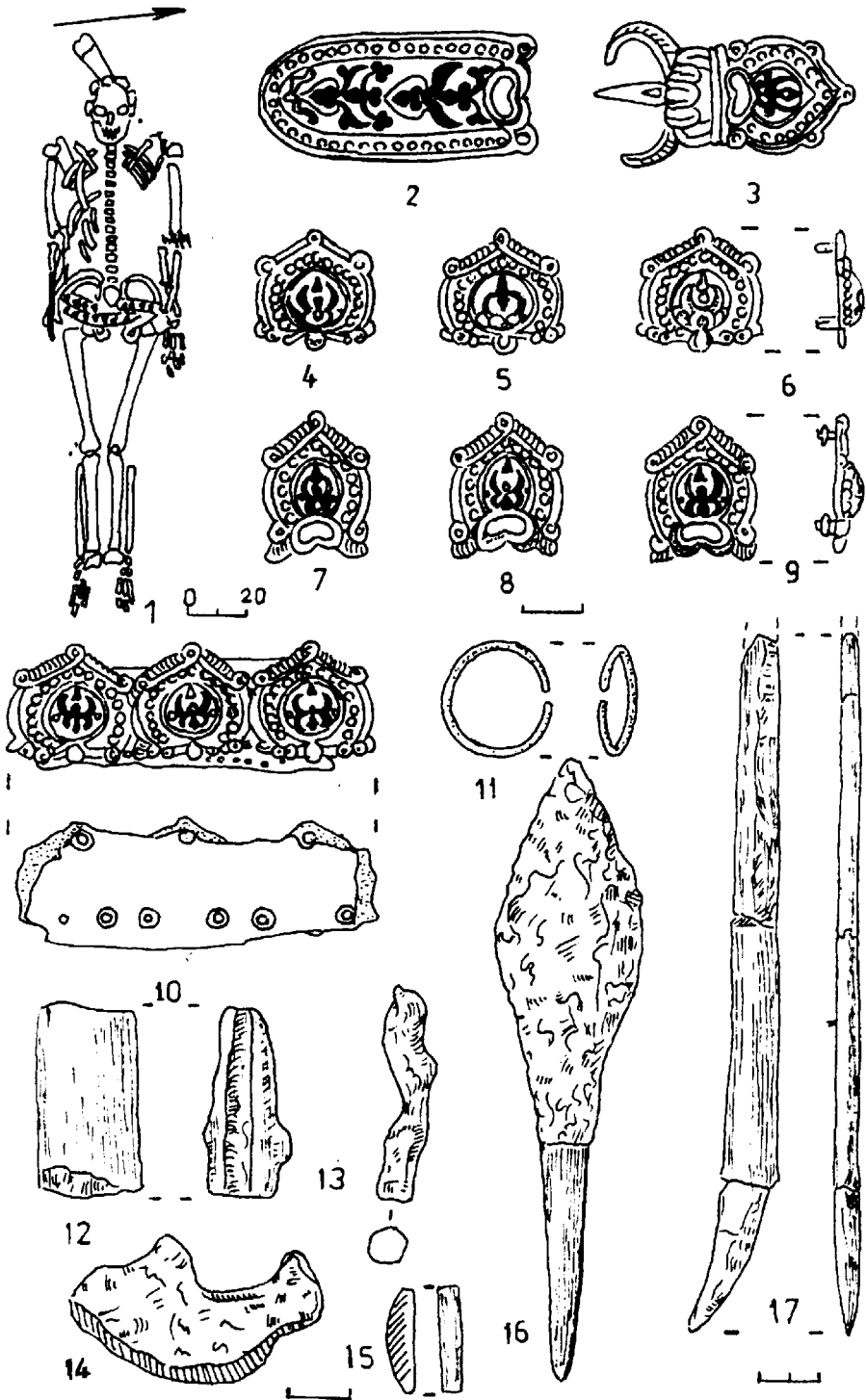


Fig. 27. Plan of a Turkic nomads' grave at Bădragii Vechi (1) and silver (2–10), gold (11), bone (12, 15) and iron (13, 14, 16, 17) objects from its funerary inventory.

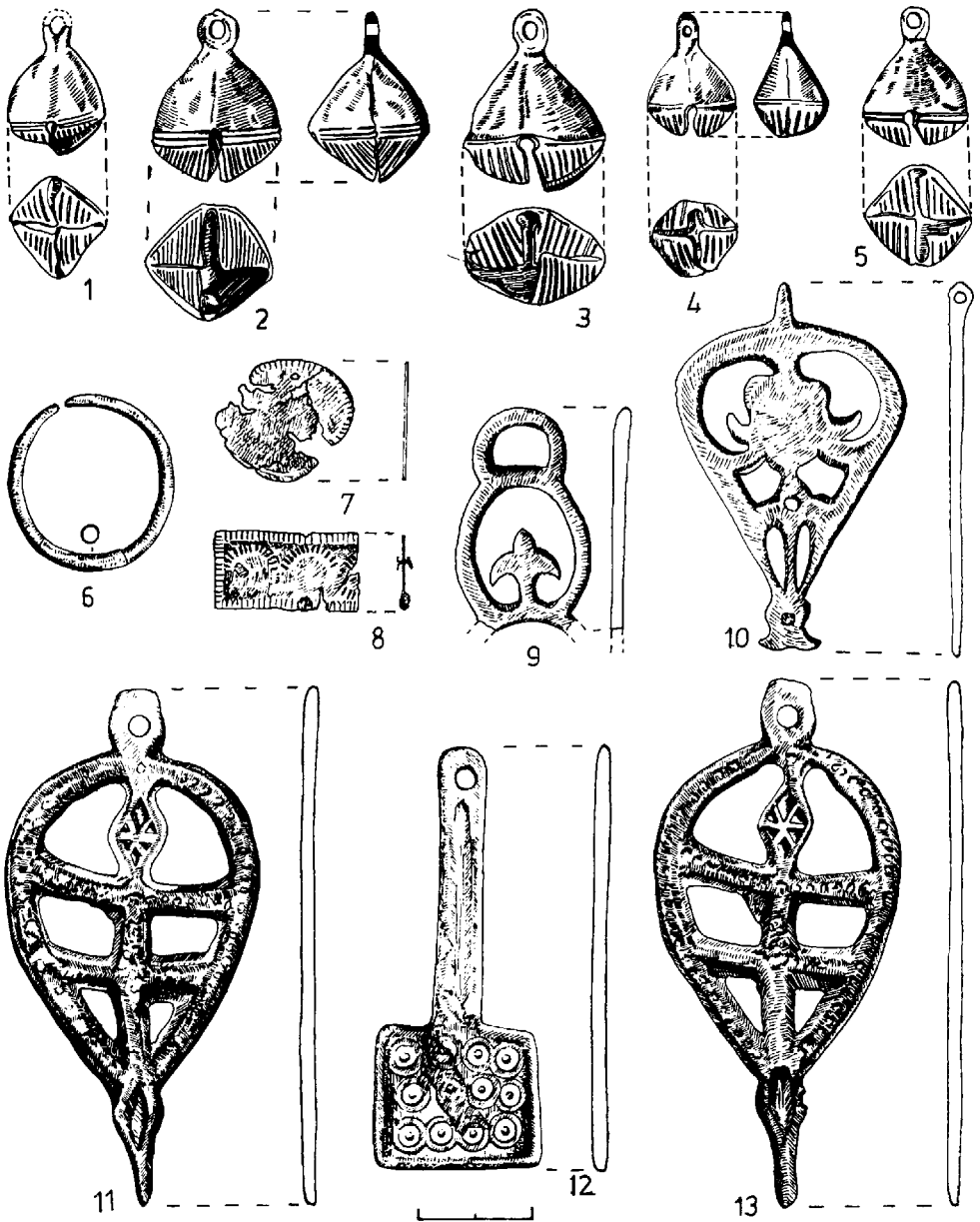


Fig. 28. Metal objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Bârlad-“Parc” (1-6), Pogonești (7, 8), Berești (9, 10) and Todireni (11-13).

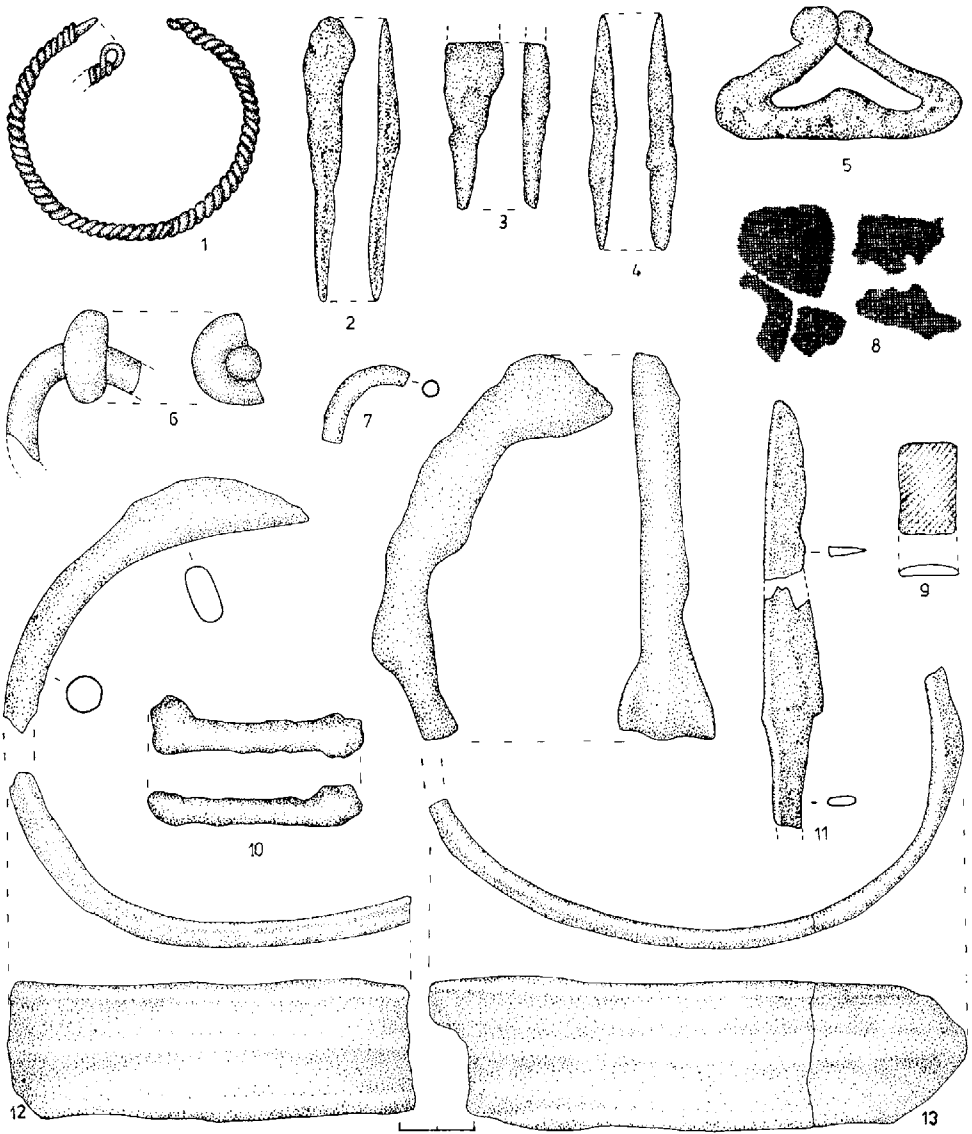


Fig. 29. Metal (1–7, 10–13) and horn (9) objects and pieces of gold thread tissue (8) from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomad's grave at Fridensfeld (= Mirnopol).

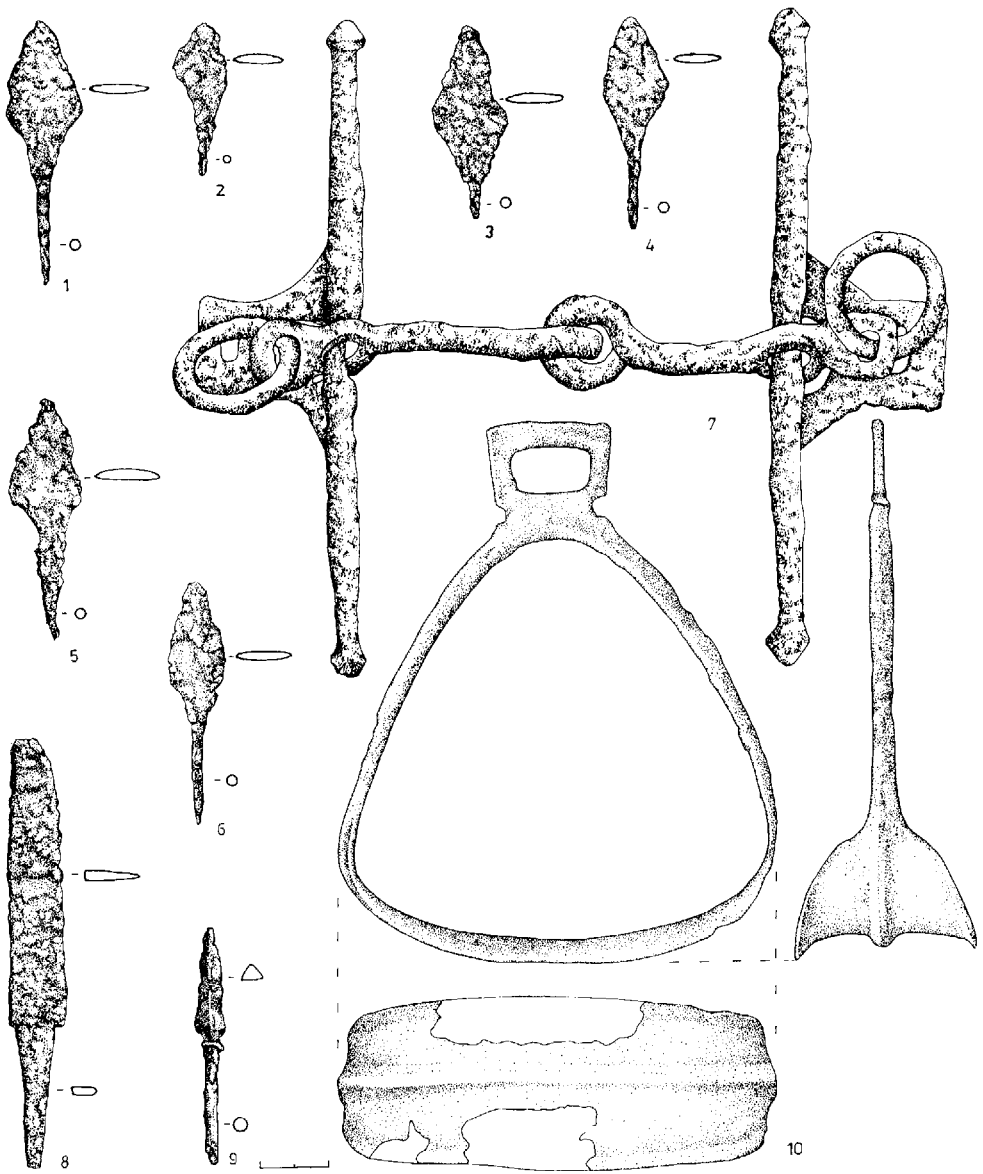


Fig. 30. Iron objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomad's grave of Grozești.

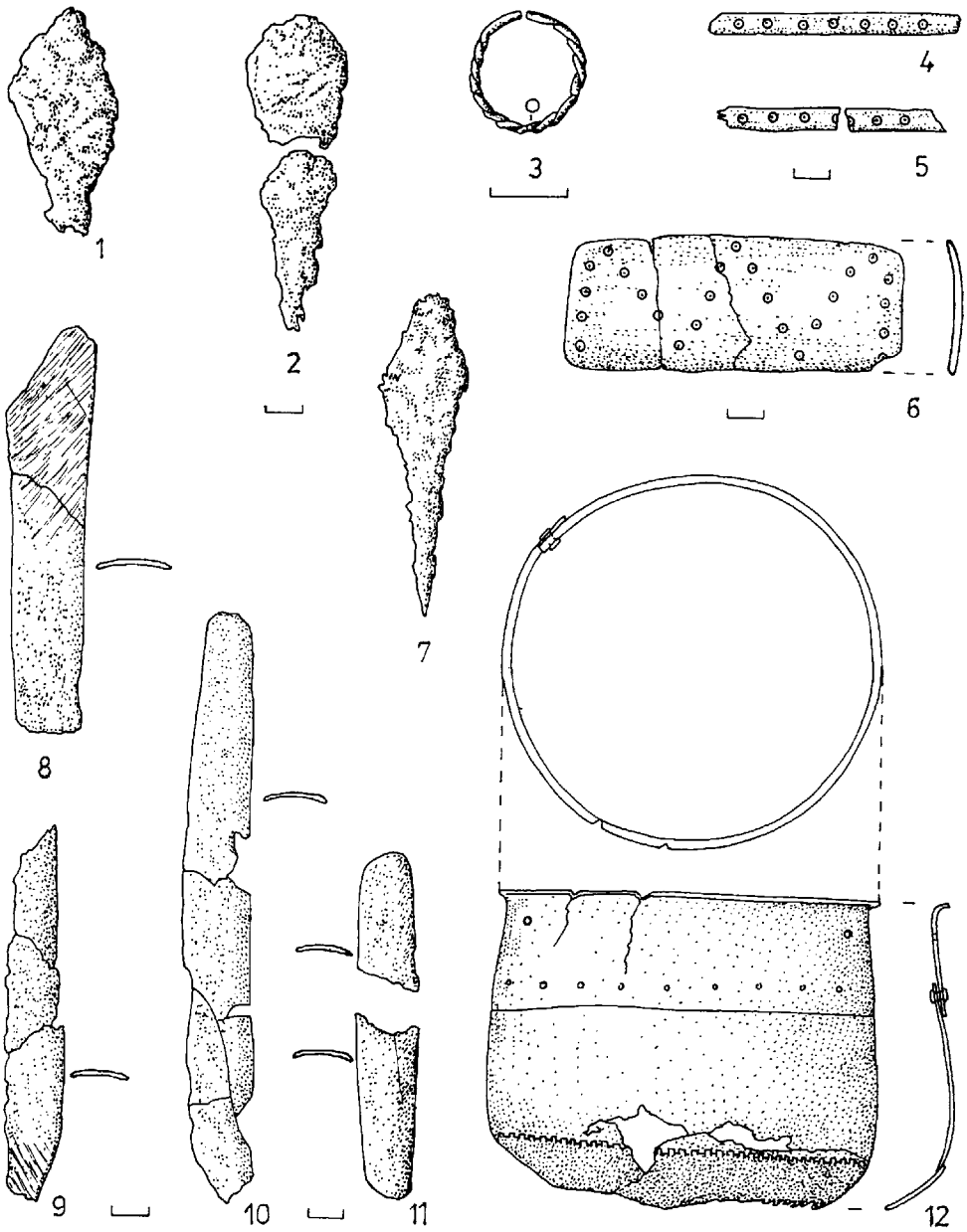


Fig. 31. Metal (1-3, 7, 12), horn and bone (4-6, 8-11) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves of Holboca (1-11) and Pogonești (12).



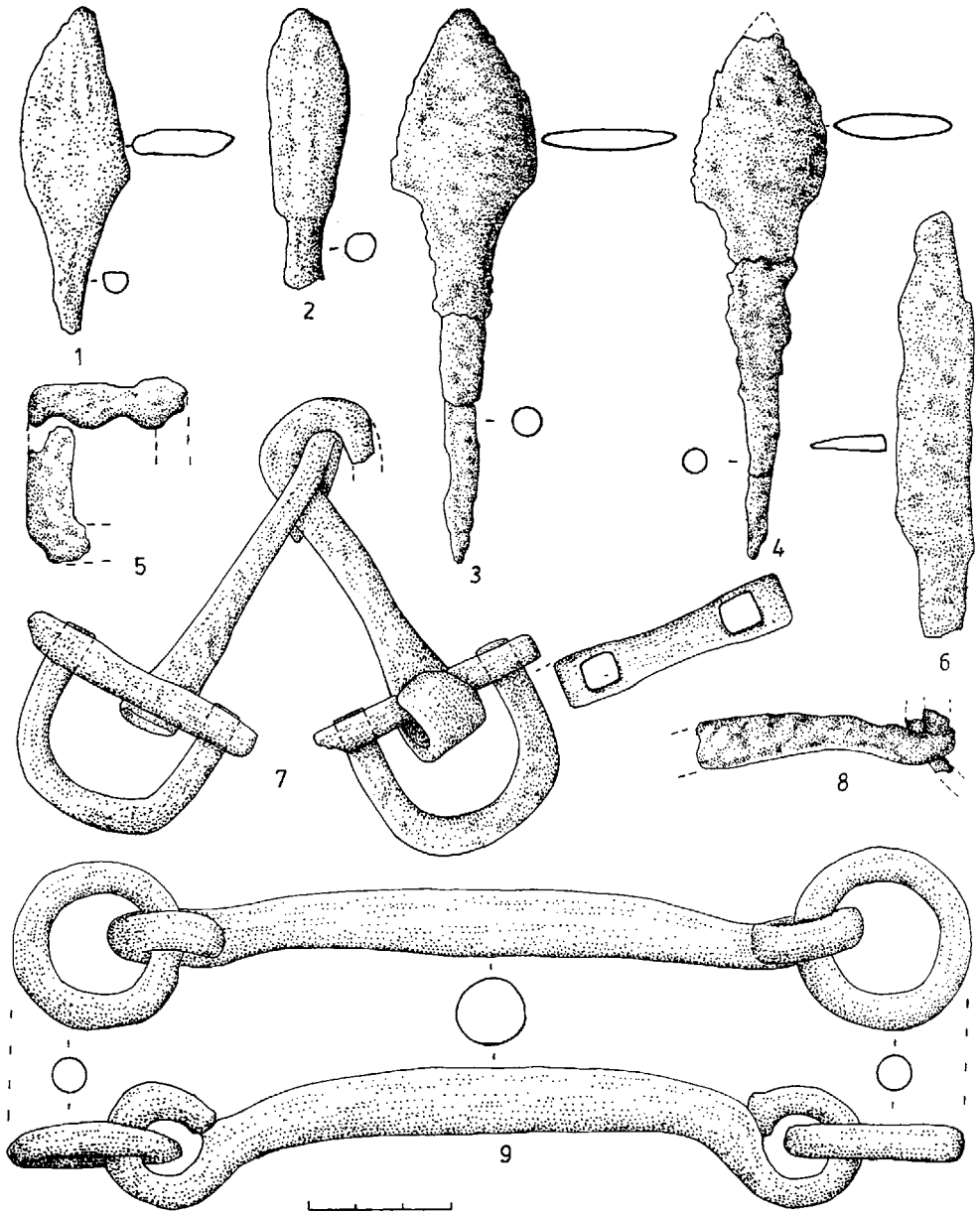


Fig. 32. Iron objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Mândrești (1, 2), Probota (3, 4), Grivița-Vaslui (5, 6, 9), Pogonești (7) and Bârlad-"Moara lui Chicoș" (8).

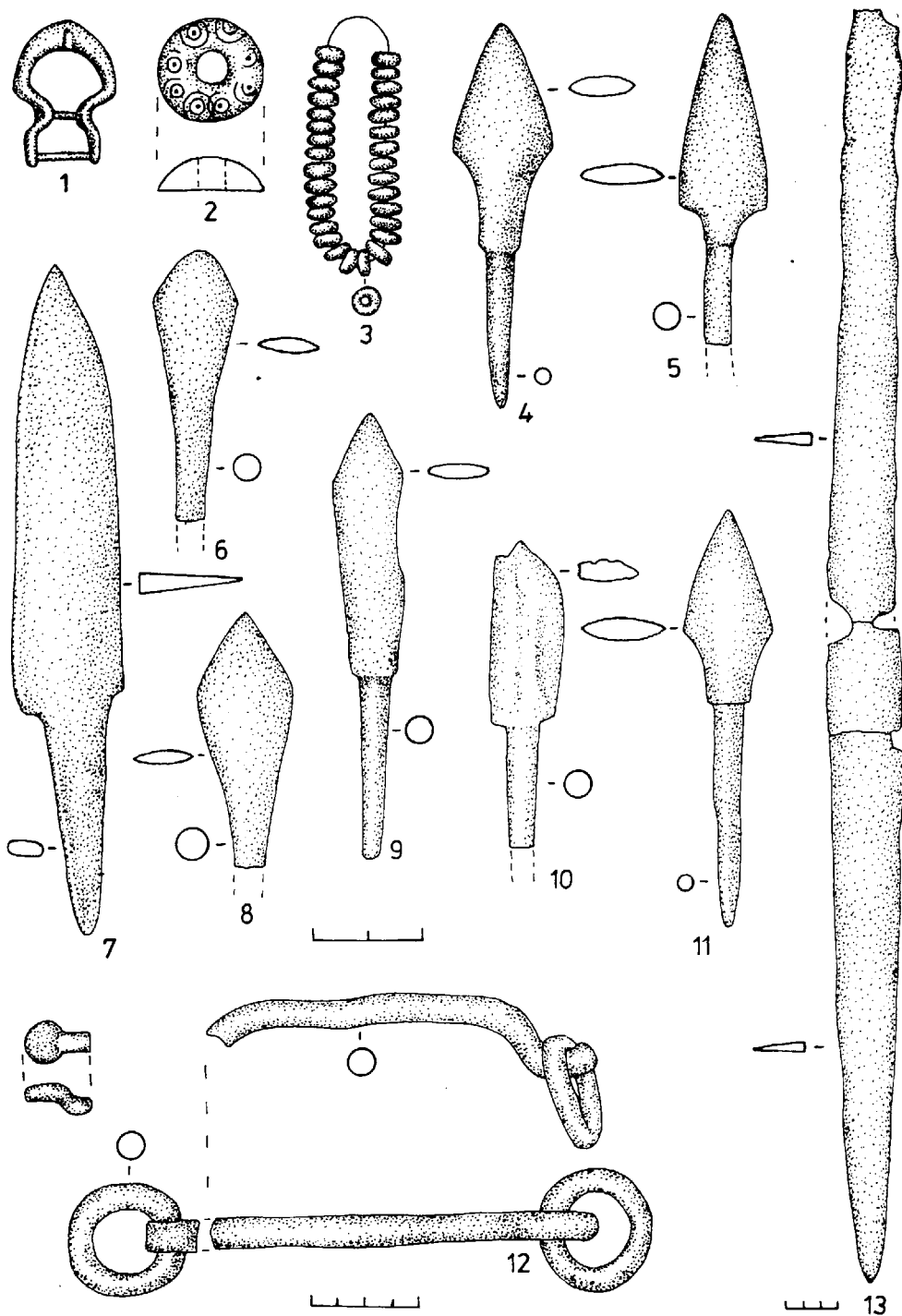


Fig. 33. Objects of metal (1, 4-13), horn (2) and glass paste (3) from the funerary inventory of a Turkic nomad's grave at Pavlovca.

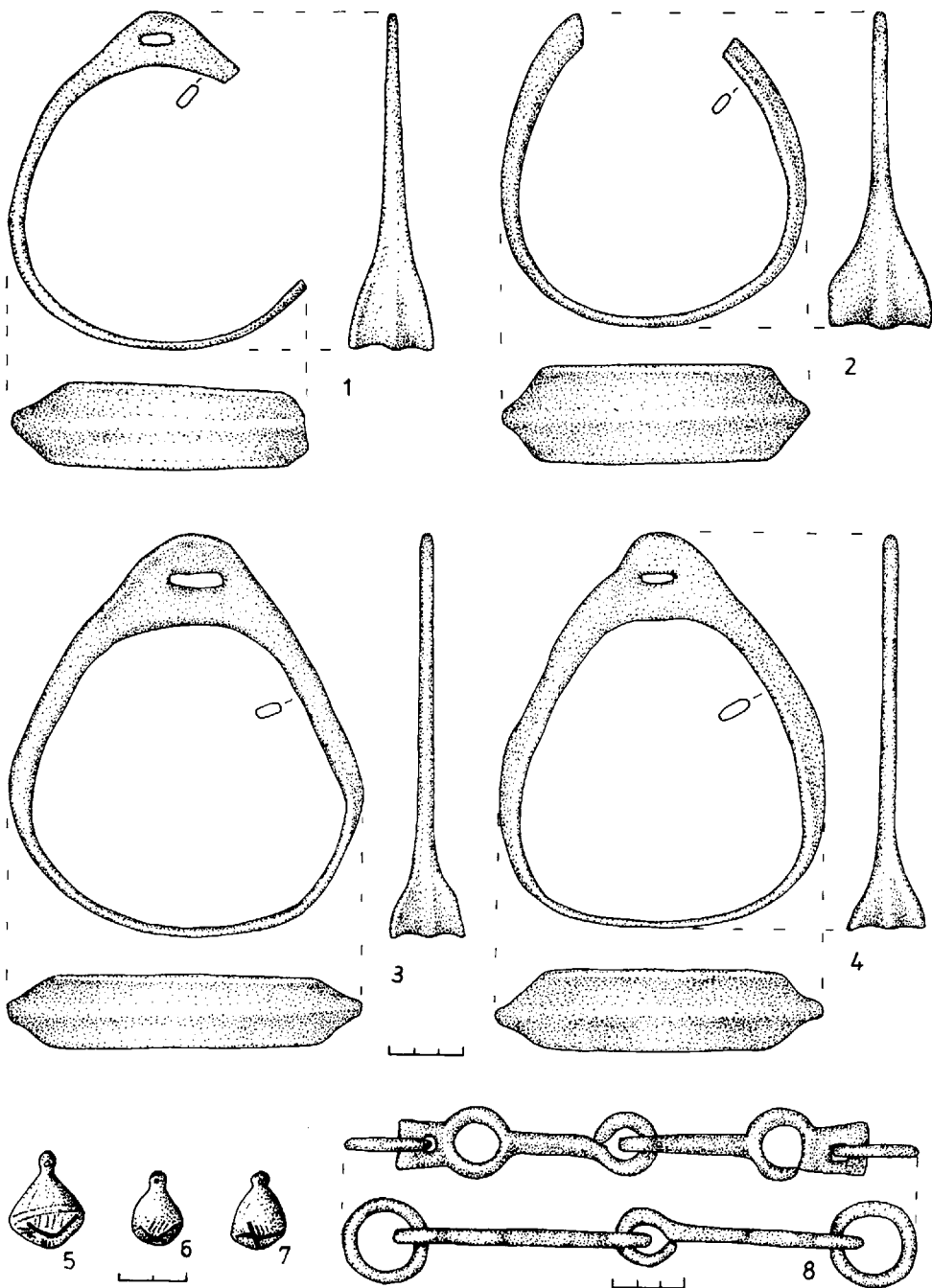


Fig. 34. Metal objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Pavlovca (1, 2), Şabalat (= Sadovoc) (3, 4, 8) and Gura Băcului (5-7).

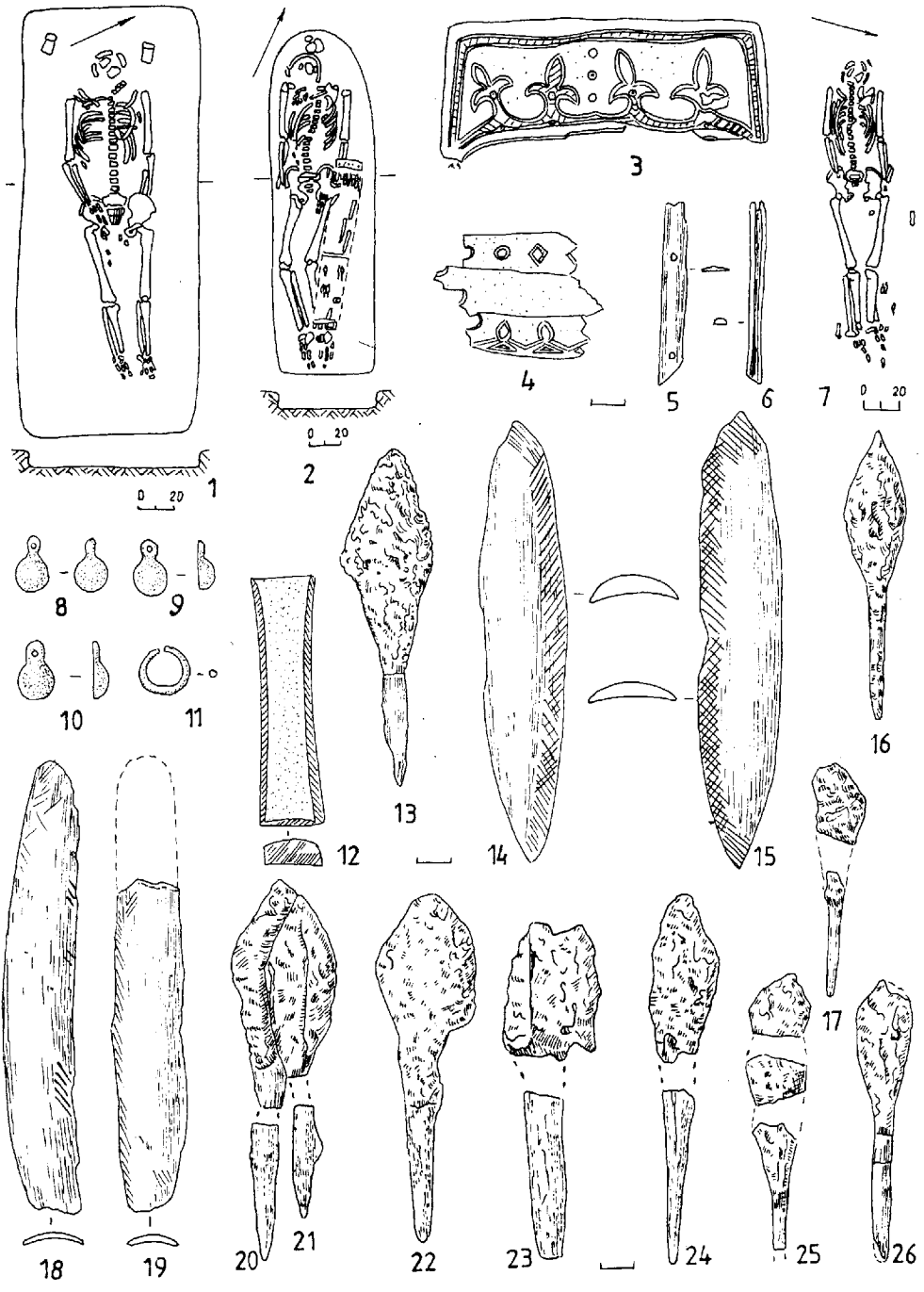


Fig. 35. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (1, 2, 7) and their funerary inventory (3-6, 8-26) at Petrești (1, 7-11, 16-26) and Bădrașii Vechi (2-6, 12-15).

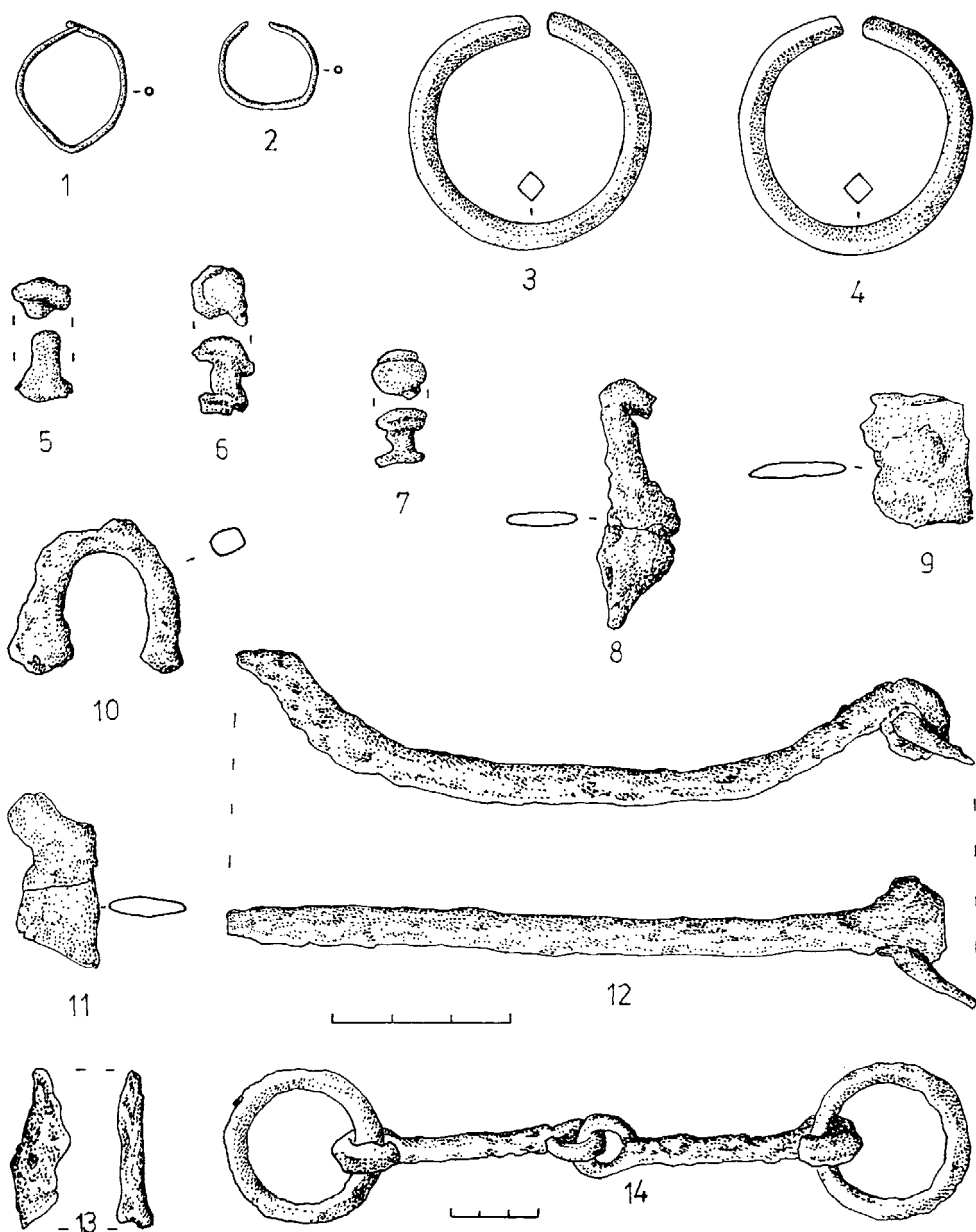


Fig. 36. Metal objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Probota (1, 2), Bârlad-"Moara lui Chicoș" (3, 4), Umbrărești (5-13) and Moscu (14).

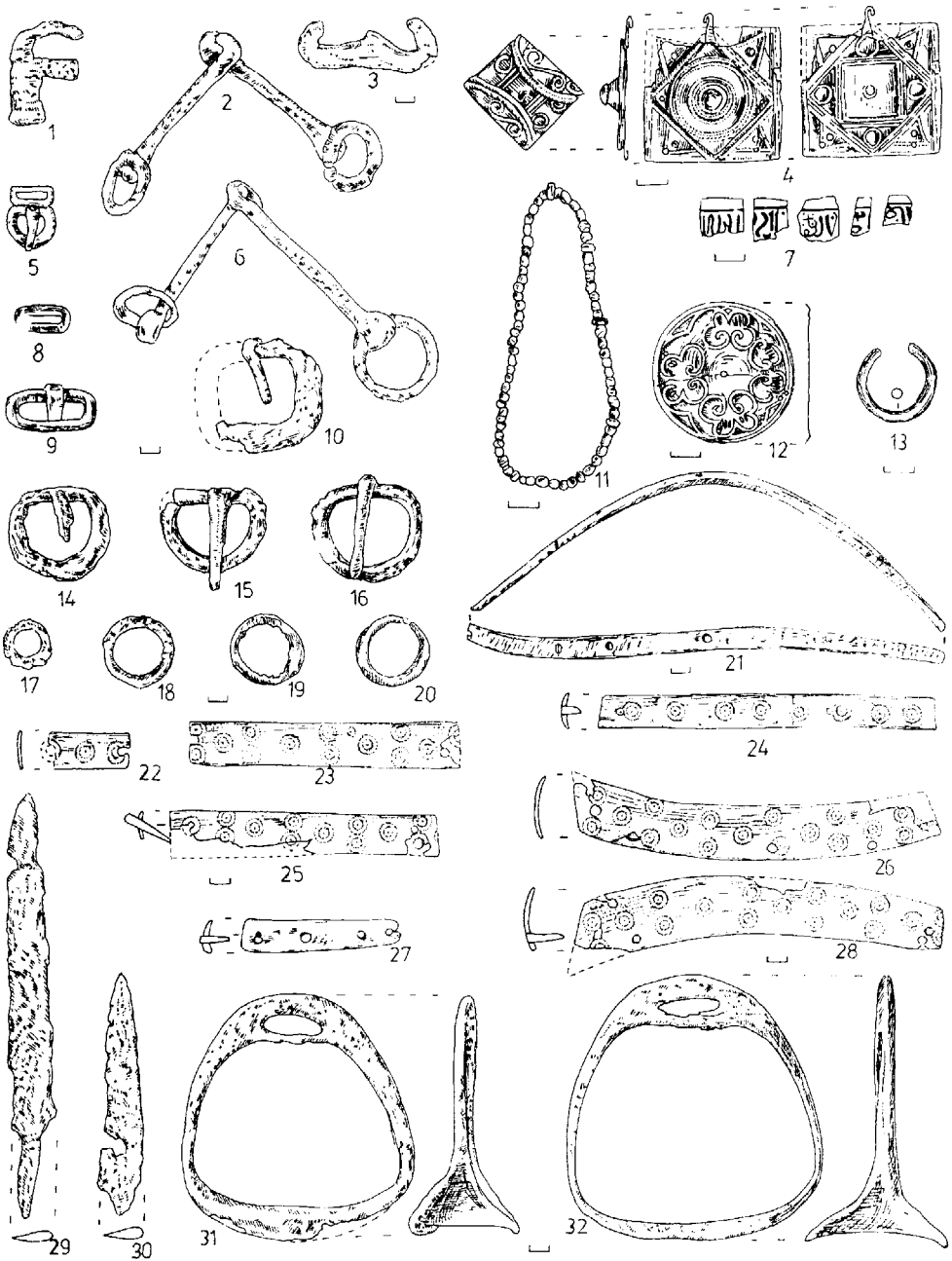


Fig. 37. Objects from the funerary inventory of the 'Turkic nomads' graves at Selište.

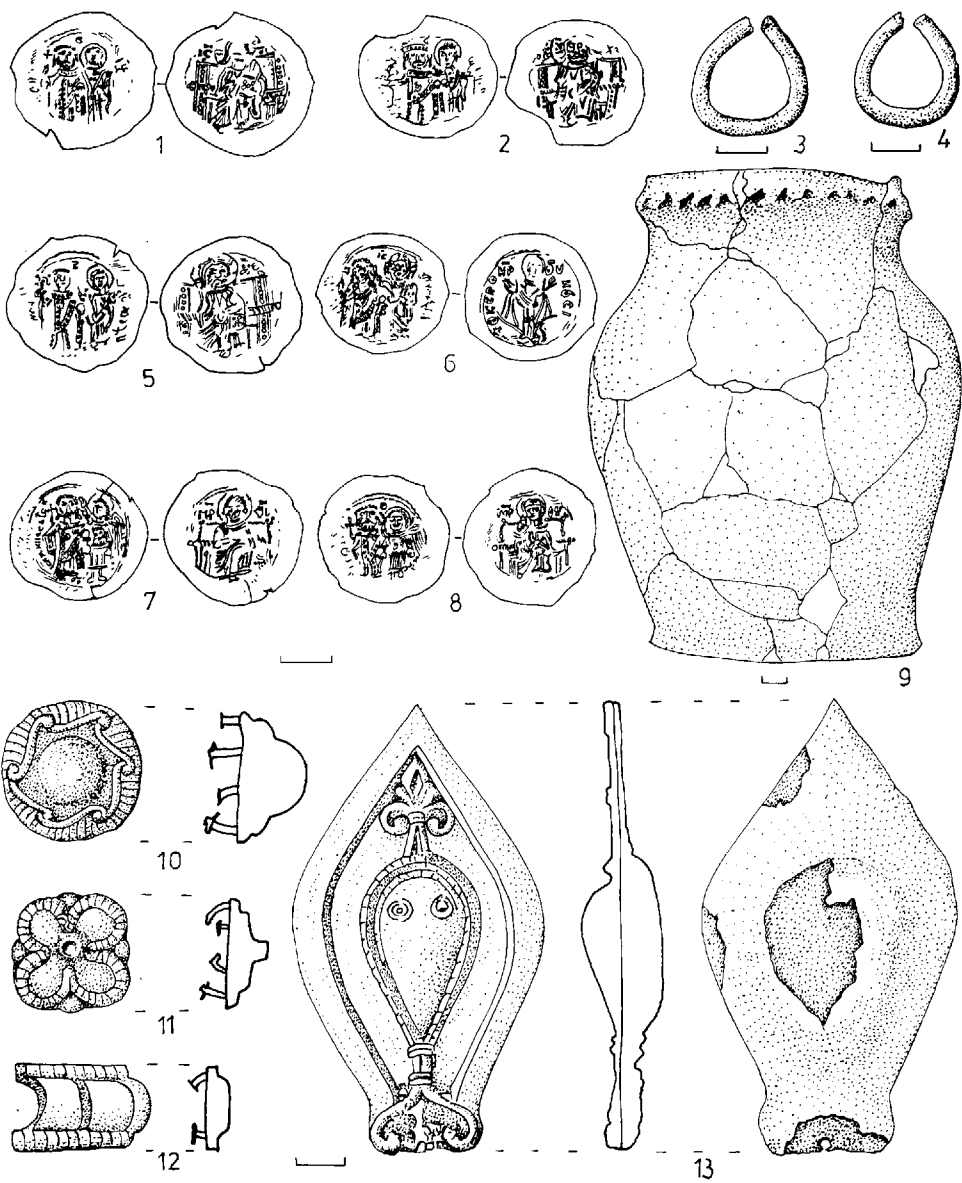


Fig. 38. Byzantine coins (1, 2, 5, 8), adornment objects (3, 4, 10–13) and clay pot (9) from the funerary inventory of Turkic nomads' graves at Suvorovo (1, 2, 5–8) and Tuzla (3, 4, 9–13).

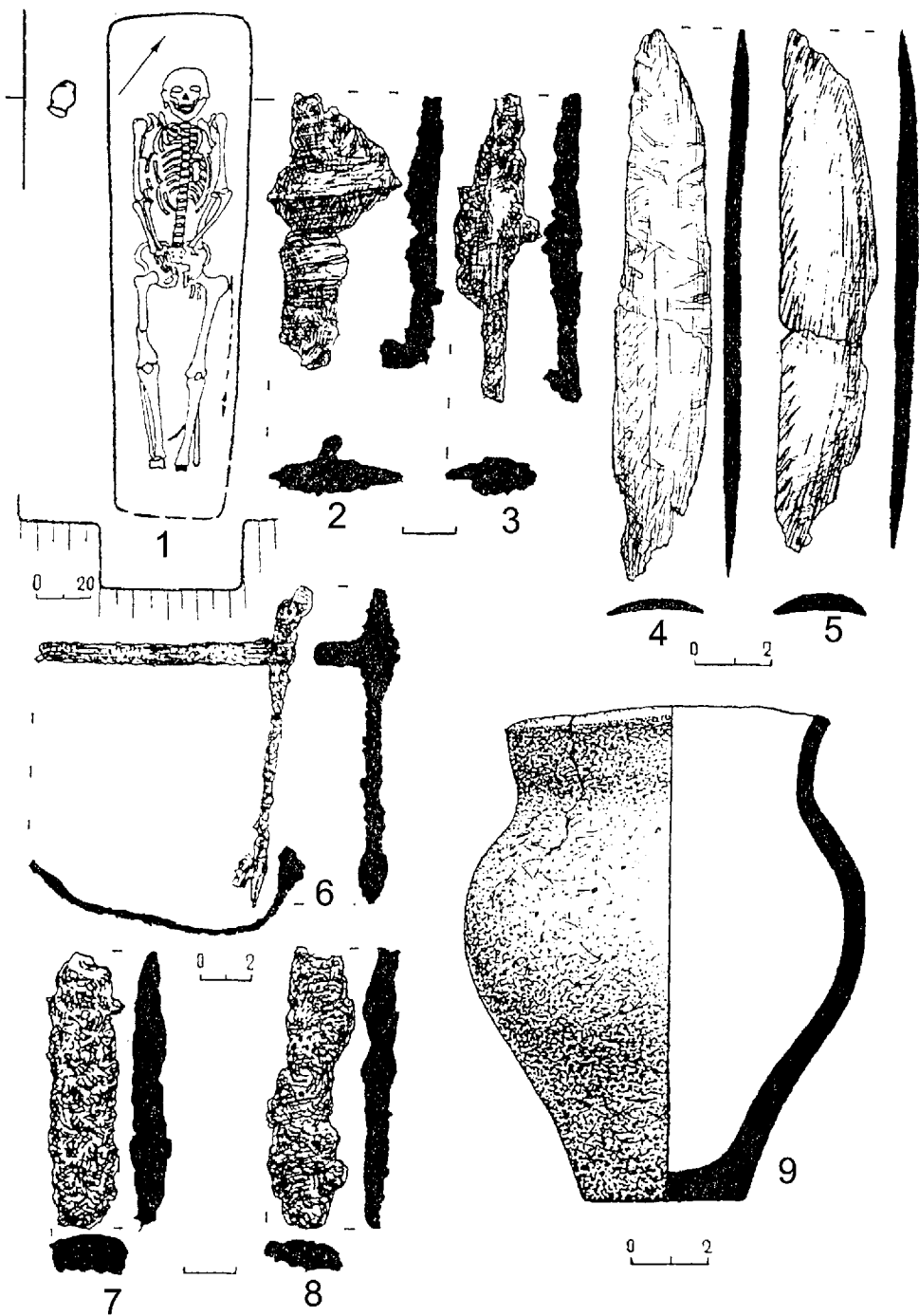


Fig. 39. Plan of a Turkic nomads' grave at Chirileni (1), iron (2, 3, 6-8) and bone (4, 5) objects and clay pots (9) from its funerary inventory.



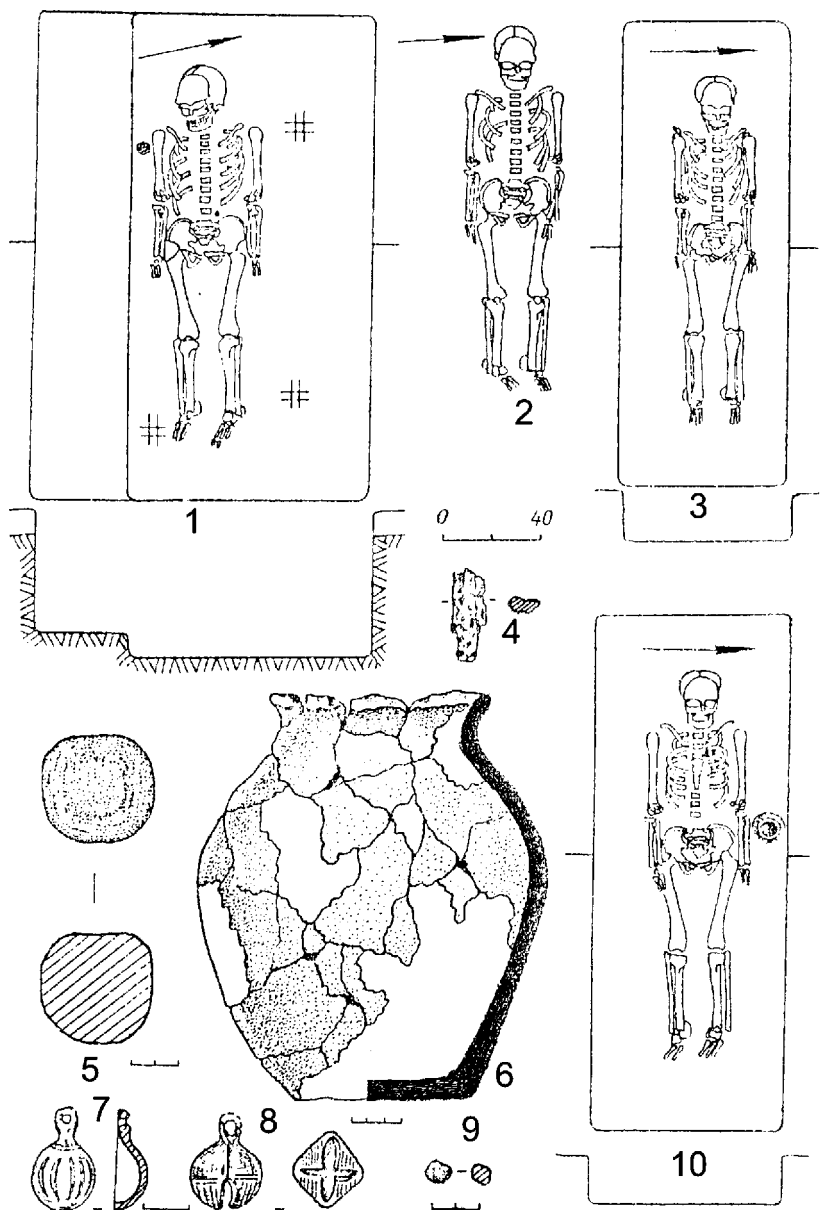


Fig. 40. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (1-3, 6) and their funerary inventory (4-9, 10) at Ursoaia.

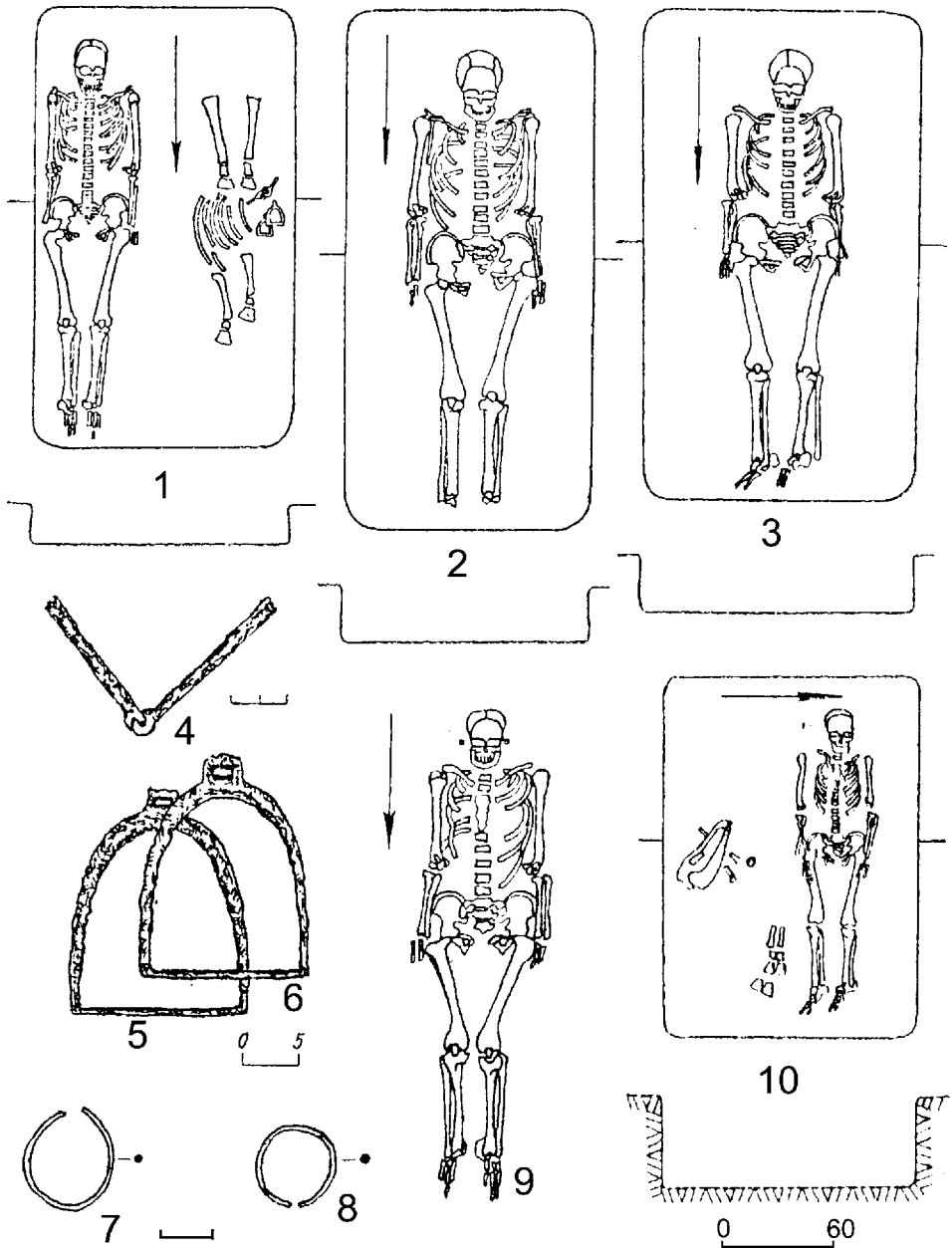


Fig. 41. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (1-3, 9, 10) and their funerary inventory (4-8) at Balabanu (1-9) and Chircăiești (10).

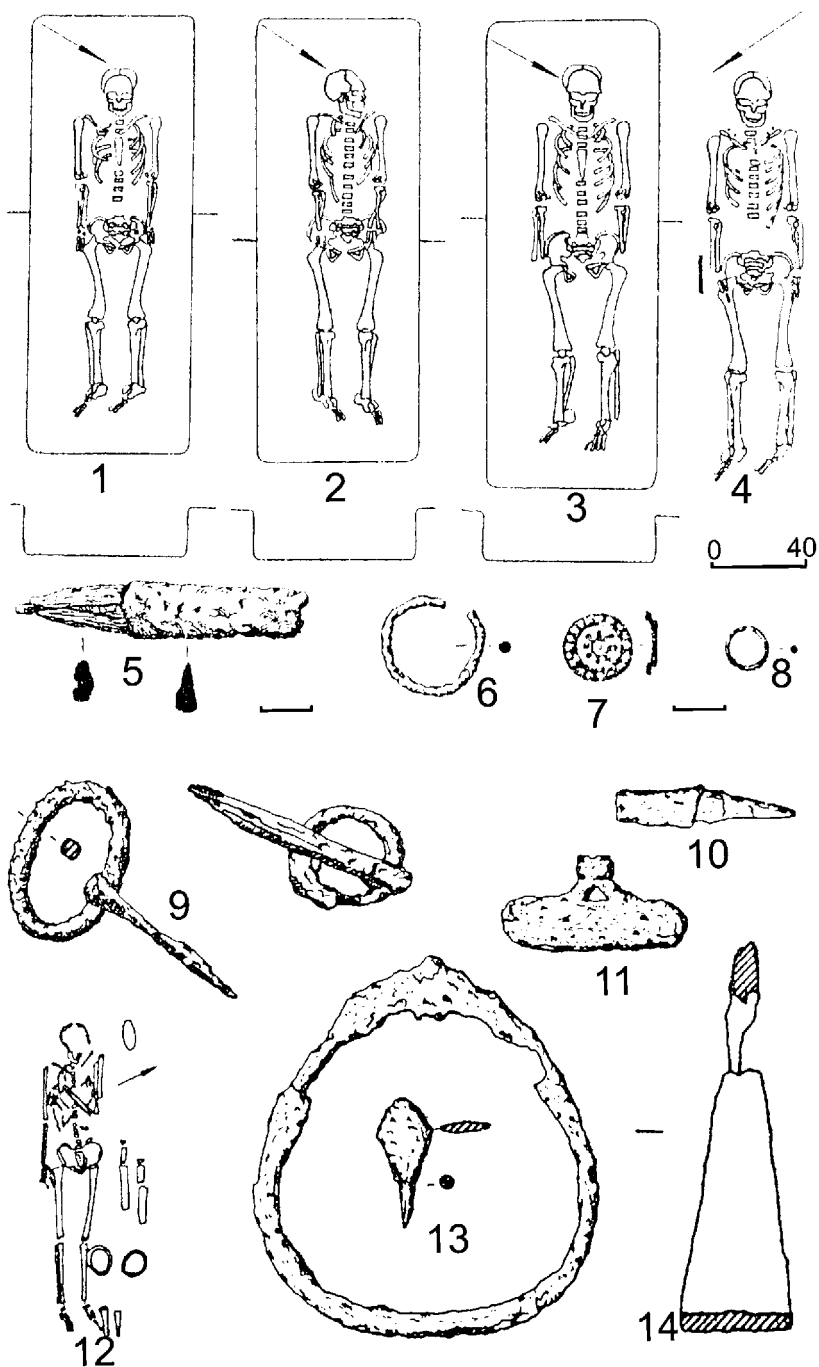


Fig. 42. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (1-4, 12) and their funerary inventory (5-11, 13, 14) at Chircăiești (1-8) and Cărnățeni (9-14).

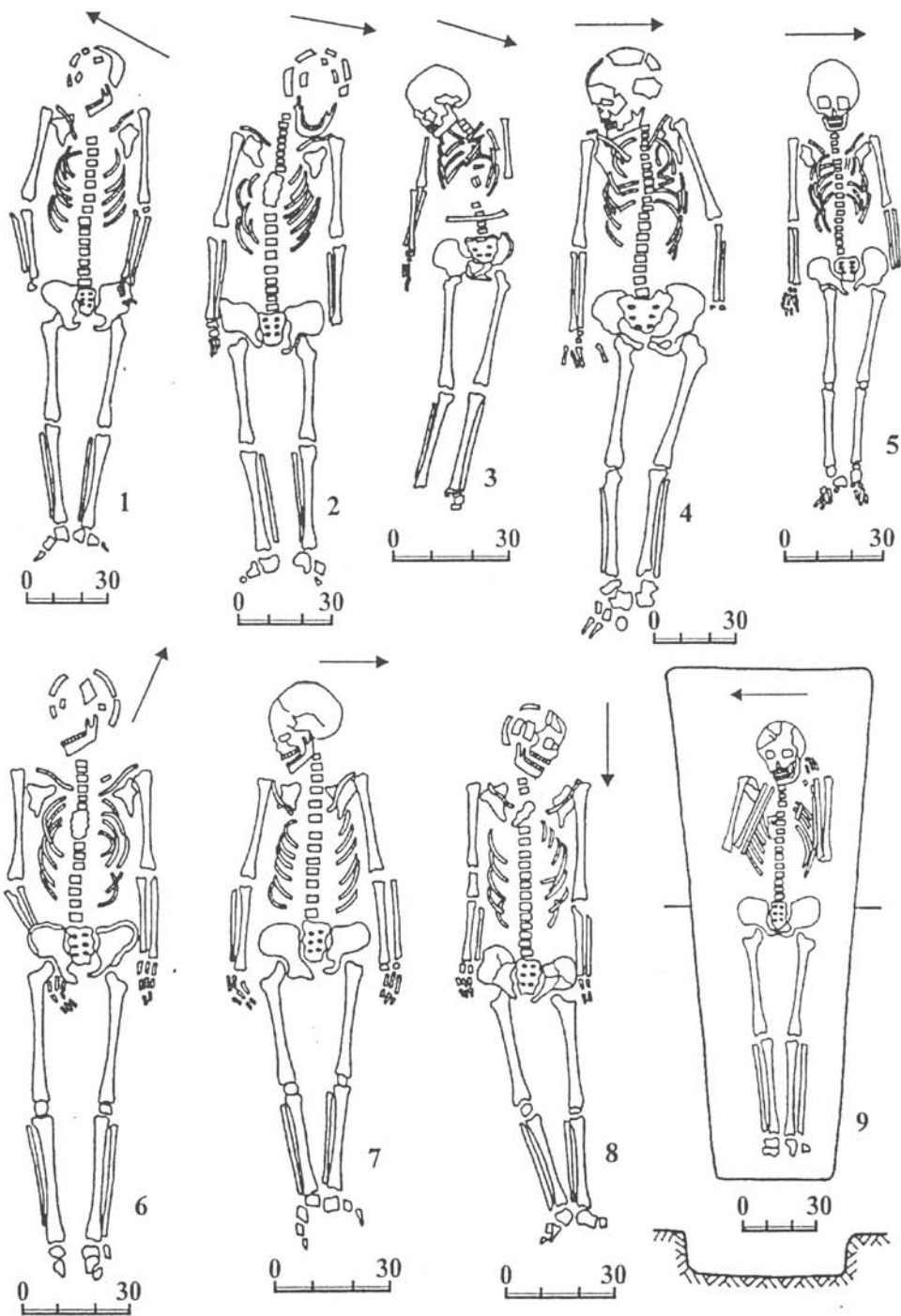


Fig. 43. Plan of some 'Turkic nomads' graves at Taraclia.

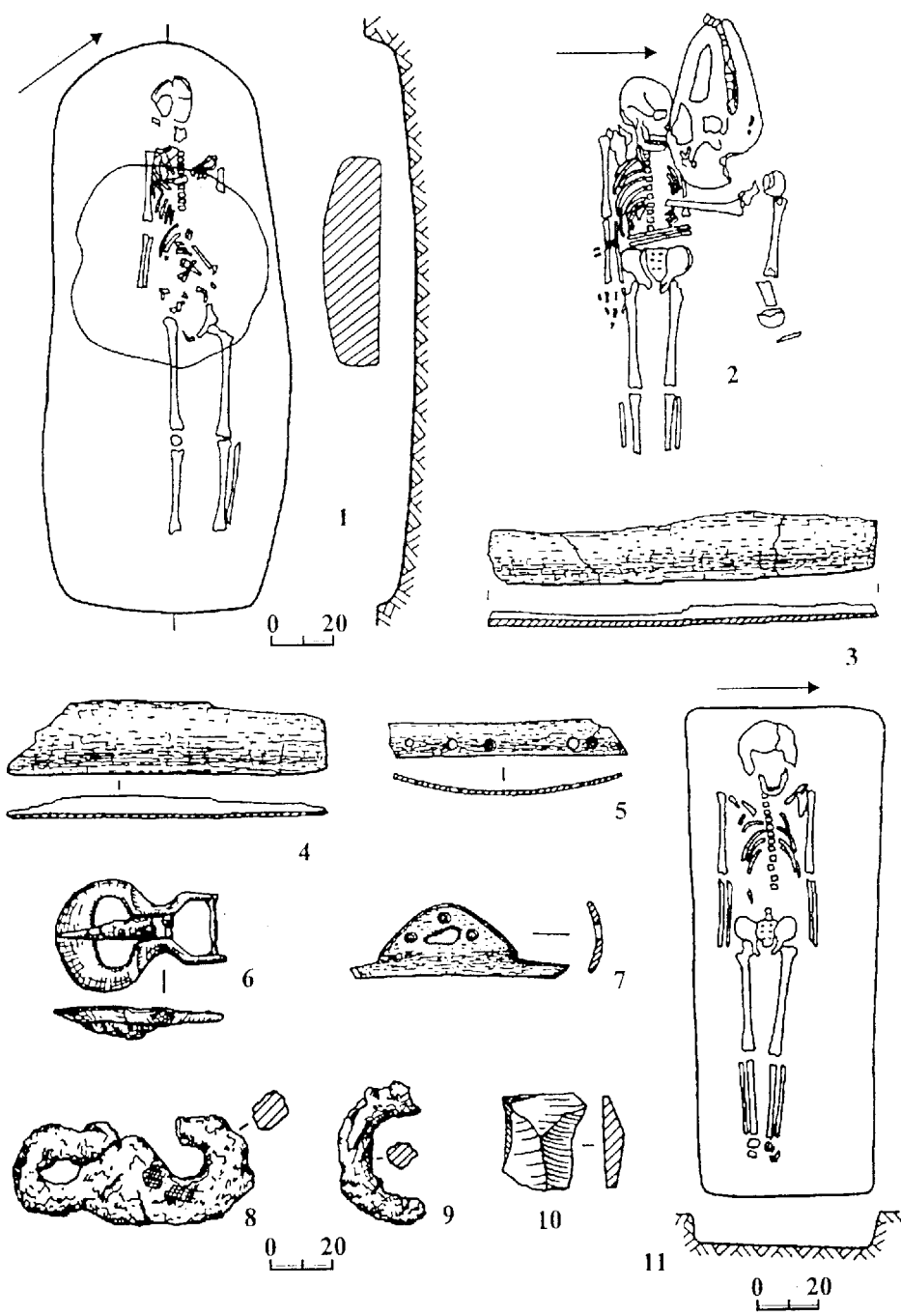


Fig. 44. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (1, 2, 11) and their funerary inventory (3-10) at Taraclia.

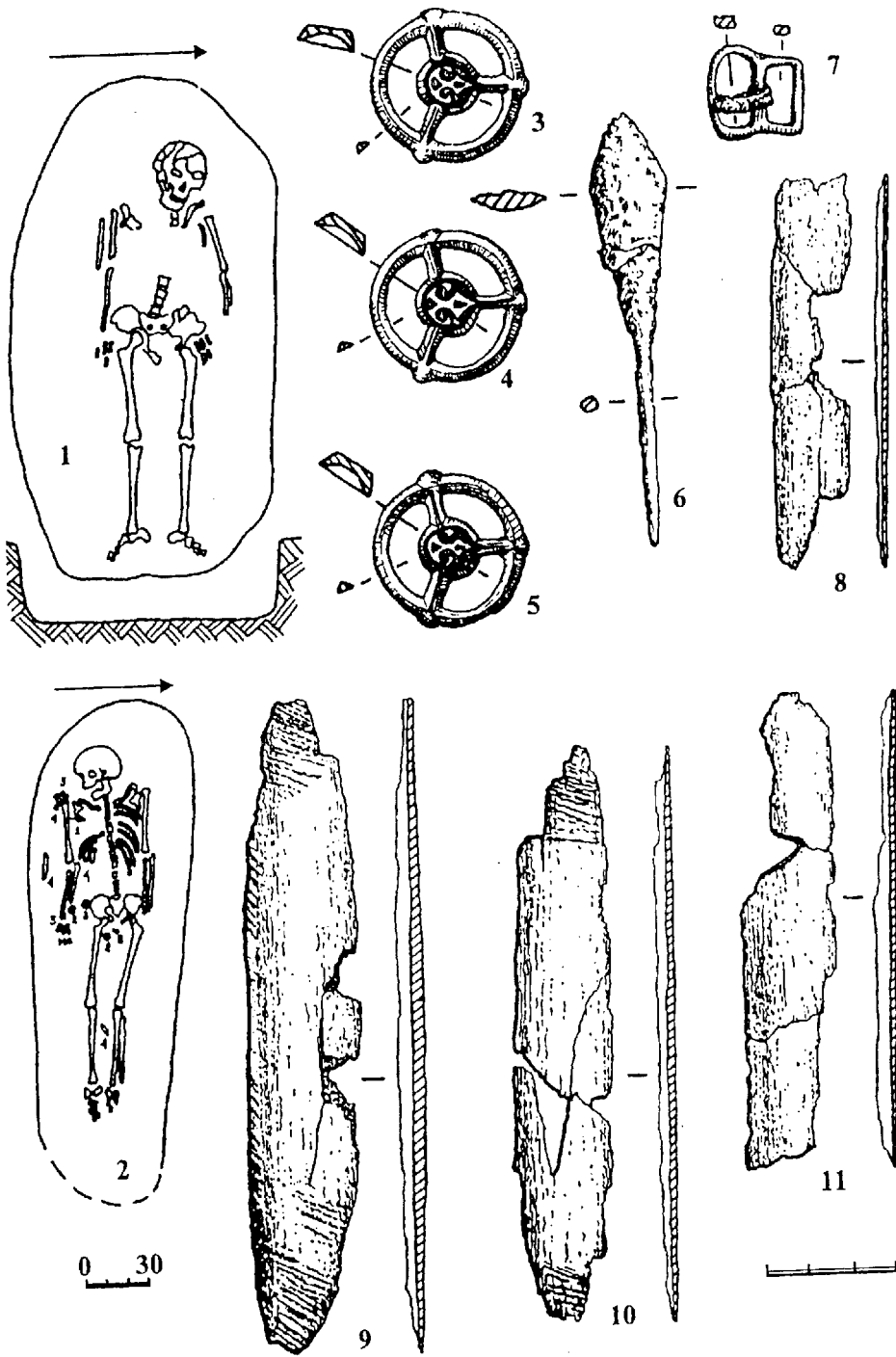


Fig. 45. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (1, 2) and their funerary inventory (3-11) from Taraclia.

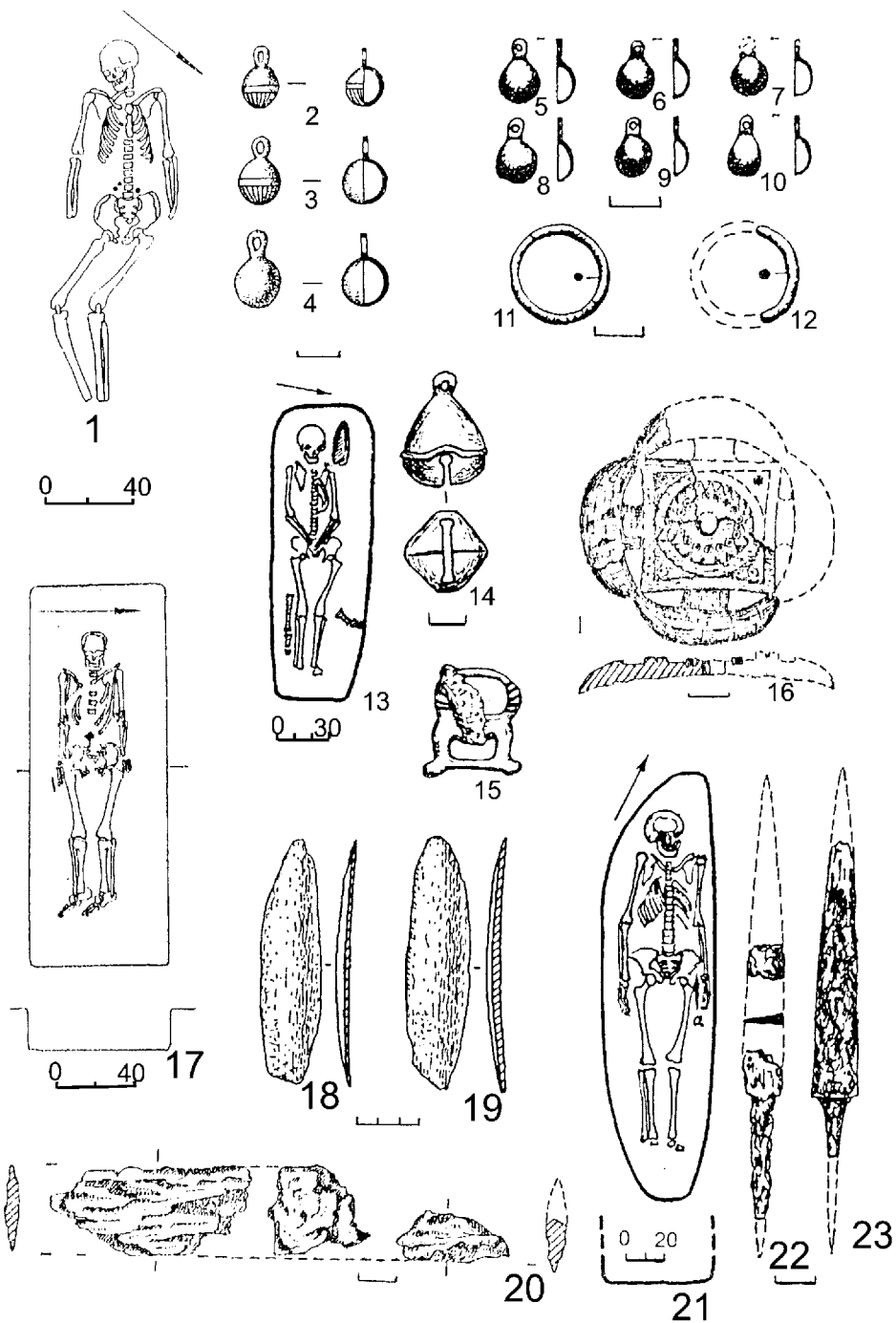


Fig. 46. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (1, 13, 17, 21) and their funerary inventory (2-12, 14-16, 18-20, 22, 23) at Olănești (1-4), Chirileni (5-12), Divizia (13-14, 21-23), Opaci (15), Ursoaia (16-17, 20), Cazaclia (18-19).

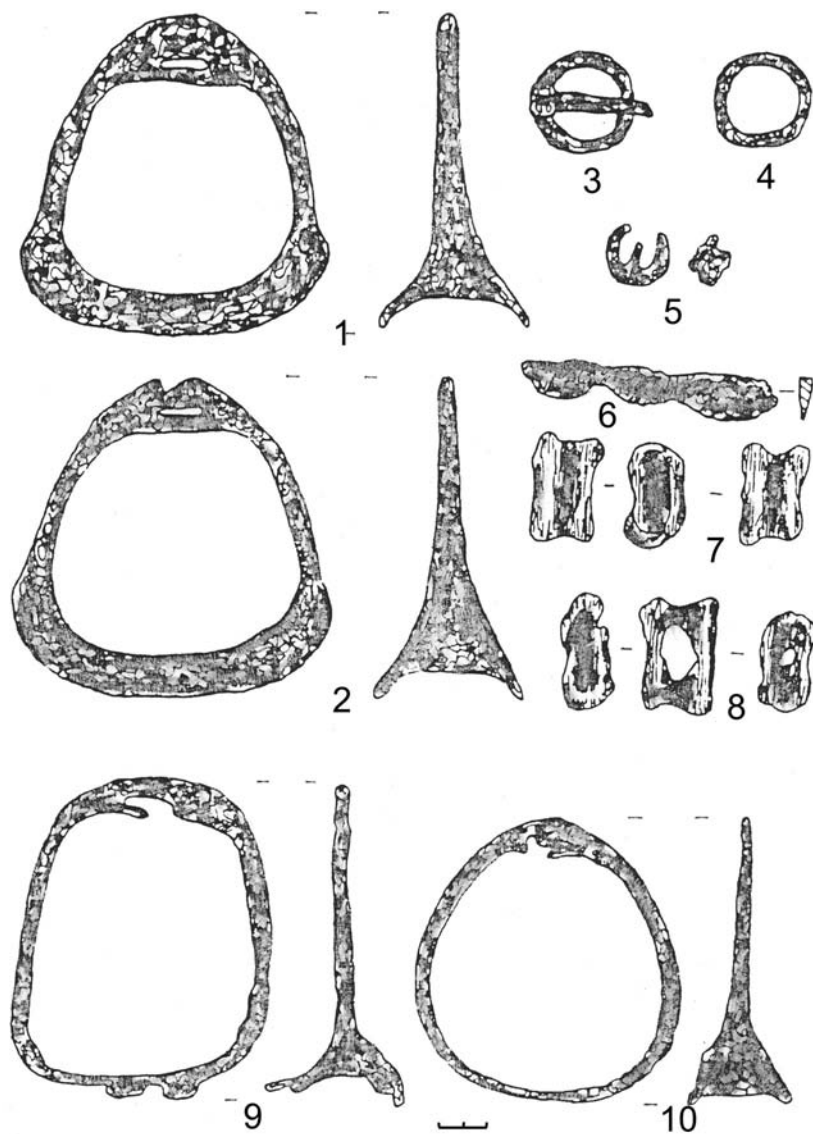


Fig. 47. Iron (1–6, 9, 10) and bone (7, 8) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Ivanovca.





Fig. 48. Iron (1-7, 10-13, 15, 16, 19-22) and horn (8, 9, 14, 17, 18) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Sevirova (1-9), Alexandrovca (10-18) and Ivanovca (19-22).

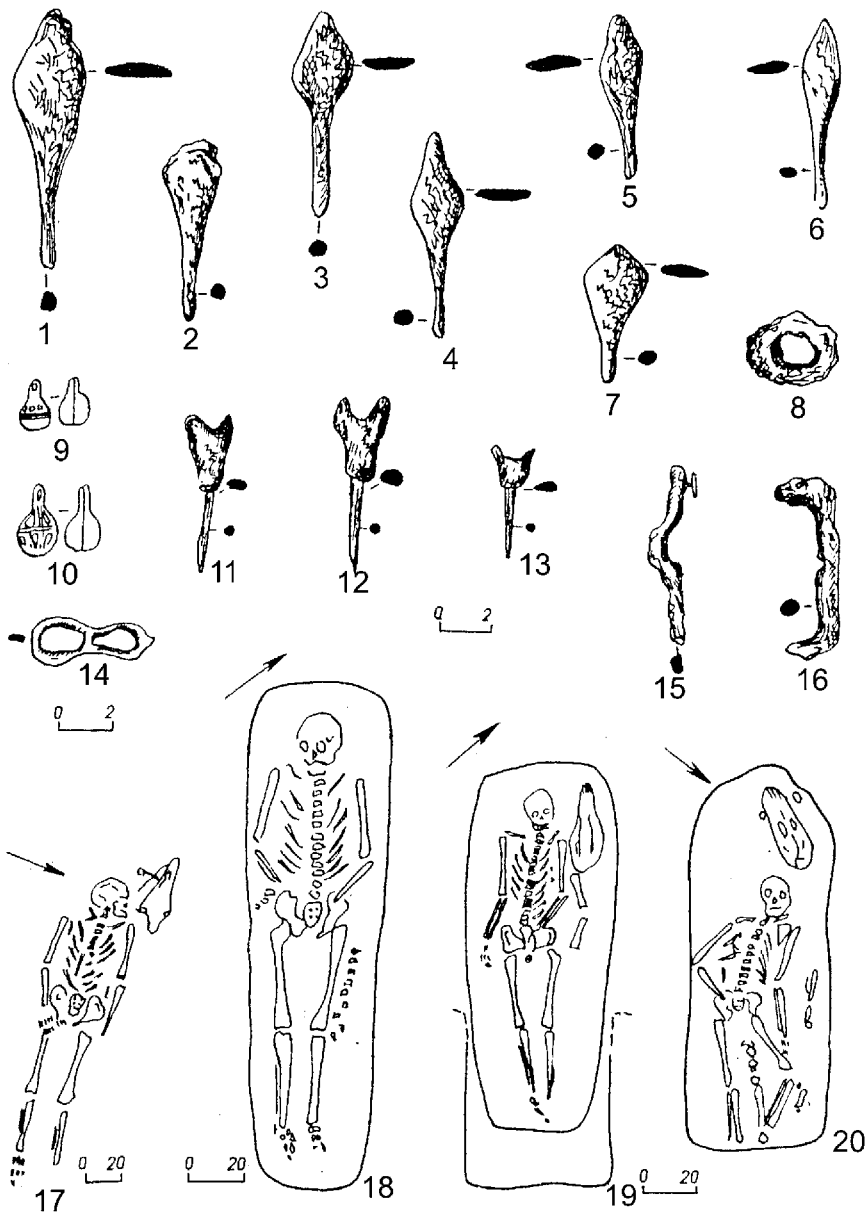


Fig. 49. Plan of some Turkic nomads' graves (17–20) and their funerary inventory (1–16) at Iablona (1–7, 9, 10, 15, 16, 18), Plavni (8, 11–14, 17), Calanciac (19) and Limanskoc-“Fricăței” (20).

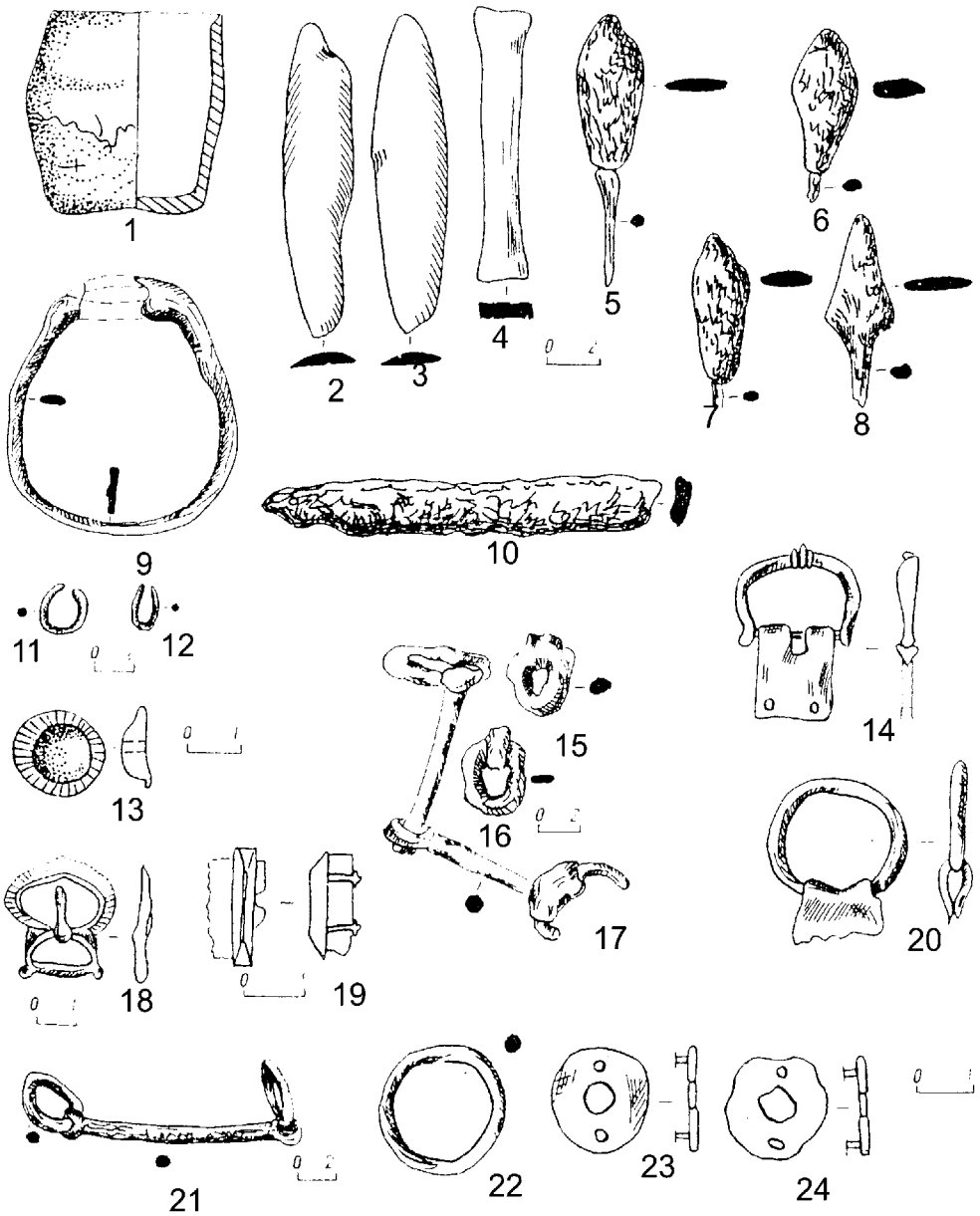


Fig. 50. Clay pot (1), horn (2-4) and metal (5-24) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Belolesie (1, 9, 21), Limanskoe-"Fricăței" (2-8, 10), Joltâi Iar (11, 12), Plavni (13), Ciuș (14-17, 19, 20, 22-24) and Ogorodnoe (18).

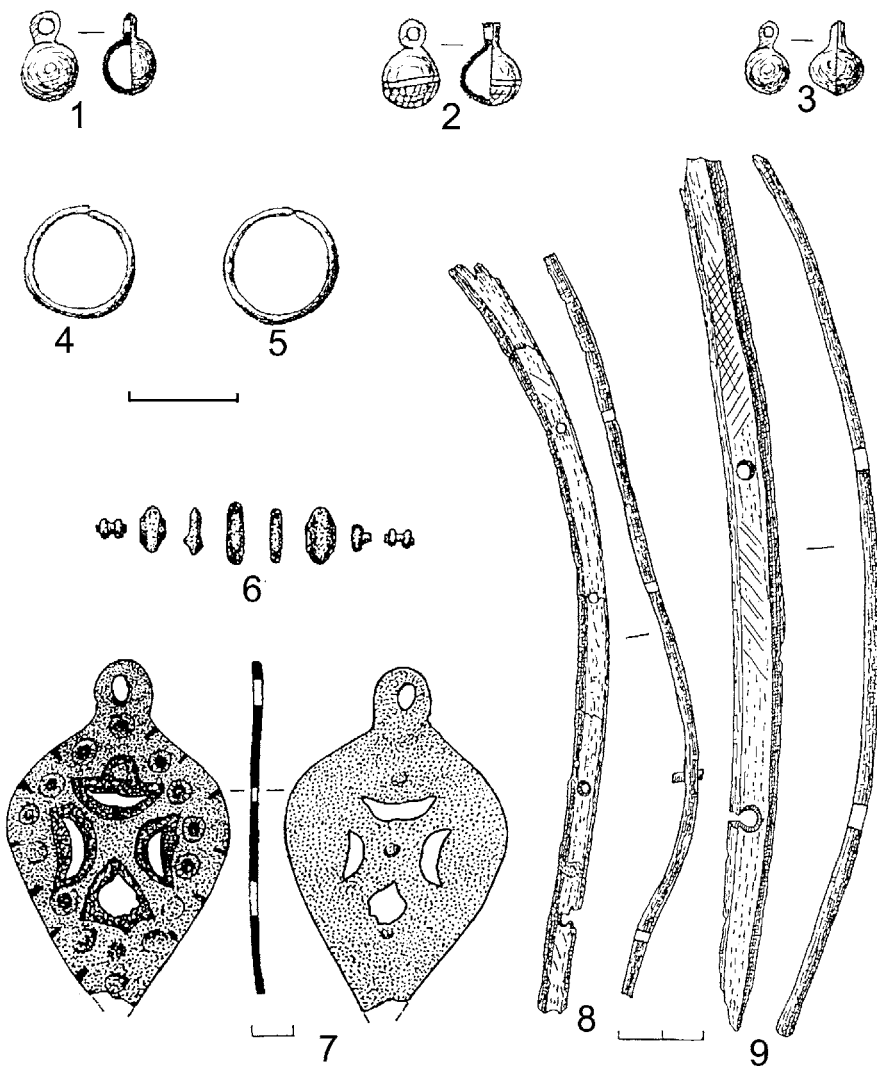


Fig. 51. Metal (1-5, 7), glass (6) and horn (8, 9) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Bolgrad (1-5), Palanca (6, 7) and Balabanu (8-9).

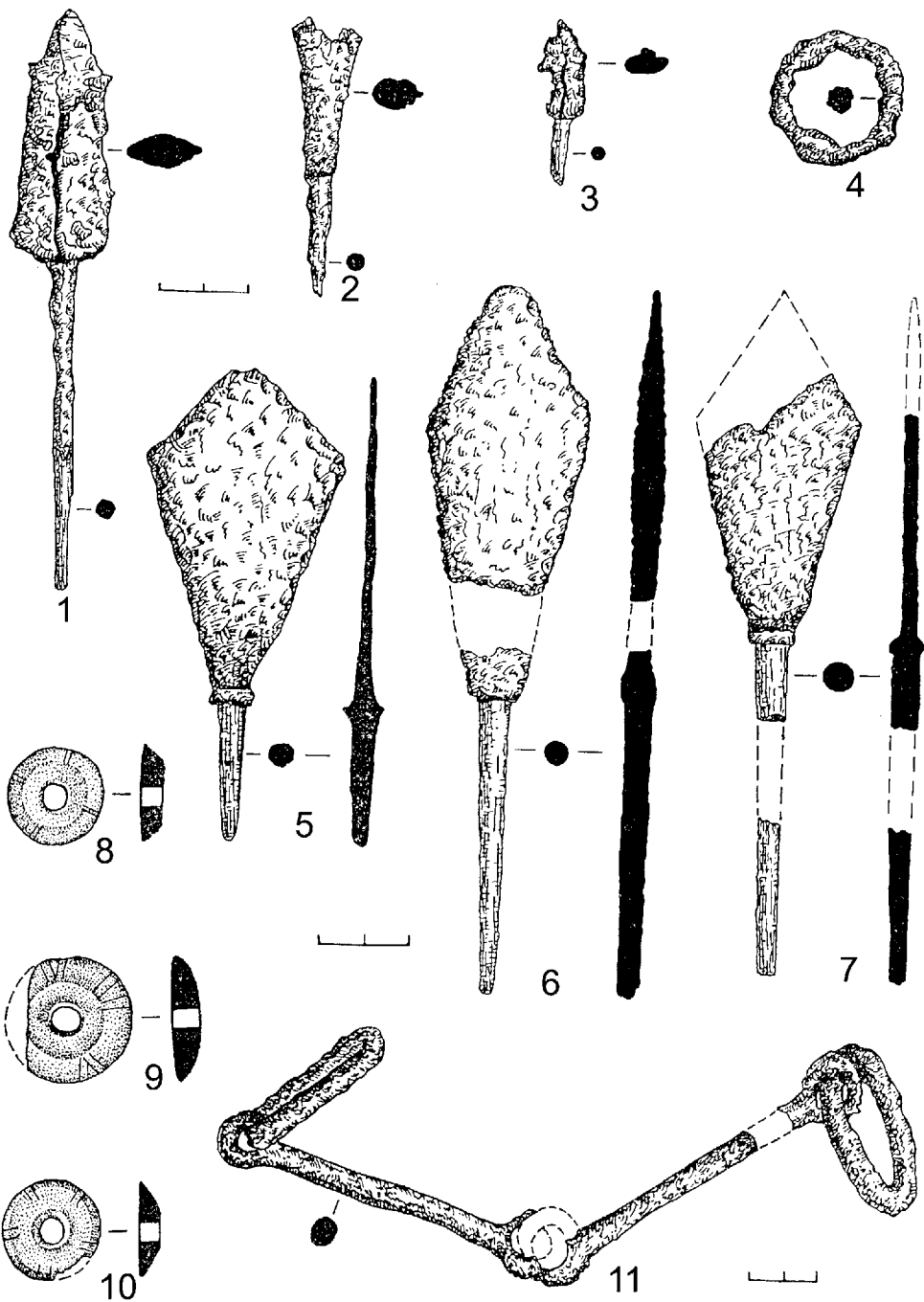


Fig. 52. Iron (1-7, 11) and bone (8-10) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Balabanu.

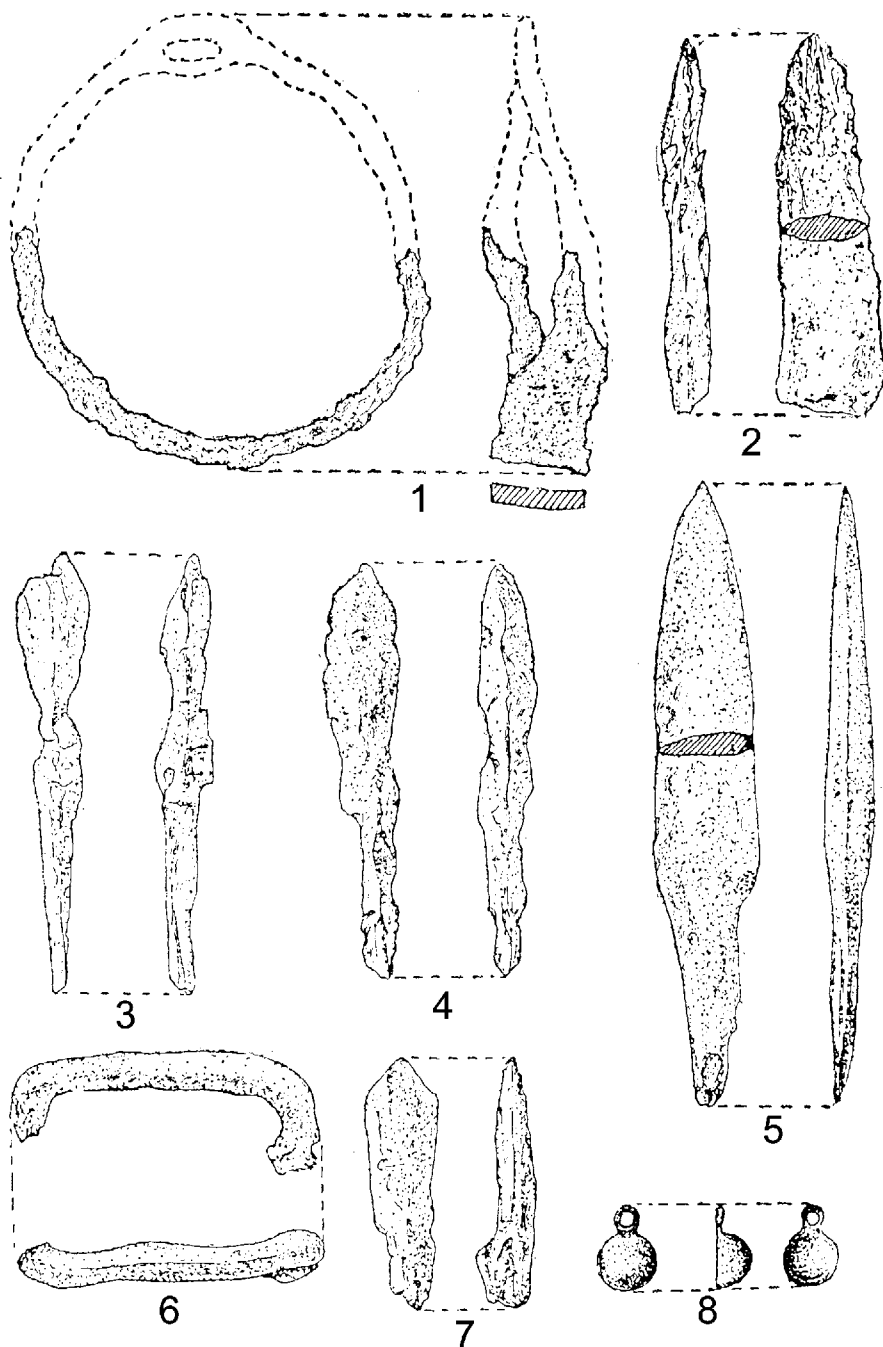


Fig. 53. Iron (1-7) and copper (8) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Roma.

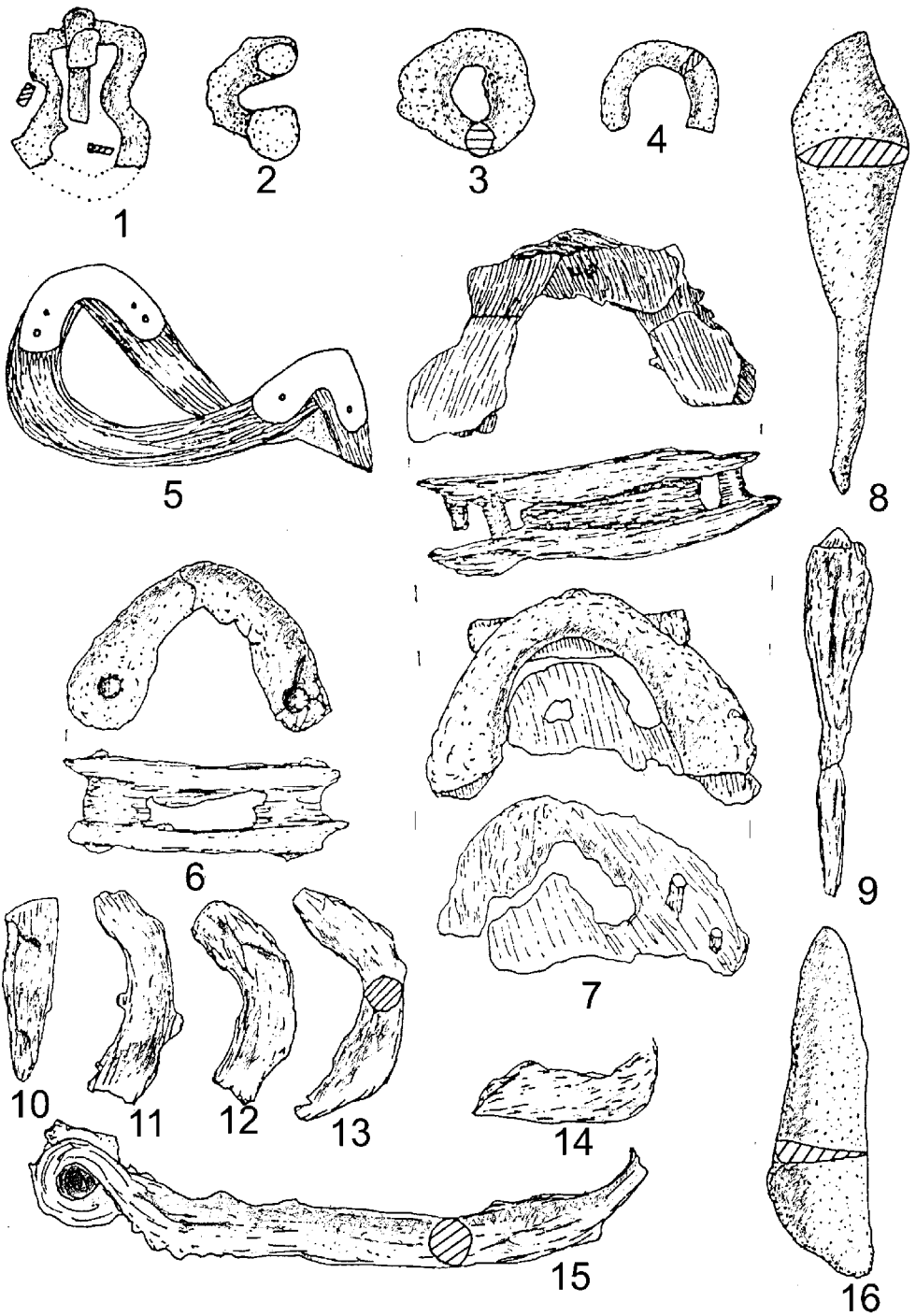


Fig. 54. Iron (1-4, 8-16), iron and wood (6, 7) objects and a saddle reconstruction (5) from the funerary inventory of a Turkic nomads' grave at Matca.

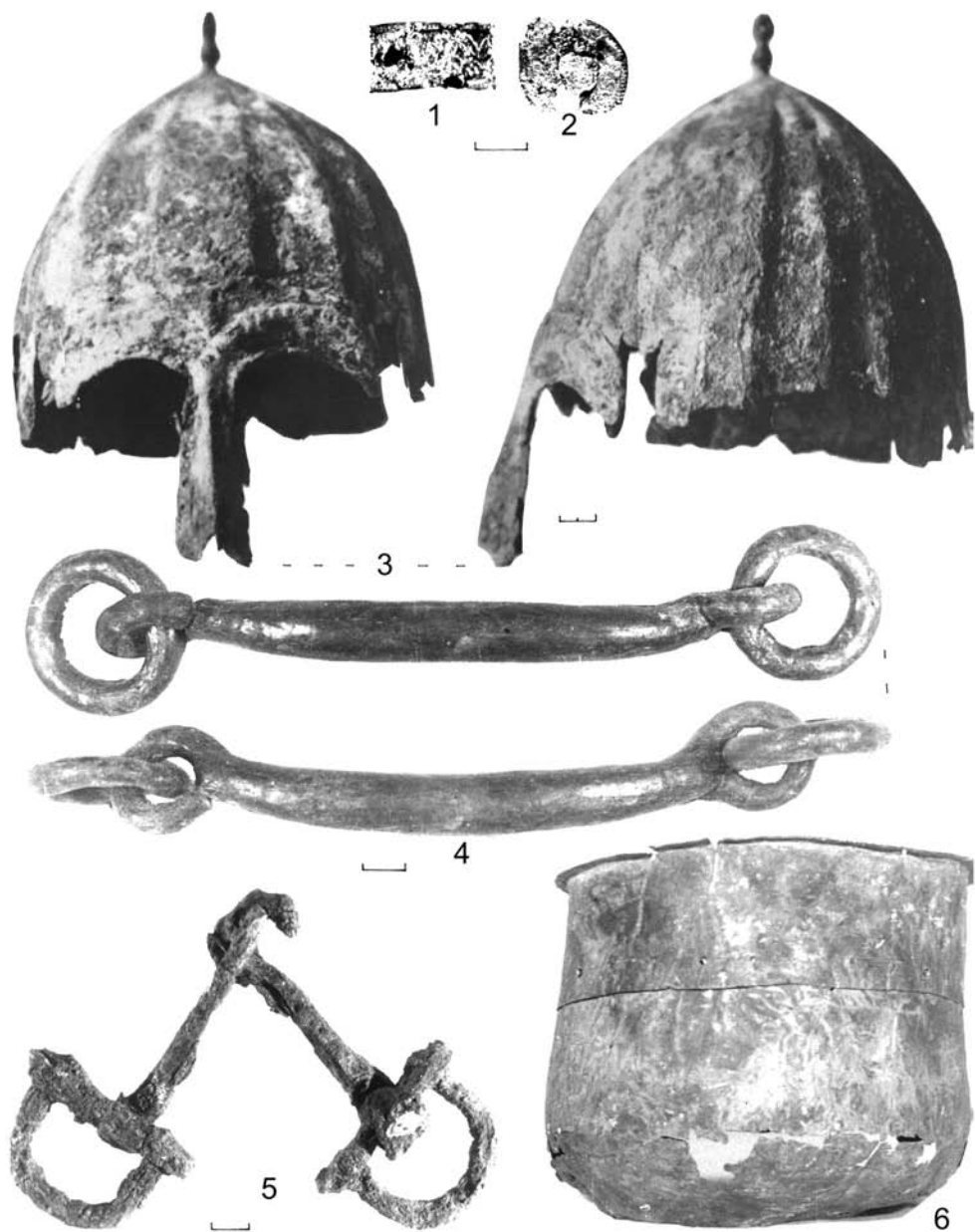


Fig. 55. Gold (1, 2), silvered iron (3), iron (4, 5) and copper (6) objects from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Pogonești (1, 2, 5, 6), Moscu (3) and Grivița-Vaslui (4).



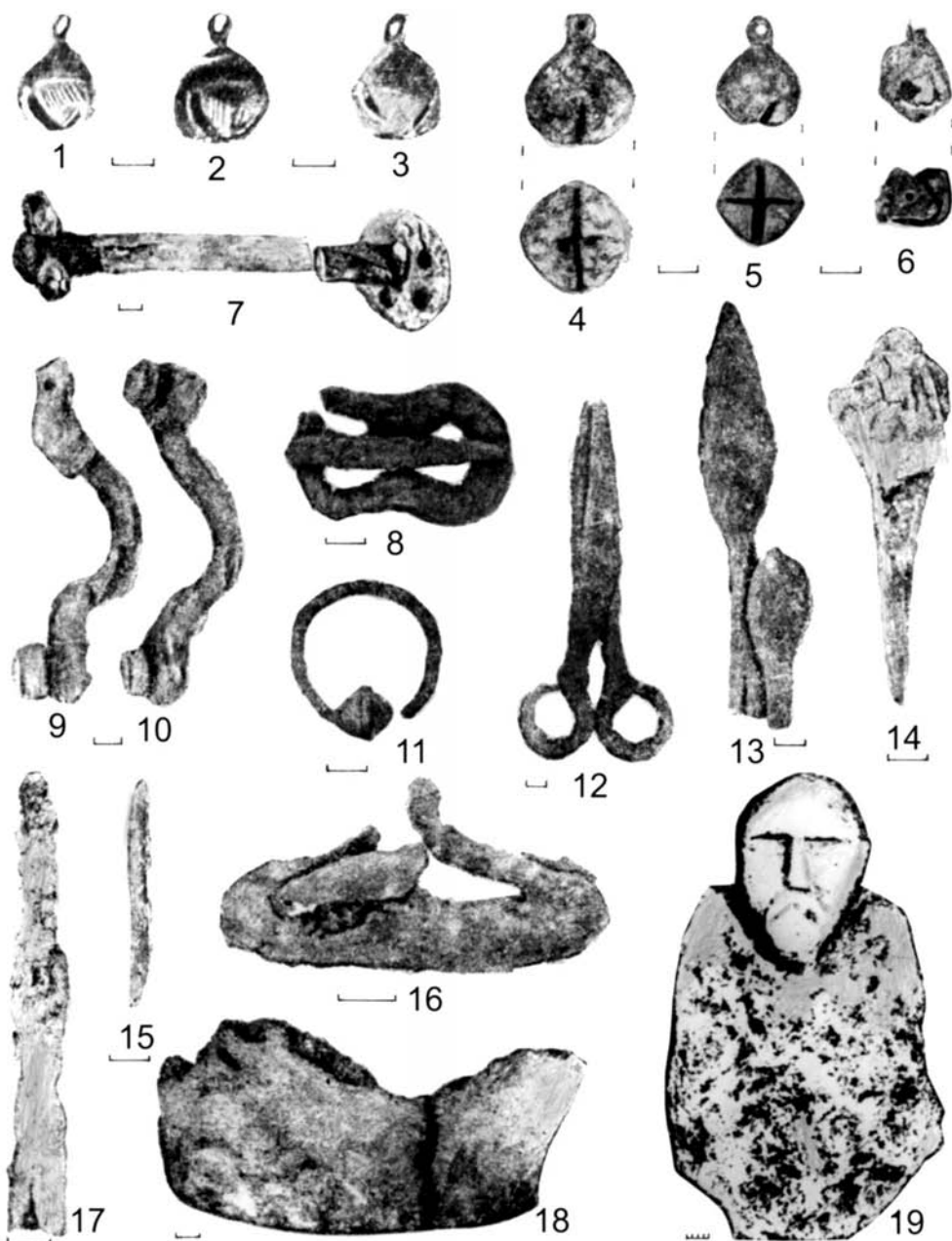


Fig. 56. Metal objects (1-17) and fragment of a clay pot (18) from the funerary inventory of the Turkic nomads' graves at Tudora (1-3) and Grădiște (4-18) and a stone statue at Nădușita (Gribova) (19).

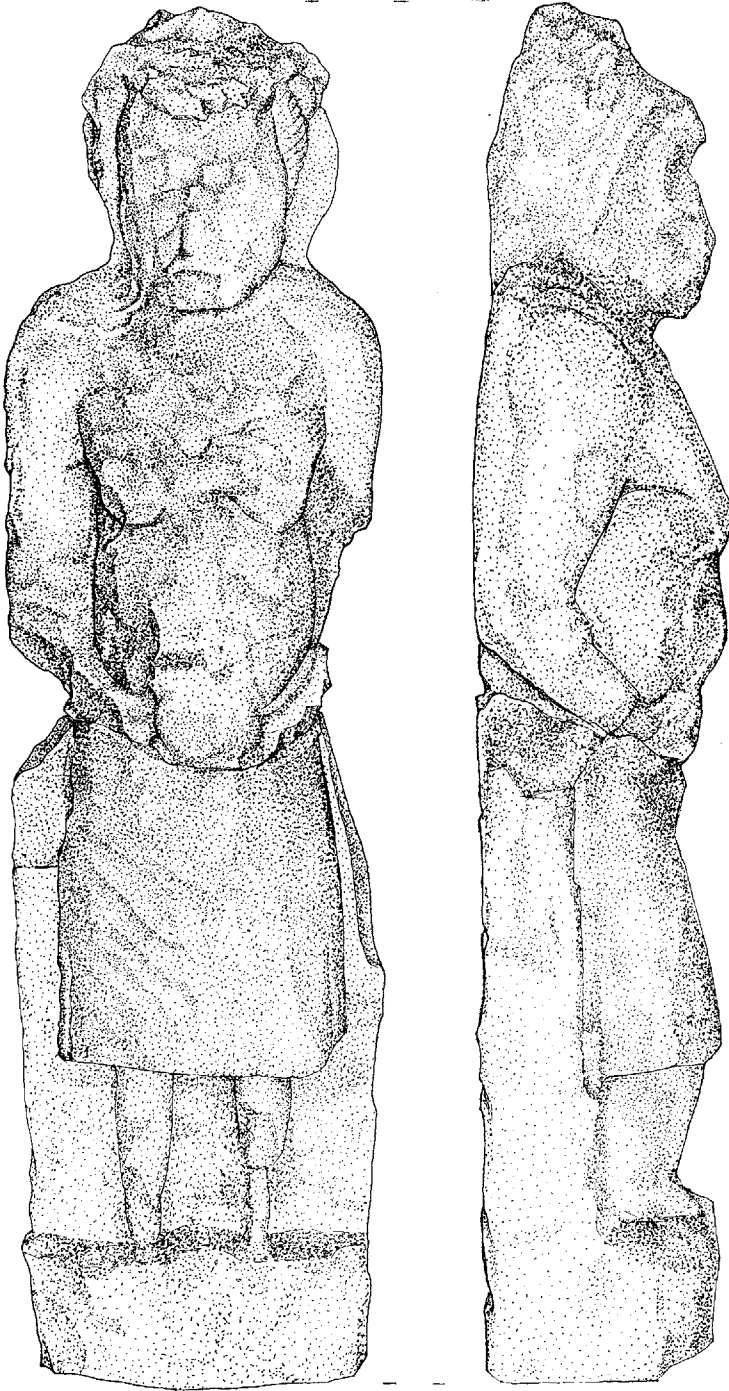


Fig. 57. Stone statue (*kamennaia baba*), attributed to the Cumans, from an unidentified place in the north-Pontic steppes, preserved in the Moldavian Historical Museum of Iași.



Fig. 58. Stone statues (*kamennye baby*), representing Cuman men, from the north-Pontic steppes.

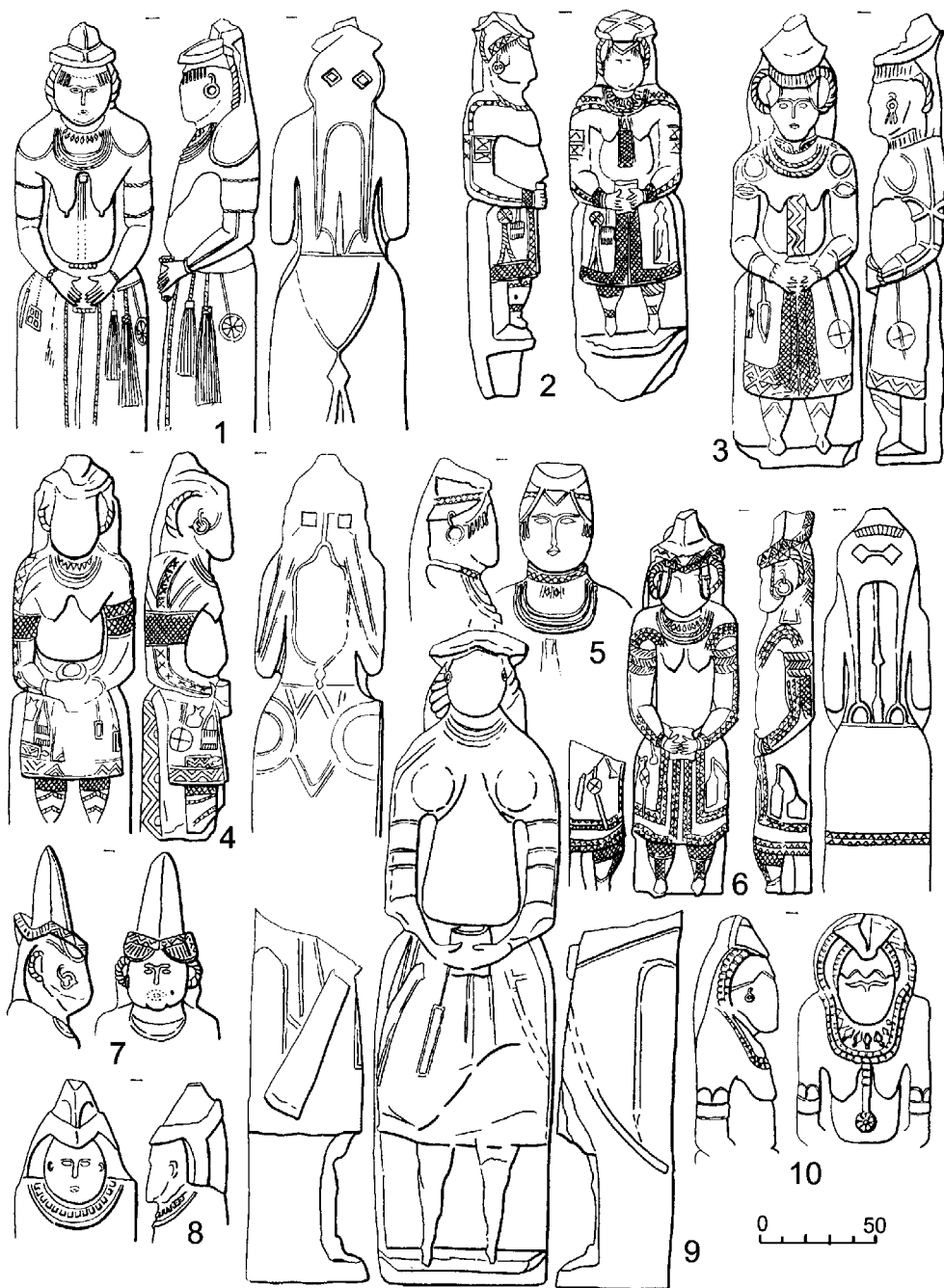


Fig. 59. Stone statues (*kamennye baby*), representing Cuman women, from the north-Pontic steppes.

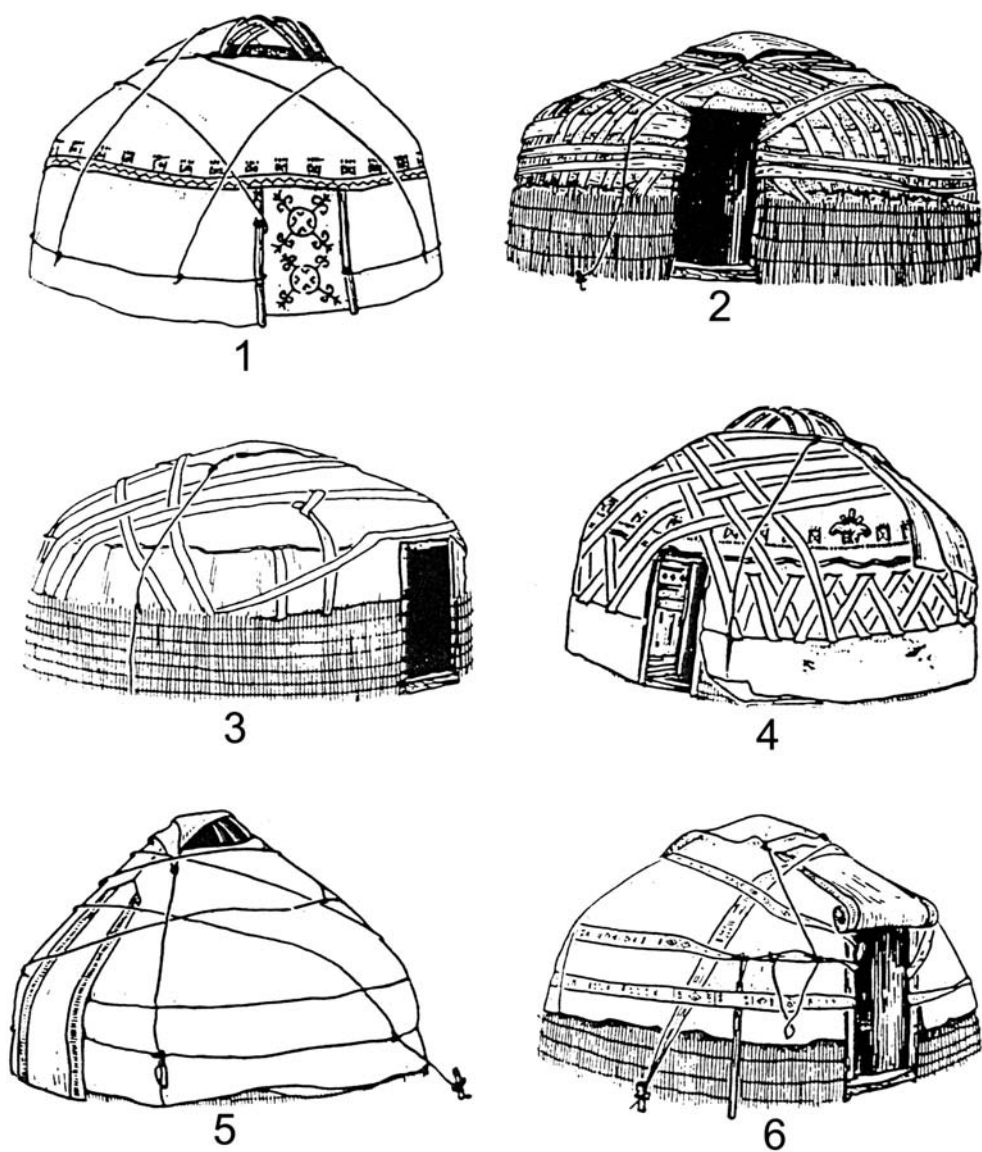


Fig. 60. Types of trellis tent of nomads from the steppe zone of Eurasia: Southern Qırqız (1, 4), Qunrad Özbek (2), Laqay Özbek (3) and Northern Qırqız (5, 6).

## GENERAL INDEX

- Aaron, Bulgarian nobleman 101  
Abaujvár, county 331  
Abdallatif al-Bagdadi, author 152  
Abkhazians 164  
Abraham Jakobsen (Ibrahim ibn Yakub), author 94  
Abu Hamid al-Garnati (el Granadino), traveller and author 114, 134  
Abul-'Abbas Ahmed Yak'ubi. See Yak'ubi  
Abu'l-Fida, chronicler and geographer 182, 184, 289  
Abu'l Ghâzi Behadur-Khan, prince and chronicler 81, 121  
Acheloo, river, battle of 91  
Acui, place name 320  
Adalbert, Saint, bishop of Prague 95  
Adâncata 291  
Adrianople 56–58, 116, 122, 144, 267  
Adrianopolitans 56  
Adriatic Sea 180, 333, 335, 337  
Adud al-Dawla, emir 241  
Aegean Sea 168, 336, 337  
Aga 324  
Agâş 324  
Ahladeri, village 336  
Ahmad ibn Ismail, emir 241  
Aidar, Polovtsian ruler 153  
Akkerman, Akerman, city 29, 37, 53. See also Cetatea Albă  
Akkerman, region (uezd) 288  
Akkubul, Cuman ruler 165  
Alans 49, 82, 83, 92, 123, 161, 163, 184, 188, 251  
Albania 317, 333, 336  
Alberic (Aubry) de Trois Fontaines, chronicler 276  
Alcedar 85, 241, 281, 320, 321  
Alep, city 339  
Alexandrovca ix, 284, 296, 486  
Alexander the Good (Alexandru cel Bun), Moldavian prince 323  
Alexeevca-Svetlâi 277, 297  
Alexius I Comnenus 103, 112, 119, 120, 124, 127, 197, 253, 333  
Alexius III Angelus 143  
Alibei, lake 34  
Almos, Hungarian ruler 70, 72, 353  
Alp Arslan, Seljuq prince 304  
Alps 16, 352  
Alsó Komana (Comana de Jos) 317  
Alta, battle of 105  
Altunopa, Polovtsian ruler 123, 264  
Amurat, Polovtsian ruler 153  
Ananias of Shirak (Širakats'i), author 80, 81  
Anchialos, city 122  
Andrew II, Hungarian king 142, 147, 152, 158  
Andronicus I Comnenus 131–133  
Andronicus II Paleologus 168, 337  
Andžogly, tribe 260  
Anenii Noi 67, 191, 196, 201, 214, 228, 283, 285, 286, 301  
Angelus, dynasty 140  
Anna Comnena. See Comnena, Anna  
Anonymus, chronicler (Notary) of king Bela [III] 76–79  
Antes, tribe 85  
Arabs 42, 48, 62, 83, 114, 221, 243, 304  
Aral, lake 113, 117  
Arbore 313  
Arbuz Cumans, Cuman ruler 331  
Arciz 242, 285  
Argeş, county 316  
Argeş, river 297  
Aristode 31  
Armeanu 340  
Armenians 80, 164  
Arnulf of Carinthia, German king 59  
Arpad 72, 353  
Arpadian Kingdom. See Hungary  
Arpadian state. See Hungary  
Arradjan, city 241  
Arslan-Tash, called Captchak (Kafdjak) 339  
Arsura vii, 283, 284, 448  
Ărtim, Pecheneg tribe 257  
Asan 324  
Asen (Asan), Vlach ruler, brother of Peter 138, 139, 164  
Asen, name 342  
Asens, Asenids, dynasty 127, 167, 272

- Asia Minor 36, 41, 56, 111, 118, 120, 167, 234  
 Askold, Kievan prince 55, 89  
 Aslan 324  
 Asmund 106  
 Asparukh, Bulgar ruler 50, 77  
 Asprokastron (Cetatea Albă) 53  
 Aspron, river 53  
 Atachi 320, 321  
 Atelkuzu 64, 66, 69, 71, 90, 93, 101, 307  
 Athanaric 27, 32  
 Athos, Mount 324, 333–336  
 Atlantic Ocean 13, 15  
 Atrak (Otrok), Cuman ruler 127, 143, 153, 264  
 Aubry de Montraye, author 37  
 Austria 35, 169  
 Avar Kaghanate 58  
 Avars 58, 70, 174, 184, 185, 220, 226, 352  
 Avril, Philippe, author 44  
 Azgir 324  
 Azov, Sea 129, 208, 261, 303
- Baba, name 324  
 Baba, place name 303  
 Babylon 130  
 Băcănă, tribe 260  
 Bacon, Roger, author 77  
 Bacău, county 18, 191, 313, 314, 319, 320, 322, 326  
 Bachkovo, monastery 112  
 Bachman, Qipchaq ruler 166  
 Badjanâk (Pechenegs) 182  
 Bádžánákija (Patzinakia) 94  
 Bahlui, hill 320  
 Bahlui, river 297, 318, 319, 320  
 Bahluiu, village 319  
 Baia (Molda), city 157  
 Baia (Rodna). See Rodna  
 Baibars, Rukn al-Din, author 260  
 Baibuga Tatar 340  
 Baikal, lake 304  
 Baio 342  
 Bajanak 259. See also Pechenegs  
 Bakhadyr 342  
 Bak'ŏ 342  
 Bako 342  
 al-Bakri, geographer 94, 205, 252, 275  
 Bakšić, Peter Bogdan, bishop and author 44  
 al-Bakuvi, author 183, 226  
 Balaban, name 324, 342
- Balabanu, village viii, ix, x, 256, 284, 287, 297, 462, 463, 479, 489, 490  
 Balcani, commune 313  
 Baldwin I, Latin emperor of Constantinople 144  
 Balica (Balyk?), local ruler in Dobrudja 352  
 Balik 342  
 Balin 211, 342  
 Balkan Peninsula, Balkans 31, 46, 47, 55, 56, 59, 69, 75–79, 89, 96–98, 102, 103, 106–108, 110, 111, 113, 115, 116, 120–122, 124–129, 133, 141–144, 158, 164, 167, 173, 178, 190, 197, 198, 200, 225, 233, 240, 242, 251, 259, 262, 269, 272, 317, 327, 331, 333, 335, 336, 338, 342, 352, 354, 360  
 Balkans, Mountains 47, 111, 122, 352  
 Baltic Sea 52, 53  
 Balul 342  
 Balush 342  
 Balvan 342  
 Balyk 324, 353  
 Banat 60, 90, 158, 318  
 Banca viii, 284, 297, 464  
 Barak 342  
 Barat, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Barboși. See Galați-Barboși  
 Bărgü, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Barso 342  
 Baruh, river (Dnieper?) 64  
 Baș 324  
 Basababa (Basaraba?), Martin 353  
 Basarab, name 324, 353  
 Basarab “the Founder”, Romanian prince 353  
 Basarabi (-Murfatlar), village 54  
 Basarabia. See Bessarabia  
 Bașeu, river 314, 323, 326  
 Bashkiria 77  
 Bashkirs 78, 117  
 Basil II, Byzantine emperor 102, 103, 108, 112, 242  
 Baștanovca 284, 297  
 Bastı, Polovtsian ruler 153  
 Batu Khan 163, 166, 169, 170, 209  
 Bawr, Friedrich Wilhelm von, geographer 17  
 Bădragü Vechi viii, ix, 256, 284, 297, 465, 473  
 Băiceni vii, 5, 196, 213, 214, 446  
 Bălăbănești 284  
 Bălăbani 346

- Băldălui, river 319  
 Bălți, Highlands 298  
 Bălți, Plain 204  
 Bălți, region (uezd) 288  
 Băneasa 297, 349  
 Bărăgan 1, 39, 47, 50, 96, 107, 117, 198, 261, 308, 310, 329, 344, 348  
 Băsărabă 324  
 Băsăști 320  
 Bătrânești 313  
 Bâc, river 231, 296, 321  
 Bârlad, city vii, viii, ix, 5, 17, 135, 284, 294, 312, 320, 349, 436, 466, 470, 474  
 Bârlad, region 296  
 Bârlad, river 17, 288, 297, 309, 313, 319, 321  
 Bârlad-“Prodana” vii, 190, 215, 449  
 Bârlălești 5, 67, 190, 196, 214, 228, 231, 444, 445, 443, 444  
 Bârsa Land (Țara Bârsci) 146, 147, 154  
 Bâtca Doamnei (-Piatra Neamț) 142  
 Beauplan. See Levasseur de Beauplan  
 Becska 331  
 Begovars, Cuman ruler 156  
 Beigoba 337  
 Bela III 73, 75, 79  
 Bela IV 154–157, 168, 205  
 Belaia Vezha. See Sarkel-Belaia Vezha  
 Belaj 333  
 Belcești 320  
 Belgorod, Belagrad, Belegrad (Bilhorod-Dnistrovs’kyi, Cetatea Albă) 42, 53  
 Belgrade 119  
 Belolesic x, 284, 297, 488  
 Bender (Tighina), city 27. See also Tighina  
 Bender, region (uezd) 288  
 Benjamin of Tudela, traveller and author 122  
 Berendeai 327  
 Berendeasa 316  
 Berendei, person name 325, 327  
 Berendei, tribe 126, 160, 188, 211, 293, 308, 311, 316, 341  
 Berendel 329  
 Berendești 316  
 Berendey, Stephan’s the Great rival 325  
 Berendi, Uzès ruler 338  
 Berendiș 315  
 Berești viii, 284, 293, 297, 313, 466  
 Berezan, Isle 53  
 Berheci 320  
 Berindeasca 316  
 Berindeești 312, 322, 323  
 Berindei, Turkish tribe 316, 323–327, 329, 330, 340, 341  
 Berindeiasca 316  
 Berindenii 307  
 Berindești 312, 322, 323  
 Berindeiești 312, 316  
 Berlin 5  
 Berladniks, tribe 131, 137, 188  
 Bersaba 337  
 Bessarabia (Basarabia) 18, 19, 42, 53, 57, 61, 87, 192, 196, 288, 321  
 Bessi 118. See also Bisseni and Pechenegs  
 Béthume, François Gaston de, French traveller 199  
 Bicaz, river 25  
 Bicaz, village 25  
 Biharea, fortress 118  
 Bihor, region 121  
 Bilhorod-Dnistrovs’kyi, district 68, 285, 286  
 Bilik 324  
 Birdzhandi, author 183  
 Bisseni (Pechenegs) 145  
 Bistrița, river 24, 142, 315  
 Bistrița, monastery 326  
 Black Caps (Chornye klobuki), Turkish tribe 140, 161, 211, 260, 296, 308  
 Black Cumania 260  
 Black Cumans 106, 107  
 Black Sea 2, 15, 16, 21, 29, 31, 37, 38, 40, 42, 46, 48, 50, 52, 53, 55, 56, 58, 62, 64, 70, 72, 83, 89, 90, 93, 96, 104, 106, 114, 117, 118, 122, 124, 125, 132, 138, 159, 166, 168, 170, 174, 186, 198, 207, 231, 243–245, 260, 261, 264, 295, 297, 298, 302, 347, 351, 352  
 Blacs. See Vlachs  
 Blaghâ (Wallachians?) 83  
 Blakumen 54, 105–107, 111. See also Blökumenn  
 Blökumenn 105–107, 255, 355  
 Blökumennaland 105  
 Bodești 313  
 Bodrog, river 64  
 Bodrozköz, place name 64  
 Boga, Pecheneg name 184  
 Bogas, John, general 91  
 Bogatoc vii, 191, 447



- Bohemia 35, 169, 221  
 Boil 342  
 Boleslav the Brave, Polish king 104  
 Bolgrad x, 284, 286, 297, 489  
 Bolokhovens 161, 162  
 Bolsun 324  
 Bolţun 314  
 Boniak, Cuman khan 121, 123, 263  
 Borcea 324  
 Borceac 320  
 Borcho 342  
 Borçul 324  
 Bordones (Brodniks), tribe 141, 159  
 Boril, Bulgarian tsar 164  
 Boris I (Michael), Bulgar ruler 62  
 Borisăuca (Borisovka) 285  
 Bornaz 329  
 Borodniceni 311  
 Borodin, A. P., composer 304  
 Boro-Talmač, Pecheneg tribe 257  
 Borsukov 157  
 Borza 324  
 Bosphorus 31, 41, 42, 48, 88, 108  
 Botna, river 296  
 Botoşana, village 314  
 Botoşani, city 5  
 Botoşani, county 18, 89, 286  
 Braşov, city 154, 330  
 Braşov, county 318  
 Braşov, road 23  
 Brateci 271  
 Brazda lui Novac 61  
 Brădiceşti 192  
 Brăhăşeşti 294, 355  
 Brăila, county 291, 292, 316  
 Brăila, marches 31  
 Brăneşti 68, 280, 281  
 Branişte 285, 297  
 Brăşăuţi 190, 214, 215  
 Brăviceni 285, 296  
 Breţcu 23  
 Briceni 285, 286  
 Brodniks 137, 141, 146, 150, 159–161,  
 188, 293, 295, 308, 311, 312  
 Bronze Age 12, 22, 210, 298  
 Bruno of Querfurt, Saint, bishop of  
 Augsburg 95, 257, 275  
 Brutos (Prut), river 64, 94  
 Buchak 342  
 Bucharest 291–293, 316, 349, 355  
 Bucovina 196, 309, 326  
 Bučuk 324  
 Budachi 285, 297  
 Budeşti 223, 329  
 Bug, South, river 26, 65, 84, 87, 88,  
 258, 261  
 Buga 324  
 Bugeac 14, 19, 25, 29, 32, 36, 37, 39,  
 47, 50, 56, 67, 86, 92, 96, 101, 107,  
 115–117, 120, 130, 170, 196, 198,  
 199, 204, 220, 230, 231, 234, 255,  
 261, 287, 296–298, 307, 308, 310,  
 320, 321, 348, 351  
 Buka 324  
 Bula-Çaban, Pecheneg tribe 257  
 Bulaq, tribe 77–80  
 Bulat 324  
 Buldur 324  
 Bulgar, city 241  
 Bulgar Khaganate 56  
 Bulgaria 56, 59–62, 66, 69, 78–80, 92,  
 94, 98, 101, 102, 145, 149, 157, 164,  
 167, 168, 169, 174, 236, 258, 269,  
 271, 273, 294, 301, 303, 311, 317,  
 342, 350, 354, 356. See also  
 Bulgarian Tsardom, First/Second  
 Bulgaria beyond the river Istros 56  
 Bulgaria minor 163  
 Bulgarian Tsardom, First 32, 55  
 Bulgarian Tsardom, Second 78, 144,  
 268, 272, 273, 343, 352  
 Bulgars, Bulgarians 36, 49, 55–61, 66,  
 69, 83, 78, 83, 91–93, 95, 98–100,  
 102, 103, 123, 139, 140, 159, 159,  
 163, 166, 167, 173, 174, 181, 190,  
 226, 242, 301, 303, 346, 354  
 Bulgaru 340  
 Bului, hill 320  
 Burat (Prut), river 94  
 Burciul 324  
 Burdžoglu, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Burghaz, tribe 83  
 Burğ-oglu, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Burizleifr (Sviatopolk) 105  
 Burlăneşti 285  
 Burluc 324  
 Burly, tribe 260  
 Burnas, lake 34, 297  
 Bursuceni 157  
 Buzangi, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Buzău, city 291, 292, 297  
 Buzău, county 223, 271, 291, 292  
 Buzău, river 297, 316  
 Buzdugan 324  
 Buzëzezi, village 333  
 Buzgan 324

- Bykovskii, Ivan, Russian monk 136
- Byzantine Empire, Byzantium 32, 47, 48, 51, 53, 55, 56, 62, 86, 89, 92–95, 98–104, 107, 108–112, 114, 117, 120–124, 126–130, 132, 133, 138, 140, 141, 143, 145, 153, 174, 175, 197, 227, 240, 244, 249, 250, 252, 263, 265, 268, 299, 326, 333–346, 350, 351, 356, 357
- Byzantines 42, 62, 69, 91, 103, 108, 114, 118, 122, 124, 127, 129, 132, 138, 142, 144, 210, 221, 243, 245, 259, 265, 276. See also Greeks
- Byzantium. See Byzantine Empire
- Caffa, city 42
- Cahul, county 19, 191, 285, 286, 320, 346
- Cahul, lake 297
- Çakan 324
- Calanciac ix, 285, 487
- Calfa vii, 67, 97, 191, 196, 201, 214, 228, 231, 283, 301, 450
- Caltabug, lake 297
- Caltabuga 320, 321
- Caltabugul Mare 297
- Camenca 285, 295
- Candia 336, 337
- Cantemir, name 324
- Cantemir, Constantin, Moldavian prince 254
- Cantemir, Dimitrie 17, 28, 226, 254
- Captchac (Kafdjak). See Arslan-Tash, called Captchak (Kafdjak)
- Carabaş 324
- Carabă 329
- Caracaş 329
- Caraman 329
- Carolingian Empire 69
- Carpathians 1, 14, 15, 21–24, 26, 35, 47, 54, 70–72, 100, 105, 107, 116, 124, 143, 156, 162, 174, 175, 200, 202, 216, 230, 250, 256, 310, 323, 330
- Carpathian arch 21, 46, 146. See also Carpathians
- Carpathian-Danubian area 1, 11, 13–16, 20, 46, 50, 61, 77, 80, 87
- Carpathian-Dniestrian area 11, 17, 26, 29, 45, 46, 53, 67, 76, 175, 194, 199, 223, 240, 247, 272, 273, 284, 287, 293, 298, 299, 319, 320, 348, 351, 359. See also Moldavia
- Carpathians, sub-. See sub-Carpathians
- Casimir IV, Polish king 341
- Caspian Sea 16, 48, 51, 52, 65, 89, 113, 114, 149, 151, 170, 173, 174, 207, 211, 233, 238, 243, 256, 275, 304, 307, 342, 355, 357
- Caspian-Pontic region 21
- Catalaunic Fields (Châlons-sur-Marne) 220
- Cattaro (Kotor), city 332
- Caucasus 47, 48, 143, 149, 201, 208, 303, 352
- Cavadineşti 313
- Cazaclia ix, 285, 297, 484
- Cazan 324
- Çazma 332
- Căinar, river 296
- Căinari, village 320, 321
- Călmăţui, rivers 319
- Călăraşi, county 190, 291, 292
- Căplani 258
- Căprăria (Hansca-) vi, 68, 281, 282, 448
- Căuşeni 285, 286, 295, 296
- Câlneşteia, river 297
- Câmpineanca 190, 444, 446
- Câmpulung Moldovenesc 226, 254, 255
- Cârja 35
- Cărnăţeni 285, 294–296, 349, 480
- Ceatalul Ismail 30
- Çelebi, Evlia, author 29, 198
- Çelebi, Kiatıp, author 32
- Central Asia 37, 51, 151, 160, 160, 171, 180, 185, 206, 212, 217, 219, 235, 238, 245, 261, 277, 278, 302, 318, 356
- Cernăuţi (Chernivtsi), region 315
- Cetatea Albă, city 29, 37, 42, 53. See also Akkerman/Akerman, Asprokastron and Belgorod
- Cetatea Albă, county 19
- Chakār 342
- Chalcidice (Khalkidike) Peninsula 334, 335
- Chalcolithic 22
- Chalis. See Tatos
- Charlemagne 271
- Charles Martel 48
- Charles Robert I of Anjou 169
- Cherkezės 163
- Chernigov, city 114
- Chernigov, principality 157
- Chernigov (Chernihiv), region 317

- Chersones 244, 245  
 Chertan 324  
 Chilia, city 31  
 Chilia, Danube arm 30  
 Chilia, district 286  
 China 208, 212, 218, 290  
 Chineja, river 296, 297, 315  
 Chingul, river 245  
 Chircăiești ix, 285, 479, 480  
 Chirileni ix, 285, 477, 484  
 Chișinău (Kishinev), city 5, 192, 242, 320, 321, 436  
 Chișinău (Lăpușna), county/region (uezd) 19, 288  
 Chișlia 320  
 Chislița 285, 295, 297  
 Chitai, lake 297  
 Choniates, Niketas, chronicler 126, 132, 141, 160  
 Chornye klobuki. See Black Caps  
 Christof Koman. See Koman, Christof  
 Chumanin 332  
 Chumano 336  
 Cîauș x, 285, 295, 297  
 Cimișeni 285  
 Cimișlia 285  
 Cioban 324  
 Ciocâlteni 285  
 Ciorăști 329, 446  
 Cireșanu 291  
 Ciucur 320  
 Ciuhui, hill 320  
 Ciulnița 291  
 Ciuluc 320, 321  
 Ciulucul Mijlociu 297  
 Claudius Aelianus, author 31  
 Clavijo. See Gonzales de Clavijo, Ruy  
 Cneaja 315  
 Cociovatoe 285, 295, 296  
 Codrul Nou 285  
 Cogâlnic, river 29, 296, 297, 350  
 Colceag 297  
 Colentina, river 297  
 Colgeag 324  
 Coloman, Hungarian king 124  
 Çolpan 324  
 Čomak 324  
 Coman, name 311, 323, 325–333, 336, 338, 340–341, 353  
 Coman, rivers 315  
 Coman, villages 313  
 Coman Băicescul 327, 340  
 Coman Basinschi 327, 340  
 Coman Berchez 327, 340  
 Coman Crețu 340  
 Coman Făgărășanul 328, 340  
 Coman Kure 328, 340  
 Coman Margelat 328, 340  
 Coman Șalov 340  
 Comana 297, 313, 316, 317, 323, 327, 328, 330, 332, 337  
 Comana de Jos 317  
 Comana de Sus 317  
 Comanac 315  
 Comanca 316  
 Comandău 317  
 Comanfalva 318  
 Comani 316  
 Comania 38, 152, 172. See also Cumania, Terra Cumanorum  
 Comans. See Cumans  
 Comanul 313  
 Comanus, Michael 336  
 Comăna 313  
 Comănaci 327  
 Comănaș 330  
 Comănașuți 313  
 Comăncasa 316  
 Comănel 311, 323, 327, 330  
 Comănescu 327, 330  
 Comănești 25, 311, 313–316, 318, 322, 323  
 Comăneștilor (Seliște) 315  
 Comăniâl. See Comănel  
 Comănică 330  
 Comănici 330  
 Comănița 316  
 Comăniță 330  
 Comărești (Komarivtsi) 315  
 Comitopouloi Brothers 101, 102  
 Comnena, Anna 110, 120, 122, 125, 227  
 Comnenian dynasty 120, 125, 242  
 Comnenus, Theodore (Todre Ie Commanos) 335  
 Comulco, Alessandro, author 44  
 Constanța, county 54, 316, 317  
 Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus 53, 60, 92–94, 96, 184, 207, 257, 258, 312  
 Constantine IX Monomachus 108, 111  
 Constantinople 31, 41, 42, 47, 54, 50, 55, 56, 62, 89, 91–95, 103, 108, 109, 112, 113, 126, 143, 144, 158, 167, 168, 175, 178, 242, 273, 336  
 Copanca 285, 294, 295, 296  
 Copceac 285

- Copciac 320  
 Corcioba, A. 435–437  
 Copcii 319  
 Cordoba, city 41  
 Corhană 320  
 Corjeuți 285, 297  
 Corjova 285, 295–297, 309  
 Corona (Brașov), city 154  
 Corpaci 285, 297  
 Țortan 324  
 Cossacks 160, 221  
 Costâna 312  
 Costești 285, 297, 349  
 Costin, Miron, chronicler 27  
 Coteanu 324  
 Cotiujeni 285  
 Covasna, county 317  
 Covurlui, plane 319  
 Covurlui, river and lake 318, 319  
 Cowari (Kabars), tribe 69  
 Crasna, river 313  
 Crete 336, 337  
 Cricov 61  
 Crimea 37, 40, 48, 91, 93, 124, 148, 149, 170, 172, 212, 246, 261, 265, 303  
 Crișana, region 318  
 Criuleni 284  
 Croatia, White 92  
 Croats 83, 88, 89, 97, 103  
 Crucișoara 446  
 Crusade, the First 125, 130  
 Crusade, the Second 126  
 Crusade, the Third 127  
 Crusade, the Fourth 143, 217, 336  
 Csangos 71  
 Cuconeștii Vechi 285, 297  
 Cucuteni-Tripolye culture 11, 22  
 Cugurlui 319  
 Cuhurești 320  
 Cuhurlui, river 319  
 Cuise 337  
 Cula 320  
 Cuman (Cumanus) 331–333  
 Cuman Bishopric 154–156, 355, 357  
 Cuman of Alep 339  
 Cumana, Yorgi 336  
 Cumania 130, 145, 146, 153, 157, 159, 172, 260  
 Cumanj, Georgius 333  
 Cumano, Iohannes 336  
 Cumans x, 38, 68, 74, 75, 81, 82, 90, 106–108, 113, 115–131, 133, 137, 140, 141, 143–146, 148–159, 164–172, 174, 182–184, 186, 188, 197, 198, 201, 204, 205, 208, 210–212, 217, 218, 226, 227, 232, 232, 245, 246, 260–268, 275, 276, 278, 287, 293, 295, 298, 301, 304, 307–309, 311, 316, 318, 319, 321, 323, 324, 327, 331–339, 341, 343–347, 350, 352–355, 357, 358, 495–497  
 Cumans' Ford (Vadul Cumanilor) 319  
 Cumanus de Succotrino (Cumanus Scudrin) 323  
 Cunduc 320  
 Cuni. See Cumans  
 Cupcui 320  
 Țur, Pecheneg tribe 257  
 Țura 324  
 Curcani 294, 297, 349  
 Curta, Florin, historian 6  
 Cusan 72. See also Kurszan  
 Cușa, Anton 5  
 Cwn/Kun 331  
 Cyprus 336, 337  
  
 Dacia 23, 27, 81, 94, 269, 438  
 Dacians 23, 310, 321  
 Dacians (Hungarians) 197  
 Dacians (Pechenegs) 94, 95  
 Daco-Romans 23  
 ad-Dahabi, author 152  
 Dalmatia 120, 332, 333, 336  
 Damascus 339  
 Danastris (Dniester), river 49, 99  
 Danciul, son of Coman 326  
 Daniil (Danylo) Romanovich, Galician prince 156, 162  
 Danube 1, 16, 29–34, 36, 38–40, 42, 47, 50, 53, 55–64, 66–68, 70, 71, 73–77, 79, 80, 83, 84, 90–92, 94, 95, 98–102, 104, 108–117, 119–132, 136–141, 145, 146, 155, 158, 159, 163, 164, 167, 170, 174, 175, 178–180, 197, 199, 202, 210, 225, 230, 231, 236, 238, 240, 242, 244, 259, 261, 262, 270, 272, 273, 288, 289, 291, 292, 296–299, 304, 307–308, 310, 316, 318  
 Danube Delta 1, 21, 29, 30, 40, 46, 47, 55, 63, 68, 101, 108, 116, 121, 230, 273, 307, 310, 356  
 Danube Plain 46, 47, 50, 58, 66, 113. See also Romanian Plain  
 Darius I the Great 32

- David, Bulgar nobleman 101  
 David (David) II Ağmashenebeli,  
   Georgian king 127, 208  
 David (David) IV, Georgian king 143  
 Dăbâca 118  
 Dănești vii, viii, 5, 67, 192, 446, 455  
 Dârman 324  
 Deahl, Julian, senior editor 6  
 Delacău 321  
 Delea 320  
 Delești viii, 300, 460  
 Delibaş, Waltraud 5, 435–437  
 Demidoff, Anatole de 288  
 Dentümogyer (Dentumoger),  
   Hungarians' ancestors 70  
 Derehlu, river 318  
 Dereneu 320  
 Derlui, river 318  
 Derman 342  
 Dersca 89  
 Desht-i Qıpchaq (the Cumans' Steppe)  
   38, 39, 126, 130, 149, 151, 164,  
   165–171, 173, 175, 205, 210, 226,  
   227, 234, 235, 263, 296, 308, 358  
 Dikiie polia (Wild plain) 38  
 al-Dimashqi, Shams al-Din, author  
   182, 260  
 Dinogetia (Garvăn) 115, 252, 292, 293  
 Dir, Kievan ruler 55, 89  
 Divizia ix, 285, 484  
 Djurdjaniya, city 245  
 Dnieper 26, 40, 49, 51, 53, 57, 65,  
   70, 84, 87, 89, 96, 99, 107, 115, 116,  
   121, 131, 138, 140, 141, 150, 207,  
   244, 257–259, 261, 263, 294, 303,  
   356  
 Dnieper Plateau 14, 26  
 Dniester (Nistru) 1, 16, 19, 26–29, 33,  
   34, 37, 40, 42, 43, 53, 61, 62, 65,  
   69, 81, 83–85, 87, 88, 93, 94, 96, 97,  
   103, 150, 157, 175, 194, 200, 216,  
   230, 231, 250, 253, 258, 267, 281,  
   295–298, 303, 308, 309, 320, 321,  
   328, 351  
 Dobrotich, local ruler in Dobruđja 353  
 Dobrovăț 192  
 Dobruđja 1, 23, 32, 33, 39, 54, 89,  
   101, 115, 125, 132  
 Dodești 190, 196  
 Dogan 342  
 Doina 285  
 Dolhești 242  
 Don 63, 64, 70, 94, 96, 117, 126, 244,  
   261, 279, 288, 303  
 Donets 211, 261, 303  
 Dorman 324  
 Dorostolon (Dristra, Silistra) 99, 109,  
   113  
 Dracula 286, 296  
 Dragaş, Jovan. See Jovan Dragaş  
 Dragosloveni 223  
 Drevliansians, tribe 86, 88, 258  
 Dridu culture vii, 50, 61, 67, 87, 96,  
   97, 189, 190, 193, 213, 236, 293,  
   310, 349, 355, 440  
 Dridu-“Snagov”, village 291, 294, 297  
 Drin, river 317  
 Dristra 99, 100, 119, 120, 125.  
   See also Durostolon  
 Drochia 285, 302  
 Drumea, Emilia 5, 435–437  
 Dubăsarii Vechi 285, 296  
 Dubroqualis Cumanus 332  
 Dubrovnik. See Ragusa  
 Durazzo 333, 353  
 Dürer, A. 8  
 Durlești 192  
 Durman 342  
 Durostorum. See Silistra  
 Durut, Qıpchaq tribe 165, 260, 263  
 Dushman 342  
 Duşman 324  
 Dyrrachion. See Durazzo  
 Džuznan, Qıpchaq tribe 260  
 Echimăuți 85, 241  
 Edineț, county 256, 284  
 Egci 333  
 Egil 106  
 Endzhe (Tzarev Brod) 303  
 England 174  
 Epirus 76, 144  
 Epureni 67, 190, 214  
 Erdelw (Transylvania) 72  
 Esztergom (Strigonium) 152  
 Etelkuzu, Etelköz 64, 93. See also  
   Atelkuzu  
 Etulia 191, 196, 285, 297, 349  
 Euboea 336, 337  
 Eurasia, Eurasian steppe x, 37, 46, 47,  
   170, 183, 244, 357, 360  
 Evry 5  
 Famagosta 336, 337  
 Farkaş, Romanian knez 163  
 Făgăraş, city 317 329, 330  
 Făgăraş Land (Țara Făgăraşului) 329,  
   330

- Fălcu, county 321  
 Fălcu, hill and plain 35  
 Fălcu, name 320  
 Fălești 285  
 Făurei 329  
 Fărțânești 315  
 Fedești 444  
 Felső Komana (Comana de Sus) 317  
 Feștelita 285  
 Fiedler, Uwe, historian 5  
 Finland, Gulf 53  
 Florești 68, 284–286  
 Florus, L. Annaeus, author 310  
 Focșani, city 5, 18  
 France 52, 163, 170, 350  
 Frankfurt am Main 5  
 Franks 74, 77, 119, 173  
 Frâncu 340  
 Frederick I Barbarossa 130  
 Fricăței ix, x, 256, 285, 296, 297  
 Fridensfeld (Mirnopolc) viii, 68, 256, 285, 294–297, 466  
 Frumușica 68, 285, 295, 296, 310  
 Fulda, monastery 69  
 Fundu Herței 89
- Gabriel, prelate 93  
 Gagauz 186  
 Gagauz Autonomous Territorial Unit (UTAG) 191, 196, 284–286  
 Galați, city 18, 33, 135, 285  
 Galați, county 68, 191, 223, 256, 284–286, 288, 294, 313–315, 319, 320, 322, 355  
 Galați-Barboși 23  
 Galicia 121, 131–133, 135, 137, 156–158, 162, 233, 251, 317  
 Galician (Halych) Principality 61, 71, 124, 131, 135  
 Galician-Volhynia Principality 141, 142, 161  
 Galicians 131, 157, 162  
 Galoșpetreu 331  
 Gara Banca viii, 190, 196, 300, 460  
 Gaul 271  
 Garvăn. See Dinogetia (Garvăn)  
 Găvănoasa 285, 297  
 Gârbovăț 223  
 Gășteni 313  
 Gebe. See Jebe  
 Gelalzade, Mustafă, chronicler 32  
 Gelou, Romanian prince 60, 73, 90, 350  
 Genghis Khan 151, 165
- Georgia 127, 143, 153, 168, 201, 268, 276, 354  
 Georgians 164, 276  
 Germany 186, 350  
 Ghidigeni 288  
 Ghimeș Pass 25  
 Ghozz, Ghuzz. See Oghuz and Uzes  
 Giazichopon (Jazi-Qapon), Pecheneg tribe 257, 258  
 Giovanni di Pian di Carpine. See Plano Carpini  
 Girmscheid, Ellen, editor 6  
 Giulești 340  
 Giurgiu 190, 292, 316  
 Giurgiulești 191  
 Glad, prince in Banat 73, 90  
 Glavacioc 297  
 Glodeni 285  
 Goethe, J.-W. 8  
 Gogul 342  
 Goian 242  
 Golden Horde 27, 32, 38, 170, 171, 173, 174, 179, 209, 224, 230, 252, 255, 256, 260, 275, 308, 355, 358  
 Golden Horn 42  
 Gologanu 329  
 Gonzales de Clavijo, Ruy, Spanish envoy 42  
 Goranduxt, the daughter of Atrak 143  
 Gorgan 329  
 Gorj 292, 316  
 Gorodnoe 285  
 Goryn, river 88  
 Goșman, mountains 315  
 Gotland 54  
 Gradeșca 285  
 Grand Comneni, dynasty 168  
 Grădești 246, 285, 295  
 Grădiște x, 285, 290, 294, 297, 492  
 Greaca, lake 61  
 Grecu 340  
 Greece 114, 130, 180  
 Greek Empire (Byzantine Empire) 117  
 Greeks 34, 53, 56, 57, 82, 89, 99, 255, 301  
 Gregory IX, Pope 154, 155, 357  
 Gregory Pakourianos. See Pakourianos, Gregory  
 Gribova 302, 303  
 Grivița, Galați county 285, 319  
 Grivița, Vaslui county ix, x, 5, 285, 294, 297, 470, 493  
 Grozești viii, 68, 285, 293, 297, 468  
 Grumezoaia 446

- Grünweg, Martin, author 302  
 Gugęsti 329  
 Guillebert de Lannoy, French traveller  
 and author 37  
 Gura Băcului 285, 296, 349, 472  
 Gypsy 326–328, 340, 354  
 Gyula, Transylvanian prince 104
- Hagidar. See Hajilar  
 Hagimus 285, 290  
 Hajilar, Hagilar 285, 321  
 Hallstatt culture 12, 22  
 Halych. See Galicia  
 Hama, city 339  
 Hamd-Allah Mustawfi of Qazwin.  
 See Qazwini  
 Hamza 329  
 Hancăuți 285, 295, 297, 309  
 Hansca vii, 67, 68, 191, 192, 196,  
 214, 228, 231, 251, 281, 283, 286,  
 296, 446, 451, 452. See also Căprăria  
 and Limbari (-Hansca).  
 Hardalupa 324  
 Harun al Rashid, caliph 241  
 Hasdai ibn Shaprut 41  
 Hațeg Land (Țara Hațegului) 329  
 Hâncești 286, 319  
 Hârlău, city 309  
 Heci 312  
 Heinrich von Mügeln, chronicler 107  
 Hellas, region 76  
 Herodotus 31, 92, 233, 277  
 Hethum (Hayton) of Korykos,  
 chronicler 38, 153, 234  
 Hierissos 334  
 Hilandar Monastery 332, 335  
 Hinova 61  
 Hippocrates 207  
 Histria 292, 293  
 Hlincea (-Iași) vii, 190, 192, 444, 445  
 Holboca viii, 68, 285, 295, 297, 309,  
 469  
 Holmskoe 285, 295  
 Holy Land 42  
 Holy Mount. See Athos  
 Holy Roman Empire 93  
 Holy See 147, 156, 158, 276  
 Homorod-Chemenfalău 318  
 Horincea 314  
 Hotari 314  
 Hotin, city 320, 321  
 Hotin, region (uezd) 19, 288  
 Hotin, *raia* 196  
 Hriban, Cătălin, historian 6
- Hrișcu, Carmen 6  
 Huart, C. 83  
 Hülägü, ilkhan 201  
 Hungaria Magna 78, 166  
 Hungarian Kingdom. See Hungary  
 Hungarians 50, 59, 62–79, 90–93, 95,  
 98, 99, 104, 112, 119, 120, 122, 127,  
 133, 134, 142, 156, 157, 162, 184,  
 188, 197, 244, 265, 266, 276, 308,  
 330, 350, 357  
 Hungary 35, 37, 64, 67, 105, 107,  
 111, 117, 121, 124, 126, 127, 130,  
 132–134, 153, 156–158, 168–170,  
 174, 175, 179, 197, 226, 233, 258,  
 268, 275, 276, 308, 311, 330, 331,  
 333, 337–339, 341, 350, 354, 357,  
 358. See also Pannonia and  
 Pannonian Plain  
 Huns 27, 220, 226, 262, 276, 352  
 Hust (Huszt), city 242  
 Hutzuls 116  
 Huzun 311
- Iablona ix, 285, 295, 487  
 Iacobeni 241  
 Iagorlăc 320  
 Ialomița, county 68, 190, 291, 292,  
 297  
 Ialomița, marshes (Balta Ialomiței)  
 31, 109  
 Ialoveni, county 67, 68, 191, 192, 196,  
 214, 228, 281, 283, 286  
 Ialpuș, lake 231, 297, 319  
 Ialpuș, river 297, 321  
 Ialpușel, river 297  
 Iarcân 324  
 Iaroslav Osmomysli, Galician prince  
 131–133, 135, 136  
 Iaroslav the Wise, Kievan prince 105,  
 107, 355  
 Iarul 342  
 Iassians, tribe 166, 181  
 Iași, city viii, x, 5, 6, 192, 228, 435,  
 438, 495  
 Iași, county 18, 67, 68, 190, 191, 192,  
 196, 213, 214, 228, 241, 242, 283,  
 285, 286, 300, 312, 313, 319, 320  
 Iași-“Nicolina” viii, 192, 228, 457,  
 458  
 Iazyčyoğlu Ali, chronicler 148, 149  
 Iberian Peninsula 275  
 Ibn Abi l-Hadîd al-Madâ’inî.  
 See al-Madâ’inî  
 Ibn al-Nadim, author 82

- Ibn Battuta, traveller and author 39, 184  
 Ibn Bibi, chronicler 148, 149  
 Ibn Fadlan, traveller and chronicler 111, 232, 278, 290  
 Ibn Hauqal, geographer and chronicler 51, 94, 183, 209  
 Ibn Khaldun, chronicler 182, 260  
 Ibn Khordâdbeh, chronicler 182  
 Ibn Rusta, geographer and chronicler 184, 209  
 Ibn Tagribirdi, chronicler 167  
 Ibn Wasil, chronicler 165  
 Ibrahim ibn Yakub. See Abraham Jakobsen  
 Ichel 320  
 Iconium (Konya), city 148  
 Icușești 313  
 Idrisi, geographer 182, 212, 260  
 Ieta, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Igor, Kievan prince 86, 89, 92, 95  
 Igor, prince of Novgorod-Seversk 136  
 Il-âris, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Ilfov, county 291  
 Iliâș, Moldavian prince 325  
 Illyricum 117  
 Immen, lake 53  
 Innocent IV, Pope 170  
 Insula Șerpilor. See Snake's Island  
 Însurăței 291  
 Ioannes Kegen. See Kegen  
 Ioannitsa (Kaloyannes) 141, 144, 145, 164, 179  
 Ionescu, Romeo 5, 435, 438  
 Iron Gates, Danubian (Porțile de Fier) 39, 71  
 Irtysh, river 113  
 Isaac I Comnenus 110, 112  
 Isaac II Angelus 139  
 Isaccea, city 32  
 Ismail, city 36, 242  
 Ismail, county 19, 191, 246, 285, 286, 319  
 Ismail, *raia* 33  
 Ismail, region (uezd) 288  
 Ismail ibn Ahmad, Samanid emir 241  
 Işperikh. See Asparukh al-Istakhri, author 183  
 Istro-Romanians 180  
 Istros (Danube) 34, 36, 56  
 Itapa, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Italians 21, 74, 173  
 Italy 55, 95, 99, 118, 127, 132, 174, 350  
 Itil/Etil 63, 64. See also Volga  
 Itul 324  
 Iurii Konchakovich, Cuman prince 264  
 Ivan (Ivanko) Rostislavich 131, 135, 137  
 Ivanovca ix, 285, 287, 296, 309, 485, 486  
 Ivron Monastery 333, 334  
 Iziaslav Iaroslavich, Kievan prince 114, 117  
 Iziaslav Mstislavich, Kievan prince 153  
 Izvoru 190  
 'Izz ed-Dîn Hasan ben Ya'kub ben Kifdjak 339  
 Jacques de Vitry, chronicler 183  
 Jalal-al-Din (Jalaluddin), Khwarazmshah 165  
 Jarizleifr (Iaroslav the Wise) 105  
 Jariștea vii, 329, 444  
 Javdi-Ertim, Pecheneg tribe 88, 257, 258  
 Jazi-Qapon, Pecheneg tribe 257, 258  
 Jebe (Ġebe, Jäbä), Mongol general 149, 151  
 Jeravăț, river 313, 323, 326  
 Jijia, river 297, 309, 319, 321  
 Jilava 294, 297, 349  
 Jimak, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Joachim (Iwachin) of Sibiu 145  
 Joannes Komanitzes. See Komanitzes, Joannes  
 Jochi, Mongol khan 151, 152, 165, 234  
 John I Tzimiskes 98, 99, 100, 101, 242  
 John II Comnenus 126, 127, 221  
 John III Ducas Vatatzes 164, 167  
 John Asen II, Bulgarian tsar 149, 164, 167  
 John, Romanian knez 163  
 John of Plano Carpini. See Plano Carpini  
 Joltâi Iar 285, 488  
 Josippon, Hebrew historical work 95  
 Jovan Dragaș, despot 335  
 Julia, Pecheneg tribe 257, 258  
 Julian, Dominican friar 166  
 Jyla. See Julia  
 Kabal 342  
 Kabars 50, 64, 69, 71, 75, 188, 341  
 K'abukšin-Jula, Pecheneg tribe 257  
 Kadan, Mongol ruler 157, 339



- Kaepichi, tribe 160  
 Kalcheva 285, 297  
 Kalka, battle of 150, 153, 159, 162, 263  
 Kalmuks, tribe 219  
 Kaltabuka 324  
 Kamanic 336  
 Kambiya 336  
 Kam'ianets Podil's'kyi (Kamenets-Podolsk), city 187  
 Kangar 258  
 Kangogly, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Kara 342  
 Karabarogly, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Karabash 342  
 Karabirkli, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Karača 324  
 Karadzha 342  
 Karaman 342  
 Karaz, Cuman ruler 145, 146  
 Kastamonu, bey of 151  
 Kato-Gyla, Pecheneg tribe 257  
 Kavadarci 335  
 Kazakhs 210  
 Kazan, person name 324  
 Kazar, Pecheneg ruler 338  
 Kegen, Pecheneg khan 108, 109, 113, 153, 197, 210, 259, 263  
 Kekaumenos, author 76, 178  
 Kerson, region 304  
 Khali 342  
 Khalkidike Peninsula. See Chalcidice Peninsula  
 Khamza 342  
 Khazaria 41, 48, 51. See also Khazar Kaghanate  
 Khazar Kaghanate 50, 55, 65  
 Khazars 47–51, 66, 75, 82, 90, 95, 111, 159, 184, 185, 188, 209, 219, 221, 241, 243–245, 266, 352  
 Khur-shah (Khwar-shah) 201  
 Khwarazm 38, 148, 149, 151, 165, 175, 217  
 Khwarazmians 134, 166  
 Kiev, city 5, 17, 51, 55, 70, 73, 86, 88, 89, 98, 107, 108, 124, 131, 136, 142, 153, 162, 255, 265, 267, 317, 355  
 Kievan Principality 51, 55, 62, 86. See also Kievan Rus'  
 Kievan Rus' 55, 89, 97, 124  
 Kimak 208, 217, 226, 232  
 Kimba Longos, battle of 102  
 Kinnamos, John (Ioannes), chronicler 128, 129, 132, 179, 221, 234  
 Kirovo 304  
 Kitan 342  
 Koian 342  
 Kökechü 340  
 Komana 317, 324, 329, 330, 338  
 Komana Cherchel 329  
 Komana, Christof 329  
 Komana, Polovtysyan ruler 338  
 Komana (Κομάννα) 334  
 Komańcza 317  
 Komanevo 317  
 Komanfalva 317  
 Komani 317  
 Komanica (Komanitza) 317  
 Komanitzes, Joannes 334  
 Komanka 334  
 Komano 336  
 Komanos 333–336  
 Komanov 317  
 Komanovo 317, 335  
 Komanowa 317  
 Komanpathak 318  
 Kománya 317  
 Komanyfalva 318  
 Komeno 336  
 Konchak, Cuman khan 264  
 Konovalova, Irina G., historian 5  
 Konstanz 5  
 Konya, town 148  
 Konya (Rum), Sultanate 149  
 Kopolch, Cuman ruler 121  
 Korman 324  
 Kosha 342  
 Kosovo, region 317  
 Kotian, khan. See Kuthen  
 Kotian, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Kotor. See Cattaro  
 Kouï, tribe 160  
 Kragui 342  
 Krinichnoe 228, 231  
 Kronstadt (Braşov), city 154  
 Krum, Bulgarian khan 56, 60, 100  
 Kubu, river (South Bug?) 64  
 Kuchelmin, city 131  
 Küchüg, Pecheneg name 184  
 Küerçi-Çur, Pecheneg tribe 257, 258  
 Kulpej, Pecheneg tribe 257  
 Kuman 317, 324, 332, 342  
 Kuman' 317  
 Kumancie 317  
 Kumanić 317  
 Kumaničevo 317, 335  
 Kumanich 317  
 Kumanicz 332

- Kumaniè 317  
 Kumanin 342  
 Kumanishnaia 317  
 Kumanite 317  
 Kumanitza 317  
 Kumano 342  
 Kumanov 317  
 Kumanova Čuka 317  
 Kumanovèi 317  
 Kumanovka 317  
 Kumanovo 317, 335  
 Kumanovskaia Iuridika (Kumanówka) 317  
 Kumanovtzy 317  
 Kumanowce 317  
 Kumanówka. See Kumanovskaia Iuridika  
 Kumantzi 317  
 Kumoniu 317  
 Kun 330, 331  
 Kunbek 342  
 Kunchmannus (Cumanus) 331  
 Kunduk 321  
 Kune 342  
 Kunfalu 318  
 Kuno 342  
 Kunui, Polovtysyan ruler 338  
 Kurd 342  
 Kurszan, Hungarian ruler 72  
 Kurt 342  
 Kurte 342  
 Kuthen (Kotian), Cuman khan 142, 149, 153, 157, 165, 167, 168, 233  
 Kwn/Kun 331  
  
 Ladislas I the Saint, Hungarian king 118, 121  
 Ladislas IV the Cuman (Kún László), Hungarian king 169  
 Ladoga, lake 53  
 Laimin 334  
 Langeron, count 199  
 Laqay Özbek, region x, 498  
 Latène culture 12  
 Latin Empire 79, 140, 143–145, 149, 164, 276, 357  
 Lavra Monastery 333–336  
 Lazarus, “barbarian” chieftain 129, 335  
 Lăpuşna, county 19, 320  
 Lăpuşna, river 314  
 Lăpuşniţa 314  
 Leahu 340  
 Lebnunio, battle of 120, 197  
 Lemnos 168, 336  
 Lenzenians (Poles?), tribe 258  
 Leo IX, Pope 113  
 Leo V the Armenian 56  
 Leo VI the Wise 66  
 Leova 61, 286, 319  
 Lesbos 168  
 Lespezi 312  
 Levasseur de Beauplan, Guillaume, author 199  
 Lezghians, tribe 164  
 Lieşti 285, 295  
 Liman 285  
 Limanskoe ix, x, 285, 296, 297, 487, 488  
 Limbari (Hansca-) 251, 281–283  
 Limni 336  
 Linear Pottery culture 22  
 Lipovanu 340  
 Lişcoteanca 291, 294, 297, 349  
 Lithuania 27, 317  
 Litovoi, Romanian voivode 163  
 Liudprand of Cremona 95  
 Llan (Alans) 83  
 Lombards 95  
 Lombardy 35, 130  
 London 5  
 Lopatnic 297  
 Louis IX the Saint 77  
 Lovat 53  
 Lublau, treaty of 37  
 Lucăseuca 85, 214, 283  
 Lukomorskie Cumans 261  
 Lunga 297  
 Lungeşti 313  
 Lwow (L'viv) 187  
  
 Macedonia 76, 107, 114, 167, 180, 317, 335  
 Macedonian dynasty 97  
 Macpherson, J., author 136  
 al-Madâ'ini, Ibn Abî l-Hadîd, author 183  
 Magribians (Pechenegs) 134  
 al-Mahdi, caliph 241  
 Mahmud al-Kashghari, author 181, 182, 212, 295  
 Maiaki 184  
 Mainz 5  
 Malak 342  
 Mamluk state 165  
 Manastras, Cuman chieftain 145  
 Mangush, Kotian's son 165  
 al-Mansur, caliph 241

- Manta 285, 297  
 Mantzikert (Malazgyrt), battle of 118  
 Manuel I Comnenus 128, 130, 131  
 al-Maḡḡdīsī, Mutahhar, author 82, 83  
 Maramureş 60, 242, 329–331, 340, 341  
 Mare Maggiore 42. See also Black Sea  
 Margarita 337  
 Markos, monk 91  
 Marmara, Sea 41  
 Martineşti 329  
 al-Marvazī, geographer and chronicler 63, 64, 182, 184, 209, 217, 232, 260  
 Marwan II, caliph 241  
 al-Mas'ūdī, chronicler 257, 264  
 Matca x, 285, 294, 492  
 Matthew of Edessa (Matt'ēos Urhajec'ī), chronicler 112  
 Matthias I Corvinus, Hungarian king 24  
 Mazaros 336  
 Mărculeşti 285, 296  
 Măstăcani 35, 320  
 Mândreşti ix, 285, 296, 329, 470  
 Mediterranean, Sea 10, 13, 41, 42, 270, 336, 337  
 Medveja 285  
 Megleno-Romanians 180  
 Melik-Temür 339  
 Melintziane 334  
 Menk Comans, Cuman ruler 331  
 Menumorut, ruler in Crişana 73  
 Meotic Lake. See Azov Sea  
 Mereni 285  
 Merkits, Mongol tribe 151  
 Merverrudī, Mahammad Ibn Mansur, author 182  
 Mesembria (Nesebăr) 40  
 Mesopotamia, Western 101  
 Mezeş Gates 118  
 Michael VIII Palaeologus 168  
 Michael the Brave (Mihai Viteazul), Romanian prince 24  
 Michael Cerularius, patriarch 113  
 Michael Psellos. See Psellos  
 Michael Rhetor, author 129  
 Michael the Syrian, patriarch and chronicler 117, 122, 126, 276  
 Micleşti 313  
 Mikhalovce, region 317  
 Milcov, river 1  
 Miletin, river 315  
 Milloslaus de Comana 332  
 Mingür-oglu, Qıpchaq tribe 260  
 Minsk 317  
 Mircea the Elder (Mircea cel Bătrân), Romanian prince 328  
 Mirnoc 286, 296  
 Mirnopole viii, 68, 256, 285, 297  
 Missians. See Pechenegs  
 Moesia 107, 270  
 Moesia Inferior 23  
 Moesians 91  
 Moghuls 171  
 Moglana, region 180, 326, 335  
 Mohács, battle of 331  
 Molda. See Baia (Molda)  
 Moldavia vii, 1, 4, 7, 12, 14–17, 21–25, 27, 28, 33, 36, 37, 43–45, 47, 57, 60, 63, 67, 68, 71, 72, 88, 92, 95, 121, 127, 131, 132, 135–137, 141, 142, 157, 159, 161, 169, 174, 188–190, 193–196, 198, 201–204, 214, 216, 223, 226, 229, 231, 239, 242, 247, 248, 250, 251, 253–255, 259, 272, 286–288, 296, 298–301, 308–310, 312, 317, 322, 323, 326, 328, 340, 341, 349–352. See also Carpathian-Dniestrian area  
 Moldavian, Plateau 14, 26  
 Moldova, Republic of 5, 19, 67, 68, 85, 191, 192, 196, 214, 228, 241, 242, 256, 280–284, 288, 302, 308, 314, 346  
 Moldova, river 157  
 Moleşti 192, 283  
 Mongol, Empire 170, 295  
 Mongolia 234  
 Mongols 71, 149, 151, 153, 162, 165, 168–171, 175, 184, 188, 197, 201, 210, 217, 233–235, 262, 265, 266, 277, 296, 309, 327, 339, 355, 358, 359  
 Monteoru culture 12  
 Moravia 59, 69  
 Moscow 5, 348–437  
 Moscu ix, x, 68, 256, 285, 295, 297, 493  
 Moses, Bulgarian nobleman 101  
 Moses Khorenats'ī, chronicler 80, 81  
 Mostiştea 297  
 Moviliţa 68  
 Mstislav III, Kievan prince 149  
 Mubâriz-eddin-Avliya-ben-Kuman 339  
 Muhammad Kâtib (the Writer), author 184  
 Mulder, Marcella, editor 6  
 Munich 5

- Muntenia (Wallachia) 316  
 Murfatlar. See Basarabi  
 Murgeni 355, 445  
 Mutahhar al-Maqdisi. See al-Maqdisi  
  
 Nagornoe 285, 297  
 Nagyszentmiklós. See Sânnicolau Mare  
 Naimans, Mongol tribe 151  
 Nasr II ibn Ahmad, caliph 241  
 Nădușita (Gribova) x, 302, 303, 492  
 Neamț, county 18, 142, 312, 313, 322, 326  
 Neamțu 340  
 Negoii 342  
 Negroponte. See Euboea  
 Neolithic 11, 22, 45, 214, 216, 224, 289  
 Nerușai 286, 296, 297  
 Nescbâr. See Mesembria  
 Nestor, chronicler 83  
 Neva, river 53  
 Nicaea, city 144, 149, 158, 167  
 Nicaean Empire 149  
 Nicephorus I 56  
 Nicephorus II Phocas 94, 98, 99  
 Nicholas Mysticus, patriarch of Constantinople 91  
 Nikephorus, patriarch of Constantinople 41  
 Nistru. See Dniester  
 Nogai, Mongol emir and khan 32, 296  
 Nogai (Tatars), tribe 199  
 Nógrád, county 331  
 Normandy 55, 173  
 Normans 95, 127, 173, 174. See also Varangians  
 Noua culture 12, 22  
 Novgorod, city 55, 107  
 Novgorod-Seversk, principality 136  
 Noviodunum (Isaccea) 32  
 Novo Brdo 332  
 Novo Selo 335  
 Novokamenka 285, 296, 297, 308  
 Novoselița 286  
 Nufăru 293  
 an-Nuwairi, chronicler 42, 166, 215, 255, 260  
 Nyr, province 118  
  
 Obilești 329  
 Oblucița (Isaccea), city 32  
 Očakov, fortress 37  
 Ochrid, city 102, 103  
 Odessa, city 5  
 Odessa, Gulf 40  
 Odessa, region 68, 192, 228, 242, 246, 256, 284  
 Odobă 324  
 Odobasca 329  
 Oghuz 66, 81, 111, 113, 114, 181–184, 186, 207, 208, 212, 217, 219, 226, 232, 234, 237, 238, 245, 257, 259, 260, 276, 278, 290, 304, 347. See also Uzes  
 Oghuz-Khan, eponymous hero 81, 117, 208, 276  
 Ögödäi, Mongol khan 339  
 Ogorodnoe x, 285, 294, 297, 349, 488  
 Oituz Pass 23–25, 72, 255  
 Oituz, river 23, 309, 311, 312  
 Oituz, village 25, 191  
 Okorses, Bulgarian general 57  
 Olaha 163  
 Olan 324  
 Olănești ix, 285, 296, 349, 484  
 Oleg, Kievan prince 55, 86, 88, 89  
 Oleshia, settlement in the Dnieper estuary 131, 150  
 Olt, county 316  
 Olt, river 22, 25, 61, 298, 317, 319, 330  
 Oltenești 192  
 Oltenia 133, 145, 163, 215, 319  
 Oltenița 292, 297, 349  
 Omurtag, Bulgarian ruler 57, 58, 60  
 Oncești 191  
 Onegavon, Bulgarian ruler 57  
 Onogur-Bulgar, tribe 77  
 Opaci 285, 294, 296, 484  
 Oradea, city 331  
 Ordășei 320  
 Orel 261  
 Orhei, city vii, 86, 87, 214, 228, 231, 320, 321, 450  
 Orhei, county 68, 85, 86, 214, 228, 256, 280, 283, 285, 286, 308  
 Orhei, region (uezd) 288  
 Orheiul Vechi 308  
 Orkhon, river 304  
 Orlovca 285  
 Ostrița 319  
 Ostrogoths 32  
 Osul, Pecheneg ruler 117  
 Otto von Freising, chronicler 130, 226  
 Ottoman Turks 321, 331, 342.  
 See also Ottomans

- Ottomans 32, 341, 347  
 Otzellowitz, Hora von, geographer 17  
 Özbäg, Mongol khan 179, 209, 234, 295
- Paderborn, city 271  
 Paiandur 324  
 Pakourianos, Gregory 112  
 Palaiokastron 334  
 Palanca x, 285, 489  
 Pannonia 69–74, 76, 79, 156, 180, 350. See also Hungary and Pannonian Plain  
 Pannonian Plain 47, 68, 71, 75, 331, 360  
 Paristrion (Paradunavon), theme 101, 111, 113, 114, 119, 122, 240  
 Pascatur (Bashkiria) 78  
 Pașcani, city vii, 242, 447  
 Patzinakia 94, 109, 258  
 Patzinaks. See Pechenegs  
 Pătești 329  
 Păuleasa 190  
 Pavlovca ix, 256, 285, 294, 297, 471, 472  
 Păhnești 5, 283, 456  
 Părjol, commune 320  
 Pârteștii de Jos 246, 285, 296, 297, 298  
 Peceneaga 316  
 Pechenegs 31, 36, 51, 55, 60, 62–66, 68, 70, 75, 86, 90–99, 103–105, 107–121, 123, 126, 127, 130, 134, 138, 145, 147, 153, 159, 174, 181, 182–186, 188, 197, 198, 201, 204, 207, 212, 216, 219, 221, 226, 227, 232, 237, 244, 255, 257–259, 262–268, 275, 287, 289, 293, 294, 298, 304, 311, 312, 316, 321, 323, 337, 338, 341–343, 346, 347, 350, 352, 355, 357  
 Pecherskaia Monastery 73  
 Pecineaga 316  
 Pera 32, 42  
 Pereiaslavl, town 114, 116  
 Pereschiv 320  
 Peresechen 86  
 Peresecina, village 86  
 Perlui, river 319  
 Persia 36, 130, 208, 209  
 Petcu, Mariana 5  
 Peter, Vlach ruler, brother of Asen 138, 139  
 Peter, Bulgarian tsar 98  
 Pethachia, rabbi 226  
 Petrești 285, 473  
 Petru Aron, Moldavian prince 325  
 Petru Rareș, Moldavian prince 24  
 Petruha vii, 214, 228, 231  
 Philippopolis (Plovdiv) 112, 124  
 Picegani 312  
 Picineagul 316  
 Pit-Grave culture 210, 287, 298  
 Plano Carpini, John of, Papal envoy 163, 170, 219, 233  
 Platonești 190  
 Plavni ix, x, 256, 286, 294, 296, 297, 487, 488  
 Ploskynia, Brodnik ruler 150  
 Pogonești viii–x, 256, 286, 297, 466, 469, 470, 493  
 Poiana, Galați county 23  
 Poiana, Gorj county 292  
 Poland 27, 35, 37, 121, 128, 169, 253, 311  
 Poles 88, 157, 255, 258  
 Polotsk, principality 114  
 Polovtsy. See Cumans  
 Polybius, author 30  
 Pomazani 286  
 Ponto-Caspian region 21  
 Pontus Euxinus 30, 36, 40. See also Black Sea.  
 Popeasca 286  
 Porțile de Fier. See Iron Gates, Danubian  
 Posoba 324  
 Prague 246  
 Prahova, county 100, 291  
 Prahova, river 297  
 Preslav, city 271  
 Primorskoe 285, 286, 297  
 Prisăcani 25  
 Priština, city 317  
 Proboata viii, ix, 68, 286, 297, 461, 470, 474  
 Prodana. See Bârlad-“Prodana”  
 Propontis. See Marmara, Sea  
 Prussians 96  
 Prut 16, 18, 26, 29, 33, 35, 39, 60, 61, 65, 88, 89, 94, 103, 157, 193, 200, 284, 296–298, 309, 311, 319, 328, 350, 351  
 Psellos, Michael, chronicler 110, 111, 266, 275  
 Pseudo-Scymnos, author 31  
 Purcari 29, 286, 296, 349  
 Pyrenees 48, 352

- Qamangü, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Qangli, tribe 151  
 Qara-Baj (Charaboi, Charawoj),  
 Pecheneg tribe 257, 258  
 Qara böklü, tribe 260  
 Qarluqs 77, 80, 217, 226  
 al-Qazwini, author 39, 183  
 Qipchaq, eponymous hero 117  
 Qipchaq, son of Kadan 339  
 Qipchaqs. See Cumans  
 Qirqiz, region x, 498  
 Qirqiz, Turkish tribe 181, 210  
 Qumanayê (Cumans) 117  
 Qunrad Özbek, region x, 498
- Rába (Raab), river 64  
 Rábaköz, place name 64  
 Radimichi, tribe 49, 86  
 Radolibos 334  
 Radoslav 332  
 Ragusa, city 332  
 Rashid al-Din (Rāšid od-Din),  
 chronicler 81, 166, 259, 441  
 Ratisbona. See Regensburg  
 Răcăciuni 313  
 Răducăneni, village viii, 192, 241,  
 300, 454–456  
 Răducăneni culture vii, 189, 192, 193,  
 213, 236, 349, 441  
 Răscăieții Noi 286, 296  
 Răstoaca 223, 329  
 Răut, river 81, 85, 87, 88, 97, 103,  
 267, 281, 296, 297, 309  
 Râmniclu 292, 294, 297, 349  
 Râmnicu Sărat, river 297  
 Râșcani 285  
 Rebricea 313, 323  
 Regensburg (Ratisbona) 226  
 Reginald of Prüm, chronicler 70  
 Reicherstorffer, Georg, author 24, 28,  
 198  
 Reni, city 242  
 Reni, district 246, 285, 286  
 Republic of Moldova. See Moldova,  
 Republic of  
 Rezina, county 85, 241  
 Riazan, city 153  
 Riazan, principality 166  
 Riedel, I., geographer 439  
 Risipiți 329  
 Robert de Clari, chronicler 226  
 Rodelf, Varangian 54  
 Rodfos, Varangian 54  
 Rodna, city 157
- Rodvisl, Varangian 54  
 Rogerius (Roger of Torre Maggiore),  
 author 168  
 Roma, village x, 100, 179, 286, 491  
 Roman, city 18  
 Roman Empire 42, 112  
 Roman Mstislavich, prince of  
 Galich-Volhynia 141, 142  
 Romania vii, 5, 19, 67, 68, 89, 100,  
 115, 138, 157, 184, 191, 192, 196,  
 213, 214, 216, 228, 230, 241, 242,  
 246, 247, 252, 256, 257, 271, 283,  
 284, 311, 355  
 Romanian Plain 14, 29, 57, 67, 92,  
 115, 116, 120, 124, 130, 132, 140,  
 164, 170, 190, 198, 204, 231, 258,  
 287, 288, 291, 292, 297–299, 316,  
 319, 322  
 Romanians 2, 17, 21, 23, 27, 54, 60,  
 73, 74, 78–83, 88, 100, 104–106,  
 110, 117, 132, 134, 155, 157, 160,  
 163, 169, 174, 177, 188, 189, 202,  
 225, 301, 309, 327, 330, 341, 346,  
 347, 350, 360  
 Romans 32, 79, 80, 130  
 Romanus II, Byzantine emperor 92  
 Romanus IV Diogenes, Byzantine  
 emperor 118, 121  
 Ros, river 88, 115, 296, 308  
 Rostislav of Chernigov 157  
 Roșcani vii, 286, 296, 446  
 Rozsály (Rosal) 331  
 Rudi 85, 281  
 Rum. See Konya, Sultanate  
 Rumeanțev, village 286  
 Rurik 55  
 Rurik II Rostislavich, Kievan prince  
 142  
 Rus' 51, 55, 61, 65, 86, 88, 89, 92,  
 93, 98, 99, 103, 104, 108, 110,  
 114–118, 121, 124, 138, 140, 142,  
 144, 148, 150, 153, 158, 159, 161,  
 169, 186, 201, 210, 233, 244, 260,  
 261, 263–265, 272, 276, 301, 350  
 Rusnac 340  
 Russia 5, 18, 27, 136, 199, 311, 323,  
 350  
 Russians 77, 82, 97, 163, 164, 302  
 Rusu 340  
 Ruthenians 163
- Sabar 297  
 Sadovoe (Şabalat) ix, 68, 286, 296  
 Sagala 320

- Saif ad-Din Kiptchak al Mansuri  
 (Qıpchaq al-Manşûrî) 339  
 Saint Panteleemôn Monastery 335  
 Saksin, city 212, 246  
 Salomon, Hungarian king 118, 120  
 Saltovo-Maiaki culture 49, 96, 184,  
 252  
 Sams al-Din Dimashqi. See Dimashqi  
 Samuel, Bulgarian ruler 101  
 Saqđja. See Isaccea  
 Sár, river 64  
 Sarai, city 163, 209, 355  
 Sarat (Siret), river 94  
 Sari 342  
 Saribugha Jalayir, general 171  
 Sarkel 94. See also Sarkel-Belaia  
 Vezha  
 Sarkel-Belaia Vezha 184, 212  
 Sárköz, place name 64  
 Sarmatians 208, 210, 298  
 Sartak, Mongol khan 163  
 Sas 340  
 Sasic, lake 34  
 Sasicul Mare, lake 61, 297  
 Saskin, city 114  
 Satu Mare, city 331  
 Satza, chieftain in Paristrion 119  
 Sauromanthians (Cumans) 197  
 Saxons 145, 147, 174, 271  
 Săbăoani 312, 322  
 Săişi 286, 295, 297  
 Sălătruc 328  
 Sănduleni 313  
 Sărata 68, 256, 285, 286, 294–297,  
 314  
 Sărata Monteoru 271  
 Sărăteni 286  
 Sănnicolau Mare 184, 257  
 Sântana de Mureş-Cherniakhov culture  
 12  
 Sârbu 340  
 Scandinavia 89, 178, 240, 241  
 Scânteia 18  
 Schitu Frumoasa 313  
 Schöner, Johannes, author 77  
 Scime de Comana 332  
 Scorpan 324  
 Scutari (Shkodra) 333  
 Scythia Minor 39, 56  
 Scythians 32, 91, 159, 204, 220, 233,  
 277, 287, 352  
 Scythians (Cumans) 141, 164, 207  
 Scythians (Pechenegs) 126, 197, 207  
 Scythians (Uzes) 207  
 Scythians (Tivertians) 84  
 Selişte viii, ix, 256, 286, 290, 296, 310,  
 461, 475  
 Seliştea lui Coman 323, 326  
 Seljuq Turks 111, 118, 127, 143, 148,  
 276, 339  
 Selte 324  
 Seneslau, Romanian voivode 163  
 Serbia 76, 311, 331  
 Serbs 119, 346, 347  
 Seretos (Siret), river 64, 94  
 Sesthlay, chieftain in Paristrion 119  
 Severians, tribe 49, 86  
 Severin Banate 158  
 Sevirova 286, 296, 486  
 Shams al-Din al-Dimashqi. See  
 al-Dimashqi  
 Sharaf al-Zaman Tahir Marvazi. See  
 al-Marvazi  
 Sharukan, Cuman ruler 211, 212, 263,  
 264  
 Shaubec, city 339  
 Shevcenkovo, village 286  
 Shishman 342  
 Shükrollakh, chronicler 63, 182, 184  
 Shumen, county 303  
 Siberia 185, 235, 279, 318  
 Sibiu, county 271  
 Sigismund I of Luxembourg 341  
 Silistra 31, 94, 109, 294  
 Siliştea Nouă 444  
 Simila vii, 355, 445  
 Simon de Keza, chronicler 118  
 Sinacău 320  
 Siret, river 1, 16, 18, 23, 26, 30, 39,  
 65, 67, 71, 94, 154, 157, 194, 213,  
 258  
 Sjonhem 54, 105  
 Skleros, Niketas, general 62  
 Skylitzes, John (Ioannes), chronicler  
 197, 210  
 Skopje 335  
 Slănic, river 316  
 Slavs 55, 79, 83, 173, 174, 224, 244,  
 269  
 Slobozia 286, 329  
 Slon, fortress 100  
 Slovakia 317, 353  
 Snakes' Island (Insula Şerpilor) 41  
 Snorri Sturluson. See Sturluson, Snorri  
 Sobari 320  
 Sokal, Cuman ruler 116  
 Soldaians 163  
 Soloneţ, river 297, 314

- Someșul Mare, river 157  
 Somogur, Cuman ruler 142  
 Soroca, county 85, 281  
 Soroca, region (uezd) 288  
 South Bug. See Bug, South  
 Spalato (Split), city 332  
 Speia 286, 296  
 Spinoasa 67, 213  
 Sruby culture 210, 287, 298  
 Stația Zânelor 286, 294, 297  
 Stephen I the Saint, Hungarian king 104, 107  
 Stephen II, Hungarian king 338  
 Stephen the Great (Ștefan cel Mare), Moldavian prince 194, 325, 326, 341  
 Stephen the First-Crowned (Prvovenčani), Serbian king 332  
 Stephen Uroš II Milutin, Serbian king 332  
 Stephen Uroš III Dečanski, Serbian king 335  
 Stockholm 5  
 Stoenеști 292  
 Stomion 334  
 Storojineț, district 315  
 Strabo 28, 30, 34, 36, 92  
 Străulești 293, 355  
 Strigonium. See Esztergom  
 Strumoc 286, 297, 349  
 Sturluson, Snorri, chronicler 106  
 sub-Carpathians 26, 29, 45, 298  
 Sübütai, Mongol general 149, 151  
 Suceava, city viii, 18, 285, 459  
 Suceava, county 157, 246, 285, 312, 314  
 Suceava, river 297  
 Suceava, road 23  
 Sucmezeu 320  
 Sudak 148, 149, 151, 212, 245, 246, 265  
 Sугr, Cuman ruler 211, 212, 264  
 Sugrov, Cuman "town" 211  
 Suharău 314  
 Suhului 318, 319  
 Suidas, lexicon 94  
 Sulina, Danube branch 53  
 Sultana 190  
 Suraia 329  
 Suru-Külbej, Pecheneg tribe 257  
 Șușman 324  
 Suvar, city 241  
 Suvars, tribe 181  
 Suvorovo ix, 191, 242, 246, 286, 295, 297, 349, 476  
 Suzdal, city 159  
 Svetlâi 286  
 Sviatopolk I, Kievan prince 105  
 Sviatopolk II, Kievan prince 124  
 Sviatoslav I, Kievan prince 54, 89, 98–100, 103, 125  
 Sviatoslav III Vsevolodovich 140  
 Sviatoslav, son of Vladimir I the Saint 105  
 Symeon the Great, Bulgarian tsar 62, 66, 91, 92, 98  
 Symeon Magister, author 56, 74  
 Syrchan, Cuman ruler 264  
 Syr-Daria 113  
 Syria 98, 339  
 Sytzigan, Cuman noble 168  
 Szeklers 25, 75, 330  
 Szepsi 331  
 Șabalat (Sadovoe) 472  
 Șagan, lake 34  
 Șcheia 241  
 Șendreni 190  
 Șerban 324, 340  
 Șoldănești 85, 241, 281, 285  
 Șorogari 190  
 Ștefan cel Mare. See Stephen the Great  
 Ștefan Lăcustă, Moldavian prince 35  
 Ștefan-Vodă, county 285  
 Știubei 292, 297  
 Șuletea 459  
 Tabac 320  
 Taban 324  
 Tabla Buții pass 100  
 Talabă 321, 342  
 Talmaza 286  
 Tamerlane. See Timur Lenk  
 Tamrătaș 324  
 Tana, city 42  
 Tangârău 292, 294, 297  
 Tarabuga 337  
 Taraclia ix, 256, 284, 286, 294, 297, 481–483  
 Tarcău 320  
 Tarla 342  
 Tașbunar 297  
 Tatar, Cuman ruler 338  
 Tatar, son of Giulia 340, 341  
 Tatar, Johannes 341  
 Tatarbunar 284, 285, 286  
 Tatars 37, 118, 170, 171, 198, 199, 220, 234, 255, 267, 321  
 Tatos (Chalis), chieftain in Paristrion 119, 120  
 Tatul 242



- Tazlău, river 313, 315, 319–321  
 Târnovo, city 144, 158, 273  
 Tămășeni 315  
 Tătaru 340  
 Tătăruși 313  
 Tâncabă 324  
 Teban 320  
 Tecuci, city 5, 135, 320  
 Tei, lake (Bucharest) 297, 349  
 Telenești 285  
 Teleorman, county 190, 292, 316  
 Teleorman, region 128  
 Temir, Pecheneg name 184  
 Temugin 151. See also Genghis Khan  
 Ten (Don), river 117  
 Tenu Ormon, place name in Wallachia 128, 129  
 Terchești 329  
 Terter, dynasty 352  
 Tescani 313  
 Teslui, river 318  
 Tețcani 286  
 Teutonic Knights 146–148, 152, 155, 156, 255  
 Thasos, island 168  
 Thatar. See Tatars  
 Theodore Comnenus. See Comnenus, Theodore  
 Theodore Angelus, emperor of Thessalonike 164  
 Theodore II Lascaris, emperor of Nicaea 168  
 Theodoric, bishop of the Cumans 154, 155  
 Theodorokanos, Byzantine general 102  
 Theophanes Confessor, chronicler 40  
 Thessalonike 131, 158, 164, 334  
 Tholomeus of Lucca, chronicler 143  
 Thrace 58, 107, 141, 167, 168, 267  
 Thraco-Dacian 12, 20  
 Tighina (Bender), city 27, 61, 321  
 Tighina, county 19, 320  
 Tiligul 321  
 Timiș, county 184, 257  
 Timiș, river 121  
 Timur Lenk (Tamerlane) 41, 171  
 Tiraspol, city 317  
 Tisza (Tisa) 57–60, 121  
 Tivan 324  
 Tivertsians 83–88, 97, 103, 267  
 Toacxem 324  
 Tochile-Răducani 286  
 Tocsabă. See Toxabă  
 Tocsăbeni 320, 321  
 Todireni viii, 286, 295, 297, 466  
 Togan 324  
 Tog-Jașqut, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Togorták 122. See also Tugorkan  
 Toksoba, Qipchaq tribe 165, 260, 263, 324  
 Tölä Buga, Mongol khan 295  
 Tomai 286, 297  
 Tomești 283  
 Tonguz(en) 320, 321  
 Toqsapa, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Toqtai, Mongol khan 32, 295  
 Toquz-Oghuz, tribe 208, 212, 304  
 Torki. See Uzes  
 Toxabă (Tocsabă) 321, 324  
 Tuscany 337  
 Transylvania 22, 23, 25, 45, 58–60, 71–73, 76, 79, 90, 107, 117, 121, 133, 134, 142, 146, 147, 152, 154, 157, 194, 200, 210, 248, 249, 251, 255, 317, 329, 330, 337, 341, 350, 352, 353  
 Trapovca vii, 286, 296, 297, 308, 461  
 Trullos (Dniester), river 64. See also Turla  
 Trebizond, city 42, 158  
 Trebizond, empire 144, 168  
 Trebujeni 308  
 Trotuș, river/valley 23, 25, 309, 311, 315  
 Tudora x, 286, 295, 296, 349, 492  
 Tugorkan, Cuman ruler 121, 122, 263  
 Tugrul 342  
 Tükäl Buga, son of Toqtai Khan 32  
 Tulcea, county 32, 115, 252, 292, 316  
 Turanians 91, 98, 109, 111, 121, 124, 128, 148  
 Turcu, Turcul 324, 340  
 Turcul, John (Ioan) 341  
 Turkash 217, 226  
 Turkestan 207, 226  
 Turkey 130  
 Turkey (Hungary) 258  
 Turkhan 342  
 Turkmen 210  
 Turkomans 208  
 Turko-Tartars 80  
 Turks 45, 82, 83, 199  
 Turks (Cumans, Oghuz, Pechenegs) 182, 183  
 Tyrkir (Pechenegs?) 105  
 Turla (Dniester), river 320, 321

- Turlui, river 313, 318, 319, 323  
 Turnu Roşu, pass 22  
 Turpei, tribe 160  
 Tutova, river 297  
 Tutova Hills 19, 288  
 Tuzla ix, 256, 286, 297, 320, 476  
 Tuzora 320  
 Tver, region 317  
 Tyrach, Pecheneg khan 108–110, 113, 153, 197, 259, 263  
 Týras, city 23, 43  
 Týras (Dniester), river 28, 34, 36, 81  
 Týrkland 105  
 Tzarev Brod. See Endzhe  
 Tzelgu, Pecheneg ruler 197  
 Țara Românească (Muntenia).  
     See Wallachia  
 Țareuca 85  
 Țăpurdei 320  
 Țigan 340  
  
 Udobă 324  
 Ugrin 342  
 Ukraine 5, 27, 68, 192, 228, 242, 245, 246, 256, 279, 284, 288, 305, 311, 315, 323  
 Ulak (Vlachs, Romanians) 81, 82, 117  
 Ulan 324  
 Ulğay-Khan 207  
 Ulichians, tribe 83, 84, 86–88, 258  
 Ulmeni 292, 297  
 Ultinians (Ulichians?), tribe 258  
 al-Umari, chronicler 171, 233  
 Umbrăreşti vii, ix, 286, 294, 297, 349  
 Ung, fortress 72  
 Ung, woodland 72  
 Ungheni, county 285, 314  
 Ungureanu 340  
 Unus Khan (John Asen II?) 167  
 Ural Mountains 37, 77, 185  
 Ural, river 261, 304  
 Urdobaš 324  
 Ureche, Grigore, chronicler 219  
 Urecheşti 329  
 Urlui, river 318  
 Urmezeu 320  
 Ursoaia ix, 286, 295, 296, 478, 485  
 Urusoba, Cuman khan 264  
 Usatovo culture 287  
 Ushitsa, city 131  
 Utmeš 324  
 Uz, river 311  
  
 Uzas 338  
 Uzes 36, 51, 65, 66, 90, 96, 107, 108, 110, 111, 113–118, 123, 126, 138, 159, 174, 181, 184, 186, 188, 197, 198, 201, 211, 226, 232, 245, 259, 262, 263, 265, 268, 287, 293, 298, 307, 311, 312, 323, 337, 338, 341, 342, 350, 352. See also Oghuz  
 Uzu čartan, Qipchaq tribe 260  
 Uzur, Uzuz 339  
  
 Vadul Cumanilor. See Cumans' Ford  
 Vadul lui Isac 61, 286, 297  
 Vadul Oii 31  
 Valea Zăbalei 320  
 Valens, emperor 32, 36  
 Valwen 106. See also Cumans  
 Varangians 51, 53–55, 89, 92, 99, 107, 174, 244  
 Varangians' Sea (Baltic Sea) 53  
 Vardar 335  
 Vasileu (Vasilev) 157  
 Vasilevca 286, 297  
 Vasilko Rostislavich 125  
 Vaslui, city 5, 17, 18, 436  
 Vaslui, county 18, 67, 190, 192, 196, 214, 215, 228, 256, 283–286, 288, 300, 313, 314, 355  
 Vaslui, river 318, 319  
 Vatatzes, Leo, general 132  
 Văsui, river 318  
 Vânători 190, 329  
 Velikopotemkinski Isle 131  
 Venice 153, 186, 333  
 Verancsics (Verantio), Antonio, author 24, 28, 36  
 Verecke Pass 47, 71, 72, 134, 157  
 Vereşti 157  
 Vicina, city 32, 119  
 Vida 337  
 Vidin, city 145  
 Vidin, region 124  
 Vienna 5, 69  
 Viile 315  
 Villehardouin, Geoffroy de, chronicler 77, 78  
 Vilnius, city 317  
 Vinderei 320, 321  
 Vinogradovca 286, 297  
 Visigoths 32  
 Vişnevoe 286  
 Vităneşti 292, 294, 297  
 Vitebsk, region 317

- Vlachs 54, 56, 60, 73–81, 102, 103, 106, 107, 119, 122, 132, 139, 141, 148, 159, 163, 167, 178, 200, 225, 242, 310, 331, 332. See also Romanians, Ulak and Wallachians  
 Vlad I of Wallachia 341  
 Vlad Dracul, Romanian prince 328  
 Vlad the Monk (Călugărul), Romanian prince 328  
 Vladimir, city 166  
 Vladimir (Volodimer) I the Saint 88, 103, 104, 272  
 Vladimir II Monomakh 124–127 131,  
 Vladislav II of Wallachia 328  
 Vlădeni 241  
 Voin, battle of 114  
 Volga 49, 52, 64, 65, 78, 80, 82, 83, 89, 90, 108, 111, 113, 114, 117, 151, 156, 163, 165, 166, 190, 205, 209, 212, 217, 241, 244, 245, 246, 261, 262, 265, 278, 284, 290, 303, 308, 356  
 Volhynia 124  
 Volhyno-Podolian Plateau 14, 26  
 Volkhov, river 53  
 Volkhvy, tribe 80  
 Volodar, prince of Premysl 124  
 Vologda, region 317  
 Vornicu, Diana-Măriuca 6  
 Vrancea, county 18, 190, 223  
 Vrancea, region 25, 226, 254, 255, 320, 329  
 Vseslav Briachislavich, prince of Polotsk 114  
 Vsevolod, prince of Kiev 166  
 Vuiupa 324  
  
 Wagner, Richard 8  
 Waladj 82  
 Walandar, city 264  
  
 Walerand de Wavrin 31  
 Wallachia (Țara Românească) 23, 37, 60, 61, 68, 95, 133, 141, 157, 163, 169, 188, 190, 194, 195, 204, 251, 255, 291, 292, 298, 316, 317, 323, 325, 328, 341, 349, 352, 353  
 Wallachians 83, 105, 161, 255.  
 See also Vlachs and Romanians  
 al-Wardī, author 183  
 Washington, D.C. 5  
 Weismantel, Erasmus Heinrich  
 Schneider von, commander and author 239  
 Western Mesopotamia, *strategia* 101  
 White Croatia. See Croatia, White  
 White Cumania 260  
 White Cumans 106  
 William of Rubruck, envoy and author 38, 77, 78, 163, 219, 235, 277  
 William of Tyre, chronicler 208  
  
 Xenophon Monastery 334  
 Xiphias, Byzantine general 102  
  
 Yak'ubi, Abul-'Abbas Ahmed, chronicler 226  
 Yakut al-Hamavi, author 183  
 Yamnaia culture 209, 280, 287, 291  
  
 Zagora, Zagura (Bulgaria) 80  
 Zagreb 332  
 Zamozhnoe 245  
 Zaporozh'ie, region 245  
 Zărnești 286, 290, 297, 461  
 Zehan 324  
 Žiča Monastery 332  
 Zoltan, Hungarian prince 353  
 Zonaras, John (Ioannes), chronicler 95  
 Zosima the Deacon 42

## AUTHOR INDEX<sup>1</sup>

- Aalto, P. 207, 361  
 Abâzov, E. See Abyzova, E. N.  
*Abou Chamah* 339, 361  
*Aboulfêda*. See *Abu'l Feda*  
*Abou-Zêid Ahmed ben Sahl el-Balkhî*.  
     See *al-Maqdisî*  
*Abraham Jakobsen (Ibrahim ibn Yâkub)* 94,  
     361  
 Abramowski, W. 166, 361  
*Abu Hamid al Garnati (el Granadino)* 114,  
     134, 141, 361, 369, 378  
*Abu'l Faraj, Gregory (Bar Hebraeus)* 102,  
     108, 151, 232, 361, 370  
*Abu'l Feda (Abu'l Fida, Aboulfêda)* 149,  
     150, 182, 184, 188, 212, 274, 287,  
     289, 339, 361, 375  
*Abu'l-Ghazi Behadur Khan (Aboul-Ghâzi*  
     *Bêhâdour Khan)* 117, 173, 186, 361  
*Abu-'Umar-i-'Usman* 151, 370, 375  
 Abyzova, E. N. 191, 199, 308, 349,  
     383–385, 390, 437  
 Achim, V. 154, 158, 392  
 Adalbjarnarson, B. 217, 380  
 Adam, M. See Adam(-Chiper), M.  
 Adam(-Chiper), M. xiii, 367, 389  
*Adhemar de Chabannes* 96, 362  
 Adler, A. 94, 380  
 Adler, M. N. 122, 363  
 Adrianova-Peretts, V. P. xvi, 15, 377  
 Adriányi, G. 147, 392  
 Afanas'ev, G. E. 49, 392  
 Agache, D. xiii, 250, 367  
 Agadžanov (Agadzhanov), S. G. 113,  
     392  
 Agrigoroaici, E. 301  
 Agul'nikov, S. M. 295, 384, 437  
 Ahrweiler, H. 55, 129, 393, 416  
*al-'Aini* 149  
 Airinei, Șt. 16  
 Akhinzhanov, S. M. 148, 208, 212,  
     264, 393  
*Akropolites, Georgios* 115, 140, 144, 145,  
     164, 167, 233, 362  
 Aksenov, S. V. 172, 373  
*Alberic des Trois Fontaines* 144, 152–154,  
     167, 276, 277, 362  
*Albert of Aix* 123  
 Alekseev, N. A. 275, 393  
 Alemany, A. 4  
 Alexandre, P. 16, 393  
 Alexandrescu-Dersca Bulgaru, M. M.  
     xii, 43, 365, 393  
 Alexianu, M. 220, 366  
 Alexoaic, I. 383, 438  
*Ali, Mustafa* 33  
 Allsen, Th. T. 165, 235, 393  
 Almagià, R. 34, 173, 362  
 Altaner, B. 154, 155, 393  
 Alzati, C. 179, 393  
 Ameringen, M. L. v. 95, 373  
*Amiras, Al.* 38, 366  
 Amlacher, A. 58, 419  
*Ammianus Marcellinus* 30, 32, 40, 220,  
     392  
*Analista Saxo* 66  
*Ananias of Širak (Širakats'i)* 27, 80, 81,  
     362  
 Anastasiu, E. 291, 292, 386  
 Andea, A. 213, 430  
 Andea, S. xiv, 179, 367  
 Ando, S. 171, 393  
 Andreescu, Șt. 43, 393  
 Andrews, P. A. 218, 219, 393, 438  
 Andronic, M. 12, 393  
 Angelov, D. 61, 98, 393  
 Angelov, P. 139  
 Anghelescu, A. 195  
 Angold, M. 144, 393  
 Anonyme Geographer 28, 76, 79,  
     362  
*Anonymus Leobensis* 35, 169, 170, 362  
*Anonymus, Notary of king Bela [III]*  
     *(P. Magister qui Anonymus dicitur)* xi,  
     59, 60, 70–73, 77–79, 90, 115, 362,  
     369  
*Ansbert (Der sogenannten)* 140, 362, 371

---

<sup>1</sup> Italic type for ancient, medieval and early modern authors, and roman type for modern and present-day authors.

- Antoniu, S. 195, 383  
 Antonopoulos, P. T. 264  
 Antonovici, I. 250, 313, 362  
 Antonovici, N. I. 20, 393  
 Apostolos-Cappadona, D. 275, 402  
 Arbman, H. 52, 393  
 Arbore, Al. P. 252  
 Arbore, Z. 320, 393  
 Arbusov, L. 150, 227, 370  
 Arends, M. 71, 393  
 Aristov, N. 117, 393  
 Arkas, M. 135  
 Armbruster, A. 46, 79, 132, 147, 178, 179, 393  
 Arnăutu, T. 213, 420, 430  
 Arndt, W. 150, 227, 370  
 Arne, T. J. 52, 393  
 Artamonov, M. I. 48, 50, 212, 221, 383, 393  
 Artemenko, I. I. 295, 384  
 Arvinte, V. 77, 178, 393  
 Asimov, M. S. 113, 425  
*Asolik de Tarôn, Étienne* 99, 368  
 Atanasov, G. 294, 383  
*Attaliates, Michael* 108, 109, 112, 114–116, 197, 217, 267, 362, 375  
 Atwood, C. P. 218, 393  
 Aufhauser, J. B. 91, 375  
*Aufī* 63  
 Auner, C. 154, 393  
 Aurell, M. 23, 408  
*Axinte Uricariul* 21, 24, 33, 46, 47, 325, 362, 381  
  
 Babcock, E. A. 209, 382  
 Babel, A. 27, 393  
 Babik, Iu. 134, 408, 409  
 Babitz, J. 11, 394  
 Babkinc, A. 244, 394  
 Backer, L. de 38, 152, 394  
 Backmund, N. 154, 363  
*Bacon, Roger* 77, 78, 172, 274, 363  
*Bacon, Francis (Franciscus Baconus)* 11, 363  
 Badea, L. 13, 15, 329, 399, 403, 422  
 Bádenas, P. 153, 394  
*Baibars, Rukh al-Din* 32, 260  
 Bakalov, G. 139, 409  
 Baker, R. 71, 394  
 Bakó, G. 71, 87, 90, 252, 394  
*al-Bakrī (al-Becrī)* xvi, 94, 204, 205, 232, 237, 257, 274, 275, 304, 363, 358, 367  
*al-Bakwi, Abd ar-Rashid* 183, 226, 363  
  
 Balabanov, P. 139, 394  
 Balard, M. 32, 172, 245, 336, 363  
*Baldric of Dole* 123  
*Balducci Pegolotti, F.* 172, 377  
 Balić, S. 134, 309, 394  
 Bálint, C. 49, 67, 68, 185, 237, 240, 383, 387, 394, 398  
 Balivet, M. 153, 394  
 Balta, E. 336, 363  
*Bandini, Marco (Bandinus)* 17, 37, 43, 363, 381  
 Bang, W. 2, 38, 82, 161, 182, 309, 363, 414  
 Baptista, J. 274  
*Bar Hebraeus. See Abu'l Faraj, Gregory*  
 Baran, V. D. 162, 428  
*Barbaro, Josaphat* 172, 363  
 Barbă, G. 136  
 Barbier de Meynard, C. 51, 183, 374  
 Barbu, V. xiii, 367  
 Bárczi, G. 347, 394  
 Barna, E. 330, 364  
 Barnea, A. 32  
 Barnea, I. xii, 54, 56, 57, 59, 104, 110, 111, 119, 125, 128, 252, 267, 292, 293, 383, 391, 394, 399, 411  
 Bartha, A. 50, 72, 160, 242, 394, 406  
 Barthold, V.V. (W.) 48, 113, 114, 148, 161, 259, 262, 278, 302, 394  
 Bartonick, E. 107, 373  
 Bartusis, M. C. 168, 394  
 Baskakov, N. A. 160, 186, 258, 394  
 Başkan, S. 4  
 Batariuc, P. V. 12  
 Bates, M. 11  
 Bauer, A. 95, 150, 227, 370, 374  
 Baum, E. 205, 417  
 Baum, W. 38, 370  
 Bădulescu, D. xvii, 426  
 Băican, V. 17, 394  
 Bălan, C. xiii, 367  
 Bălan, M. xiii, 367  
 Bălan, T. 254, 312, 314, 315, 363, 394  
 Bălcescu, N. 13  
 Bălteanu, A.-C. 291  
 Bălteanu, D. 15, 422  
 Bănărescu, P. 35  
 Bănescu, N. 56, 60, 110, 119, 138, 289, 394  
 Bărbulescu, C. 218, 375  
 Bârcă, V. 298, 383  
 Bârlea, O. 154, 395  
 Bârnea, P. P. 191, 199, 308, 349, 350, 384, 385, 390, 396

- Bârză, L. 23, 395  
 Becquet, D. J. 219, 377  
 Beilekchi, V. S. 281  
 Beilis, V. M. 83, 209, 395  
 Bein, D. 71, 393  
 Bejenaru, L. 228, 383  
 Bekker, Im. xv, 36, 56, 102, 108, 115, 197, 200, 220, 264, 362, 365, 369, 373, 374, 377, 379–382  
 Belaiev, N. T. 105, 395  
 Beldiceanu, N. 82, 344, 346, 354, 395  
 Beldiceanu-Steinherr, I. 344, 346, 354, 395  
 Belke, K. 88, 366  
 Belli, O. 4, 277, 279, 302, 395  
 Belopol'skii (Bielopole), A. 135, 395  
 Belu, S. xiii, xiv, 367  
 Benda, K. 71, 406  
 Bendefy, L. 156, 166, 363  
*Benedictus Polonus* 172, 363  
 Benedikz, B. S. 52, 396  
*Benjamin of Tudela* 122, 363  
 Benkö, L. 64  
 Bennett Durand, D. 173, 363  
 Ben-Shammai, H. 49, 432  
*Benvenuto de Brixano* 337, 363  
 Beranová, M. 226, 383  
 Berciu, D. 22, 292, 383  
 Berechet, Șt. 320, 367  
 Berend, N. 358, 395  
 Berezin, I. 117, 361  
 Berezovets, D. T. 87, 383  
 Berg, L. S. 38, 395  
 Berkov, P. N. 154, 418  
*Bernard Gui (Bernardus Guidonis)* 274, 363  
 Bernshtein-Kogan, S. V. 53, 395  
 Berry, L. E. 267  
 Berta, A. 161, 405  
 Bertelè, T. 336, 374  
 Berza, M. xv, 409  
 Beševliev, V. 57, 58, 363, 395  
 Beskrovnyi, L. G. 2, 117, 262, 420, 429  
 Besslau, H. 69, 362  
 Bessonova, S. S. 246, 404  
 Bezvicconi, Gh. G. 17, 18, 29, 33, 36, 161, 363, 419  
 Bibikov, M. V. 100, 126, 128, 129, 134, 139, 395  
 Bica, I. 100, 120, 395  
 Bichir, Gh. 12, 190, 298, 383, 384  
 Bidian, I.-I. 25, 396  
 Bidzilia, V. I. 162, 428  
 Bielowski, A. 104, 128, 169, 257, 325, 364, 373, 379, 381  
*Bielski, Martin* 21, 363  
 Biliarsky, I. A. 354, 396  
 Bilici, F. 325, 416  
 Binder, P. 24, 25, 46, 194, 396, 398  
 Binns, A. 52, 393  
 Birceanu, G. 315, 364  
*Birdzhandi* 183, 363  
 Biskup, M. 147, 396  
 Blake, R. P. 36, 111, 201, 278, 363, 370  
 Błaškovič (Kumanoglu), Y. 353  
 Blochet, E. 207, 339, 374, 376  
 Blöndal, S. 52, 396  
 Boba, I. 49, 50, 70, 74, 396  
 Bocăncuțu, Al. 224, 396  
 Bochmann, K. 180, 396  
 Bociarov, E. 250, 314, 320, 368, 376  
 Boçsan, N. 286  
 Bodoczky, N. 49, 423  
 Bodor, G. 77, 396  
 Boehmer, J. F. 267, 365, 370  
 Boga, L. T. 250, 364  
 Bogdan, A. 202, 415  
 Bogdan, D. P. 162, 396  
 Bogdan, H. 147, 396  
 Bogdan, I. 135, 251, 319, 328, 329, 364, 396  
 Bogdan, O. 15  
 Bogyay, Th. v. 71–73, 396, 406  
 Böhme, H. W. 200  
 Boiadzhiev, S. 139, 394  
 Boldur, A. V. 84, 85, 136, 160, 161, 320, 325, 344, 396  
 Bollig, J. 111, 204, 372  
 Bolshakov, O. G. 135, 369  
 Bolșacov-Ghimpu, Al. A. 160, 396  
 Bompaire, J. 334, 362  
 Bóna, I. 68, 72, 396  
 Bondar, R. D. 243, 383  
 Bonev, Ć. 155, 396  
 Bonfante, G. 179, 396  
 Bongarsius, I. 123, 143, 371, 379, 382  
 Borsa, I. 330, 382  
 Borziac, I. A. 295, 384  
 Boscovich, R. G. 18, 33, 43, 195, 364  
 Bosi, F. 279, 303, 396  
 Bosselmann-Cyran, K. 187, 424  
 Bosworth, C. E. 48, 113, 304, 371, 394, 425  
 Botczatu, D. 195, 383  
 Boulcier, J. 221

- Bounegru, O. 32  
 Bourgain, P. 96, 362  
 Bowlus, Ch. R. 69, 396  
 Boyle, J. A. 113, 151, 165, 204, 339, 373, 378, 398  
 Bozhinov, V. 103  
 Božilov, I. A. 65, 91, 101, 396  
 Brand, Ch. M. 138, 179, 373, 398  
 Brather, S. 200, 240, 397  
 Bratiloveanu-Popilian, M. 216  
 Braudel, F. 42, 223, 397  
 Bräuer, H. 317, 423  
 Braund, D. 220, 397  
 Brătescu, C. 109, 359  
 Brătianu, C. I. 313, 315, 320, 412  
 Brătianu, G. (Gh.) I. 43, 57, 78, 163, 178, 397  
 Brătulescu, M. 301  
 Brâncuș, Gr. 20, 228, 354, 397, 407  
 Brendemoen, B. 161, 405  
 Brentjes, B. 16, 397  
 Bretschneider, E. 150, 165, 166, 397  
 Brezeanu, S. 58, 74, 139, 179, 180, 379, 397  
 Bridges, J. H. 78, 274, 363  
 Brindzan, T. 135, 397  
 Brockelmann, C. 364  
 Brogiolo, G. P. 202, 426  
 Brook, K. A. 4, 50, 73, 397  
 Brosset [M.-F.] 36, 128, 373  
 Browning, R. 57, 62, 133, 397  
 Bruchnalski, W. 169, 364  
 Brudiu, M. 191, 193, 288, 383, 438  
 Brun, F. K. 161, 397  
 Brunel, C. 218  
 Brunhes, J. 10, 397  
*Bruno of Querfurt* 95, 96, 257, 267, 274, 275, 364  
 Bruns, P. I. 108, 369  
*Bryennios, Nikephoros* 111, 364  
 Bryer, A. 337  
 Bubenok, O. B. 161, 397  
 Buchanan, J. J. 36, 382  
 Bücken, C. 241, 397  
 Buckler, G. 120  
 Budak, I. G. xv, 409  
 Buganov, V. I. 142, 150, 157, 274, 374, 377, 380  
 Buhociu, O. 301, 397  
 Bulat, T. G. 313, 364  
 Bulatovich, S. A. 243, 383  
 Bunca, A. 160, 397  
 Buniiatov, Z. M. 183, 363  
 Burada, T. T. 284, 397  
 Burger, G. 172, 370  
 Buridant, C. 183, 372  
 Buschinger, D. 255, 376  
 Busetto, R. 99, 397  
 Bușniță, Th. 35  
 Büttner-Wobst, Th. 120, 259, 382  
 Butură, V. 203, 215, 222, 230, 398  
 Butzin, B. 8  
 Buza, M. 15, 422  
 Buzdugan, C. 191, 383, 392, 438  
 C. de Bridia Monachi 172, 364, 373  
 Cadzow, J. F. 74  
 Cahen, C. 113, 151, 398  
 Camariano, N. 20, 145, 289, 364, 366  
 Camariano-Cioran, A. 20, 289, 366  
 Canache, A. 223  
 Canard, M. 111, 278, 364  
 Cancel, P. 229, 398  
 Cankova-Petkova, G. 62, 103, 139, 398  
*Canta, Ioan* 20, 33, 364, 378  
*Cantacuzenos, Ioannes* 168, 337, 364, 372  
*Cantemir, Dimitrie* xi, 17, 18, 21, 26, 28, 33, 34, 36, 43, 221, 226, 254, 364  
 Cantemir, P. 195, 383  
 Caproșu, I. xiii, 20, 239, 250, 312–315, 327, 340, 363, 367, 368, 380, 405  
 Caracaș, S. xiii, 316, 367, 368  
 Carile, A. 144, 398  
 Carmoly, E. 115, 218, 227, 377  
 Carra de Vaux, B. 204, 374  
 Carsow, M. 219, 431  
 Carter, F. W. 61  
 Castagné, J. 303, 398  
 Cavo, C. di 64, 398  
 Cazacu, A. 225, 247, 399  
 Cazacu, V. 236, 418  
 Călinescu, R. 35  
 Cămărășescu, R. xiii, 367  
 Căpitanu, V. 12  
 Cărămădaru, C. 315, 366  
 Cămpina, B. T. xv, 409  
 Căndea, I. 43, 90, 129, 132, 291, 318, 325, 386, 398, 416, 418  
 Ceaușu, M.-Șt. 312–314, 368, 380, 381  
*Cecaumenus*. See *Kekaumenos*  
*Çelebi, Evlia* 198  
*Çelebi, Kiatip* 33  
 Cernovodeanu, P. xii, 33, 35, 46, 194, 195, 365, 398  
 Chabot, J. B. 112, 186, 375

- Chalandon, F. 120, 125, 129, 398  
*Chalkokondyles, Laonikos* 219, 220, 365, 376  
 Chard, C. S. 239  
 Charikov, A. A. 278, 383  
 Charmoy, F.-B. 183, 371, 378  
 Cheboksarov, N. N. 219, 402  
 Chebotarenko, G. F. xiv, 12, 86, 98, 191–193, 199, 223, 228, 231, 252, 280, 281, 283, 301, 349, 350, 359, 383–385, 435  
 Chekin, L. S. 274, 398  
 Chelcu, C. xiii, 325, 367  
 Chelcu, M. xiii, 314, 325, 367, 368  
 Cherepnin, L. V. xvii, 86, 165, 312, 320, 341, 372, 376, 398, 409, 431  
 Cherniakov, I. T. 193, 384, 390  
 Chernysh, E. K. 193, 384  
 Chetragu, N. A. xii, 384, 400, 436  
 Cheynet, J.-C. 259, 380  
 Childe, V. G. 239  
*Chiparisa, Nicolae* 24, 267, 289, 365  
 Chirca, H. xiii, 367  
 Chiriacescu, E. 315, 366  
 Chirica, V. 12, 193, 384, 389  
 Chiriță, C. 18, 419  
 Chirkov, A. Iu. 384, 436, 437  
 Chirnoaga, P. 57, 398  
 Chirtoagă, I. 2, 320, 321, 398  
 Chirtoca, V. 19  
 Chisholm, M. 8, 398  
*Chomates, Niketas* 115, 125–129, 132, 133, 139–142, 144, 159, 200, 221, 267, 343, 365, 413  
 Chroust, A. 140, 371  
 Chubaty, N. 135  
 Cihodaru, C. xiii, xiv, 115, 135, 181, 252, 324, 367, 398  
 Ciobanu, Șt. 320, 367  
 Ciobotea, D. 133, 398  
 Ciocan, N. xiii, 367  
 Ciocârdel, R. 41  
 Ciocîltan, V. 74, 78, 83, 213, 398, 400  
 Cioran, Gh. 316, 368  
 Ciorănescu, A. 79, 399  
 Ciorănescu, G. 180, 399  
 Ćirković, S. 335, 362  
 Ciubotaru, I. H. 203, 399  
 Ciubotaru, M. 313, 314, 399, 428  
 Ciubotaru, N. Gr. 314, 399  
 Ciucă, M.-D. xiii, 315, 316, 364, 365, 367  
 Ciupitu, D. 26  
 Ciurea, D. xiii, 367  
 Claude, D. 42, 399  
 Clauson, G. 185, 302, 325, 399  
 Clocico, E. 383, 437  
 Codrescu, Th. 314  
 Cojocaru, V. 271, 313, 428  
 Collins, L. J. D. 266, 399  
 Columbeanu, S. 254, 399  
 Coman, A. 187, 345, 399  
 Coman, G. xii, 12, 28, 193, 268, 288, 300, 349, 384  
 Coman, R. 190, 387  
*Comnena, Anna* 110, 112, 119–122, 124, 128–131, 182, 197, 217, 221, 227, 245, 265, 267, 339, 366  
 Comșa, E. 224, 252, 292, 293, 384, 391  
 Comșa, M. 59, 100, 101, 190, 252, 293, 384, 391, 399  
 Condurachi, E. xv, 104, 399, 409  
 Conca, I. 13, 289, 311, 318, 319, 329, 364, 399  
 Conrad, S. 110, 424  
 Constable, G. 112, 364  
 Constantin, F. M. xiii, 367  
 Constantinescu, E.-M. 268, 292, 384, 399  
 Constantinescu, I. xiii, 367  
 Constantinescu, M. xvi, 422  
 Constantinescu, N. A. 324, 399  
 Constantinescu-Iași, P. 288  
 Constantinescu-Mircești, C. 25, 399  
 Constantinides Hero, A. 112, 364  
 Constantiniu, M. 293, 384  
 Constantinov, V. xiii, 367  
*Constantinus Porphyrogenitus* xii, 53, 60, 64, 88, 93, 94, 181, 184, 207, 257, 258, 364, 398, 366, 429  
 Conte, F. 49, 399  
 Cook, R. 105, 399  
 Coper, I. 317, 423  
 Corbu, E. 270, 399  
 Costăchel, V. 225, 247, 399  
 Costăchescu, M. 311, 319, 325, 366  
*Costin, Miron* 20, 21, 24, 27, 33, 35, 221, 289, 366  
*Costin, Nicolae* 35, 366  
 Coșa, A. 71, 399  
 Coteanu, I. 344, 399  
 Cotorcea, L. 136  
 Couchaux, D. 219, 399  
 Courteille, P. de 51, 183, 374  
 Cox, K. R. 8  
 Crasovschi, A. 136  
 Crăciun, G. 314



- Čremošnik, G. 332, 376  
 Cristea, G. 26  
*Cromer, Martin* 35, 366  
 Crookenden, J. 210, 410  
 Cross, S. H. 104  
 Crummey, R. O. 267  
 Csánki, D. 318, 329, 367  
 Csató, É. Á. 186, 423  
 Csebe, G. 259  
 Cucoş, Şt. 12  
 Curcă, R. 220, 366  
 Curta, F. xii, 56, 59, 100, 102, 120,  
 133, 139, 154, 166, 223, 260, 343,  
 383, 400, 403, 411, 413  
 Custurea, G. 243, 399  
 Czeglédy, K. 63, 72, 406  
 Czigány, L. 75, 413  
  
 Dabrowski, I. 96, 367  
 Dabrowski, K. 227, 429  
 Dachkevitch, Ya. R. 187, 400  
 Daffinà, P. 219, 377  
 Dagron, G. 335, 362  
 Daicoviciu, C. xv, 58, 409  
 Daicoviciu, H. 22  
 Daim, F. 49, 184, 200, 394, 400  
 Dalby, S. 9, 429  
 Dalché, P. G. 179, 367  
 Dall'Aglio, F. 145, 400  
 Damian, O. 100, 384  
 Dan, I. 202, 224, 314, 344, 421  
 Dan, M. 221  
 Danciu, I. 330, 364  
*Dandolo (Dandolo), Andreas* 71, 145, 261,  
 367  
 Dani, I. xiii, xiv, 367  
 Dankoff, R. 114, 182, 374  
 D'Ardenne de Tizac, H. 218, 371  
 Dashkevich, N. P. 162  
 Dashkevich, V. P. 244, 400  
 Daunou, [F.] 145, 370  
 David, M. 17, 400, 435  
*David d'Ashby* 218  
 Davidson, H. R. E. 53, 54, 105, 400  
 Davis, H. T. 36, 382  
 De Boe, G. 240, 428  
 Decci, A. 56, 58, 59, 63, 80, 83, 184,  
 259, 400  
 Defrémery, [Ch. F.] 39, 149, 170, 184,  
 204, 245, 265, 363, 371  
 Deibel, F. 307  
 Delarc, [O.] 271, 407  
 Delchaye, H. 56, 380  
 Deletant, D. 74, 400  
  
 Delorme, F. M. 173, 362  
 Demchenko, T. I. 349, 384, 437  
 Demetrescu, I. C. 19, 20, 424  
 Demidoff, A. de 26, 288, 400  
 Dennis, G. T. 95, 204, 252, 377, 381  
 Densuşianu, N. xiv, 371  
 Densuşianu, O. 180, 311, 316, 325,  
 400  
 Denwood, Ph. 438  
 Deny, J. 3, 187, 403, 421  
 Dergacev, V. A. 12, 194, 295, 384,  
 409  
 Despinescu, A. 250, 367  
 Deswarte, Th. 23, 408  
 DeWeese, D. 277, 400  
 D'Hauterive 18  
 Diaconescu, E. 37, 400  
 Diaconescu, O. xiii, 367  
 Diaconescu, T. 17, 363  
 Diaconu, P. xii, xvi, 2, 56, 57, 91, 101,  
 104, 107–109, 111, 115, 116, 122,  
 125, 126, 128, 129, 137, 140, 259,  
 273, 292, 293, 294, 310, 316, 317,  
 319, 324, 344, 345, 384, 399, 400,  
 422  
 Diadichenko, V. A. 135, 409  
 Diehl, E. 43  
 Dienes, I. 72, 401  
 Dieten, I. A. van 141  
 Dieter, K. 120, 401  
 Dietrich of Apolda 274  
 Dilthey, W. 299  
 Dima, N. 180  
 Dimitrov, B. 173, 401  
 Dimitrov, D. 100, 194, 401  
 Dimitrov, H. 65, 396  
 Dimitrov, S. 343, 354, 401  
 Dimnik, M. 117, 401  
 Dinić, M. 332  
 Djebli, M. 151, 83, 374  
 Djuvara, N. 253, 353, 401  
*Długosz, Jan (Joannes Długosz)* 21, 96,  
 325, 338, 367  
 Dmitriev, P. G. 194, 195, 315, 320,  
 351, 375, 378, 401  
 Dobner, G. 169, 372  
 Dobroliubskii, A. O. 3, 199, 246, 268,  
 286, 288, 295, 296, 308, 384, 385,  
 401, 436–438  
 Docan, N. 17, 25  
 Dode, Z. V. 171, 392  
 Dodge, B. 83, 376  
 Doerfer, G. 212, 401  
 Doerfer, I. 317, 423

- Dogiel, M. 37, 366  
 D'Ohsson, C. 260, 401  
 Dokuchaev, V. V. 38, 401  
 Dolanský, J. 154, 418  
 Dollen, B. v. d. 200  
 Domanovszky, A. xvii, 59, 118, 365, 380  
 Domonkos, L. S. 74  
 Donat, I. 229, 311, 316, 319, 368, 399, 401  
 Donzel, E. v. 48, 394  
 Dorini, U. 336, 374  
 Dörrie, H. 156, 166, 169, 265, 368  
 Dostourian, A. E. 112, 197, 375  
 Dosymbaeva, A. M. 279, 385  
 Dovzhenok, V. I. 162, 428  
 Dragnev, D. M. 247, 250, 312, 314, 320, 368, 375, 376, 401  
 Dragomir, R. 316, 365  
 Dragomir, S. 332, 401  
 Dragotă, A. 59, 385, 389  
 Drăgan, J. C. 16  
 Drăganu, N. 162, 311, 312, 341, 353, 401  
 Drăgoi, I.-J. 26  
 Drexl, F. 112, 378  
 Drîga, B. 26  
 Drimba, V. 186, 187, 366, 368, 410  
 Dron, I. V. 321, 401  
 Dröper, S. 38, 368  
 Drüll, D. 186, 401  
 Dubler, C. E. 114, 134, 361  
*Dubravius, Io.* 169, 368  
 Dubrovskii, D. V. 171, 385  
 Duca-Tincuiescu (Duca), D. 313, 315, 316, 327, 364, 365  
 Ducellier, A. 333, 353, 401  
 Duczko, W. 52, 401  
 Duda, H. W. 148, 401  
 Dujčev, I. 103, 109, 111, 401  
 Dulaurier, Éd. 102, 197, 201, 218, 370, 375  
 Dulov, A. V. 8  
 Dumbravă, V. 180, 396  
 Dumitrașcu, M. 15, 422  
 Dumitrescu, V. 13  
 Dumitrescu, Vl. 23  
 Dumitriu, L. 293, 385  
 Dumitriu-Snagov, I. 173  
 Dumitroaia, Gh. 12  
 Dunăre, N. 228, 229, 401  
 Dunlap, Th. J. 27, 432  
 Dunlop, D. M. 48, 50, 401  
 Durand, F. 52  
 Durand, U. 143, 372  
 Dvoichenko-Markov, D. 74, 402  
 Dvornik, Fr. 63, 402  
 Dzhakson, T. N. 53, 105, 404  
 East, G. 10  
*Ebendorfer, Thomas* 169, 368  
 Eberhardt, I. 288, 385  
 Ebrey, P. 290  
 Ecsedy, I. 205, 290, 402  
 Eddé, A.-M. 209, 374  
 Edroiu, N. 179, 222, 286, 402  
 Edwards, P. 105, 382  
*Efrem* 139, 140, 141, 144, 145  
*Efîmie* 24  
 Egger, C. 179, 378  
 Eggers, M. 64, 69, 402  
 Ehrenfeuchter, E. 267, 381  
 Einicke, R. 110, 424  
 Eisner, J. 215, 402  
 Ekrem, M. A. 81, 117, 311, 402  
 Eliade, M. 275, 276, 301, 402  
 Elian, Al. xiv, 369  
 Elteto, L. J. 74  
 Emandi, E. I. 204, 387  
 Emery, R. 226, 377  
 Erbiceanu, C. 24, 267, 365  
 Erdélyi, I. 65, 75, 402, 431  
 Eremia, A. 319–321, 402  
 Eréminian, S. T. 81  
 Ermolenko, L. N. 279, 303, 385  
 Eubel, C. 173, 364  
*Eudes de Deuil.* See *Odo of Deuil*  
*Eustathius*, the metropolitan of Thessalonike 125, 126, 140, 204, 368  
 Evans, A. 172, 377  
 Evdokimov, G. L. 305, 402  
 Even, M.-D. 151, 370  
 Evglevskii, A. V. 279, 388  
 Evtiukhova, L. A. 278, 385  
 Failler, A. 56, 377  
 Febvre, L. 10, 244, 402  
 Fedorchuk, A. 49, 185, 410, 423  
 Fedorov, G. B. xiv, 12, 86, 87, 97, 103, 193, 228, 231, 280, 281, 350, 385, 402  
 Fedorov, G. S. 232, 261, 264, 403  
 Fedorov, Ia. A. 232, 261, 264, 403  
 Fedorov-Davydov, G. A. xiv, 2, 117, 160, 171, 227, 246, 256, 261, 265, 268, 278, 294, 295, 302, 303, 308, 359, 403

- Fehér, G. 57, 303, 403  
 Fejér, G. 142, 158, 366  
 Fekete Nagy, A. 331, 367  
 Ferdinandy, M. de 70, 431  
 Ferent, E. 154  
 Ferent, I. 1, 126, 128, 140, 146, 154, 416  
 Fetisov, A. 54, 385  
 Fiedler, U. 59, 61, 190, 270, 403  
 Filipescu, C. 19, 403  
 Filitti, G. 195, 365  
 Fine Jr., J. V. A. 62, 403  
 Finlay, G. 102  
 Flerova (Flörova), V. E. 185, 403  
*Fletcher, Giles* 267  
 Florescu, A. C. 12, 223  
 Florescu, M. 12  
 Florescu, R. 36  
 Florianus, M. 18, 365  
 Fochi, A. 284, 403  
 Fodor, I. 59, 64, 68, 70, 237, 403  
 Földes, L. 229  
 Fomin, A. V. 242, 385  
 Fonseca, J. M. 172, 382  
 Foote, P. 54, 409  
 Forbiger, A. 220  
 Fotino, C. xiii, 367  
 Frähn, C. M. 183, 204, 369  
 Frances, E. 134, 135, 403  
 Francovich, R. 202, 426  
 Frank, A. J. 166, 403  
 Freisinger, H. 200, 391  
 Friedrich, A. 347, 394  
 Frye, R. N. 36, 111, 201, 278, 363, 370  
 Furtwängler, A. E. 110, 424  
  
 Gabain, A. v. 187, 403  
 Gabor, A. 250, 428  
 Galántai, E. 118, 381  
 Galben, A. I. 250, 403  
 Gáldi, L. 331, 367  
 Galkova, I. 54, 385  
 Gallois, L. 13, 414  
 Gallotta, A. 258, 394  
 Galstian, A. G. 149, 362  
 Gamber, O. 185, 403  
 Gamillscheg, E. 224  
 Garam, E. 185, 423  
*Gardzi* xvi, 63, 184, 209, 217, 232, 237, 244, 257, 304, 369, 375  
 Garkavi, A. Ia. 95, 380  
 Garmashov, A. I. 171, 392  
*al-Garnati*. See *Abu Hamid al Garnati (el Granadino)*  
 Garustovich, G. N. 268, 287, 293, 294, 403  
 Gautier, P. 122, 253, 403  
 Gazdaru, D. 79, 403  
 Găneț, Gr. 314, 381  
 Gârneață, C.-I. 314, 381  
 Gâștescu, P. 13, 26, 403  
*Ġelalzade, Mustafa* 33  
 Gelcich, J. 338, 376  
 Gelichi, S. 202, 426  
 Gelzer, H. 103, 369  
 Gemil, T. 32, 149, 403, 417  
 Genito, B. 206, 383  
 Georgescu, V. 194, 404  
 Georgescu, V. Al. 249, 403  
 Georgiev, P. 185, 273, 404  
*Georgios Monachus* 56, 62, 66, 72, 91, 264, 369, 380, 381  
 Gerard, C. See Sergheraert, G.  
*Gerardus de Fracheto* 274, 369  
 Geras'kova, L. S. 246, 303, 385, 404  
 Gerevich, L. 16, 65  
 Gheorghian, I. 312, 364  
 Gherasimov, I. P. 13, 318, 415  
 Gherghel, I. 1, 311, 404  
 Gheție, I. 180  
 Ghibănescu, Gh. 312-314, 327, 369  
 Ghimpu, V. 84  
 Ghinea, N. 316, 368  
 Ghiurco, I. 268, 406  
 Gibb, H. A. R. 39, 371  
 Giese, Fr. 204, 362  
 Giesler, J. 69, 204, 404  
 Gingerick Berry, V. 127, 377  
*Giovanni di Marino Gondola* 332, 369  
 Gitelman, Z. 136  
 Giurescu, C. C. 17, 20, 21, 29, 33, 161, 254, 268, 309, 312, 316, 318, 319, 344, 404  
 Giurescu, D. C. 268, 319, 404  
 Giurgea, E. N. 19, 403  
 Gjuzelev, V. 62, 273, 404, 416, 420  
 Glassl, H. 71, 147, 404, 406  
 Glazunov, I. 106, 368  
 Glazyrina, G. V. 53, 105, 404  
*Glycas, Michael* 102, 108, 114, 197, 369, 375  
 Gmyria, L. 48  
 Göbl, R. 185, 404  
 Göckenjan, H. xvi, 75, 118, 134, 266, 342, 369, 377, 404  
 Godley, A. D. 31, 220, 370  
 Goehrke, C. 8, 37, 84, 160, 404  
 Goeje, J. de 182, 371

- Goetz, H.-W. 185, 400  
 Gogu, M. 12  
 Goia, I. A. 230, 404  
 Gökbel, A. 4  
 Golb, N. 41, 369  
 Golden, P. B. 3, 4, 48, 49, 51, 70, 82,  
 113, 128, 161, 181, 187, 208, 244,  
 258, 260, 262, 264, 276, 354, 394,  
 404, 432  
 Golovko, A. B. 105  
 Golubovich, G. 186, 369  
 Golubovskii, P. 2, 121, 405  
 Gombos, A. F. xiv, 66, 123, 145, 169,  
 369  
 Gonța, Al. I. 125, 132, 239, 247, 340,  
 354, 368, 405  
*Gonzales de Clavijo, Ruy* 42, 209, 218,  
 366  
 Gorgoi, M. I. I. 215  
 Gorishnii, P. A. 162, 392  
 Gorovci, Șt. S. 43, 172, 325, 370  
 Gorskii, A. A. 125, 405  
 Goshkevich, V. I. 295, 385  
 Gostar, N. 191, 385  
 Graffin, R. 339, 376  
 Grannes, A. 345, 405  
 Graur, Al. 319, 405  
 Grămadă, N. 314, 315, 405  
 Grecu, A. [Panaiteescu, P. P.] 58, 405,  
 418  
 Grecu, V. 219, 365  
 Grecul, F. A. 157, 380  
*Gregoras, Nicephorus* 115, 144, 164, 167,  
 168, 197, 369  
 Gregory, D. 8  
 Grekov, B. D. 213, 244, 246, 405  
*Grigor of Akanc'* 36, 201, 370  
 Grigoraș, N. 250, 254, 405  
 Grigor'ev, A. P. 172, 370  
 Grigorovici, R. 45  
 Grigorovitz, Em. 315, 406  
 Gritsak, P. 135, 406  
 Grønbech, K. 187, 366, 403  
 Groot, J. J. M. 206, 371  
 Grosse, M.-G. 183, 372  
 Grosu, V. I. 191, 295, 298, 385, 390  
 Grosul, Ia. S. xv, 341, 372, 409  
 Grot, K. I. 58, 65, 406  
 Grousset, R. 181, 406  
 Grunin, T. I. 187, 368  
 Grushevskii, M. 142, 406, 408.  
 See also Hruševskij, M.  
 Guboglu, M. 32, 172, 173, 366, 370  
 Gudea, N. 268, 406  
*Gui, Bernard*. See *Bernard Gui*  
*Guillaume de Nangis* 145, 370  
*Guillebert de Lannoy* 37, 369  
 Guillou, A. 333, 335, 336, 361  
*Guiragos*. See *Kiracos (Guiragos) of Gantzac*  
 Gukin, V. D. 293, 386, 438  
 Gumilev, L. N. 65, 406  
 Gunda, B. 71, 406  
 Gündisch, G. 317, 337, 381, 382  
 Gündisch, H. 317, 382  
 Gündisch, K. G. xiii, xiv, 147, 317,  
 367, 382, 432  
 Gündüz, T. 4  
 Güngör, H. 275, 406  
 Gurkin, S. V. 279, 354, 386, 406  
 Guslistyi, K. G. 135  
 Guțu, Gh. xi  
 Güzel, H. 4, 258, 343, 395, 406, 410,  
 427, 431  
*Gužgani*. See *Juzjani*  
 Gyárfás, I. 154, 406  
 Gyóni, M. 74, 119, 227, 406  
 Györffy, Gy. 50, 70, 73, 75, 102, 118,  
 134, 187, 257, 258, 276, 331, 341,  
 353, 358, 370, 406  
 Haarmann, H. 183, 371, 378  
 Haas, N. 292, 388  
 Haenisch, E. 209, 375  
 Hagenmeyer, H. 123, 362  
 Haheu, V. 386, 438  
 Haimovici, S. 227, 386  
 Hajda, L. 136  
 Halaçoğlu, Y. 4, 258, 343, 395, 406,  
 410, 427, 431  
 Halasi-Kun, T. 331, 406  
 Haldon, J. 337  
*Halifa, Hağgī* 63  
 Halldórsson, B. 106, 380  
 Halperin, Ch. J. 137, 171, 266, 407  
 Hambis, L. 172, 219, 377  
 Hambloch, H. 10  
*Hamd-Allah Mustawfi of Qazwin*.  
 See *al-Qazwini*  
 Hammer, J. de 63, 183, 184, 232, 237,  
 244, 370  
 Hanak, W. K. 99, 125, 407, 419  
 Hänsel, B. 239  
 Hansson, P. 52, 409  
 Haralamb, At. 19, 20, 424  
 Harhoiu, R. 293, 385  
 Härtel, H.-J. 61, 407  
 Hartmann, U. 206, 427  
 Harțuche, N. 291, 292, 349, 386

- Hasdeu (Hăjdeu), B. P(etriceicu) 38,  
 354, 407  
 Hase, C. B. 99, 217, 374  
 Haslund, H. 219, 407  
 Hatházi, G. 134, 386  
 Hauge, K. R. 346, 405  
 Häusler, A. 49, 420  
 Havliuk, P. I. 87, 386  
 Hazlitt, W. 218, 371  
 Hălcescu, G. 291  
 Hău, F. 12  
 Hâncu, I. (G.) 12, 84, 86, 87, 191,  
 192, 213, 214, 228, 280, 282, 283,  
 288, 386, 389, 402, 407, 435  
 Hâncu, R. xiv, 369  
 Hâncu-Tentiuc, A. 301, 428  
 Hedman, A. 52, 431  
 Heers, J. 144, 407  
 Héféclé, Ch.-J. 271, 407  
 Hegel, G. W. Fr. 9, 407  
 Hegel, K. 9, 407  
 Hegeneder, O. 179, 378  
 Heideman, T. 19  
 Heiduk, M. 4  
*Heinrich of Livonia* 150, 227, 274, 370  
*Heinrich von Mügelin* 64, 70, 107, 118,  
 169, 338, 361, 363, 370  
 Heissig, W. 151, 219, 369, 407  
 Heitmann, K. 222, 407  
 Helgason, J. 106, 221, 379  
 Heller, K. 52, 407  
 Hellmann, M. xiv, 407  
*Hemdemi, Solakzade Mehmed* 33  
 Hennig, U. 255, 376  
 Henning, J. 223, 407  
 Hensel, W. 200, 407  
 Hepites, Șt. C. 46  
*Hermann of Altach* 274, 370  
*Herodotus* 31, 32, 220, 233, 277, 370  
 Herrmann, J. 52, 100, 384, 407  
 Herseni, T. 9, 229, 407  
*Hethum (Hayton, Hetoun) of Korykos* 38,  
 152, 172, 234, 365, 368, 370  
 Hewsen, R. H. 27, 80, 81, 362  
 Heyde, J. 147, 396  
 Heyden, G. 9  
 Hilckman, A. 343, 407  
 Hill, J. H. 123, 377, 378  
 Hill, L. L. 123, 377, 378  
 Hill, R. 123, 369  
 Hillerdal, Ch. 52, 407  
 Hildebeitel, A. 275, 402  
 Himka, J.-P. 136  
*Hincmar of Reims* 69, 370  
 Hodges, R. 202, 426  
 Hoepfer, M. 241, 397  
 Höfler, C. R. v. 138, 343, 407  
 Holban, M. xii, 43, 146, 158, 365, 407  
 Holban, Th. 161, 162, 196, 253, 407  
 Holder-Egger, O. 144, 379  
 Holt, P. M. 113, 339, 361, 398  
 Holtzmann, W. 143, 377  
 Hóman, B. 58, 62, 72, 73, 407  
 Hopf, Ch. 144, 267, 371  
 Horbatsch, O. 163, 408  
 Hordilă, D. 322, 386  
 Horedt, K. 73, 106, 408  
 Horodysky, J. Z. 135, 408  
 Hotnog, T. 318, 408  
 Houtsma, M. Th. 114, 259, 408  
 Howard-Johnston, J. 62, 408  
 Hruševskij, M. 408. See also  
 Grushevskii, M.  
 Huart, Cl. 82, 209, 274, 374  
 Huc, É.-R. 218, 371  
*Hudūd al-Ālam* xvi, 51, 63, 184, 208,  
 212, 217, 219, 232, 237, 244, 245,  
 369, 371  
 Humphrey, C. 206, 408  
 Hunyadi, Z. 147, 412  
 Hurdubejiu, I. 76, 408  
 Hurmuzaki, E. xiv, 24, 28, 33, 37, 43,  
 50, 146–148, 152, 154, 158–160, 169,  
 173, 176, 199, 201, 218, 325, 329,  
 332, 337, 339, 357, 358, 371  
 Huxley, G. 64  
 Hyer, P. 234, 409  
  
 Iacob, M. 243, 417  
 Iacobescu, M. 45  
*Iacobus de Guisia* 145  
 Iakubovskii, A. Iu. 148, 213, 244, 246,  
 371, 405  
 Iakubovskii, V. I. 162, 392  
*Iakut al-Khamavi* 183, 212, 371  
 Iambor, P. 200, 408, 414  
 Iancu, A. xiii, 367  
 Ianin, V. L. 194, 409  
 Ianushevich, Z. V. 223, 224, 386  
 Iarovi, E. V. 295, 302, 384, 386, 437  
 Iastrebov, F. A. 135, 409  
 Iașu, C. 203  
*Ibn ʿAbd az-Zahir* 170  
*Ibn Abī l-Hadīd al-Madāʾini*. See  
*al-Madāʾini*  
*Ibn al Asyr (Ibn el-Athīr, Ibn-Alatyr, Ibn  
 al-Athīr)* 149, 150, 212, 245, 265,  
 339, 371

- Ibn Battuta (Ibn Batoutah)* 39, 170, 184,  
212, 218, 227, 234, 235, 276, 371  
*Ibn Fadlan* 111, 115, 217, 218, 232,  
234, 274, 278, 290, 363, 371  
*Ibn al-Furat* 235, 363, 371  
*Ibn Hauqal* 51, 94, 113, 183, 209, 245,  
371  
*Ibn Khaldun* 165, 182, 187, 260, 263, 371  
*Ibn Khordādhbeh* 182, 371  
*Ibn-Rusta (Ibn-Dasta)* xvi, 184, 209,  
244, 369, 371  
*Ibn al-Wardī* 371  
*Ibrahim Pecevi*. See *Pecevi, Ibrahim*  
 Ichim, O. 180, 424  
*Idrisi (Ēdrisi)* 182, 212, 260, 368, 371,  
373  
 Ignat, G. xiii, 367  
 Ignat, M. 289, 408  
 Iliș, A. 20, 378  
 Iliescu, O. 94, 139, 241, 243, 246,  
273, 386, 400, 426  
 Iliescu, P.-M. 54, 408  
 Iliescu, Vl. xiv, 369  
 Imreh, Șt. 249  
 Inalcik, H. 4, 258, 343, 395, 406, 410,  
427, 431  
 Ingigian, H. 23, 26, 34, 35, 372  
 Ioannisian, O. 134, 408  
*Iohannes de Vîno* 274, 372  
 Ionașcu, I. 291, 383  
 Ionescu, B. 292, 349, 388  
 Ionescu-Bregoveanu, I. 25  
 Ionescu-Sachelarie, D. 224, 408  
 Ioniță, A. 291, 292, 386, 408  
 Ioniță, I. 12, 23, 408  
 Iordache, Gh. 225, 230, 408  
 Iordan, I. 311, 318, 344, 399, 408  
 Iorga, N. xv, 2, 18, 26, 28, 33, 43, 44,  
60, 73, 129, 195, 252, 311, 314, 318,  
320, 324, 325, 344, 347, 352, 372,  
373, 408  
 Iorgulescu, V. 154, 273, 408  
 Iosipescu, S. 147, 179, 408  
 Iotov, V. 294, 393  
 Irimescu, G. 45, 312, 313, 380, 381  
 Irimescu, S. 312, 381  
 Isac, V. 313, 364  
 Iskhakov, D. M. 171, 385  
*al-Istakhri* 183, 372  
 Istrate, G. 313, 428  
 Istrati, C. 196, 315, 366  
 Iurchenko, A. G. 172, 373  
 Ivanov, V. A. 171, 268, 287, 293, 294,  
387, 403  
 Ivanovs'kii, V. 134, 408, 409  
 Ivănescu, G. 77, 178, 180, 224, 269,  
270, 319, 344, 352, 409  
 Iverites, I. 145, 372  
 Jackson, P. 38, 245, 277, 382, 409  
 Jacobsen, P. C. 123, 375  
*Jacobus de Vitriaco*. See *Jacques de Vitry*  
*Jacques de Vitry (Jacobus de Vitriaco)* 183,  
274, 371, 372  
 Jagchid, S. 234, 409  
 Jahn, K. 82, 207, 208, 259, 372, 409  
 Jakubovich, A. xi  
 Janson, H. 52, 54, 409  
 Jansson, I. 52, 409, 431  
 Jansson, S. B. F. 54, 387, 409  
 Jarnut, J. 185, 400  
 Jaubert, A. 182, 260, 368  
 Jawor, G. 163, 409  
 Jaworski, J. 290, 409  
*al-Jazari* 339, 372  
 Jean-Baptiste de Pitra 274, 372  
*Jean d'Ypres* 143, 144, 145, 372  
 Jenkins, R. J. H. xii, 91, 93, 366, 376  
 Jireček, C. 344, 409  
 Jisl, L. 290, 409  
*Joannes de Marignoli*. See *Marignoli, John of*  
*Johannes de Thurocz*. See *Thurocz, John of*  
*(Johannes de)*  
 Johanson, L. 186, 423  
 Johnsen, O. A. 106, 221, 379  
*Joinville* 167, 277, 372  
 Jončev, L. 103, 139, 372, 380  
 Jones, G. 52, 409  
 Jones, H. L. 28, 208, 380  
 Jonov, M. 303, 370, 373  
 Jónsson, F. 106, 380  
*Jordanes* 221, 372  
 Jordanov, I. 101, 109, 366, 409  
*Joseph ben Gorion (Josephus Gorionides)* 95,  
373  
 Jurewicz, O. 134, 410  
 Jurkowski, M. 163, 410  
*Juwaini* 151, 165, 166, 204, 373  
*Juzjani (Gužgani)* 151, 152, 370, 373,  
375  
 Kadlec, K. 251, 410  
 Kaeppli, Th. 274, 380  
 Kafesoğlu, I. 151, 410  
 Káldy-Nagy, Gy. 70, 187, 358, 390,  
424  
 Kalužniacki, E. xiv  
 Kandel, M. 316, 368

- Kaplan, M. 250, 252, 410  
 Kappler, C. 38, 277, 370  
 Kappler, R. 38, 277, 370  
 Kara, G. 172, 187, 370, 379  
*Kara-Çelebi-Şade Abdul-Aziz effendi* 33  
 Karadja, C. I. 157, 373  
 Karamzin, M. 160, 410  
 Karatay, Ö. 4, 258, 343, 395, 406,  
 410, 427, 431  
 Karayannopoulos, J. 334  
 Kargalov, V. V. 165, 410  
 Karsanov, A. N. 128, 410  
 Kaschke, S. 185, 400  
 Kashtanov, S. M. 135, 410  
 Kasimenko, A. K. 135, 409  
*Kâtib, Muhammad* 63, 184  
 Kazanski, M. 53, 433  
 Kazhdan, A. P. 129, 134, 409, 410,  
 413  
*Kedrenos, Georgios* xv, 31, 36, 63, 66,  
 91, 99, 100, 102, 103, 107–109, 111,  
 112, 114–116, 153, 197, 204, 210,  
 217, 259, 265, 267, 365, 373, 380  
 Keenan, E. L. 136, 410  
 Kehren, L. 209, 366  
*Kekaumenos* 76, 111, 122, 178, 373, 380  
 Kelley, J. 114, 182, 374  
 Kellner, M. G. 69, 410  
 Kerber, D. 200  
 Kern, A. 172, 372, 373  
 Ketrzyński, W. v. 146  
 Khazanov, A. M. 128, 205, 210, 358,  
 395, 410  
 Khetagurov, L. A. 207, 378  
 Kholvolson, D. A. 184, 371  
*Kiätib Çelebi*. See *Çelebi, Kiätib*  
*Kinnamos, John (Ioannes)* 125, 127–129,  
 132, 133, 179, 221, 234, 365, 373  
*Kiracos (Guiragos) of Gantzac* 36, 201,  
 218, 220, 235, 277, 370, 373  
 Kirpichnikov, A. 52, 431  
 Kirsch, G. G. 108, 369  
 Kisterev, S. N. 142, 374  
 Klein, K. K. 146, 410  
 Kliashpornyi, S. G. 48, 171, 181, 185,  
 385, 409, 410  
 Klitkovs'kij, D. 135, 397  
 Kłoczowski, J. 273  
 Kloss, B. M. 142, 374  
 Kluge, B. 240, 417  
 Knauz, F. 339, 376  
 Kniefelkamp, U. 187, 424  
 Kniaz'kii, I. O. 3, 137, 141, 154, 261,  
 410  
 Knight, M. 27, 413  
 Knoll, P. W. 274, 369  
 Koca, S. 4, 262, 410  
 Koder, J. 98, 411  
*Kodinos (Pseudo-)* 140  
 Kodur, U. 147, 396  
 Koepke, R. 169  
 Kogălniceanu, C. 160, 161, 181, 411  
*Kogălniceanu, Enache (Pseudo)* 20, 33, 35,  
 364, 373, 378  
 Kogălniceanu, M. 20, 362, 364, 366,  
 373, 376  
 Koledarov, S. 60, 61  
 Konovalova, I. G. 138, 182, 212, 260,  
 261, 368, 373, 411  
 Köpeczi, B. 68, 396, 413  
 Koretskii, V. I. 150, 274, 377  
 Korobeinikov, D. 166, 260, 411  
 Koroliuk, V. D. xv, 73, 97, 154, 402,  
 409–411  
 Koropecyij, I. S. 244, 405  
 Korzukhina, G. F. 240, 387  
 Koshelev, A. 150, 233, 376  
 Kossányi, B. 118, 411  
 Koszta, L. 74, 396  
 Kosztolnyik, Z. J. 133, 411  
 Kotenko, I. A. 195  
 Kotliar, M. (N.) F. 137, 138, 141, 160,  
 411  
 Kotwicz, W. 302  
 Kovachich, M. G. 28, 382  
 Kovács, L. 16, 68, 242, 385, 387, 431  
 Kovács, T. 185, 423  
 Kozak, D. N. 246, 404  
 Kozlov, V. I. 60, 191, 387, 390, 435  
 Kozlovskii, A. A. 191, 193, 350, 390  
 Kozłowska-Budka, S. 169, 379  
 Kramers, J. H. 51, 183, 371  
 Krandžalov (Krandjalov), D. 228, 230,  
 318, 411  
 Kratchkovsky, I. 99, 382  
 Krauschick, S. 27  
 Kravari, V. 333, 334, 361  
 Kravchenko, A. A. 191, 387  
 Kravchuk, Iu. P. 19, 411  
 Krăştev, L. 145, 353, 411  
 Krey, A. C. 209, 382  
 Kriger, V. A. 171, 268, 387  
 Kristjānsdóttir, B. S. 106, 380  
 Kristó, Gy. 58, 62, 69, 70, 72, 74, 411  
 Kristó, J. 118, 381  
 Krivosheev, Iu. V. 127, 415  
 Krizhits'kii, S. D. (Kryzickij, S.) 43,  
 246, 404

- Kropotkin, V. V. 240, 241, 387  
 Kruger, V. M. 8  
 Krumova, T. 109, 411  
 Kryzickij, S. See Krizhits'kii, S. D.  
 Kshibekov, D. 205, 411  
 Kubarev, V. D. 278, 279, 387  
 Kubijovyč, V. 135, 430  
 Kuchera, M. P. 162, 428  
 Kuchkin, V. A. 2, 117, 149, 262, 370, 420, 429  
 Kudriashov, K. V. 211, 261, 411  
 Kudrnač, J. 215, 411  
 Kuen, H. 344, 421  
 Kühn, H.-J. 101, 411  
 Kuhn, W. 147, 412  
 Kulik, A. 49, 185, 410, 423  
 Kumekov, B. E. 208, 274, 278, 412  
 Kunstmann, H. 116, 412  
 Kurat, A. N. 258, 412  
 Kurchatov, S. I. 293, 386  
 Kursanskis, M. 151  
 Kurtz, E. 112, 378  
 Kussmaul, F. 257  
 Kuun, G. 65, 106, 161, 186, 309, 373, 412  
 Kuz'mina, E. E. 219, 412  
 Kyzlasov, I. L. 185, 387, 412  
 Kyzlasov, L. R. 278, 387  
  
 Laborde, E. D. 25, 419  
 Labuda, G. 147, 396  
 Ladd, R. 194, 418  
 Lachr, G. 89, 412  
 Lagarde, P. de 111, 204, 372  
 Lagerholm, Å. 106, 368  
 Lahovari, Gh. I. 313, 315, 320, 412  
 Laiou-Thomadakis, A. E. 334, 335, 412  
 Lamb, H. H. 16, 412  
 Lambrior, A. 284, 412  
 Lane, G. 277, 412  
 Langlois, V. 153, 375  
 Lappenberg, V. Cl. Ioh. M. 104, 381  
 La Roncière, M. de 173, 373  
 Larsson, M. G. 54, 105, 412  
 László, A. 12  
 Laszlovszky, J. 147, 412  
 Lattimore, O. 238  
 Lazarov, I. 145, 362, 373  
 Lăpușnian, V. L. 12, 389, 436, 437  
 Lăzăr, Gh. xiii, 367  
 Lăzărescu, D. A. 195, 412  
 Lăzărescu, E. C. 146, 412  
 Lăzărescu, I. 20, 366  
  
 Lăzărescu, R. xiv, 369  
 Lăzărescu, R. C. 102  
 Lăzărescu-Zobian, M. 324, 412  
 Leahu, V. 292, 387  
 Lebedev, G. S. 53, 412  
 Lebedynsky, I. 206, 412  
 Lebon, J. H. G. 9, 10  
 Lech, K. 171, 205, 381  
 Lefort, J. 109, 333, 334, 361, 412  
 Le Goff, J. 223, 412  
 Leib, B. 110, 119, 122, 182, 339, 366  
 Leiser, G. 151, 410  
 Lelewel, J. 260, 412  
 Lemerle, P. 333, 335, 336, 361  
 Lengyel, Z. K. 71, 406  
*Leo Grammaticus* 56, 58, 62, 66, 72, 91, 374, 379  
*Leo the Diacon* 99, 217, 221, 374  
 Leonardi, C. 219, 377  
 Lépissier, J. 84  
 Lepși, I. 34, 412  
 Le Roy Ladurie, E. 16, 412  
 Le Strange, G. 39, 42, 365, 378  
 Letts, M. 152, 374  
*Leunclavius, Joannes* 145, 374  
 Levchenko, M. V. 89, 99, 134, 135, 141, 413  
 Levin, M. G. 219, 402  
 Lewicki, T. 63  
 Lewis, B. 48, 113, 394, 398  
 Lhotsky, A. 169, 368  
*Li Chih-ch'ang* 218, 381  
 Li Guo 339, 382  
 Lichardus, J. 239  
 Lichardus-Itten, M. 239  
 Likhachev, D. S. xvi, 136, 377  
 Lilie, R.-J. 144, 413  
 Liljegren, J. G. 54, 387  
 Limona, D. 330, 364  
 Lindner, R. P. 205, 413  
 Linchan, P. 358, 395  
 Lišev, Str. 103  
 Litavrin, G. G. 76, 88, 93, 125, 133, 134, 139, 178, 366, 373, 413, 419  
*Liudprand of Cremona* 95, 374  
 Livshits, V. A. 219, 412  
 Lock, P. 123, 413  
 Logan, F. Donald 52, 413  
 Löhr, H. 110, 424  
 Longnon, J. 144, 365  
 Loparev, Kh. M. 38, 373  
 Los', F. E. 135, 409  
 Lowry, H. 337  
 Lozbă, M. 321



- Lozovan, E. 54, 119, 413  
 Luard, H. R. 170, 375  
 Luca, C. 270, 387  
 Lučić, J. 338, 376  
 Luciw, J. 99, 413  
 Ludanyi, A. 74  
 Ludwig, D. 48, 209, 221, 413  
 Lukasik, S. 228, 413  
 Lukinich, E. 331, 367  
 Lükö, G. 71, 312, 413  
 Lungarotti, M. C. 219, 377  
 Lungarova, P. 145, 362, 373  
 Lungu, V. 291, 387  
 Lurier, H. E. 172, 267, 367  
 Luther, A. 206, 304, 371, 427  
 Lyons, M. C. 235, 371
- Macarie* 23  
 Macartney, C. A. 62, 69, 75, 108, 134, 227, 413  
 Macler, Fr. 99, 368  
*Mağouđi*. See *Mas'udi*  
 Macrea, D. 77, 224, 228, 413  
*al-Madā'ini, Ibn Abi l-Hadīd* 151, 374  
 Madgearu, A. 58, 74, 101, 104, 119, 270, 413  
 Madzsar, E. 118, 362  
 Maenchen-Helfen, O. J. 27, 413  
 Magocsi, P. R. 49, 61, 135, 413  
 Magomedov, M. G. 48, 413  
*Mahmūd al-Kāšgarī (Makhmud Kašgari)* 114, 181, 182, 212, 259, 364, 374  
 Maier, R. O. 216  
 Maior, L. 286  
 Majeska, G. P. 38, 42, 374  
*al-Makin ibn al-'Amīd* 209, 374  
 Makk, F. 133, 413  
 Makkai, L. 68, 72, 74, 331, 367, 396, 413  
*Makrizi* 207, 218, 235, 339, 374  
 Malamut, E. 111, 120, 413  
 Maleczek, W. 179, 378  
 Maleon, B.-P. 253, 413  
 Malingoudis, Ph. 139, 140, 141, 160, 333, 343, 413  
 Maliukevich, A. E. 191, 387  
 Malov, S. E. 304, 374  
 Malyshev, A. B. 358, 414  
 Mályusz, E. 330, 382  
*Manasses, Constantin* 99  
*Mandeville, John* 152, 172, 374  
 Mango, C. 36, 129, 376, 410  
 Mansi, J. D. 155, 189, 378  
 Mantu, C.-M. 12
- Manz, B. F. 171, 414  
*al-Maqdisi, Motahhar ben Tahir* 82, 83, 93, 209, 274, 374, 400  
 Marazzi, U. 258, 394  
 Marcato, C. 337  
 Marchevisi, V. I. xii, 400  
 Marcotte, D. 28, 369  
 Mareş, I. 12  
 Marian, S. F. 284, 414  
*Margnoli, John of (Joannes de)* 169, 372, 374  
 Marinescu, B. 195, 365  
 Marinescu-Bilcu, S. 291, 387  
 Markevisi, V. I. 12  
 Marks, D. 3, 262, 405  
 Marquart, J. 2, 38, 48, 63, 65, 92, 161, 182, 212, 217, 258, 260, 309, 405  
 Marsina, R. 60, 427  
 Martenc, E. 143, 372  
 Martin, J. 246, 414  
 Martin, R. 8  
 Martin, R. E. 136, 432  
 Martinez, P. 63, 184, 209, 217, 232, 237, 244, 257, 304, 375  
 Martini, F. 147, 414  
 Martonne, Emm. de 10, 13, 39, 44, 414, 431  
*al-Marwazī (Sharaf al-Ẓaman Tahir Marvuzi)* xvi, 63, 80, 111, 182–184, 205, 208, 209, 217, 232, 233, 237, 244, 257, 260, 269, 370, 375  
 Masson, V. M. 194, 409  
*Mas'udi (Al-Mas'ūdī, Mağouđi)* 51, 92, 183, 184, 204, 205, 208, 217, 264, 374, 375  
 Matchak, Z. 134, 408, 409  
 Matei, Gh. 190, 291, 387  
 Matei, M. D. xv, 202, 204, 387, 409, 414  
 Matei, Şt. 200, 414  
 Mathieu, M. 125, 414  
*Mathieu Paris* 170, 375  
*Matrakci, Nasuh* 33  
 Matschke, K.-P. 326, 422  
*Matthew of Edessa* 112, 114, 120, 197, 217, 221, 267, 362, 375  
 Matveev, S. 191, 223, 389, 421  
*Maulana*. See *Juzjani*  
*Mauricius* 220, 221, 375  
 Mavrodin, V. V. 86, 135, 414  
 Mavrodina, R. M. 3, 414  
 Mavrodinov, N. 303, 414  
 Maxim-Alaiba, R. 190, 300, 388, 436

- Maximilian, C. 292, 388  
 Mayer, A. 332, 373  
 Mayer, H. E. 127, 372  
 Mălinaș, I. M. 179, 375  
 Măndescu, D. 270, 387  
 Mănuacă, D. 180, 424  
 Mănuacu-Adameșteanu, Gh. 101, 107,  
 122, 125, 243, 388, 414  
 Mărculeț, V. 100, 119, 414  
 McGrath, S. 99, 414  
 Meckseper, C. 200  
 Megei, V. P. 162, 392  
 Mehedinți, S. 10, 13, 21, 22, 36, 44,  
 201, 367, 414  
*Mehmed, Sa'adeddin* 33  
 Mehmet, M. (A.) xii, 32, 173, 361,  
 363, 366  
 Mehren, A. F. 41, 182, 379  
 Meinecke, A. 111, 364  
 Mel'nikova, E. A. 53, 105, 395, 404  
 Meliukova, A. I. 86, 388, 402, 438  
 Menestrò, E. 219, 377  
 Menges, K. H. 186, 258, 414  
*Merverrudi* 182, 375  
 Mesterházy, K. 75, 388  
*Metellus von Tegernsee* 123, 375  
 Mètrévèli, H. 333, 334, 361  
*Michael the Rhetor* 129, 375  
*Michael the Syrian (Michel le Grand, Michel  
 le Syrien)* 112, 119, 126, 186, 221,  
 274, 276, 375  
 Michailov, S. 303, 415  
 Mìcheau, F. 209, 374  
 Micu, I. 40  
 Microw, C. C. 226, 377  
 Migne, J.-P. xvi, 123, 377  
 Mihail, M. 202, 415  
 Mihail, P. 315, 320, 375, 376  
 Mihăilescu-Bîrliba, V. 12, 58, 181, 432  
 Mihályi de Apșa, I. 329–331, 341, 375  
 Mihăescu, H. xiv, 221, 228, 269, 369,  
 375, 415  
 Mihăilă, G. 228, 251, 344, 396, 415  
 Mihăilescu, V. 10, 13, 15, 42, 45, 203,  
 414, 415, 435  
 Mikecs, L. 71, 415  
 Mikhailov, E. 57, 61  
 Mikhailova, I. B. 127, 415  
 Miklosich, F. 346, 415  
*Milescu Spătarul, Nicolae* 218, 375  
 Miller, T. S. 99, 407, 414  
 Miller, W. 57, 415  
 Miltenova, A. 273, 420  
 Minea, I. 325  
*Minhaj-ud-Din. See Juzjani*  
 Minorsky, V. 51, 63, 182, 184, 204,  
 217, 371, 375, 415  
 Mioc, D. xiii, xiv, 367  
 Mirea, M. 291  
 Miron, V. Gh. 312, 313, 380, 381  
 Mironescu, C. S. 309, 415  
 Mitrea, B. 133, 190, 388  
 Mitrea, I. 12, 43, 191, 388, 392, 415  
 Mittelhaus, K. 55  
 Miu, G. 195, 383, 388  
 Mladenov, St. 317, 415  
 Mladjov, I. 60, 415  
 Mócsy, A. 68, 396, 413  
 Moga, I. 76, 415  
 Mogilianskii, N. K. 19, 41, 415  
*Moïse de Corène. See Moses Khorenats'i*  
 Moïse, D. 291, 375  
 Moïseșcu, Gh. I. 154, 415  
 Mokhov, N. A. 195, 247, 401  
 Moldovanu, D. 312, 316, 321, 415,  
 428  
 Mollat du Jourdin, M. 173, 373  
 Mollova, M. 187, 415  
 Monah, D. 12, 190, 215, 391  
 Monfrin, J. 167, 277, 372  
 Mongait, A. L. 135, 369  
 Monteil, V. 182, 371  
 Montesquieu 9  
 Morariu, T. 13, 22, 202, 210, 415, 430  
 Moravcsik, G. xii, 56, 91, 94, 366,  
 376, 415  
 Morgan, D. 38, 277, 382  
 Morintz, S. 22, 291, 292, 298, 349,  
 388  
 Morozzo della Rocca, R. 337, 363  
 Morrisson, C. 240, 417  
 Mošin, V. 335  
 Moskovich, W. 49, 185, 410, 423  
*Motahhar ben Tâhir el-Maqdisî.*  
*See al-Maqdisî*  
 Motogna, V. 160, 415  
*Moufazzal ibn Abil-Fazail* 339, 376  
*Moses Khorenats'i (Moïse de Corène)* 27,  
 375  
 Müller, G. 341, 381  
 Müller, L. 117, 376  
 Müller-Wille, M. 305, 402  
 Mumfort, L. 11  
 Muntean, V. V. 132, 272, 415  
 Munteanu, C. 241, 416  
 Munteanu, O. 213, 420, 430  
 Muratorius, L. A. 145, 169, 364, 367,  
 382

- Murav'eva, L. L. 149, 370  
 Murgulia, (N.-)M. P. 134, 358, 416  
 Murzin, V. Ju. 305, 402  
*Muste, Nicolae* 20, 24, 33, 35, 376  
 Musteață, S. 12, 213, 241, 270, 416, 420, 430  
 Mușlea, C. 330, 364, 365  
 Mutafchiev, P. 62, 416  
 Mys'kov, E. P. 166, 416  
  
 Nadezhdin, N. 86, 87, 416  
*al-Nadim* 82, 83, 376  
 Nägler, Th. 73, 148, 409, 416  
 Nagrodzka-Majchrzyk, T. 114, 160, 212, 227, 416, 429  
 Nahon, G. 123  
 Narozhnyi, E. I. 279, 388  
 Nasilov, D. M. 358, 414  
 Nasonov, A. A. xv, 376  
 Nastasă, L. 154, 325, 426  
 Nau, F. 339, 376  
 Naudet, [J.] 145, 370  
 Naum, T. A. 40, 220, 381  
 Naumenko, S. A. 171, 392  
 Navrotskii, N. I. 303, 388  
 Nazmi, A. 240, 416  
 Năstase, A. 17, 376  
 Năstase, Gh. I. 34, 416  
 Năsturel, P. Ș. 32, 128, 129, 268, 325, 416  
 Neagu, M. 90, 129, 291, 318, 386, 416, 418  
 Neamțu, V. 29, 216, 222, 416  
 Necșulescu, C. 114, 119, 311, 416  
*Neculce, Ion* 20, 24, 33, 289, 315, 376  
 Negulescu, C. 327, 364  
 Nelson, J. L. 358, 395  
 Németh, J. 73, 75, 185, 257, 258, 416  
 Nercessian, A. 53, 419, 433  
 Nesbitt, J. 99, 407, 414  
 Nestor, I. xv, 310, 388, 409, 417, 436  
 Nica, A. 273, 421  
 Nichitici, A. N. 312, 320, 375, 376  
*Nicholas I*, Patriarch of Constantinople 91, 92, 376  
 Nicol, D. M. 168, 417  
 Nicolae, E. 122, 241, 242, 388, 414  
 Nicoloudis, N. 220, 365, 376  
 Nicu, V. 320, 417  
 Niculescu, E. 15  
 Niculescu, Gh. 15, 422  
 Niculică, B. P. 12  
 Niculiță, I. T. 12  
 Niederle, L. 80, 84, 86, 417  
  
*Nikephoros*, Patriarch of Constantinople, 36, 41, 376  
 Nikiforov, M. A. 100, 417  
 Nistor, I. I. 58, 116, 417  
 Nistor, V. 317  
 Nițulescu, V. Șt. 291, 390  
*Nizami* 287, 376  
 Nodilo, S. 332, 369  
 Noonan, T. S. 48, 233, 240, 246, 417  
 Nordenskjöld, A. E. 34, 173, 376  
 Norwich, J. J. 105, 374  
 Nour, R. 82, 276, 376  
 Novák, Gy. 62  
 Novoselski, A. A. 341, 372  
 Novosef'tsev, A. P. 48, 51, 88, 366, 417  
 Nudel'man, A. A. 199, 241, 242, 349, 384, 385, 388, 417, 437  
 Nussbächer, G. 317, 382  
*an-Nuwairi* 32, 165, 263  
  
 Oancea, D. I. 329, 399  
 Oberhammer, E. 189, 422  
 Oberländer-Târnoveanu, E. 32, 139, 140, 243, 417  
 Oboldueva, T. G. 388, 438  
 Obolensky, D. 49  
 Obreja, Al. 320, 417  
 Obreja, C. 195, 383  
*Odo of Deuil (Eudes de Deuil)* 127, 368, 377  
 Odobescu, A. I. xiv  
*Odoric of Pordenone* 209, 377  
*Odoric Vital (Vidal)* 123, 377  
 Oğuz, C. C. 4, 258, 395, 406, 410, 427  
 Ohnsorge, W. 130, 417  
 Öhrig, B. 302, 417  
 Oikonomidès, N. A. 101, 333, 334, 361, 418  
 Olariu, F.-T. 180, 424  
 Olbricht, P. 209, 375  
 Olivieri, D. 172, 209, 377  
 Ölmez, M. 185, 428  
 Olofson, G. 288, 388  
 Olteanu, Șt. 222, 236, 350, 418  
 Onciul, D. 58, 141, 160, 270, 418  
 Önnerrfors, A. 172, 364  
 Opreș, I. 330, 423  
 Orlov, R. S. 246, 404  
 Ortiz, R. 178, 418  
 Ortvay, T. 318, 377  
 Ostrogorsky (Ostrogorskij), G. 98, 144, 334, 418  
 Ostrowski, D. 136, 266, 418, 432

- Otroshchenko, V. V. 246, 404  
 Otto, K.-H. 100, 384  
*Otto von Freising* 130, 226, 377  
 Ota, S. 90, 318, 418  
 Oțetea, A. (C.) xv, 310, 341, 372, 409, 417  
*Ovidius Naso, Publius* 40  
  
*Pachymeres, Georgios* 56, 369  
 Pais, D. xi  
 Paksoy, H. B. 187, 405  
 Paládi-Kovács, A. 16, 431  
 Pallson, H. 105, 382  
 Pálóczi-Horváth, A. 3, 261, 358, 388, 418  
*Paltramus seu Vatzon* 35, 377  
 Pamlényi, E. 72, 404  
 Panait, P. I. 203, 293, 384  
 Panaitescu, P. P. xiii, 17, 20, 21, 31, 33, 41, 58, 135, 201, 220, 221, 225, 229, 247–249, 318, 324, 366, 367, 377, 381, 399, 405, 418  
 Panayotov, L. 103  
 Panchenko, A. M. 149, 370  
 Pandrea, A. 344, 418  
 Pandrea, S. 291  
 Panic, I. 69, 418  
 Papachryssanthou, D. 333–336, 361, 362  
 Papacosteia, Ș. 2, 147, 154, 158, 179, 320, 352, 418  
 Papadopol-Calimach, Al. 312, 418  
 Paragină, A. 25, 223, 243, 389, 418  
 Parry, V. J. 266, 399  
 Parzinger, H. 239, 418  
*Paschalis de Victoria* 172, 378  
 Pascu, Șt. xiii–xvi, 73, 90, 101, 118, 148, 149, 195, 200, 236, 247, 344, 367, 389, 409, 418, 422  
 Pashuto, V. T. 2, 89, 117, 137, 154, 262, 320, 375, 418, 420, 429  
 Pastorello, E. 71, 261, 367  
 Paszkiewicz, H. 85, 87, 419  
 Pașca, Șt. 330, 419  
 Pataki, I. 249  
 Patlagean, É. 144  
*Paul of Venice (Paulinus von Venedig)* 143, 377  
 Pauphilet, A. 144, 217, 372, 379, 382  
 Pavlov, P. 140, 167, 419  
 Pavoni, R. 337, 377  
 Păcurariu, M. 268, 419  
 Pătruș, I. 312, 325, 419  
 Păunescu, Al. 12, 389  
 Pârvan, V. 23, 36, 325  
 Peacock, A. C. S. 148, 419  
*Pecevi, Ibrahim* 33  
*Pegolotti. See Balducci Pegolotti, F.*  
 Peisker, J. 80  
 Pekkanen, T. 207, 361  
 Pellat, Ch. 48, 113, 394, 398  
 Pellegrini, G. B. 337  
 Pelliot, P. 78, 82, 166, 419  
 Perkhavko, V. B. 125, 137, 138, 411, 419  
 Perlbach, M. 146, 419  
 Perpillou, A. V. 10, 11, 419  
*Perthes, Boucher de* 289, 364  
 Pertz, G. H. 59, 95, 96, 130, 152, 267, 277, 362, 364, 366, 368, 370, 375  
 Pertz, K. 130, 362  
 Pervain, V. xiii, xvi, 367  
 Pesty, F. 318, 377  
 Petech, L. 21, 377  
 Péter, L. 75, 413  
*Pethachias of Ratisbonne (Regensburg)* 115, 218, 226, 227, 263, 267, 377, 381  
 Petolescu, C. C. 250, 428  
 Petrarcco Sicardi, G. 337  
 Petrașcu, N. N. 161, 419  
 Petrescu-Dimbovița, M. xvii, 13, 23, 67, 89, 190, 192, 389, 392, 409  
 Petrov, P. 139, 419  
 Petrovici, E. 25, 311, 399, 408, 419  
 Petrukhin, V. Ia. 49, 53, 95, 185, 410, 419, 420, 423  
*Petrus de Reva* 172, 378  
 Petrushevich, A. S. 161, 419  
 Pez, H. 35, 169, 362, 365, 377  
 Pfeiffer, N. 154, 419  
 Philippide, Al. 80, 289, 312, 318, 320, 344, 419  
 Phillips, E. D. 205, 419  
 Phillips, J. 144, 419  
 Pian di Carpine, Giovanni di (John of).  
     *See Plano Carpini*  
 Pič, J. L. 58, 419  
 Pilat, L. 313  
 Pillinger, R. 273, 404  
 Pillon, M. 74, 180, 419  
 Piltz, E. 54, 408  
 Pinks, E. 209, 235, 375  
 Pinna, M. 16, 419  
 Pinter, Z. K. 59, 389, 422  
 Pintescu, F. 54, 420  
 Pirivatrić, S. 273, 420  
 Pistorius, I. 152, 374  
 Pivovarov, S. 240, 420

- Plano Carpini, Iohannes (John of/Giovanni di Pian di Carpine)* xvi, 115, 163, 170, 172, 209, 219, 233, 234, 369, 372, 377
- Plămădeală, A. 154, 425
- Plătăreanu, M. 32
- Pleșca, V. 213, 420
- Pletneva, S. A. xvi, 2, 48, 49, 105, 111, 117, 121, 127, 160, 212, 218, 221, 227, 238, 261, 262, 264, 274, 277, 279, 284, 290, 294, 295, 302–304, 383, 389, 420, 423, 427, 438
- Poboran, G. 311, 420
- Podhradczyk, I. 118, 365
- Poghirc, P. 19, 288, 420
- Pohl, W. 185, 207, 400, 420
- Polak, G. I. 95, 373
- Polevoi, L. L. xii, xv, 194, 247, 350, 400, 409, 420
- Polo, Marco* 78, 172, 209, 218, 277, 374, 377
- Polonska-Vasylenko, N. 161, 162, 420
- Pop, D. 225, 301, 420
- Pop, E. 17, 420
- Pop, I.-A. 73, 74, 76, 251, 409, 420
- Pop, R. 151, 370
- Popa, A. 391, 435
- Popa, M. 57, 259, 400
- Popa, R. 329, 420
- Popa-Lisseanu, G. xiv, 72, 79, 141, 377, 420
- Popescu, A. 325, 416
- Popescu, Al. 225, 301, 420
- Popescu, C. 15, 366, 422
- Popescu, E. 94, 107, 268, 273, 400, 414, 415, 421, 426
- Popescu, Gr. 316, 368
- Popescu, V. C. xiv, 369
- Popescu-Ciocănel, Gh. 344
- Popescu-Sireteanu, I. 314, 405
- Popescu-Spineni, M. 13, 421
- Popov, A. 139, 389
- Popovici, D. 12, 193, 392
- Popovici, I. 195, 389
- Popp, M. N. 162, 421
- Porta, G. 42, 169, 382
- Porucic, T. 34, 421
- Posea, G. 18, 402
- Postică, Gh. 12, 136, 191–193, 222, 237, 287, 350, 389, 421, 435, 437
- Potvin, Ch. 37, 369
- Pozsony, F. 71, 440
- Praovcanu, I. 203, 215, 230, 421
- Prawer, J. 123
- Preda, C. 242, 421
- Prikhodniuk, O. M. 162, 428
- Primov, B. 138, 421
- Prinz, J. 317, 423
- Prinzing, G. 139, 144, 145, 421
- Priselkov, M. D. 70, 381
- Pritsak, O. 3, 4, 41, 49, 52, 55, 70, 106, 113, 129, 181, 187, 197, 246, 259, 261, 303, 369, 410, 421
- Prodan, D. 249, 286, 317, 381
- Przeczdzicki, A. 21, 325, 367
- Psellos, Michael* xvi, 108, 110, 112, 217, 265–267, 275, 375, 377, 378
- Pseudo-Kodinos*. See *Kodinos (Pseudo-)*
- Puiu, V. 320, 367
- Pungă, Gh. 201
- Pușcariu, S. 202, 224, 344, 421
- Qaukhchishvili, S. 128, 276, 369
- al-Qazwini (Hamd-Allah Mustawfi of Qazwin)* 39, 183, 378
- Quatremère, [É. M.] 218, 339, 374
- Queirazza, G. Gasca 337
- Rabinovich, R. A. 61, 67, 80, 84, 135, 241, 390, 421, 423
- Racheli, D. A. 42, 172, 382
- Rachewiltz, I. de 151, 379
- Rachmati, G. R. 82, 363
- Radloff, W. 81, 378
- Radulf 144
- Raevskii, N. 320
- Rafalovici, I. A. 389, 436, 437
- Rafn, C. C. 105, 369
- Rahewin* 130, 226, 377
- Rancu, D. 224
- Ranov, V. A. 219, 412
- Rappoport, P. A. 162, 389
- Raschellà, F. D. 52, 422
- Rashev, R. 61, 303, 390
- Rashid al-Din (Rachid-Eddin, Rašid-ad-Din, Rashiduddin) Fazhullah* 81, 82, 149, 150, 165–167, 169, 170, 201, 204, 207, 259, 339, 340, 372, 378, 409
- Rásonyi (Rásonyi-Nagy), L. 77, 181, 311, 324, 343, 353, 422
- Rásonyi-Nagy, L. See *Rásonyi*
- Rasovskii. See *Rassovsky (Rasovskii)*, D.
- Rassamakin, Iu. Ia. 246, 388
- Rassovsky (Rasovskii), D. 2, 111, 117, 128, 140, 142, 160, 261, 309, 323, 341, 422
- Ratkoš, P. 63, 377

- Ratzel, F. 10, 189, 357, 422  
 Rau, R. 95, 374  
 Rauch, A. 169, 365  
 Rauh, J. 8  
 Raverty, H. G. 151, 370  
*Raymond d'Aguilers* 123, 378  
 Raynald, O. 155, 189, 378  
 Rădulescu, N. A. 25, 230, 422  
 Rădulescu, Th. 316, 368  
 Rădulescu-Zoner, Ș. 195, 365  
 Răduțiu, A. xiii, xiv, 286, 367  
 Râmncanțu, P. 71, 422  
 Râpeanu, V. 178, 397  
 Regel, W. 125, 129, 375, 378  
*Regino (Reginald) of Prüm* 66, 70, 378  
 Regleanu, M. 312, 315, 327, 364  
 Reichert, B. M. 274, 369  
 Reichert, F. 209, 377  
*Reichstorfer, Georg (Georgius a Reichersdorff, Transilvanus)* 24, 28, 43, 198, 378  
 Reinaud, T. J. 182, 361  
 Reli, S. 270, 272, 422  
 Rența, E. 291, 387, 390  
 Renzi, L. 179, 422  
 Reuter, T. 70, 102, 362, 425  
 Rezachevici, C. 325, 366  
 Riabtseva, S. 67, 293, 390  
 Riber, L. 122, 363  
*Ricardus de Gerboredo* 145, 378  
 Richard, J. 154, 170, 380, 422  
 Richter, H. 9  
 Rikman, E. A. 12, 86, 302, 390, 422, 438  
 Riley-Smith, J. 111, 422  
 Rizescu, O. xiii, 367  
*Robert d'Auxerre (Robertus canonicus S. Mariani Alissiodorensis)* 144, 379  
*Robert de Clari* 144, 217, 226, 267, 379  
*Robertus Monachus* 123, 376, 379  
 Rochow, I. 326, 422  
 Rodrigues, D. M. U. 206, 422  
 Roemer, H. R. 181, 343, 422  
 Roesdahl, E. 52, 422  
 Roesler, R. 74, 135, 309, 422  
*Rogierus (Roger de Torre Maggiore)* 153, 154, 157, 167–170, 197, 205, 218, 233, 379  
 Rolle, R. 305, 402  
 Roman, L. 199, 422  
 Roman, P. 43  
 Romanovskaia, M. A. 12  
 Romashov, S. A. 48, 90, 94, 423  
 Romaskevich, A. A. xvii, 379  
 Romodin, V. A. 173, 183, 363, 372, 375  
 Róna-Tas, A. 49, 50, 68, 70, 72, 185, 404, 406, 423, 432  
 Rosenblum, J. 179, 373  
 Rosenthal, F. 182, 371  
 Rosetti, Al. 269, 423  
 Rosetti, D. V. 291, 349, 390  
 Rosetti, R. 71, 251, 423  
 Rossebastiano, A. 337  
 Roșu, Al. 11, 13, 15, 41, 423  
 Roth, C. 95  
 Rotter, G. 183, 375  
 Roux, J.-P. 3, 275, 290, 302, 423  
*Rubruck, William of* xvi, 38, 78, 89, 163, 170, 209, 211, 219, 227, 235, 237, 265, 276–278, 370, 375, 379, 382  
*Rubrouck, Guillaume de. See Rubruck, William of*  
 Rudolf, K. 179, 378  
 Ruffini, M. 270, 423  
 Runceanu, M. 330, 364, 365  
 Ruotsala, A. 235, 423  
 Rusanova, I. P. 89, 137, 194, 390, 409  
 Russev, E. M. 320, 375  
 Russev, N. D. 61, 135, 423  
 Russu, I. I. 20, 228, 330, 423  
*Rustem-Pașa* 33  
 Rusu, A. 13  
 Rusu, A. (A.) xiv, 29, 100, 158, 200, 367, 423, 425  
 Rusu, D. N. 21, 404  
 Rusu, M. 59, 73, 90, 200, 423  
 Rusu, V. 180, 311, 400  
 Rutt kay, A. 60, 427  
 Ruzé, A. 178, 423  
 Rybakov, B. A. 87, 105, 127, 161, 238, 261, 389, 423  
 Rydzevskaia, E. A. 52, 105, 379, 424  
 Sablukov, G. 117, 361  
 Sacerdoțeanu, A. 58, 76, 78, 270, 309, 418, 424  
 Šafařík, P. J. 160, 424  
 Saint Marc, Ph. 11  
 Sakharov, A. N. 55, 99, 424  
 Sala, M. 228, 311, 344, 399, 408, 424  
*Salimbene de Adam* 144, 379  
 Salin, Éd. 271  
 Samokvasov, D. 288, 390  
*Šams ad-Din as-Šuğā'i* 339, 340, 379  
 Sandoli, S. de 123, 379  
 Sanguinetti, B. R. 39, 170, 184, 371  
 Sanic, S. 12  
 Santarem 34, 173, 379

- Sanudo, Marino (Marinus Sanutus dictus Torsellus)* 143, 169, 172, 375, 379  
 Sapozhnikov, I. V. 391, 437  
 Saramandu, N. 77, 180, 424  
 Sarbei, V. G. 135  
 Sauer, C. O. 10  
 Sauvaget, J. 339, 372  
 Sava, E. 346, 389, 390, 436–340  
 Savvides, A. G. K. 126, 168, 424  
 Sawyer, P. H. 52, 424  
 Sayous, E. 64  
 Sălăgean, T. 74, 200, 408, 424  
 Sâmpetru, M. 291, 292, 294, 310, 349, 390, 424  
 Sbaralea, I. H. 173, 364  
 Sburan, D. A. 19, 20, 424  
 Scalia, G. 144, 379  
 Schaefer, H. H. 161  
 Schaer, F. 274, 369  
 Schäfer, B. 339, 379  
 Schäfer, T. 3, 63, 181, 184, 430, 432  
 Schamiloglu, U. 4  
 Scharlipp, W.-E. 181, 343, 422  
 Scheel, H. 3, 187, 403, 421  
 Scheffer-Boichorst, P. 152, 277, 362  
 Scheludko, D. 228, 424  
 Schietzel, K. 305, 402  
 Schletzer, R. 113, 392  
 Schloessinger, M. 95  
 Schlumberger, G. 99, 102, 424  
 Schmale, F.-J. 130, 226, 377  
 Schmeidler, B. 143, 381  
 Schmieder, F. 187, 219, 377, 424, 427  
 Schmitt, O. 110, 111, 424  
 Schmitz, R. P. 122, 363  
 Schneider, F. 143, 377  
 Schock-Werner, B. 200  
 Scholz, B. 424  
 Schönebaum, H. 50  
 Schönfeld, R. 61, 407  
 Schönig, C. 161, 181, 405, 424  
 Schönwiese, Ch.-D. 16, 424  
 Schopen, L. 115, 168, 197, 337, 364, 369  
 Schottin, R. 94, 361  
 Schram, M. 15  
 Schramm, G. xiv, 52, 55, 65, 407, 424  
 Schreiner, P. 187, 424, 427  
 Schulz, G. V. 317, 423  
 Schünemann, K. 127, 424  
 Schuol, M. 206, 427  
 Schurmann, H. F. 266  
 Schütz, E. 187, 379, 424  
 Schütz, I. 333, 424  
 Schütze, J. 147, 425  
 Schwandtner, J. G. 24, 172, 378  
 Schwerin, C.-S. v. 279, 429  
*Scriptor incertus* 56  
 Scorpan, C. 142, 390  
*Scymnos (Pseudo)* 28, 31, 369, 378  
 Seaman, G. 3, 205, 219, 262, 402, 405, 425  
 Sears, P. B. 11  
 Sedov, V. V. 50, 53, 85, 88, 89, 97, 272, 412, 425  
 Segeda, S. P. 199, 246, 385  
 Seibt, W. 102, 109, 379, 425  
 Selenginski, A. I. 302, 390  
 Selmeczi, L. 358, 390  
 Semencescu, M. 41, 399  
 Semenov, A. A. 207, 378  
 Senga, T. 70, 72, 425  
 Senkovskii, O. I. 106, 368  
 Senoner, R. 38, 370  
 Serbin, K. N. 126, 373  
 Serczyk, W. A. 135, 425  
 Sergheraert, G. (Gerard, C.) 62, 425  
 Ševcenko, I. 125, 410  
 Sevin, A. 113, 425  
 Sevortian, E. V. 187, 368  
 Seyfarth, W. 27, 207, 362  
 Shakhanova, N. Zh. 219, 425  
 Shakhmatov, A. A. xv, 372  
 Shakhrov, G. I. 308, 401  
 Shapira, D. 49, 185, 410, 423  
 Shapovalov, G. I. 308, 401  
 Shcherbak, A. M. 82, 184, 185, 258, 323, 379, 390  
 Shcherbakova, T. A. 191, 384, 390  
*Shems ed-Dīn Abou-ʿAbdallah Moh'ammed de Damas* 41, 182, 212, 379  
 Shepard, J. 102, 109, 137, 138, 244, 402, 425  
 Sher, I. A. 278, 302, 390  
 Shevchenko, F. P. 135, 409  
 Shmaglii, M. M. 193, 390  
*Shüküllakh (Dükülläh)* 63, 182–184, 237  
 Shusharin, V. P. 358, 416  
 Shvetsov, M. L. 279, 302, 390  
 Sibiescu, V. Gh. 154, 425  
 Siegmann, R. 317, 423  
*Sigebertus* 66  
 Silagi, G. 60, 362  
 Simalcsik, R. 195, 388  
 Simck, R. 52, 425  
 Simion, G. 291, 398

- Simionescu, I. 13, 30, 425  
 Simmons, I. G. 9  
 Simões de Paula, E. 53, 425  
*Simon de Keza* xvii, 59, 64, 70, 71,  
 74–76, 104, 115, 118, 261, 265, 266,  
 380  
*Simon de Saint-Quentin* 170, 380  
 Sinor, D. 3, 64, 70, 113, 115, 181,  
 185, 264, 398, 399, 405, 425  
 Siruni (Sirouni), H. Dj. 23, 34, 48,  
 372  
 Sîrbu, V. 90, 129, 291, 318, 386, 416,  
 418  
 Sîrcu, I. 15, 30, 41, 425  
 Skazkin, S. D. 129, 409  
 Skrzhinska, E. Ch. 172, 363  
*Skutariotes, Theodor* 139–141, 144, 145,  
 164, 233, 380  
*Syklitzes, Ioannes* xvii, 31, 36, 63, 66,  
 91, 99, 100, 102, 103, 107–109, 111,  
 114–116, 153, 197, 204, 210, 217,  
 259, 264, 265, 267, 380, 412  
 Slastikhin, V.V. 26, 27, 34, 425  
 Slavici, I. xiv, 371  
 Slawisch, A. 110, 424  
 Smičiklas, T. 146, 332, 366  
 Smilenko, A. T. 160, 191, 193, 350,  
 390  
 Smirnov, G. D. xii, 400  
 Smirnov, S. V. 246, 404  
 Smith, G. 8  
 Smith Jr., J. Masson 235, 425  
 Snædal, T. 54  
 Sneath, D. 206, 408  
 Sobolevskii, A. I. 106, 135, 425  
 Sokulskii, A. L. 131, 425  
*Solakzade Mehmed Hemdemi*. See *Hemdemi*  
 Solchanyk, R. 136  
 Solomon, C. 327, 380  
 Solomon, F. 154, 426  
 Solta, G. R. 228, 345, 426  
 Someșan, L. 229, 426  
 Sommerlechner, A. 179, 378  
 Somogyi, J. v. 152, 380  
 Soós, Z. 147, 412  
 Sorlin, I. 89, 426  
 Sorre, M. 10, 11, 426  
 Soukry, A. 27, 375  
 Soulis, G. C. 326, 426  
 Soustal, P. 88, 366  
 Soveja, M. 315, 316, 364  
 Sovetov, P. V. xv, 97, 194, 195, 247,  
 312, 320, 375, 376, 401, 402, 409  
 Sovre, A. 335  
 Spiewok, W. 255, 376  
 Spinci, M. 43, 199, 380, 397  
 Spinci, V. xvii, 5, 21, 54, 67, 68, 73,  
 80, 86, 89, 94, 96, 106, 115, 119,  
 127, 137, 142, 143, 154, 167, 179,  
 190, 192, 197, 199, 202, 215, 237,  
 240, 243, 245, 256, 271, 275, 283,  
 286, 293, 294, 308, 322, 347, 349,  
 356, 380, 389, 391, 407, 426  
 Spuler, B. 170, 209, 218, 235, 245,  
 380, 426  
 Sreznevski, I. 42, 365  
 Stahl, H. H. 247, 249, 251, 352, 359,  
 426  
 Staňa, Č. 200, 391  
 Stanc, S. M. 229, 391, 426  
 Stanciu, V. 330, 364  
 Stanko, V. N. 391, 437  
 Stark, S. 206, 427  
*Staurakios, Ioannes* 140, 145, 372  
 Stănescu, E. 102, 128, 139, 400, 422,  
 427  
 Steinhübel, J. 60, 427  
 Steinitz, W. 154, 418  
 Stender-Petersen, A. 52, 427  
 Štěpánek, M. 200, 391  
 Stepanov, Ts. 49, 394  
 Stepanov, V. 61, 135, 423  
*Stephanus de Salaniaco* 274  
 Stephenson, P. 100, 102, 111, 126,  
 133, 139, 427  
 Steuer, H. 202, 426  
 Stevenson, E. L. 173, 380  
 Stöckl, G. 135  
 Stoescu, Șt. M. 15, 427  
 Stoianov (Stojanow, Stoyanov), V. 4,  
 187, 317, 342, 343, 427  
 Stoica, C. Gh. 313, 315, 322, 427  
 Stoicescu, N. xi, 76, 315, 329, 364,  
 399, 427  
 Stoide, C. A. 20, 315, 327, 330,  
 364–366  
 Stojanović, L. 335, 354, 380  
 Stokes, A. D. 99, 427  
 Stökl, G. 161, 427  
 Stoliarik, E. S. 138, 243, 246, 384,  
 391, 437  
*Strabo* 28, 30, 34, 36, 92, 208, 369,  
 380  
 Strnad, A. A. 179, 378  
 Stroia, M. 195, 365  
 Stugren, P. 11  
 Stupu, M. 195, 388  
*Sturluson, Snorri* 106, 217, 221, 380



- Subbotin, A. V. 399, 437  
 Subbotin (Subbotin), L. V. 191, 199,  
 246, 293, 385, 387, 391, 436–438  
 Suceveanu, Al. 32, 292, 293, 391  
 Suchodolski, B. 154, 418  
 Suci, C. 318, 427  
 Suci, Șt. 330, 365  
*Suidas, lexicon* 94  
 Sukharev, Iu. V. 161, 427  
*Šukrallāh*. See *Šhūkrullāh*  
 Süleymanoğlu, H. 346, 405  
 Sulimirski, T. 163  
 Sultanov, T. I. 181, 185, 410  
 Suny, R. G. 128, 405  
 Svetlichnaia, L. I. See Svetlicinai, L.  
 Svetlicinai, L. (Svetlichnaia, L. I.) 250,  
 312, 314, 320, 368, 375, 376  
*Svipert* 274  
 Svoronos, N. 333, 335, 336, 361  
 Świętosławski, W. 268, 427  
*Symeon Magister* 56, 66, 91, 264, 369,  
 380, 381  
 Szalontai, C. 59, 427  
 Szántai, L. 38, 380  
 Szczepański, J. 10  
 Székely, Gy. 358, 406  
 Székely, M. M. 325  
 Szekfü, Gy. 62  
 Szentpétery, E. xvii, 169, 365  
 Szujski, J. 325, 366  
 Szuper, R. 161, 420  
 Šadurschi, P. 12, 389  
 Šandru, I. 23, 427  
 Šarov, I. 180, 396  
 Šaincanu, L. 344, 427  
 Šchiopul, I. 146, 427  
 Șelariu, O. 42  
 Șerbănescu, D. 291, 349, 390  
 Šimanschi, L. xiii, 367  
 Ștefan, Gh. xiv, xv, 252, 292, 293, 369,  
 391, 409  
 Ștefănescu, Gh. 195, 383  
 Ștefănescu, Șt. xii, xiii, xv, 129, 141,  
 195, 196, 250, 316, 352, 367, 394,  
 425, 427  
 Ștrempel, G. 20, 21, 289, 315, 325,  
 362, 376  
  
*Tacitus, P. Cornelius* 220, 381  
 Tafel, T. L. F. 125, 144, 204, 368, 381  
 Tagliavini, C. 180, 428  
 Takács, B. Z. 4  
 Takács, M. 237, 391  
 Tamás, L. 347, 428  
  
 Tanasachi, M. 12, 193, 384  
 Tanașoca, N.-Ș. xiv, 119, 128, 139,  
 369, 400, 428  
 Tappe, E. D. 17  
 Tardy, L. 245, 428  
 Tavkul, U. 4  
 Tăpkova-Zaimova, V. 57, 58, 60, 101,  
 103, 122, 139, 372, 380, 428  
 Tăutu, A. L. 152, 173, 189, 357, 361  
 Tekin, T. 185, 302, 304, 381, 428  
 Tel'nov, N. P. 61, 135, 191, 192, 199,  
 349, 384, 385, 390, 391, 423, 437  
 Tentiuc, I. 191, 192, 213, 240, 270,  
 283, 301, 389, 391, 428, 435  
 Teodor, D. Gh. xvii, 12, 23, 57, 89,  
 190–193, 195, 213, 215, 222, 223,  
 240, 242, 268, 283, 300, 389, 391,  
 392, 428, 435  
 Teodor, P. 286  
 Teodorescu, Gh. 195, 428  
 Teoteoi, T. xiv, 94, 107, 110, 139, 250,  
 273, 369, 395, 400, 414, 415, 426,  
 428  
 Tereshchuk, K. I. 162, 428  
 Terpilovs'kii, R. V. 246, 404  
 Thackston, W. M. 81, 171, 201, 339,  
 363, 378  
 Theiner, A. 183, 208, 335, 384  
 Theodorescu, B. 311  
 Theodorescu, R. 54, 101, 270, 409, 428  
*Theophanes Confessor* 40, 58, 62, 66, 91,  
 264, 381  
*Theophylactus Simocatta* 220, 221, 381  
*Thielmar of Merseburg* 104, 381  
*Tholomeus of Lucca* 143, 381  
 Thomas, G. M. 144, 381  
 Thomas, J. 112, 364  
 Thomas Jr., W. L. 11  
*Thomas Tuscanus* 267, 381  
 Thompson, M. S. 343, 431  
 Thomsen, V. 302, 304, 381  
 Thomson, R. W. 143, 275, 378  
 Thordarson, F. 277, 428  
 Thorsson, Ö. 106, 380  
 Thurn, I. xvii, 380  
*Thurocz, John of (Johannes de) (Thuroczy,  
 Janos)* 118, 121, 169, 172, 176, 381  
 Tiesenhausen [Tizengausen], V. [G.]  
 xvii, 32, 38, 149–152, 165–167, 171,  
 173, 212, 217, 218, 234, 245, 260,  
 263, 265, 276, 379, 381  
 Tikhomirov, M. N. 87, 137, 428  
 Tikhoniuk, I. A. 142, 374  
 Tikhvinskii, S. L. 165, 398

- Timoshchuk, B. A. (B. O.) 89, 103,  
137, 390, 392, 429
- Timoshina, L. A. 142, 374
- Tittman, I. A. 95, 382
- Tivčev, P. 103
- Tocilescu, Gr. G. xiv, 287, 289, 291,  
313, 315, 320, 328, 367, 371, 412,  
429
- Toderaşcu, I. 21, 253, 429
- Todt, K. P. 130, 429
- Tofan, C. 35, 429
- Togan, (A.) Z. V. 3, 111, 187, 204,  
218, 371, 403, 421
- Toldy, F. 274, 308, 365, 372
- Tolochko, P. P. 3, 137, 162, 246, 354,  
400, 404, 429
- Tolstov, S. P. 212, 219, 402, 429
- Tomaschek, W. 347, 429
- Tomescu, C. N. 314, 315, 320, 367
- Tomoiağă, A. R. 330, 423
- Tonchev, A. 119
- Topoleanu, F. 243, 417
- Topor, N. 15, 46, 429
- Topping, P. 337
- Torfason, J. 106, 380
- Tornikes, Euthymios* 140
- Toshchev, G. N. 308, 401
- Totev, T. 271, 303, 390, 392
- Tóth, I. H. 70
- Tóth, S. (L.) 65, 69, 429
- Tougher, S. 62, 429
- Toynbee, A. 93, 429
- Travnik, E. 64, 338, 365, 370
- Treadgold, W. 57, 98, 102, 144, 429
- Trebici, V. 194, 429
- Trepavlov, V. V. 171, 354, 385, 429
- Trofin, L. 268, 270, 429
- Trohani, G. 292, 387
- Tryjarski, E. 185, 187, 227, 244, 275,  
279, 290, 381, 429
- Tseveendorj, D. 278, 279, 387
- Tuathail, G. Ó. 9, 429
- Tudebode, Peter (Petrus Tudebodus)* 123,  
377
- Tudebodus continuatus* 123
- Tufescu, M. 11, 429
- Tufescu, V. 11, 13, 17, 41, 429
- Tugwell, S. 274, 429
- Tuleshkov, N. 139, 394
- Turan, O. 262, 429
- Turcuş, Ş. 147, 179, 429
- Turgenev, A. J. 169, 371
- Turledove, H. 40, 381
- Turri, E. 205, 430
- Tuscus, Thomas.* See *Thomas Tuscus*
- Tveritinoва, A. S. 83, 209, 395
- Tzvetov, P. S. 4
- Țeicu, D. 318, 430
- Țighiliu, I. 253, 430
- Țiplic, I. M. 59, 147, 200, 389, 422,  
430
- Ubicini, A. 18
- Udaltsova, Z. V. 134, 413
- Udrescu, M. St. 195, 389
- Ujvári, I. 30, 31, 41, 430
- Ukert, F. A. 28
- Ulashchik, N. N. 38, 373, 375
- al-'Umarī* 171, 209, 227, 233–235, 274,  
381, 382
- Ungureanu, I. 11, 423
- Ureche, Grigore* 21, 24, 35, 219, 220,  
289, 381
- Urechia, V. A. 17, 37, 43, 381
- Ursu, I. 325
- Ursulescu, N. 12, 23
- Ursuțiu, L. 317, 381
- Ursuțiu, M. 317, 381
- Uslar, R. v. 200, 392
- Usmanov, M. A. 4
- Uspenskii, F. 141, 159, 430
- Uvarov, A. S. 303, 392
- Váczy, P. 64, 74, 430
- Vaillant, A. 10
- Vainshtein, S. I. 219, 430
- Vajay, S. de 69, 72, 430
- Vakulenko, L. V. 162, 428
- Valentin, J. 333, 361
- Vallaux, C. 10, 397
- Varlaam, V. 288, 392
- Vásáry, S. <I.> 3, 139, 140, 181, 187,  
276, 343, 353, 382, 430
- Vasilescu, V. 312, 327, 363
- Vasil'ev, D. D. 185, 430
- Vasiliev, A. A. 55, 98, 99, 120, 265,  
382, 430
- Vasilievskii, V. G. 2, 109, 111, 114,  
120, 121, 430
- Vauchez, A. 273, 407
- Vavřínek, Vl. 101
- Văcaru, S. xiii, 250, 367
- Vărzaru, S. 27, 215
- Vătafu-Găitan, S. 315, 365
- Vâlsan, G. 17, 22, 30, 36, 38, 39, 210,  
414, 430
- Vârlan, C. 213, 430
- Vékony, G. 185, 430

- Velcea, V. 13, 403  
 Velter, A.-M. 243, 430  
 Velikanova, M. S. 195, 252, 280, 385, 392  
 Verancsics, Anton (*Vérančius, Ant[onius]*) 17, 21, 24, 28, 36, 382  
 Veres, P. 16, 65, 430  
 Veress, A. 229, 315, 317, 329, 353, 382, 431  
 Vergatti, R. Št. 199, 422  
 Verhaeghe, F. 240, 428  
 Verlinden, Ch. 245, 431  
 Vernadsky (Vernandskij), G. 55, 70, 133, 188, 266, 431  
 Veselovskii, N. 303  
 Veszprémy, L. 60, 362  
 Vidal de la Blanche, P. 10, 11, 13, 414, 431  
 Vidrașcu, I. T. 30  
 Vidulich, P. R. 336, 368  
 Viktorova, L. L. 218, 431  
 Villani, Giovanni 42, 169, 172, 382  
 Villehardouin, Godefroy de 77, 78, 144, 382  
 Vincent de Beauvais (*Vincentius Bellovacensis*) 172, 382  
 Vinițchi, V. 330, 364  
 Vinokur, I. S. 162, 392  
 Vintilă-Ghițulescu, C. xiii, 367  
 Vitencu, Al. 312  
 Vivian, K. 128, 276, 369  
 Vladimirtsov, B. 219, 256, 431  
 Vlaskin, M. V. 171, 392  
 Vlasto, A. P. 273, 431  
 Vlăduțiu, I. 204, 216, 229, 230, 284, 431  
 Vojnov, M. 139, 372, 380  
 Volin, S. L. xvii, 379  
 Vornicescu, N. 272, 431  
 Vörös, G. 4, 258, 431  
 Vryonis, S. Jr. 153, 431  
 Vuia, R. 25, 203, 216, 229, 402, 431  
 Vulcănescu, R. 301, 431  
 Vulpe, Al. 13, 23, 409  
 Vulpe, R. xii, 23, 32  
  
 Wace, A. J. B. 343, 431  
 Waddingus Hibernus, L. 172, 382  
 Wagner, E. 71, 431  
 Wahlqvist, B. 52  
 Waitz, G. 130, 365  
 Walaschofsky, A. 228, 431  
 Waley, A. 218, 381  
  
 Wallis Budge, E. A. 102, 108, 232, 370  
 Waquert, H. 127, 368  
 Watson, G. 4  
 Wattenbach, W. 94, 111, 361, 382  
*Wawrin, Jehan de* 31, 371, 382  
 Weigand, G. 318, 431  
 Weiland, L. 150, 153, 368, 379  
 Weissleder, W. 205, 417  
 Wendt, H. F. 311, 343, 345, 432  
 Wenzel, G. 332, 382  
 Werbart, B. 49, 432  
 Werner, C. 163, 331, 341, 381  
 Wessén, E. 54, 387  
 Westerink, L. G. 91, 376  
*Widukind* 94, 361  
 Wieser, K. 147, 432  
 Wiet, G. 51, 183, 371, 382  
*William, Archbishop of Tyre* 123, 209, 382  
*William of Rubruck (Guillelmus de Rubruc).*  
     *See Rubruck, William of*  
 Williams, K. 52, 422  
 Windisch, R. 74, 432  
 Wink, A. 128, 358, 395  
 Winnifrieth, T. J. 139, 343, 432  
 Wirth, P. 62  
 Wittoch, Z. 269, 432  
 Wolf, M. xiv, 70, 367  
 Wolff, R. L. 138, 140, 432  
 Wolfram, H. 27, 36, 432  
 Wozniak, F. E. 91, 432  
 Wright, F. A. 95, 374  
 Wyngaert, A. van den xvi  
 Wyrostek, L. 162, 432  
  
 Xenopol, A. D. 58, 181, 254, 270, 311, 432  
  
*Yahya-ibn-Sa'ïd of Antioch* 99, 102, 382  
*Ya'kubi* 183, 217, 226, 238, 274, 382  
 Yao Ts'ung-wu 209, 375  
 Yapp, M. E. 267, 399  
 Yazici, N. 4  
 Yücel, M. U. 4  
*al-Yüninî* 339, 382  
  
 Zach, K. 270, 432  
 Zachariadou, E. A. 168, 432  
 Zaharia, D. 313, 315, 318, 366  
 Zaharia, E. 248, 271, 392  
 Zaharia, Em. xvii, 67, 192, 389, 392, 436

- Zaharia, N. xvii, 12, 190, 192, 193,  
241, 322, 392, 436
- Zahariuc, P. xiii, 250, 313, 367, 368
- Zaharov, S. 34
- Ẓahīr al-Dīn Nīshāpūrī* 304, 371
- Zajaczkowski, A. 49, 432
- Zakhoder, B. N. 63, 244, 257, 432
- Zakythinos, D. A. 98, 102, 111, 432
- Zanoci, A. 191, 233, 389, 421
- Zarnitz, M. L. 109, 379
- Zăvoianu, I. 26
- Zbucea, Gh. 101, 180, 379
- Zelenciuc, V. S. 86, 402
- Zelenskii, Y. V. 143, 392
- Zenkovsky, S. A. 136
- Zernack, K. xiv, 407
- Zcune, J. 200
- Zhurko, O. I. 162, 392
- Zimin, A. A. 136, 432
- Zimmermann, F. 163, 331, 341, 381
- Zimmermann, H. 146–148, 152, 159,  
160, 382, 432
- Zimonyi, I. xvi, 4, 49, 63, 64, 90, 184,  
369, 377, 432
- Zlatarski, V. N. 56, 62, 432
- Zmeu, I. 20, 378
- Żmudzki, P. 105
- Żonaras, Ioannes* 63, 66, 91, 95, 99, 103,  
109, 112, 114, 120, 217, 259, 372,  
382
- Żosima the Deacon* 38, 42, 373
- Żosimus* 36, 382
- Zuckerman, C. 4, 50, 53, 55, 64, 419,  
433
- Zugravu, N. 301, 433
- Žukovs'kij, A. 135, 397
- Zundel-Bernard, A. 205, 419
- Żygulski Jr., Z. 221, 433

